

408. l. R. Room

THE  
REGISTER  
Of the MOST NOBLE  
ORDER  
OF THE  
GARTER,  
From its COVER in  
BLACK VELVET,  
USUALLY CALLED  
THE BLACK BOOK;  
WITH  
NOTES  
Placed at the Bottom of the PAGES,  
AND AN  
INTRODUCTION  
PREFIXED by the  
EDITOR.

---

IN TWO VOLUMES.

---

L O N D O N:

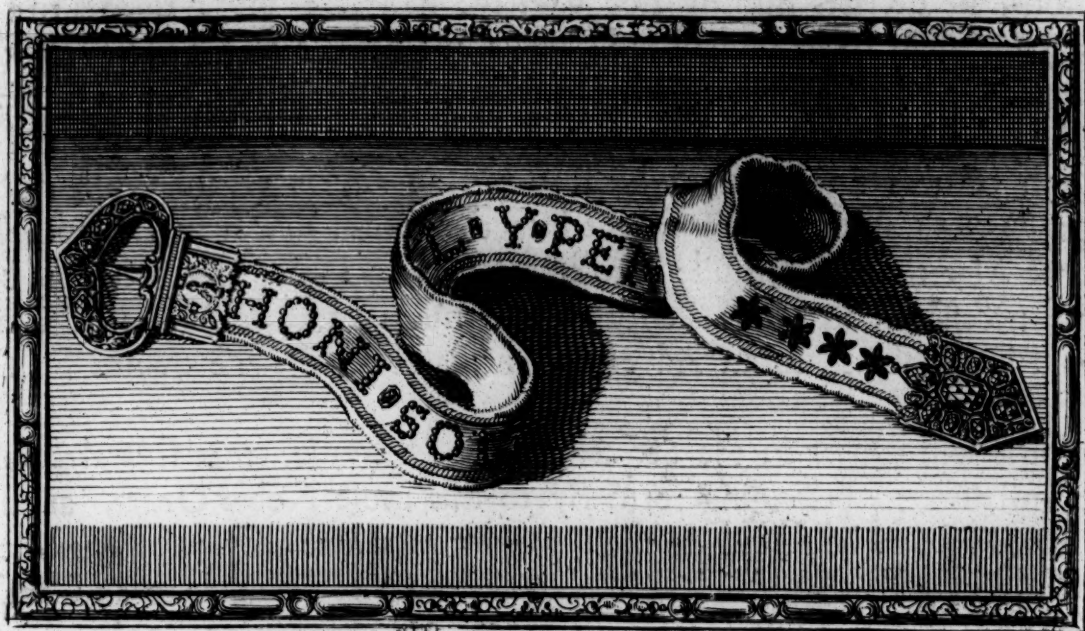
Printed by JOHN BARBER upon *Lambeth-hill*,  
MDCCXXIV.

8









# INTRODUCTION.



THE Article of the Duty of GARTER King of Arms, is to make diligent Enquiries after the Military Acts of the *Knights Companions*; and to certify them to the Register, to be entred in the *Annals* of the ORDER for a perpetual Memorial. The present Officer hopes that it will not be esteemed a Curiosity unbecoming his Station to extend his Researches back to the Foundation; for he thinks it will be no Diminution to the Splendor of this most Noble Society, to settle the Persons of the *Knights*, and to give short Memorials of their Lives, according to the following Specimen, of those who died in the Possession of the last Stall, or the XIIIth on the *Prince's* Side: Which Stall is here first placed, because the Knight in it, either *single*, or with his Companion in the *opposite* Stall on the *Sovereign's* Side, begins all *Processions* of the Order.

But though these Amusements may be unexceptionable, nay, laudable Entertainments for this Officer in his private Retirements; yet it may be reasonably demanded, What Excuse or Apology can he make for publishing this Essay? and, What Motives could prevail on him to prove his Want of Prudence, by setting his Name to it? He might, it is true, in case he was fond of the Press, however, have taken effectual Care to continue undiscovered in an Anonymous Treatise; and if he was inclined to own it, it may be said, he ought, for his own Character, to have kept it for a longer Time in his Closet, and rendered it more pardonable and less unworthy of the publick View, and might also have amended the

B

Method



Method, Style, and Manner of Expression. In answer to these Suggestions, he declares himself not to have had any more regard to the Language than to be understood; but must submit to the Mercy of the Reader's Opinion, whether such Delay in printing, and Caution in suppressing the Name of the Writer, would have suited the Design and Intention of this Specimen, which is not an *History of the GARTER*, but a Preparation or *Apparatus* sent into the World to obtain, if possible, proper Materials to compile a tolerable History: For which End it became necessary, that this Performance, mean and immature as it is, should be published as an Advertisement, and be likewise owned by the Proposer.

For it will appear in the Sequel of this Discourse, that several Books and Instruments belonging formerly to this most Noble Order, are not at this Time to be found in the Repositories where they were heretofore carefully lodged: A publick Address is therefore to be made to all Gentlemen of Letters, in whose Custody any such Originals or Copies chance to remain, that they would have the Goodness to communicate them, or Abstracts of them at least. And there being still in the distant Parts of this Kingdom, the Effigies of several antient Companions on their Tombs, adorned with Ensigns of this Order, as likewise the Pictures of others in Glass-windows and in Manuscripts, and their Coats of Arms surrounded and encircled with *Garters*, Gentlemen of publick Spirits in the respective Neighbourhoods may, probably, be induced to impart Draughts, or convey Descriptions of them. And it may be reasonably hoped, that the Heirs and Descendants of divers antient Knights of this Order, will, with some Degree of Pleasure, contribute Extracts of the Charters and other venerable Memorials and Remains of their Ancestors, when they are informed of the Residence of the Person, who desires such Instructions, and who promises to make Acknowledgments in the best Manner he is capable for such Assistances. The Groundwork of such an History is large, and requires a great Variety of Materials towards its Superstructure, and therefore, upon the Confidence of receiving such Helps, this Plan is owned, that when a sufficient Stock is provided, some *Architect-Herald* of a powerful Genius, or diligent Antiquary of Abilities and Leisure, well acquainted with the hidden Particulars of past Ages, may be excited to finish this imperfect Model and little Sketch of a Design, (if it shall receive any favourable Approbation) and that with Honour to himself, and Success in the Undertaking: To whom the Editor, with the utmost Satisfaction, will deliver all his own Collections, and whatever shall be recovered upon this publick Application: For the present Specimen will be a Demonstration that the accomplishing an History with the Life and Perfection this noble Subject justly requires is too high for him, and much above his reach.

With these Views only, this unfinish'd Piece, and in that respect unworthy of the Patronage of the *Sovereign* and *Knights Companions*, is adventured into the World without any Dedication, and at the sole Expence of the Collector, who conceived the Permitting the late customary Manner of Subscriptions as much below the Dignity of his Office, as it would be



be a Disingenuity unbecoming it, to reprint this Work with any Additions, without giving such Enlargements in separate Sheets for the Use of the Buyers of this Trifle, (if there shall be any) in case he should be ever induced to review this rough Draught, and to proceed through the other Stalls in a more deliberate Method: For he judges such dry Notices; as are herein contained, not only fatiguing to most Readers; but to speak the whole Truth, the Cost of engraving the Plates remaining in all the Stalls, and the Working them off at a Press of a different Nature from that which prints the Text or Contents, would have been too chargeable an Experiment for the Purse of an Officer, whose Profits are no Ways answerable to the sounding Title of his Profession, and which, small as they are, have been invaded and lessened in almost every Article.

To proceed then: The several Books of the Baronage of *England* contain Accounts of the Noblemen who have been of this Order, which in such an Undertaking, may be referred to without transcribing, with some Corrections where necessary; but no Narratives have hitherto been printed, relating to those Companions who have been under that Degree, such as in the following Specimen are, Sir *Walter Paveley*, Sir *Thomas Banastre*, Sir *Simon Felbrigge*, Sir *Thomas Montgomery*, Sir *Gilbert Talbot*, Sir *Richard Wingfeld*, Sir *Henry Guldeford*, Sir *Nicholas Carew*, and Sir *Robert Rochester*: Or any thing yet printed about any of the Foreigners, such as Sir *Soldan de la Trau*, Henry Duke of *Viseo*, and the Lord *Duras*, who were all seated in this Stall. And of the last Kind in other Stalls, are Sir *Frank Van Hall*, Sir *Robert de Namur*, Sir *John Robsart*, Sir *Hertonk Van Clux*, Sir *Francis Surienne*, *Albro Vasques d' Almada*, &c. besides the Emperors, Kings, Electors, and foreign Noblemen, save only the bare Catalogues of their Names.

Which *Catalogues* themselves, being very incomplete and unaccurate, do, in some Sort, shew the Necessity of such an Undertaking.

It will be soon evident, that not only new Materials are to be provided, but much Rubbish must first be removed, even from the Ruins of this History. "Dr. *Heylin*, indeed, acquaints us, that he had (as he expresses it) clear'd up and perfected the Catalogue of the *Knights* of this Order. The Pains he took to settle the Persons of some of them, are so commendable, that 'tis to be lamented he did not proceed in farther Enquiries of the same Nature. Mr. *Asmole*, making due Use of this, and several other Assistances, hath presented us with the best <sup>b</sup> Nomenclator of them hitherto extant, with Numbers prefix'd to their Names, which are quoted in that Series throughout this Essay: However, 'tis certain, some *Knights* of the *Garter* are not only omitted out of it, but others inserted who could not be of this Order; (which is not said with an intent to detract, in any Degree, from the Deserts and Merit of that most worthy *Herald*, whose *History of the Ceremonial and legal Parts of this Order*, will be a lasting Monument of his Industry, and can never be sufficiently praised, in reference to those two Points to which he chiefly confined himself; but after this Harvest in them, there remain Gleanings enough

<sup>a</sup> *History of St. George, in the Dedication.*

1 <sup>b</sup> *History of the Garter*, p. 708.



in the *Antiquarian Part*, to fill some Volumes :) And it will be no Abatement from the real Value of his Labours, or any Ingratitude to his Memory, to shew, that there are Defects of other Natures in his Catalogue, which are not only by placing the Elections of some *Knights* under the Reign of one King, when, 'tis evident, they must have been elected under another; but the very Persons of some *Knights* are mistaken therein; and that no Method of Seniority of Elections is observed, 'till the Reign of *Hen. V.* where the *Black-book* or Register of the Order begins, and that there are Deficiencies in it even after that Time in this Point.

'Tis possible these Assertions may be thought very bold, and therefore Indulgence is craved for producing some few Instances in each Kind, for it would be a *forestalling* of the History, to crowd in all the Errors into this *Introduction*.

One may observe Faults in the Books of learned Men, and yet retain a profound Admiration of their Persons and Labours; and the Collector hopes, that he hath behav'd himself with good Manners, and a Decency and Respect to such Authors from whom he differs in Opinion: His Intention being to propose Arguments, and to produce his Vouchers for his Dissent, in so tender a Manner, as he should rejoice to receive the Retaliation of the same Treatment in his Life-time, in the Rectifying such Errors as by Chance and Inadvertency he may have committed.

As the Proofs of these different Kinds of Defects and Mistakes in the *Catalogues* are produced, an Opportunity will be industriously taken to shew the Nature, and the Time of the Compilment of the Registers which now remain, and the Authority of them; as likewise to intimate what Books and Instruments are now missing, and to point out what Materials may in all probability be found in several publick Offices; which Informations will be some Ease, and contribute to shorten the Labours of any Person who shall hereafter write on this Subject.

The most Royal Founder, for the Advancement of the Honour of this Society, took effectual Care to exempt it from the Rules of the *Common Law*, and of all other Jurisdictions; and to guard and secure this Independency, instituted a Seal peculiar for the Service of the Order, under which all the Proceedings relating to it were to be transacted, and to receive their Sanction; a Policy very conducive to its Grandeur: But from thence it hath happened, that few Entries about the *Garter* are to be met with in the Records pass'd under the Great Seal of the Kingdom, which are by Way of historical Recitals only, and by Chance, interwoven with State-Affairs. Under this Seal of the Order the first <sup>a</sup> Statutes receiv'd their Authority, which were deposited in the Treasury at *Windsor*, and under it we find Summons issued to the *Knights Companions* within few Years after the Institution of the Order, refer'd to incidently in a <sup>b</sup> Record, which latter Word is throughout this Discourse given to Instruments kept in publick Offices, whose Authority is unquestionable.

<sup>a</sup> Statut. Art. 26, 27.

<sup>b</sup> Exit Pell. Mich. 46 E. 3. Diversis Nunciis & Curforibus missis ad diversas partes Angliæ cum

literis de magno sigillo & literis de privato sigillo, & literis de sigillo del *Garter*, Cv. Sol.



The Dispatches which thus pass'd under this Seal of the Order in former Reigns, were, without all doubt, preserved in some safe Place with the utmost Care, but are now irreparably lost by the Length or Iniquity of Time: And our victorious *Henry V.*, the great Restorer of the Honour of this Order, having erected the Office of *Gar*ter King of Arms for the weighty Purposes recited in the <sup>a</sup> Instrument upon that Institution, it is very reasonable to believe, that the Persons who, with the greatest Abilities, worthily filled that Employment for some Successions, did, according to their Duties, keep regular Annals and Memorials of all the Transactions. And indeed it appears that this Officer, as low as in the <sup>b</sup> Reign of *Henry VIII.*, *reposit*ed the Narrative of the Acts (as the Expression is) among his Records in his Tower at Windsor; which very Place hath been lately uncovered of its Lead, and lies at this Time in Ruins. And in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth* there were Books, as they are called, *Hereditary* to that Office; but no Collections of this Nature came down to the Loyal <sup>d</sup> Sir *Edward Walker* *Gar*ter; so that all these are perished, or remain undiscovered in private Closets; and in truth, the Editor hath perused the Proceedings in the several Chapters while Sir *Gilbert Dethick* executed this Employment, which are handsomely wrote on Vellom, now in the Library of a very worthy and learned <sup>e</sup> Gentleman.

Another Misfortune hath happened, in that the Crown did not formerly give the Appellation of *Knights of the Gar*ter in Grants or Commissions which passed under the Great Seal of this Kingdom, which being liable to be construed by the Rules of the Common Law, it might have been thought that this Omission might be of purpose, from too nice a Jealousy of preserving the Independency and Exemption of this Order entire, if the Knights themselves had not also pretermitted the Usage of this Style in their private as well as publick Instruments; which seems very surprising, considering the high Value they placed in this most distinguished Honour.

But the greatest Unhappiness is, the irrecoverable Loss of all the antient Registers prior to the fourth Year of *Henry V.* and by these several Accidents it happens, that we have no Guides remaining to direct us in the Certainty of the Persons of the antient Knights, save the *Plates* left in the Stalls at *Windsor*, with the Copies of the *Windsor-Tables* (of both which a full Account will be soon given) together with some scattered Notices in Records, and the annual Accounts of the *Wardrobe* (for the Habit of this Order was heretofore delivered to the Companions to be worn by them at the yearly Celebration of the *Feast*) whereof the Collector hath found a small Number; but these Records, few as they are, furnish us with the Names of several Knights of this Order, omitted out of this Catalogue, and these as well *Foreigners* as *Englishmen*.

<sup>a</sup> *Alhm. Append. n. v.*

<sup>b</sup> Letter in the Keeping of the Chamberlains of the Exchequer.

<sup>c</sup> I. 25. p. 2. in the College of Arms.

<sup>d</sup> His historical Account of Installations, &c. M. S. in Custody of *Gar*ter.

<sup>e</sup> John Michel of Richmond, Esq;



1. Which was the first Assertion, And as to Strangers, a Record under the Great Seal in 6 Hen. V, positively <sup>a</sup> assures us, that *Albert of Bavaria*, Count of *Haynalt*, *Holland*, and *Zeland*, was, in his Time, Companion of this most Noble Order; (who died <sup>b</sup> on 25 January, 1404) and yet his Name is not found in any one Catalogue. It hath not hitherto appeared to this Editor at what Time this *Albert* was elected into this Order; but if it was prior to the Year 1382, it is not improbable that he thence took the Hint of instituting the Order of *our Lady* and *St. Anthony*; for in the Sequel of this Discourse it will be shewn, that several Companions of the *Garter* took that Method, and that our most Noble Order was the Plan, Pattern, and Model of sundry foreign Military Societies, and that their Statutes, were in the most substantial Parts, copied from those of the *Garter*: With such consummate Wisdom did the most Royal Founder settle the Oeconomy of this most Noble Institution.

There is the like Negligence in the Case of *Gilles de Bretagne*, if the several <sup>c</sup> Historians here quoted are of any Authority.

The *Capitain de Buch* who receiv'd the Habit of this Order in the <sup>d</sup> 37th of *Edward III*, is here placed among the Foreigners, by reason only of his Birth and Residence in *Gascoign*, and not upon account of his Allegiance: This Honour and Office was then in the Noble <sup>e</sup> Sir *John de Grailly* who was of <sup>f</sup> Royal Lineage, and the most renowned Commander in that Time, whose unalterable Loyalty to the Crown of *England*, for which, after a close Confinement during five Years, he chose to die a Prisoner in *Paris* A. D. 1377, rather than to deviate from it, will be celebrated in the History of his Life, and yet his Name hath not occurred in any Catalogue.

In the third Stall on the Sovereign's Side, there is indeed a Plate inscribed, *le Capitoir de la Bouch Monsieur Piers*: And since <sup>g</sup> our Records attribute to the *Captains de Buch*, the ample Testimony that they had immemo-

<sup>a</sup> Rot. Fran. 6 Hen. VI. m. 3. Le feu de bone memoire le Comte Albert & Duc Guillaume de Bayvier successivement en leur temps Countees de Haynau, Holland, & Zeland, sont devenus Compaynons de nostre College de Chivalrie del Ordre de Gartier, en Signe d'Amiste & Amour perpetuel, &c. Thus in 1435, after the Peace made at Arras between the Duke of Burgundy and the King of France, Henry the Fifth, on the 14th of December, in his 14th Year, writing to the good Towns of Hollande, Zelande, and Frize, recites the ancient Alliances and Confederacies of our Kings with the Princes of Zelande, who had continued in that streight Friendship, as to accept and wear the Honourable Order of the Garter, &c. Monstrelet vol. 2. p. 124 b. 125.

<sup>b</sup> Scriptores Genealog.

<sup>c</sup> Joan Chartier, Hist. de Charles VII. p. 212.

Monstrelet, Vol. 3. p. 31.

Bertr. d'Argentre Hist. de Bretagne, l. 12. c. 3.

<sup>d</sup> Ex rot. Compoti Henrici de Snaith Custodis M. Garder. R. Anno 37 E. 3.

Dominis Ducibus *Lancastriae*, &

*Clarentie*,

Comitibus *Canteburg*,

*Stafford*,

*Sar.* &

*Suff.*

Dominis le Dispenser,

Bartholomeo Burgesb,  
Domino de Mohun,  
Waltero Marny,  
Waltero Paveley,  
Hugoni Wrottesle,  
Thoma Ughtred,  
Franconi Vanbale,  
Capitan de Beoche, &  
Nigello Loryng,

Militibus de Societate Garterij ad robas sibi contra festum S. Georgij de dono Dom. R. faciendas & furrandas & capucias earum liniandas, viz. cuilibet eorum v. uln. pann. sanguin. in grano & i furruram de C. C. ventr. minev. pur. per literam privati sigilli. From an Extract of this Roll in Mus. Ashmol. Oxon.

<sup>e</sup> Exit. Pell. Mich. 36 E. 3. Johanni de Greyllie Capitan de la Buche & aliis in pretio xxiii floren. de Scuto veteris pretii xlv. gr. in persolutionem xxv. M. floren. de Scuto veteri, in quibus Dom. Princeps eidem tenebatur pro Jacobo de Burbon Com. Pontyf. nuper prisonar. eorundem apud Bel-lum de Poyters capto iv l. ix s. vii d.

<sup>f</sup> Rymer, vol. 5. p. 467, & E. 3. calls him his Kinsman, Vasc. 46 E. 3. m. 3. which Appellation was not given in that Age to Persons who had not actual Kindred to the Sovereign.

<sup>g</sup> Rymer, vol. 8. p. 223.



rially shewn an inviolable Adherence to the Interests of our Kings, and since several of them have, with an interrupted Sort of an Entail, been elected Companions of this most noble Order, as this Sir *John de Grailly*, *Gaston de Foix* Earl of *Longueville*, *John* his Son Earl of *Kendall*, and *Bernard de Foix* Duke of *Espernon*, it will be the more pardonable to explain the Nature of this Honour, and to insert a Scheme of the Descent of this *Capitalat*, whereby the Contexture of this Discourse will not only be more intelligible, but the same will tend greatly to the Discovery whether this *Peter* was really one of the *Founders* of this Order.

*Buch* then is a small Promontory lying along the Coast from *Baionne* to *Medoc*, from the Nature of its Situation call'd *Cap de Buch*, whence some have supposed the Lord or Proprietor thereof was stiled *Captan* or *Capital*, or more probably from the Office or Right of being *Captain* of the Castle there; for the same Title of *Capital* was in our and foreign Records given also to the <sup>b</sup> Lord of the Castle of *Trene*. This Title of *Capital de Buch* continu'd to our Age in a direct lineal Descent, and not long since was advanced into a Principality, the Rights whereof being thought to interfere with the Prerogative, the last King of *France* was pleased to purchase them, and to cause the antient Muniments to be deposited in his <sup>i</sup> Royal Archives, from whence it may be possible to obtain certain Informations for settling any Doubts touching the Descent of this Honour, wherein our own Records and the Historians are silent; from these latter however, the following Scheme of the Descent of this *Capitalat* is taken, for there is no occasion to insert the upper Part of the Pedigree of this most illustrious Family of *de Grailly*, which derives its Original from a <sup>k</sup> Castle of that Name in the Balliage of *Gex*.

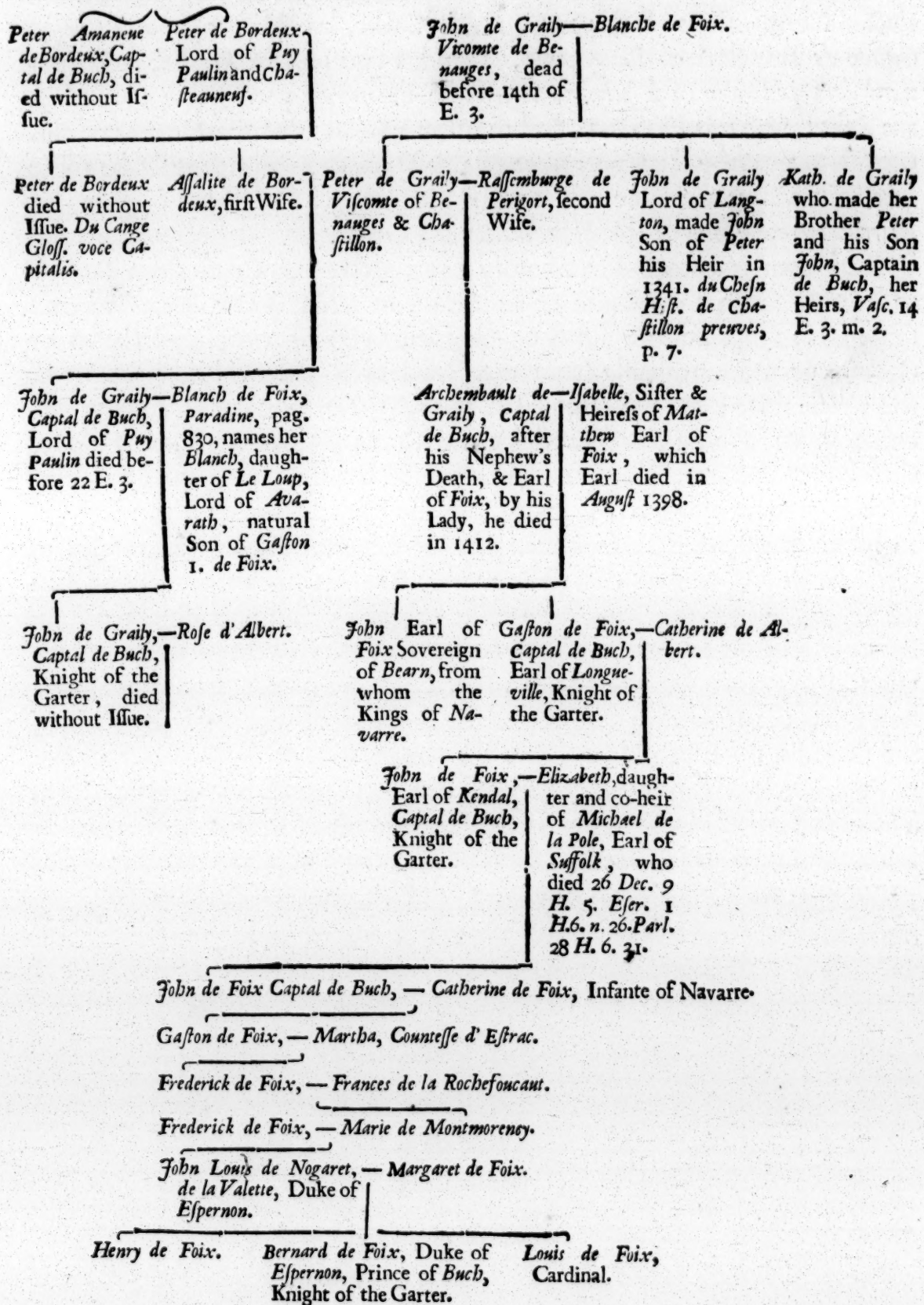
---

<sup>b</sup> Vascon. 23 E. 1. m. 20. Du Fresne Glossar. voce Capitalis. Peter de Marca Hist. de Bearn, l. 6. c. 24. n. 9.

<sup>i</sup> Ex informatione Domini Clairembault.  
<sup>k</sup> Guichenon Bibliotheca Sebustiana, p. 66. & Hist. de Savoye, p. 1287.



## Part of the PEDIGREE of the Family of DE GRAILY.



This *Capitalage* then descended to this Illustrious Family of *Grailly* by the Marriage of *Peter* with the Heiress of *Burdeaux*; but the Question here to be examin'd is, Whether the same was ever invested in this *Peter* by that Marriage, and if he had that Title according to this Inscription on the Plate, the Exemplar of the Founder's Statutes in the *Hatton* Library, and the Concurrence of the *French* Genealogists, who place him as

<sup>1</sup> Ashmole's Append.

<sup>1</sup> Anselme Hist. des Maresch. p. 615. &c.



Knight of the *Garter*? Or if this *Capitalage* descended directly to *John de Graily* his Son, as Heir to the Family of *Bordeux*, and this doubt would be clear'd up, if we can learn that *Affalide* died while this Title was in her Brothers or Nephew.

A late French <sup>b</sup> Author commits two Blunders in one Line, by saying, that *Peter de Foix* was of this Order in 1375, which was long after the Death of our *Peter*, and before the Family of *Graily* had assum'd the Surname of *Foix*.

Mr. *Ashmole* <sup>i</sup> presents us with the Reasons of his questioning the Reality of *Peter's* Admission into this Fraternity. His first is, That he could not trace him below the 22d of *Edward III*; which tho' of Weight with him upon his Hypothesis, that this Order did not commence 'till the 23d Year, will, however, be of no Force, if *Froissart's* Narrative be credited, that this Order was erected in the 18th Year: So that consistently with this Period, *Peter* might have been one of the *Founders* in that Year, and his Stall becoming void by his Death, might be fill'd by *John* his Son, if there lay no other Objection; but Mr. *Ashmole* proceeds to a very considerable Argument against the Validity of the Inscription on this Plate, which ascribes the Title of *Capital de Buch* to this *Peter* at the Erection of the Order; for, according to his Observation, that Stile of *Capital* had been in *John* his Son from the fifth Year of *Edward* the Third: To which he might have added, that this <sup>k</sup> *Peter* and his Son *John* are frequently nam'd in the same Records, wherein that Title is always attributed to the Son, and not to the Father.

The French <sup>l</sup> Genealogists, indeed, name this *Affalide de Bordeaux* to have been *Capitale de Buch*; but 'tis somewhat remarkable, that she uses not that Title in her <sup>m</sup> Will made in 1327, soon after which she must die, because this *Peter* was in the following Year re-married to his second Lady; and, which is more observable, *John*, Son of this *Peter* by *Affalide*, succeeded in 5 *Edward III*, directly as <sup>n</sup> Heir to his Uncles *Amaneve* and *Peter de Bordeaux*: So that it seems this *Affalide* died before one, if not both these her Brethren; and therefore this Plate, notwithstanding its appearance of an Antiquity equal with the others, may be supposed to have been affixed in this Stall some Ages after the Foundation; but the Time when these Plates were here placed, will be enquired into in a Section upon that Subject.

<sup>o</sup> *Froissart* acquaints us, That in the eighteenth Year of *Edward III*, which he assigns for the Erection of the *Garter*, the *Sire de Graily* was then in *Gascoign*, whereby he doubtless designed this *Peter*, who being then beyond Sea, it was out of his Power to seal the Statutes of this Order at *Windsor*, which was done, as this Author tells us, by the <sup>p</sup> first *Knights* upon the Foundation of this Order.

The French Authors again are mistaken in the Person of *John de Graily*, the valiant General of that Age, who was Companion of this Order in

<sup>b</sup> Louvet Hist. de Guienne, p. 93.

<sup>i</sup> History, p. 687.

<sup>k</sup> Vasc. 17 E. 3. Rymer, vol. 4. p. 389. Will of Katherine de Greilly in *Ashmole's Hist.* p. 687.

<sup>l</sup> Guichenon Hist. de *Savoie*, & *Anselme* ut supra.

<sup>m</sup> Ex informatione Domini Clairambault.

<sup>n</sup> *Ashmole's Hist.* p. 687.

<sup>o</sup> Vol. I. c. 103.

<sup>p</sup> Ibid. c. 101.



37 *Edward* III; for he was not, as they say, the Son, but the Grandson of this *Peter*.

For *John* the *Capal*, Son of *Peter*, Heir to his Aunt *Catherine de Graily* in 14 *Edward* III, and to *John* Lord of *Langton* in 15 *Edward* III, must die before the 15th of *September* 22 *Edward* III, when a Payment was made to *Blanche de Foix Capitalisse de Buch*, the Widow of *John* the late *Capal*, and the Mother of *John de Graily*; hence we retrieve his Mother's Name, wherein the *French* Genealogists differ very much: And 'tis evident, this Knight of the *Garter* must be the Grandson of *Peter*, because we find that *Edward* III, in his thirty second Year, confirms to him, by the Title of *Capal de Buch*, the Lands that *Peter* his Grandfather (not his Father) held, which is unanswerably supported by the Will of this *John* the *Capal* (the celebrated Commander) whereby he instituted *Archembauld* his Uncle (not his Brother) to be his universal Heir, and the " Letters Patents of the Crown thereon, wherein he is expressly stiled the Uncle that is in the Half-blood.

The greatest Oracle in Antiquities and Pedigrees, the most learned *Monsieur Clairambault*, who fills and adorns the Place of *Genealogist* of the Orders of *France*, out of a communicative Sweetness of Temper, not confin'd to the Bounds of a very large and learned Kingdom, hath condescended to oblige and instruct this Editor with Extracts taken out of his inestimable Collections, which, among other Particulars, prove, that *Peter* the Father of *John* the *Capal*, and the Grandfather of our Knight, in his advanced Age, made his Will in 1356, (about 30 E. III.) whence it is evident he liv'd long after the Institution of this Order, though *Mr. Asmole* could find no Voucher thereof.

Then again, that the Names of several *Englishmen* are likewise omitted out of these Catalogues, will be evident from the Records inserted in the Margin and at length, because there will be frequent occasions hereafter to refer to them as Vouchers in several other Particulars.

In the 7th Year of *Richard* II, the " Earl of *Northumberland* (*Henry Percy*) and *Thomas Percy* receiv'd Robes of this Order, whose Names are not

\* Rot. Pip. 36 E. 3. Computus Joh. de Stretle Constabularii Burdegall. ab 15 Sept. 22 E. usq; festum St. Mich. Anno 23. Blanchæ de Fuxo Capitalisse de Bochio in persolutionem 3808 l. debuit Johanni Greyliño nuper Capitali de Bochio viro suo — Eidem Blanchæ & Johanni de Greyliño filio suo in partem solutionis 1300 scutorum auri, &c. She is mentioned in Vasc. 28 E. 3. Rymer, vol. 5. p. 785.

† Rymer, vol. 9. p. 16, &c.

\* Vasc. 7 R. 2. m. 10. And Froissart vol. 1. p. 396. files Archembaud de Graylly, Uncle to Monsieur le Capal de Buch.

" Vide Rymer, vol. 9. p. 25.

Rot. Comp. Alani de Stokis Custodis magn. Garderob. 7 R. 2.

M. 15. Ad facturam & broudat. MMDCCCC Garteriorum de Taffata plunket liniat. cum carda blu operat. in broudar. cum auro de cipro auro soldat. & serico diversi coloris, & cum literis de serico blu cum dictamine *Hony soit, qi mal y pense*, ordinatorum pro xxiv robis de panno violetto in grano

pro Dom. Rege, Dom. Duce *Lancastria*, & comitibus Baronibus & Militibus de Societate *Garterii*, ac etiam pro xi robis de eodem panno pro Dom. Regina & pro matre Regis & pro aliis Dominabus de eadem societate contra festum S. Georgii anno septimo.

M. 9. Domino Regi *Johanni* Castellæ & Legionis Duci *Lancastria*, & aliis Comitibus, Baronibus & Militibus de Societate *Garterii* de dono Dom. R. contra festum S. Georgii anno septimo ad robas de panno violet in grano, qualibet roba de ij garniamentis faciend. & furrurand. cum Minev. pur. ac ad capuc. earundem robar. liniand. cum pan. scarletto, qualibet roba broudata cum *Garterii* operatis in broudario de Taffata plunket cum auro de Cipro auro soldato & serico cum literis de Dictamine *Hony soit qi mal y pense*, scil.

Eidem R. Castell. v. uln. pan. viol. in grano, 1 uln. dim. scarl. & 1 furrur. de CC ventr. menev. pur.

Et Dominis Comitibus *Cantebrieg.*  
Com. *Buckingham,*  
Com. *Derb.*

Com.



not contained in Mr. *Ashmole's* Catalogue, though in the Body of his <sup>b</sup> History he hath abstracted this Instrument; and these same Persons, together with *Henry Percy*, receiv'd the like Habit in the <sup>c</sup> 11th, <sup>d</sup> 12th,

Com. *Kanc.*  
Com. *Warr.*  
Com. *Staff.*  
Com. *Sar.*  
Com. *Northumb.*  
Com. *Nottingham.*  
Domino *de Nevill,*  
Domino *de Basset, &*  
*Johanni de Holland.*

cuilibet eorum v. uln. ejusdem pann. in grano. dim. uln. pann. scarletti & i furrur. de CC ventr. Miniv. pur.

Et Dominis *Guidoni de Bryan,*  
*Willimo Beauchamp,*  
*Thoma Percy,*  
*Nigello Loring,*  
*Johanni Sully,*  
*Lodovico Clifford,*  
*Simoni de Burle,*  
*Briano de Stapulton, &*  
*Soldano de la Trane, Milit'*

& cuilibet eorum v. uln. dicti pann. in gra. dim. uln. pan. scarl. & i furrur. de Cxx. miniv. gr.

Ac etiam diversis *Dominabus* subscriptis ad confimiles robas de eodem pan. in gra. faciend. & furr. cum Miniv. pur. & ad capucias liniand. cum confimili scarlet, & ad broudrand. dictas rob. cum *Garteriis* de confimili dono R. contra eundem festum.

Scil. Dom. *Regine* iv uln. ejusdem pann. dim. uln. pan. scarl. & ij furr. uterq. de CCC. ventr. Min. pur.

Dom. *Matri R.* i pan. violet. in grano i uln. pan. scarl. & iv furr. qualibet de ccc. ventr. Min. pur.

Dom. *Ducisse Lancastria* dim. pan. viol. in grano, dim. uln. pan. scarl. & ij furr. uterq. de ccc. ventr. Min. pur.

Dom. *Comitissa Canteburg.* iii uln. dicti pan. in grano, dim. uln. scarl. uterq. de ccc ventr. min. pur.

Et Dominabus *Comitissa Buckingham,*  
Com. *Pembr.*  
Com. *Oxon, &*  
*Sar. &*  
*Phillippe, &*  
*Catherina, filia*  
Dom. *Ducis Lancastria, &*  
Dom. *Mohun.*

cuilibet earum v. uln. ejusdem pan. in gr. dim. uln. pan. scarl. & i furrur. de cc ventr. Men. pur.

Ac venerabili patri *Willimo Episcopo Wynton* de confimili dono R. contra idem festum *S. Georgii*, i pan. viol. in gr. i mantellum de vi c ventr. & i capuc. de cxi ventr. Min. pur. i furrur. de cccc ventr. i furrur. de cccx ventr. Min. gr. unam furr. de biis de cxi best. per eandem literam de privato sigillo. *From an Extract of this Rolle in Mus. Ashmol. Oxon.*

<sup>b</sup> *Hist. p. 213.*

<sup>c</sup> *E Libro Cotom in Offic. Magnæ Garderobæ, p. 167.*

Dominis *Duci Ebor.* *Duci Glouc.* & divers. Com. Baron. & Militibus de Societate *Garteriorum* ad rob. de pann. blank. long. quælibet roba de ii garn. fac. & furr. ac ad capuc. earundem rob. lin. cum panno blu. long de dono Dom. R. contra festum *S. Georgii* anno xi, qualibet roba broudat. cum *Garteriis* operat. in broudat. de Taffeta blu auro de cipr. soldat. &

cum literis de serico de dictamine, *Hony soit qi mal y pense*, viz. prefato,

*Duci Eborum,*  
*Duci Gloucest.*  
Com. *Derb.*  
Com. *Kanc.*  
Com. *Arundel,*  
Com. *Warr.*  
Com. *Sar.*  
Com. *Northumb.*  
Com. *Marescall.*

*Johanni Holond,*  
Domino *de Nevill,*  
Domino *de Basset, &*  
*Edvardo filio Ducis Eborum.*

cuilibet eorum v. uln. pann. blanket long. dim. uln. pann. blu long & i furrur. de cc ventr. Min. pur. &

Dominis *Guidon. Bryen,*  
*Willimo Beauchamp,*  
*Thoma Percy,*  
*Henrico Percy,*  
*Lodovico Clifford,*  
*Johanni Sully,*  
*Brian de Stapulton, &*  
*Nicholas Sarnesfield, Militibus.*

Cuilibet eorum v. uln. dicti pann. blanket, dim. uln. dicti panni blu & i furrur. de cxx ventr. min. gr.

Ac etiam diversis *Dominab.* subscr. ad conf. rob. de conf. pan. blank. fac. & fur. cum Min. pur. & capuc. lin. cum conf. pann. blu & qualibet roba broudat. cum *Garteriis* de secta dictorum *Dominorum* de conf. dono R. contra idem festum *S. Georgii*, viz.

Dom. *Regina* viii uln. pann. blanket long. dim. uln. pann. blu long. & ii furrur. utraq. de ccc ventr. Min. pur.

*Ducisse Eborum* vii uln. ejusdem panni blank. dim. uln. dicti panni blu & ii furrur. utraq. de ccc ventr. Min. pur.

*Ducisse Glouc.*  
Comitissa *Kanc.*  
Com. *Derb.*  
Com. *Oxon.*  
Com. *Sarum.*  
Com. *Maresc.*  
*Constancia domina de Despenfer.*

*Dominæ de Mahoun,*  
Dom. *de Veer,*  
Dom. *de Pomynges, &*  
Dom. *de Gummis.*

Cuilibet earum v. uln. dicti pann. blank. dim. uln. dicti pann. blu & i furrur. de cc ventr. Min. pur.

Ac venerabili patri *W. Episcopo Wynton* de confim. dono ipsius Dom. R. contra idem festum i pann. blanket long. i mantel de dc ventr. i capuc. de cxi ventr. Min. pur. i furrur. de cccx ventr. Min. gross. & i furrur. de cxi best.

*Then in p. 168, is this Entry.* Dom. *Katerina Swynford* ad i robam de liberat. confratrum *S. Georgii* de pann. blanket long fac. & fur. cum Min. pur. & ad capuc. lin. cum pann. blu long de secta aliarum *Dominarum* de eadem societate contra festum *S. Georgii* anno xmo. per literam de privato sigillo eidem custodi direct. dat. 8 die *Aug.* anno xii. *It is thus dated in the Book.*

<sup>d</sup> *E Libro*



<sup>d</sup> 12th, and <sup>e</sup> 13th of *Richard II.* and again in the 22d of the same King, before which Time this *Thomas* had been advanced to the Earldom of *Worcester*; and in this latter Year also the then Earls of *Gloucester* and *Salisbury*

<sup>d</sup> E Libro *Cotom* in Offic. magn. Garder. p. 173.

Dominis Duci *Lancastriae*, Duci *Eborum*, Duci *Glouc.* & diversis Comit. Baron. & Milit. de societate *Garteriorum* ad rob. de pann. blu long. qualibet roba de ii garn. fac. & furrur. ad capuc. earundem rob. lin. cum pann. nigr. long. de dono Dom. R. contra festum *S. Georgii* anno xii qualibet roba broudat. cum *Garteriis* operat. in broudar. de Taffeta blu auro de Cipr. aur. foldat. & cum literis de ferico cum dictamine, *Hony soit qi mal y pense*, viz. prafato

Duci *Lancastriae*,  
Duci *Eborum*,  
Duci *Glouc.*  
Com. *Derb.*  
Com. *Kanc.*  
Com. *Arundel*,  
Com. *Warr.*  
Com. *Sarum*,  
Com. *Northumberl.*  
Com. *Marefc.*  
Com. *Huntington*,  
Dom. de *Basset*, &  
Edu. filio Ducis *Eborum*.

Cuilibet eorum v. ulnas pann. blu long. dim. uln. pann. nigr. long. & i furrur. de cc ventr. Min. pur. Et

Dominis *Guidoni de Brian*,  
*Willimo Beauchamp*,  
*Petro Courtenay*,  
*Johanni Devros*,  
*Henrico Percy*,  
*Thoma Percy*,  
*Lodowico Clifford*,  
*Brian de Stapulton*, &  
*Nicholao Sarnesfeld*, Militibus.

Cuilibet eorum v. uln. dicti panni, & dim. uln. dicti panni nigri & i furrur. de cxx ventr. Min. grano.

Ac etiam diversis *Dominabus* subscript. ad conf. robas de conf. pann. blu fac. & fur. cum Min. pur. & capuc. lin. cum conf. pann. nigr. & qualibet roba broudat. cum *Garteriis* de secta dictorum Dominor. de conf. dono R. contra idem festum *S. Georgii*, viz.

Dom. *Regine* viii uln. pann. blu long. dim. uln. pan. nigr. long & ii furrur. utraq; de ccc ventr. Min. pur.

Ducisse *Lancastriae* xiv uln. ejusdem pann. blu dim. uln. panni nigr. & ii furrur. utraq; de ccc ventr. Min. pur.

Ducisse *Eborum* vii uln. ejusdem panni blu dim. uln. ejusdem pann. nigr. & ii furrur. utraq; de ccc ventr. Min. pur.

Ducisse *Glouc.*  
Comitisse *Derb.*  
Com. *Kant.*  
Com. *Hunt.*  
Com. *Oxon.*  
Com. *Sarum*,  
Com. *Marefc.*,  
*Constancia* Dominæ de *Spenc.*  
Dom. de *Maboun*,  
Dom. de *Veer*,  
Dom. de *Ponynges*,  
Dom. de *Gunnays*, &  
*Katherina Swynford*.

Cuilibet eorum v. uln. dicti pann. blu. dim. uln. dicti pann. nigri & i furrur. de cc ventr. Min. pur.

Ac venerabili patri nostro *Willimo* Episcopo *Winton* de conf. dono ipsius Dom. R. contra idem festum i pann. blu long. i Mantel de cccccc ventr. i capuc. de cxi ventr. Min. pur. i furrur. de cccc ventr. i furrur. de cccx ventr. Min. gros. & i furr. de biss. de cxi. best. per eandem literam de privato sigillo.

<sup>e</sup> E Libro *Cotom* in Offic. Magnæ Garderobæ, p. 183. b.

Dominis Duci *Acquitan.* & *Lancastriae*. Duci *Ebor.* Duci *Glouc.* ac diversis Com. Baron. & Milit. de Societate *Garteriorum* ad rob. de pann. sanguin. long. in gr. de dono Dom. Regis contra festum *S. Georgii* anno xiii qualibet roba broudat. cum *Garteriis* de Taffata blu operat. in broudar. cum aur. de Cipr. aur. foldat. & cum literis de ferico plunkett de dictamine, *Honi soit qi mal y pense*, præd. Dominis

Duci *Acquitan.*  
Duci *Ebor.*  
Duci *Glouc.*  
Com. *Derb.*  
Com. *Kanc.*  
Com. *Huntington*,  
Com. *Arundel*,  
Com. *Warr.*  
Com. *Sarum*,  
Com. *Northumb.*  
Com. *Marefc.*  
Com. *Rotel.* &  
Dom. de *Basset*.

Cuilibet eorum v. ulnas pann. sanguin. in grano dim. uln. pan. nigr. long. & i furrur. de cc ventr. Menevoir pur &

Dom. *Guidoni Brian*,  
*Will. Beauchamp*,  
*Petro Courteney*,  
*John Devereux*,  
*Tho. Percy*,  
*Henr. Percy*,  
*Nich. Sarnesfeld*,  
*Lodowick Clifford*, &  
*Brian Stapulton*, Mil

Cuilibet eor. v. uln. præd. pann. sanguin. dicti uln. dicti pann. nigr. & i fur. de cxx ventr. Min. pur.

Ac etiam diversis *Dominabus* subscript. ad conf. robas fac. & furrur. ac broudand. de secta *Dominorum* & Milit. præd. viz.

Dom. *Regine* viii uln. dim. pann. sanguin. dim. uln. dicti pann. nigr. & duas fur. utraq; de ccc ventr. Min. pur.

Ducisse *Acquitan.* xiv uln. ejusd. pann. sanguin. dim. uln. pan. nigr. & ii furr. utraq; de ccc ventr. Min. pur.

Ducisse *Ebor.* vii uln. ejusd. pann. sanguin. dim. uln. pann. nigr. & ii fur. utraq; de ccc ventr. Min. pur.

Ducisse *Glouc.*  
Comitisse *Derb.*  
Com. *Kanc.*  
Com. *Hunt.*  
Com. *Oxon.*  
Com. *Sarum*,  
Com. *Marefc.*

*Constancia*.



Salisbury (that is Thomas Spenser and John Montacute) had the like<sup>f</sup> Livery; yet all these Persons are omitted out of the Catalogue; as is also the Lord Scrope,

Constanc. domi de Spenc,  
Dom. de Maboun,  
Dom. de Veer,  
Dom. de Poynges,  
Dom. de Gommeis,  
Dom. de Tryvet,  
Dom. de Beauchamp,  
Dom. Fitzwauier; &  
Katerina Swinford.

Cuilibet earum v. uln. pann. sanguini dim. uln. pann. nigr. & i furrur. de cc ventr. min. pur.

Ac venerabili patri W. Wynton Episcopo ad. i rob. de conf. dono Ri. contra idem festum S. Georgii i pann. sanguin. in grano, i mantell de DC ventr. i capuc. de cxi. ventr. Min. pur. i fur. de iv. C. ventr. i fur. de cclx ventr. Min. gros. & i fur. de Biss. de cxi best. per eandem literam de privato sigillo.

f Computus Joan. Macclesfield custodis magn. Garderob. a festo S. Mich. anno 22 Rich. II. ad festum S. Mich. prox. penes Remem. Regis in Scaccario.

Super broudatur. & talliatur. MDCIX Gart. de Satyn tartrin. taffat. blu ordinat. pro liberat. fraternitatis Garterii erga festum S. Georgii hoc anno.

Pro factur. & broudat. DCCCXVI Gart. operat. in brouder. ad modum Flourdelys de tarterin blu auro de Cipre auro solido & serico divers. color. cum literis de dictamine, *Honi soit qi mal y pense*, ad perfurmand. liberat. Gart. erga festum S. Georgii hoc anno.

Ad unam gown. long. cum manicis larg. & i capuc. de panno scarlet operat. in brouder. cum Gart. de satyn blu seric. & auro de Cipre cum dictamine, *Hony soit qi mal y pense*, dict. gown. furr. cum min. purr. & purfill. cum Erm. capuc. linat. cum pann. nigr. long. fac. pro dicto Dom. Rege contra festum S. Georgii infra tempus computi.

vi uln. dim. pann. scarlet.  
dim. uln. pann. nigr. long.  
mccccxvi ventr. Min. pur.  
xi best. Ermyne.

Ad factur. iv. M. DCIX Gart. de satyn tartrin & taffat. blu linat. cum Bocram & Card. blu broudat. cum auro de Cipre auro soldat. & serico divers. color. cum literis de serico plunket cum dictamine *Hony soit qi mal y pense*, ordinat. & broudat. ad modum Flourdelys pro diversis robis de panno scarlet pro Dom. nostro Rege, Duce Eborum, Ducibus Geldr. Exon. Albemarle, & aliis Ducibus. Marchione de Dorset, Comite Dostrevant, Comitibus Northumbr. Wygorn, & aliis Comitibus & Baronibus de Societate Garter. Dom. Isabella Regina Anglie, Regina Portugalie, Ducissa Geldr. & aliis Ducissis Comitissis & ceteris Dominabus de festa & liberat. Gart. präd. erga festum S. Georgii hoc anno 22. pro factura DCCCXVII Gart. de tarterin blu linat. cum Carde blu operat. in brouder. cum auro de Cipre, auro plate & serico divers. color. cum literis de serico plunket de dictamine, *Hony soit qi mal y pense*, ordinat. & broudat. ad modum Flourdelys pro diversis robis de panno scarlet pro Dom. Rege, Duce Ebor. ac aliis Ducibus, Comit. & Baron. de Societate Garteri contra festum S. Georgii hoc anno 22. ordinat.

Duci Eborum, & aliis Ducibus, Marchion. Comit. & Baronibus subscript. ad robas suas de liberat. Societatis Garter de pann. scarlet. & broudat. cum dictamine, *Honi soit qi mal y pense*, contra festum S. Georgii hoc anno 22 fac. & furr. viz. dicto

Duci Eborum,  
Ducibus Bavar.  
Brian.  
Geldr.  
Surry,  
Exon, &  
Albemarl,  
Marchioni de Dorset,  
Comitibus Northumbr.  
Sarum,  
Ostrevant,  
Wygorn,  
Gloucester, &  
Wilts.

Præfatis Ducibus Bavar. Brian. Geldr. & Comiti D'Ostrevant, cuilibet pro roba sua v. uln. panni. scarlet. dim. uln. pann. nigr. long. & ii furrur. utriq; de ccc ventr. Men. pur. Et prædict. Duci Eborum & aliis Ducibus, Marchion. & Comit. cuilibet eorum v. uln. pann. scarlet dim. uln. pann. nigr. long. & i furr. de cc ventr. Men. pur. Ac etiam

Will. Beauchamp,  
Petro Courteney,  
Johanni le Rouch.  
Willmo d' Arondell  
Simoni Felbrigg, &  
Henrico Percy, Militibus.

Cuilibet eorum pro Roba sua conf. v. uln. panni. scarlet, dim. uln. pann. nigr. long. & i furr. de cxx ventr. Min. gros.

Dominæ Isabella Regina Angliæ  
Reginæ Portugalie, &  
Ducissæ Geldr.

Ad robas suas de conf. panni. scarlet. de liberat. Gart. præd. viz. prædictæ Dom. Isabella viii uln. pann. scarlet. dim. uln. pann. nigr. long. & ii furr. utraq; de ccc ventr. Men. pur. Et dictæ Regina Portugal. & Ducissæ Geldr. utraq; earum v. uln. pann. scarlet. dim. uln. pan. nigr. long. & ii furr. utraq; de ccc ventr. Men. pur.

iiii pan. vi. uln. pan. scarlet  
xi uln. dim. pan. nigr. long.  
vi MCC ventr. } Men. } pur.  
DCCXX ventr. } } gros.

Ducissæ Eborum,  
Ducissæ Hibernie,  
Ducissæ Exon,  
Marchissæ de Dorset,  
Comitissis Kanc.  
Oxon,  
Sarum,  
Glouc. &  
Westmorland, ac etiam  
Dominæ de Mohun,  
Dom. Poynges,  
Dominabus de Beauchamp,  
Fitzwauier,  
Gonneys,



Scrope, [Henry of Masbam] mentioned in the 3 Wardrobe-Roll 1 Hen. V, (who gave a <sup>b</sup> Legacy to the Church of Windsor,) and which is very memorable, when his Attainder was ratified in <sup>i</sup> Parliament, this explanatory Clause was inserted, " That his Punishment reflected no Dishonour " upon the other Companions of this Noble, Excellent, and Venerable " Military Order of the Garter, which was at first laudably erected for

Blanchæ Braddeston,  
Agneti Arundel, &  
Dominabus de Roos,  
Courcy, &  
Trivet.

Cuilibet earum ad conf. robas suas erga dictum festum fac. & furr. & ad capuc. similiter linat. de pann. nigr. long. v. uln. pann. scarlet. dim. uln. pann. nigr. long. & i furr. de cc ventr. Min. pur.

Et venerabili patri Willmo Wynton Episcopo ad unam robam suam de iiii garniamentis ad conf. pann. scarlet. erga dict. festum S. Georgii fac. & furr. viz. i pann. scarlet. i furr. de DC ventr. Men. pur. i furr. de cccc ventr. Men. gr. i furr. de cccx ventr. Men. pur. & i furr. de cxi best. de Byss.

iiii pann. xi uln. pan. scarlet  
ix uln. dim. pann. nigr. long.  
iiii M. DXL. ventr. } Men. } pur.  
DCCLX ventr. } } gros.  
i furr. de cxi. best. Byss.

N. B. The Name above John Rouch, is so wrote in the Original, having a Dash through the h at the End as a Contraction for er, and is doubtless misspelled for John Bourghier or Boucher, then Knight of the Garter.

2 Liberaturæ factæ diversis Dominis Dominabus Comitibus Comitissis, Ducibus, Ducissis, & aliis Militibus contra festum S. Georgii.

Duci Holand, Duci Clarenc. & aliis diversis Comitibus, Baronibus, & Militibus subscriptis, ad robas suas de panno blanket long. fact. de dono Domini Regis erga festum S. Georgii anno primo, quolibet rob. broudet. cum Garteris de tart' yn operat' in broud. in auro & serico de Cipre, & cum dictamine, *Hony soit q' mal y pense*, viz.

Duci Holland viii uln. panni blanket long. dim. uln. panni nigri long. ii furr. utraq; de ccc ventr. Men. pur. & cxx Garteris.

Duci Clarenc.  
Com. Arundel,

utrig; eorum viii uln. panni blanket long. dim. uln. panni nigri long. i furr. de cc ventr. Menev. pur. cxx Garters.

Dominis Johanni & Unfr'o fratribus Regis,  
Duci Eborum,  
Com. Westm'land,  
Com. Warr. &  
Dom. de Grey.

Cuilibet eorum vi uln. panni blanket long. dim. uln. panni nigri long. & Domino de Grey i furr. de cxx ventr. cuilibet al. v. dominorum i furr. de cc ventr. Meniv. pur. ac Dominis Johanni & Humfr'o utrig; eorum cxx Garter & cuilibet aliorum iiii Dominorum C. Garter.

Dom. de Fitzbugh, &  
Dom. de Roos,

utrig; eorum vi uln. panni blanket long. dim. uln.

panni nigri long. i furr. de cxx ventr. Meniv. pur. & C. Garter.

Dom. Dorset,  
Dom. de Burnell,  
Dom. de Charleton,  
Dom. de Morley,  
Dom. Scroop,  
Dom. Talbot,  
Rob. Umfravile,  
Johanni Dabridgecourt,  
Tho. Erpingham,  
Simoni de Felbrigge,  
Johanni Staneley, &  
Johanni Cornwaill,

Cuilibet eorum v uln. panni blanket long. dim. uln. panni nigri long. cxx ventr. Menev. pur. C. Garter.

Regine Angliæ viii uln. panni blanket long. viii uln. panni nigri long. ii furr. utraq; eorum ccc ventr. Minev. pur.

Ducissæ Claren.  
Comitissæ Hunt.  
Com. Westm'land,  
Com. Dorset,  
Com. Arundell,  
Com. Sarum, jun.  
Dominæ Beauchamp,  
Dom. de Roos,  
Dom. de Waterton,

Cuilibet earum v. uln. panni blanket long. dim. uln. panni nigri long. i furr. de cc ventr. Menev. pur. & C Garter.

Ducissæ Eborum, sen.  
Ducissæ Eborum, jun.  
Comitissæ Sarum, sen.

Cuilibet earum v. uln. panni blanket long. dim. uln. panni nigri long. & i furr. de cc ventr. Menev. pur.

Ac etiam venerabili patri Episcopo Winton ad rob. suam de conf. dono ipsius Dom. R. erga idem festum S. Georgii un. pann. blanket long. un. mantell. DC ventr. i capuc. cxi ventr. de Men. pur. i furr. de cccc ventr. furrur de cccx ventr. men. gros. & i furrur de cxi best. de Byss.

This was at the End of a Roll remaining in the Pelle-Office in 1632, Intituled, Liberat. Dom. Regis Henrici Quinti fact. diversis Dominis, Dominabus, Militibus, Clericis, Scutiferis, valetis & aliis diversis personis contra Coronationem suam Anno Regni sui primo. Whereof the Collector hath a Copy taken at that Time.

<sup>b</sup> Rymer vol. 9. p. 274. Lego Collegio de Windsor unum vestimentum nobile de alba veste de Cipre.

<sup>i</sup> Rot. Parl. 3 Hen. V. p. 1. n. 6. — Et quia prædictus Henricus Dominus Lescrop est unus militum de illo inclito & excellenti Ordine militari de la Gartour, qui pro fortificatione Fidei, Regis, Regni, & Recli primitus fuerat laudabiliter inductus: Ipse tamen Henricus, licet in eodem ordine pro delicto suo iuste habeatur reprobatus, non tamen ordinem illum venerabilem, huius, qui in eodem digne utuntur, pejorari, nec reprobari quisq; præsumat.

" the



" the Strengthening of the Faith, of the King, of the Kingdom, and of " Right or Justice." The Lord *Zouche* is also omitted out of the Catalogues, though he received the Robes of this Order in the 4th of *Hen. V.* according to Mr. *Rymer*, who might however mistake in placing the *Fourth* for the *Third* Year of that Reign; and it will not be esteemed too foreign a Digression to settle the Chronology of this Instrument.

That most worthy Antiquary gave this Collector a Copy of the entire Roll, transcribed from the Office of the Chamberlains of the *Exchequer*, from whence he printed this, and some other Extracts: The Title thereof imports an Account of the Wardrobe from 1 Oct. 3. *Hen. V.* to the same Day in the following Year; and the Entry of these Habits being inserted towards the End of this Roll, 'tis reasonable to believe Mr. *Rymer* was thereby induced, without any farther Examination, to place them under the 4th Year; whereas 'tis certain that this Lord *Zouche*

† *Rymer* vol. 9. p. 335. Liberationes erga festum Sancti Georgii Anno 4 *Hen. V.* [in quo (ni fallor) mendum irrepsit pro anno Tertio.]

Regi *Portugaliae*, Regi *Daciae*, Duci *Hollandiae*, Duci *Bavariae*, Duci *Clarentiae*, Duci *Beddesfordiae*, Duci *Gloucestriae* & aliis Comitibus, Baronibus, & Militibus de Fraternitate *Garteriorum*, erga festum Sancti Georgii ad robas scilicet de panno blu long. faciendas & furrandas de dono Domini nostri Regis, quolibet Roba operata in brouder. cum *Garteris* de tarterin taffat. auro de Cipre & auro soldato cum isto dictamine, *Hony soit qui mal y pense*, videlicet predictis,

Regibus *Portugaliae* & *Daciae*,  
Duci *Hollandiae*,  
Duci *Bavariae*,

cuilibet eorum viii ulnas panni coloris blu long. dimidium ulnae panni scarlet. ii furruras utraq; de cc ventribus *Menev. pur. cxx Garteria* de tarterin operata cum literis de auro de Cipre & serico de dictamine predicto. Et predictis

Duci *Clarentiae*,  
Ducisse *Beddesfordiae*,  
Duci *Gloucestriae*, ac  
Comiti *Westmorlandiae*,  
Comiti *Warrenicie*,  
Comiti *Dorsetiae*,  
Comiti *Sarum*,  
Comiti *Huntingdoniae*, &  
Comiti *Oxonie*,

cuilibet eorum v. ulnas panni coloris consimilis long. dimidium uln. panni scarlet. unam furruram de cc ventr. *Menev. pur. & cxx Garteria* consimil.

Et Domino de *Fitzburgh*,  
Domino de *Grey*,  
Domino de *Burnell*,  
Domino de *Carleton*,  
Domino *Morie*  
Domino de *Talbot*,  
Domino de *Zouche*,  
Domino de *Camoy*,  
Roberto *Umfravile*,  
Thoma *Erpyngham*,  
Simoni *Felbrig*,  
Johanni *Cornwalle*, &  
Wilhelmo *Haryngton*,

cuilibet eorum v. uln. panni coloris consimilis long. dimidium uln. panni. scarlet. i furr. de cxx ventr. *Menev. gross. & cxx Garter. consimil.*

Ac etiam diversis Dominabus subscriptis ad consimiles robas, scilicet, faciendas & furrandas in brouder. cum *Garter. de festa Dominorum & aliorum Militum de consimili dono Regis, videlicet*

Reginae *Angliae*,  
Reginae *Hispaniae*,  
Reginae *Portugaliae*,  
Reginae *Daciae*, &  
Ducisse *Hollandiae*,

cuilibet earum viii uln. panni coloris consimilis long. ii furr utraq; de iii c. ventr. *Menev. pur. cxx Garter. consimil.*

Ducisse *Clarentiae*,  
Ducisse *Eborum*, seniori,  
Ducisse *Eborum*, juniori,  
Comitisse *Huntingdoniae*,  
Comitisse *Sarum*, juniori,  
Comitisse *Westmorlandiae*,  
Comitisse *Arundelie*,  
Dominæ de *Beauchamp*,  
Dominæ de *Roos*, &  
Dominæ de *Waterion*,

cuilibet earum v. uln. panni coloris consimilis long. i furr. de cc ventr. *Menev. pur. & cxx Garter. consimil.*

Et venerabili in Christo Patri *Episcopo Wyntonensi*, de consimili dono Regis, erga idem festum i panni color. consimil. long. i Mantellam furratam de ivc, i furr. de cccx ventribus *Menev. gross. & i furratam de cxi bestiis de Bys. de dono Domini nostri Regis.*

ix panni. viii uln. panni color. long.  
xiii uln. panni. scarlet.  
xviii Qualibet de cc ventr. } furr. } Men. pur.  
xix Qualibet de cc ventr. }  
i de DC ventr. }  
i de cxi ventr. capuc. }  
i de cccc ventr. } furr. Men. gross.  
i de ccc ventr. }  
xiii qualibet de cxx ventr. }  
i de cxi bestiis furr. de Bys. }  
iv M. ix c. xx. de seric. & aur. *Garter. rotund.*

dyed



dyed<sup>l</sup> on the Third or Fourth of *November* in the third Year, and in all probability before he received an actual Installation, since his Name occurs not in the *Windsor-Tables*, which omit Persons in such Circumstances: For the bare preparing the Robes for this Lord, is no plain Proof of an Installation, as will soon appear in the Case of the King of *Denmark*.

It is evident these Habits must have been prepared after the *Fifth* of *August* in this Third Year, because otherwise the Name of the Lord *Scrope*, who was not <sup>m</sup> Attainted 'till that Day, would have been mentioned herein: And indeed this Account commencing from the First of *October*, we can come nearer the Time, when this Feast must have been held, since the Earl of *Arundel* is omitted, who <sup>n</sup> lived 'till the 13<sup>th</sup> of *October*, in this Third Year, and this Lord *Zouche* dy'd in the Beginning of *November* following; so that of course it must have been celebrated in that short Interval: The Relict of this Earl of <sup>o</sup> *Arundel* however received the Habits of this Order, to whom (by the Way) the Jewels and <sup>p</sup> valuable Moveables of her Husband were afterwards delivered, among which was "*Una toga de Garters furrata cum Meny-ver:*" And that it was his Widow that had then these Robes is evident, in that after his Death, this Earldome was in suspense and for some time controverted.

The Reader must be cautioned to guard against the Manner of Printing the Names of the Duke of *Holland* and the Duke of *Bavaria* in two separate Lines by Mr. *Rymer* (which is followed in the *Note k*) and not thereby to understand two different Persons, for these were the Titles or Appellations of the same Individual. Neither is it here any ways intended to be insinuated, that this Lord *Zouche* was elected into the Stall vacated by the Attainder of the Lord *Scrope*; for he was, without doubt, elected into the Prince's Stall. To explain this Matter, we are to observe there are Twenty Five Companions enumerated, who received these Habits in this Third Year, which with the Sovereign, must compleat the whole Number: Now there is another <sup>q</sup> List remaining of the Knights of this Order contemporary with the Emperor *Sigismund*, which will be soon ascertained to the fourth Year of *Hen. V.* wherein all the same Persons, named in this first List, are mentioned in this latter One, save only this Emperor supplies the Place of this Lord *Zouche*,

<sup>l</sup> Esc. 3 *H. 5.* n. 46.

<sup>m</sup> Esc. 16 *H. 6.* n. 59 *Ebor.*

<sup>n</sup> Esc. 4 *H. 5.* n. 54 *Norf.*

<sup>o</sup> Vide supra ad notam *K.*

<sup>p</sup> Claus. 4 *H. 5.* m. 23.

<sup>q</sup> MS in Coll. Trinit. Cantab. Class. R. 9. 14. folio penultimo. Ista sunt nomina Ordinis Sancti Georgii Anno quo Sigismundus Rex Romanorum fuit in Anglia tempore Regis Henrici Quinti.

Rex Romanorum,  
Rex Anglia & Francie,  
Rex Daciae,  
Rex Portugaliae,  
Dux Clarencie,  
Dux Bedfordie,  
Dux Gloucestrie,  
Dux Holandiae,

Comes Huntingdonia,  
Comes Warrewichie,  
Comes Dorsetie,  
Comes Oxonia,  
Comes Salesburyensis,  
Comes Westmorlandie,  
Dominus de Powys,  
Dominus de Gray,  
Dominus de Talbot,  
Dominus de Fitzburgh,  
Dominus de Kammus,  
Dominus de Burnell,  
Dominus de Morle,  
Dom. Thomas Erpingham,  
Dom. Johannes Cornewayll,  
Dom. Symon Felbrigg,  
Dom. Robertus Umfraville,  
Dom. Willielmus Haryngton,

wherefore



wherefore it must of course follow, that this Emperor must have been elected into the Vacancy occasioned by his Death.

There is indeed a Variance at first Sight in these Lists, in that the Lord *Charlton* is named in the Former, and the Lord *Porwys* in the Latter; but the same Person is designed by these Entries; where, in the First, he is denominated by his Surname, in the Second by the Title of his Barony: And though this latter List of the Companions *coævours* with the Emperor, hath no Date affixed thereto in the Manuscript; yet it contains Characteristicks to fix its *Æra* to the Fourth of *Hen. V.* because the Lord *Morle* herein named<sup>r</sup> died on the 24th of *September* in that Year, and the Earl of *Oxford* on the 15th of *February* following; and even its very Title shews, that these Persons were Knights of the *Garter* while this Emperor was in *England*.

This Emperor is indeed said in the *Windsor-Tables* to succeed Sir *John d'Abrigecourt* in the Prince's Stall, which means no more than that this Sir *John* was his immediate Predecessor, that had really been Installed therein, and for Want of that Ceremony the Name of the Lord *Zouche* was omitted; as upon the same Account the Names of the Emperor *Albert*, and of *Edward* Son of *Hen. VI.* who succeeded this Emperor in this same Stall, do not occur in these Tables: But the main Difficulty in this Succession of this Emperor is, that<sup>r</sup> Mr. *Asmole* places the Death of this Sir *John* in the Fifth of *Hen. V.* and in Truth one *John d'Abrigecourt* died on the 23d of *November* in that<sup>\*</sup> Year, who left a Son of the same Name then eleven Years old; though 'tis evident this Person could not be our Knight of the *Garter*, since not only the *Black Book* and Records hereafter cited, place the Election of this Emperor in the fourth Year; but we know that the Plate of our Knight (which still remains in the Prince's Stall) was set up at *Windsor* after his<sup>\*</sup> Death in the Third of *Hen. V.* and therefore the Knight of the *Garter* seems to be that Sir *John d'Abrigecourt* who made his<sup>r</sup> Will on *Friday* after the Feast of *St. James* the Apostle, *A. D.* 1415, and which was proved on the Last of *November* following.

Here then are incontestable Evidences of the first Assertion, That the Names of several Companions are not inserted in the present Catalogues, and in the Sequel of this *Introduction* it will be shewn, that the Earl of *Kent*, who received the Habits in the 11th, 12th, and 13th of *Richard* the Second, is also omitted out of them. And whenever more Accounts of the Wardrobe shall be discovered, we may possibly be furnished with several other Instances of the like Nature. And to make such a Search less painful to any Persons who shall take that Task, the Publisher takes Leave, by way of Information, to acquaint them, that he entirely lost his Labour in the *Pipe-Office*, where it was reasonable to

<sup>r</sup> Esc. 4 H. 5. n. 49.

<sup>s</sup> Esc. 4 H. 5. n. 53.

<sup>\*</sup> *History of the Garter*, p. 519.

<sup>u</sup> Esc. 5 H. 5. n. 29. *Wils.*

<sup>\*</sup> *Computus Willm Tysch Thesaurarii Capellæ de Windsor, tertio Hen. V. Dat uni nuncio Ducis Clarentie portanti unam mantelam Dom. Johannis*

*d'Abrigecourt & scutum armorum ejusdem post mortem suam Collegio pertinen. Item dat. Johanni Rysby equitanti ad Executores Johannis d'Abrigecourt pro mantela. In Arario Wyndesor.*

<sup>\*</sup> In Registro *Philippi Repyngdon* Episcopi *Lincoln.*



suppose these Accounts might have been entred yearly, at the End of the *Great Rolle*, as 'tis termed, or among the *Computi forinseci*: And which is to be lamented, the *Wardrobe-Office* it self affords nothing to this purpose prior to the Reign of *Hen. VIII*, save only some Transcripts in a Book called *Cotom* from the <sup>2</sup> Clerk, who collected it under *Hen. VI*. wherein too we have only the Names of the Knights who received these Habits in the 11th, 12th, and 13th of *Richard II*, and 22d of *Hen. VI*. But these Defects may be in some manner supplied by a diligent Search in the Offices of the Chamberlains of the *Exchequer* and of the King's Remembrancer: In the Former the abovementioned Account of the Third of *Hen. V*. was found, and from the Later were copied the Others herein cited; where it is supposed several more still remain intermixed with an innumerable Quantity of most valuable Instruments which lie there in the utmost Confusion, and buried in Dust to that Degree, that 'till the same shall be removed by Porters; that private Gentleman will deserve the Character of the strongest *Bias* to Antiquities, that, without such a Preparation, will adventure the Hazard of his Health in a Pursuit so dirty and fatiguing.

It is also probable that there may be Signets and Privy Seals touching these Robes, as likewise for Payments of the Charges of *St. George's* Feast, Fees of Installation of Foreigners, &c. in the *White Chappel* within the *Tower of London*, from which Place an Instrument will be soon quoted: But this great Storehouse labours under the Misfortune of the Want of Index's of the Contents of the Records there lodged.

After these certain Proofs of the Omissions of the Names of several Companions, an Indulgence is craved to propose an Enquiry, whether the Register of the *Garter* itself doth not indicate to us a King of *Denmark* to have been a Knight of this Order in the Reign of *Hen. VI*, and the Beginning of *Edward IV*, whose Name occurs not in the Catalogue, and to examine if this Conjecture receives Support from any publick Instrument.

The *Windfor-Tables* mention only one King of *Denmark*, without the Addition of any Christian Name; and *Erick IX* is numbered 123 by Mr. *Ashmole*, who places him among the Knights elected by *Hen. V*, who was indeed his Nephew. <sup>1</sup> Dr. *Heylin* hath observ'd, that our Genealogists have mistaken the Christian Name of the King of this Place, who married *Philippa* second Daughter of our *Hen. IV*, miscalling him *John*, an Error which <sup>m</sup> Mr. *Sandford* hath left uncorrected; for our <sup>n</sup> Records are positive in her Marriage to this *Erick*, who had been declared by his Aunt to be her Successor in that Throne, and for the greater Security had been crowned in *A. D.* 1396, and obtaining the Name of King of *Denmark* by this adoption, began to reign after his Aunt's Death in *A. D.* 1412.

The <sup>o</sup> Instruments printed in this Essay, prove him a Companion of this Order in 3 & 4 *Hen. V*; and he must certainly be that King of

<sup>2</sup> Vide p. 38b. in dicto libro.

<sup>1</sup> *Hist of St. George*, p. 424.

<sup>m</sup> *Geneal. Hist.* p. 276.

<sup>n</sup> Scot. 1, 2, & 3 *H. 4.* de Sponsalibus. Fran.

7 *H. 4.* Pat. 7 *H. 4.* &c.

<sup>o</sup> See above P. 15. Note k, and p. 16, Note q.



*Denmark* who is placed in these *Windsor-Tables* as immediate <sup>p</sup> Successor to *Robert Count Palatin*, Duke of *Bavaria*, in the eighth Stall on the Sovereign's Side; which Duke (afterwards Emperor) died at *Oppenheim* on 1 *June*, *A. D.* 1410. And these same Tables make *Anthony Wideville* Lord *Scales* immediate Successor in this Stall to the King of *Denmark*, which Lord being not mentioned in the Register as a Knight of the *Garter* 'till the 7th Year of *Edw. IV.*, *A. D.* 1467, there then is the Space of 57 Years wherein the King of *Denmark* is only inserted as possessing this Stall: And 'tis to be examined, whether this indeterminate Expression of the King of *Denmark*, may not mean several Kings of that Place in Succession.

But it may not be improper first to observe, that this Stall being vacant *A. D.* 1410, this *Erick* might have been elected thereto by his Father-in-law *Hen. IV.*, otherwise it must have continued empty many Years beyond the Time limited in the <sup>9</sup> Statutes for a new Election: And the Omission of the Name of this King out of the List of those <sup>r</sup> Knights, who received the Habits of this Order in 1 *Hen. V.*, is no Proof against this Supposition; for only Twenty three Companions are then named: And the Weakness of such a negative Argument is evident even in the Case of this King, for though he with his Queen *Philippa* (a Lady of a true antient *English* Spirit, who in Person carried on a <sup>1</sup> War during her Husband's absence) received such Robes in the Third of *Hen. V.*, yet neither of them received this Habit in the <sup>9</sup>th Year; for though this <sup>2</sup> Queen might be dead before that Time, yet this King did then take his Oath for the Observance of the Statutes of this Order, whereon, as the <sup>3</sup> Register informs us, his Ensigns were hung up in the Chappel at *Windsor*, and a <sup>4</sup> Record assures us, *Hen. VI.* in his third Year, paid the Fees that had been due on that account; and from this Year to the Fifteenth of this King, there are Excuses entred in the Register for the Absence of the King of *Denmark*, which without all Doubt relate to this *Erick*, who soon afterwards abdicated his Throne *A. D.* 1438. about 17 *Hen. VI.*

Notwithstanding this Abdication, Excuses for the Absence of the King of *Denmark* are continued in the Register down to the First of *Edw. IV.*, *A. D.* 1461 inclusive, which embarrasses us with this Difficulty, whether all these Entries can be thought to Design this *Erick*, who after his Resignation retired into *Pomerania*, where he lived in a private Recess, but died before the Commencement of the Reign of *Edward IV.*, viz. *A. D.* 1459, about 38 *Hen. VI.*

'Tis certain that the Lord *Scales* (afterwards Earl *Rivers*) placed in these Tables as immediate Successor to the King of *Denmark*, was not

<sup>p</sup> Heylin's *Hist. of St. George*, p. 352.

<sup>r</sup> Art. 18.

<sup>1</sup> See above p. 14. Note g.

<sup>2</sup> Loccenii *Hist. Suecan.* p. 120.

<sup>3</sup> See above p. 15. Note k.

<sup>4</sup> This Note will be inserted hereafter in the Life of Sir Simon Felbrigg.

<sup>5</sup> Cluver. *Epit. Histor.* p. 733, *A. D.* 1430.

<sup>6</sup> Vide dictum Registrum.

<sup>7</sup> Exit Pell. 3 *H. 6.* Decano & Canonicis Collegii

de *Windsore* de avifamento & assensu Consilii Regis, viz. pro ipso Domino Rege xl marc. & pro Rege *Dacia* xx lib. prout inter alios articulos Statutorum de Honorabili ordine de *Gartera* ordinatum existit, viz. quod quilibet Socius dicti ordinis secundum ejus statum ad suum primum introitum dictis Decano & Canonicis donabit certam summam monetæ, viz. Rex *Anglie* xl marc. & alius Rex Extraneus xx lib. prout in dictis Statutis plenius continetur.



born at this Time of *Erick's* Abdication, for he was only Thirty Years Old in <sup>a</sup> *May*, 12 *Edw.* IV, *A. D.* 1472, at the Death of his Mother *Jaquet* Duchess of *Bedford*.

The Register of the *Gar*ter is silent from the 15th to the 22d or rather 23d of *Hen.* VI, and the Conjecture which is here offered, that in this Interval another King of *Denmark* might have been elected into this Stall seems to be favoured, if not fully supported by a <sup>b</sup> Warrant dated 15 *Sept.* 24 *Hen.* VI. *A. D.* 1445, for the Delivery of a *Gar*ter to *John Fettplace*, to be carried by him to the King of *Denmark*, a Method observed upon Elections into this Order; and 'tis farther observable, that in *December* this same Year a Reference is made to a <sup>c</sup> Peace (as 'tis there expressed) lately entred into between the Kings of *England* and *Denmark*, which can hardly be conceived to relate to this *Erick*.

Now at the Time of sending this *Gar*ter, *Christopher* of *Bavaria* was King of *Denmark*, who after an Anarchy upon *Erick's* Abdication, was prevailed upon to accept that Throne and was crowned on the <sup>d</sup> First of *January*, *A. D.* 1440, and 'lived 'till the Ides of *January* 1448-9; so that *Fettplace* might be sent to him with this Ensign of the Order, who might thereon succeed *Erick* in this Stall wherein his own Grandfather, *Robert* of *Bavaria* the Emperor abovementioned, had been formerly placed.

But even after the Death of this *Christopher*, there are Excuses still entered on in this Register, for a King of *Denmark*, down to *A. D.* 1461, which at first Sight one should be tempted to imagine, meant his Successor *Christi*erne crowned on 28 *October* 1448, especially as to that Part of this Time which is subsequent to the Death of *Erick* in 1459, and even during *Erick's* Life in private Retirement, it looks like an Impropriety in Language, as well as Absurdity in Politicks, to attribute to him the Title of King of *Denmark* absolutely, while at the same time there were several Intercourses and Treaties made with this *Christi*ern as <sup>e</sup> King of that Realm. This latter is in some Catalogues reckoned as a Knight of the *Gar*ter, and said to be <sup>f</sup> elected in the Reign of *Hen.* V. which is inconsistent with Chronology: And indeed if he be denoted by these latter Entries in the Register, as elected in or after the Year 1448, yet it may be doubted, whether he was originally designed to be placed in this Stall, because he lived 'till XI *Kal.* *Jun.* 1482, before which time, to wit in 1467, this Lord *Scales* was a Knight of this <sup>g</sup> Order according to the *Windsor-Tables* seated in this Stall; unless we suppose this *Christi*ern King of *Denmark* (if he was of this Order) was either translated from it, or that upon some dissatisfaction he had either resigned, or been depri-

<sup>a</sup> *Efc.* 12 *E.* 4. *Jacquetta* Ducissa *Bedford*, obiit 30 *Maij*, & *Anthonius* *Wideville* Comes de *Rivers* filius & hæres est *Ætatis* 30 annorum & amplius.

<sup>b</sup> *Priv. Sigill.* *Hen.* &c. To the *Treasurer*, &c. We wol and charge you, that unto our trusty and wel-beloved *Squier* *John Fettplace*, ye do deliver a *Gar*ter of Gold, garnished with Stones and *Perlis* of *G. marc.* or of 1x pound, and xl pound in money for his Costs in beryng the said *Gar*tere and lyvere unto the King of *Denmark*. Teven undre our prive Seal at our *Castell* of *Hertford*, 15 *Sept.* in the yere of our regne xxiii.

There is no doubt but the Payment hereon may be found in the *Pell. Rolle*.

<sup>c</sup> *Rymer* vol. xi. p. 168.

<sup>d</sup> *Chronologia Dania* a *Joh. Jani Suaningio* *Ripensi*, p. 93.

<sup>e</sup> *Reusner* *Basilic.* p. 215.

<sup>f</sup> *Rymer* vol. xi. p. 264. &c. See a Treaty in 27, renewed in 28 *Hen.* 6. in *Bibl. Cotton Nero B.* 3. p. 35.

<sup>g</sup> *Mills* de *Nobilitate Politica & Civili*, p. 167.

<sup>h</sup> Vide *Registrum Garterii* in dicto anno.



ved upon a Rupture. But the Incertainty of settling the Stall to which he might be elected, is no Proof against the Fact of an Election, since his Son and Successor *John*, King of this Place, was certainly chosen in or before the 18th of *Hen. VII*, though his Name not occurring in these *Tables* for Want of an Installation, it will be some Difficulty to fix on his Stall; and from hence it also appears, that the bare Omissions of this *Christopher* and *Christierne* out of these *Tables*, are no convincing Arguments against the Probability of their Elections.

And here it may be some small Satisfaction to the Reader, to attempt the Discovery of the Occasion of the Defectiveness of these Catalogues; whoever shall take the Trouble to collate them with these *Tables*, will soon find, that these Catalogues were composed out of them, as to all the Time prior to the Commencement of the Annals of the Order, which to our Grief (as hath been already observ'd) run no higher than the Fourth of *Hen. V*: Now by comparing these *Tables* with the *Register* since that Period, it will soon appear that the Elections of several Knights are contained in this *Register*, whose Names are not however mentioned in the *Tables*, in case these Knights did not receive actual Installations, or were afterwards deposed from the Order, upon Attainders; and hence it may be reasonably presumed, that the Names of former Knights that were never installed or had been deprived, were in the like manner omitted out of these *Tables* in the Years prior to the *Ara* of this *Register*, and consequently could not be inserted in the Catalogues, which were composed only out of these *Tables*.

It will not be foreign to give some Proofs of these Particulars. The *Register* then of the Order (from its binding in black Velvet, commonly called the *Black Book*) records, among others, the Elections of

*Albert* Duke of *Austria*, n. 150.  
*Alfonfus* King of *Arragon*, n. 162.  
*Casimir* King of *Poland*, n. 163.  
*William* Duke of *Brunswick*, n. 164.  
*Sir Edward Hull*, n. 169.  
*The Emperor Frederick*, n. 170.  
*Francis Sfortia*, n. 192.  
*Ferdinand* King of *Castile*, n. 216, &c.

and yet not One of these Persons is named in the *Windsor-Tables*; because every One of them died (as 'tis supposed) without Installation, and of course by the very Tenor of the Statutes, <sup>k</sup> " *having not the full Possession of their State, could not be placed among the Founders:*" So that it would have been an impropriety to have inserted any of their Names in these *Tables*, which, according to their Title, recite only the Successions in the Stalls.

<sup>k</sup> Ibid. in dicto anno.

| <sup>k</sup> Stat. E. 3. Art. 19.



Then again, this same Book registers the Elections of

*John de Foix*, Earl of *Kendall*, n. 156.

*Lionel Lord Wells*, n. 172.

The first Election of *Jaspar* Earl of *Bedford*, n. 175.

*Richard* Earl of *Salisbury*, n. 179.

*Sir Richard Ratcliff*, n. 222, &c.

and yet none of them is entred in these *Tables*, because they were all degraded upon Attainders or deprived.

And 'tis more than bare Guess, that the same Omissions were in these *Tables* upon the like Circumstances before the Beginning of this *Black Book*, since *Sir John Holland*, the three *Piercies*, the Lord *Scroope*, and the Earls of *Gloucester* and *Salisbury* are not mentioned in them, though all these Persons have been incontestably proved Companions of the *Gar-ter*, so that doubtless their respective Attainders were the Occasions thereof.

Though great Use will be made of these *Tables*, it is superfluous to reprint them after 'Dr. *Heylin* and "Mr. *Ashmole*; the former Author described them to be a "Monument almost eaten out with Time then "placed in the Choir of *Windsor*, on each Side one," which when the Later wrote his History, had been removed, and were lodged in the *Chapter-house* there, from whence they have been since removed, stoln, or have entirely perished, by which misfortune an Antiquary loses the Satisfaction of an ocular Survey of them, whereby he might have been enabled, in some tolerable Degree, to have given his Conjectures of the Respective Ages of the different Hand-writings: So that now this Collector can only inform his Readers, that "about 55 Years after the Erection of the (Order, if it was instituted in 18 Ed. III.) it was then the Custom to write the Names of the *Knights* into *Tables*, and that he as yet esteems them of the greatest Authority, having throughout all his researches found them consistent with Chronology, (the true Eye and Touchstone of Antiquities) save only in one or two Instances, which are easily reconcileable with it, upon a Supposition, that a Translation of Stalls was practised in these particular Cases.

With Reference to Materials for an History of the *Gar-ter*, Leave is here also taken to advertise the Reader, to prevent any future Loss of Time in searching, that very little Assistance can be obtained from the *Ar-ary* of the Chapel of *Windsor*, where it was reasonable to believe the Fees for Installations due to that Church, and the Return of the Mantles of the Companions after their Deaths, might have been regularly entred; there are a great Number of Accounts of the *Treasurers* and *Stew-ards* still remaining, which contain nothing on these Subjects; but in those of the *Præcentor's* are some few Particulars, which will be men-

<sup>1</sup> *Hist. of St. George*, p. 346.

<sup>m</sup> In his Appendix.

<sup>n</sup> Computus *Thome Martin* Præcentoris *Windsor* Hen. IV. *Johanni Page* pro scriptura nominum

videlicet Reg. Princip. & aliorum Militum de *Gar-terio* in *Tabul. iiiid.* Comp. *Joh. Marchford* Præcentoris 4 Hen. V. pro intratione nominum Militum *Gar-terie* in *Tabul. xxd.* In *Arario* *Windsor*.



tioned incidently in the Sequel of this Essay. There are Eleven of this nature in the Reign of *Rich. II.* Four under *Hen. IV.* Five in the Time of *Hen. V.* and Eight in the Reign of *Hen. VI.* and from thence none 'till *Philip* and *Mary*, but scarce any thing mentioned in them of the Order, or of the Knights of the *Garter*.

II. The second Proposition was, That the Names of some Knights are inserted in the Catalogues, who could not be Companions of this Order. This being a negative Assertion, must in its own nature require a larger Share of the Reader's Patience; though it is hoped, the Arguments that support it, will, upon Attention, be found conclusive. And these Interpolations of Names have, in all probability, happened in the Case of a Foreigner, and of several *Englishmen*.

The Duke of *Briga* seems an Instance of the first Kind, numbered 118, as elected in the Reign of *Hen. V.* by Mr. *Asmole*, who pleases himself with the <sup>o</sup> Discovery of him, quoting the *Black Book* for his Voucher, wherein he dealt very ingenuously, but it is to be examined whether his Guide did not mislead him.

The Words he refers us to, are indeed positive. "*Henrici Quinti anno <sup>p</sup> Quarto circiter septimum Maij solemnitas Divi Georgij celebrata est Windefori, quo Sigismundus Imperator Alemannicus — accessit; Quem paulo post subsecutus est Dux Hollandiæ — Atq; hij duo cum præclaro Duce de Briga uno ex Comitatu Imperatoris ibidem creati sunt Equites illustrissimi illius Ordinis Divo Georgio nuncupati.*"

His Evidence is then faithfully recited, but he might be too credulous in the Competency and Capacity of his Witness. This is the first Entry in this *Black Book* of any Proceedings in this Order, and 'tis very unlucky and ominous, that the Collector of this Register should thus stumble in the Threshold, and be so unfortunate to commit two gross Mistakes at his setting out, if this Passage should be construed to mean, that the Dukes of *Holland* and *Briga* were created or installed Companions of the *Garter* at the same Time with the Emperor *Sigismund*, in this 4th of *Hen. V.*

These Expressions from an Officer of the Order, may be esteemed too harsh, or bold, to such Persons who remember the Outcries and Exclamations, wherewith Mr. *Vincent* loaded and <sup>q</sup> triumphed over *Ralph Brooke*, when he thought he touch'd on the Authority of this Register.

This being a tender Point, this Stone of Offence must be first removed; and it will be readily owned, that *Brooke* might deserve this Animadversion for quoting this Book falsely, and in that Part of it too which must be allowed to be an Original, for it is of that nature for the Facts subsequent to the Time that Doctor *Aldrydge* was promoted to the Office of Register of the Order: But as to the Years preceding that Period, it will soon be evident 'tis no original Record, but only a Col-

<sup>o</sup> *History of the Garter*, p. 294.  
<sup>p</sup> *Registrum Garterii*.

<sup>q</sup> *Discovery of the Errors of Ralph Brooke, in his Catalogue of Nobility*, p. 707, 708.



lection compiled by that Doctor, and with what Ability, Industry, and Care he performed that Task is to be the Subject of an Enquiry by Way of Preliminary.

Historical *Pyrrhonism* can be no discommendable Quality, with relation to any modern Authors who digest the Transactions of former Ages, though the Writers should be in eminent and exalted Stations; and such Compilations may be inoffensively examined with the most circumstantial Niceties, if not with a rigorous Exactness. And as no greater Injustice can be offered to this most Noble Order, than by inserting into the Annals of it Facts which do violence to contemporary Records and the common Faith of History, because such Interpolations must of course create Suspicions, and cast at least a Blemish upon the Residue; an Officer therefore must be justified in being scrupulously circumspect and frugal in his Belief, and may without Reserve take the Liberty of dissenting from any such modern Collector, when there is clear Evidence to contradict him.

It is necessary then to premise, That the former Part of this *Black Book* was compiled by this Dr. Robert Aldrydge, Fellow of *King's College*, Schoolmaster, then Provost of *Eaton*, at length Canon of *Windfor*, appointed *Register* on the Third, and sworn into the Office *on 27 May 26 Hen. VIII*, from thence afterwards advanced to the See of *Carlisle*. He acquired a Character in his Youth, for assisting *Erasmus* in collating Manuscripts, who stiles him *Blandæ Eloquentiæ Juvenis*; and being thus promoted to this Registry, upon the Strength of his Accomplishments in the *Latin* Tongue, he was either pitched upon, or voluntarily undertook to translate into that Language, the *Registrum Chartaceum* which had been wrote in *French* by his respective Predecessors in that Office.

There was indeed a Decree in a *Chapter* held by *Henry* the Seventh for the Transcribing the antient Annals, but the same extended not to Translating them into *Latin*, and 'tis to be lamented that it was ever undertaken; for notwithstanding that Language be permanent, and keeps fixed and steady, and consequently most intelligible to Posterity in Treatises of most Natures, yet in Subjects wherein technical Terms, Habits, Rites, Ceremonies, Fashions, Dignities, and Offices, unknown to the *Roman* Ages are to be described, very great Skill is required to express them aptly in classical Terms: And with what Judgement the Doctor performed his Part in these Niceties we are left to guess, since that most valuable *French Register*, which was preserved in the Paper-Office at *Whitehall* when Mr. *Ashmole* wrote his *History*, is not, (as the Editor hath been informed) at this time to be found there. However, by the *Quotations* of several Passages from thence interspersed in Mr. *Ashmole's History*, and of several Instruments published in his *Appendix*,

<sup>r</sup> Frith in Catal. Decan. & Canon. Windfor.

<sup>s</sup> Registr. Garterii.

<sup>t</sup> See Lelandi Encomia, p. 134, Wood's Athen. Oxon. p. 79.

<sup>u</sup> Ashm. Hist. p. 199.

<sup>x</sup> Registr. Garter. 4 Hen. 7.

<sup>y</sup> P. 198.

<sup>z</sup> Hist. p. 266, 368, 372, 373, &

<sup>a</sup> n. 13, 14, 21, 22, 24, 26, 45, 46, 50, 51, 55, 145, 176, 177, 186.



we shall be soon convinced, that the Doctor took the Liberty of abridging and curtailing this *French Register*. There is no greater Judgement required in any Work than in an Abridgement, which, like the Reducing a Picture into Miniature, should express every particular Lineament, though in less Proportions than the Original. But this Translation labours under other Blemishes of equal Size, for the Doctor took the unjustifiable Latitude in deviating from this *French Register* in the <sup>b</sup> Chronology, without assigning any Reason for his Variations; and his chiefest Aim throughout the whole Work seems to be bent on the Turn and Elegancy, as he conceived, of his *Latin* Stile, wherein, according to the prevailing Humour of that Age, when *Cicero* was studied by many Divines almost to the Neglect of the Bible, he retains the Schoolmaster, and his Taste was so very delicate, that he could not bear the unpolite Dress of the Founders Statutes in their rough original Terms, but out of an excessive Affectation of Purity, cloathed them up in a new fashionable *Latin* Garb, thereby giving, as much as lay in his Power, the Sanction of Authority to his own private Interpretation; for certainly these Statutes should have been inserted *literatim* in their own Language and Phrase, how barbarous soever their Sound was in his Ear.

It was also a Duty incumbent on any Translator to have avoided all equivocal Expressions and ambiguous Words, which might make some Passages very intricate and obscure, that probably were very intelligible in the *French Register*. Can any greater Unaccuracy be committed than this Doctor hath done in the material Point of the <sup>c</sup> Number of Companions whereof the Order consists? Several other such-like Instances are obvious. He hath given us a Sketch of his Abilities in Antiquities in his tedious romantick Preface, in a fustian Stile, that hath more Smoak than Fire, containing his History of the Institution of this Order, whence we may perceive he was a credulous Antiquary, notwithstanding his Fame for Oratory.

But least the Reader should be offended with this Freedom in the Character of the Labours of so eminent a Churchman, he is desired to turn his Eye on the <sup>d</sup> Censure of this Work given by a Right Reverend Prelate, who in Succession of Time ('tis meant not so much in Distance of Age as in Excellency) enjoy'd this same Office of Register, the learned Dr. *Matthew Wren*, Lord Bishop of *Ely*; whence we may learn, with great Concern, what a miserable Defloration this *Black Book* is, as to the Years preceding Dr. *Aldrydge's* advancement, and this Narrative will sufficiently remove the Prejudices cast in by Mr. *Vincent*. One Design then

<sup>b</sup> *Athm. Hist.* p. 265, 266, 368. &c.

<sup>c</sup> Institutio — Ordinis, f. 15. — ordinem instituit decrevit, in quo *Supremum Anglie Regem & Viginti Sex* auratos Equites subutilantes exhiberet, &c. And in another Place, *Sex & Viginti* connumerantur, quibus *Supremus ac Illustrissimus* superadditur.

<sup>d</sup> Statuta nobilissimi ordinis in *Anglia*, dicti a *Periscelide*, adjectis ad marginem notis M. S. Primus ille est, quem *Librum Nigrum* vocant. In eo memoria rerum deducitur ab ipsa inchoatione ordinis ad exitum *Ed. VI.* sed hiulca plane, abrupta; & miseris subinde hiatibus deformi historia.

Nec mirum. Nam si recte observo, conscriptus non fuit ante annum *Hen. VIII. xxviii.* Erat tum *Robertus Aldridge* (S. S. D. & Canonicus *Windsorensis*) scriba Ordinis. Ille (forsitan) compilatis undiq; prioribus scriniis, & convasatis (quæ tum reperite erat) rerum *Georgianarum* monumentis, Historiam inde hanc (ut potuit) contexuit a prima origine. Dein etiam continuavit (ut vero est simillimum) usq; ad initium regni *Mariæ*, quanquam Episcopus ipse interea *Carloliensis* esset per *xiii* annos. But Mr. *Athm.* p. 199, hath already observed, that another Hand-writing begins 32 *Hen. 8.*



of publishing this *Specimen* is, to desire the Communication of this *French Register*, if the Same or any Copy of it remains in any private Hand. And in the mean time, if we have lost the Spring, let us make what Use we can of the Stream, though it runs not unsullied, and therefore it may not be judg'd improper to print this *Black Book* it self, least by the Infelicity of some unforeseen Accident, or the Currency of Time, it may meet with the same Fate: For though the Doctor is inexcusable in his Method of Abridging, by disguising and maiming this *French Register* to a considerable Disadvantage, in making Alterations, in using Words and Phrases of ambiguous Significations, in refining upon the Original in several Places, and in his Negligence of the Chronology of Dates; yet the main Parts and Substance of the Book will be found to contain Facts supported by Records, and it may be possible, with Pains, to sift off the Chaff in some tolerable Degree.

'Tis high Time to return to the Examination of this Entry, that the Dukes of *Holland* and *Briga* were elected or installed Knights of the *Garter* with the Emperor *Sigismund* in 4 *Hen. V.*, and to do the Doctor Justice herein, 'tis supposed he had not the Opportunity of any Direction in these Particulars from the *French Register*, (which if this Collector understands 'Mr. *Asmole* aright, did not begin 'till in or about the seventh Year of *Hen. V.*) but he might be herein misled by some incorrect Author, but from whence-ever he took it, there are two apparent Mistakes in it.

The first is, That the Duke of *Holland* was about the seventh Day of *May*, 4 *Hen. V.* 1416, created, that is installed, Knight of the *Garter*: Now the Duke of *Holland* at that time was *William*, who <sup>f</sup> succeeded his Father *Albert* 25 *January* 1404, and lived himself 'till 31 *May* 1417, the Year following this Entry; which *William* had been <sup>g</sup> chosen, and even installed Knight of this Order in 14 *R. II.* while he was only Earl of *Ostrevant*, and is numbered 61 in the Catalogue, who by the Title of Duke of *Holland*, received Robes in the <sup>b</sup> First, and also in the <sup>i</sup> Third of *Hen. V.*, before the Election of this Emperor *Sigismund*; (from which Entries, as well as divers others, it is to be observed, that <sup>k</sup> Dr. *Heylin* and Mr. *Asmole* were both mistaken, when they thought this Title of Duke of *Holland* had not been used at that Time) whereas his Father <sup>l</sup> *Albert* had the same appellation. It seems then very plain, this Duke of *Holland* was neither elected nor installed with the Emperor in this fourth Year of *Hen. V.*, so that there is no occasion to refer to our <sup>m</sup> Historians, who only mention the Election of the Emperor singly at that Time.

Here

<sup>e</sup> *Hist.* p. 374.

<sup>f</sup> *Scriptores Genealog.*

<sup>g</sup> *Hist. de Ch. 6. par le Laboureur*, p. 196, 197. *Modii Pandectæ Triumph.* Tom. 2. p. 163. *Monstrelet*, vol. 1. p. 236. *Froissart*, vol. 4. fol. 86, 87, &c.

<sup>h</sup> See p. 14, Note g.

<sup>i</sup> See p. 15, Note k.

<sup>k</sup> *History of St. George*, p. 347.

<sup>l</sup> *Rymer*, vol. 7. p. 374.

<sup>m</sup> *Walsingham Ypodig.* Neustr. p. 192. Septimo die mensis *Maii* [A. D. 1416.] venit Imperator *Londonias* — Rex ducens eum & secum *Wyndeslesho-*

*ram* ad festum S. *Georgii*, honorans illic eum & tantæ fraternitatis titulo & religionis illius nobili vestimento, signumq; regale imposuit collo suo, quod Imperator exposit semper concessit in omni conventu publico & privato. *The same in his History*, p. 441.

*Titi Livii vita Hen. 5. p. 24. Sigismundus Romanorum & Henricus Angliæ & Franciæ Reges temporibus istis maxima familiaritate, summa mutuaq; benevolentia inter se complexi sunt, ita ut in fraternitatem militum Garterii Rex Augustissimus Sigismundus ascribi peteret & ascriberetur.*



Here then is an evident Error in the Time when this Duke of *Holland* was created into the Order of the *Garter*, which was not together with this Emperor: But no Charge is hereby intended to be laid on Dr. *Aldrydge*, that he feign'd this Entry purely out of his own Invention, which would have been an unprofitable Forgery; for he could have no sinister End, private Interest, or servile Complements to make to a Family extinct long before his Age. And he was, without doubt, innocently misled by some old incorrect Entry: And 'tis not improbable he might be imposed upon in this Particular by the Words of *Harding*, whom he might esteem an Author worthy of Credit, as being "about 38 Years old at this Emperor's Installation. But if by the obscure Verses quoted in the 'Margin, this Chronicler meant that this Duke was then also made Knight of the *Garter*, yet it is evident that he doth not relate that Fact of his own personal Knowledge, but seems to refer to some nameless Annalist for his Voucher, for he published this Poem in a very advanced Age, about 45 Years<sup>p</sup> after this Installation of the Emperor, when the Duke of *Holland's* Election into this Order was entirely out of his remembrance. However from this or some such other superficial Writer<sup>q</sup> *Hall* and<sup>r</sup> *Hollingshead* have improved the Blunder, adding thereto the greatest Inconsistency in Chronology, That *Albert* Duke of *Holland* was invested with the *Garter* at the same time with this Emperor *Sigismond*; who, in Truth, was dead some Years before that time.

The second Mistake is about the Election of *Lewis* Duke of *Briga*, who was indeed, a very considerable Person, and might possibly have been elected, if there had been any vacant Stall. He was a younger Branch of the famous *Piastean* Family, which became<sup>s</sup> extinct in 1672, and his Titles were, *Dux Lignicensis & Brigenfis & Trinschinienfis Comitatus in Pannonia Dominus*; He is sometimes called<sup>t</sup> *Ludovicus de Slesia*, and

Roffi Historia Regum Anglie, p. 209. *Sigismundus* Imperator Romanorum — venit in Angliam solempniter receptus, portans secum patroni gentis Anglorum, Sancti videlicet Georgii, Comitis & Militis & Sanctissimi Martyris, preciosum cor, quod devote immolavit in collegio Militum *Garterii* dicti Sancti Georgii de *Windsor*. Et eodem tempore per manus regias in unum ordinis dictæ nobilis Militiæ solempniter est assumptus, juramentum ordinis prædicti accipiens & faciens cum omnibus aliis ad dictum honorabilem ordinem requisitis & perfecte adimpleris.

Vita MSS. Hen. 5. quæ incipit Lucerna inter Cod. Norfolc. in Off. Arm. n. 15. p. 25. b. Ipse etiam Imperator in fraternitatem sive societatem militarem de la *Gartiere*, in quam nobiles secundum sua in actibus bellicis merita promoventur, tam in sui honoris incrementum, quam in ejusdem fraternitatis decus immensum frater eligitur & assensu regio ordinatur.

Elmhams vita Hen. 5. *Julius* E. 4. in Bibl. Cotton. p. 106.

Institerat festiva dies tua, Sancte Georgi,  
Quæ clero duplex perpetuata datur,  
Huic Princeps summus interfuit Induperator,  
Eligitur miles laude notandus ibi:  
Dux *Holondensis* venit hac pro pace patranda  
Centum militibus concomitatus erat.

Liber *Johannis* fratris Heremitarum Sancti *Augustini* de *Henricis* in Bibl. Cotton. Tiber. A. 8. — In

quintadecima Paschæ in Parlamento renovatur publice fraternitas inter Imperatorem & Regem olim secretius iniciata — Instante quoque festivitate S. Georgii Martyris Imperator huic festivitati interfuit, ubi eligitur in fraternitatem Militiæ de *Garteria*, & debitis insigniis installatur. In qua festivitate Dux *Hollandie* interfuit cum centum Militibus, ut fertur, pro pace inter Angliam & Franciam perpetuo servandam tractaturus.

<sup>u</sup> He saith he was 25 Years old at the Battle of *Shrewsbury*, which was on 21 July 1403.

<sup>v</sup> Ch. CCXV. having mentioned the Arrival of the Emperor *Sigismond*, and that he was made (as he words it) of the *Garter* the Secondary, which doubtless means that he was seated in the Prince's Stall, he then proceeds,

The Duke of *Holland* then by Sea came  
With LX Shippes, in Thames that did aryue  
And to the Kyng, He went unto lambe  
To th' Emperour after he went belyue  
As *Chronicles* then dyd discryue  
Then was he made Knight of the *Garter*  
At his desyre, as saith the Chronicler.

<sup>p</sup> Ch. 178 & 239.

<sup>q</sup> Hist. of Hen. 5. p. 21. b.

<sup>r</sup> Hist. p. 556.

<sup>s</sup> Reusner Basilic. p. 56, 57.

<sup>t</sup> Hartnack Polonia, p. 68.

<sup>u</sup> *Vanderhardt* de Conc. Constant. vol. 1. p. 158. vol. 2. p. 36. 37. vol. 5. p. 32.

Dux



*Dux Slesie* as well as *Dux Briga* and *Dux Brigensis in Slesia*, and attended in a considerable Place of Trust on this Emperor, at the Council of *Constance*; from whence this Emperor, with a noble Retinue, came into this Kingdom, having this Duke with him, and soon afterwards followed the Duke of *Holland*, who was a near Kinsman to this Duke of *Briga*, being Son of *Albert* of *Bavaria*, by *Margaret*, Daughter of *Lewis*, his Grandfather. Now if this Duke of *Briga* had been elected in this fourth Year of *Hen. V.* he should have continued a Companion 'till his Death, which happened in *1436*, *15 Hen. VI.* unless he had been degraded or had resigned; and though he sent his Pursivant <sup>a</sup> hither in *1432*, yet this very same *Black Book* never mentions him in all this Tract of Time, but furnishes us farther with the strongest negative Proof that this Fact can admit, that he could not be of this Order, because in *7 Hen. VI.* the Names of *Twenty Five Companions* are therein enumerated, who with the Sovereign, must complete the whole Number, while this Duke of *Briga* was living, so that there could certainly be no Place for him.

From these Mistakes in the *Aera* of the Election of this Duke of *Holland*, and the Insertion of the Duke of *Briga* into this Order without any ground, the Reader, according to the Prejudices suggested by Mr. *Vincent*, may be in doubt touching the other Part of this Entry, which mentions the Election of the Emperor at this Time. But that Particular is amply confirmed by a Multitude of uncontroverted Proofs, by the <sup>b</sup> Recital of his Acceptance of this Order in a Record, by a Flood of Historians already quoted, by his wearing the Ensigns of this Order with great Solemnity upon his Return to the <sup>c</sup> Council of *Constance*, and we find that the Habits were given him <sup>d</sup> annually, and that the Chancellor of *England* inflicted a Punishment upon those of the College of *Windsor* who <sup>e</sup> sold his Mantle during his Life.

This Fact of the Emperor's Election is then certain, but the Time of his Installation is very indeterminately expressed in this *Black Book*, where it is placed about the *Seventh* of *May*, whereas he landed at *Dover* on the *First*, and did not enter *London* 'till that very <sup>f</sup> *Seventh* of *May*. The Man-

<sup>a</sup> *Bib. Cotton. Tiber. B. 6. f. 83. Litera Henrici V. Regis* — Accessit ad regnum nimirum Christianissimus & inclitissimus Princeps Rex Romanorum — Advenienteque deinde ad idem regnum nostrum carissimo consanguineo nostro Wilhelmo Duce *Bavariæ Annonie Hollandiæ & Zelandiæ*, Comite, &c. *Leland's Collect.* p. 488, Edit. Hearne. *Anone* after *Sigismund* came the Duke of *Holland* to King Henry.

<sup>b</sup> *Chron. Joan. a Leydis*, l. 31. c. 2. Heda 357.

<sup>c</sup> *Reusner* ut supra.

<sup>d</sup> *Rymer*, vol. 10. p. 521. Et Privat. Sigill. in Offi. Pell. a Nichel Crutesbourgh pursevant de nostre trescher Cousin le duc de Brye nadgairs par nostre Cousin devers Nous, &c.

<sup>e</sup> *Rymer* vol. 9. p. 711. Considerantes exuberantis amicitiae & fraternalis amoris pulchritudinem quæ inter serenissimum Principem *Sigismundum Romanorum Regem*, &c. & *Domum Angliæ* — ac alligantias indissolubiles inter ipsum præcharissimum fratrem nostrum & subditos Imperii, ac nos & subditos nostros initas, & eas firmissis fœderatas, ex quo dictus inclitissimus frater noster de sua gratuita bonitate Socius & frater devenit Collegii nostri *Militaris de Garterio*, ordinem ejusdem Collegii nostri

in Signum perpetuæ Amicitiae & sinceræ Fraternalitatis, profitendo, &c.

<sup>f</sup> *Rymer* vol. 9. p. 434. The Emperor on 27 January — entride the Cite of *Constance* with the hyere of the Coler about his Necke, a glad syghte to alle your hyge men to se, &c. Moreover hyketh som to wyte that on Sonedaye the last Day of Januarie your Brother the Kyng of Rome werede the Gowne of the Garterez with your Coler opynly ad the Hyze Messie. A Letter from Forester to *Hen. V.*

*Ibid.* p. 440, 441. Letter to the Bishop of *Durham* about the Proceedings in the Council of *Constance*. Post excellentissimi Principis *Sigismundi Romanorum & Ungariæ Regis* ad hanc civitatem felicem introitum Liberatam seu Devisam metuendissimi Regis nostri continue deferentis quæ in Gallorum oculis multum tædiosa & nociva consistit.

<sup>g</sup> *Cleopatra F. iv. Acta Concilii Privati*, 24 Oct. 12 *Hen. 6.* Warrantum Custodi Magnæ Garderobæ ad deliberandum — Imperatori annuatim liberatam pro roba de Garter suo statui conceden. habend. de dono Regis. And in several Wardrobe Accounts to be mentioned in this Essay.

<sup>h</sup> *Ashm. Hist.* p. 232.

<sup>i</sup> See Note m. page 26. and following Note k.



date for taking Lodgings against the then next Feast of *St. George*, upon the expected Coming-thither of this *Emperor* and the Duke of *Holland*, is entred in a<sup>s</sup> Register of the Church of *Windsor*, dated on the 18th of *May* in the *seventh* Year of *Hen. V.* wherein tho' the Scribe being unconversant in the Arabick Figures then used for the Number 4 and 7, mistook the Latter for the Former; yet if there be not the same Error in the Day of the Month, we may infer this Feast was held after the 18th of *May*. Now *St. George's Day* in this Fourth of *Hen. V.* was so near *Easter*, which fell then on the 19th of *April*, that of course the Feast was by the Statutes to be prorogued; and 'tis very reasonable to conjecture that it was adjourned beyond the usual term, in expectancy of the Arrival of this *Emperor*, who was to bring a Relict then esteemed invaluable, the Heart<sup>b</sup> forsooth of *St. George*. And it is also evident, that if this Duke of *Holland* had been present at this Installation of the *Emperor*, that Ceremony could not have been prior to the 30th of *May*, for that Duke landed at *Orewelle* just before *Ascension-day*, which then was on the 28th of *May*, and entered *London* the next<sup>i</sup> Day: But in truth this Duke was not<sup>k</sup> present at this Solemnity, being retarded by contrary Winds or some other Accident. Leave is craved here to hint, that this *Emperor* soon after the Reception of the *Garter*, instituted an Order of the *Dragon overthrown*, which was the Practice of several other Sovereigns after their Elections into our Order, as we shall find in the Sequel of this Discourse.

To proceed: The Rules of Truth and History will justify a modest Enquiry, whether some of the *Englishmen*, whose Names are contained in the Catalogues, were actually Companions of this Order; certainly such a Disquisition will not be esteemed an invidious Task, or any Design to detract from the Honour of their real Merits: And of this Kind (if the Publisher is not deceived in his Conjectures) are

Sir *Fulk Fitzwarin*, numbered 51: For although his Name remains on a Plate affixed in the 13th Stall on the Sovereign's Side, yet the same seems to be a plain Mistake, for Sir *William Fitzwarin*, who received the Robes of this Order in the 34th of *Edward III.* which will come under examination in the History of the Successions in that Stall.

Sir *Robert Dunsterville* is numbered 84, touching whom an Enquiry will be made hereafter in this present Dissertation, since in some late Manuscripts he is said to have been seated in the 13th Stall on the Prince's Side.

<sup>a</sup> Athm. Append. n. clxxii.

<sup>b</sup> Rosli Hist. edita per Hearn. p. 209. Dugd. 1 vol. Baron. p. 245. Introduction to the Black Book of the Garter, p. 26.

<sup>i</sup> There is a Letter of *Hen. V.* in Bibl. Cotton. Tiber. B. 6. f. 83. Accessit ad regnum nostrum Christianissimus & inclitissimus Princeps Rex Romanorum — advenienteq; deinde ad idem regnum nostrum carissimo consanguineo nostro Wilhelmo Duce Bavarie, Annonie, Holandie & Zelandie, Comite, &c. Leland's Collect. p. 488. Edit. Hearne mentions this Duke's Arrival here after the Emperor. Walsingham Hist. p. 441, saith, Ante festum Ascensionis Dux Holandie venit in Angliam. And a MS. in the Harley Library about the Affairs of the City of London, saith, The Emperor of Almayn came into Ingelond with viii c. hors to Saint Georges

seste yat is to mete the fyrst day of May attenygh he lounded at Dover, and on the 2. he came to Canterbury, &c. and the 29 of May the Duke of Holand came to London. And in the Wardrobe Account above-mentioned given to this Editor by Mr. Rymer, is this Entry. Pro diversis pann. de seric. & ad aur. — renovand. & emend. erga adventum Duc. Holand. & al. de retinen. sua secum sibi obviam apud Port de Orewell mense Maij hoc anno quarto, &c.

<sup>k</sup> Vitellius, f. 9. in Bibl. Cotton. 4 H. V. The same yere the 7 day of May came the Emperoure of Almayne to London and the feste of Saint George was deferred unto his comynge and thanne was hit solempnely done and holden at Wynddesore. And at the same tyme Duke William of Holande came into Engelande, but he was not at the feste.



Sir *Philip Wentworth* is likewise numbered 168, who was a noble Knight, qualified according to the Strictness of the Statutes, who met with the severe Fate of losing his Head.

And this Collector remains in great Doubt relating to the ever famous Sir *Robert Knolles*, numbered 74, in these Catalogues, all which Persons, as well as the Duke of *Briga*, are omitted out of these *Windsor-Tables*, which is a Matter of Weight: But if in any *Wardrobe-accounts* hereafter to be discovered, the Habits of this Order shall be found to have been delivered to either of these Persons, these Conjectures must be immediately retracted; so bold an Attempt it is to adventure to write on this Subject, without inspecting all the Records of that Office.

The Collector therefore conceives himself obliged to propose his Reasons for doubting in these Cases; and he is at present induced to believe, that the Name of Sir *Philip Wentworth* was inserted in the Lists from a dark Expression in the *Black Book* in 30 *Hen. VI.* “*Hic per procuratorem suum solemniter in sedem suam est introductus Dux Norfolciæ, Dominus Philippus Wentworth ipse per Comitem Salopiæ, ac Dominum Sudeley, Vicecomes autem Boucer ipsemet etiam in designatam sibi sedem inductus per Dominum Hastings & Dominum Beauchamp.*” For the Explanation whereof, it is to be remembered, that in the 28th Year this Duke of *Norfolk* and the Viscount *Bourgchier* are in every Suffrage, but the Name of this Sir *Philip Wentworth*, who immediately follows them in these Catalogues occurs in none of them: So that this obscure Passage may mean no more than as it is interpreted in a <sup>1</sup> Manuscript, that this Sir *Philip* was the Proctor for this Duke of *Norfolk* at his Installation, and therefore as his Name is not in the *Windsor-Tables*, so it doth not <sup>m</sup> occur in the List of Mr. *Glover* printed by Mr. *Mills*.

Then as to Sir *Robert Knolles*, his military Exploits were beyond Imagination so illustrious, and his Enterprizes in warlike Actions of the greatest Hazards and Difficulties so surprisngly successful, that it remains a Question whether this <sup>n</sup> “*le veritable Demon de la Guerre*”, as he was called, *The true Thunderbolt* or *Demon of War*, owed more to his fortunate Chances or his Conduct. So that if he was not a Companion of this Order, which will be soon examined according to the Measure of the Light that this Publisher hath at present, yet one Paragraph which bears some relation to Heraldry will be excused.

If the Report of the later Historians is to be credited, that he was born of mean <sup>o</sup> Parentage in *Cheshire*, that Infelicity in his Extraction must have been a Bar against his Admission into this Order according to the Letter of the Statutes, which absolutely required the Qualification of a Descent from a gentile Ancestry. His Actions indeed were so wonderful and exceedingly meritorious, that he had the greatest Pretensions for the Indulgence of a Dispensation, if any such was grantable in that Age, and thereby to have entered into this highest Temple of Honour through that of Vertue only.

<sup>1</sup> Vinc. MS. in Offic. Armorum, n. 417.  
<sup>m</sup> De Nobilitate Politica & Civili, p. 170.

<sup>n</sup> L'Hist. de Charles 6. par le Laboureur, p. 78.  
<sup>o</sup> Fuller's *Worthies* in *Cheshire*, p. 179, &c.



It is very obvious, That two opposite Errors have been frequently committed touching the Descents of Persons, who have by the Strength of their own natural Genius, been the chief Artificers of their own Fortunes, and thereby suddenly exalted to great Heights in civil or military Employments, which are either on one Side out of Envy and Calumny, by debasing them below their true Originals; or on the other out of a servile Flattery, by complementing them with fabulous Pedigrees deduced from fictitious Ancestors of great Eminency, two Extrems to be avoided by an Officer of Arms with the utmost Abhorrence; for the First offends as much in the Defect, as the Latter doth in Excess, and both equally do Violence to Truth and Honour.

Whether the Memory of Sir Robert hath fallen under the Fate of this first Extreme would be a proper Enquiry, if it should appear that he was a Companion of this Order; but at present it may be sufficient to observe, that these modern Authors produce no Vouchers for their Assertion of his mean Extraction; possibly they had in their View the Words of *Walsingham* placed in the <sup>p</sup> Margin: But his Expression, "*ex paupere mediocriq; valet*", can never be extended to prove the Want of a gentle Descent, with those who are apprized of the Signification of that Word <sup>r</sup> *Valet* in former Ages; though admitting it then to import, as in the present Acceptation, the low Degree of a Servant, such mean Circumstances however will not necessarily infer a Lowness in Descent; for whatever greater political Capacities may be supposed to exist in any Person by an Estate of a larger yearly Value, Parentage is no more than common Sense or Honesty annexed to Acres, or, to use <sup>r</sup> *Chaucer's* Words, "*Gentry is not annexed to Possession*"; And a noble Blood doth often, like a River, throw it self into the Mouth of a Cave, and after running some Miles under Ground, rises again and emerges at an Outlet with greater Force; and 'tis only for Want of our Power to dive with it, that we cannot describe its Passages, which possibly may be more pure in that subterraneous Current, than if it had run on upon the Surface. *Hollinghead* seems to quote a Register of <sup>s</sup> *Bermondesey* for a Voucher of his mean Off-spring, whereof the Publisher hath <sup>t</sup> consulted one Copy which justifies not his Assertion, but extols his Bravery. "*In isto Bello [de Poictiers] de Robert Knollis milite Cestrie sic canebatur metrice*

" O Robert Knollis, per te fit Francia mollis,  
" Ense tuo tollis prædas, dans vulnera collis."

The Publisher is concerned that he is compelled to doubt, whether he was a Companion of this Order. Some <sup>u</sup> Manuscripts of late Date place him in the fifth Stall of the Sovereign's Side, as immediate Successor to Sir *Richard de la Vache*, and next before *Edward Charlton Lord Powis*.

<sup>p</sup> Hist. p. 165. *Robertus Knolles ex paupere mediocriq; valet* mox factus ductor militum, ad divitias usq; regales excrevit, &c.

<sup>q</sup> See du Fresne and other Glossographers, and long after the Age of Sir Robert, we meet in Fortescue de laudibus legum, c. 29. Sunt namq; Valecti diversi

in regione illa [*Anglia*] qui plusquam sexcenta scuta per annum expendere possunt.

<sup>r</sup> *Wife of Bath's Tale*.

<sup>s</sup> Hist. p. 105.

<sup>t</sup> In Bibl. Harley, 3 C. 14. p. 57.

<sup>u</sup> Vinc. MS. in Offic. Armor. n. 417.

There



There is no intermediate Person between these two in these Tables: Now this Sir Richard <sup>a</sup> died in the 39th of *Edw.* III, which was some time before the Birth of this Lord *Powis*, for he was <sup>b</sup> only thirty Years old in 3 *Hen.* IV; so that it follows of course that the Name of the immediate Successor to this Sir Richard must be omitted. But it seems not reasonable to believe, that Sir Robert supplied this Vacancy; for though he was a distinguished Commander at the Time of the Death of Sir Richard, yet if he had been seated in this Stall upon his Death, in 39 *Edw.* III, he should have continued a Companion during the Remainder of that Reign, throughout that of Richard II, and 'till <sup>c</sup> 15 Aug. 8 Henry IV, when he himself died, and yet we do not find him named in the <sup>d</sup> Wardrobe-accounts of the 7, 11, 12, 13 and 22 *Rich.* II; which is a negative Argument of some Strength, when accompanied with the Silence of the *Windsor-Tables*.

But though we cannot as yet ascertain him to have been a Knight of the *Garter*, let not *England* lose the Honour of the Birth of him, who was so great a Terror to *France*, that the <sup>e</sup> Memorial of his Valour remains fresh in a common Expression in that Kingdom, for some of our Writers have too hastily supposed him a *Briton* born, being doubtless led into that Error by an Expression in <sup>f</sup> *Froissart*, which means no more than that he had a large Inheritance in that Dutchy, deservedly granted by *John de Montfort* in reward for his Recovery of that Country for him, whereof he was made Governour for some time, and had the <sup>g</sup> Castles of *Derval* and *de Rouge* convey'd to him and his Heirs in Fee by a Treaty.

As we are not then implicitly to believe these Catalogues, so we must be on our Guard with reference to several Authors in print, who have taken the Liberty of placing several Knights into this Order, without any foundation. <sup>h</sup> Mr. *Vincent*, a very worthy and industrious Herald, promised to publish the Lives of the Knights-Companions, but his early Death prevented that Work, which is very much to be lamented, considering the Character given of his Abilities by the great <sup>i</sup> Mr. *Selden*, and the Opportunities he had, as a Clerk in the *Tower*, of consulting the Records, to have compleated that Undertaking with Success: However in his Book of the Discovery of the Errors of *Ralph Brooke*, there are *Garthers* round the Arms of several Noblemen who were never Knights of this Order, as *Guy* Earl of *Warwick*, who died in a Reign preceding that of the Founder, of *Henry* Duke of that Place, of the two *Edwards* Sons of *Rich.* III. and *Hen.* VIII, of *George Nevill* Duke of *Bedford*, of *Ralph* Earl of *Stafford* and *Hugh* his Son, of *Robert Umfreville* Earl of *Angus*, of

<sup>a</sup> Sir Richard de la Vache had the Constablenesship of the Tower of London for Life, by Patent, 35 E. 3. p. 1. m. 33. And that Office was granted to Sir Allen Boxhull [Knight also of the Garter] by Patent 39 E. 3. for Life.

<sup>b</sup> Esc. 3 H. 4. n. 40. post mortem Johan. Cherlton.

<sup>c</sup> Leland's Collect. edit. Hearne, p. 485. Weaver's Fun. Mon. p. 436. Fuller's Worthies, Cheshire, p. 179. Chron. Godstovian — ad calcem vitæ, Tho. Mori, p. 240. MS. in Offic. Arm. inter Cod. Ducis

Norfolc. n. 5. Walsingham's Hist. p. 419, places it in 7 H. 4.

<sup>d</sup> See above p. 10. Note a. P. 12. Notes d, e, f, and p. 13, Note f.

<sup>e</sup> Wever's Fun. Mon. p. 436. Lambert's Perambul. of Kent, p. 292, &c.

<sup>f</sup> Vol. 1. p. 331.

<sup>g</sup> Lobineau l'Hist. de Bretagne, p. 381.

<sup>h</sup> In his Dedication of his Discovery of Errors committed by Ralph Brooke.

<sup>i</sup> His Letter prefixed to that Book.



*William of Bavaria Earl of Leiceſter, of John Earl of Oxford who died in 18 Hen. VIII, and of ſeveral others; and on the Reverse, the Arms of ſeveral Noblemen who were certainly Companions, are not encircled with Garters, as of John Vere Earl of Oxford, who died in 4 Hen. VIII, of the Earls of Northumberland, Worceſter, Glouceſter, and Salisbury above-mentioned.*

If then our own Officers of Arms commit ſuch inexcusable Miſtakes, which have hitherto remained uncorrected, it is the leſs to be wondered that foreign Hiſtorians having not ſuch Conveniencies of Inſtruction, ſhould run into the like Errors, eſpecially with regard to Perſons who have long ſince left the Stage of Life. Before the Inſtances of this nature are given, it may be a Juſtice due to the Memory of *Philip de Commines*, to reſcue him from the Faults committed by the Ignorance or Careleſſneſs of his Tranſcribers or Printers, who place one *Vaucſer* in this Order, for the Fidelity of that moſt judicious Politician is above Suſpicion, and he was ſo well acquainted with the Enſigns of our Order, that he could not be impoſed upon in that Particular. The Subſtance of the Narrative then is, That the Earl of *Warwick*, Captain of *Calais*, having his Son-in-law *George Duke of Clarence* in his company, failed thither, expecting entrance into that Garriſon from his Lieutenant *Monſieur de Vaucſer, Vaucloe, Varebe, or Uvaroloc* (for in theſe different Manners that Name hath been ſpelt in ſeveral Editions) who inſtead of admitting this his Principal, turned the Canon of that Place againſt him, which Refuſal was ſo ſatisfactory to *Edw. IV.* that in Reward for that Action, he granted him a Patent of that Office (as 'tis expreſſed) “ in Chief, he being a wiſe and antient Knight, that bore the Order of the Garter.” With this Perſon our Hiſtorian then tranſacted Affairs of the utmoſt Secrecy and Importance; and at length he informs us, that all this Behaviour was Artifice and Diſſimulation, for that in a ſhort time this *Vaucſer* publickly embraced the Intereſt of this Earl, and wore his Livery as ſoon as *Edw. IV.* had fled into *Burgundy*.

<sup>b</sup> *Hall* and <sup>i</sup> *Hollingſhead*, without producing any Voucher, call this *Vaucſer* a *Gascoign*, who might with equal Liſenſe have made him a *Savoyard* or *Bretagne*, in which latter Countries there were conſiderable Families of this Surname. But the Collector, from ſeveral Inducements, believes, that *Commines* deſigned the Lord *Wenlock* [a Name eaſily corrupted into *Uvaroloc* by an ignorant *French Amanuenſis*] Knight of this Order, numbered 181 in the Catalogue, who was <sup>k</sup> on the 26th of May 10 *Edw. IV.* certainly conſtituted Lieutenant of the Town and Marches of *Calais*, by a Patent directly from the Crown, that is in Chief, which was in the <sup>l</sup> Month after this Earl of *Warwick* failed from *Dartmouth* [towards *Calais*]; and which is remarkable, this Lord *Wenlock* afterwards adhered to the Faction of this Earl, and was killed in the <sup>m</sup> Battle of

<sup>a</sup> *L. 3. ch. 4. p. 149.*

<sup>b</sup> *In bis Hiſt. of Ed. 4. f. 16. b.*

<sup>c</sup> *Hiſt. p. 636.*

<sup>d</sup> *Fran. 10 E. 4. m. 11. dilectus & fidelis noſter Jo. Wenlock Miles conſtituitur locumtenens noſter villæ noſtræ Cales & Marchiarum ibidem ſicut Radul-*

*phus Sudeley de Sudeley Miles & Johannes Stourton de Stourton habuerunt 26 May, & 25 Apr. m. 6.*

<sup>e</sup> *Hollingſh. p. 676. Chron. addit. an Monſtrelet p. 34. place it in May.*

<sup>f</sup> *Vinc. MS. in Offic. Arm. n. 18. p. 137 b. Polyd. Virg. p. 530.*



*Terwksbury* on the Fourth of *May* following, and in the " Month of *July* the Lord *Hastings* had the Lieutenancy of *Calis*, with an especial Power to reduce that Place to the King's Obedience.

The next Instances are not Mistakes of the Press, but Errors in Fact: Thus the *French* Authors, with a common Voice, place the " Marquis de *Fronssac* (usually called the Marshal de *St. Andre*) a Companion of the *Garter* in 1550; for which Assertion they can have no other Grounds, than that this Marshal brought hither the Ensigns of the " Order of *St. Michael* to our *Edw. VI.* at a Time when the Hatchments for *Hen. II.* King of *France*, elected Knight of the *Garter*, were hung up at *Windsor*.

A Writer on the Subject of " Military Orders vouches the celebrated Sir *Francis Drake* to have been a Companion of this Order. This worthy Sea-Commander was indeed meritoriously " dubbed [a Knight Bachelor] at *Deptford* near *Greenwich* by the Queen's Majesty, 4 *Apr.* 1581, " being in the Ship wherewith he had travailed about the World." Which Expression, by the Way, may import no more, than that this Knighthood was by her Majesty's Command, and in her Presence, conferred upon him by the Hands of some actual Knight; for though all Sovereignty in its utmost Plenitude, and the Right of conveying Honours, is as entirely and substantially vested in Queens Regents, as in Kings themselves, yet even the Latter were not in former Ages thought empowered by their bare Accession to the Throne to confer Knighthoods; so that the Collating that Degree was deferred 'till such time as they themselves had regularly received Knighthoods; thus pure and unblemished, by the Laws of Chivalry, was this Character to be preserved and conveyed in a constant Knightly Succession. Under the Reign of Queen *Mary*, it may not be improper to treat of the Methods whereby Sovereign Princesses conferred Knighthoods; so that at present it may be sufficient to hint, that though the Sovereignty of the *Garter* devolved upon *Hen. VI.* in his Infancy, and that Robes of the Order were " immediately made for him, and a Mantle was deposited in the Chapter-House at *Windsor*, and his Fees due to the " College were paid, yet he afterwards received the Degree of " Knighthood from his Uncle the Duke of *Bedford*, as *Edw. VI.* did from the Hands of his Uncle the Protector, authorised thereto by Virtue of Letters Patent; thus *Francis I.* notwithstanding the Sovereignty of the Order of *St. Michael* had devolved upon him,

" *Fran.* 11 E. 4. m. 30. dilecto & fideli nostro *Willmo Hastings* de *Hastynge* Militi consiliar. & Camerario nostro & locumtenenti nostro villæ nostræ *Cales*, castri ejusdem, ac turris de *Rysebank* necnon marchiarum ibidem ad recipiendum dictam villam pro celeriori reductione ejusdem ad obedientiam & possessionem nostras 22 *Julij*.

" *Anselme l'Hist. Genealog.* vol. 1. p. 634. *Moreri* Diction. in voce *Albon*. *Roque* traite de Noblesse, p. 370.

" *Journal of Ed. VI.* printed in the second Volume of *Burnet's History of the Reformation*, in the Appendix.

" *Beloy* Origine de Chevalerie, p. 90.

" *Claudius*. C. 3. in *Bibl. Cotton*.

" *Comput. Rob. Rollston* Clerici, Custodis Magn. Garder. a vigilia *S. Michael*. 1 *Hen. VI.* pro uno anno

[*penes Rememorator. Regis*] Dom. Regi pro i Roba fac. de pann. scarlet. & furr. cum Menev. gr. colar. & manic. cum bestes de *Erm.* & *Erm.* ventr. de liberat. fraternitatis *S. Georgii* superoperat. cum *Gart.* de serico & auro de *Cipre* cum isto dictamine, *Hony soit q. male y pense*, fac. pro dicto Dom. R. contra fest. *S. Georgii* infra tempus prædict. de liberatura *S. Georgii*.

i uln. dim. pann. scarlet.  
xxvi } *Erm.* { bests  
i Timbr. } ventr.  
v Timbr. Men. gr.  
xlii cum literis auri *Garters*.

" See above, p. 19, Note 2.

" *Stow's Ann.* p. 604. *Rymeri Fœdera*, &c.



received Knighthood from *Peter Bayard* 17 Kal. Oct. 1515, and that there is an exprefs Clause in the Statutes of the *Golden Fleece* in the Cafes of the Minority of a Duke of *Burgundy*, or the Defcent of that Dutchy to an Heirefs: But of this more will be faid in treating upon the Sovereign's Stall under *Hen. VI.*

Under this Head may be fitly placed another Miftake committed in thefe *Catalogues*, by fplitting or cutting one Perfon into two diftinct Knights; which hath happened as late as the Reign of *Henry VII.* when a Perfon was elected by an inferior Title, and chanced afterwards to have a greater One by Defcent: Thus *Tho. Fitzalan* Earl of *Arundel*, is numbered 228, whereas he muft be the fame Perfon who was before numbered 208, by the Title of Lord *Mautravers*, and as fuch was elected 13 *Edw. IV.* and prefent at the Feaft of St. *George* in 2 *Hen. VII.* in his Father's Life-time; after whose Death, being ftiled (as he really was) Earl of *Arundel* in 3 *Hen. VII.* he is therefore divided into two *Knights*; tho' 'tis certain, there could be no other than this fame *Tho. Fitzalan* Earl of *Arundel* or Lord *Mautravers*, in all this Tract of Time; and in Truth, he continued *Knight* of the *Garter* for Fifty Years, being chofen in his Youth by *Edw. IV.* with fome refpect doubtlefs to his Marriage with the Sifter of his Queen.

III. The third Propofition, that the *Catalogues* place the Elections of fome Knights under the Reigns of Kings, in whose Time they could not be elected, will be evident from the following Instances.

Sir *Thomas Felton*, numbered 49, is placed in them as elected under the Reign of *Edw. III.* whereas the *Windsor-Tables* make him Succellor to Sir *Hugh Wrotesly* the Founder, in the 10th Stall on the Sovereign's Side, which Sir *Hugh* did \* not die 'till 4 *Rich. II.* fo that *Felton* could not be a *Knight* of the *Garter* 'till after that time.

Sir *John Sulbie*, numbered 109, is placed as elected under *Henry IV.* whereas the *Windsor-Tables* affure us, he fucceeded *Reginald* Lord *Cobham* in the 9th Stall of the Prince's Side, which *Reginald* died 5 Oct. 35 *Ed. III.* fo that *Sulbie* then fucceeded, unlefs there fhould be fome intermediate Perfon between them omitted in thefe *Tables*: However that fhould be, his Election could not be fo late as the Reign of *Henry IV.* becaufe \* Mr. *Afhmole* himfelf hath prefented us with a *Wardrobe-Account* of the 7th Year of *Rich. II.* when this Sir *John Sulbie* received the Habit of the *Garter*.

*Richard* Earl of *Arundel*, numbered 30, is placed under the Reign of *Edw. III.* whereas the *Windsor-Tables* make him Succellor to Sir *Nele Loring* in the 9th Stall of the Prince's Side, which Sir *Nele* did not \*\* die 'till 9 *Rich. II.*

The Cafes of Sir *Soudan de la Trau* and of Sir *Simon Felbrigge* will be fhewn to be of the like Nature, in that Part of this Specimen where the Memorials of their Lives will be given.

\* *Afhmole's History of the Garter*, p. 300.  
 † *Efc.* 35. F. 3. n. 62.

‡ *History*, p. 213.  
 \*\* *Efc.* 9. R. 2. n. 20.



*Richard Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*, the *Father of all Courtesy*, is numbered 124, and his Election placed in the Catalogues under the Reign of *Hen. V*; but it appears from his own Historian <sup>a</sup> *John Rous*, that he was a Companion of this Order before the 9th Year of *Hen. IV*, and <sup>b</sup> *Dugdale* places his Election soon after the Battle of *Shrewsbury*, which was on *Saturday* the Vigil of *St. Mary Magdalen*, in the Fourth of that Reign.

*Robert Count Palatine Duke of Bavaria*, afterwards *Emperor*, is numbered 91, and placed in the Catalogues as elected in the Reign of *Hen. IV*. <sup>c</sup> *Dr. Heylin* conjectures that his Election was in the first Year of that King, because he is entered in the *Windsor-Tables* *Duc de Bavayre Robert*, whereas he became *Emperor* in 1400; and as he goes on "possibly with a View to the Marriage in 1402, between his Son and the Lady *Blanch* the King's Daughter." The Doctor's Argument is so far conclusive, that he must be a Knight of this Order before the 21st of *August* 1400, when he was chosen *Emperor*; but since he had the Title of Duke of *Bavaria* long ere that time, it doth not follow he was not admitted into this Order before that first Year of *Hen. IV*; and in Fact 'tis certain, he was a <sup>d</sup> Companion in 22 *Rich. II*, when by the Stile of Duke of *Bavaria* he received the Robes of the *Garter*, having two Years before, together with his Son, performed 'Homage to that King; so that the Supposition that his Election might be on some Prospect to the Marriage between his Son and the Daughter of *Hen. IV*, is entirely precarious.

*John Beaufort* Marquess of *Dorset* is numbered 92, and Sir *William Arundell* 104, as both elected under the Reign of *Hen. IV*, whereas both of them received the <sup>f</sup> Habits of the *Garter* in 22 *Rich. II*.

Here then is sufficient Evidence that in these Catalogues the Reigns of the Kings are mistaken, wherein several of the Knights were elected. Let us now examine on what Grounds <sup>g</sup> Mr. *Ashmole* averred, That the Knights, from the Beginning of the Reign of *Hen. V*, are marshalled in his Catalogue according to an exact Series of their Elections.

He fixed on that *Æra* doubtless, because the Annals of the Order commence in the fourth Year of that Reign: But there being large Chasms in them, it is a bold Attempt to be positive in settling the Priority of the Knights elected in the Intervals, where this Register is entirely silent; but which is a great Misfortune, if we should rely solely on the Authority of these Annals themselves, we may possibly be led into some chronological Errors; for Dr. *Aldrydge*, (as hath been already observed, and which comes now to be proved,) hath made Variations in some Dates. And Instances will be soon produced of Mistakes in the Catalogues of the Times of Elections of the Companions, as well where this *Black-Book* is express, as in the Years where it is silent.

<sup>a</sup> *Dugdale's Warwickshire*, p. 325.

<sup>b</sup> *Baron. vol. 1. p. 243.*

<sup>c</sup> *History of St. George*, p. 423.

<sup>d</sup> See above, p. 13, Note f.

<sup>e</sup> *Rymer, vol. 7. p. 854, 855, 859.*

<sup>f</sup> See above, p. 13, Note f.

<sup>g</sup> *History*, p. 710.



<sup>b</sup> Dr. Heylin hath already remarked, that the Viscount *Wells* succeeded Sir *Edward Wydeville* in the same Stall, which Mr. *Asmole* must have overlooked when he placed the Viscount prior to this Knight in Election; though even the Succession in the eighth Stall on the Prince's Side in the *Windsor-Tables*, printed by himself, might have suggested that Amendment to him.

As to the Suggestion that the *Black-Book* it self may mis-guide us without due Care, let us first examine some of the Dates therein. A Chapter is entered to have been held on the Vigil of St. George, 22 Hen. VI. A. D. 1444, by *Humfry* Duke of *Buckingham* Lieutenant in the Absence of the King, then intent on his matrimonial Affairs, for in this Year (as this Book relates) he married the Lady *Margaret*; at which Feast, the Stall void by the Death of the Duke of *Somerfet*, was not filled.

Here is a strange Jumble of Anachronisms; for this *Humfry* [*Stafford*] was not then advanced to be Duke of *Buckingham*, and the Duke of *Somerfet* lived to the 27th of <sup>i</sup> May in this 22d Year, and received the <sup>k</sup> Robes of this Order against the Feast held that Year, if there be no Mistake in the Date of a Wardrobe-account; and the King was not married 'till the following Year.

<sup>l</sup> Mr. *Asmole* acquaints us, that this Feast is placed in the 23d of Hen. VI, in the *Registrum Chartaceum*, and it must have been then held, for the Warrant for making a Commission for that purpose still remains; and though the certain Year of the King's Reign is not affixed to it, yet there are Characteristicks to ascertain its Date to the 23d of Hen. VI; for the King ordered this Warrant from *Southwike*, a Priory in *Hampshire* near the Abby of *Tichfield*, where we find by a <sup>m</sup> Record he continued the next Day, and there married the Queen on the <sup>n</sup> 22d of that Month; and this Duke of *Buckingham* had not that Title conferred on him 'till on the <sup>o</sup> 14th of *September*, in the former Part of this 23d Year, who was afterwards thus constituted Lieutenant, by reason of the Queen's Indisposition contracted by her Voyage on the Sea. The <sup>p</sup> Signet is very particular, and is therefore inserted at length.

“ **R**ight Reverend Fadre in God our trusty and right welbeloved,  
 “ we grete you wel; and suppose, that ye have wel in know-  
 “ leghe, how that oure moost dere and bestbeloved wyf the Quene  
 “ is yet seke of the labour and indisposition of the See, by occa-  
 “ sion of which the <sup>q</sup> *Pokkes* been broken outt upon hir: for which  
 “ cause we maye not in oure own personne holde the Feste of  
 “ Sainte George at oure Castel of *Wyndesore* upon Saint George's day

<sup>b</sup> *History of St. George*, p. 426.

<sup>i</sup> *Efc.* 22 H. 6. *Glooc. Suffex.*

<sup>k</sup> *Liber Cotom.* in *Offic. Garder.*

<sup>l</sup> *Hist.* p. 265, 266.

<sup>m</sup> *Rymer in an Instrument of that Date.*

<sup>n</sup> *See the Historians of England.*

<sup>o</sup> *Cart.* 23 H. 6. n. 33.

<sup>p</sup> *In the White Chappel within the Tower of London, among the Privy Seals not ranged under any certain Year.*

<sup>q</sup> *Compot. Hugon. Waterton de expensis Cameræ & Garder. Dom. Comitis Derbiæ ab ultimo Sept. anno Regni Reg. Rich. secundi xi. pro Medicina emptâ pro Domino quando Dominus infirmabatur de les Pokkes per duas vices xi s. iiii d. & pro Medicinis per Medicum emptis eodem tempore xxvii s. viii d. In Officio Ducatus Lancastr.*

*Chaucer in the Prologue to the Pardoners Tale, Of Pockis and of Scabbes, and of every Sore Shall every Shepe be hole* —



“ next comyng. Wherefore we wol that ye make out our lettres of  
 “ Commission under oure Gret Seel in due forme yeving power by the  
 “ same unto oure right trusty and entierly welbeloved Cousins the Duks  
 “ of *Excestre* and *Buks*, and eyther of theym to holde the saide Feste in  
 “ oure behave at the day and place abovesaid, with other Lordes and  
 “ Knights of the Garter, such as we have commanded to be there:  
 “ and that herein be no defaulte as our greet trust is in you. Yeven  
 “ under our Signet at *Southwyk* the xvith day of *Apr*.

Endorsed.

“ *To the right reverend fader in God oure*  
 “ *Right trusty and right welbeloved*  
 “ *tharchebisshop of Canterbury oure*  
 “ *Chancellor of Englande.*

The next Entry in this *Black-Book* is a Feast said to be held on 12 *May* 23 *Hen. VI.* [*A. D.* 1445.] where a Scrutiny is entred after the Death of Sir *Hertonk Van Clux*, whereas the Inscription on his Monument placed his Death in the following Year. That Tomb perished in the Fire of *London*, so that Date depends on the Authority of *Stowe*, and others who viewed it, which will be considered in the Narrative of his Life.

The following Entry in this Book, is a Chapter said to be held at the *Lion* in *Brentford* the xi *July*, which was, as he saith, on the *Sunday* of the *Relicks* in 24 of *Hen. VI.* an inauspicious Entrance, for the xi of *July* in 1446 was on *Monday*, the Dominical Letter being *B.* As this Doctor unfortunately erred in the former Instance, by placing the Transactions back for one Year; so in the present Case he runs them one Year too forward: which is evident, in that the Names of *Albro Vasques Dalmadea*, Sir *John Beauchamp*, and Sir *Thomas Hoo*, are then in the Scrutiny inserted here in this 24th Year, by which account *Dalmadea* could not be a Companion of the Order 'till after that Scrutiny. But we know from a Record, that he was certainly a Knight of the *Garter* before the 4th of *August* in 23 *Hen. VI.* [*A. D.* 1445.] because the King then creating him Earl of *Davarans* or *Aurenches* in *Normandy*, recites, “ *Ipsum in Militem*  
 “ *ac Socium & Fratrem de Garteriâ ex unanimi consensu Societatis ejusdem*  
 “ *elegimus & realiter investivimus*”, so that he was elected before this time, and hence we may correct a small Slip of *Mr. Ashmole*, who thought him to have been an Earl before the Time of his Election into this Order, and on that Supposition makes some Observations on the Method of placing his Name in these Scrutinies.

Now the xi of *July*, in the 23 *Hen. VI.* [*A. D.* 1445.] was on a *Sunday*, and doubtless he was then elected; and it may be forgiven to observe here, that there being no Place remaining for him, *Mr. Ashmole*

<sup>r</sup> *Survey of London.*  
 Vinc. M.S. in Off. Arm. n. 40. p. 192.  
 H. 8. penes me p. 109.

<sup>s</sup> *Rymer vol. 11. p. 95. Selden's Titles of Honour,*  
 p. 436.  
<sup>t</sup> *History*, p. 281.



hath attributed Arms to him different from those in a " Manuscript, and also to hint, that though there is a *Town* in *Estremadura* called *Almadea*, yet this Family (which is ranked among the principal Ones of *Portugal* in King *Emanuel's* Register) retains a Tradition, that their Descent is originally from an \* *English* Knight present at the Taking of *Lisbon*: However that may be, our worthy Knight had the Misfortune to be slain in the Field, together with the Duke of *Coimbro* another Companion of this Order, at the Battle of *Alfata Robera*, on the 20th of *May* 1449. 27 *Hen. VI.*

Let us now see if the Compilers of these *Catalogues* have any better Success in marshalling the Seniority of the Knights elected under the same King in the Years preceeding the Commencement of this Register.

*Thomas Montacute* Earl of *Sarum* is numbered 125, and placed the fifteenth Knight elected under the Reign of *Hen. V*: But since he received the 2 Robes of the *Garter* in the third Year, it is evident his Name should have preceeded that of the Emperor *Sigismond*. <sup>a</sup> Mr. Brooke was therefore extremely wrong in bringing down his Election to the 6th of *Hen. VI*: The *Windsor-Tables* place him as Successor in the twelfth Stall on the Sovereign's Side to Sir *John Stanley*, who received the <sup>b</sup> Habits in 1 *Hen. V.* and <sup>c</sup> died on the 6th of the Ides of *January* in that same Year at *Ardye* in *Ireland*, whereon his Sword was sold by the <sup>d</sup> College. Let no Honours be delayed to the Memory of this most heroick Earl, who deserved the highest Degrees and Extent of them: His unfortunate Death by a Cannon-ball was duly lamented, when his Merits were fresh in such moving <sup>e</sup> Strains of Grief, as must affect us at this Distance of Time.

And let us try the same Experiment in the Years where this *Black-Book* is silent: There is a Vacuity or Hiatus in it from the 15th to the 22d or rather 23d of *Hen. VI.* In this Interval *Henry* Duke of *Visen* is numbered 153, and placed before *Gaston de Foix* Earl of *Longueville*, numbered 155, yet 'tis certain this Earl was senior by Election to this Duke; for this Duke being Successor to Sir *Simon Felbrigge*, who made his <sup>f</sup> Will on 21 *Sept.* 21 *Hen. VI.* his Election must be subsequent to that Period; whereas a Record assures us, that this Earl of *Longueville* received the

<sup>a</sup> M. 7. in Offic. Arm. p. 21.  
<sup>x</sup> Menestrier Preuves de la Noblesse, p. 503 & p. 498.  
<sup>y</sup> H. 8. penes me p. 316.  
<sup>z</sup> See above p. 15. Note k.  
<sup>a</sup> In his Catalogue of the Nobility, in the Title Salisbury.  
<sup>b</sup> See above p. 14. Note g.  
<sup>c</sup> Gloveri Collectiones inter Cod. MSS. Philpoti in Offic. Armorum n. 17. p. 12.  
<sup>d</sup> Compot. Joh. Eston Præcentoris 1 *Hen. V.* de duabus mantellis vendend. & uno gladio, qui fuit Joh. Stanley, &c. In *Ærario* Windesor.  
<sup>e</sup> Caligula D. 5. in Bibl. Cotton. Credence from the King to Garter King of Arms, to be delivered unto my Lord of Bedford, 20 Nov. 7 *Hen. VI.* wherein he is to declare to him the Report of the lamentable ta-

king oute of yis world of his rixt dere and welbeloved Cousin Yerde of Salisbury, the which as my said Lord of Bedford, as also every true Subgit of the Kyngs knoweth, was in his lyve so trewe diligent and bebovesful to the Kyng in France and elsewhere, that save oonly the pleasurc of our Lord, it is to grete a hevynesse to the Kyng and to my Lord of Gloucester, as also to the remanent of my Lords of the Kyngs Counseil to remembre, and ——— so grete a losse and chastysing of the merciful hand of God as is the passing of his personne yat was so bebovesful to the Kyng and his landes, &c. after the grete rejoysement and comforte yat is likly the Kyngs Ennemys in yec parties will have of the said my Lord of Salisbury passing, &c.

<sup>f</sup> See hereafter in the Narrative of his Life in this Book.



8 Robes of the Garter in 17 *Hen. VI.*, and the *Windsor-Tables* concur in this *Ara*, for this Earl is there placed in the eleventh Stall of the Sovereign's Side, after the Translation of the Duke of *Gloucester* to that of *Edward* King of *Portugal*, which King died on the 19th of *September* 1438, in the Beginning of the 17th Year of *Hen. VI.*

There is another Chasm in this Book from the 4th to the 8th Year of *Hen. VII.*, and from thence to the 14th Year; in which Intervals *Arthur* Prince of *Wales* and the Duke of *Calabria* were elected, which Duke in the Catalogues preceeds the Prince, though this Prince was installed on the Eve of <sup>b</sup> *St. George's* Feast in the sixth Year of *Hen. VII.*, and this Duke of *Calabria* was not elected 'till about the 8th Year, and received the <sup>i</sup> Ensigns of the Order with great Ceremony on the 18th of *May*

8 Penes Rememorat. Regis in Scaccario. Particulæ compoti Rob. Rolleston Custodis Mag. Garderobæ a vigilia S. Michael. anno 17 *Hen. VI.* pro uno anno.

Comiti de Longevile ad i mantell. fac. de velvet. blod. lin. cum tarterin alb. de liberat. Fraternitatis S. Georgij garnif. super stapul. finistr. cum i Gart. operat. in brouder. de armis S. Georgij in medio cum feric. auri & argenti Cipr. more consueto super faryn blod. ad carde & laqueat. ante pectus cum i laq. feric. blod. cum knapp. & tassell. feric. per literam dorman. dat. 19 Febr. anno xiiii.

i pec. v. uln. de velvet plan.

vii uln. de tarterin.

i cum knopp & Tassell. ponder. iii unc. laq. feric. operat. cum armis S. Georgij Gart.

Eidem ad i gown. long. fac. de pann. scarlet cum manicis rotundis garnif. cum Gart. & furr. cum Men. pur. & purflat. cum Ermys per Coler. & manus, & i capuc. de eodem pann. consimiliter garnif. cum Gart. & fact. cum i rotul. de pann. nigr. Stuff. cum Cotom per breve & billam prædict.

v uln. dim. pan. scarlet.

dim. uln. pann. coler. cut.

viii terg. Ermins.

xxvii tymbr. de Men. pur.

C. Gart.

dim. lib. Cotom.

<sup>b</sup> Henri, &c. To the Treasurer, &c. Forasmuche as we purpose to have the Fest of Sainte George kept and observed at oure Castell and College of Wyndesore the 8th Day of Maye next comyng: At whiche tyme we have determined (God willing) to have oure dearest Son the Prynce, to be enstalled Knight of oure Noble Ordre of the Garter ye do deliver on hundredth marks sterl. to be employed aboute the sd busynesse And to deliver also two Tonnes of Good wine 2d May (6 H. 7.) Bele. In Off. Pellium.

Henri, &c. To the Tresurer, &c. Forasmuche as we be enfourmed by our trusty servaunt John Saxilby Clerc of our Grene clothe, that there is owing to certain creditors for the expenses of the Fest of Saint George bolden at our Castell of Wyndesore the ixth day of May last nine pounds, &c. over and above the som of on hundredth markes and two tonnes of Wyne. Ye pay the same, &c. Yeven under our prive seall thryd of July the sixt yer of our Reigne.

<sup>i</sup> Fra. 8 H. 7. m. 10. Rex omnibus, ad quos, &c. Salutem.

Notum esse omnibus concupiscimus quod,

Cum intellexerimus Serenissimum Principem *Alphonsum Calabria Ducem*, Illustrissimi Principis *Neapolis* Regis Filium Primogenitum, non modo Sanguinis Nobilitate & Sapientia fulcitum, verum etiam in Rebus Bellicis Strenuum, innumerisque cæteris Virtutibus perhenni memoratu dignis præditum, quo Ille omni Re insigni merito decorandus est,

Eundem *Consanguineum nostrum* in Ordinem *Militiæ Garteræ* & in ejusdem Ordinis Confratrem, unanimo Consensu nostro & Confratrum ipsius Ordinis nostrorum, eligi & insigniri fecimus;

Quocirca,

De Fidelitatibus Industriisque & providis Circumspectionibus, Dilectorum & Fidelium nostrorum, Magistri *Cristofori Ursenye* Decani Ecclesiæ Cathedralis Sancti Petri Eborum ac Magni Eleemosinarii nostri, *Humfredi Talbot* Militis Marescalli Villæ nostræ *Calesii*, & *Torke Herald* nostri ad *Arma*, plurimum confidentes,

Ipsos nostros veros & indubitatos Commissarios Oratores Procuratores Legatos Deputatos & Nuncios speciales Assignamus, Facimus, Constituimus & Ordinamus per Præsentes,

Dantes & Concedentes eisdem, & eorum cuilibet, conjunctim & divisim, Tenore Præsentium, Potestatem & Auctoritatem ipsam *Consanguineum nostrum* ad Ordinem prædictum, per Nos & Nomine nostro, Acceptandi, & in Confratrem & Commitem ejusdem Ordinis Admittendi, Præficiendi, & Insigniendi.

Eique Munera & Insignia dicti Ordinis, quibus cæteri Confratres ejusdem insigniri solent, Tradendi & Deliberandi,

Juramentumque, de observandis ejusdem Ordinis Statutis, ab eo, prout moris est, Exigendi & Recipiendi,

Cæteraque omnia & singula, quæ in Præmissis vel circa ea necessaria fuerint seu quomodolibet oportuna, Faciendi & Expediendi, ita & eodem modo prout Nos ipsi faceremus & facere possemus si personaliter interessemus.

In cujus, &c.

Teste Rege apud *Westmonasterium* Quinto Die Martii. Per ipsum Regem. Rymer, vol. 12, p. 517.

Liber Comput. in Off. Pellium Mich. 8 *Hen. 7.* Job. Fligh valecto Garderobæ Regis pro xviii virgis de blew Velvet pro usu Dom. Regis, viz. pro uno Mantello pro Duce de *Calabre* fiend. ac pro vi virgis de Scarlet pro una toga & Capicio pro eodem Duce cum certis Garter. & aliis necessariis pro eisdem mantello, toga, & capicio empt. xxxv l. vii s. iiii s.

*Alfonso*



May in the following Year, in presence of his Father *Ferdinand I.* King of *Naples*, who was also a Companion of this Order, and the Fees of his <sup>k</sup> Installation were paid in the 9th Year.

During these Defects in the *Black-Book*, *Sir Gilbert Talbot* is in the Catalogue numbered 246, and *Henry Duke of York* numbered 249: The Commission for the Installation of <sup>l</sup> *Sir Gilbert* is dated 20 Dec. 11 Hen. VII. and though this Book is very profuse in the Entries about this Duke [afterwards *Henry VIII.*] by way of Complements, yet it hath omitted even the Time of his Installation, which we know was on <sup>m</sup> Sunday following the 12 May 10 Hen. VII, so that he should have preceeded *Sir Gilbert*.

Thus also *Thomas Marquess of Dorset* is numbered 240, and is made Senior to this Duke of *York*, whereas this Marquess succeeded his <sup>n</sup> Father in the same Stall, who did not die <sup>o</sup> till 20 Sept. 17 Hen. 7. so that his Election was several Years subsequent to that of this Duke.

Several other Examples will be found; so that a very late One will be only added, which is of the most Noble *William Seymour Marquess of Hertford*, numbered 459, placed after the Duke of *Albemarle* and the Earl of *Sandwich*, who were both chosen after the Restoration; whereas this noble Peer was constituted a Companion in <sup>p</sup> *Jersey*, by the King in his Exile, on 12 January 1649, while he was a Marquess, who was afterwards deservedly

*Alfonsus de Aragonia Dux Calabria Primogenius ac Vicarius Generalis Regis Siciliae, &c. Universis & singulis, presentes Litteras inspecturis, Salutem sincerique Amoris Intentum.*

*Notum facimus ac Testamur*, serie cum presenti, quemadmodum presenti Die Dominico decimo nono Mensis Maii Anno infrascripto in Civitate Sueffæ, in speciali Civitatis ipsius Ecclesia, astantibus atque intervenientibus Serenissimis Parentibus nostris, *Ferdinando*, Dei gratia, Rege Siciliae & Jerusalem, ac *Joanna Regina*, ejusdem Consorte, in Celebritate publica multorum Regulorum, ac plurimorum Nobilium, in Celebratione sollemnis Missæ, adhibitis debitis Sollemnitatibus, ac Ceremoniis servatis servandis, in Nomine individue Trinitatis, gratanter accepimus *Nobilissimum Insigne Garacterii* ad Nos transmissum, de Consensu Confratrum omnium, a Serenissimo Principe atque Illustrissimo Domino *Henrico*, Dei gratia, Angliæ Franciæque Rege Incito, portatumque ac Nobis datum ejusdem Mandato a Venerabili Domino *Cristofaro Ursuvis* Decano Ecclesiæ Sancti Petri Eborum Magno ipsius Domini Regis Eleemosinario, necnon a Magnifico Milite *Humphredo Talbooth* Marefcallo Castellii, Oratoribus ac Nunciis specialibus & Procuratoribus ad hæc deputatis ab eodem Domino Rege, una cum *Joanne Forko* Armorum Araldo,

A quibus quidem Oratoribus, Nomine & pro Parte ejusdem Serenissimi Domini Regis, de eodem Insigni Decorati atque Insigniti fuimus, & in Confratrem ac Commilitem Ordinis ipsius admissi & acceptati,

Quem quidem Ordinem, cum eodem Insigni, sponte & libenter, & in publico, ut prædicitur, Constituti, cum Capitulis ipsis Accepimus, eaque Præstitimus atque Servavimus, Præstituri ac Servaturi sumus omnia & singula quæ ut moris est præstari ac servari debent a Confratribus Ordinis ejusdem, cum optima Voluntate Animique dispositione atque observantia.

In quorum omnium Testimonium atque Fidem presentes Litteras fieri jussimus. nostra Manu sub-

scriptas, ac pendenti Magno nostro Sigillo in Pedemunitas.

Dat. in Civitate Sueffæ, Die Decimo nono Maii, Millesimo, Quadringentesimo, Nonagesimo tertio.

*Alfonso*

*Dominus Dux mandavit mihi Lo. de Casalmonio.*

*Rsta Cur. xv. f. Rymer vol. 12. p. 528.*

<sup>k</sup> E Libro Priv. Sigill. in Off. Pell. de Term. Pasch. 9 H. 7. *Willmo Fisher* Coferario pro expensis Installationis Regis de *Naples* apud *Wyndesore* xx marc.

<sup>l</sup> Inserted in the Narrative of his Life.

<sup>m</sup> In Offic. Pellium, Signed by the Monogram of Hen. 7. Right trusty and right welbeloved we grete you wel, and where we have lately addressed out our othre lettres of warrant under our prive seal for payment to be made of a certain somme of money to be employed upon the Fest of the Glorious Martyr St. George, which shall be at oure Castell of Windesore on Sunday next coming, We desire and pray you and neverthelesse charge you that the Day of the said Fest is at hand, And that for the moor honour thereof we have appointed our dereft second Son the Duc of York to be enstalled Knight of the Garter at the same time ye wol forthwith make redy payment, &c. 12 May in our tenth yer.

To our Rt. trusty and right welbeloved Knight and Counsellour Sir Robert Litton our Undertrefurer of England.

In the Book of Privy Seals Pasch. 10 H. 7. in Off. Pell. it appears that 100 marks were paid towards provision of victuals, and 25 l. 18 s. 6 d. more. As also 46 l. 13 s. 4 d. and 20 l. &c. the Feast being held on Sunday the 17th of May.

<sup>n</sup> Vinc. MS. in Off. Arm. n. 417.

<sup>o</sup> Esch. 17 H. 7.

<sup>p</sup> Register of the Garter, called Liber Carolinus, p. 14.

M

restored



restored by Act of Parliament to the Dukedom of *Somerset*, in *Sept.* 1660, because as the King in his Speech on the Adjournment, declared, "He was "an extraordinary Person, that had merited as much of his Royal Father "and Self, as Subject could do"; but he died on the 4th of *October* following, before any formal Installation.

IV. The fourth Proposition was, That the Persons of the *Knights* are mistaken in these Catalogues. Thus <sup>1</sup> Mr. *Asmole* places Sir *John Grey* of *Codnore* to be the *Founder* in the 8th Stall of the Sovereign's Side, and hath accordingly wrote the History of his Life, wherein he truly tells us this Sir *John* was living in 45 *Edw.* III, for which very reason he could not be the *Founder*, because the *Windsor-Tables* acquaint us that Sir *Walter Manny* succeeded him in this Stall. Now we are certain that this Sir *Walter* had the Habits of the *Garter* delivered him in the 34th and also in the 37th of *Edw.* III, which was many years before the Death of this Sir *John Grey* of *Codnore*: And thence we may infer, that it was another Sir *John* who was Knight of this Order, and that it was doubtless Sir *John Grey* of *Rotherfield*, whose Death happening 'on 1 *Oct.* 33 *Ed.* III. here was a Vacancy for Sir *Walter Manny*, for there was no Removal or Translations of Stalls in these early Times.

Thus again Mr. *Asmole* places in the 7th Stall of the Sovereign's Side, Sir *Hugh Courtenay*, who he "there saith died in 40 *Edw.* III. Now the *Windsor-Tables* assure us, that *William Bohun* Earl of *Northampton*, succeeded *Courtenay*, and *Edmund* (of *Langele*) Duke of *York*, succeeded *Bohun*. Now this Earl of *Northampton* obtained License to assign the "Advowson of *Dadyngton* to the *Custos* and Chaplains of *Windsor* in 24 *Ed.* III. And if this Benefaction was made (as it seems not improbable) upon the account of his being Knight of the *Garter*, then *Courtenay* must die very soon after the Institution. But however that may be, 'tis certain this Earl died 'on 16 *Sept.* 34 *Ed.* III. and even this Duke of *York*, by

<sup>1</sup> *History of the Garter*, p. 698.

<sup>2</sup> Comp. Joh. Norbury Custodis Magn. Garderob. 34 *Ed.* 3. m. 7. Will. de Gendale Armatori Dom. Regis ad fabricam cxxx *Garteriorum* operat. per Joh. de Colonia de novo broudrand. necnon ad facturam deccviii firmaculorum pro Robis Mil. de *Garterio* contra festum S. *Georgii* broudat. de auro & serico, &c.

m. 1. Domino Principi,  
Comitibus *Ultoniæ*,  
*Richmondia*, &  
*Sarum*.  
Dominis *Edmundo de Langele*,  
*Rich. la Vache*,  
*Hugoni Wrottesle*,  
*Reginaldo de Cobham*,  
*Bartholomæo Burghesish*.  
Domino *de Mohun*,  
*Waltero Manny*,  
*Nigello Loryng*,  
*Waltero Paveley*,  
*Willimo Fitzwarin*, &  
*Miloni de Stapelton*,

cuilibet eorum v. uln. pan. color. nig. long. & unam furrur. de CC ventr. Min. pur.

Comitibus *Staffordia*,  
*Warnici*,  
*Suffolchie*, &  
*Thomæ Ughtred*,

militibus de *Garterio*, cuilibet eorum vi uln. pan. nig. coloris long. & unam furrur. de cc ventr. Min. pur. ad robas sibi pro festo S. *Georgii* faciend. & capucias dictar. robar. linand. scil. cuilibet eorum iii quarter. unius uln. panni scarletti per litteram de privato sigillo.

<sup>3</sup> Rot. Comp. Henr. de Snaith Custodis magn. Garder. 37 *Ed.* 3. m. 12. Eidem [Johi de Glendale Armatori ad facturam mecl *Garteriorum* de tartarin pro Dom. Rege & aliis Militibus de Societate *Garterii* contra festum S. *Georgii* broudat. cum literis de auro & serico cum quodam dictamine Honny soit qui mal y pense & liberat. eisdem contra festum S. *Georgii*.

m. 3. Dom. Ducibus *Lancastria*, &c. as above in Page 6. Note d.

<sup>4</sup> Esch. 33 *E.* 3. n. 38.

<sup>5</sup> *Hist.* p. 696.

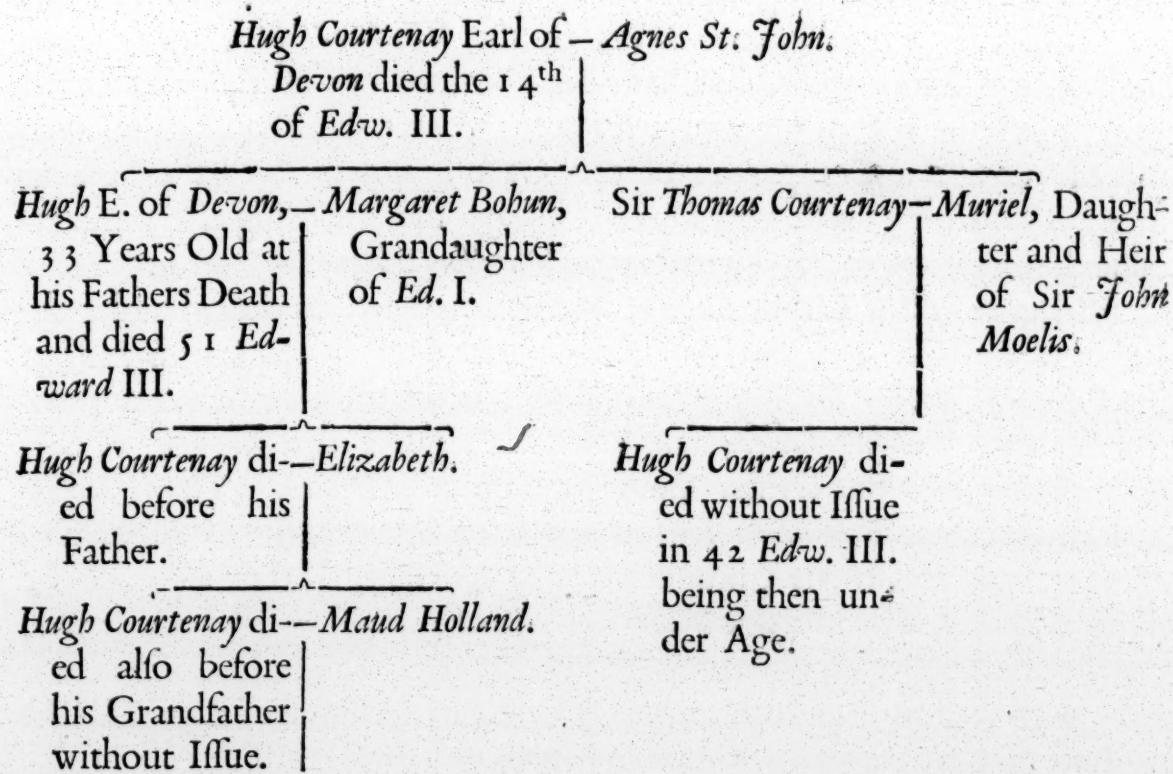
<sup>6</sup> Mon. Angl. de Ecclef. Colleg. p. 69.

<sup>7</sup> Mon. Angl. vol. 2. p. 68. Esch. 34 *E.* 3. n. 85.



the Name of *Edmund de Langele*, received Robes of the Garter in the <sup>2</sup> 34 Ed. III. six Years before the Time that Mr. *Ashmole* assigns for the Death of this Sir *Hugh Courtenay*; so that of Necessity it must be another Sir *Hugh Courtenay*, who was this Knight of the Garter.

The Genealogists differ extremely about the Person of this *Courtenay* the Founder; <sup>a</sup> *Dugdale* fixes upon *Hugh* the second Earl of *Devon* of that Surname, which is a very precarious Conjecture; because this *Hugh* being an Earl by Descent, from 14 Edw. III, it will be difficult to assign any Reason why that <sup>b</sup> Title of Earl should not have been attributed to him as well as to the Earls of *Warwick* and *Salisbury*, two others of the Founders in the like Circumstances. But this Earl *Hugh* lived to <sup>c</sup> 21 May 51 Ed. III, whereas *Edmond de Langele* (as it was just now observed) received the Habits of this Order in 34 Ed. III, being then seated in this Stall. In order for a Discovery, it may not be amiss to insert that Part of the Pedigree of this most illustrious Family, that seems to be any way concerned in the present Enquiry.



*Hugh Courtenay*, Son of Sir *Thomas*, could not be our Knight, because he died in his Minority <sup>d</sup> in 42 Ed. III, and we know that his Mother was only 15 years <sup>e</sup> Old in 11 Ed. III. *Hugh*, Son of the Earl, was <sup>f</sup> born on 11 Kal. Apr. 1 Ed. III, who doubtless was the Founder; for his Son *Hugh* was a Child, if not unborn at the Time of the Institution of this Order, and who died in his Youth after his Marriage with *Maud Holland*, remarried to the Count of *St. Paul*.

It would be of consequence in the Disquisition of the true Æra when this Order was erected, if the certain Time of the Death of this *Hugh* the Founder could be ascertained; Mr. *Ashmole* hath not deduced him

<sup>2</sup> See above, p. 42. Note r.

<sup>a</sup> Dugd. 1 vol. Baron. p. 639.

<sup>b</sup> Esch. 14 E. 3. n. 27.

<sup>c</sup> Esch. 51 E. 3. n. 6.

<sup>d</sup> Esch. 42 E. 3. p. 1. n. 24.

<sup>e</sup> Esch. 11 E. 3. n. 56. post mortem *Johannis*  
*Moelis*.

<sup>f</sup> Monast. Angl. vol. 1. f.



lower than 21 *Ed.* III, and the Collector hath not been able, as yet, to trace him below the <sup>g</sup> following Year. We have indeed the Inquisition taken after the Death of *Elizabeth*, the Relict of this *Hugh*, <sup>b</sup> in 49 *Ed.* III. who survived also her Son.

*Thomas Holland* Earl of *Kent*, afterwards Duke of *Surry*, is numbered 62, and said in the Catalogues to have been Knight of the *Garter* under *Rich.* II. Now the Earl of *Kent* receiving the Habits of this Order <sup>i</sup> in 7 *Rich.* II. could not be the Person who was afterwards created Duke of *Surry*, but was *Thomas Holland* Earl of *Kent*, Father of him who was so created Duke in 21 *Rich.* II. whose Mantle was deposited in the Vestry at *Windsor*, in the <sup>k</sup> eighth Year of that King. Now in this seventh Year *Thomas Holland* (afterwards advanced to the Dukedom of *Surry*) was only ten Years old, being no more than <sup>l</sup> twenty three Years of Age at the Time of his Father's Death in 20 *Rich.* II. And hence we retrieve the Name of a Knight of the *Garter*, which hath not hitherto occurred in any Catalogue, that is of *Thomas Holland*, the second Earl of *Kent* of that Surname, who again received the Robes of this <sup>m</sup> Order in 11, 12, and 13 of *Rich.* II. whose Name occurs in the *Windsor-Tables*, in the sixth Stall on the Prince's Side, but hath been omitted out of the Catalogues, being confounded with his Son, who bore the same Christian Name, who indeed was also a Companion of this Order, and received the <sup>n</sup> Habits in 22 *Rich.* II. by the Stile of Duke of *Surry*, though being afterwards attainted, his Name is not inserted in the *Windsor-Tables*.

*Michael de la Pole* Earl of *Suffolk*, is numbered 66, as elected under the Reign of *Rich.* II. and the Manuscripts place him in the fourth Stall of the Prince's Side. <sup>o</sup> Dr. *Heylin* hath already observed, that he is not mentioned in the *Windsor-Tables*; and conceives rightly, that the Earl of *Suffolk*, elected into this Order, should be *William de Ufford*. The *Windsor-Tables* indeed name *William* Earl of *Suffolk* to be Successor to Sir *Richard Pemburg*, and herein the Chronology will be right, for this Sir *Richard* died <sup>p</sup> in 49 *Ed.* III, and this *William de Ufford* Earl of *Suffolk* <sup>q</sup> on 15 Dec. 5 *Rich.* II. And which is a certain Proof that it could not be *Michael de la Pole* (who by this Account should have been elected about 49 *Ed.* III.) we find that Sir *Richard Burley*, who succeeded the Earl of *Suffolk* in this Stall, had <sup>r</sup> Robes of the *Garter* in 7 *Rich.* II. while this *Michael* was living, and then only a Baron.

Upon this Subject of ascertaining the Persons of the ancient Knights of this Order, it will not be foreign to examine into the Discovery which the learned Greek Professor of *Cambridge*, Mr. *Joshua Barnes*, thought he had made, and wherein by his frequent <sup>s</sup> Repetitions he seems to take delight, that Sir *Henry Eam*, one of the Founders, (which Surname <sup>t</sup> Mr. *Ashmole* could find in a single Record only) was Sir *Henry* of *Flanders*, so

<sup>g</sup> Exit. Pell. Pasch. 22 *Ed.* 3.

<sup>b</sup> Esch. 49 *E.* 3. p. 1. n. 27.

<sup>i</sup> See above p. 10, Note a.

<sup>k</sup> Ashm. *History of the Garter*, p. 232.

<sup>l</sup> Esch. 20 *R.* 2. n. 20.

<sup>m</sup> See above p. 11. Note c. P. 12. Notes d, e.

<sup>n</sup> See above p. 13. Note f.

<sup>o</sup> *History of St. George*, p. 360.

<sup>p</sup> Esch. 49 *E.* 3. n. 25.

<sup>q</sup> Esch. 5 *R.* 2. n. 57.

<sup>r</sup> See above p. 10. Note a, where indeed there is an Omission in the Print, for in the Record immediately after *Simoni de Burle*, follows *Richardo de Burle*, and the Reader is desired to insert the same with his Pencil.

<sup>s</sup> *History of Edward III.* p. 140, &c.

<sup>t</sup> *History of the Garter*, p. 707.

justly



justly celebrated by the Historians of that Age : At first Sight one should be apt to imagine, that the References in his Margin to several Authors in Print, were there inserted as Vouchers for that Assertion ; which when consulted, will not be found any Authority for the Identity of a Person who bore the different Names of *Eam* and *Flanders*. In order to discuss this Matter to the Bottom, let us first enquire into the Descent and Country of Sir *Henry* of *Flanders*, whereof Mr. *Barnes* hath imparted nothing to us, save only that he is positive he was a Native of *Brabant*, and indeed according to his postulatam, that he was the same Person with Sir *Henry Eam*, he must from the Authority of the " Instrument published by Mr. *Asbmole*, of course fix him in that Dutchy ; for Sir *Henry Eam* therein makes a Reservation of Homage to his Liege Lord the Duke of *Brabant* only, which sufficiently expresses his Country.

Now <sup>x</sup> *Froissart*, who was his contemporary and a Native of *Henalt*, saith expressly, That Sir *Henry Flanders* was a Subject to the Earl of that Place ; and in enumerating Persons of different Allegiances, ' contradistinguishes him from those of *Brabant* ; and the <sup>z</sup> Historians and publick <sup>a</sup> Instruments acquaint us, that he was Lord of *Ninove*, a Seigneurie in the County of *Alhorst* in *Flanders*, whereto he became entituled by his Marriage in or before the Year 1339, before the Institution of the Order of the *Garter* ; whence we may amend the Print in <sup>b</sup> Mr. *Rymer*, where he is by Mistake called *Seigneur de Meneue* ; so that 'tis scarce conceivable that he should in *January A. D.* 1347, by the Name of Sir *Henry Eam*, reserve Homage to the Duke of *Brabant* only, when he had large Territories in *Flanders*, and, as it will soon appear, was nearly related in Blood to that Earl, and was in all probability a Native of that Country ; for at that time, the Dutchy of *Brabant* was in *John III, the Triumphant*, and the Earldom of *Flanders* in *Lewis de Male*, which latter did indeed afterwards in *A. D.* 1356, over-run the greatest Part of that Dutchy and assumed that Title.

It is the more incredible, that Sir *Henry* of *Flanders* should in the Year 1347, by the Name of Sir *Henry Eam*, reserve Homage to be paid only to the Duke of *Brabant*, when the original <sup>c</sup> Instrument is still extant

<sup>a</sup> *History of the Garter*, p. 707.

<sup>x</sup> Vol. 1. c. 42.

<sup>y</sup> Vol. 1. p. 210.

<sup>z</sup> *Marchanti Flandriae descriptio* p. 41, 253, &c.

*Meierus Annal. Flandriae*, p. 161, A. D. 1339.

Ex *Flandris* hi fuere, *Henricus Flandrensis* Toparchus *Ninovenfis*, &c. *Marchant ut supra*, p. 200.

<sup>a</sup> *Vredii Geneal. Flandriae*, vol. 2. p. 68.

<sup>b</sup> *Foedera* vol. 5. p. 649, 652, 654, &c.

<sup>c</sup> Ceste endenture faite parentre le excellent & puissant Prince *Edward* par la grace de Dieu Roi d' *Engleterre* Seigneur d' *Irlande* & Duc d' *Acquitaine* d'une part, & le noble home *Henry* de *Flandres* de l'autre part tesmoigne que le dit *Henry* est entre en homage le dit Roi & ad grante de servir a lui & a ses heirs de cea la mer loialment od cynquant hommes d'armes suffisantz & bien appareillez en toutes ses guerres & emprises pr. ses presentz droit defendre recoverir & purchacer countre monsr. *Philip de Valoys* qui se dit Roi de *France* ses heirs & touz ses adheredantz, sauue que si guerre — countre

le Counte & genz de *Flandres* en pais de *Flandres* — eider as ditz Counte & gentz en meis — celle cause le dit Roi ad grante de faire — au dit *Henry* — florins de *Florence* en maniere comme autres Seigneurs prendront — a la premiere foitz que le Roi mand — de venir a lui od son dit service des gentz d'armes le Roi lui ferra — des gages pur ses dites gentz d'armes — la mein & puis de temps en temps come il ferra as autres Seigneurs demorant od lui. Item fil aveigne qe dieu defend que le ditz — de ses dites gentz d'armes soient pui en la guerre le Roi, soit le Roy tenuz de les deliverer & acquitter a ses coustes & a ses fres propres sans damage le dit *Henry* : Item si per cas le dit *Henry* pur cause de sa demoere devers le Roi petde terres ou rentes pr. queles le Roi nad mie especialment fait son gre, le Roi soit tenu de lui restorer les dites terres & rentes ou la value dycelles des custumes le Roi en port de *Loundres* si avant comme le dit *Henry* purra prover loialment



tant dated at *Antwerp* 16 Feb. 1338, whereby the noble *Henry* of *Flanders* enters into the Homage of the King of *England* against all Persons, saving the Earl and People or Country of *Flanders*.

And in truth his Birth seems to have been in that Country, for *Guy Dampierre* Earl of *Flanders*, by his second Lady *Isabel* of *Luxemburg* Countess of *Namur*, had several Children; their eldest Son *John* was Earl of *Namur*, whose younger Son *Sir Robert Namur* was a worthy Knight of this Order; their third Son was *Henry* of *Flanders*, Marshal to the Emperor *Henry VII*, created by him <sup>d</sup> Earl of *Los* or *Lodes* in *Milain*, Father to our *Sir Henry*, who was therefore Nephew to the Queen of our *Edw. III*, whose Interests he embraced in his Wars, and from whom he received the Honour of Knighthood, as <sup>e</sup> *Froissart* relates, with an annual Pension, which is fully supported by our <sup>f</sup> Records.

loialement que les dites terres & rentes vaillent. Item que si le dit *Henry* ou ses gentz d'armes perdent chevaulx d'armes en service le Roi, le Roi lui paiera pur les ditz chevaulx issint perdus solonc ceo q'ils seront loialement & en bone foi prifez. Et en cas que le dit *Henry* ou ses gentz d'armes avantdites preignent de guerre ascuns des enemis le Roi, soient le dit *Henry* & ses gentz tenuz maintenant presenter & liverer meismes les prisons au Marechal le Roi en maniere que autres Seigneurs feroient qui sont demoerer devers le Roi issint que le Roi puisse de eux faire sa volonte. Et a cestes choses pleinement tenir & garder en maniere come desus est dit, ausibien le Roi pur lui & ses heirs, come le dit *Henry*, cestascavoir chescun de eux en quantq. a lui attent, se sont fermement entreobligez. En tesmoignance de queu chose le Roi a lune partie de ceste endenture demoerante devers le dit *Henry*, Et le dit *Henry* a lautre partie dycelle demoerante devers le dit Roi ont mis leur sealx. Don a *Anderwerp* le xvi jour de Feveres lan de grace Mill ccc trent oytisme.

[Sigillum confectum est.]

In tertio Bundello Indenturarum diversorum temporum.

<sup>d</sup> See the *Genealogists*, principally *Vredius*, of the *Earldom of Los*, or *Lodes*, *Baluzij Vita Paparum Avenion.* vol. 2. p. 1221. *L'Espinoy* recherche des *Antiq. de Flandres*, p. 46.

<sup>e</sup> Vol. 1. c. 43.

<sup>f</sup> Pat. inter Regem *Anglia* & diversos Magnates *Germanie*, 13 Ed. III.

Roi a touz ceux qi cestes Lettres verront ou orent saluz, Sachez que come nostre chere & foial *Henry* de *Flanders* soit entre en nostre homage & eit grante de servir a nous & a noz heirs od cynquant hommes d'armes pur noz presentz droitz defendre recoverir & purchacer countre Monsieur *Philip de Valois* que se disoit Roi de *France* & ses heirs & touz ses adheredantz: Et par celle cause le dit *Henry* eit lesse Terres, queles il tint en fee en Roialme de *France* descendantz heritalment de ses predeceffours a la value de cinq centz livres de parisis le gros turneis counte pur dis parisis & autres Terres— tint a terme de sa vie a la value de autres cinq; centz livres de parisis, Nous eantz consideration a la grande naturese qe le dit *Henry*—

ad monstre & voillantz par tant ordiner qil soit pleinement en celle partie de damage si auons grantez au dit *Henry* de lui faire estre pleinement & prestment paie chescun an pur toutes les dites terres de Mill livres de parisis en esterlyngs ou autre monoye covenable le gros turnois vientz en trois esterlyngs counte pur dis parisis des custumes en port de *Loundres* a reseivre a deux termes cest assauer la moytee a la nativite Seint *Johan le Baptiste* profchein avenir & lautre moytee a la purification nostre Dame apres suante & issint de terme en terme tanq; les dites terres lui soient restorees, ou q; nous lui eoms donez autres terres de meisme la value en Roialme de *Fraunce* a tenir come il tint les terres avant dites: Et en cas q; — cioms oue fait tiele restitution ou recompensation des dites terres deuant la mort le dit *Henry*; Nous voloms & grantoms pur nous & noz heirs q; pur les dites terres q; le dit *Henry* tint en fee come desus est dit les heirs le dit *Henry* apres sa mort soient pleinement & prestment paie de cinq; centz livres de parisis en esterlyngs ou autre monoye covenable solonc la counte susdit de noz dites custumes & as termes avant ditz par ouweles portions: Item voillantz faire outre greinoure grace au dit *Henry* par la cause avantdite lui auons grante de lui faire chivaler & lui doner pur son homage Mill Florins de *Florence* a prendre par an a toute sa vie de noz dites custumes en port & as termes avantditz par ouweles portions. Item sil auiegne q; Dieu defend q; le dit *Henry* ses messagers procurours ou Attornez portours de cestes ne soient mie prestment & pleinement paie des dites sommes a chescun terme come desus est dit par defect de nous ou de noz Ministres par quoi le dit *Henry* encourage coustes fres despens ou damage, nous grantoms & promettons au dit *Henry* de lui rendre & restourer touz les ditz coustes & damages des dites custumes saunz Abregger la dette principale Item si par cas guerres aviegnent q; Dieu ne voille entre la terre d'*Engleterre* & le pais de *Flandres* ou de *Brabant* si auons grantez de nostre grace especiale au dit *Henry* qil ou ses attournez puissent achater Leynes deinz nostre Roialme a la value de toutes les sommes q; ferront dues pur le temps des dites custumes & les Leines issint achatees mesner en *Flandres* ou en *Brabant* par la ou lui plerra En tesmoignance de queu chose nous avons fait faire cestes noz lettres patentes ensealees de nostre grant seal Don, &c. ut supra prox. i. e. Don a *Anderwerp* le 26 jour de *Feverer* l'an de grace Mill ccc. trent oytisme.



His Birth and Extraction was then so illustrious, his Alliance to our Royal Founder so near, and his military Actions so very conspicuous, that the Editor wishes it could be proved that he was a Companion of the Garter at its erection; but this Order wants no Addition of Splendour or Honour, and the Question is not of his Qualifications for an Admission, or the Probability thereof, but of the Reality of the Fact.

The Place of the Allegiance of Sir *Henry of Flanders*, the Time of his Death, the Repetition of the Degree of Knighthood, and his Coat-Arms together, seem to intimate that he was a distinct Person from Sir *Henry Eam*, and 'till these Difficulties shall be solved, the Editor must suspend his Subscription to the Opinion of Mr. *Barnes*, who was indeed a Person of immense Reading.

Whoever Sir *Henry Eam* was, it appears from the *Windsor-Tables* that Sir *Thomas Utreight* succeeded in his Stall, and therefore of course the former must be dead before the 34 *Edw. III.* A. D. 1360, when this Sir *Thomas* received the 8 Habits of the Garter, unless Sir *Henry* had been deposed, or had surrendered the Order. But then Sir *Henry of Flanders* survived this Time, for two <sup>b</sup> Years afterwards he received from the *Exchequer* the Annuity granted him formerly upon his Knighthood in the 13th Year, which shews the Individuality of the Person, and it cannot be conceived that in case either of a Deposal or Resignation of the Order, this Pension would have been paid him afterwards; and in truth we find him executing a Treaty on the Behalf of the Earl of *Flanders*, touching the <sup>i</sup> Marriage of the Earl of *Cambridge* in 38 *Ed. III.*

Then as to Knighthood, Sir *Henry of Flanders* received it in 13 *Ed. III.* but Sir *Henry Eam* had that Degree conferred on him by the <sup>k</sup> *Black Prince* in or before 21 *Ed. III.* which Honour was not used to be repeated in former Ages: Mr. *Barnes* being aware of this Difficulty, thinks he solves it, by supposing that the *Black Prince* conferred the Degree of *Banneret* on this Sir *Henry of Flanders*, by the Title of Sir *Henry Eam*. Those who are conversant in the Tenor of Records will allow, that it was the usual Stile and Custom to express the Honour of *Banneret* particularly by Name, whenever that had been given; because *Bannerets* were entitled to several Privileges, and larger Wages in War than *Knights-Bachelors*, who usually served under the Banners of the Former.

There remains no Plate or Escutcheon for this Founder in his Stall at *Windsor*, but the Arms usually ascribed to this Sir *Henry Eam* are, <sup>l</sup> *Or, a Fess Sable, with a Demy-Lyon Gules issuing out of the Middle of it*; whereas Sir *Henry of Flanders* bore the Arms of *Flanders*, *Or, a Lyon rampant, with the Brisure of a Bend dexter*, as may be seen by the Impression on his Seal, exhibited by the learned <sup>m</sup> *Vredius*, which are so very different from the Former, according to the Rules of Heraldry, as one should be apt to believe the first Coat was not born by any legitimate Kinsman of

<sup>g</sup> See above Page 42. Note r.

<sup>h</sup> Exit. Pellis Mich. 36 F. 3. *Henrico de Flanders militi. cui Dom. Rex M. floren. de Florenc. &c.*

<sup>i</sup> Rymer vol. 6. p. 449.

<sup>k</sup> Ashm. Hist. p. 707.

<sup>l</sup> See Mr. Ashmole's Plates.

<sup>m</sup> Tabul. Geneal. Comitum Flandrie, p. 86.



the same Lineage with Sir *Henry* of *Flanders*; and it would be a very precarious Guess to conjecture the same might be used by some *natural* Relation. Indeed we find this Sir *Henry* had a " Son born out of Marriage, but it is to be doubted whether he was of Age sufficient to be admitted into this Order upon its first Institution, for *Froissart* represents the Father as a " young Esquire in the 13th of *Ed. III*, though he was married before that time: Indeed if our Sir *Henry* had any natural Brother, the Chronology would not be injured by the Supposition that he might be the Founder; but this without other Grounds, is indulging Fancy; though it must be granted, that such a Defect in a Descent from an illustrious Family, was no Bar against an Election into this Order, for Sir *Frank Vanhalle*, or *Hale*, (who was chosen a Companion very early after the Erection,) was Son of a natural Son of *Albert* King of the *Romans*.

But to return to the settling the Persons of the Knights of the *Garter*. The Alteration of a Vowel, in the Spelling of a Surname, hath occasioned many fruitless Enquiries. The Catalogues mention Sir *Edward Hall*, who is numbered 169, which Error might be easily amended by inspecting the Entry in the *Black Book*, on 7 May, 31 Hen. VI, where Sir *Edward Hull* is named to have been elected, which is the Orthography: This is the only Memorial of him in that Book, because he was unfortunately slain in *July* following at the Battle of *Chastillon* before his Installation, for which Reason his Name doth not occur in the *Windsor-Tables*, neither could any Plate be therefore affixed for him. This noble and valiant Knight commonly stiles himself the Son of " *Alianor Hull*, a great Heiress, the Daughter and Heir of *Malet* of *Enemer*, whose Arms he bore in his Seals, for " Mr. *Asmole* is mistaken in ascribing different Ones to him.

The Publisher conceives that he hath ascertained the Persons of some Companions, and in hopes of receiving some Light and Assistance from his Readers, towards explaining a dark Entry in the *Black-Book* 22 Apr. 7 Ed. IV. A. D. 1467, craves Leave to insert the whole Passage, which being without Comma's, may, by the various Methods of placing them, receive different Constructions. The Words are " *Domino Principi Regi Neapolitano & Domino de Montgryson Apulix jam ante delectis ad illustrissimum ordinem sedes reservatæ sunt.*" Stalls are reserved for the Lord the Prince the King of *Naples* and the Lord of *Montgryson* of *Apulia* already elected into this most illustrious Order.

This Expression in the plural Number proves the Elections of two or three Knights, if the Rules of *Grammar* were observed in this *Latin* Translation, and the Difficulty is, who were these Knights that had been thus elected.

There can be no doubt as to the King of *Naples* mentioned before in this *Black-Book*, on 22 Apr. 3 Ed. IV. A. D. 1463, who was *Ferdi-*

" L'Espinoy Recherche de Flanders, p. 46.  
 " Vol. 1. p. 46.

|  $\left. \begin{array}{l} p \\ q \\ r \end{array} \right\}$  The Proofs hereof will be given in his Life.



*nand* I, natural Son to *J* *Alfonfus* V. King of *Arragon* and *Naples*, Knight also of this Order, who was born at *Valentia*, and declared Successor to the Crown of *Naples* at the Desire of the Nobility, on 2 *March*, *A. D.* 1442, and in *May* following created Duke of *Calabria*, having been legitimated by Pope *Eugenius* IV, and advanced to that 'Throne 4 *Id.* Nov. 1458, receiving Investiture from Pope *Pius* II. and he lived 'till 25 *January* 1494. The Collector hath not yet discovered the certain Time of his Election into this Order; but the *Windsor-Tables* placing him as Successor to Sir *John Fastolf*, whose "Death happening on St. *Leonard's* Day *A. D.* 1459, he might have been chosen a Companion very soon after his Accession to the Throne, in the latter End of the Reign of *Hen. VI.* unless the Name of some other Knight designed or admitted into this Stall, in that troublesome Time, be omitted out of these *Tables* for Want of an Installation, or upon an Attainder. However that may be, the Habit of the *Garter* was \* sent to him on 18 *July* 1463; and though he was not installed in this 7th Year of *Ed. IV.* yet he afterwards received this Honour, for his Hatchments were hung up in the Chappel in the 19th Year, being then mentioned in the 'Pope's Bull; and by the Way, this King erected the Order of the *Ermine*, and afterwards accepted that of the *Golden Fleece*.

But the Difficulty is, who was this Lord *Montgryson* of *Apulia* in *Naples*; the Editor of these Papers, after a diligent Inspection of several Historians and Genealogists of that Kingdom, hath not been so fortunate to meet with any such Name in that Age. This Person is mentioned in no other Place of this *Black-Book*, and he doth not occur in the *Windsor-Tables*; which Omission must be allowed to be a strong Argument against his receiving any Installation, unless he was afterwards degraded: And if this Lord had been elected before the 18th of *July* 1463, it would be reasonable to suppose, that the Livery of this Order had been then sent to him by the same Person who carry'd the Habit to the King of *Naples*, who seems to be his Sovereign.

If this *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* ever used the Addition of *Dominus de Montgryson* in his Titles, as our Kings did formerly that of *Dominus Hi-*

f Topius de Origine Tribunal. Neapol. vol. 2. p. 142.

t Frecca de Subfeudis Baronum, p. 68.

u Hereafter in his Life.

x Priv. Sig. Pasch. 3 E. IV. Edward, &c. Forasmuch as we sende at this tyme our trusty and welbelovyd servaunt Berthelot de Ryvers Squier to oure Cousyn the King of Naples to presente unto hym our Liveray of the Garter, we wol and charge you that without delaye ye deliver to him for his Costis in oure said message C. marcs. Given under our prive seal at our Towne of Northampton the 18 day of Juill the third yeere of our reigne. Doubtlesse this payment may be found in the Pelle Rolle.

y Sixtus Episcopus Servus, &c. Circa cunctorum Christi fidelium animarum salutem ex assuetæ pietatis officio continuo intenti illa libenter concedimus per quæ fideles ipsi prefertim in capellis, &c. Dudum siquidem cupientes ut Capella Garterii in honorem & sub invocatione Dei Genitricis, &c. ad quam dilectus filius Nobilis Vir *Fridericus* Dux *Urbini* & gentium ad nostra & *Romana* Eccle-

siæ stipendia militantium Confalonarius, qui per carissimum in Christo filium nostrum *Edwardum Angliæ* Regem illustrem, aliosq; Reges, Duces, & Principes collegiatos dicti Collegii in prædicto eorum insigni Collegio in quo alii quam Reges, & de Regum prosapia geniti non sine magna difficultate recipi consueverunt, collocatis honorifice in eadem capella ipsius Ducis Galea, Scuto, & reliquis militaribus ac aliis insigniis in loco decenti juxta prædicti *Edwardi Angliæ* & carissimi in Christo filii *Ferdinandi Siciliæ* Regum & Ducum collegiatorum prædictorum insignia tunc receptus fuerat, specialem non immerito gerebat devotionis affectum, &c. De indulgentiis, &c. Dat' 1479, Sextodecimo Kal. Sept. anno 8º. In Registro *Windsor*.

z *Ashmole Hist.* p. 118. Hence we find he sent *Arminium* nostrum *Armorum* Regem to *Lewis XI.* *Leibnitz Cod. Juris Gent. Diplom.* in prodromo p. 24.

a *Ancienne Chronique* dans le Supplement aux *Memoires de Commynes*, p. 402. 31 *Juillet* 1474.



*berniæ*; the Kings of Spain, *Dominus Cantabrie*, &c. and the Kings of Portugal, *Dominus Ceutæ*, &c. then here would be no Difficulty, and the Construction would be, that two Stalls were reserved, one for the Prince of Wales, and the other for this King of Naples who was also Lord of Montgryson.

But this Lord hath been taken to be a distinct Person from this King; <sup>b</sup> Dr. Heylin makes him a *Gascoigner*, but gives no Reasons for that Assertion; and the late <sup>c</sup> Manuscripts place him in the twelfth Stall on the Sovereign's Side, after Sir *William Chamberlaine*, who <sup>d</sup> dying before 22 Apr. 3 Ed. IV, in truth there seems to be Room for him, but in case he was elected hereto, 'tis plain he enjoyed it not long, for *Blunt*, Lord <sup>e</sup> *Montjoy*, was here seated in the 13 Ed. IV, when he was one of the Scrutiners.

And if he was a distinct Person from this King of Naples, it then may be probable *Domino Principi* in this Place, may be a Term attributed to this King, which is the common Language of our <sup>f</sup> Records to foreign Princes, and therefore may not relate to or design the Prince of Wales in this Place; for 'tis some Impropriety in Strictness of Speech to say, That the Prince was already elected in 1467, which by the Statutes ought to be after a previous Scrutiny of the Suffrages, when as this Prince was not born & till 4 Nov. 1470; so that in case this Prince was here meant, the adjective *delectis* must be variously interpreted, as signifying, with regard to this Prince, a provisional Designation upon the Contingency of his Birth and Presumption of his Creation to that Title, and his Election into this Order, and in the Case of the King of Naples and Lord Montgryson an actual preceeding Election regularly made of them.

Indeed this Place hath commonly been interpreted in that Sense, of a triple Election or Designation, which seems to receive some confirmation from the Entry in this Register in the 15 Ed. IV, that this Prince of Wales was declared to be elected *ad sedem jam ante reservatam*, whose Name is in all the Scrutinies given that Day, which furnished <sup>b</sup> Mr. *Asbmole* with one Argument to reject an Entry in a Manuscript which placed his Election much earlier, which may be here properly considered, in regard that Passage relates to the Settling the Persons of the Knights and the Time of their Elections.

<sup>i</sup> After the Narrative of holding *Christmas* in 1471. The Words then are, — “ In the foresaid yere the King our Sovereign Lord kept  
“ his fest of *St. Forge* at his Castell of *Wyndfor* and kept his Estate in the  
“ foresaid Castell, the Bushope of *Winchester* sat on the ryght hande and  
“ the right noble Duke of *Glocester* and the Earle of *Essex* on the left  
“ hand, There were present Therl of *Douglas*, the lord *Barnes*, the lord  
“ *Dures*, and on the morne after the feast come to the Chapter of the

<sup>b</sup> *History of St. George*, p. 371.

<sup>c</sup> Vinc. MS. in Offic. Arm. n. 417. &c.

<sup>d</sup> <sup>e</sup> Compare the *Windfor-Tables* with the *Black-Book* in these Years: And in truth this Lord was chosen in the 12th Year, as will be soon evident.

<sup>f</sup> Thus to this King, Fran. 14 E. 4. m. 18. *Johannes Abbas Abyngdon* Consiliarius noster, & Ber-

*thol. de Ryvere* miles Ambassiatores ad Illustrem Principem confratrem nostrum *Ferdinandum* eadem gratia Regem *Sicilie*, *Jerusalem*, & *Hungaria*, &c.  
<sup>g</sup> See *Sandford's Geneal. Hist.* p. 425. and the *Historians*.

<sup>h</sup> *History*, p. 266.

<sup>i</sup> MS. in Off. Arm. M. 15. f. 12b.



“ Order of the Garter into the Chapter howse come The King, The  
 “ Duke of *Glocester* Therle of *Essex* the Lord *Barnes* Lieutenant of the  
 “ Order Therle of *Doglas*, The Lord *Doglas* [*Duras*] and Sir *John Aste-*  
 “ *ley*, The which Sir *John Asteley* was sent for to *London* by *Calis* Pur-  
 “ suivant to come to furnish the Chapter in the which chapter were  
 “ chosen to bretherene of the said Order

“ *My Lord the Prynce*

“ *The K. of P.*

“ *The Duke of Norfolk*

“ *Therle of Wylshere*

“ *The L. Feres*

“ *The Lord Montjoye &*

“ *The Lord Haywarde*

} VII elected at the Chapter.

“ and this day thay had a masse of requiem, and at the tyme of offer-  
 “ tory the King offered and the Knyghts of the Gartier there being  
 “ present, when he had offered there one offeringe, The Duke of *Gloster*  
 “ and the lord *Barnes* offered the Sword, bering the Pomel forward of  
 “ the goode of the right feyfull and noble Lord Therle of *Wystcester*,  
 “ Therle of *Essex* and therl *Douglas* his helme, The Lord *Duras* and  
 “ Sir *John Asteley* the sword of therle of *Pembroke*, the Duke of *Glocester*  
 “ and the lord *Barnes* his helme. Therle of *Essex* and therle of *Duglas*  
 “ the sword of therle of *Ryvers*, The Lord *Duras* and Sir *John Asteley*  
 “ his helme. Also the Duke of *Glocester* and the Lord *Barnes* offered  
 “ the sword of Sir *Rob. Harcorte*, Therl of *Essex* therle of *Duglees* his  
 “ helme.”

This Narrative was wrote by <sup>k</sup> *Bleumantle*-Pursuivant, whose Duty it was to attend this Feast; but Mr. *Ashmole* discredits it as an inadvertent Relation which casts in false Lights, because (as he saith) this Feast is placed there in the 11th, which ought to have been in the 12th of *Ed. IV.* as it would appear by collating some of the Facts here named with those entred in the *Black-Book*; and he disbelieves the Time of some of these Elections, because as he saith, the Prince of *Wales* was not elected 'till the 15th, and the King of *Portugal* was not elected 'till the 22d of *Edward IV.*

The Chronology however of the Manuscript was mistaken by Mr. *Ashmole*, for the Feast of *St. George* therein recited, was subsequent to *Christ-*  
*mas* 1471, and consequently must have been in *Apr.* 1472, in the 12th of *Ed. IV.* and the Fact of summoning Sir *John Asteley* to the Chapter is confirmed by the *Black-Book*, which though it omits the Names of the Knights elected, yet contains these Words, “ *Verum nec è vestigio, quæ*  
 “ *habetur, secuta est electio,*” [The Election, as far as any Account can be had, did not immediately follow;] which must doubtless be the Expression or Observation of Dr. *Aldrydge* who collected this Book under the Reign of *Hen. VIII.* and not the Remark of the Register of the Order, who lived

<sup>k</sup> MS. in Off. Arm. M. 15. p. 13.



in the 12th of *Ed. IV*, for he could not have been ignorant of the Proceedings in so solemn a Chapter.

If it should be allowed that this Entry means only that a Stall was kept empty for the Prince, then not two Years old, Mr. *Ashmole's* first Objection ceases, and his Second will have no Force, 'till it be first proved that the Letters *K. of P.* certainly denote the then King of *Portugal*; for why may not these Initials be as well construed to signify the King of *Poland*, of which somewhat will be soon said, after it hath been observed, that Mr. *Ashmole's* sole Argument that the King of *Portugal* could not be elected in 12 *Ed. IV*, is because that King was not elected 'till the 22d Year, which must presuppose that the same Person was King of that Place in both these Years; whereas *Alfonfus V*, was King of that Place from *Sept. 1438*, 17 *Hen. VI*, 'till his Death on 24 *Aug. 1481*, 21 *Ed. IV*, and though *John the Second*, his Son and Successor, was elected Knight of the *Garter* in the 22 *Ed. IV*, yet that can be no Sort of Proof that his Father had not been elected into this Order in 12 *Ed. IV*, and we know that he was then certainly one of the Companions; so that the Question, according to Mr. *Ashmole's* Supposition, would be reduced to this single Point, Whether this *Alfonfus* was chosen in this 12th Year? and indeed the Collector thinks this King had been installed much earlier; which is one Reason that induces him to believe that *K. of P.* in this Place means the King of *Poland*.

It is here to be remembered, that the Statutes require that Foreigners elected into this Order, must receive an actual Installation by their Proctors, within some Months after their Investitures, with the Ensigns, under the Penalty of the 'Vacating and Annulling their Elections: Now we find that *Casimir*, crowned King of *Poland* in 1447, lived 'till 7 *June 1492*, who had been elected into this Order on 4 *Aug. 28 Hen. VI*. and invested with the Habits in 31, 34, and 37 of that King, though he was not installed in 6 of *Ed. IV*, and in truth he died without that Solempnity, for which Reason his name occurs not in the *Windsor-Tables*; and therefore it may not be unreasonable to believe, that these Letters *K. of P.* design this King, who might be then re-elected to the Stall which was thus void for Want of an Installation, by the Tenour of the Statutes, especially since *Alfonfus*, who became King of *Portugal*, *A. D. 1438*, was certainly installed long before this 12th Year of *Edward IV*.

1 Stat. 20 E. 3. 20 H. 5. 21 H. 8. and hence the Entry in the Black-Book in 31 H. 6. in relation to this King of Poland, and other foreign Sovereigns may be explained, toties in Electione pronuntiati sed nihil magis ad sedes dum introducti.

m See the Black-Book in that Year; but Mr. *Ashmole* observes, that the Registrum Chartaceum places it in the 29th Year. *History of the Garter*, p. 368.

n Priv. Sigill. in bundello 31 Hen. 6. Henri, &c. To the Treasurer, &c. Forasmuch as we have commanded our welbeloved servant Clarensew King of Armes to aedy hym for to goo upon oure message with John Newport Squier unto the King of Arragon and Pollen to admyte and receyve thaim in oure behalve unto thordre of the Gartier. We considering the goode and diligent service that the same our servant hath doon unto us by the space of xix yere without any wages or fee to him yeven in that behalve, As also to thentent

that He shall nowe the more honourably do us service in our saide message have graunted unto him xx l. sterling to be taken by way of rewarde by youre hands, Wherefore, &c. Yeven under oure prive Seel at Chartley the 27 of Juin the yere of oure Regne xxxii.

Exit. Pell. Mich. 31 H. 6. Clarensewe Regi Armorum quem Rex ordinavit ad proficiscend. in nuncio suo cum Johanne Newport ad Reges Arragon, & Polon. admittend. & recipiend. illos ex parte dicti Domini Regis in ordinem Garteræ xx l. quas Dom. Rex eidem Clarentio mandavit habend. de dono suo per viam regardi.

See the Black-Book in the 34 & 37 Hen. 6. but probably both these Entries refer to this former Delivery of the Garter, and not that the same was again sent him in these Years.

o Black-Book in that Year.

The



The *Black-Book* places it in the 34 of *Hen. VI.* and in consequence thereof our King, in his next Year, orders the Fees due to the Church of *Windfor* for setting up the Helme of this King of *Portugal* to be paid.

But though the Fact of his Installation be certain, the Time of his Election into the Order is puzzled by some Entries in this *Black-Book*, wherein there seems to be some Mistake. In 22d (or rather 23d) of *Hen. VI.* the King of *Portugal* is in this Register numbered among the Companions, whereas in the 24th Year he is nominated in the Scrutiny of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, as a Person capacitated to be elected; and in the following Year he is in all the Suffrages, and expressly said to be then elected unanimously into the Stall of the Duke of *Glocester*, who died on the Last of February in that Year, and John Fettiplace in the 34th of *Hen. VI.* had a Garter of Gold delivered to him garnished with Stones and Pearls for this King, with the whole Habit of the Order, out of the Wardrobe, and this King being soon afterwards installed, there must be a Mistake in the Entries of the 6th of *Ed. IV.* that he was not then enstalled, and of the Scrutiny of the Lord *Montjoy* in 13 *Ed. IV.* wherein the King of *Portugal* is named, for this *Alfonsus* sat on that Throne during all this Time. In the Life of the Duke of *Visen* hereafter in the

p Privat. Sigill. Henry, &c. To the Treasurer, &c. We late you wit that we have understande by the supplication of our welbelovyd the Denn Chanons and Knyghts of our College of Saint George within our Castell of Wyndesore howe ther is due by us unto them for the setting up of the Helme of the King of Portugal the some of xxl. as in the Statut of the Ordre of the Gartier made by our progenitours hit hath be used and accustomed, wherefore we wol and charge you that ye do pay, &c. Teven under our prive seal at our Cite of Coventry the xx day of Feber the yere of our reigne 35.

q Liber Sancti Albani f. 158.

r Henry, &c. To the Tresorer, &c. We wol and charge you that unto our trusty and welbelovyd Squier John Fettiplace ye do delyvere a Garter of gold garnished with stones and perlis of C marc or of lx l. and xl l. of money for his costs in bering the said Garter and Lyvere thereof unto the King of Portugale; teven undre our prive seal at our Castell of Hertford the xv day of Septembr. the yere of our reigne xxxiiii.

Henry, &c. To the Tresorer, &c. Forasmuche as we not long agoon by thadvys of the Lords of our Conseil sent our welbelovyd Squier Johan Fettiplace in Ambassiat and message unto our brother the King of Portugale to bere unto him our livere of the Gartier, which our comaundement our said Squier demy executed and accomplished to his greet costes and charges and not sufficiently recompensed for the same. We considering the premisses have graunted him Cl. by way of reward, &c. Teven under our prive seal at Westm. the iiii day of Novemb. the yere of our Reigni xxxvi. Doubtles these Payments may be found in the Pelle Rolles of these Tears.

f Rymer vol. II. p. 368. 34 H. VI. Henry, &c. To our trusty and welbelovyd Squier Henry Fylingley Keper of our Grete Wardrobe Greting.

Foras muche as our right entirely welbelovyd Brother the Kyng of Portugale is chosen to be a Knyght of the Garteere, to whom we will send in all haste by our welbelovyd Squier John Fettiplace the Gartiere and all that longith therto.

We will therefor and charge yowe strengly that anoone after the sight of thees, ye delyvere unto the said John

oute of our said Wardrobe the Parcelles hereafter ensuying, for to bere them to our said Brother, and delyver them unto hym of our Gysy.

First a Mantel of blue Velvet pleyne, lyned with white Damask and Garnysed with a Garter embroidered with gold, with upon Escuchen in the myddes thereof, of the Armes of Saint George, and laced with lace of blue Silk with Knoppes and Tassells.

Item a Gowne with rounde Sleues made of Scarlet, and garnysed with Garters embroidered with golde and furred with Ermyns, the Sleues thereof lyned with clothe underne the Furre.

Item a Hoode of Scarlet garnysed with lyk Garters of golde, with a rowe of Piikes for the same.

Item two Elnes of linnen Clothe for the carriage of the said Garnements.

And we wol that thees our letters be unto you herein suffieiaunt Warraunt, and that by the same ye have thereof due Allowance in youre accompte.

Teven, &c.

T. Cant.  
W. Ebor.  
T. London.  
J. Lincoln.  
R. York.  
R. Salisbury.  
Prior Sancti Johannis,  
Bourgbier,  
W. Fauconberge,  
Stourton.

In dorso. decimo nono die Novembris, &c. xxxiv. apud Westm. Rex de avisamento Concilii sui voluit & mandavit, quod Custos privati Sigilli litteras sub eodem Sigillo fieri faceret secundum tenorem predictum Dominis se subscribentibus ut patent.

Kent.

t See above in Note p. and the *Black-Book* in this Year.

u *Black-Book* of the Garter in that and in the Thirteenth Year.

P

Sequel



Sequel of this Specimen, the Privy Seal which, at first Sight, seems to intimate that the King of Portugal had the Ensigns of this Order sent him in 22 Hen. VI, will be examined and explained.

<sup>x</sup> Mr. *Ashmole* had no Objection against the Time of the Elections of the Duke of Norfolk, and the others mentioned in this Manuscript, and upon an Examination, we shall find several of the Particulars therein contained to be confirmed by other Authorities. Here are five Knights, beside the Prince and the K. of P. said to have been elected, and yet the Hatchments of only four Knights were offered, to wit of the Earls of Worcester, Pembroke, Rivers, and Sir Robert Harcourt, who had all lost their Lives before this Time for their Adherence to the Right of Ed. IV, and which is very memorable, these Four were succeeded in their respective Stalls by the Duke of Norfolk, Earl of Wiltshire, Lords Ferrers and Howard, named in this Manuscript, as the *Windsor-Tables* assure us; so if any sufficient Reason shall appear, that the Hatchments of the Lord Montjoy's Predecessor could not have been offered at that time, this Narrative will receive a very considerable Support.

This *Black-Book* it self shews us, that this Lord Montjoy was one of the Companions before 26 Feb. 13 Ed. IV. though the Time of his Election is not inserted in that Register: He is placed by the *Windsor-Tables* in the 12th Stall on the Sovereign's Side after Robert Lord Willoughby, whose Hatchments had been <sup>z</sup> offered in 31 Hen. VI. though it must not be understood that this Stall continued empty in that Interval from the 31 Hen. VI. to this 12 of Ed. IV; but the Hatchments of the intermediate Persons <sup>a</sup> Sir Edward Hall for Want of an actual Installation, Lionel Lord Wells upon a Deprivation, and Sir William Chamberlain and the Lord Montgrison (if he was ever elected) having never been installed, could not be offered according to the Tenour of the Statutes, and not being Founders of this Order, are omitted out of these Tables.

V. As to the last Point relating to the Marshalling, <sup>b</sup> Mr. *Ashmole*, after <sup>c</sup> Dr. *Heylin*, saith expressly, That the certain Years of the Elections of the Knights of this Order, 'till the Reign of Hen. V. cannot be found, and therefore these Knights are ranked by him, as they are placed in other Catalogues, according to their greatest Dignities. The Proposer submits to better Judgments, whether the following Method will not determine the Priority of the Elections of those whose Names are contained in the *Windsor-Tables*, which are printed by Mr. *Ashmole* in his Appendix with this Title, "The Names of the first Founders, and other Knights Companions who succeeded in their Stalls, after the ancient Manner; as they were (in his Time) exemplified in two Tables, remaining in the Chapter-house at Windsor." And the present Garter, by good Fortune, hath bought a Manuscript which belonged to his Predecessor the first Garter King of

<sup>x</sup> History of the Garter, p. 266.

<sup>y</sup> Our Historians inform us of the Deaths of these three Earls, and Peter le Neve, Esq; Norroy, hath in his Custody the original Deed whereby Margaret late Wife of Sir Robert Harcourt, remits to William Stafford of Grafton Bastard, Humfry and Thomas of that Place, Esquires, all Actions, and principally the

Appeal which she had against them for the Death of her Husband, which is dated 16 Ed. 4.

<sup>z</sup> Black-Book in that Year.

<sup>a</sup> See the History of this 12th Stall.

<sup>b</sup> Hist. p. 710.

<sup>c</sup> History of St. George, p. 358.



Arms, wherein after the Draughts or Pictures of the Founders of this Order, is the Succession in each Stall, to the Reign of *Hen. VI.* which agrees in most Particulars with these *Windsor-Tables.* Now the Statutes made by *Edw. III.* the Founder, enjoin all Vacancies to be filled within six Weeks (a Method which the *Black-Book* informs us was observed as low as the 4th of *Hen. VI.*) whereby we know the Succession, and the Time wherein vacant Stalls were filled; so that if the certain Times of the Death of each Companion can be retrieved, (which may possibly be done by Industry;) It must of course follow, that the Seniority of the Elections of these former *Knights,* may be ascertained in the highest Degree of Certainty that historical Facts demand, which the present *Garter* hath digested into yearly chronological Schemes; whereby at one View may be seen, the Year of the Election of each *Knight,* in which Stall he was placed, his Seniority in the Order, who were his Contemporaries, and in what Stalls, how long each continued therein; and that from the Foundation of the Order to the present Time, even after the Practice obtained in translating from, or, (as the Term is) removing Stalls: So that this seems not to be, as it hath been hitherto esteemed, an unsearchable Enquiry, though it will be found full of Labour and Difficulties.

It is freely confessed, that the Censurers of Faults in other Persons, commit frequently as many Errors as they correct or amend; and this Writer is sensible that he is as subject to such human Frailties as other Persons; but protests here, with the Sincerity of an Officer of Arms belonging to this most Noble Order (if he may be allowed, with reverence to take that Liberty) that he hath not designedly run into any, and that he detests the criminal Fault of persisting in Error, and declares his Readiness to retract and rectify the Mistakes he hath made in his own Profession, when he is convinced of them; for he would not have Ignorance or Error made sacred by any Place or Title; and that he shall be the first Person who shall return Thanks for such Discoveries, his Design being to deliver Truth impartially, which he loves for its own native Simplicity; and as farther Searches shall be made, and more Records found, new Matter of course will arise, whereby the several Parts of this Discourse will be explained, improved, amended, or corrected.

The Positions laid down in the Beginning of this *Introduction,* That there are several Omissions, Interpolations, and Mistakes of Persons and Reigns in the present Catalogue, have been, as 'tis thought, separately proved; and it may not be esteemed unnecessary, to give some Instances where the equivocal Expressions used by the Compiler of the *Black-Book,* have, as it was hinted above, misled even Mr. *Ashmole* in Points relating to the original Elections of the Companions.

This Register then, after mentioning the Surrender of *Caen,* in 5 *Hen. V.* proceeds to say, that this King caused the Celebration of St. George's Feast to be there held, "*Ubi quindecim Equites regio more concreavit,*" which Mr. *Ashmole* mistranslates "with great Solemnity created fifteen *Knights*



“into the *Order*,” which latter Word is printed by him in the *Italick* Character, and inserted in the Chapter that treats upon the grand Feast of this Order, which may misguide the Reader, by inducing him to suppose, that fifteen Knights of the *Garter* were then made in the same Chapter.

In this Matter there are Mistakes of divers Natures, an Error in Chronology, and in the Nature of the Degree of Knighthood. The Town of *f Caen* was taken on 5 Sept. and the Castle capitulated on the 23d in 5 Hen. V. A. D. 1417. Now *Livius* tells us, that after this Surrender the King kept *Lent* and *Easter* at *Baieux*, and thence returned to *Caen*, where he celebrated this Feast of *St. George* according to the Custom of his Predecessors; so that of course this Feast was after *Easter* in the Year 1418, which fell then on the 27 March, and in 6 not the 5th of Hen. 5. & *Walsingham* therefore places it rightly on *St. George's Day*, in this sixth Year, and that it was solemnized in the Castle of *Caen*. Some of our Historians likewise set us at rights in the Degree of Knighthood then conferred, which they express in intelligible Language “*b quosdam Nobiles secundum Balneorum observantias creavit in milites.*” *Leland* indeed in an Extract mistakes the Year, but presents us with the Names of these Knights.

And it cannot be foreign here to take notice, that this and other Degrees of Knighthood, were heretofore usually conferred with great Solemnity at the *k Feasts* of this Order.

Now again: This *Black-Book* on 8 Febr. 39 Hen. VI, hath these Words, “*Rex autem ibi sedes è consensu transtulit, loco Ducis Buckingham Comitem Warwici constituens,*” &c. which equivocal Word *transtulit* induced Mr. *Asmole* to place these as Examples of Translations or Removals to higher Stalls by the especial Favour of the Sovereign, and he ranks these with the Cases of the Earl of *Ostrevant*, and of the Duke of *Glocester*; whereas if he had consulted the Scrutinies on that Day, he must have found therein the Names of all these Persons, who must therefore be then originally elected, and that they were only designed to the Stalls here

*f Livius in vita Hen. V. p. 38.*

Rot. Norm. 5 H. V. n. 101.

*g P. 448, A. D. 1418.*

*b Elmham de gestis Hen. V. in Bibl. Harley 62 B. 5. MS. vita Hen. V. quæ incipit Lucerna in Off. Arm. p. 56b.*

*i Collect. vol. I. p. 488.*

*k Comp. Garderobæ II R. II. p. 168<sup>a</sup>. Waltero Clopton capitali Justiciario de Banco Regis & Rob. Charleton capitali Justiciario de communi Banco R. pro apparatibus suis ad ordinem militarem de Dom. Rege in festo S. Georgii ad modum Banneret. suscipiend. viz. utriq; eorum — ad mantellam fururand. cum i penula de Cxx ventr. Menev. pur. & ad i capam faciend. ad infra vigiland. vi uln. pann. russeti long. & utriq; eorum ad lectum suum faciend. & lineand. ac pro balneo suo ii pann. ad aur. figaston. &c.*

Lib. Cotom in Garderoba p. 185<sup>a</sup>. Com. March. Thomæ Com. Stafford & A. Junc. filio Com. de Den in Arragonia pro vestur. & apparat. eorum ad ordinem militarem de Dom. Rege apud Wyndesore in festo S. Georgii anno xiii [Ric. II.] suscipiend. viz. cuilibet eorum ad i rob. yemal. fac. & furrur. &c. & cuilibet eorum ad lectum suum fac. & lin. ac pro

balneo suo cooperiend. ii pann. ad aur. figast. & i pec. findon. virid. afforc. xxiiii uln. tel. lin. brabant p. iiii or qrt. & ii pec. card. de lumbard.

Comp. Garderobæ 9 H. V. Regi Scott. ad & pro apparatu suo ad ordinem militar. de Dom. nostro Rege apud Castrum de Wyndesore in vigil. festi S. Georgii recipiend. viz. ad i capam, &c. & ad i lectum de Worsted rub. med. aff. cont. coopertor. tester. i par. blanket. p. blanket curt. i par. linth. de ii tel. lat. & iii uln. long. tel. lin. Brabant. & i canvas fest. de Canab. ac ad cooperiend. dict. lect. cum pann. ad aur. de Luke, & ad cooperiend. Balneum suum tam infra quam extra & in fund. cum tel. lin. Brabant. & de calcar. Glad. sell. & aliis rebus ordinat. & fact. pro dicto Rege.

Comiti Staff. ad & pro apparatu suo, &c. similiter.

Thus Charles V, holding a Chapter of the Toison at Utrecht in 1546, in the Cathedral Church, after bearing Divine Service with the Companions of that Order, did, in their presence, confer the Honour of Knighthood on the Seigneur Vigoreux de Cortevill. See the Instrument in Menestrier de la Chevalerie, p. 88.

*l Hist. p. 321.*

mentioned,



mentioned, is confirmed by an Entry in 1 Ed. IV, where it appears that some of these elect Knights had not even then received any Installation.

The Arms of Knights Companions of Foreign Orders have been frequently published in pompous Volumes; and even Draughts of <sup>m</sup> Arms, ascribed to the *Knights* of this Order, have been printed beyond Sea, in large Books, done according to the Conjectures and Fancies of the Authors, and indeed Mr. *Asmole* hath presented us with the Arms of them in a modern Fashion, omitting the quartered Coats; but it seems strange, that Types or Draughts of the Escutcheons or Plates, remaining in the Stalls at *Windsor*, have never been hitherto engraven and published. It was ordained by the <sup>n</sup> Founders Statutes, that a Plate of Arms of each *Knight* should be fastened to his Stall, for a perpetual Mark of his Honour: And to answer this Intention, in some measure, a Decree was made in a Chapter held in 1628, that all the Stiles on the Plates should be taken in a Book, and laid up in the College, which if ever done, was <sup>o</sup> lost before Mr. *Asmole's* Time. And since Types and Pictures do convey better Representations and fuller Idea's than any verbal Descriptions; so as the Omitting them in a Work of this Nature would be equal, if not worse than the Publishing a Book of Geography without Maps: It is therefore proposed, That whoever shall undertake this Work, should procure the Engraving the Plates still remaining, whereof Nine are for the *First Founders* as they are called, but whether *Coævons* should be critically examined. And as to those Plates of the Companions that have been sacrilegiously taken from thence, 'tis submitted, whether it may be proper to Engrave the Seals of such *Knights*, most of which may still be found affixed to Instruments executed by them; or, to cast them into the Form of the contemporary Plates, taking particular Notice thereof: As also to insert Draughts of the few Monuments that remain, exhibiting the antient *Knights* with any Ensigns of the Order, and the Pictures of some of them in the whole Habit preserved in Manuscripts; together with a most stately Procession of the Order, and a Representation of *Hen. VIII.* in a Chapter, with all the *Knights* Companions in their Habits.

The Reader must be cautioned in this Place to be on his Guard in the Case of Figures, and with great Strictness to examine into the true Ages of all Effigies and Draughts, whether they were really contemporary with the Person or Fact they represent, or erected in succeeding Times. Ma-

<sup>m</sup> Les Noms Surnoms Qualites Armes & blasons de tous les Princes Seigneurs Commandeurs Chevaliers & Officiers de l'Ordre & Milice de la Jartiere depuis l'Institution jusques a present creez par le Roy *Edouard III.* Roy d'Angleterre premier Fondateur & chef Souverain d'iceluy le dernier Decembre 1347. a Paris chez *Pierre Lamy* en la Grand Salle du Palais au second Pillier au Grand Cesar, 1647. 'Tis a large Folio, containing in each Side the Titles of the Knights, in the Middle their Arms within a Garter, and underneath the Blasons.

Armoiries & Blasons de tous les Chevaliers de l'Ordre du Roy de St. Esprit, de la Jartiere & de la Toison d'or depuis le commencement d'iceux jusqu'a present par *Charles Sayer Enlumineur* du Roy, in folio Paris 1643.

*Jean Boisseau* fit imprimer en 1658, un Promptuaire Armorial en quatre parties, la derniere desquelles comprend les Noms Surnoms & Qualites des Chevaliers des Ordres du Saint Esprit, de la Toison d'or, de la Jartiere & de l'Annonciade.

Les Noms & Armes des Chevaliers du St. Esprit depuis leur creation jusqu'en 1652, & ceux de l'Ordre de la Jartiere gravez par *Pierre Danet*, in Quarto, Paris.

And it appears that the very learned *Monsieur Peiresk* was very sollicitous to get a Catalogue of these *Knights*, in order to publish the same in a noble Design then on Foot. *Epistola ad Camdenum*, p. 322.

<sup>n</sup> Art. 22.

<sup>o</sup> *Hist.* p. 628.



ny Instances could be produced of great Errors committed by too hasty a Credulity in this respect. The Matter may be explained by a Supposition, That in case a Statue should now be made for *Hen. VI.* with a Collar composed of the Figures of Garters about his Neck, and the Image of *St. George* thereto appendant, and set up in the Nich of any College built by him; when this Effigies, by Length of Time, and Exposure to the Winds and Weather, shall become of the same Colour with the other Parts of the Building: It would be an Imposition on Posterity, when the Time of its Erection shall be forgot, if any Argument should then be drawn from this Figure, that this Sort of Collar and *George* was the determinate Form of the Symbols of the Order in the Reign of that Prince. Such an Argument must be built on a fallacious Ground, whether the Fact of the Usage of such a Collar in that Age was true or otherwise. Hence it is, that the Collector of these Notes is no more influenced by the Picture of *Ed. III.* in the Chapter-House at *Windsor*, with a *George* pendant to a blue Riband hanging down upon his Breast, than he is by the Escutcheon of the *Confessor's* Arms, as they are called, represented within a *Garter* in the Stone-work of the Chappel there. The learned *P. Guichenon* hath observed, that the Emblem of the *Annunciade* appears on the Statues of some antient Knights of the Collar in *Savoy*, who died long before the Time that Duke *Charles* added that as one of the Symbols of the Order. Such Ensigns have been placed by their Descendants, with an innocent Inadvertency, as Memorials only that their noble Ancestors participated in the Distinctions of these Orders, and not with any Design or View to impose on Posterity.

It must be an afflicting Consideration to a Lover of Antiquities, that at the Dissolution of religious Houses, and especially Frieries, no Care was then taken to remove the Monuments of the Dead, and the painted Glafs into neighbouring Churches; the Havock and Rapine, if it may not be termed Sacrilege, was unaccountable, and the *Right Rverend* Historian acquaints us, how early, upon the Survey, the Chappels were deemed superfluous, and the Ornaments rifled and sold. But 'tis high Time to draw to a Conclusion.

Though this Order, by the politick Contrivance of that potent Prince *Edw. III.* (in whose Reign, martial Discipline was at a great Height) was instituted principally for a *Fraternity of Arms*, insomuch as each Knight was by the sacred Tye of an Oath, obliged not to bear Arms against any of his *Companions* (which was the original Design of this and all other ancient military Orders, as will be sufficiently proved in its proper Place;) yet it likewise appears, this most Noble Founder had a further View, to give Encouragement and Reward to military Persons, descended from a Series of Ancestors of noble Blood, to remain for ever as the Price of Vertue, a perpetual Memorial of their Family, an Encomium of the Glory of their own Names, the Increase of their Honour, and a publick Te-

*p* L'Hist. Geneal. de *Savoye*, vol. 1. p. 112.

*q* Burnet's *Hist.* vol. 1. in the Records, p. 152.



stimony of the Eminency of their Deserts : And though these Knights stand in a much better Register of Honour, by the bare Act of an Election into this Order, than by any Narrative of their Lives recoverable at this distance ; yet as there can be no doubt, but a due and laudable Desire of Fame and Praise, was a main Spring of the honourable Atchievements, by which these *active* and *publick-spirited Knights* signalized themselves in unwearied Labours and Hazards for the Service of their Country ; so it may be a Tribute justly owing to their Memory and Merits, as well as a Debt to Truth and History, to retrieve some Accounts of their glorious Exploits dispersed in Records and Fragments, over-run as it were with the Rust of Time ; that these may be transmitted down with Honour to Posterity, and their Descendants be thereby excited to immortalize their own Names by imitating these noble Patterns, and illustrious Examples of distinguish'd Valour, Vertue, Generosity, and Contempt of their own private Advantage, when the Publick came in the Balance.

*Heralds - Office near  
St. Paul's Cathedral,  
London.*

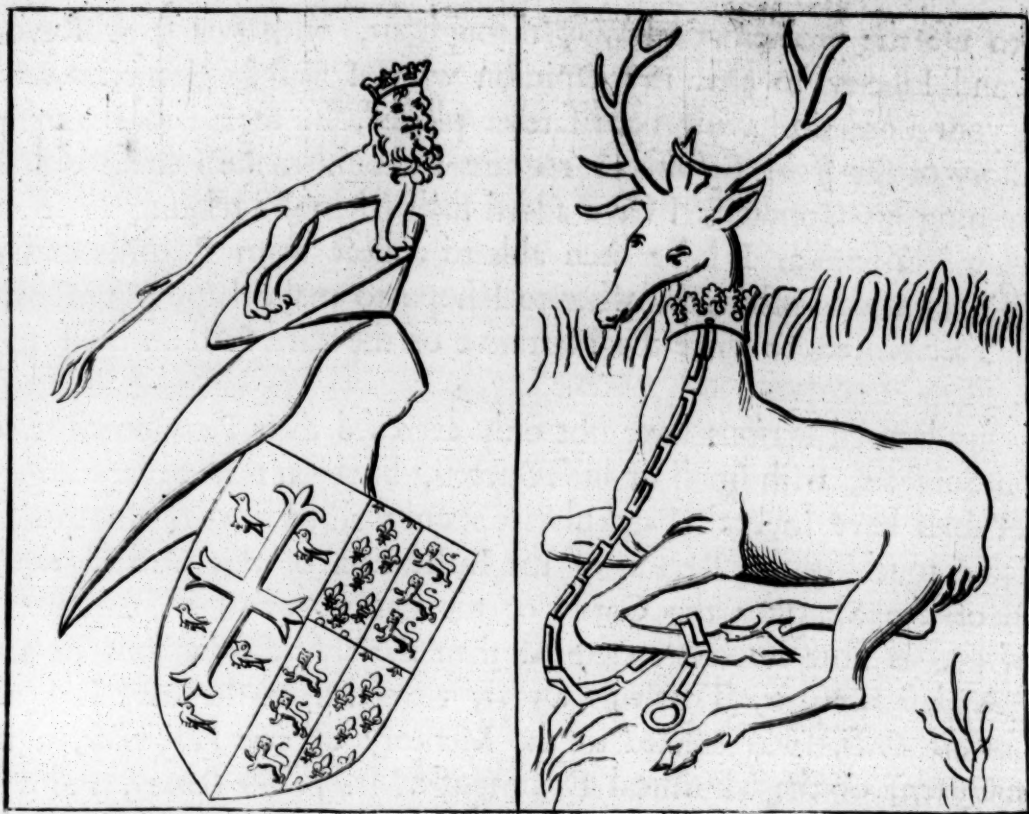


To









To the Right Honourable

*Sir* **THOMAS HERBERT**

*Earl of Pembroke and Montgomery, &c.*

*Knight of the Most Noble Order of the GARTER.*



THE real Occasion of the Erection of the ORDER of the GARTER, and the certain Æra of its Institution, are controverted Articles in History. The Loss of the original Statutes, and of the antient Registers and Annals, the Silence of contemporary Writers, and the great Distance of Years, have left modern Authors to the Liberty of giving various Conjectures in both Cases: Under these discouraging Difficulties, and by reason of the short Compass of Time, wherein my Enquiries have been

turned upon the Subject of this Order; I am forced to expose my own Defects, rather than not to obey your Lordship's Commands, in giving my poor Sentiments too hastily upon these fundamental Points; and here I am to crave the Freedom of taking the epistolary Manner, which is not tied to the Rules of any particular Method or strict Connection, so as I may lay down and resume the same Subject at my own Will,

R

and



and to use the problematical Way throughout, with Power of Revocation and Liberty to alter my Opinion when I shall be better informed. And your Lordship having been farther pleased, in regard to the injured Memory of Sir *John Fastolf*, to require I should make some Researches concerning his Conduct, I have added such Memoirs relating to it in a distinct Section, as I have been able to collect from Records and the most authentick Historians, whereto I hope to make large Additions, if I shall ever proceed to write the Narrative of the third Stall on the Prince's Side.

Many learned Persons have not only exercised their Pens on these two grand Subjects, with small or little Success, but even traditionary Legends and Fables have in both Particulars obtained admittance. In this first Article, touching the Reason of the Institution of this Order, the Fiction of the Slipping the Garter of the Queen, or of the Countess of *Salisbury*, is now no more credited than the absurd ridiculous Relation of <sup>a</sup> *Micheli Marquez*, That this Order, termed from the Greek Language *Periscelidis Ordo*, was erected to the Memory of one *Periscelide*, a true fairy Queen, or the whimsical Dream of <sup>b</sup> Mr. *Joshua Barnes*, in his far-fetch'd Derivation of it from the *Cabiri* among the *Samothracians*. To pass over these Visions as romantick Fancies, and without repeating the Sentiments of <sup>c</sup> Authors of the first Class, which may be consulted in Print, it is my Duty here to explain the Hint given in the foregoing *Introduction*, That the *Garter*, like other Military Orders, was, according to my present Notions, erected *principally* for a Fraternity of Arms: It is said *principally*, because some other Motives hereafter to be mentioned, might also be in the View and Design of the most heroick Founder of our Order.

It must be here premised, That the Enquiry is restrained at present, to shew for what Reason the Order it self was instituted, and not upon what Occasion the *Garter* was made the chief Symbol, and gave Denomination to it, which must be the Subject of another Disquisition; whereon I shall now only observe, that I can never believe it was purely humourfome, or accidental, or wholly allegorical and mystical, as the antient Author <sup>d</sup> *Belvaleti* interprets it, who hath given a Rationale or Explication of the Mythology or Moral (as he would have it) of every little Particular in the Fabrick or Make of the *Garter*.

According to the Rules of Method, and especially since I have undertaken to give a Conjecture, That the Order of the *Garter* owes its Origine to the same Cause that other such Military Institutions do; I

<sup>a</sup> Tesoro Militar de Cavalleria, p. 90. <sup>b</sup> Algunos dicen aver instituido esta Orden a contemplacion de Periscelide Reina de Gantiera, &c.

<sup>b</sup> *History of Edw. III.* p. 294.

<sup>c</sup> Leland in *Cygneam Cantionem*. Quærenti mihi sæpiusculæ de Periscelidis origine, relata sunt incerta multa, usq; adeo ut nondum apud me constituerim quid potissimum admittam; longe præstat silentio originem rei parum mihi constantis præterire, quam incerta pro certis pronunciare. Profecto verisimile est præclarum fuisse aliquod facinus, quod nobilissimæ Societati primordia tam Augusta

pepererit. Sunt qui Periscelidem interpretentur tesseram belli designare. Cineturæ species ea est. Cineti milites sua obibant munera. At quanta interim discinctorum infamia. Exautorati illi quidem erant. Sunt rursus qui dicunt Eadverdum Signo Periscelidis in sortem dato hostem vicisse; sunt porro qui Periscelidis circulo orbem virtutum apprime necessarium Principibus viris colligant.

Vide Camdeni *Britanniam in Atrebatiiis*, sive *Barkshire*.

<sup>d</sup> Catechismus Ord. Periscelidis.



take Leave to give a Definition, or rather a Description of a Military Order, which I think hath not been done by any of the numerous Writers on that Subject. By it then I understand a Brotherhood, Fellowship, or Association of a certain Number of actual Knights, subjected under a Sovereign or Great Master, united by particular Laws and Statutes peculiar to that Society, some whereof relate to warlike Purposes, into which College the Companions are admitted with certain Ceremonies and sworn to the Observance of those Statutes, and are distinguished by some particular Habits, Ensigns, Badges or Symbols, which usually give Denomination to the Order, the Vacancies wherein are from Time to Time supplied by Nomination or Election, for which, and several other Ends and Purposes, the Members are oblig'd to assemble and hold Chapters: And though the Proofs of these several Parts are within the Compass of my Design, however, for avoiding too great a Breach in the Beginning of this Letter, the same shall be postponed to be resumed in the Sequel hereof, since such an Examination will cast a great deal of Light in this Matter.

It would be Labour in vain to search for the Commencement of any Military Order beyond the 'twelfth Century: The Religious Ones are of a more early Date than the Civil Military ones, and owe their Original to the <sup>1</sup>Crusades, but both were in all probability instituted upon the same Prospect and Design, which might be the Giving mutual Aids and Supports in War, the Former against the Enemies of Religion, the Latter against the Enemies of the Sovereign; and the great Success the Former met with against the Infidels, might encourage and excite <sup>2</sup>Princes to erect the Latter for their own particular Defence and Security; for if we cast our Eyes on the Founders of them, we shall find them Persons famed for their military Enterprizes and warlike Policies; and by surveying these Orders, their Institutions will appear to have been at such critical Times when the Sovereigns or Founders were either making preparations or actually engaged in Wars with their Neighbours.

But to descend to more positive Arguments, in perusing the Statutes of the respective Orders, we shall meet an express Article, which in substance, though in different Terms, requires an Assistance to be given in War to the Grand Master at all Events, accompanied generally with the strictest Prohibition from bearing Arms against any one Member of the Society. But before References are made in particular to these Clauses, it may not be amiss to recite the Opinions of two Authors in Print who concur in their Judgments in this Point, and then to weigh the Motives why Princes have been induced to desire an Admission into foreign Orders, and on the contrary the Reasons given by other Princes, why they have refused such Orders when freely offered to them. In the next Place let us consider what Resentments have been shewn, and Punishments inflicted by Sovereigns upon their Subjects and Homagers who have presumed, without their previous Consents, to accept foreign Orders, and

<sup>e</sup> Papebroch apud Bolland tom. 3 April. p. 155. | <sup>f</sup> *Meneftrier de la Chevalrie*, p. 351, 352.  
<sup>g</sup> Heylin's *History of St. George*, p. 313.

then



then let us inspect the Forms and the Reasons given for the Surrenders and Resignations of Orders, and the Causes assigned for Deprivations; to all which let us add, the Expedients and Methods observed by cautious Princes upon their Investitures into foreign Orders, out of a justifiable Prudence, least they should otherwise thereby subject themselves to Obligations required by those Orders which were derogatory to their own Rights of Supremacy, or by the Acceptance of them entangle themselves in fruitless or dangerous Alliances; all which remarkable Occurrences and Proceedings, though very different in their Natures, will sufficiently evince, that the Supporting the Grand Master in all his Wars, is esteemed to be the principal Design and Intention, especially when compared with the express Articles of that nature in the Statutes of the respective Orders.

\* To proceed then: The Authors in Print are *Mezeray* and *Polydor Virgil*; the First with reference to the Order of *St. Michael* in *France*, and the Latter with an especial Regard to our Order of the *Garter*. This French<sup>b</sup> Historian informs us, that *Louis XI.* limited the Number of the Knights Companions to Thirty-six, but at the Time of the Foundation nominated only Fifteen, reserving all the other Vacancies in petto, with the political Prospect and Design of drawing Foreigners, especially the *Burgundians* and *English* into his Interest; for he obliged all the Companions to renounce all other Alliances, which (as this Writer there judiciously remarks) was the “ real Cause of that Institution, though that “ cunning Prince coloured it over artfully with the Pretence of a peculiar “ Devotion to the Archangel.” The Conjecture is sufficiently proved by the Behaviour of the Duke of *Bretagne*, whom this Prince attempted to entrap unawares, by the specious Bait of presenting him the Badge of this Order in the next Year after its Erection. The<sup>i</sup> Chronicle added to *Monstrelet* relates, that he sent his new-erected Order to this Duke, desiring his wearing the Emblem of it and taking the Oath, which the Duke refused in regard he had (as it is there reported) formerly declared himself the Friend, Brother, and Ally of the Duke of *Burgundy*, by the Acceptance of the *Golden Fleece*, which non-compliance offended the King to that degree, and (as this Author words it) not without good Reason, that he thereon declared War against the Duke: But we have the Reasons given by this Duke for his Refusal of accepting this Order till such time as an Explanation should be made of the Statutes; and though the Instrument be long, yet giving great Light into the Nature, Design, and Policy of the Erection of Orders, I cannot omit the Inserting the whole Substance of it.

After a civil Introduction in usual Forms, the Duke thinks proper to observe, that the first Article of the Statutes of this new Order of *St. Michael*, “ requires the Companions thereof to quit all other Orders, with “ an Exemption indeed for Kings, Emperors, and Dukes, who were permitted the Liberty of retaining their own Orders, if the Sovereign of

<sup>b</sup> Hist. de *Louis XI.* p. 136.

<sup>i</sup> Page 33.

<sup>k</sup> *Lobineau* Hist. de *Bretagne*, p. 709.



“ that of *St. Michael* should consent ; whereas this Duke represents that  
 “ he himself being Great Master and Sovereign in Chief of his own  
 “ Order, it would be severe to confine himself either to discontinue his  
 “ own, or to prevent him from erecting other Orders, which he had  
 “ Power to institute. Against the fifth Article, which ordains the strictest  
 “ Union among all the Companions, he remonstrates that the King  
 “ was at Liberty to admit the Enemies of the Duke into this Society of  
 “ *St. Michael*, and that the Duke was so much superior to most of the  
 “ other Companions, that it would be burthenfome to him to engage  
 “ himself with such from whom he could receive very little Benefit in  
 “ return. As to the sixth Article, whereby all the Knights were obliged  
 “ to serve the King in his Wars ; he answers, That he could not depart  
 “ out of the Limits of his own Dutchy, which being much environed  
 “ by the Sea would quickly be ruined, if he should be compelled to  
 “ break with all Persons, against whom the King should be pleased to  
 “ declare War ; besides, that the *Bretons* his Subjects were averse to serve  
 “ in War out of the Bounds of their Country. As to the Import of  
 “ the eighth Article, of the King’s Right of demanding the Advice of  
 “ the Companions, except in Matters of Secrecy and Dispatch, where  
 “ the King was at liberty, he freely avows, That he cannot engage him-  
 “ self in that implicate Manner, without knowing against what Persons  
 “ and for what Cause. To the ninth Article, which prohibits the Knights  
 “ Subjects to the King, to undertake any War or long Journey without  
 “ the Permission of the Sovereign, he enters a solemn Protestation, that  
 “ neither he nor his Subjects are any ways obliged to take the Direction,  
 “ much less to obey the Commands of the King in Matters relating to  
 “ War. To the tenth Article, which forbids all Manner of War between  
 “ the Knights, and which orders that all Differences between them shall be  
 “ ended in a Chapter of the Order ; He objects that he cannot submit  
 “ to it, for if any of his own Lords of *Bretagne* should chance to be  
 “ admitted into this Society, they might by this Method decline his Juris-  
 “ diction, which would be of the last ill Consequence. To the thirteenth  
 “ Article, which gives Permission to the Companions who are not Sub-  
 “ jects to the King, to defend their own Sovereign, if the King should  
 “ make the first Attack upon him ; but in case their own Sovereign  
 “ should be the first Aggressor, they may not then follow him, unless  
 “ they are compelled thereto, and that only when their own Sovereign  
 “ is personally present, in which Case too they shall give the King no-  
 “ tice thereof : The Duke insists that an Explanation be made of the  
 “ Meaning and Extent of the Word *Subject*, and declares his firm Re-  
 “ solution not to deprive himself of the Services of his Subjects, even  
 “ in case he should not be present in Person in his Wars. And lastly,  
 “ he represents, that he cannot submit himself to the Contents of the  
 “ eighteenth Article, which empowers the King to resume the Ensign of  
 “ the Order for a Crime, because he cannot consent to the Giving any  
 “ new Rights to be exercised over Himself or Subjects, of whom he is  
 “ the natural Lord and Judge, and that the Acceptance therefore of this  
 “ Order would, as he conceived, be a Pledge given by him derogatory



“ to his own personal Rights, to those of his Dutchy and of his Subjects.” Hence we may sufficiently be instructed of the Policy, Spirit, and Design of this Order, and also of all others which contain in them Clauses to the same Effect and Purpose.

<sup>l</sup> *Polydor Virgil* informs us, That *Alfonfus* Duke of *Calabria* perceiving that the *French* King had Intentions to declare War against him, earnestly solicited an Admission into the Order of the *Garter*, as a Security against such an Attempt; on which this Historian observes, That the antient Custom of giving Aid and Support to Companions of the same Order, was then grown obsolete, as had fully appeared in the Cases of several *Italian* Princes, who in vain had applied for such Assurances from the Colleges of the *French* and *Burgundian* Orders, of which they were Members.

But though the Giving a real effective Support, might in that Age be out of Fashion; yet we learn from our Records in this very Case, that the Companions had a Right to such Assurances; for when this Duke of *Calabria* had succeeded his Father in the Throne of *Naples*, and the *French* Embassadors applied to our *Hen. VII.* for the Borrowing of a Sum of Money, that Prince returned this real or politick Excuse, “ That he could not with Honour, give any Aid against the King of *Naples*, who was his Companion and Ally, having received the *Garter*; and that in case he should act otherwise, the same would be contrary to his Oath which he had taken according to the Statutes of the Order.” Whence, by the Way, it appears, that our King, who had not been a Knight of the *Garter* before his Accession to the Crown, did thereon take the Oath for the Observation of the Statutes. as hath been practised in the like Cases by the “ Sovereigns of the Orders of *France* and of the *Golden Fleece*; though <sup>o</sup> Mr. *Asmole* observes, That *Edw. VI.* became Sovereign by virtue of the first Article of the Statutes, not needing any Ceremony to make him so: And I have above shewn, that *Hen. VI.* had not only the Habits of this Order prepared for him against *St. George’s* Feast in his first Year, but paid the Fees for assuming his Stall in his third Year, when by reason of his Minority he was not capacitated to understand the Nature of an Oath.

This Request of the Duke of *Calabria* shews, the Motive why Princes have solicited an Admission into foreign Orders; and the Records are very full in declaring the Reasons for which several Princes have accepted the *Garter*, That it was in Token, Sign, and <sup>p</sup> Pledge of perpetual Friendship, Love, and Brotherhood; these Instances are so numerous that it would be too tedious to recite them: Hence the Society is called <sup>q</sup> *Con-*

<sup>l</sup> *Hist. Angl.* p. 587.

<sup>m</sup> *Caligula D. 6.* in *Bibl. Cotton.* Que le Roy ne poyoit avec son honneur bailler aide & assistance a icelluy son bon Frere & Cousin a l’encontre du Roy de *Naples*, qui estoit son Confrere & Allye, veu & considere, qu’il avoit prins & receu l’ordre de la *Jarretiere*: Et si le Roy autrement faisoit, ce seroit contrevenir au serment, qu’il a fait par les Statutz du dit Ordre, &c.

<sup>n</sup> *Godfrey Cerem. Franc.* vol. 1. p. 419, 437, and the later Kings have taken the Oath the Day after their Coronations. See *Anselme Catalogue des Chevaliers in the case of each Sovereign, &c.*

<sup>o</sup> *History*, p. 320.

<sup>p</sup> See above p. 6. Note a. of *Albert and William Dukes of Holland*; and p. 28. Note b. of the *Emperor Sigismund, &c.* And even as late as *Gustavus Adolphus*, who saith that he received the *Garter* in arctioris amicitiae nexum, & evidentissimum amoris—perpetuo duraturi. *Selden’s Titles of Honour*, p. 381. See the 38th Article of the Order of the Holy Ghost, &c.

<sup>q</sup> *Froiss.* vol. 1. ch. 302. vol. 3. p. 87.



*frairie*, and the Members *Confreres* and *Freres*: And the Historians stile those of the same Order *Freres & Compagnons d'Armes*, and take notice, that mutual Friendship is so absolutely required, that it is the highest Aggravation of an Injury when it is done by one Companion to another. Thus the Duke of *Orleans* complains, that the Murther of his Father was more criminal in the Duke of *Burgundy*, in regard that as the greatest Confirmation of a *Fraternity* and Society of Arms, they had mutually received each others Orders.

This Assassination was committed on 23 Nov. 1407, which probably was before the Time that there were any Military Orders properly so called either in *Orleans* or *Burgundy*; so that this Expression may mean nothing more than their mutual Acceptance of the Devices and Badges of each other: Yet we see the Opinion of that Age, That personal Enmities were unjustifiable even in these Cases of Badges, which Symbols were then worn as Memorials and Pledges of strict and firm Amity. Indeed *Jurvenal des Ursins* acquaints us, That the Duke of *Burgundy*, in 1405, upon a Reconciliation, promised this Duke of *Orleans* to be his Brother in Arms, and to bear (as he expresses it) his Order, which doubtless was the ragged and knotty "Baton, with the Motto *JE L'ENVIE*, taken by this latter Duke to distinguish his Partizans in his Contest with the Former, touching the Maintenance of his Authority, as the Order (as 'tis here called) of the Duke of *Burgundy*, was probably that of the Joyners Plane inscribed *JE LE TIENS*, to shew that he intended to break the Authority of the other Duke; for it will be shewn hereafter, that such Devices have been frequently called Orders.

But as some Princes have been earnest to accept foreign Orders; so others, in different Circumstances, have declined them when offered. There is only one Instance, recorded in the Register of the *Garter*, of a Refusal, which is of *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*, who gives this Reason, " \* *Least he should be obliged to break either the sacred Statutes of this Order, or the Rights of Kindred.*" He means that Article of the Statutes which prohibits these Knights from bearing Arms against any of the Companions, which he could not oblige himself by Oath to observe, because he was then engaged to support the Duke of *Brabant* his Uncle and Ally, against the Duke of *Glocester* a Knight of the *Garter*, for the Recovery of his lawful Wife, whom this latter had unhappily married, which unfortunate Controversy run to the Length of a Challenge for a Combat between these two Dukes: And here I must crave Leave in a short Digression to observe, That this Duke of *Burgundy* within few Years after this Refusal, erected the Order of the *Golden Fleece* with the Motto *Autre n'hauray*, i. e. *I will have no other*; and since the second Statute expressly prohibits the Companions thereof from accepting any other Order, it is left to your Lordship's Judgement, whether it is not a probable

r Chifflet Vind. Hisp. p. 269. Monstrelet, vol. 3. p. 75. Commynes p. 106, 162, 157, 158, 159, &c.

f Menestrier de la Chevalerie, p. 72.

t Ad A. D. 1405, & A. D. 1411, portoient l'ordre l'un de l'autre ou auvoient promis le porter.

\* Du Chesne Hist. d'Angleterre ad A. D. 1405. Favin. vol. 2. p. 23, in English.

See Chifflet Lilium Francicum, p. 79, 80, who differs a little.

x Lib. Niger in Anno 2 Hen. 6.

y Rot. Parl. 3 Hen. 6. n. 19.



Conjecture, That this *Motto* may relate in some Manner to this Refusal of our Order, and to his <sup>z</sup> Resolution at that time to receive no other, tho' the usual Interpretation is, that he only designed thereby to intimate he would not marry again. Indeed his Lady surviv'd him, which prevented the Exposing him to the Temptation of trying his Resolution for a Re-Marriage; And in truth it must be allowed that he altered his Resolution, if he ever made one to refuse all other Orders, since eighteen Years after this Institution he accepted the Orders of *Alfonfus* King of *Arragon* and *Sicily*, which will be mentioned in the Sequel of this Letter. It is certain that his Son, Duke *Charles*, having as 'tis presum'd in his Father's Life-time, receiv'd the Order or Device of <sup>a</sup> *Bretagne*, altered the *Motto*, which taken in the Sense of his Aversion either to another Order, or to another Marriage, was equally unsuitable to his Circumstances. But the chief Reason of inserting this Guess is, with a View only of shewing, that a Foreigner upon Refusal of our Order, might thereon take an Occasion of erecting one of his own; as it will be soon evident other Foreigners did, upon the Resignations or Deposals from the *Garter*.

I come now to enquire what Resentments Princes have shewn upon their Subjects or Homagers, who have accepted the Order of the *Garter*, or any other, without their previous License and Consent.

*Gilles de Bretagne*, mentioned above in the <sup>b</sup> *Introduction*, third Son of *John VI*, Duke of that Place, was Uncle [in Law] to our *Henry VI*, and was bred up in the <sup>c</sup> *English* Court from the Age of twenty-one Years, and received several signal <sup>d</sup> Favours 'till his Return to that Dutchy in *December* 1443, where he was forthwith imprisoned, and at length strangled on 24 *April* 1450, because as several <sup>e</sup> Authors inform us, he had received the Order of the *Garter*. A late <sup>f</sup> Writer conjectures, the Letter said to have been sent in the Name of our King, demanding his Release upon the Account of his being a Companion of this Order, was a Piece of Art contrived to hasten his Death; which if it should be admitted to have been a pure Forgery for that wicked Purpose, yet such an Artifice will by no means prove that he was not a Knight of the *Garter*, but rather the contrary; for 'tis improbable the Counterfeiter of it would invent a Fact that could very easily be disproved. 'Tis certain, that some little time before he was thus murdered, one of the Articles of <sup>g</sup> Impeachment

<sup>z</sup> Gollut Republ. Sequanoise, p. 726, soit pour monstrier, qu'il ne vouloit autre femme, ny amie que la Duchesse sa compagne; soit qu'il vouloit monstrier, qu'il ne se lieroit a une autre Ordre de Chevalerie.

<sup>a</sup> Comines, p. 7 & 8.

<sup>b</sup> Page 6. Note c.

<sup>c</sup> St. Marth. Hist. Geneal. vol. 2. p. 490, 491. See Rymer, vol. 8. p. 877.

<sup>d</sup> Priv. Sigill. 5 May. 12 H. 6. recites, That the King on the 5th of Nov. in his 11th Year, had granted to his Cousin Giles Son of his Uncle the Duke of Bretagne 250 Marks yearly, in consideration of his proximity in Blood, and his great personal Vertues. And another Privy Seal dated 13 Dec. 22 H. 6. recites a former Grant of 1000 Marks yearly to him, for such time as he should continue in this Kingdom; and that he being then on his departure out of this Realm, the same should be paid up to Candlemas following; as

also to give him a gold Cup of the Value of 100 Marks and 100 l. in Money within the same.

<sup>e</sup> Hist. de Charles VII. p. 212. Speaking of the Attachment of Francis Duke of Bretagne to the French King, saith, il a porte guerre contre tous, qu'il scavoit estre contre le Roy de France, mesment contre son Frere, qui avoit recue l'Ordre du Roy d'Angleterre qu'on appelle la Jartier.

Monstrelet lived in 1461, and in his Hist. vol. 3. p. 31, to the same Purpose. — Contre un de ses propres Freres nomme Messire Gylles de Bretagne, lequel ou prejudice du Roy de France, & sans quelque adveu de luy, avoit receu l'Ordre du Roy d'Angleterre qu'on appelle le Jaretier, &c.

See Bertr. d'Argentre l. 12, c. 3. La Roque traite de Noblesse, p. 371.

<sup>f</sup> Lobineau l'Hist. de Bretagne, p. 637.

<sup>g</sup> Rot. Parl. 28 H. 6. n. 26. 7 Febr.



in Parliament against the Duke of *Suffolk*, charges him with the Omif-  
fion of comprehending the King of *Arragon* and the Duke of *Bretagne* in  
the Truce entred into with the King of *France*, “whereby that Duke [of  
“ *Bretagne*] is become your [that is our King’s] enemy and Gyles of Bre-  
“ *tagne* his brother, which is and belong tyme hath been your well willed man  
“ and servant put in grete duresse of prifon and likely to be putte to deth or  
“ destroyed for his true faith and will that he hath to you.”

A great Jealousy was upon the like occasion expreffed against an Ho-  
mager; for when *William* of *Bavaria* Earl of *Ostrevant*, eldest Son of *Albert*  
Earl or Duke of *Haynalt* and *Holland*, received the Order of the *Blue Garter*  
of the *Company* of *St. George*, it was immediately (as <sup>b</sup> *Froiffart* words it) in-  
ferred, that he thereby shewed his Courage or Inclination was much  
more *Engliffh* than *French*; and this Fact being represented to *Charles V.*  
King of *France*, with an Explanation, That no Person could be ad-  
mitted into this Order, without a previous Oath not to bear Arms  
against the Crown of *England*; that King was so highly incensed,  
that he caused this Earl to be summoned to perform his Homage  
for the County of *Ostrevant*, to which another contemporary <sup>i</sup> *Histo-*  
rian adds a farther Circumstance, That this Earl, upon the Receipt  
of the *Garter*, had discontinued the Wearing the Jewel that was the  
Symbol of the Order of the King of *France*, and indeed we are af-  
fured that he <sup>k</sup> received the Honour of Knighthood from *Charles V.*  
to whose Daughter he had been contracted in 1377, who died before  
Marriage.

In 1470, when *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* appeared in *Gant*, having  
the *Garter* on one of his Legs, and upon him the Red Crofs, which was  
the Order and Emblem of *Edward* [IV.] King of *England*, he thereby  
shewed and declared himself (as the <sup>i</sup> *Historian* expreffes it) the capital  
Enemy of the King of *France* and of that Kingdom, and was to be ta-  
ken and reputed an *Engliffhman*, whereon that King confiscated the Lands  
of this Duke by an <sup>m</sup> *Instrument*, whereof a Copy is printed in the Proofs  
annexed to the History of *Philip de Comines*.

Thus the King of *France* was extreamly dissatisfy’d with the <sup>n</sup> Duke of  
*Orleans* for taking the *Golden Fleece* in 1440, interpreting that Action as  
an Alliance made with the Duke of *Burgundy*, the Sovereign of it, and  
with the Dukes of *Bretagne* and *Alençon*, who had at the same time ac-  
cepted that Order with him.

In later Ages our Country-men *Sir Nicholas Clifford* and *Sir An-*  
*thony Shirley*, were committed to Prison for accepting the Order of  
*St. Michael* without the License of *Queen Elizabeth*, as <sup>o</sup> *Mr. Cam-*  
*den* informs us, whereof a more particular Narrative is inserted in the

<sup>b</sup> Vol. 4. c. 22. p. 86, 87.

<sup>i</sup> *Hift.* de *Charles VI.* par le *Laboureur*, p. 196,  
197.

<sup>k</sup> *Beka f.* 208.

<sup>l</sup> *Chroniques additionnees au Monstrelet*, page  
33 b.

<sup>m</sup> *Preuves sur Commines*, p. 101. 3 Dec. 1470.—  
E. avec ce nous a este remonstre comment le dit

Duc de *Bourgogne* en demonfrant vouloir de de-  
meurer nostre perpetuel ennemy & de la Couronne,  
a pris la Jartiere, & Ordre de nostre ancien Enne-  
my *Edouard* de la *Marche Anglois* & porte son En-  
seigne, qui est la Croix rouge, &c.

<sup>n</sup> *Monstrelet*, vol. 2. p. 181. a. b.

<sup>o</sup> *Camden*. *Eliz.* sub *A. D.* 1594.



*p* Margin. This latter Person, Sir *Anthony Shirley*, after several famous Exploits in foreign Parts and several long Peregrinations, accepted another Order;

*p* Touching Sir *Anth. Shirley*, and the ORDER of St. Michael.

To our very good and honoured Friend Sir *John Wolley*, Kt. of Her Majesty's Privy Council.

**A**fter our very hearty Commendations. According to her Majesty's Commandment, we have called before us Mr. *Anthony Shirley*, and having strictly examined and required him upon his alleageance truly to declare the manner of his acceptance of the Order of Knight-hood of St. Michael, he answered, That when the French Kinge did offer the same unto him, he refused it, being minded never to accept thereof, and afterwards the Duke of Buillon, and Monsieur de Sancy told him, that if he did not accept of the King's honorable Offer, the Kinge would take it in yll parte, and to be done to his dishonour. But not being persuaded to accept thereof, he repayed to her Majesties Ambassadour, who advised him to refuse the same if he could, but if he were earnestly pressed, and could not refuse it, then to accept it without the Oathe, reserving always his service and due to her Majesty. And being afterwards earnestly pressed by the Kinge, he did accept the said Order of Knight-hood, and kneelinge (his hands between the Kings) the Statutes of the Order being read, he tooke the Oathe, saving always his duty and alleageance to her Majesty, and made no account of the said Order, otherwise then to satisfy the King's pleasure therein. And being sharply reprehended by us for accepting that Order, to the devidinge of his service, by Oathe given to another Prince, notwithstanding the reserving of his Allegiance and Duty to her Majesty without her Highness pleasure first known; he sayth, he is hartely sorry for his offending her Majesty therein, having never any meaning to have offended her Majesty thereby. We have committed him close Prisoner in the Fleet, until her Majesty shall otherwise command: We have also called before us Sir *Thomas Shirley* the Father, and charged him, that he hath encouraged his Sonn herein, and hath persuaded him, to take the place and precedence of other Knights; he answereth, that he hath not any wayes encouraged him, but hath counselled and charged him to be very curious and circumspect in takeing place, to the offence of any, and is most hartely sorry, that his Sonn hath thus done, to the offence of her Majesty: which our doings according to our duties, we desire you to let her Majesty understand, until our selves may waite on her Highness, to make more particular relation thereof. And so we bid you right hartely farewell this 12th of March 1593.

Your very loving Friends,

*Jo. Puckering, C.S. T. Buckehurst.*

14th of March 1593.

**B**eing sent from the Lord Keeper, and the L. Buckhurst unto Mr. *Shirley* in the Fleet, to understand what Oathe he tooke, at the receiving of the Order of St. Michel, and the manner thereof: At the first I wished him to sett down in writing as much of it, as he could call to his remembrance, and thereupon he wrote a syde of a leafe of paper, containing in effect these things.

That Othe he tooke none, for he onely made answer to the Kings demands, and had no Booke presented him to swear by.

That the Kings Demands were two (1) that he would promise never to bear Armes against him for the Service of any Prince Christian, but only his Sovereign, or

by her commandment. (2) That he should never Spot himself with any Infamy unworthy of so High an Order, both which he promised to perform.

This upon his Lyfe and reputation he affirmeth to be all, being so short a matter to be remembred, that he doth assure the truth of the report thereof.

But supposing, that so short a report would give little Satisfaction, I desired him that I might set down from his mouth by my writing, some more circumstances and particularities: The which he granted. And then upon my Questions unto him (which I framed from a Copy of the manner of the receiving of that Order by the Duke of Norfolk and Earle of Leicester in A<sup>o</sup> 1566. that I had of Mr. Garter by my L. Keepers direction) he answered as follows.

That the King at ten of the Clock in the night, sent for him into his Cabinet by Le premier Secrétaire de Navarre, and at his coming thither, he found with the King, the L. Chancellor, who is also Chancellor of the Order, the Bp. of Bourges that is Prelate of the Order, Le Sieur de Beaulieu Secretary of the Order and of Estate, Le Sieur de Sansay, Monsieur le Grand, and sundry other Gentlemen, the Notary of the Order (that afterwards entred his name into the Register) and the foure Ushers of the same.

That being come into that presence, the King before them all declared the good opinion his Majesty held of him, the love he bare towards him, and the good Service that he had done unto his Highness, for requital whereof, when he came to be peaceable King of France, he should receive further recompence, In the mean time his Majesty would bestow an Honor upon him, by the receiving whereof, the King assured him, he should be tyed to no Ceremony.

Thirdly, that the Forme of giving the said Order was in this sort. First his Spurs and Sword were taken from about him, then he kneeled down, and putting his hands within the King's, Monsieur Beaulieu the Secretary of the Order made unto him in the Kings name, the two demands aforementioned in his Declaration. Then the King himself asked him; Promettez vous cela; his answer was, Ouy Syre je le promets. Then the King drew out his Sword, and laid it on Mr. *Shirley's* shoulder, saying, Soyés Chevalier de St. Michel, au nom de St. George, car vous l'avez bien merité. And while he was yet kneeling, the King put on his Sword about him himself, but his Spurs were put on by Le Sieur Rocolour premier Gentlehomme de la Garderobe. That done, the King kissed him on both his Cheekes, and at his rising again, put on about his neck the Lace and Michel that he wore himself. And these things besides the paying of fees were all the Ceremonies.

Fourthly, I asked him, whether the Book of the Statutes of the Order were not read unto him, at the time of his Creation. His Answer was, that he receiving the Order in the night, because the next morning he was purposed to have gone away by the break of day with the Convey of the Duke Monpensier, the Booke containing the said Statutes being at the Chancellors House two Leagues from Chartres, was not then sent for, but afterwards the Count Chiverny, the Chancellors Son shewed it unto him, being a little Booke of some twenty leaves, written in great letters, wherein to his remembrance, there is nothing containd, which may not be referred to one of those two Heads, sett down in his Declaration, being for the most part matters of Honor, touching the defence of Ladyes and Orphans, and committing no Crimes, nor base actes, &c.

Lastly,



der, that of <sup>9</sup> St. James in Spain, and at last was made a Count of the Empire; but 'tis probable he had long before resolved not to return to his native Country; for this Honour could not have been received from the Emperor without Leave, if any Homage was to be performed upon the Acceptance of it, or if it gave Admission into the Imperial Diets, both which must have been derogatory to the Rights due to his <sup>r</sup> natural liege Sovereign.

Hence therefore William de Vergy, Steward and Marshal of Burgundy, took the proper Steps in desiring the Consent of the Emperor Maximilian in 1518, for his Acceptance of the Order which Charles Duke of Savoy had sent him, which License imports the Emperor's Approbation, "in regard, as 'tis worded, that the Duke of Savoy was a Prince of the Empire, and therefore a Vassal or Homager to him as well as the Steward of Burgundy.

It is probable that Mr. Astmole had not the Fortune in his industrious Searches, to meet with any Precedent of a Resignation of the Order of the Garter. And indeed upon an Installation, the Oath was worded for the Observance of the Statutes in absolute Terms, which seemed not to allow any tacit Reservation to renounce or abdicate the Order at pleasure: But then we are to remember that it was the established casuistical Doctrine of former Ages, that a Person might not only surrender any Treaty or Alliance, but that an Homager or Vassal was entirely discharged from the Obligation of his Oath, if he publickly returned his Homage (as the Stile then was) to his Sovereign, that is, if by a publick Instrument or Messenger he declared to him that he would not any longer continue his Subject, and then he was at liberty to send him a formal Defiance; and it was the like Practice at that Time to perform Homage to

Lastly, I asked him, whether he gave any Instrument in writing of the acceptance of the Order, because there were such given in the Creation of 1566, but his answer was, That he gave none, nor that there was not any required of him, which seemeth to stand with good reason, for in the former Creation, being done by Commission by Monsieur Rambouillet such an acceptance in writing was requisite, but in this being done in the King's presence, superfluous.

This is as much, as I could learn of him, and to testify the truth hereof, I have his own hand to two blotted papers, the Substance of both which I have contained in this.

Geor. Carew.

[One of the blotted Papers referred to, is, I presume, as follows.]

Being demanded by Mr. Cary from my Lord Keeper, and my Lord of Buckhurst, what solemn Othe I tooke, at the receaving this Order of St. Michell, as I answered your Lordships the other day, so I say still: That Othe I tooke none, except the Answer I made to the Kings Demand w<sup>er</sup> an Othe. For Booke I had none presented me, to swear by. The effect of the Kings demand was, That I should promise in his hands never to bear armes against him, for the Service of any Prince Christian, but my Sovereign, or by her commandment. And I did freely assure him, &c. That I should never spot my self with any Infamy unworthy so h<sup>gh</sup> an Order, as he termed that, which I did as liberally promise, as I meane to performe. This is all upon my lyf and repu-

tation: So short a matter to be remembered that I do assure the truth of the report of that.

Ant. Shirley.

[The other Paper is in substance the same, with Geo. Carew's account, as before recited.]  
From my Lord Keeper Puckering's Papers MSS. in Bibl. Harley.

q E. Cod. M. S. de familia de Shirley penes Thomam Rawlinson, Arm.

r See Camden. Eliz. A. D. 1596. Rymer vol. 15. p. 285, 289, 301. in the Case of Tho. Arundell.

1 Du Chesne Hist. de Vergy, p. 325.

t The Duke of Orleans in 1402, sent a Challenge to our Hen. IV. to fight him personally with 100 Knights on each Side; that King returns an Answer, and among other things recites the Alliance made formerly between them, observing "que nul Prince, Seigneur, Chevalier, ne de quelconq; estat, qu'il soit, doit demander de faire armes dessous nulle alliance ne amistee. & par ce que nous quittons devers vous toute vostre alliance & amistee." The Duke of Orleans replies, "Et pour ce que vous dictes que nul Seigneur, Chevalier de quelque estat qui il soit, ne doit demander a faire armes, &c. sans rendre leurs alliances avant faire telles entreprises; Je ne scay se a votre Seigneur lige, le Roy Richard vous rendistes la serment de feaute qu'aviez a luy, avant que vous procedissiez contre sa personne par voye de faict. Leibnitz Cod. jur. Gent. Diplom. vol. 1. p. 268, 270.

foreign



foreign Princes upon receiving the Settlement of Pensions, a Notion different from the Tenour of the antient Feudal Law, where Homage attended Beneficiary Fiefs in Lands only. This is hinted only to shew, not to justify these Customs, whereof there are several Instances in the Historians and Records.

*Ingelram*, Lord of *Coucy*, *Marle*, *de la Frere*, *D'Oissy* and *Montmyrall* came into *England* one of the Hostages for the Payment of the Ransom of the King of *France*, and grew into such favour with *Edw. III.*, that in 1365, he married *Isabel* that King's Daughter, and was created by him Earl of *Bedford* and *Soissons*, and invested with the *Garter*. After the Death of that great Prince his Father-in-law, by an authentick publick Writing executed in Form he surrenders his Faith and Homage, as also the *Garter* to *Rich. II.*, desiring another Knight might be elected to supply his vacancy, "because he was obliged, as he therein <sup>x</sup> faith, to serve the King of *France* his natural and sovereign Lord, according to his bounden Duty." Here is an expresse Renunciation of the Order, because of the Inconsistency thereof with his natural Allegiance. The Chantor of the Chappel of *Windsor* did, in 1377, account for the silver Belt which was about the Sword of this Earl of *Bedford*: But since his Name remains in the *Windsor-Tables*, it may be conjectured from that appearance, that he was afterwards restored to this Order, which will be examined in the Narrative of his Life: So that I shall now only observe that he instituted an Order of his own, stiled <sup>z</sup> *The Crown*.

The Behaviour of *John de Montford* Duke of *Bretagne*, seems in most respects to correspond with that of his Brother-in-law this Earl of *Bed-*

<sup>u</sup> *Though this be a County in France, yet Edw. III. gave him this Earldome, because the same had been surrendered to this King by Guy de Chastillon, by the Licence of Charles V. for his ransom, &c.*

<sup>x</sup> Treshonnoure & Tres Poissant Seigneur,

Vostre Noble & Grant Seignourie scet & cognoit assez l'Aliance, que de la Grace & Bonte de tres poissant & bon Roy, mon treshonnoure & tres redoubte Seigneur & Pere le Roy derrainement trespasse (que Dieux face merci) a pleu que j'ai en aly & au encore avec vous; dont Treshonnoure Seigneur je vous mercie tant comme je puis & scai.

Or il est venu, que la Guerre est entre le Roy de *France*, mon naturel & Souverain Seigneur d'une part, & vous d'autre.

Dont il me desplaist plus que de chose qui puist estre en ce Monde, se amender je peusse;

Et m'a commande & requis, que je le serue & acquitte mon devoir, comme Je sui tenus, au quel, comme vous savez bien, je ne doy desobeir, si le servirai a mon poir, comme je le doy faire.

Et pour ce, Treshonnoure & Trespoissant Seigneur, que on ne puist en aucune manere, parler ne dire chose qui fust contre moy, ne mon honneur, vous fais assavoir les choses dessusdites, & vous renvoie tout ce, que je pourie tenir de vous en foy & hommage.

Et aussi Treshonnoure Seigneur, mon treshredoubte Seigneur & Pere dessusdit vuolt moy ordonner & mettre en la treshnoble Compaignier & Ordre du *Fortier*; si plaist vestre treshnoble & poissant Seignourie de pourveoir, en lieu de moy, tel ou ainsi que il vous plaira, & moy tenir excuse en ce.

Car treshonnoure Seigneur, se en autre maniere vous me voliez aucune chose commander, je le feroie de tout mon pooir.

Treshonnoure & trespoissant Seigneur, je prie a Messire qu'il vous dont bonne vie & longue.

Escript le xxvi jour d'Aoust.

Locus Sigilli,

Le Sire de *Coucy*.

In Dorso.

A Treshonnoure & trespoissant Seigneur le Roy d'*Angleterre*. Et memorandum quod littera prædicta portata fuit, Domino nostro Domino Ricardo Regi Anglie apud manerium de *Hatton-graunge* juxta *Hundeslowe*, per quendam Pagettum sc. Johannem Pieres nominatum, qui ydioma Anglicanum loquens, dictam Literam involutam in quodam papiro nudo indorsato.

A Tres honurez & trespuissant Seigneur le Roy d'*Angleterre* mon tres redoubte Seigneur.

Dicto Domino Regi liberavit die Veneris proximo post festum Apostolorum Simonis & Jude Anno præsentis in præsentia Dominorum Willicmi de *Ne-vill*, & Johannis Cheyne militum & aliorum ex parte Inglerami Domino de *Coucy*.

Rymer, vol. 7. p. 172.

<sup>y</sup> Comp. Ric. Launston Canonici & Precentor. A. 1377, pro xv gladiis & xxxiii galeis vendit. & una zona argentea quæ fuit circa gladium Comititis de *Bedford*, &c. In *Ærario Windesor*.

<sup>z</sup> Hist. des Ordres Monast. vol. 8. p. 285.

ford,



ford, between whom there was, as *Froissart* informs us, the greatest Friendship; for he had been bred up in the Court of *England*, and had married another Daughter of *Edw. III.*, and had the Earldom of *Richmond* conferred on him, and was established in the Dutchy of *Bretagne* by his Aid and Power; so that in 1373 he renounced the Homage he had made to the Crown of *France*, being at that time re-married to <sup>a</sup> *Joan* Half-sister to our *Rich. II.*, yet in or about the Year 1380, he revolted to the Party and Interest of the King of *France*, and went so far in a <sup>b</sup> Treaty as to promise Assistance to that Crown against the Kings of *England*, *Navarre*, and all others; for which his Lady was detained in this Realm and his Lands were <sup>c</sup> seized in 5 *Rich. II.* and in the very next Year he convened an Assembly of the States to give their Opinion in this Matter of his performing Homage to *France*, and erected the Order (as 'tis called) of the <sup>d</sup> *Ermine*, with the Motto A M A V I E, which their Historians leave to be explained by the Conjectures of the Readers; and I know not whether it will be a tolerable Guess, to suppose it might any way relate to the Declaration that <sup>e</sup> Duke sent into *England* on 28 Oct. 1380, therein setting forth that the King of *France* and his Accomplishes laid Snares for his Life, "*qui insidiantur mihi die & nocte & Vitæ meæ;*" and therefore protests in Form, That in case he should thereby be forced to enter into any Agreements, contrary to his Engagements with *England*, that the same were extorted from him "*metu mortis:*" And it may not be unlikely that he conceived the Institution of this new Order might be some Security to his Person and Life, and in a short time afterwards he performed <sup>f</sup> this Homage at *Compiègne*.

It may be reasonably supposed that this Duke followed the Example of his Brother-in-law the Earl of *Bedford*, in surrendring this Order, because there were no Robes provided for him in 8 7th, 11th, 12th, and 13th of *Rich. II.*, or that he was deposed from it, since he had entred into open War with this Kingdom; though it may not be improbable that his Stall might be kept vacant, upon a <sup>b</sup> Prospect of his returning to the Interest of this Crown, as indeed he afterwards did, having a safe Conduct to come <sup>i</sup> hither in Person 21 *Rich. II.*, being afterwards released from several <sup>k</sup> Debts, and having the Earldom of <sup>l</sup> *Richmond* restored to him, and at <sup>m</sup> *St. George's* Feast in the next Year, he had the <sup>n</sup> Habits of this Order; so that he was doubtless reinstated in his Stall, and his Name still remains in the *Windfor-Tables*. He died soon afterwards on 1 Nov. 1399,

<sup>a</sup> Lobineau en preuves de l'Hist. de Bretagne, Page 633 & Page 850. To whom he was married before the 10th of July 1372, *ibid.* p. 580, and this is the Lady Joan to whom with her Husband the Earldom of Richmond was granted in 46 *Edw. 3.*, and not Joan his third Wife, Daughter of the King of *Navarre*, as *Dugdale 1 vol. Bar. p. 52*, mistakes it, for he was not married to her till 11 Sept. 1386. *Du Paz. Gen. de Bretagne, p. 551.*

<sup>b</sup> Bouchard Annales de Bretagne, p. 133 b. Lobineau l'Hist. de Bretagne, p. 437.

<sup>c</sup> Pat. 5 *Rich. 2.* p. 1. m. 16. Vide Lobineau en preuves de l'Hist. de Bretagne, p. 632.

<sup>d</sup> Lobineau Hist. de Bretagne, p. 442. Hist. des Ordres, vol. 8. p. 285.

<sup>e</sup> *Ibid.* en preuves, p. 608.

<sup>f</sup> Lobin. en l'Hist. p. 442.

<sup>g</sup> See above p. 10, Note u, p. 11, Note c, p. 12, Notes d and e.

<sup>h</sup> It appears in the Parl. Roll. 14 *Rich. 2.* Que le quel jugement (del forfait) n'estoit mye enroulle en roulle du Parlem. l'an. viii, par certains causez au Roy & Seigneurs bien conuz.

<sup>i</sup> Rymer, vol. 8. p. 8.

<sup>k</sup> *Ibid.* p. 38.

<sup>l</sup> *Ibid.* p. 64. Mr. Lobineau had not the good Fortune to be informed of this Instrument, Hist. p. 495, &c.

<sup>m</sup> *Ibid.* p. 79.

<sup>n</sup> See above page 13, Note f.



and the Effigies on his Tomb in the Cathedral of *Nantes*, represented in *Lobineau's History of Bretagne*, exhibits him with the Collar of *Ermines* about his Neck, and with the Garter buckled over the Armour of his Left-leg, which was the Ensign of our Order; but it seems to appear from this Figure, as if the like Garter was also about his Right-leg.

I would not separate the Cases of these two Brethren; though I must confess I have met with no positive Proof that this latter resigned or renounced the Order by any Instrument, as the other did. And I now crave Leave to mention two other Instances, which seem to have been Surrenders, that is of Sir *Francis Surienne* and of the Lord *Duras*, though the *Black-Book* differs, assigning the Stall of the First to become void by his Death, and of the Latter by a Degradation; though if that Stall was vacant by that Method of Deprivation, the same will be as full to my present Purpose: But I take it to be my Duty to represent Matters in the true Lights they appear to me; and 'tis consistent with good Nature and Ingenuity, to vindicate the injured Memory of the Deceased.

The <sup>o</sup> *Black-Book* on the 4th of Nov. in 16 *Edw. IV.* relates, That Sir *Thomas Montgomery* was elected a Companion in the Place of the Lord *Duras*, who had deserted the King, and like a Batt which flies abroad in the Dark [*tanquam Vespertilio*] had fled into *France*, and took the Oath of Fidelity there.

This is an harsh severe Censure; and, it may be, the Similitude and Parallel to a *Batt* was a Flower of Rhetorick cast in by the Compiler, who might have no Voucher for it in the *Registrum Chartaceum*. Let us see therefore if the Criticalness of the Juncture, and other Circumstances, may in any measure, if not excuse, yet mitigate his Submission to the Crown of *France*; and let us examine his Behaviour as to the *Garter*.

Your Lordship, by casting your Eyes over the Memoirs of his Life, will find that he had exposed himself to the greatest Dangers, and to the Loss of his large Patrimony in *Aquitain* for his Adherence to the Crown of *England*; that in *March*, 16 *Edw. IV.* he surrendred several Grants upon receiving a Sum from the *Exchequer*, to which he was doubtless induced, by the Treaty then in agitation for a Truce between the two Kingdoms, which was at length concluded to continue during the <sup>p</sup> Lives of the two Kings, and for one Year after the Decease of the First of them, wherein no Care or Provision appears to have been made for those Persons whose Lands in *Aquitain* had been seized for their Loyalty to the Crown of *England*; and the Desire of a Restitution to an ample Estate, after so long a Dispossession, if the same could be honourably obtained by the Consent of all Parties, can in no ways be blameable; and our King seems to have agreed, in some measure, by the Acceptance of his Surrender of the beneficial Grants. A <sup>q</sup> M.S. if it may be credited, acquaints us farther, that he even took his Leave of *Edw. IV.* at *Calis*, where he caused a Mass of *St. George*

<sup>o</sup> In that Year.

<sup>p</sup> The Proofs will be inserted hereafter in the Narrative of his Life.

<sup>q</sup> H. 8. In my Custody, p. 186, 284.



to be celebrated, and then offered up his *Garter*, upon his Intention of embracing the Interest of *France*.

Sir *Francis Surienne*, usually called, from his Country, *Arragonois*, was elected in 26 *Hen. VI.* and the Duke of *Norfolk* is in this *Black-Book* said, on or after 4 *Aug.* 28 *Hen. VI.* A. D. 1450, to succeed in his Stall, then vacant by his Death. The Compiler of that Register hath entred two distinct Scrutinies at large; and upon the First, the Kings of *Arragon* and *Poland*, and the Duke of *Brunswick*, are declared elected in the rooms of the Earl of *Averence*, the Dukes of *Coimhero* and of *Suffolk*, then dead; who, with the Lord *Ryvers*, were elected upon a single Scrutiny, and then, which is somewhat remarkable, follows a second Scrutiny; after which 'tis entred, that the noble Duke of *Norfolk* was elected into the Place of *Francis Arragonois now deceased*. Is it to be supposed the News of his Death was brought to this Chapter during their sitting, after the Election on the first Scrutiny? Otherwise, why was that Scrutiny confined only to the Filling four Stalls vacant by Death, while, according to this computation, there was another void in the same manner? But though the Election of this Duke of *Norfolk* is introduced only by the *Latin Word subinde*, without any farther Designation of Time, yet it appears to have been in a distinct Chapter; for the Lords *Scales* and *Beaumont*, two of the Nominators in the First, do not occur in the second Scrutiny, and the Earl of *Shrewsbury* and Lord *Sudeley*, who gave their Suffrages in the Second, are not mentioned in the first Scrutiny. *Henry VI.* began his Reign on 31 *August*, so that the Election of this Duke being in the Twenty eighth Year of his Reign, and subsequent to that of the Four abovementioned Companions, must of course have happened in some subsequent Day of that Month. The *Æra* of his Election is not the present Subject, but the Enquiry now is, where there are any Reasons to conjecture, that this *Arragonois* had either resigned the Order, or that he was degraded from it by a Decree of the Chapter, upon his doing Homage to the King of *France*. It is much to be lamented that the *Registrum Chartaceum* is missing, which would in all probability settle several Particulars that must be now left to Conjecture: And as *Mr. Ashmole*, who had the Benefit of the Perusal thereof hath observ'd, that this Paper-Register places these Elections in the 29 *Hen. VI.* which the Compiler of the *Black-Book* hath run back to the preceeding Year; so it may be as probable that he took the same Liberty of the Addition of the Death of this Person. The Fact is, That this Knight yielded up the Castle of *Fougeres* in *Normandy*, in *Nov.* or *Dec.* 1449, and thenceforth, as the *French* Authors assure us, remained in the Interest and Obedience of the King of *France*: And a safe Conduct being some Years after the Election of this Duke of *Norfolk*; granted at his Instance, for

Exit. Pell. Michs. 26 *Hen. 6.* *Francisco Larra-*  
goncz nuper constituto Militi de *Gartera* 14 l. 16 s.  
8 d. Eidem *Francisco* in consideratione quod idem  
Rex eundem *Franciscum* constituit militem de *Gartera*  
per viam regardi x l.  
In this Year. SS. *Hist.* p. 368.

Montrelet, vol. 3. p. 6 b. 13, 19, 23 b.  
Chartier l'*Hist.* de *Ch.* vii. p. 134, 153, 186.  
Lobineau l'*Hist.* de *Bretagne*, p. 639, 640.  
D'Argentre l'*Hist.* de *Bretagne*, p. 824, *saib*,  
That he surrendred *Fougeres* on the 4th of *Novem-*  
ber 1449.



<sup>a</sup> *Francis Arragonois*, Knight, in 33 *Hen. VI*, to come into this Kingdom, this Entry in the *Black-Book* of his Death must be a Mistake, if this be the same Person, which seems very probable from some particular Restrictions in this Instrument that shew the Government entertained Suspicions of him, and which seem to have a particular View to prevent any such Surprize as he had formerly committed in seizing the Castle of *Fougeres* in the Night, which Action *Hen. VI*, and the Duke of *Somerset* his Lieutenant-Governour of *France* disavowed in publick, for Reasons of State; though 'tis to be believ'd private Orders had been given for that Purpose, which might be such a Tryal of his Patience, that it might throw him so far off from his Temper, as that he might resign the *Gar-ter* when he entred into the Service of the Adversaries: That he either did so, or was degraded, may be collected from the Silence of the *Windsor-Tables*, for he could not be omitted for Want of an actual <sup>x</sup> Installation. And it is probable that he resign'd this Order, before he obliged the <sup>y</sup> *French* with an Attestation upon Oath; wherein he discovered a Secret of the greatest Importance, That there had been a Design formed for an Year and an half to surprize this Castle of *Fougiers*, which he by the Knowledge, Advice, and Consent of the King of *England*, the Duke of *Somerset*, and other chief Persons, put in execution in the Month of *March* 1448, according to the Method of Computation used in *France*, or 1449 according to the *English* Calculation.

As the Statutes of most Orders were framed from the Model of the *Gar-ter*, and bear also an Analogy to the Customs of it: So there are the like Precedents of Renunciations of foreign Orders, when the Companions have quitted the Interests of the Grand Masters. Thus the Lord of <sup>z</sup> *Chasteauvillain* in 1432 returned the *Golden Fleece* when he entred into the Alliances with *France*, for which latter Action he was greatly blamed by our valiant Duke of *Bedford*, and charged that he had thereby falsified his Oath, and the Duke of <sup>a</sup> *Burgundy* seized his Lands situate within his Territories, and detained them 'till the Peace of *Arras*. <sup>b</sup> *Honore Grimaldi*, the second Prince of *Monaco*, in 1642, surrendred the same Order when he put himself under the Protection of *France*: And we have the like Examples in the Order of *St. Michael* which <sup>c</sup> *Charles V.* returned upon the Prospect of a Rupture; as did the Marquess of <sup>d</sup> *Mantua* in 1521, when he was constituted the Pope's General; and <sup>e</sup> *Philibert Emanuel* Duke of *Merceur* quitted that of the *Holy Ghost*, when he entred into

<sup>a</sup> Fran. 33 H. 6. m. 24. 23 Nov. Rex per literas suas paten. per 5 menses prox. futur. duratur. de avifamento Conc. sui ad instantiam consanguin. Rs. *Johs. Ducis Norf.* suscepit in saluum conductum, &c. *Francisc. Arragonois mil'* cum 12<sup>m</sup>. person. familiar. suis in regnum *Angl'* ac villam *Cales*, &c. veniendo morando & exinde vers. partes suas proprias absq; perturbatione revertendo Proviso quod idem *Francisc.* & diæt. personæ bene & honeste se hab. erga Regem & populum suum absq; aliquo faciendo vel attemptando quod in Rs. seu populi sui prejudicium cedere valeat, Quod ipsi nullum Castrorum, &c. Rs. ingrediant. absq; eo quod Ipsi prædictas literas Capitaneis, &c. primitus demonstrant.

<sup>x</sup> Privat. Sigill. 15 Dec. 26 Hen. VI. Henri, &c.

To the *Treasurer*, &c. Forasmuche as we understanding that our Right Trusty and wellbeloved Franceys *Aragonez* late made Knight of the *Gar-ter* hath paid for his Fees to the College of *St. George* at *Windsore* 13 l. 16 s. 8 d. Ye repay it, &c.

<sup>y</sup> *Leibnitz* Cod. Juris Gentium Diplom. vol. 2. p. 95, 96.

<sup>z</sup> *Monstrelet*, vol. 2. p. 89.

<sup>a</sup> *Du Chesn* Hist. de la Maison de *Chasteauvillain*, p. 74.

<sup>b</sup> *Anselm* Hist. Geneal. de *France*, p. 1716.

<sup>c</sup> *La Roque* de la Noblesse, p. 362.

<sup>d</sup> *Honore* de *Sainte Marie* de la Chevalerie, p. 438.

<sup>e</sup> *Anselme* Hist. Geneal. de *France*, p. 1651.



the *League*, though upon a Reconciliation with *Hen. IV*, he reassumed the same.

I shall only add upon this Subject of Resignations of our Order, that when *Philip King of Spain*, upon a Dissatisfaction, delivered up the Ensigns of the *Garter* in 1560, to our Ambassador, the same, as the learned <sup>f</sup> *Mr. Camden* observes, was interpreted to amount to an absolute Renunciation of all Friendship and Amity.

But if the Duke of *Bretagne*, Sir *Francis Surienne*, and the Lord *Duras*, did not resign this Order, but were deposed, the Reason of their Degradation was for their entring into the Interests, Alliances, or as the Term then was, the Homage of the Enemies of the Crown. It would be too tedious to detain your Lordship a long While upon this ungrateful Subject, and it would be an Anticipating the History to amass all the Instances of this Nature; so that I shall run over this Article very briefly, by shewing, That Deprivations have been upon the Breach of that Statute, which requires the Supporting the Sovereign and the Companions in War.

The Behaviour of *Gaston de Foix* Earl of *Longueville* and *Benauges*, and of his Son the Earl of *Kendal*, will illustrate this Matter in opposite Views: The First, as it is said in the <sup>g</sup> *Introduction*, and the Latter some Years afterwards, were deservedly chosen Knights of this Order; and they both, for a long Time, shew'd an incredible Loyalty and firm Attachment to the Crown of *England*, which they continued when all *Guienne*, except *Baionne* only, had been surrend'ed to the *French*. The Father being then in the Power of the Enemies, refused to pay them any Submission upon the Account of his Religion and Reverence of the <sup>b</sup> Oath

<sup>f</sup> Elizabetha ad A. D. 1560.

<sup>g</sup> Page 40, Note g.

<sup>b</sup> Chartier Hist. de Ch. vii. p. 242, A. D. 1451.— *Gaston de Foix* Comte de *Benauges*, ou *Bennanges*, & Captal de *Beuch* se retira par devers Monsieur le Comte de *Dunois*, & fit une Traite & appointement avec le dit Comte touchant son fait & les siens: Or pource que le dit Monsieur le Captal estoit Chevalier de l'Ordre de la Jartiere, qui est l'Ordre du Roy d'*Angleterre*, il estoit en volonte de se retirer avec les *Anglois* — Il fut accorde par les parties ce qui S'enfuit, &c.

*Ibid.* p. 463. — messire *Gaston de Grely* ou *Gresly* Captan de *Beuf* ou Captal de *Buch* & son fils qui rendirent & mirent toutes leurs Places en l'obeissance du Roy, mais il ne voulurent faire le serment, pource qu'ils estoient de l'Ordre de la Jartiere, qui est l'Ordre du Roy d'*Angleterre*.

*Bertrandi Eliæ* Hist. Comitum *Fuxensium*, p. 64, 65. *Gasto Fuxensis* — ei cum multa alia tum imprimis Equestris dignitas & præclara honoris insignia, quæ ordinem *Jarroteria* vulgo appellant, a Rege [*Angliæ*] ultro deferuntur — Quum autem *Carolus Galia* Rex accepisset *Gastonem* cum *Anglis* in *Aquitania* esse, ut qui illic possessiones suas tueretur, ac multa oppida castellaq; præsidio *Anglorum* nomine teneret, confestim in eum movet, nulla; data providendi occasione, cum primum illuc appulit innumera oppida vi capit, agros, villas, possessiones, ferro igniq; vastat, atq; omnem fere *Aquitaniæ* suæ ditionis facit, tandem commisso cruento prælio, cum multos alios tum etiam hunc capit, captumq; in arce recludi atq; adservari jubet.

Cui tandem intervenientibus amicis impunitatem libertatemq; Rex promisit, modo ab *Anglis* ad se deficere vellet, fideiq; iusjurandum præstare. At ille ut erat propositi tenax fideiq; perpetuus observator, amicis id ei in carcere renunciantibus respondit, se eam maximam libertatem existimare, cui integra fidei religio semper assisteret — Quamobrem se *Britanno* Regi ob fidem præstitam obnoxium addictissimumq; semper fore, seq; malle mortem suppliciaq; pati, quam illi non adherere, non inservire, non obsequensimum esse, a quo tam pulchra militiæ auctoramenta, equestre scilicet insigne accepisset, ac subinde tamen Rex meas (inquit) fortunas, meumq; corpus possideat, animum tamen non habet, quippe *Anglo* Regi, cui omnia debeo, semper inserviat, atq; illi presto sit. Tantumque abest ut ego possessionum recuperandarum aut libertatis adipiscendæ gratia ad *Carolum* deficiam, & Equestrem dignitatem, qua me *Anglus* insigniit exuam, ut si triplo meliores conditiones offerantur, aut multo majus immineat mihi periculum, haud quidem facturus sim, neq; propterea minimum de statu deiciam. Quod animadvertens Rex, ac subinde iniquum esse arbitratus tam excelsum animum in carcere confici, *Gastonem* omnibus nudum fortunis interdicta ei tota *Gallia* dimisit. Qui deinde omni spe destitutus ad Regem *Arragoniæ* proficiscitur, a quo est benigne liberaliterq; exceptus, tandemq; post aliquot annos Maellienti oppido, quod ei idem Rex habitandum dederat, moritur.

Vide *Olhagary* Hist. de *Foix*, p. 326.



he had taken for the Observance of the Statutes of the *Garter*; and at last, by this Greatness of Mind, he prevailed so far on the Count *de Dunois*, that he obtained Liberty by a separate Treaty on 7 July 1451, to settle his large Estates in *Aquitain* on his Grandson, then only three Years old, contenting himself with the Privilege of a safe Conduct to continue in these Parts, or to remove thence within the Term of one Year; during which Time he had Liberty granted him, if he pleased, to declare himself a Subject of *France*, with the Benefit of a Restitution to his Land: And farther also, That in case his Son, the Earl of *Kendal*, should embrace that Interest, an ample Recompence should be made him for the Effects he should lose in *England*, by such an Alteration of his Allegiance. This Family had considerable Patrimonies in *Savoy* and *Arragon*, and the Father chose rather to lose his Lands in *France*, and to suffer an Imprisonment for some time, and then to fly into *Arragon*, than in the least to swerve from his said Oath and Conscience, and in this Constancy of Opinion he died, under pressing Difficulties, in his Exile, whereon his Hatchments were offered with Honour at *Windsor* in 37 Hen. VI. The Son imitated for a great while the worthy Example of his Father, not only to the Loss of his whole Inheritance, but to an Imprisonment for seven Years; and at last, paid such an excessive Ransom for his Release, that he was utterly <sup>l</sup>ruined, "*penitus & in totum destructus*"; notwithstanding which pressures, he adhered inviolably to Hen. VI. during his whole Reign; though upon the Alteration of the Royal Line, he omitted to pay that Duty to *Edw. IV.*, and upon his embracing the Interests of *France*, his Ensigns were <sup>m</sup>removed from the Choir at *Windsor* in 3 Ed. IV, and therefore, as it hath been already hinted, his Name occurs not in the *Windsor-Tables*.

The like Methods of Deprivations have been observed in other Orders, when any Companion hath neglected to support the Sovereign, or hath levied War, or entered into Alliances against him. It may be pardoned that I lay some such Instances out of the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, at large, taken from a <sup>n</sup>Manuscript, because I suppose they have not hi-

<sup>i</sup> Guichenon Bibliotheca Sebustiana, &c.

<sup>k</sup> Vasc. 29 H. 6. n. 3. 29 July, Quod per quand. supplicationem Carissim. consanguin. nostri Gasconis de Foix Com. de Longueville & de Benagues Castanei de Bouch & Johannis de Foix filii ejus Com. de Kendale presentatam accepimus, qualiter ipsi cum Ducatus noster Aquitan. in manus adversarii nostri Franc. ab obedientia nostra redderetur, Nolentes prout adhuc nolunt sub obedientia seu favore præd' Adversarii nostri existere, quinimo desiderant se durante vita sua fideles ligeos nostros permanere, a Ducatu nostro præd' usq; regnum *Aragon*, adepta sibi prius a quibusdam inimicis nostris adversario nostro præd' adhæren. pro omnibus terris Dominiis & possessionibus suis certa pecuniæ summa, unde dum Ducatum nostrum præd' ab obedientia nostra fore contingeret venire possent, se retraxerunt; semper optantes Ducat' nostrum infra bre. Deo duce ad nostram ditionem redigi, attendentesq; ad id proficiend' tam corpora, quam bona sua pro viribus suis applicare, ac præd' Gasco & Johannes formidant, quasi personas terras suas ex dono nostro habere, &c. Nos dedimus ei'dem omnes terras quæ prædicti Gasco & Johannes tam in Ducatu Aquitan. quam in Ducatu nostro Norman. &c.

<sup>l</sup> Rot. Fran. 39 Hen. 6. m. 8. 7 Dec. Nos considerantes gratuita laudibilia & fidelia obsequia tam nobis quam Nobilibus Progenitoribus nostris Regibus Angliæ per Johannem de Foix Comitem de Kendale & ejus Patrem atq; Antecessores, verum etiam gravia & importabilia dampna exheredationes & deperdita per ipsos ob ligeantiam & fidelitatem nuper sustenta, necnon dira & intolerabilia imprisonamenta quæ ipse Johannes Comes in manibus inimicorum nostrorum captus & detentus fere per septem annorum spatium, sufferre coactus est, ac etiam graves & excessivas financias & redemptiones in quibus per dictos inimicos positus est & quas nec ipse (cum sit occasione guerrarum nostrarum & pro servitio nostro penitus & in totum destructus) nec ipsius amici sufficiunt contentare & satisfacere; de gratia nostra, ut idem Comes de prædictis financiis aliquantulum relevetur, & unum ex filiis suis, quem pro eo in dictorum inimicorum potestate demisit, juramentumq; suum & promissionem ea de causa datas servare possit, &c.

<sup>m</sup> Liber Niger in dicto Anno.

<sup>n</sup> Hæstor. le Breton, Montjoy King of Arms, now in the Library of the College of Arms.



therto appeared in print, which I shall place according to the Series of Elections.

*John de Neufchastel* Seigneur de Montagu, was elected in 1451, and upon his retiring into France, and taking Party (as 'tis worded) against the Sovereign, he was on 8 March 1481, adjudged to be excluded out of the Order, and declared incapable to bear the Collar or any other Ensign thereof.

*John* of Burgundy Count d'Estampes, a near Kinsman of the Duke of Burgundy, being Son of Philip Count de Nevers, Son of Philippe the Hardi, was elected in 1456; but (as this M.S. informs us) his Plate was never affixed, because he was a Fugitive from his Country: An Author in his marginal Note, said to be extracted from another M.S. relates, That in the first Chapter held by Duke Charles at Bois le Duc, he being summoned to appear to answer a Charge of Witchcraft and abusing the Sacraments, he returned the Emblem of the Order to prevent a formal Deprivation; but a later Writer is express, That he was deposed from it for embracing the Interests of Charles VII, King of France.

However this Fact may be, the following Instances are more full to the present Purpose. *Anthony de Bourgoigne* natural Son of the Founder, elected as above, was summoned to appear in the Chapter held in 1481, for he had not only entred into the Service of Lewis XI, but at last was made Knight of the Order of St. Michael.

At the same Time *Philippe Pot* Seigneur de la Roche-Noulay, who had been elected in 1461, was deprived, for that he forgetting his Oath taken in this Order, had voluntarily forsaken Madam the Dutcheffs, and submitted himself to her Adversary the King of France, and took his Partie in War. And from his Epitaph we learn, that he also received the Order of St. Michael.

In that Chapter a Censure passed upon *John de Damas* Seigneur de Clessy, though he was dead, in that he had acted contrary to his Oath as a Knight, Brother, and Companion of this Order [to which he was elected in 1468] and therefore his Punishment is left to the Almighty, the sovereign Judge of the World.

*Jacques de Luxembourg* Seigneur de Richebourg, was the next upon whom the Sentence of Deposition was given in the same Chapter, for that swerving from his Duty, and contrary to the Oath taken in this Order as a Knight, Brother, and Companion [elected in 1468] he not only swore Allegiance to the King of France, and omitted the Wearing of the Collar of the Golden Fleece, but without surrendring the same, had publicly born the Order of that King, and appear'd in Arms and actual War with the Enemies of the Duke, and seiz'd several of his Towns and Seigneuries. And the Inscription remaining on his Monument at Clercamp mentions him to be a Knight also of St. Michael.

The Decree then also given against *Philip de Crevecœur* Seigneur d'Esqueredes, is more particular, it enumerates the Honours and Advancements

<sup>o</sup> Pierre Matthieu Hist. de Louis XI. p. 750.  
<sup>p</sup> Gollut Memoires de Franche Comte, p. 738.  
<sup>q</sup> Anselme Hist. Geneal. p. 126.

<sup>r</sup> Mausolee de la Toison d'Or, p. 41, 42.  
<sup>s</sup> Ibid. p. 50.



conferred on him by the late Dukes *Philip* and *Charles*, and by the *Dutchess* in her Minority, but that in Contradiction to his Oath, he delivered up several Towns to the King of *France*, and had not only omitted to wear the Collar of the Order, but bore that of the King of *France* and continued in Arms and open War against the Duke, Sovereign of the Order present in Person, and the Companions thereof, for which Reasons he was adjudged degraded from the same, and declared incapable and unworthy of it, and that the Plate of his Arms should be removed out of the Church and affixed to the Door, and reversed or turned upside down. This is the famous Marshal *des Querdes* who made the greatest Figure under *Lewis XI.* and *Charles VIII.* And an Author tells us that the Arms of all these Persons were removed from their Places, and that an Inscription in memorial thereof remains to this Day.

*Adolf de Cleves* Seigneur de *Rarvestein*, *Louis de Bruges* Seigneur de *Grutuse*, and *Jacques de Savoye* Comte de *Romont*, were summoned to appear in a Chapter held in *Mechlin* 24 May 1491, to answer Points touching their Honour, the First and Last died before that time, but the *French* Ambassador interceded that the Plates of the Seigneur de *Rarvestein* and of the Lord *Grutuse* should not be removed. This Summons issued probably, because these three Persons supported the "Pretensions of those of *Gant*, in their Claim of a Right to the Guardianship of the Children of the *Dutchess*.

Thus also in the Chapter of the *Holy Ghost* held at *Fontainbleau* on 15 May 1633, it was adjudged that the Duke of *Elbeuf* and the Marquess of *Vieuville* having fled the Realm and born Arms against the King contrary to the Statutes of the Order, should be degraded, and their Arms removed and broken, and that in the Place of them there should be Inscriptions fixed, containing this Sentence for a Memorial to Posterity of their Felony (as 'tis termed) and Ingratitude. To this may be added, that the Ambassador of *France* in 1688, demanded the Restitution of this Order from the Duke of *Bracciano*, when he espoused the Interests of the Pope.

I come now to consider the several Sorts of Cautions used by politick Princes in their Acceptance of foreign Orders, and the especial Care they took to guard themselves against subjecting themselves to the Duty enjoined by the Statutes, to support the Grand Master thereof in his Wars, and other such Obligations inconsistent with their own Sovereignty, or the Rules of their own Orders. And here I shall pass over such Protestations made upon the Investitures of the *Garter*, which are to be found in *Mr. Ashmole*, and may be easily consulted.

Some Princes would not trust to the Validity of these general verbal Protestations only, but made express previous Terms and Stipulations, that in case of War, they should reciprocally remain at Liberty to return the Orders; which was made an Article of Agreement between *Alfon-*

<sup>1</sup> *Jurispr. Heroica*, vol. 2. p. 147.

<sup>2</sup> *Gollut Memoires des Bourgongnons*, p. 930.

<sup>3</sup> *Hozier les Noms, &c. des Chevaliers, &c.* crees le 14 May 1633.

<sup>4</sup> *Anselme Hist. Geneal.* p. 1729.

<sup>5</sup> *History of the Garter*, p. 450, 451, &c. *The Protest of Frederick King of Denmark*, 24 Eliz. *Bridgerod Breviarum Equestre de ordine Elephantino*, p. 16, &c.



*ius* V. King of *Arragon* and *Naples*, and the Duke of <sup>a</sup> *Burgundy* in 1447, upon the interchanging of their Orders. And here a particular Incident happened, that the Emblem of the Order of this *Alfonsus* being a white *Bend*, *Belt*, or *Ribband*, worn transversely or obliquely from the Shoulder, which chanced to be used in the same Colour for the Scarf or Badge of the Enemies of the Father of this Duke of *Burgundy*; he therefore to avoid the Scandal that his Subjects and Allies might take at that Symbol, makes a <sup>b</sup> Reservation to wear this *Stole* or *Bend* of black Colour upon his Breast, hanging directly down from his Neck or Shoulder, so jealous was he not to conform to any Habit that resembled the Livery of his Enemies: Which brings to my Remembrance, that when <sup>c</sup> *Gui Ubaldo* [*de Rovere*] Duke of *Urbini* was elected into the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, and the Statutes were presented to him in the *French* Language, he out of his Aversion to the *French* Nation refused them, 'till they had been translated into *Latin*.

But the most usual Expedient that Princes took to obviate the lying under a single Obligation on one Side only, was, as in the preceeding Example of the King of *Arragon* and Duke of *Burgundy* to receive each others Orders mutually at the same time: But not to <sup>d</sup> repeat the Precedent of the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Orleans*, touching their respective Badges, I chose rather to instance their Sons and Successors in these Dutches; and here occurs a memorable Transaction, that in 1440, when *Charles* Duke of *Orleans* was with the greatest Generosity ransomed from his Imprisonment in *England*, after the Continuance of twenty five Years, by the Duke of *Burgundy*, who had not only advanced the entire Sum, but given him his own Niece, *Mary* of *Cleves*, in Marriage, and honoured him with an Election into the Order of the *Golden Fleece*; yet this Duke of *Orleans* refused the Acceptance of it, unless the other would first receive the *Porc-Epi*, which it may be was improperly called an Order, since

<sup>a</sup> Summonte Hist. de *Naples*.  
Hist. des Ordres Militaires, vol. 4. p. 24, a *Amsterdam*, 1721.

<sup>b</sup> Chiffletii dissertatio militaris de vexillo Regali, p. 29, 30. Quod ad *Stolam* albam, vel albam vestem gestandam minime teneremur, quoniam colorem album aut alium, præter nigrum, pridem reliquimus, & decrevimus amodo non portare, ac vovimus. Item etiam non teneamur dictam *Stolam* cujuscunque coloris a latere ad latus aliud transversaliter ductam gestare vel oblique, ne videamur cum scandalo subditorum & amicorum nostrorum, in hoc imitatores *Hostium* sive adversariorum *Domini* *Genitoris* nostri, atque nostrorum, qui furentibus in *Francia* guerris sua hostilia signa hoc transversali modo gestare soliti sunt. Verumtamen si prædicto *Domino* Regi gratum fuerit, & cedat ad libitum, *stolam* hujusmodi nigri coloris & e collo sive humero ad inferius directe pendentem, diebus statutis portare offerimus. Datum 15 May 1447.

That the white Scarf or Bend (as 'twas called from that in Heraldry which goes from the dexter to the sinister Angle of the Shield) was the Livery of the Duke of *Orleans*. See *Monstrelet*, vol. 1. c. 64.

<sup>c</sup> Chifflet Hist. aurei Velleris apud *Jurispr.* Heric. p. 441. Hist. des Ordres, vol. 8. p. 350.

<sup>d</sup> See above in Notes 17, 18, 19. This Reconciliation between the Sons of these two Dukes might be the

easier made, because the Murder of the Duke of *Orleans* was reprized by the Assassination of the Duke of *Burgundy* on 10 Sept. 1419, by *Tanneguy de Chastell*, who was in the Interest of the House of *Orleans*.

<sup>e</sup> *Berry* *Heraut* Hist. de *Charles VII.* Quand ce meme *Charles* Duc d'*Orleans* se fut reconcilie avec *Philippe le Bon* Duc de *Bourgogne*, que le fit delivrer de sa prison d'*Angleterre*, ou il avoit este conduit apres la bataille d'*Azincuri*, & ou il demeura vingt cinq; ans; le Duc luy ayant voulu mettre au col son Ordre de la *Toison d'or*, *Charles* ne le vouloit point recevoir, que *Philip* n'eust auparavant sa devise du *Porc-Epy*.

*Monstrelet* in his second Volume, p. 176, &c. after an Account of this Redemption, and his Marriage with *Mary* of *Cleves*, and of the Election of this Duke on the Morrow after *St. Andrew*, (the Day of the Feast of that Order) and on the Presenting him with the Collar of it, This Duke "presentement requist aussi au Duc de *Bourgogne*, qui luy pleist porter son Ordre, ce qui luy accorda, & tantost le dit Duc d'*Orleans* tira de sa manche un des colliers de son orde & le mit autour du col du dit Duc de *Bourgogne*. Et apres le dict Duc d'*Orleans* fut laffuble d'un mantel & chaperon de l'ordre, & puis fut mene au chapitre pour faire les serments, &c."



it was a Badge given to <sup>f</sup> Esquires and Gentlemen engaged in his Interest.

It will be more satisfactory to examine the Intercourses of our own Kings with such foreign Princes who had civil Orders, purely *Military*. It is said *Civil*, because our Kings never submitted to take such as were partly *Religious*, which would subject them to the usual Vows in that Case, which was the Reason, doubtless, that they never received the most celebrated Orders in *Spain* or *Portugal*; though since *Alfonfus V.* was Knight of the *Garter*, 'tis to be suppos'd that he might send our King *Henry VI.* (if he had no Objections to the Acceptance) his Orders of the *Bend*, the *Lys*, *Tarra*, or *Griffon*, as well as to the Duke of *Burgundy*: And I could wish my Curiosity might be gratify'd in seeing the Itinerary of *George Ebingenius* in the *German* Tongue, wrote about the Year 1454, wherein 'tis said are the Pictures of the Kings of that Age accurately drawn with their respective Orders, which Book was printed at *Augsburgh* 1600, *Studio Dominici Custodis*.

By reason of the Alliances with *Burgundy*, the Order of the *Golden Fleece* claims the Priority of an Examination. But here I must crave Leave to observe, (which ought to have been remarked in the former Part of this Letter,) that <sup>g</sup> *Lewis XI.* refused the Acceptance of it, as being the Order of a Subject or Homager, upon a Presumption, doubtless, that it would be some Diminution to his Sovereignty, upon which account the <sup>b</sup> Duke d'*Alençon*, or out of a particular disregard to his Brother *Hen. III.* would not take the Order of *France*. The *Golden Fleece* was erected in the Reign of our *Henry VI.* but this our King and Duke *Philip* the *Founder* of it, did not reciprocally accept their Orders for the Reason already given. This Duke lived 'till the seventh Year of our *Edw. IV.* and we find that on the 'first Feast of the Order, after the Accession of his Son and Successor Duke *Charles*, which was celebrated on *Sunday* the 8th of *May* 1468, our King was elected a Companion; and a modern <sup>k</sup> Author tells us that the Plate of his Arms is still remaining; and which is full to the subject Matter of this Letter, when *Edw. IV.* was driven from the Throne, he implored the Assistance of this Duke upon the 'Motive of their being Companions of the same Orders. Now by reason of the Loss of the Entries of the Annals of the *Garter* from the seventh to the twelfth Year of *Edw. IV.* the exact Time of the Election of this Duke may not be soon found, but <sup>m</sup> Robes being made for him, the Commis-

<sup>f</sup> Monstrelet in his second Volume, p. 180 b. Et quand a son Ordre elle fut par luy oëstroyee a porter a grand nombre de Chevaliers & Escuyers & autres de moyens Estats, qui luy en faisoient requerir pour l'avoir, &c. Indeed we have the Instrument whereby he at the Instance of Peter of Bretagne gives Liberty to several Gentlemen of that Dutchy, to bear his Order du Camail, provided they take the Oath accustomed. Lobineau en preuves de l'Hist. de Bretagne, p. 1067. If the Contents of this Oath had been recited, we might have received fuller Instructions to direct us in our Enquiry whether this was a real Order, for we shall find in the Sequel of this Letter, that our Kings gave their Livery of the Collar to such who previously took an Oath not to receive Fees from any other Person, without special License.

<sup>g</sup> Athm. Hist. p. 116.

<sup>b</sup> Amelot de la Houssaie Memoirs Hist. Tom. 1. P. 48.

<sup>i</sup> Chronique dans le supplement aux Memoires de Commynes, p. 261. See Chifflet Insignia Equit. Ord. aurei Vell. p. 37.

<sup>k</sup> Menestrier Art du Blason, p. 248.

<sup>l</sup> Commynes, p. 162. Du Chesne Hist. d'Anglet. p. 1161, 1162.

<sup>m</sup> Exir. Pell. Pasch. 9 E. 4. Johan. Brome de London aurifabro pro uno Garterio de auro misso Duci Burgundie xxii. l. xiii s. iiii d. Johanni Cosyn Clerico magnæ Garder. bæ Regis pro vi virgis panni de scarleto in grano pro una toga & uno capucio pro Duce Burgundie inde faciend. & pro xliiii tymber de Menyver pured cum xii pell. de Ermyns pro garnistura dictæ Togæ misso per Dom. Regem ad dictum Ducem Burgund. xliiii l. xlii s. iiii d.



sion for his Investiture bears <sup>n</sup> Date the 10th of *January* 1469, and he notified his <sup>o</sup> Acceptance on the 4th of *February*, which was performed with great Magnificence at *Gaunt*, the Ceremonies whereof were reduced into Writing by <sup>p</sup> Sir *George Chastellain Toyson d'Or King of Arms*, which, considering the great Abilities of that Officer in his own <sup>q</sup> Profession and other Parts of Learning, must be a valuable Piece; and this Duke bore not only the Ensigns thereof <sup>r</sup> during his whole Life, but solemnized the annual <sup>s</sup> Feasts of *St. George*; and his Plate, which is an exquisite Piece of Workmanship for that Age, remains still in the Chappel at *Windsor*, surrounded with a *Garter*; hence <sup>t</sup> Historians describe him with the *Garter* about his Leg and with the red Cross, the Symbols of this Order, and the judicious <sup>u</sup> Politician calls this King and Duke by a double Obligation, *Freres d'Ordre*; and it may not be an improbable Conjecture, that this noble Duke might, upon view of the Habits of our Order, alter the Mantle of his own from Scarlet to <sup>x</sup> *Velour Cramoisy doublé de Satin blanc*, in a Chapter held in 1473, as *Emanuel Philibert* Duke of *Savoy*, Knight also of the *Garter*, might in 1568, upon the like Occasion, order the future Robe of his Order of the *Collar*, now called the *Annunciade*, should be <sup>y</sup> *Velour cramoisy bleu couleur d'azur doublé de taffetas blanc*.

I am aware that an Objection may at first Sight be made against this Guess, that this Duke of *Burgundy* might alter the Habit of his Order from Scarlet to Velvet, upon view of the Robes of our Order, because the <sup>z</sup> Marginal Instrument abovementioned recites, that six Yards of scarlet Cloth in Grain were bought *pro Toga* for him; but this Scarlet was for the Surcoat, not for the <sup>a</sup> Mantle of the Order, which long before that Time was made of Velvet for Sovereign Princes, which Mantle was by the Statutes to be of blue Colour, and was lined with white Silk, Damask, Satin, or Taffeta. And we find *Toga* used in this Sense for the Surcoat or *Kirtle*, and 'tis probable no Mantle might be sent to this Duke, for it was incumbent on the Knights themselves to provide that

<sup>n</sup> Ashm. Append. n. lxii. cxii.

<sup>o</sup> Rymer. Foedera, vol. II. p. 651.

<sup>p</sup> Hist. de Jaques de Lalain, p. 19.

<sup>q</sup> Oliv. de la Marche p. iii. 395. Jean le Fevre Hist. de Ch. VI. Molinet en prologue de ses Chroniques. Andrea Bibl. Belgica, p. 262, &c.

<sup>r</sup> Comines, p. 34.

<sup>s</sup> Ancienne Chronique dans le supplement aux Memoirs de Comines, p. 368. le xi Janvier 1469, le Seigneur de *Duras*, l'aumosnier de la Roynie d'*Angleterre*, & autres au nombre de 16 personnes apporterent au Duc de *Bourgogne*, etant lors en la ville de *Gand*, l'Ordre de la Jarretiere, que le Roy d'*Angleterre* luy envoioit, & qu'il receut en ceremonie le 4 Fevrier. Ils y furent jusques au 9 suivant, pendant lequel temps ils furent tous deffrayes aux depens du Duc, le Seigneur de *Duras* eut un present de deux Flacons d'argent pesans 28 marcs, les autres eurent aussi des presens a proportion.

<sup>t</sup> P. 374, Le Duc vint a *Peronne*, & y fit le 23 d'*Avril* 1471, la feste de l'Ordre de la Jarretiere & mangea en falle.

<sup>u</sup> P. 379. Le Duc a *Bruges* jour de *S. George*, il ce-

lebra la feste de l'Ordre de la Jartiere, & tint falle ouverte.

<sup>v</sup> P. 400. Le Samedi 23 *Avril* 1474, feste de *S. George*, le Duc etant a *Luxemburg* solemnisa la feste de l'Ordre de la Jartiere.

<sup>w</sup> Chroniq. addition. au Monstrelet, p. 33b. portat a l'une de ses jambes la Jarretiere & sur luy la Croix rouge, qui estoit Ordre & Enseigne du Roy *Edouard d'Angleterre*.

<sup>x</sup> Comines p. 106, 159, 162. See Du Chesn. Hist. d'*Angleterre*, p. 1161, 1162.

<sup>y</sup> Hist. des Ordres Militaires, vol. 4. p. 43. Jurispr. Heroica, vol. 1. p. 440.

<sup>z</sup> Ashm. History of the Garter, p. 110, &c.

<sup>a</sup> See above Page 82, Note m.

<sup>b</sup> See Ashm. Hist. p. 209. That *Toga* signified the Kirtle. See Liber Comput in Offic. Pell. Mich. 8 H. VII. *Johanni Fligh* valecto Garderobæ Regis pro 18 virgis de bleu velvet pro usu Dom. Regis, viz. pro uno mantello pro Duce de *Calabre* fiend. ac pro 6 virgis de Scarlet pro una *Toga* & capicio pro eodem Duce cum certis *Garter*. & aliis necessariis pro eisdem mantello, *Toga*, & capicio empt. 35 l. 7. s. 4 d.



upper Robe, and whenever the Crown gave it, the same was a Mark of greater Favour.

To go on: *Maximilian*, after his Marriage with the Heiress of *Burgundy*, being on 29 Apr. 1478 Knighted by the <sup>b</sup> *Sire de Ravenstein*, did on the next Day accept the Sovereignty of the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, and according to the sixty fifth Statute kept it <sup>c</sup> till 17 Dec. 1494, during her Life, and the first Part of the Minority of their Son *Philip le Bel*. Now during the Continuance of this Guardianship *Hen. VII.* was elected into that Order in a Chapter <sup>d</sup> held at *Mechlin* 1491, and a <sup>e</sup> *MS.* places the same on 24 May, which was in the sixth Year of the Reign of our King. And though it happens the Register of the *Garter* contains no Entries from the Fourth till the Eighth of that King; yet we are certain that this *Maximilian*, then King of the *Romans*, afterwards *Emperor*, must have been elected before the 12th of September in this very sixth Year, because a Commission <sup>f</sup> then issued to Sir *Charles Somerset* and *Garter* King of Arms to invest him with the Ensigns of our Order, and the Manner of performing this Ceremony is exhibited in Sculpture by <sup>g</sup> Mr. *Asmole*, who chanced to mistake the Person of this *Garter* King of Arms, for he was Sir *John Writhe* and not his Son Sir *Thomas*, who had not that Office till 20 *Hen. VII.* as in <sup>h</sup> another Place he runs into the contrary Error by putting *John* the Father instead of the Son *Thomas*.

Here is Evidence of the Investiture of this *Maximilian* with the *Garter*, in the same Year that *Hen. VII.* was elected into the *Golden Fleece*, about which time these Princes entred into Treaties for declaring War against *France*, and *Maximilian* stands in the Catalogue numbred 234, according to the Series of an Election made in or about this Year, as will be plain by inspecting the Names of those who preceed and follow him in this Catalogue. But a great Difficulty arises touching his Behaviour or Continuance in this Order; for whether according to the Statutes, his Election became void for Want of an actual Installation, or, whether upon some Dissatisfaction or Rupture he might surrender, Certain it is, that he had at least disused the Wearing the *Garter*; for in a Treaty confirmed on 14 Aug. 1502, 17 *Hen. VII.* this *Emperor* and his Son *Philip* agree “to admit and accept the most worthy and most antient Order of the *Garter* assoon as may be done, and to wear the Ensign pub-

<sup>b</sup> *MS.* in Coll. Herald. n. 21, inter Cod. Ducis Norf. Chifflet ad vindic. Hisp. Lum. Salica, p. 302. <sup>scilicet</sup>, That having taken the Oath, John de Lannoy, the eldest Knight present, put the Collar of the Order about his Neck.

<sup>c</sup> Vredii Sigilla Flandriæ, p. 125.

<sup>d</sup> Chifflet Insign. Eq. Ord. aurei Veller. p. 37. Jurisprud. Heroica, p. 486.

<sup>e</sup> *MS.* Hectoris le Breton Montjoie in Colleg. Herald.

<sup>f</sup> Rymer, vol. 12, p. 403.

<sup>g</sup> *Hist.* p. 404. and 1465, he mentions the Installation of Maximilian in 6 *Hen. VII.*

<sup>h</sup> Page 392.

<sup>i</sup> Rymer, vol. 13, p. 25, 36. Item conventum concordatum & conclusum est, quod Sacratissimus Rex Romanorum [Maximilianus] necnon illustrissimus Dominus Philippus Archidux Austriae, [Dux Bur-

gundie] carissimus ejusdem Regis Primogenitus Dignissimum & Antiquissimum Ordinem Garterii, quamprimum post datam Præsentium fieri posset, admittent & acceptabunt, & eodem ordine palam & publice utentur, & omnia & singula Statuta ordinationes & consuetudines ejusdem ordinis, nisi quatenus cum eis dispensatum fuerit, inviolabiliter observabunt.

Item conventum est quod illustrissimus Rex Angliæ necnon Serenissimus Dominus Henricus Princeps Walliæ carissimus ejusdem Regis filius & Hæres approbatissimum Ordinem aurei velleris, quamprimum post datam Præsentium fieri possit, admittent & acceptabunt, & eodem ordine palam & publice utentur, ac omnia & singula Statuta ordinationes & consuetudines ejusdem ordinis, nisi quatenus cum eis dispensatum fuerit, inviolabiliter observabunt.

“ lickly,



“ lically, and to observe inviolably the Statutes; and the King of England  
“ and the Prince of Wales promise to do the like in the Case of the most ap-  
“ proved Order of the Golden Fleece.” And hereon Sir Thomas Brandon  
and Dr. West were sent to the Emperor with a <sup>k</sup> Commission dated 18 Nov.  
18 Hen. VII, to admit him into this Order, to deliver him the Ensigns,  
to declare to him the Statutes, and to receive his Oath for the Obser-  
vance of them.

It was sufficient to my Purpose to shew the mutual Acceptance of  
Orders by Princes, but I have digressed from the main Point, in at-  
tempting to disentangle some Difficulties relating to the Garter, which I  
hope will not be unacceptable to your Lordship; and I shall farther pre-  
sume to insert in the <sup>l</sup> Margin the Transactions of these Embassadors with  
this Emperor that relate to this Subject, taken from their original Let-  
ters,

<sup>k</sup> Rymer, vol. 13, p. 35, 36.

<sup>l</sup> Galba, B 2. in Bibl. Cotton.

INSTRUCCONS geven by the King unto  
his right trusty servants Sir Charles Somerset Knight  
his Vicechamberlain and to Maistre William War-  
ham Maistre of the Rolles ——— It is also sayed in  
the said Credence that to thentent the same alliance  
and amytie fraternall maye be the moor ferme and  
stable betwixt the said Kings, the said King of Ro-  
mans is contented asire the said amytie and alliance be  
passed and renouvelled as afore is saide to bere the  
Garter, as he hath doon in tyme passed and that  
th Archduc shal doo the same. Provided that our said  
Soverain Lord take and bere thordre of Thoyson  
dorre and cause his son the Prince of Wales to doo  
the same.

Sir Tho. Brandon and Dr. Wests account of their  
Legation to Maximil. in Febr. 1502.

ON Wednesday 15 Febr. they had an audience where  
they proposed the matter for the receiving of thordre  
of the garter In the whiche matter somme comyni-  
cation was had before betwixt his counseil and us meoved  
on their partie by occasion of seyng of our Commission  
wherein is specified bothe the matiere of thothe and of  
the garter.

Wherupon after the king had comyned aparte with his  
counseil the said Provost Lang answered that the King  
had received the said Ordre yeres passed with the garter  
mantell and Statutes and sworn to the same And therfor  
the King thought that if nowe estones he shold receive it  
with juyng of thothe ayenne, he shold do thing contrary  
to his honor.

Wherupon we shewed that because his Proctor came  
not to be enstalled for hym and to present his helmet, &c.  
by the tyme lymyted by the said Statuts, therfor aswell the  
receiving of the said Ordre as the giving of thothe were  
voide and of none effecte likewise as if they had never be  
don wherfor inasmoche as it is an article comprised in  
thamytie that aft the conclusion and consermation of the  
same amytie He shold accepte the said Ordre upon hym  
we instanced hym estones that he wold so doo.

Wherunto the said Provost after the King had comyn-  
ed with hym and others aparte answered that his ma-  
jeste wold send unto us the next day somme of his counseil  
to shewe unto us his further mynde upon the same.

On thursday then next ensueing the 16 day of Fe-  
bruary there came unto us the said Bissshop of Lausen-  
burgh the Provost Lang and Caimbremaistre and Do-  
ctor Haydon and the Provost received the Substannce of

oure saide Petitions made unto the king for the garter—  
giving unto us like answer upon the matter of the garter  
as was given the day before in the presence of the king  
seyng that the king was determyned in his mynde not  
to accepte of newe the said Ordre nor to give thothe, but  
to stand to that he had doon, and by his Proctor whom  
he wold send with his Orators performe the residue.

Wherupon we alleged tharticle of thamytie bynding hym  
to the contrary and perswaded unto thann by meny rea-  
sons yn the best wise we cowde and so playnely as they  
were somewhat meoved and myscontented with us, Albeit  
synally they were pacified and convinced by reasonyng so  
as they were contented and thought it according estones  
to moeve the king to accepte this Ordre.

We reherced that He did not were the garter as he  
was bounde to doo by thothe that he made when he toke  
upon hym thordre. They answered that they doubted  
not but he wold were it And the Chambrémaistre had  
shewed that had the garter there, for he had it caried  
allwaies with hym, Then we shewed unto thaim of a  
George whiche every Companion of that Ordre shold  
were And also a colar the patron wherof we shewed unto  
thaim according to our instructions.

And they seid that the king had understanding of  
such a george the whiche he wold be contented to take,  
and we said that every thing performed according to  
thordre we wold deliver it.

On Saturday then next ensueing the 18 day of Fe-  
bruary came unto the said Provost Lang the Cambré-  
maistre and Doctor Haydon, they shewed unto us that  
according to their promysse they had shewed unto the  
king suche reasones and perswasions as we had made for  
the takyng of thordre of the garter ——— Honbeit they  
saide that the king was thoroughly determyned to send his  
Ambassadors unto your grace to comyne with you in divers  
matters And also a Proctor sufficiently authorized to be  
enstalled for hym and before their comyng unto you he  
wold no thing doo further in that matter.

And as touching the wearing of the garter they said  
that the king supposed the garter to have be ther but it  
was not, and then we said we wold provide for one.

They said it shold not nede for the king wold differre  
every thing in that matter till the comyng of his said  
Ambassadors and Proctor unto your grace. They brought  
ayenne the said patron of the colar, seyng that the king  
wold be contented to were a Colar according to the same  
upon St. Georges daye.

— After his appointment of Embassadors.

Wherupon we shewed unto hym that he that shal be his  
Proctor must be a knight as none were that were appoint-  
ed to be his Ambassadors and he said H: knewe it wele  
inough sheweng that his said ambassadors were there  
with hym and shold be depeched from thens, And the  
knight whiche shold be his Proctor was as St. Omers in  
their



ters, wherein are several curious Observations. And I may here adventure to give a Conjecture, that *Maximilian*, upon his first Election, might be designed to the <sup>m</sup>second Stall on the Sovereign's Side, though upon the second Election he was placed in the Prince's Stall then void by the Death of Prince *Arthur*, where his Plate still remains.

The Sovereignty of the *Golden Fleece* being after the Year 1497, in *Philip* Son of this *Maximilian*, our King was no ways influenced by the Practice of this Emperor in difusing the Emblem of the *Garter*, but on 26 Apr. 1500 made his <sup>n</sup>Proxy to appear in a Chapter of the *Golden Fleece* to be held in *Brussels* in the following Month.

This Discontinuance of the Wearing the *Garter* by *Maximilian* may, for the Resemblance of the Matter, be an Apology for my taking notice here of his Father *Frederick the Pacifick*; for though the Register informs us, that this Emperor was in 35 Hen. VI, elected to the Stall of [*Edmund*] Duke of *Somerset* and <sup>o</sup>actually placed therein by his Proxy in the 37th Year of that King, yet his Name occurs not in the *Windsor-Tables*; whence it may be guess'd that he either surrendered or was deposed from this Order, which should be the Subject of Enquiry in a more proper Place, especially since though this Emperor lived 'till *Monday* the 19th of *August*, as *Cuspinian* saith, or according to others 'till the 7th of *September* 1493, which in the former Account was in the 8th, and by the latter in the Beginning of the 9th Year of Hen. VII; yet the Name of this Emperor is never mentioned in the Annals during the Reigns of *Edw. IV*, or *Hen. VII*; and, which is more remarkable, *William* Lord *Herbert*, afterwards Earl of *Pembroke*, is in these Tables made the immediate Successor to *Edmund* Duke of *Somerset*; and we know from the Register, that this Lord was a Companion of the Order in 3 *Edw. IV*, several Years before the Death of this Emperor.

And here again the abovementioned Treaty for the reciprocal Acceptances of the Orders of the *Garter* and the *Golden Fleece* may justify me in observing that this *Philip le Bel*, by the Title of Archduke of *Austria*, was named in the Scrutiny of the *Garter* 14 Hen. VII, but elected by the Stile of Archduke of *Austria* in 18 Hen. VII, and becoming King of *Castile* by matrimonial Right, was in his Voyage thither driven by a Storm into this Kingdom and personally installed at *Windsor* on 5th of *February* 21 Hen. VII, and not as <sup>p</sup>Mr. *Asmole* repeats his Mistake in the 22d Year, occasion'd plainly by not duly considering the Entry in the Register; for this King died in *August* 1506, and his Hatchments were offered 12 May, 22 Hen. VII.

their waye. then we desired that his Comission myght extend not only to the sending and presenting of the helmet and other things, but also to do every other thing in that ordre as he shold do if he were there in persone.

Wherunto he answered doubt ye not it shal be wele enough, for he shall have power to doo every thing that shal be agreed betuixt the king and myne Ambassadors.

Item We moved hym to write unto tharcheduke his son for thaccepting of thordre of the Gartier and he said he wold not so doo unto the tyme his Ambassadors had been with your grace, and had concluded for his parte,

the whiche doon bothe he and the said Archeduke shold fulfill every thing to that ordre apperteynyng on St. Georges day next comyng.

<sup>m</sup> Vinc. MSS. in *Heralds Office*, n. 417. Elect 6 Hen. 7. into the second Stall on the Sovereign's Side, after the Death of John King of Portugal, translated 22 Hen. 7. to the Prince's Stall by Death of Prince Arthur.

<sup>n</sup> Rymer, vol. 12. p. 750.

<sup>o</sup> Liber Niger in that Year.

<sup>p</sup> Hist. p. 348, 559.



It is however very material that <sup>9</sup> Henry then Prince of Wales was invested with the Ensigns of the Golden Fleece at Windsor on the same Day that this King of Castile was installed, he having been elected of that Order at Middleburg in 1505; and we find that after the Crown descended to him, he made a <sup>r</sup> Proxy on 19 May 1516, to appear in a Chapter of that Order, and in an <sup>s</sup> Inventory of his Wardrobe the Robes of this Order are particularly specified.

The Sovereignty of the Order of the Golden Fleece then devolved upon Charles Son of Philip King of Castile, who became in Time Emperor; He at the Request of his Embassadors, when by Proxy he affianced Mary Daughter of our Hen. VII, was elected Knight of the <sup>t</sup> Garter in Dec. 24th Year of that King, and we know that several Years afterwards he observed the <sup>u</sup> Feast of our Order with great Solemnity.

Let us now turn our Eyes upon the Transactions between England and France, in relation to their Military Orders. And here the Words of <sup>x</sup> Modius offer themselves, that our Hen. IV. made a Procession from the Tower the Day before his Coronation, "*gestans conchyliatum torquem ordinis Gallicani — & cæruleam cruralem fasciam sinistro crure, &c.*" But 'tis a plain Mistake, for the Order of St. Michael, with a Collar composed of Scallop-shells was of a much inferior Date: Doubtless he mistook <sup>y</sup> Froissart's Narrative, who only saith that King had *a son col la devise du Roy de France*; that is possibly the Cofse de Genest, which I shall have an Occasion in the Sequel of this Letter to shew had been sent him, while he was Earl of Derby, not as an Order of Knighthood, but as a Devise, Livery, or Badge, as was practised by several Princes of that Age as Signals and Pledges of Friendship; and it appears from the Accounts of this same Earl that he had the <sup>z</sup> Liveries also of the Kings of Hungary and of Cyprus before he assumed the Throne.

<sup>9</sup> Hist. p. 348, 559.

<sup>r</sup> Rymer, vol. 13, p. 548.

<sup>s</sup> MS. penes Rob. Worley Baronet. View of Stuff remaynyng in the standyng Wardrobe in the Tower, 12 Hen. VII. Robes of Tosande of crimosyn velvete. Item a Robe of Thosyn of Crimosyn velvet richely embraudered with white Satin with a Hode to the same. Valent in simul C. marc.

<sup>t</sup> There being no Entry in the Black-Book of this Election, it will not be unacceptable to transcribe a Paragraph from a Latin Narrative of the Arrival and Reception of the Embassadors of the Emperor, touching a Treaty and the affiancing of his Grandson Charles the Archduke with Mary, second Daughter of Hen. VII. Ea nocte Dominus de Bergis Cæsareæ Majestatis & illustrissimi Principis (jam Serenissimi Regis Angliæ filii dilectissimi) instantissime petiit a Regia Majestate & illam requisivit, quatenus placeret ei dictum Principem Karolum suum filium nobilis Ordinis Garterii Equitem eligere ac creare, Quod Rex optimo animo atq; ex corde concessit, providitq; illico, ut ipse Princeps suus filius non solum in unum sociorum Equitum dicti ordinis esset electus, sed etiam ut ipsa Garter cum omnibus ornamentis ad illam spectantibus brevi ad illum mitteretur. MS. penes me G. xi. p. 168, 169.

<sup>u</sup> 37 B. 14. Bibl. Harley, p. 109. Letter from the Lord Berners Embassador from Almanfara. In which

town upon St. Georges day the Kyng himself came at afternoon, the Collor of Garters aboute his necke muche honorably accompayned with a grete cowrte of Nobles and ther kept Even song of St. George in his robe of the Garters, &c. 1518.

<sup>x</sup> Pandectæ Triumph. p. 150.

<sup>y</sup> Vol. 4. p. 311.

<sup>z</sup> Comp. Rich. Kyngeston Thesaur. guerræ — Henrici Lancastre Comitis Derb. pro viagio suo versus partes Pruc. &c. a 16 Julii anno R. R. Rich. II. 16. (in officio Ducatus Lancastrie.)

pro diversis caligis factis pro Domino ex liberatione Regis Hungariæ broider. cum liberatione dicti Regis.

Comp. Willimo Loveney Clerici magnæ Garde-robæ Dom. Henrici Lancastrie Comitis Derb. anno 17 Rich. II.

pro powder. unius Ouche auri ad modum rosæ cum liberatione Regis de Cyprus.

Comp. ejusdem de anno 18 R. II.

pro broider. duarum caligarum panni albi de liberatione Regis Hungaria.



The Military Order of *St. Michael* was instituted by *Lewis XI*, who had been educated in the <sup>a</sup> Court of the Duke of *Burgundy*, and from <sup>b</sup> whom he received the Honour of Knighthood, and the Statutes have very few Variations from those of the *Golden Fleece*; after the Foundation thereof, no King of *France* was admitted into our Order 'till *Francis the First*, who was <sup>c</sup> elected on 21 Oct. 19 *Hen. VIII*, as our King had been elected a <sup>d</sup> Companion of *St. Michael* on the 5th of the preceeding Month, and the Commission was dated on the 15th, after a Treaty made between them for the Liberty of Pope *Clement*. But though these Elections were thus made at different Times, yet care was taken that the Investitures should be performed in the same Day, [that is on the 11th of *November*] which is with prophane Flights, if not impious Strains of Oratory, pompously set forth by <sup>e</sup> Dr. *Tayler* in that Part of his Speech to the *French* King upon the Delivery of the Ensigns, where he runs into a Panegyrick upon Cardinal *Wolfey* and flatters him almost to Adoration.

The <sup>f</sup> Instruments whereby these great Princes acknowledge the Receiving these Orders now remain under the same Date, and both these Kings observed the Statutes of these Orders; the *French* King was personally present in the Chapter held at *Calis*, 28 Oct. 24 *Hen. VIII*, and gave then his <sup>g</sup> Suffrage or Scrutiny; and 'tis as memorable for the Interchanging of Orders, that at this same Chapter the Duke of *Montmorency* and *Philip Chabot* Admiral of *France* were elected Knights of the *Garter*, in <sup>h</sup> Lieu of taking the Dukes of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk* into that of *St. Michael* by the *French* King at *Bologne* three Days before: And this King put so great a Value upon the *Garter*, that he declared his Resolution of wearing that Ensign when he should in Person combat the Emperor upon the <sup>i</sup> Challenge between them: And it is not improbable that upon account of *Henry VIII*. being a Companion of this *French* Order, <sup>k</sup> Obsequies were performed for him at *Paris* after his Death, notwithstanding his death under the Pope's Excommunication.

These powerful Kings died within a short Space of each other, and their Successors very soon imitated their Examples in mutually receiving their Orders. *Edward VI*. hath entred in his own <sup>l</sup> Journal, that the

<sup>a</sup> Bodin. de Repub. p. 547, 548.

<sup>b</sup> Choppin de Doman. Fran. p. 670.

<sup>c</sup> Liber Niger in that Year.

<sup>d</sup> W N in Officio Armorum, p. 242. Rymer, vol. 14, p. 227.

<sup>e</sup> Effecerat ut duo potentissimi Reges & quasi duo hujus mundi cardines anteaquam familiarissime jam familiariores, atque etiam antea amicissimi sua cura longe essent amicitiores, videlicet dum Tertiam sacratissimæ illius Cælestis Triadis Personam, hoc est Spiritum Sanctum in terris mire representans, effecerat ut hæc duo clarissima hujus mundi ornamenta in præclarissimos Divorum *Georgii* & *Michaelis* ordines felici amicissimorum inter sese officiorum reciprocatione hodie cooptarentur, hodieque clarissimis illorum Ordinum insignibus visenda ac aliorum Regum fastigiis multo augustiora in publicum prodirent & procedent. Ex Oratione MSS. nunc penes Dominum *Harley*.

<sup>f</sup> Rymer, vol. 14, p. 277.

<sup>g</sup> Lib. Nig. Garterii in that Year.

<sup>h</sup> Herb. Hist. Hen. 8. p. 340.

<sup>i</sup> Caligula D ii in Bibl. Cott. Letter from the Bishop of Bath, Tailer Master of the Rolles, &c. 12 Sep. 1528, to the Lord Legate — the 10th of this moneth the *French* King willing to give audience to the Emperors Herald had caused a solempne apparatt to be don in his great Hall here — The King there at his first comyng into the place cam unto us wher we wer placyd and shewyd us his legge whereon he had the Garratir sayeng that seeyng He went about an acte wherein consistyd the honor of knyghthode, He thought that He coud not putt a better remembrance: ne do thing that shold bettar move hym and sterve hym to the defence of his honor than the weryng thereof. He sayd also that He thought it convenyent to be worn that day to thintent men shold see that the thing whereabout He went concernyd the Kings Highnes his Brothers honor as wel as his, and sayd that He wold do no lesse for the defence of the honor of the on then for the honor of the other, &c.

<sup>k</sup> Godwin Hist. H. 8. E. 6, &c. p. 87.

<sup>l</sup> Dr. Burnet's History of the Reformation, in the Appendix to the second Volume.



*French* King was chosen Knight of the *Garter* 23 *Apr.* 1551, and we know his <sup>m</sup> Hatchments were set up on the 30th of *June* following; and this Journal informs that this King was chosen a Companion of *St. Michael* on the 21st of *June*, and that on the 11th of *July* the Lord Marshal [of *St. Andre*] arrived here, and soon afterwards presented that Order. This Interchanging of Orders was, as a <sup>n</sup> learned Historian remarks, after the Conclusion of a Peace, and was the Mark of the strictest Conjunction: And we find our King on *St. Michael's* Day, in his 5th Year, did wear the Robes with <sup>o</sup> Skallop-shells.

Under the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, *Charles IX* was agreeably pleased with his Election into our Order, esteeming it a <sup>p</sup> Confirmation of Amity; as were also *Hen. III*, and *Hen. IV* upon his Accession to the Throne, as a <sup>q</sup> Mark of Alliance and Confederacy, but the Sex of her Majesty prevented the personal Acceptance of the *French* Order; however, when *Charles IX* was, by the *Sire Rambouillet* his Proctor in 1556, installed at *Windsor*, he brought to her Majesty two <sup>r</sup> Collars of the Order of *St. Michael*, to be given according to her Majesty's Pleasure to two of her own Subjects, whereupon the Duke of *Norfolk* and the Earl of *Leicester* were invested therewith; and with what Ceremonies the Feast of *St. George* was annually then observed in the Chappel of these Kings of *France* may be seen in <sup>s</sup> *Peyrat* the Almoner, where it is to be observed, that the Arms of *France* were allowed to be quartered by our King.

There are other Instances (which being in too much Haste I had forgot to insert) of Companions who upon returning the Ensigns, thought themselves discharged from the Obligations that the Oath on their Admission laid on them to assist the Grand Master, and who thereby esteemed themselves at Liberty to assist his Enemies, which <sup>t</sup> *Menenius* takes notice was customary in his Age; and he produces the Precedent of *Octavian* Duke of *Parma*, who upon receiving the *French* Order relinquish'd the *Toison d'Or*, to which he was restored by *Philip* King of *Spain* in 1557,

<sup>m</sup> Liber Nig. Gart.

<sup>n</sup> Du Chefne Hist. d'Anglet. p. 1346.

<sup>o</sup> Vitellius F. v. in Bibl. Cotton.

<sup>p</sup> Du Chefne. ibid. p. 1384.

<sup>q</sup> Ibid. p. 1411.

<sup>r</sup> Camd. Elizabetha ad A. D. 1566.

<sup>s</sup> Antiquitez de la Chapelle & Oratoire du Roy de *France*, p. 722. On observe aussi a la Cour, que si la veille de la feste de Sainct *George* au mois d'*Avril*, le Roy doit faire la ceremonie de l'Ordre de la *Jarretiere*, on tapisse le lieu destine pour la Chapelle du Roy, ou l'on prepare deux daix a queue pendante, l'un de velours violet, tout couvert de Fleurs de Lys en broderie, pour le Roy a main gauche: & l'autre de velours rouge incarnat, couvert d'un large clinquant d'argent, a main droite, pour le Roy d'*Angleterre*; les armoiries de *France*, & de *Navarre*, & une Couronne close au dessus, environnees d'une jarretiere bleue, avec la devise *Honny soit qui mal y pense*, sont mises sous le daix du Roy, & un drap de pied de velours violet, brode de fleurs de lys, & deux carreaux de mesme estoffe & broderie, l'un pour s'agenouiller dessus, & l'autre pour s'apuyer priant Dieu; & derriere, une chaire de velours rouge incarnat, couverte d'un clinquant d'argent sous le daix du Roy d'*Angleterre* sont mises semblablement des armoiries d'*Angleterre* leopards &

fleurs de lys, environne d'une jarretiere bleue, avec la mesme devise, *Honny soit qui mal y pense*, un drap de pied de velours rouge incarnat, deux carreaux, & une chaire de mesme estoffe; si l'Embassadeur d'*Angleterre* assiste a la Ceremonie, ce qui arrive quelques fois, elle se fait a Vespres, non a la Messe, on met un siege ou scabelle au dessus de la place, & drap de pied du Roy d'*Angleterre*, pour le dit Embassadeur, ou il se peut asseoir, la place de son maître demeurant vuide. J'ay veu faire cette ceremonie a la Messe du Roy *Henry* le Grand estant a Monceaux, l'Ambassadeur du Roy d'*Angleterre* absent.

<sup>t</sup> Menen. Delic. Equestr. Ord. p. 171, treating of the Order of *St. Michael*. Moris enim Regibus, munus hoc in externos Principes conferre, in honoris & benevolentiae indicium: qui si eorum hostes velint se profiteri, per interhuitios torquem remittunt, ut omni sacramenti religione soluti, alteri Principi strenuam operam navent. Quod saepe hisce nostris temporibus contigit. Et anno 1559, *Philippus Hispaniarum* Rex, Gandavi Equitum aurei velletis concilium celebrans, ordinis torquem *Octavio Parmensium* Duci, quem ille accepto a Rege *Gallorum* conchyliati ordinis insigni, superiorum bellorum tempore abjecerat, restituit.



in which Year <sup>u</sup> he withdrew from the *French*; and another <sup>x</sup> Author informs us, that the Princes of *Melfi*, *Bisignano*, and *Terrane* with the Duke *de Madaloni*, who had been created Knights of *St. Michael* by *Lewis XII*, returned the same in 1511, when the *Spaniards* had drove the *French* out of *Naples*.

The Sum of what hath been hitherto said, is intended only as a Commentary or Explanation on the Clauses contained in the Statutes of the several Military Orders, which in different Terms, though in the same Substance, require the Assisting the Sovereign in all his Wars, and prohibit bearing Arms against the Companions. It would be tedious to fill up the Margin with such <sup>y</sup> Quotations at length, and the Statutes of several Orders are in print, and being obvious may be easily consulted.

But here, my Lord, I would not be misunderstood to insinuate, that the Support of the Sovereign in his Wars was the only Aim and Design of our heroick Founder, for 'tis probable he might have several other noble Views and Intentions. An Act of Parliament recites some other Motives, <sup>z</sup> That "this Noble, Excellent, and Venerable Order was laudably erected for the Strengthening or Fortifying of the Faith, of the King, of the Kingdom, and of Right and of Justice." The Preambles to the Statutes said to be made by the Founder, and the Revisions of them by *Hen. V.* and *Hen. VIII.* instance some Designs of this Institution, which may be inspected in *Mr. Asmole* without great Trouble.

With regard to Purity of Faith, the Statutes exclude from this Society all Persons tinctured with Heresy; and as to Acts of Religion, a College of Priests and Ecclesiasticks was erected with ample Endowments for constant Prayers and Thanksgivings, a perpetual Charity established for the Subsistence of veteran Knights reduced to Poverty by adverse Fortune in the Wars; and according to the Persuasion of that Age, Masses were ordered to be celebrated for the Souls of the deceased Companions; these were some of the pious Designs of this Institution. Our *English Homer*, *Chaucer*, who

<sup>u</sup> *Hylin's Cosmogr.* p. 149.

<sup>x</sup> *Hist. de Chevaliers des Ordres*, Tom. 4. p. 387.

<sup>y</sup> *Stat. Gart. Art. 22.* And see several Articles in the Statutes of the Golden Fleece, *St. Michael*, and the Holy Ghost; of the Order of *l'Etoile*, see *Hist. des Ordres Religieux*, vol. 8. p. 309; of the Knot in *Naples*, see the first Article of the Statutes printed in the Notes on *Castellau* by *le Laboureur*; of *Los en Croissant* *Hist. des Ordres Relig.* vol. 8. p. 283. of the Collar in *Savoye*, see *Sanfovino della Origine di Cavallieri*, p. 57; of the *Ordre de la Banda*, see *Hist. des Ordres Relig.* vol. 8. p. 292, &c.

<sup>z</sup> See above in the Introduction, p. 14, Note i.

<sup>a</sup> To the King's most noble Grace, and to the Lords and Knights of the Garter.

TO you welle of honour and worthinesse,  
Our Christen King, the heire and successour  
Unto *Justinian's* devout tendernesse,  
In the faith of *Jesu* our redemptour;  
And to you, Lordis of the Garter, floure  
Of Chivalrie, as men you clepe and call  
The Lord of vertue and of grace authour  
Graunt the fruit of your (1) lose never (2) appal.

(1) *Los*, Fiecle, Honour, Glory, Praise. (2) Decay.

O Lieve Lorde, that have the likenesse  
Of *Constantine*, th'ensample and mirrour  
To Princes all, in humble (3) buxomnesse  
To Holy Church, O veray sustainour  
And Pillar of our faith, and Warriour  
Againe of heresies the bitter gall:  
Doe forth, doe forth, continue your succour,  
Hold up *Christis* banner, let it not fall.

This Isle (4) or this had ben but (5) hithinesse  
(6) N'ad be of your faith the force and vigour;  
And yet this day the (7) fiendis crabbednesse  
Wenith fully to catch a time and houre,  
To have on us your lieges a sharpe shoure.  
And to his servitude us knitte and thrall:  
But aye we trust in you our protectour,  
On your constance we awaitin all.

Commaundith that no (8) wight have hardinesse,  
O worthy kyng our Christen Emperour;  
Of the faith to desputin more or lesse  
Openly emonges peple: Her errour

(3) Obedience, Duty: Hence this Word used in some of the Recantations of the Lollards, and in the Promise of the Wife in the ancient Form of Marriage. (4) Ere, before. (5) Infidelity, Paganism. (6) Had not. (7) Enemy the Devil, usually so called. (8) Saxon for Person, Creature.



who is said to have been <sup>b</sup> born in 1328 before the Erection hereof, and who lived 'till the Reign of *Hen. IV.*, addresles himself to the Sovereign and Knights Companions of the *Garter*, the Flower of Chevalrie, wherein he tells them that the Maintenance of *Christ's* Cause against Error is their Duty.

I know no Instance either of a Refusal or a Deposal from our Order upon Point of Religion, though some Knights were formerly *Lollards*; the foreign Orders have also several Clauses about Religion, and upon that Account the 'Duke of *Saxony* would not accept the Order of *St. Michael*.

I shall not exspatiate on these different Inducements enumerated in this Act of Parliament, but shall crave Leave to hint two Heads only, That in the Creation of this Order, there might be a View to a Reward due for military Actions, and that a ceremonious Respect might also be had to Ladies.

There have been indeed some few Examples of private Persons who, by an uncommon Force of Genius in reading Histories and *Tacticks*, have gained the Theory of War, and like *Lucullus*, without any Practice, have performed Wonders on their first Appearance in the Field: But as our Royal Founder was a distinguishing Judge of Men and Rewarder of them according to their Deserts; so in his great Polity he was pleased to omit these very rare Occurrences, and to confine the Honour of this Society to <sup>d</sup> actual Knights, without Reproach, as the Price of their martial Virtue. In that Age the 'Qualifications for single Knighthood were very

Springeth all day, and engendrith rumour.  
Makith such law, and for ought may befall,  
Observe it wele, thereto be ye doctour;  
Doth so and God in glorie shall you (1) stall.

Ye Lordis eke, shining in noble fame,  
To which approped is the maintenance  
Of *Christ's* cause, in honour of his name,  
Shove on, and put his foes to utteraunce;  
God wolde so, and so wolde eke your legiaunce;  
To the two aye prickith you your dewte.  
Whofo nat keepeth this double observaunce,  
Of merite and honour naked is he.

Your file sayith [that] ye ben foes to shame:  
Now (2) kith of your faith the perseveraunce,  
In which an hepe of us ben halt and lame.  
Our *Christen* king of *Englonde* and of *Fraunce*,  
And ye my Lordis with your Alliaunce,  
And other faithful peple that there be,  
Trust I to God, shall quench al this noifance,  
And this lond set in high prosperite.

Conquest of high prowesse is for to tame  
The wild (3) wodenesse of all this (4) miscreaunce;  
Right to the rote daily repe ye that fame  
Slepen nat this, but for God's plesaunce  
And his mother, and in signifiante  
That ye ben of *St. George's* livere,  
Doth him service and knightly obeisaunce;  
For *Christis* cause is his, well knowin ye.

(1) Place, Seat: Perhaps the Poet may allude to the Stalls in this Order.

(2) Since.

(4) Unbelief.

(3) Madnesse.

Stiff stand in that, and ye shall greve and (5) game  
The foe to pece, the (6) norice of distaunce,  
That now is ernest, turn it into game,  
Now kith of your beleve the constaunce,  
Lord Liege and lordis, have in remembraunce,  
Lord of all is the blisfull *Trinite*,  
Of whose virtue the mightie habundaunce  
You herten and strengthen in faithful unite.

*He mentions the Knights of the Garter in his Floure and Leafe, as acquiring that Honour by martial Glory, v. 519.*

Eke there be Knightis old of the *Gartir*  
That in ther timis did right worthily,  
And the honor they did to the laurir,  
Is for it they have ther land wholly,  
Ther triumph eke and martial glory,  
Which unto them is more perfite riches  
Than any wight imagin can or gesse.

*b In his life prefixed to his Works, which must be a Mistake if he be the same Person who was examined as a Witness in the Court Military in 9 R. II. in the famous Case of Coat-Arms between Scrope and Grosvenour, wherein the Title of his Deposition is, Geffery Chaucer Esquier del age de xl anns & plus armees per 27 anns jures & examines, &c.*

*c Tillet recueil, &c. p. 431.*

*d Stat. Gart. Art. 2.*

*e Bodin de Republ. p. 547. Majores nostri difficilium Equitem creabant quam his temporibus Imperatorem aut Ducem exercitus, ac ne Reges quidem liberi ac propinqui eum honorem facile consequerantur, &c. See the Speech of John King of Portugal in Froissart, vol. 3. ch. 14.*

(5) Trouble, Vex; Saxon for Fury.

(6) Nourisher, Cherisher.

strict,



strict, and that Honour was then had in the greatest Estimation, and acquired by meritorious Actions: Now could any Person, who had to the utmost Degree signalized his Courage and Conduct in Camps and Battles, allowing him the most ardent Thirst for Honour, with for a more eminent and extraordinary Distinction, than an Enrollment into a *Military Fraternity* with the Sovereign himself, by the unanimous Suffrage, or at least by the Majority of Voices upon a Scrutiny given upon Oath? And in truth, What greater Honour could *Henry II.* convey upon the famous *Gaspar de Saulx*, <sup>1</sup> *Viscomte de Tavannes* (afterwards Marshal of France) for his remarkable Behaviour in the Battle of *Renty* in 1554, than by making him immediately in the Field, Knight of the Order of *St. Michael*, without any other Ceremony, than by taking off his own Collar and putting it about his Neck, which must be the most signal Mark of Distinction.

The <sup>2</sup> Lord *Bacon* observes, That the Wars of latter Ages seem to be made in the Dark, in respect of the Glory and Honour which reflected upon Men from the Wars in antient Time. “*There be now* (as he saith) *for martial Encouragement some Degrees and Orders of Chivalry, which nevertheless are conferred promiscuously upon Soldiers and no Soldiers, and some remembrance perhaps upon the Scutcheon, and some Hospitals for maimed Soldiers, and such like Things:*” With such Freedom this most noble Genius seems to censure some Customs of his Age, upon his Consideration of the antient Methods of rewarding Military Actions; but certainly if the Honour of the *Garter* should not be esteemed equal to Triumphs and Ovations, yet it must be allowed superior to civick and mural Crowns, to any Decoration of Houses with the Marks of Victory, the wearing Bracelets or Rings at publick Games, and such other antient Ensigns of Rewards for Feats of Arms.

Again: The Erection of this Order was in an Age of innocent Gallantry, when the Ladies were justly allowed a large Share in all splendid Occasions; for their Sakes, and for their Honours, the Founder and his Royal Successors appointed Tournaments wherein they presided as Judges; and how far they participated in the Distinctions of this Order, your Lordship will allow me to shew in a distinct Paragraph hereafter, which I look upon as the chief Part of this long Letter.

I come now to examine the *Æra* or exact Period of the Erection of the *Garter*, wherein the Conjectures of the Authors have been as various in their Chronology of it, as in the Occasion of its Creation. Their Disagreement is so very wide, that the Person of the Founder is even questioned. All splendid and military Institutions, by a romantick Humour of former Ages, have been ascribed to King *Arthur*, whose glorious Atchievements have been enormously magnified; but such legendary Traditions which assert this Order to be a Renovation of his celebrated Round Table, deserve not, in this Age, the Trouble of a serious Confutation. To descend lower, we find two dignified <sup>b</sup> Churchmen in the

<sup>f</sup> Dictionnaire de Moreri voce Saulx.

<sup>g</sup> In his Essay on the true Greatness of Kingdoms.

<sup>h</sup> Oratio habita in traditione *Garterii* ad Christianissimum *Franciscum Galliarum Regem* — decimo

Nov. 1527. *Joanne Taylero* Vicecancellario pronunciante — redeamusq; ad id quod in initio hujus orationis polliciti sumus ad præcellentissimum omnium Divo *Georgio* dedicatum ordinem, cujus Auctore



the Reign of *Hen. VIII.* in discoursing designedly upon the Garter, with some small Diversity of Circumstances, agreeing in the main that *Rich. I.* in his successful Enterprizes in the holy Land instituted this Order, or the Plan at least of it, referring to our Annals in general for Proof, without quoting the Titles of them or the Names of the Historians; but 'till such Vouchers shall be produced by particular References, these Narratives may obtain not much more Credit, than another grave Tradition that *Henry II.* upon his Return from the same Place (where in Fact he had never been) erected in this Kingdom another military Order of Religion, the Knights of the Holy Sepulcher; for one Legend is best answered by another.

To leave these Visions. There is no doubt but that this Order was erected by *Edw. III.* and it was worthy of a Prince of such an elevated Mind for Magnificence and incomparable Valour, who was the Terror of his Enemies Abroad, and the Glory and Joy of his happy Subjects at Home. The Difficulty is only in what Year of his Reign or Period of Time it received its Birth. It is somewhat surprizing that this *Epocha* should be so much in the Dark, and that the Contemporary Historians did not deliver down to Posterity a Transaction of so great Importance. The *Aera's* usually assigned, are the 18th and 23d Years of his Reign; and here I must premise, that though this Controversy is of no Consequence to the intrinsic Dignity of the Order, for so small an Interval of Time would not add to, or diminish from its Lustre in Point of Antiquity, yet the exact Chronology of its Com-

store unacum Institutionis causa succincte explicatis breviter perorabimus. Illustrissimus olim Rex *Angliæ Ricardus* primus, qui ob invictam animi fortitudinem *Cordelia* cognomentum sortitus est, hujus sacri Ordinis (ut nostri produunt Annales) auctor erat. Hic ubi in terram sanctam potentissimo cum exercitu expeditionem fecerat, post devictum Cypri regnum, Cæsaream captam, Joppen deletam neque abinde hætenus restauratam, ut ejus ruinarum reliquæ monstrant et testantur, aliis non paucis nobilis Palestinæ locis in deditionem receptis, Achonem urbem id temporis Judææ celeberrimam quantâ poterat durâ obsidione cinxit, et vi capere contendit, qui quum diutinâ obsidione et mirâ militum tolerantia nihil profecerat, atque urbem illam undiq; munitiorem fuisse experimento cognoverat. quam ut ullus in eam hostibus pateret receptus, neq; ullum omnino ad eam demoliendam humanis vel consiliis vel præfidiis locum extitisse relictum: Rex ille magnanimus in hac tantâ urbis potiundâ desperatione maximam divino plane instinctu spem subito concipiens, centum primarios ac præstantissimos totius exercitus sui Duces ad se accersit, quos ubi primum præsentibus illi omnes adstare cernebat, hanc ad formam est affatus: Strenuissimi milites, fidissimiq; Commilitones, Videtis plane nos hic temporis commoditatem frustra contere, rerumq; ac militum iacturam, et antehac magnam fecisse, et posthac, nisi mature prospiciamus, majorem facturos; Namq; eò jam res venit, ut vel hostes propediem fortiter aggrediamur, vel re infectâ turpiter (quod absit) discedamus: Et vereor profecto ne Divus *Georgius* nos comodo prorsus destitueret, sed ut iram insuper non modicam in nos conceperit, quod illius numen toties nobis antehac presens, et propitium experti, nullo vicissim honore hætenus simus profecuti: proinde vos omnes et singu-

los adhortor, ut inter nos insigne aliquod amicitie fœdus in illius honorem ineamus, quod et sacramento et jurejurando omnes confirmemus: quemq; videlicet alterum ad vitæ usq; exitum amantissimi fratris loco habiturum, atq; insuper Deo Optimo Maximo et Divo *Georgio* fidem omnes astringamus, omnesq; votum illis sancte nuncupemus. Nos aut urbem hanc strenue et viriliter. Expugnatos, aut mortem unanimiter summa cum laude hic appetituros. Cujus sententiæ statim ut a reliquis erat assensum, Princeps ille primus in verba concepta juravit, reliqui Principis illius exemplum ordine subsecuti sunt, datumq; ilico erat cuilibet illius Ordinis socio jurato insigne, crux scilicet purpurea in Christi crucis memoriam, contra cujus hostes nihil magis optabant, quam vitam, si fors ita ferrer, profundere; Eademq; crux in hodiernum usq; diem hujusce ordinis habitui glorioso imponitur: Cæterum hoc fœdere ictu tantum animorum, fiduciæ tantum ac spiritûs illis exemplo omnibus accessit, ut capta statim urbs illis videretur; et nisi historiæ fides hac in parte laboret, vix tertius ab illo tempore dies illuxit, quum hostes Christiani nominis inimici asperrimo et pertinaci insultu, impetu, et incursum superati necessariam subire deditionem cogerentur: Cujus postea religionis ordini multa præclara ac speciosa addidit ornamenta et cetemonias inclitas, et rei militaris illa in memoria unicum decus *Edwardus* tertius, &c. E. MS. pen. Dominum *Harley*.

The other is Mr Aldridge in his Preface to the Black Book which is cited by Camden in Berkshire, and by Mr Selden in his Titles of Hon. p. 657, who saith that he had not learned what ancient Testimony he had to justify this Assertion.

i Ordres Religieux vol 2. p. 135. La Roque traite de Noblesse p. 376, &c.

B b

mencement



mencement would afford some Light in other Points. For Instance, several Writers have conjectured the Word *Garter* being given as the *Cri de Guerre* or Signal, by *Edw. III* in a Battle where he had the Victory, that therefore as a Memorial thereof, he appropriated it to be the chief Symbol or Badge of this Order, and thence denominated it. Some specify the Battle of *Poitiers* on 19 Sept. in his thirtieth Year, <sup>k</sup> Mr. *Asmole* fixes on that of *Cressy*, on 24 Aug. in the twentieth Year, but if this Order was erected in the eighteenth Year, this Emblem and Appellation cannot be owing to any Accident in either of these two memorable Victories.

I shall hint some Characteristicks in the Sequel, which if they can be found, will settle the Dispute between the 18th and 23d Year; for Example, if it shall appear that either of the Founders died before the 23d Year, the first Supposition would entirely fall; but I must confess that at present, I am destitute of such Assurances, and though that Matter is out of my Reach, yet my Time and Thoughts may not be wholly mispent in this Enquiry, and therefore I shall state the Case very fairly, and leave the Decision thereof to your Lordship upon the Evidence that now appears.

The first Statutes and the ancient Annals of this Order being perished by Length or Injury of Time, Recourse ought first to be had to contemporary Historians, and hitherto none hath been produced in this Controversy save <sup>l</sup> *Froissart*, who expressly places the Original of the Order in the Beginning of the 18th Year of *Edw. III*. There have been several Objections made to his Testimony, and as I am under no Prepossessions or have any Interest or Inclination to put any Veil over his Errors or those of any other Person, so I would have him sifted to the Bottom, and cross examined as a Witness at the Bar with the nicest Scrutiny.

There can be no Exception against his Admission or his Capacity to give Evidence, let us therefore hear his Narrative in his own native Language, for all Witnesses ought to have that Privilege, with the Translation thereof made by a very Noble Lord under the Reign of *Hen. VIII*.

*De la Confrairie Saint George, que le Roy Edouard establit a Windersofe.*

Of the Order of Saynt George that Kyng Edward establiſhed in the Caſtell of Wyndſore.

**E**N ce temps vint en propos & en volonte au Roy Edouard d'Angleterre, qu'il feroit faire et reedifier le grand Chaſtel de Windersofe, que le Roy Artur fit jadis faire et fonder la ou premierement fut commencee et eſtoree la noble Table ronde: dont tant de bons et vail-lans hommes et Chevaliers eſtoient

**I**N this ſeaſon the King of England toke pleaſure to newe reedeſy the Caſtell of Wyndſore, the wwhich was begonne by Kyng Arthur. And there fyrſt beganne the table rounde, wherby ſprange the fame of ſo many noble knyghts throughout all the Worlde. Than kyng Edward determyned to make an Order and a brotherhode of a certayne nombre

<sup>k</sup> *Hiſt. of the Garter*, p. 183.

<sup>l</sup> *Aſhm. Hiſt.* p. 285, 286.



et issirent et travaillerent en armes, et en prouesses par tout le monde. Et feroit le dit Roy une ordonnance des Chevaliers, et luy et de ses enfans, et des plus preux de la terre: Et en seroient en somme quarente: et les nommeroit on les Chevaliers du bleu jartier: Et la feste à durer d'an en an, et de la solennizer à *Winderose*, le jour Saint George. Et pour ceste feste commencer le Roy assemble de tout son pays Comtes, Barons, et Chevaliers: Et leur dit son intention: et ils luy accorderent joyeusement, pource qu'il leur sembloit moult honorable ou toute amour se nourriroit. Adoncques furent eleus quarante Chevaliers, par advis, et par renommée les plus preux de tous les autres: lesquels sceillirent et jurerent à poursuir et tenir la feste et les ordonnances telles qu'elles estoient la divisées. Et fit le Roy fonder et edifier une chapelle de Saint George au Chastel de *Winderose*, et y establit Chanoines pour Dieu servir, et les rentra moult grandement. Puis envoya le Roy publier la feste par ses Heraux en France, en Escosse, en Bourgongne, en Haynaut, en Flandres, en Brabant et en l' Empire d'Allemagne: et il donnoit a tous Chevaliers et Escuyers, qui venir y voudroyent, quinze jours de saufconduit apres la feste. Et devoit estre ceste feste le jour Saint George ensuivant, l'an Mil trois cens quarante et quatre, au Chastel de *Winderose*. Et devoit estre accompagnée la Royne d'Angleterre de trois cens Dames et Damoiselles, toutes nobles & gentils dames et parées richement de paremens semblables.

Entandis que le Roy d'Angleterre faisoit son grand appareil luy vindrent nouvelles du Sire de *Cliffon* &c. Et le Roy delivra

*nombre of knyghtes, and to be called knyghtes of the blewe garter: And a feest to be kept yerely at Wynfore on Saynt Georges day. And to begynne this Order the kyng assembled togyder erles, lordes, and knyghtes of his realme and shew them his intencion. And they all joyously agreed to his pleasure, bycause thei sawe it was a thying moche honourable and wherby great amyte and love shoulde growe and encrease. Than was there chosen out a certayne nombre of the moost valyantest men of the realme. And they swore and sayled to mentayne the ordynaunces, such as were devysed: and the kyng made a chapel in the Castle of Wynfor of Saynt George and stablished certayne chanons ther to serve god, and enduyd them with fayre rent. Than the kyng sende to publishe this feest by his heraldes into Fraunce, Scotland, Burgone, Heynault, Flaunders, Brabant and into thempyre of Almayne: gyving to every knyght and squyer that wolde come to the sayd fest XV. dayes of saufe conduct before the feest. And after the whiche feest to begynne at Wyndfore on Saynt George day nexte after, in the yere of our Lord MCCC XL IIII. and the quene to be there accompanied with III C. ladyes and damosels all of noble lynage and apparelled accordingly.*

*Then after a Chapter wherein is an Account of the news brought hither of the beheading of the Lord Clyffon and others, and of the generosity of Edw. III. in the delivery of Sir Henry of Leon on a small ransome, follows The daye of Saynte George approached that this great feest shulde be at Wyndfore, there was a noble company of Erles, Barownes,*



delivra de sa prison messire Henry de Leon &c. Or approcha le jour Saint George, que ceste feste se devoit tenir au Chastel de *Winderose*, et y fit le Roy d' *Angleterre* grand appareil de Comtes, Barons, Dames, et Damoiselles: Et fut la feste moult grand: et noble, bien festoye et bien joustee: et dura par le terme de quinze jours &c. Et le Roy envoya le Comte d' *Erby* son Cousin guerroyer en *Gascogne* &c.

*Barownes, Ladys and Damofelles, knyghtes and squyers: and great triumphe, justynge and tournayes, the which endured fyftene dayes &c. The kyng ordained his Cosyn the erle of Derby to go to Gascoigne &c.*

His Fidelity hath been called into Question from an apparent Inconsistency in this Relation as it now stands in the printed Copies; for it is alledged this first Fraternity consisted of *Forty* Companions, when 'tis beyond all Contradiction that 25 Knights with the Sovereign always compleated the Number of this Order.

But if the Word *Forty* should be the Slip of the Transcriber or the Error of the Press, this Reason of Disbelief is too hasty and rigorous. It is very well known, that the Numerals in the Editions of this Work are lamentably corrupted and misprinted, as the truly Great<sup>m</sup> Mr *Selden* hath on another Occasion observed, though by the way, this most learned Antiquary is unfortunate in the Instance about the Numbers in the Passage he attempts to correct, for finding in this Historian *Cinque Pers* mentioned sitting at the second Table on the Coronation Day of *Hen. IV.* he would amend it by substituting *Cinquante*, when the Negligence of the Press is evidently in the second Word, for by reading *Ports* instead of *Pers* the Sense is altered, and the Practice agreeable to the Formularies of all Coronations, where the Barons of the *Cinque Ports* have enjoyed the Privilege of sitting in that Place as an indisputable Right.

Before I shall examine the Force of the Counter-evidence to invalidate this Report, I crave Leave to sift the Character of this Witness, whether he had Opportunities of receiving proper Informations, and whether it can be supposed he lay under any Temptations to commit designedly a chronological Error; whether he shews Integrity, or too much Credulity in the Remainder of his History, especially in other Articles which relate to this Order, and how far any of the Facts of this Narrative are supported by other Vouchers; which several Examinations seem to be putting this Matter on a fair Issue, and by these Tests let his Credit stand or fall.



This inquisitive Historian was a dignified <sup>n</sup> Clergyman, who in his youth had been nourished (as he terms it) in the <sup>o</sup> Court of *Edw. III.* [the Founder] and of his own Madam and Mistress Queen *Philippa*, where he continued for five Years; afterwards he travelled into several foreign Dominions, and in 1366 was <sup>p</sup> sent from *Bordeaux* by the *Black Prince* to the Queen his Mother in *England*, and then continued here about the Space of an Year, and returned hither again <sup>q</sup> on 12 July 1395, after the Absence of xxviii Years. He early applied his Studies to make just Enquiries, as his Words are, for the Truth of Deeds of War from the Time of the Battle of <sup>r</sup> *Poitiers*, having made Collections of that Nature for some Years before it, and he honestly acquaints his Readers that the former Parts of his History were taken from the true Report of the Canon of *St. Lambert of Liege*.

As there seems to be an Air of Sincerity in his Narratives, so he was in a Capacity to come at the Truth of the Facts he relates. He was lvii Years of Age in the <sup>s</sup> Year 1390, so that of course he could be only about 11 Years old in this 18th of *Edw. III.*, when he saith this Order was instituted; and though we know not the precise Date of his first coming hither, yet by his own Narrative we are assured he resided here within few Years after the Period he assigns for the Erection of this Order, and that he was of Age sufficient to have informed himself exactly in the punctual *Æra* of a Fact so recent in Memory, and so signal and considerable in itself. Mr. *Selden* justly <sup>t</sup> remarks, that “He was very *conversant with the English Court and Customs, and especially such as related to the Lords in whose frequent Acquaintance he lived here.*” For which Reason ’tis scarce credible, he should be so supinely negligent to commit an Anachronism and antedate the Creation of an Order for five Years, to whose original Statutes and Ordonnances he refers as then extant, and even sealed by the First Founders. It is on the other Side very probable he might take more especial Care not to err herein, since he presented the first Part of his History to this <sup>u</sup> Queen *Philippa*, who, as he saith, had in Person appeared with great Splendour at the first Feast of this Order; and farther, that after her Death he continued it on at the <sup>x</sup> Instance of his dear Lord Sir *Robert Namur* Lord of *Beaufort*, who was elected a <sup>y</sup> Companion of the *Garter* about 43d of *Edw. III.*, and contemporary with the Founder and some other of the Knights made upon the Institution. Under these Circumstances it appears scarce conceivable that *Froissart* should be guilty of such a solemn Piece of Indiscretion, if the same may not be termed an extreme Impudence, as to dedicate an History wherein he professes to write Truth to Persons of such distinguished Quality, who must themselves be well apprised of the Time of this Fact

<sup>n</sup> Rector of the parochial Church of Lescines on the Mount near Mons in Haynalt. *Introduet. a l’Hist. de Ch. VI. par le Laboureur*, p. 69. *Treasurer and Canon of Chimay*.

<sup>o</sup> Vol. 4. c. 16, p. 175.

<sup>p</sup> Vol. 3. p. 196, fus je de ma jeunesse cinq; ans de l’hostel du Roy d’Angleterre & de la Roine.

<sup>q</sup> Vol. 3. p. 176.

<sup>r</sup> Vol. 4. p. 176.

<sup>s</sup> In his Introduction.

<sup>t</sup> Vol. 3. p. 196.

<sup>u</sup> Titles of Honour, p. 635.

<sup>x</sup> In his Introduction.

<sup>y</sup> Ibid.

<sup>z</sup> He is in the Catalogues numbered 85, and succeeded Robert Ufford Earl of Suffolk, who died on Sunday after All Saints, in 43 Ed. III.



which must be so notorious and fresh in memory, that they as well as the Nobility of that Age must have immediately detected his Error and laughed at his Credulity: It would seem an Appeal, in some measure, to them, as Vouchers for this his Error, if it was one; for here is no Room to suppose he was under any Temptations to mislead his Readers, for the Antedating the Order for so little a Time cannot fall under any Suspicion of an Incense of Flattery: And there is no doubt but that he gave Copies of the several Parts of his History as he perfected them, and presented them to his distinct Patrons; for though the same is brought down to the Year 1400, yet in 1381 several <sup>2</sup> Quires thereof were in the Custody of *Louis Duke of Anjou* finely illuminated, which were intended by the Author to be sent to the King of *England*.

But waving his own frequent Declarations of his Veracity, as Matters of course in such Writers, let the Contents of his large Work be brought to the Touchstone, and whoever will have the Patience to compare it with the coævous Records published by Mr. *Rymer*, will from that Essay only be so far satisfied of his Integrity, as may induce him passionately to wish a new correct Edition; and if this Author hath hitherto not received the Honour of being printed at the *Louvre* with the other *French* Historians, upon any <sup>a</sup> national Motive, that Reason should excite some learned Person of this Kingdom, for the Reputation of our native Country, to undertake the Collating the Manuscript-copies, to compare the Facts with Records and contemporary Writers foreign and domestick, to correct the miserable misspellings of the Surnames of such who abundantly signalized their Valour and Conduct, which would be a Justice due to the Merits of these celebrated active Persons and an Honour to their Posterity. The very learned <sup>b</sup> Monsieur *du Fresne* made a Proposal of this Nature, with reference to *Froissart* and *Monstrelet*, the principal and most faithful Writers of their respective Ages, who have been extraordinarily ill treated and altered.

I proceed now to consider how far and in what manner any of the Circumstances of the Facts related by him about the Erection of this Order are supported by other Authorities.

*Henry de Leon* was a *Breton*, and <sup>c</sup> taken Prisoner by Sir *Walter de Manny*. *Oliver de Clifton* <sup>d</sup> and several other *Bretons* were beheaded at *Paris* before

<sup>2</sup> Le Laboureur l'Hist de Ch. VI. en la vie de Louis Duc d'Anjou Roy de Sicile. Le dit jour (12 de Decembre 1318) furent scelees deux lettres doubles d'une teneur & forme, faisans mention, que Monseigneur le Duc a fait prendre & retenir par devers luy, pour faire sa volonte en ce qu'il luy plaira, 56 quayers que Messire *Jehan Froissart* Prestre Recteur de l'Eglise Parrochiale de Lescines au Mont pres de Mons en Haynault, avoit fait. escrire, faisans mention de plusieurs & diverses batailles & be-soignes en fait d'Armes, faites en Royaumes de France le temps passe. Lesquels 56 quayers de Romans ou Croniques, le dit messire *Jehan* avoit envoye pour enluminer a Guillaume de Bailly Enlumineur, & lesquels le dit messire *Jehan* propousoit a envoyer au Roy d'Angleterre Adversaire, &c.

The Word Romans here used, means only a Book wrote in the Vulgar or French Language, see Du Fresne

Gloss in voce, and not according to the Acceptation of the Word in the present Age, to denote a feigned historical Narration of Adventures invented and artfully digested for the Entertainment only of the Readers; and this being in the Year 1381, was long before he finished his whole History. He wrote his third Volume in 1390, Froiss. vol. 3. p. 76.

<sup>a</sup> Popeliniere Hist. des Hist. l. 8. p. 434. see Bodin Meth. Hist. c. 4.

<sup>b</sup> Le Long Bibl. Hist. p. 956.

<sup>c</sup> Du Tillet Recueil, &c. p. 235. — Lobineau Preuves de l'Hist de Bretagne, p. 36. A. D. 1342, fuit captus Dom. Henrens de Leonia Dom. de Noyon cum multis Dominis & militibus apud Tregaranteuc — per Dom. Galterum de Manni, &c.

<sup>d</sup> Anselme l'Hist. Geneal. p. 332. saith, he was beheaded 2 Aug. 1343, and others on 29 or 30 November. Lobineau Hist. de Bretagne, p. 334.



Edward the Third declared his Intention of having general *Justs* held at *Windsor*, and it happens that the Writ for them still remains on 'Record bearing Date at *Ditton* on *New-Years Day* in the 17th Year 1443, by it these *Justs* are appointed to be held at *Windsor* on the *Monday* next after the Feast of *St. Hilary* then following, and for that Purpose a safe Conduct and Protection is given to all Persons of all Kingdoms for their coming, staying, and returning home, which Safeguard was declared to remain in force 'till the *Octaves* of the *Purification*.

This King began his Reign on the 25th of *January*, so that these *Justs* were to be held in the End of his 17th Year on *Munday* (which <sup>f</sup> Mr. *Ashmole* and Mr. *Barnes* calculate to be on the 19th of that Month,) on which Day we find the <sup>g</sup> King was at *Windsor*; but the *Octaves* of *Candlemas*, named in this Writ, fell in the Beginning of the 18th Year: In this Writ there is no express mention of the Term of fifteen Days for the Continuance of this safe Conduct, as *Froissart* suggests; but if we suppose these *Justs* lasted a whole Week, as was customary in such Cases, then there is this exact Number of fifteen intermediate Days from *Saturday* the 24th of that Month to the *Octaves* of the *Purification*, being the 9th of *February* following.

If therefore *apres la Feste* in *Froissart* should be understood to relate to the End of the Feast of holding the *Justs*, the Computation is literally true; but if the word *Feast* should be apprehended to mean that of *St. George*, the Addition of one Letter, which may be esteemed a tolerable Amendment, will reconcile that Matter; for by substituting *aupres* for *apres*, the Sense will be altered to import, that this Safe-conduct was to endure for fifteen Days near or not far distant from this Feast of *St. George*, as it doth.

This Record is an indisputable Authority, so there is no occasion of quoting *Walsingham* and the other Historians who mention the Solemnity of these *Justs* in this Year. We have the like Authority, that *Edw. III.* in this Year, <sup>b</sup> new-built or made some Reparations in *Windsor-Castle*, and the Chapel was certainly finished before *August* in the 22d Year, when that King avers — *Capellam in castro nostro de Wyndesore — nostris Regiis sumptibus fecimus consummari*, wherein as far as his Prerogative extended, he adds fifteen Canons to the Eight of the old Foundation, establisheth a *Custos* over them, orders twenty four poor Knights, and settles some Advowsons on them; which Grant, according to the Notions of the Law at present, could have no legal Subsistence unless these Canons and poor Knights had a Being. Now the Fourth and Sixth Articles of the Statutes of the Order reserving the Presentation of the first Canons and poor Knights to the Disposition of the *First Founders*, these Knights must therefore pre-exist as a Fraternity antecedent to those whom they were thus to nominate. But not knowing how far the Papal Power then interposed in ecclesiastical Erections, I shall not insist on this Topick of

<sup>e</sup> Rymer, vol. 5. p. 400.

<sup>f</sup> Hist. p. 182. Barnes Hist. of Ed. 3.

<sup>g</sup> Pat. 17 E. 3. p. 2. m. 2. Vascon. 17 E. 3. m. 1, 2, and 3.

<sup>b</sup> Rot. Pip. 18 E. 3. Computus Alani de Kellum

clerici assignati ad quasdam operationes infra castrum de Windsor. inter 16 diem Februarii anno 18mo. quo die operationes incipiebantur, &c.

<sup>i</sup> Pat. 22 E. 3. printed by Mr. Ashmole in his Appendix. n. 1.



Reasoning, especially since in the *Pelle-Office* there are the same Entries after this 22d of *Edw. III.*, as were before that Year, *Johanni de Melton & Sociis suis capellanis de Wyndesore divina celebrantibus in capella dicti Regis*, &c. and the Queen is said by *Froissart* to have been at the first Feast with a splendid Appearance, which cannot be improbable, since in the thirty-second Year we find a very large <sup>k</sup> Sum, according to the Value of Money in that Age, paid to this same Queen for her Apparel against the approaching Feast; and it will be hereafter shewn that Ladies had upon this Occasion Robes of the *Garter*.

These are some of the Particularities mentioned by this Historian, and before I come to examine his Relations of some subsequent Transactions in this Order, I must obviate an Objection that may be made against his Credit, as being a single Evidence. If the Authority of a double or treble Voucher is absolutely required, what Number of Narratives of uncontested Facts must be rejected? But it chanceth he is corroborated by another Author who Ends his Annals about the 36th of *Edw. III.*, and this is the Writer of that valuable Piece which is stiled *Scala Cronica*. There is a Copy of this Manuscript remaining in *Bennet* College in *Cambridge*, but by a great Misfortune that Book is imperfect, there being an Hiatus in it from the Siege of *Tournay* to the 30th of *Edw. III.*, so I am forced to make use of the Extracts which <sup>m</sup> *Leland* made, to which he hath not prefixed the Years, but the Series of the Facts will settle the Chronology. The Words are, "*King Edward cam yn to Bretayne — He gave his eldest Sonne the Principalitie of Wales. The Countes of Saresbyri and Southfolk took there Torney into Spayne to the Fronter of Granate to the Sege of Algesiris a great tounne of the Saracens upon the Straites of Morok, that the good King Alphonfus had besegid, and after wan it by Famyne. King Edward made a great Fest at Wyndesore at Christemes, wher he renewid the Round Table, and the name of Arture, and ordenid the Order of the Garter, making Sainct George the Patrone thereof. King Edward sent an Army ynto Flanders,*" then the History mentions the Beheading of *Artevill*, the Sending the Earl of *Derby* into *Gascoigne*, the Victory at *Albecroche*, the Siege of *Aguilon*, &c. This Manuscript is more particular in one Instance than *Froissart*, though no ways inconsistent with him, and that is of the Erection of this Order in *Christmas*, at which Time we know from Records that the King resided at *Windfor*.

Now *Edw. III.* sailed into <sup>n</sup> *Bretagne* on 4 Oct. 1342, and returned the 2d of *March* 1343, the Prince of *Wales* <sup>o</sup> was created on the 12th of *May*, in the 17th Year, *Henry* Earl of *Derby* returned from the Siege of *Algesiris* about <sup>p</sup> *All Saints* 1343. Then follows the *Aera* of the Erection of the *Garter*; and the King's sailing into *Flanders* which <sup>q</sup> was on the 3d

<sup>k</sup> Exit. Pell. P. 32 E. 3. *Philippæ Regina Angliæ* in persolutionem D. librarum quas Dom. Rex sibi liberari mandavit de dono suo in auxilium apparatus sui contra festum S. Georgii prox' præteritum apud *Wyndesore*.

<sup>l</sup> MSS. F. IV.

<sup>m</sup> *Lelandi Collect.* p. 568. edit *Hearne*.

<sup>n</sup> *Rymer*, vol. 5. p. 342, & p. 357.

<sup>o</sup> *Charta* 17 E. 3. n. 27.

<sup>p</sup> *Knighton col.* 2583, n. 10. *Heylin* in his *Cof-*

*mography* saith, that *Algezire* [which hath been supposed to be the antient *Carteia*] held out a Siege of 19 Months, and surrendered A. D. 1343. *Alfonfus XI.* *Algeziram* 22 mensibus obsessam pertinaci constantia ad deditionem 1344 coegit. *Rod. Sant. Hist. Hisp.* p. 4. c. 12. This MS. doth not say that this Town was actually surrendered before the Erection of the *Garter*.

<sup>q</sup> *Rymer*, vol. 5. p. 472.



of July 1345, the Earl of Derby having before landed at *Baione* on the 6th of June 1344.

'Tis very strange that the other Writers of that Reign have omitted the Institution of this Order. I proceed to examine the Narratives which *Froissart* gives of subsequent Transactions in this Order, and if these shall be sufficiently vouched, it will be a strong Indication of his Exactness, also in the Year he assigns for its Original.

In Vol. I. p. 381. After an Account of the Death of Sir *Walter Manny*, he saith that "in 1372. the King held the Feast of St. George at Windsor, as he was accustomed to do every Year, and that then Messire Guichard D'Angle was admitted a Companion with the King his Children, the Barons of England, who call themselves in that Fraternity, Knights of the blue Garter.

Every numerical Syllable hereof is confirmed by our Records, Sir *Walter Manny* died Thursday next after St. Hillary, 1371. and Money was issued out of the *Exchequer* for the Charges of this Feast, and the *Windsor*-Tables assure us Sir *Guichard D'Angle*, (afterwards created Earl of *Huntington*,) succeeded Sir *Walter* in the eighth Stall on the Sovereigns Side, and Stalls were to be filled within six Weeks after a Vacancy.

In Vol. 3. p. 203. The King on St. George's Day, 1387. kept a great Feast at *Windsor*. Now we know by a Record that "the Habit of the Order was delivered to the Companions for that Purpose.

In Vol. 4. p. 86, 87. is a Narrative of the Installation of the Earl of *Ostrevant*, afterwards Duke of *Holland*, which hath been supported by several Authorities in the former Part of this Letter.

In Vol. 4. ch. 36. ch. 37. false paged 110. After the Assembly at *Amiens* in Mid-lent, 1391, two French Knights Sir *John* of *Castell Morante*, and Sir *Jaupin* of *Cantmell*, were sent to *London* to know the King's Resolution upon the Proposals for a Peace or Truce, the King went to keep St. George's Feast at *Windsor*, where these Knights attended for an Answer, which Words relate to the Feast held in 1392.

Now the Records inform us that on the 5th of May, 1392. Our King confirmed the Prolongation of a Treaty by \* his Oath taken according to the Custom of that Age, in presence of Sir *Tanquin de Chaumemarle*, and Messire *John Briant*, for in this Manner the Names corrupted in the Print of our Author are to be read.

St. George's Day A. D. 1392 fell upon a Tuesday, and we know from a Record that the Feast was prorogued to the Sunday following,

\* Froiss. c. 102.

† Exit. 46. E. 3. n. 30.

‡ Exit. Pell. M. 46. E. 3. *Johanni* de *Sleford* clerico magnæ *Garderobæ* Regis in denariis super providentia facta contra festum St. *Georgij* prox. futurum pro militibus de *Gartera* CXXXIII. libr. VI. fol. IV. den.

§ 11. R. 2. vide introductionem p. XI. Note C.

¶ Rymer vol 7. p. 74.

|| Exit. Pell. M. 15. R. 2. Diversis Nunciis et Curforibus missis diversis Episcopis Magnatibus et Dominabus de essendo *London* pro exequiis Comitissæ de *Santo Paulo* in festo S. *Georgij* proxime fu-

turo in Ecclesia beati *Petri Westminster*. celebrandis, quam cum literis missis Ducibus *Ebor.* et *Glouc.* et aliis Comitibus Bannerettis et Militibus de *Gartera* de veniendo usq; *Windsore* die Dominica proxime dictum festum S. *Georgij* pro Solempnitate dicti festi ad dictum diem tenend, &c.

It is to be remembered that according to the Style and Method of the *Exchequer*, there are only two Terms in the Year, Michaelmas and Easter; and therefore the Payments for the Feast of St. George are found entred in Michaelmas Term, unless Easter Term begun as it sometimes doth before that Festival.



being the 28th of *April*, because the Countess of *St. Paul* was buried in *St. Peters Westminster* on *St. George's Day*.

The Count of *St. Paul* had a safe Conduct to come into this Kingdom in the preceeding <sup>z</sup> *November*, and <sup>a</sup> this his Lady died <sup>a</sup> before *Easter Day*, 1392. which was on 14 *Apr.* and he contracted himself to his second Lady on 17 *May*, 1393.

I have thus summed up the Evidence given by *Froissart*, and hinted in what particular Circumstances his Narratives are verified, and it seems consistent with common Justice to give Weight to his Testimony 'till the same be disproved, or lessened by Counter-Evidence.

Mr. *Ashmole* <sup>b</sup> is very positive that *Froissart* is intirely mistaken in the *Æra*, and that this Order was certainly erected in the 23d Year, for which he gives us his Reasons. He begins with such as seem of very little Authority, as the Number of *Forty* Companions in the printed Copy, which may be the Error of the Transcriber, or the Press, the Conjectures from the exploded Fable of the Ladies Garter, the Forgetfulness of Mr. *Selden* in assigning two Periods of its Institution, though it should be here observed, that this <sup>c</sup> Great Antiquary in his most mature Thoughts placed its Commencement in the 18th Year. After these Introductions he insists upon the Strength of two Arguments, that a Wardrobe Account subsequent to this Time, mentions the Habits of this Order prepared for the *First* Feast thereof, and that the Statutes place the Date expressly in the 23d Year.

This Wardrobe Account begins, as he saith, at *Michaelmas* 21 *Ed.* III. and is continued to 31 of *January* in the 23d Year, wherein he tells us are contained the Habits prepared for the *First* Feast. It is not unmannerly to crave an *Oyer* of any Record, I have not indeed seen the Original, but have the Advantage of a Copy made (as 'tis presumed) by <sup>d</sup> Mr. *Ashmole* himself, which is so far from naming the *First* Feast of *St. George*, that it doth not even mention any Feast at all. There are several Materials powdered with Garters, whence Mr. *Ashmole* safely concludes this Order was not founded in the XVIIIth Year, because the Sovereign's Robes were not made 'till the XXII, perhaps not 'till the Beginning of the XXIIIrd Year, which seems to be a Conjecture without any Grounds for it; the Fact being, that the whole Roll consists of Twenty three Membranes, in the Eighth whereof the Entry of *Chlamis*,

<sup>z</sup> Rymer, vol. 7. p. 708.

<sup>a</sup> Du Chesn Preuves de l'Hist. de Bar. le Duc. p. 65. Hist. de Chastillon, p. 295.

<sup>b</sup> Hist. p. 185, 186, 187.

<sup>c</sup> In his first Edition of the Titles of Honour printed in Quarto, in 1614. p. 362. and in his Notes on the *Poly-Olbion* wrote by him in 1612. p. 68. He places the Erection after the Victory of Calis, but in the last Edition of the former Work with Amendments, p. 658. reciting this Opinion he concludes there is Reason enough to credit *Froissart* for the Year of the Institution.

<sup>d</sup> Now remaining in Mus. Ashmol. in Oxon.

<sup>e</sup> E Museo Ashmol. Oxon. n. 1135. Ex computo Joh. Coke provisoris magnæ Garderobæ a festo *S. Mich.* in Sept. anno 21 *Ed.* iii. usq; 31 *Jan.* anno dicti Regis, 23.

M. 8. *Johnni* de Colonia Armatori ad faciend. ii.

Stremarios de Worsted uno viz de Armis quartellatis, & altero de armis quartellatis cum imagine *S. Laurentii* in capite operat. de una alba pala powderata cum *Garteriis* bluetis, &c.

Et ad faciend. unum lectum de Taffeta blu pro Rege powderat. cum *Garteriis* continentibus istud dictamen *Hony soit q. mal y pense*, &c.

Et pro factura unius chlamydis, supertunicæ, et Capuchij pro corpore Regis de pann. long. bl. powderat. cum *Garteriis* paratis cum boucles et penden. de auro deaur.

x. uln. pan. long blu	} i. lib. de serico.	
iiii. uln. cendill af-		clxviii. boucles pro <i>Gart.</i>
forc.		de argen. deaurat.
dim. pec. de carde.		clxviii. pendan. pro eif-
dim. lib. auri in plate		dem <i>Gart.</i> de argento.

M. 9.



mis, *Supertunica*, and *Capucium* powdered with *Garters*, is before the Disguisings prepared for *Christmas* in the XXI Year, and preceeding another Entry in the tenth Membrane of twelve blue *Garters* enriched with their Motto's *Hony soit q. mal y pense*, for the Justs at *Eltham* in the same Year. So that the *Garter* it self, the chief Emblem of this Order, was used at a Tilting in the XXI. Year, which is sufficient to overthrow Mr. *Asbmole*'s Supposition. But in Truth there is no Inconsistency in guessing, that the *Garter* with the Motto might have been a Badge, or Devise of the Crown antecedent to the Erection of this Order, as the *Fuzil* in *Burgundy* was the Badge of the Father of that Duke who instituted the *Toison d'or*, of which the *Fuzil* was made one of the Badges.

And if this Hypothesis should be true, all the Entries of *Garters* in this Roll, in what Year soever we place them, will give us no certain Light as to the Institution of the Order.

Again this Roll doth no where intimate that these Habits powdered with *Garters*, were the first of that Kind or Livery that were ever made, or that these were prepared, as it is alledged by Mr. *Asbmole*, for the First Grand Feast. It is to be wished the Wardrobe Accounts of the 18th, 19th, and 20th of *Edw. III.* may be discovered, and if any such Robes should be mentioned in either of them, this Matter would be cleared against Mr. *Asbmole*; though by the Way their Silence only would not be a sufficient Proof to reject *Froissart*'s Report, for there is no Incongruity in supposing that this Order subsisted some short Time before either the peculiar Habit might be appointed for it, or before the same could be provided.

The next Argument appeared to this Historian of that Strength, as to put him out of all farther Doubt, and that is, because the Statutes of the Founder fix its Erection in the 23d Year. 'Tis very true the present Exemplars do so, But are these authentick genuine Copies without any Interpolations? This first Article which thus places the Erection in this 23d Year, enumerates the Duke of *Lancaster* and the Earl of *Stafford* among the Founders, whereas there were no such Titles of Honour at that Time, these being not created till *March 25, Ed. III.*

M. 9. Et ad faciendum unum Jupoun de Taffata blu pro Regis corpore pouderat. cum *Gart.* et boucles & pendant. de arg. deaur.

iii. uln. de Taffata } dim. lib. ferici.  
ii. uln. cendall. affore. } lxii. boucles arg. deaur.  
dim. lib. auri in plate. } lxii. pendant. arg. deaur.

Et ad faciendum unum Jupoun de Tartaryn blu pouderat. cum *Garteriis* blu paratis cum boucles et pendants de arg. deaur. &c.

Et ad faciend. ludos Dom. Regis ad festum Natalis Dom. celebrat. apud *Guldeord* anno Regis xxi. &c.

M. 10. Et ad faciend. diversos apparatus pro corpore Regis pro Hastiludiis suis apud *Windefore* anno præd. — apud *Lycheffeld* anno præd.

Et ad faciend. xii *Garteria* de blu broudada de auro et ferico, quolibet habente Dictamen *Hony soit q. mal y pense*. et ad faciend. alios apparatus pro hastiludiis Regis apud *Eltham* anno Regis prædicto.

Et ad faciend. tria hernefia pro Rege quorum duo de velveto albo operata cum *Garteriis* de blu et diaf-

prez per totam campedinem cum Wodehouses, et tertium hernefium de velveto inde continen. lappekyn quisseux et caligas operatas cum *Garteriis*.

M. 11. Pro hastiludio Cantuariensi anno Regis xxii.

M. 12. Et ad parandum i. tunic. R. et i. clocam et capuc. cum C. *Garteriis* paratis cum boucles barris et pendentibus de argento.

*This was the Symbol of John the Hardi. Miræi Origin. Ord. Equestr. p. 62. Indeed Chiffletius reckons it an Emblem taken by Philip the Good in 1429. Liliun Francic. p. 84. but Wolfgangus Lazius in Commentar. Gentium Austriac. l. 1. c. viii. saith it was assumed by his Father John in his Captivity in Hungary ob vaticinium Astrologandi cujusdam nobilis harioli; Fore ut olim Ipse, vel ejus posterorum quispiam qui ignem gestaret in pectore, Saracenos vinceret, gentemq; eorum deleteret universam.*

*g Pat. 23. E. 3. p. 1. m. 18. 6 March Duke of Lancaster created. Chart. 25. E. 3. n. 13. n. 25. 5 March Earl of Stafford created.*

I have



I have not hitherto had the good Luck to inspect the Original, or even any Copy of the Statutes wrote in the Reign of the Founder, such a Discovery would be of great Service to settle several Particulars, and I cannot doubt but there are Copies of that Age remaining in private Hands.

*Froissart* informs us the Founders swore to the Observance of the Statutes, so that they were coævous with the Erection, and why may it not be conceived that those first Statutes in the 18th Year, were only Capitulars containing the substantial Parts, which might be digested into a more regular Form in the 23d Year, and from thence that Æra be inserted in the subsequent Copies, wherein the Transcribers might commit Aachronisms in giving the Companions the Titles they had at the Time of their writing these Copies. This is indeed only Guess Work, but this Fact hath happened in other parallel Instances. The present Statutes of the *Golden Fleece* bear Date on 27 Nov. 1431; yet that Order was founded before on 10th January, 1429. according to the Stile of that Country, and indeed at the <sup>b</sup> first Erection Statutes were made, whereof I have a Copy, and which is somewhat remarkable the Name of *John de Neufchastel Seigneur de Montagu*, one of the first Companions is not inserted among the Founders in these latter Statutes, made in 1431, because he had been in that Interval deposed from the Order. Somewhat of the like Nature occur'd afterwards even to the Garter. The Statutes by *Hen. VIII.* are entred in the Register dated in his 14th Year; yet he first made an Explanation on 29th May in his 11th Year, whereof I have a <sup>i</sup> Copy, in which Year there is only a short Hint given in the Register, because the same was thus afterwards perfected and drawn into an ampler and more regular Form.

This is the State of this Controversy, as it stands between *Froissart's* Credit and Mr. *Asmole's* Suggestions to invalidate it, but to decide the Merits of the whole Cause, it will be necessary to examine an Observation, or Reply made against the Assertion of the latter, that the *First* great Feast of St. George was held in the 23d Year, which comes from no less a Pen than that of <sup>k</sup> Dr. Brady, whom a very learned Author styles the <sup>l</sup> Father of *English* History. He takes Notice "that the Great Plague began about the first of August, 22 *Edw. III.* and continued with Violence, 'till Michaelmas twelve Months after, that not only the Parliament " was twice prorogued, but scarce any Thing remarkable is reported in " the 23d Year to have been done, either in *England* or *France*, so that 'tis " scarce probable the *Garter* should be then instituted, or the *First* Grand " Feast; especially since the Parliament that was called by Writ, to meet " fifteen Days after *Easter*, was prorogued until <sup>m</sup> new Summons, because " of the raging Pestilence. And 'tis remarkable that *Easter-Day* this Year " falling on the 9th of *April*, and the Quindene being the 23d, or

<sup>b</sup> A. 10. penes me p. 55. Copie des premiers ordonances et Institution des Chevaliers de l'Ordre de la tres noble *Thoison d'or* fait l'an mil. iiii. c. xxix.

<sup>i</sup> I. 13. penes me.

<sup>k</sup> *Hist. of Ed. iii.* p. 247.

<sup>l</sup> *Hicetii Dissertatio Epistolaris* p. 52. & p. 34.

<sup>m</sup> See these Writs in Rymer, vol. 5. p. 655. 658. see also another Writ about the Pestilence 1 Dec. 23. E.3. p. 668.



“ St. George’s Day, it cannot be thought that this great Solemnity of the  
 “ Garter, to which all Foreigners were invited to come, should be held on  
 “ that Day when the Parliament was prorogued, by Reason of the mortal  
 “ Plague. The Doctor however allows (as he words it) that this famous  
 “ Order might then be instituted, the Model of it contrived, and the Sta-  
 “ tutes made to adorn martial Virtue, and to increase and confirm Faith,  
 “ Honour, and Courage in the Minds of the Nobility.

By my Computation *Easter-day* in 1349 was on *Apr. 11*, but that will not alter the Strength of the Doctor’s Reasoning.

To proceed: There are several other Circumstances to be duly considered, before any Decision can be given with any Assurance.

*Edward* the Third <sup>n</sup> in his twenty-third Year on St. George’s Day was at *Westminster*, having been at *Langele* the Day before, to which Place he returned again on the 24th of *April*, having on the 27th of *December* before been also at *Westminster*, and on the 2d of *January* at *Merton*, and returned to *Westminster* the next Day.

It should likewise be enquired, whether any Light may be gathered from the Persons of the first Companions of this Order; for if any of them died before the 23d Year, the Question must be then decided against Mr. *Asmole*: He indeed <sup>o</sup> saith, that Sir *Tho. Wale* made the first Vacancy by Death in the 26th of *Ed. III*, but I am ignorant on what Authority he grounds that Assertion, especially since he himself presents us with nothing of Sir *Sanchet d’Abrigecourt* lower than the 19th, or of Sir *Richard Fitz Simon* after the 22d of *Edw. III*; and ’tis some Degree of Probability that one Vacancy happened before the Death of Sir *Thomas Wale* in 26 *Ed. III*, because in the preceeding Year, there were only <sup>p</sup> Robes made for twenty-four Companions, and ’tis much to be lamented that the Names of these Knights are not specified in the Record.

I cannot find any Inquisitions taken after the Deaths of this Sir *Sanchet*, or Sir *Richard*, and Mr. *Asmole* is mistaken in placing the Death of Sir *Hugh Courtenay* in 40 *Edw. III*, as is plain by <sup>q</sup> inspecting the Escheat to which he refers to, and I have not as yet been able to trace him lower <sup>r</sup> than the 22d of that Reign.

’Till the Times of the Deaths of these Persons shall be found, let us see if any of the First Companions received the Honour of Knighthood after the 18th Year; for if the original Statutes were of the same Tenour with the present Ones, that Degree must have been prior to their Elections.

’Tis then certain the Prince of *Wales* was <sup>s</sup> knighted in 20th of *Ed. III*. whereon the Writ for the Aid due *a faire Fitz Chevalier* issued. But if Mr. <sup>t</sup> *Barnes* may be credited, this Prince when he was invested with the Dutchy of *Cornwall* in the 11th of *Ed. III*. made twenty new Knights, which implies, that that Order had been first conferred on himself; if so,

<sup>n</sup> From the Dates of the Patents, &c. in the Tower.

<sup>o</sup> Hist. of the Garter, p. 700.

<sup>p</sup> Exit. Pellis Mich. 25 E. 3. Willmo Retford nuper Clerico magnæ Garderobæ in partem solutionis clx librarum pro factura viginti & quatuor robarum cum x eloc. poudr. cum Garteriis broudit. 12 Standard. de worstede de armis ejusdem Regis, ridell. pro capella de Wyndesore, &c.

<sup>q</sup> He quotes Esch. 48 E. 3. n. 7.

<sup>r</sup> Exit. Pell. p. 22 E. 3. Hugoni de Courtenay mil<sup>i</sup> in perfolucionem 38 libr. quas mutuo liberavit, &c.

<sup>s</sup> Ypodigma Neustriæ, p. 516. n. 50. See Rot. Parl. 20 E. 3. n. 45. and Rymer vol. 5. p. 527.

<sup>t</sup> History of Edw. III, p. 113.



then this Writ might be with some View to the " Statute, which requires the Son to be fifteen Years of Age before that Aid shall be levied.

The \* Sovereigns of Orders have in latter Ages dispensed with this Article, in relation to their Sons and nearest Relations: But then again, *William* Earl of *Salisbury* and *Roger* Lord *Mortimer*, two others of the first Companions received Knighthood at the same Time and Place with the *Black Prince*; so that the like Dispensations must have been necessary in their Cases also, unless we should suppose the Knighthoods then said to be conferred, were of the Degree of Bannerets, and thus *Edmund* of *Langeley* received the <sup>2</sup> Habits of this Order in 34 *Edw.* III. *A. D.* 1360, yet he was in 1369 knighted at the Siege of <sup>a</sup> *Bordille* in *Spain*.

It will be no Objection against *Froissart's* Narrative, that in this 18th Year some of the first Founders were under Age, for Knighthoods were then conferred on Persons during <sup>b</sup> their Minority; thus *Charles de Valois* at *Bolonia* in 1301, knighted *Philip* and *Albert de gli Asinelli*, one of twelve, the other of fourteen Years old, and *Francis Bentivogli* then only thirteen. *Alexander*, Son of the King of *Scotland*, was knighted by our King <sup>c</sup> *John* when he was fourteen; *Alexander*, King of *Scotland*, when he was nine Years of Age, was <sup>d</sup> knighted by *Hen.* III. And if this Order was instituted in the 18th Year of *Ed.* III, the Prince was then about fourteen; as afterwards *Richard* his Son, King of *England*, was above ten Years old at his Installation; *Henry*, Son of *Henry* IV, was about twelve; *Edward*, Son of *Edward* IV, was elected into this Order when he was not five Years of Age, and at the same time his younger Brother was likewise elected. *Arthur*, Prince of *Wales*, was installed when under five Years. Thus *Henry* IV, of *France*, in 1601, gave the Ensigns of the Order of the *Holy Ghost* to *Louis* the Dauphin at his <sup>e</sup> Birth, and to the Duke of *Orleans* his second Son in 1607, which Practice hath been ever since observ'd by the succeeding Kings.

But if the Order was erected in the 18th Year, or rather during *Christmas* Holy-days in the 17th Year, then *William* Earl of *Salisbury*, the Father of this Person must have been the first Knight, for he was slain at these *Justs* at *Windsor* in <sup>f</sup> *January* 1343, and his Son might succeed in his Stall.

Thus also the Duke of *Lancaster*, mentioned a Companion in these Statutes, said to be made in 23 *Edw.* III, was at that time only Earl of *Derby*; but if the Order was instituted in the 18th Year, the Founder might have been his Father the Earl of *Lancaster*, who died in the following Year.

These are my present Sentiments on this critical Point, which I leave as a Problem, 'till some farther Records shall be found, which may au-

<sup>a</sup> *Westm.* 1. c. 36.

<sup>x</sup> *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*, created his Son Companion of the Toison at his Baptism, Chifflet insign. *Eq. Aur. Vell.* n. xxxiv. as also *Philip le Bel* his Son *Charles*. *Vredii Sigilla Com. Fland.* p. 142. & Chifflet n. cxiv.

<sup>y</sup> MS. in *Bibl. Bodl.* K. 84. f. 116. a.

<sup>z</sup> See above, p. 42. Note 7.

<sup>a</sup> *Froiss.* vol. 1. c. 264, p. 335.

<sup>b</sup> *Menestrier de la Chevalrie*, p. 134.

<sup>c</sup> *Scotichronicon*, p. 735. edit. *Hearn*.

<sup>d</sup> *Ibid.* p. 762.

<sup>e</sup> *Hist. des Chevaliers*, Tom. 4. p. 185.

<sup>f</sup> See *Wever's Funeral Monuments*, p. 437. *Hollingsh.* p. 366, that he died of Bruises received in Tilt-ing at *Windsor*, but the *Esch.* 18 E. 3. n. 51. is positive that his Death was before the Purification of the blessed *Virgin* in the 17th Year.

thentically



thentically determine this Point: Your Lordship needed not that I should thus open this Case, which is entirely submitted to your Judgement, you being better qualified than any Person that I know to decide this Controversy.

I now crave Leave to resume the Explication of the several Parts of the Description of an Order of Knighthood laid down in the Beginning of this tedious Letter, with a View still to the Explaining some Particulars relating to the *Garter*.

The First was, That such a Military Society must consist of actual and real Knights regularly dubbed according to the Laws of Chivalry, which Qualification excludes from Orders all <sup>s</sup> voluntary Fraternities; for the Sake of *St. George*, I shall confine my self to two famous Guilds dedicated out of several others to his Patronage, That erected in *Ireland* by Act of <sup>b</sup> Parliament, for the Defence of the *English Pale*, which subsisted 'till it was dissolved by the like Authority in 10 *Hen. VII*, which however was no Order, since Knighthood was not required for an Admission into it; and for the same Reason the other instituted in *Franche Comté* in 1485, was never placed in this Classis of Orders, though it hath several Laws and Customs very analogous; as a peculiar Livery, Plates of Arms of the Brethren fixed in the Chapel of *Rougemont*, whose Controversies were to be determined by the general Body in a Chapter, and who were all obliged to wear the Image of *St. George*, and before their Admissions to prove their noble Descents, *leurs quatre lignes*, and for whom Masses were celebrated after their Death, and their Hatchments offered with ceremonious Honour.

Statutes and <sup>k</sup> Rules are also absolutely necessary to constitute Military Orders, and as essential to them as the three Vows were to create Religious Ones. Hence all Fraternities of Arms entred into by private Contracts, though confirmed by Oaths, for mutual Protections in War, for Division of the Ransome of Prisoners, &c. cannot be entituled to be Orders; some of which Associations are of very antient <sup>l</sup> Date, and others subsequent to the Erection of Orders, and the Usefulness of them might give some Hint to Princes to institute Military Orders in Form.

The Continuance of Successions is likewise required in an Order; hence the occasional Knighthoods of the *Bath* and of *Bannerets* being uncertain in their Numbers and arbitrary as to their Creations, are out of this Rank.

But my chief Design is to treat of the Livery-badge or Emblem, which is so very essential that it not only discriminates, but generally denominates the Order: And here, as to Badges, I am to premise my Opinion, That the Wearing them alone is not sufficient to constitute an Order,

<sup>g</sup> See Menestrier de la Chevalerie, ch. 8. Du Fresne's Gloss. voce Ordo fidei. Honore de S. Marie de la Chevalerie, p. 196.

<sup>b</sup> See Sir John Davis of the true Causes why Ireland was never entirely subdued, p. 61, 64, and his Reports p. 11 b. and Sir James Ware's Antiq. Hibern. in the Reign of Hen. VII.

<sup>i</sup> Gollut de la Republique Sequanoise at large.

<sup>k</sup> Miræus in his Preface to Orig. Equest. Ord: —

quibus & certæ sunt leges, & unus idemq; est perfectus.

<sup>l</sup> See Du Cange's Dissertation 21 on Joinville. Dugd. 1<sup>st</sup> vol. Baron. p. 450. Lobineau Hist. de Bretagne en preuves, p. 538, &c. between Thomas de Grandison and Sbincho Lepus de Hasberge in 1344, Vinc. MS. n. 222. in Offic. Arm. page 104, &c.

which



which I the rather do, since I have great Reason to suppose that the Authors on this Subject have in too much haste placed the Collars or Devises given by Sovereigns as their particular Liveries, into the Classis or Range of Military Orders.

The antient Advice not to be curious in foreign Republicks is before my Eyes, so that I shall only in the Margin mention some *Englishmen*, said to be Companions of foreign <sup>m</sup> Orders, which Expressions upon a Test with this Definition of Orders, may be probably found to mean no more than that they had the Devises or Badges of foreign Sovereigns.

It might be a Disquisition to be pardoned, if the whole Compass of the Badges and Collars used or given by the Crown was enquired into, which would contain many Curiosities. The great Mr. *Selden*, and Mr. <sup>n</sup> *Ashmole*, after their most diligent Searches, found little Instructions in this Article of Collars, I shall therefore be somewhat more full in this Particular, with an especial View however to our Order.

<sup>o</sup> *Favim* asserts that our *Hen. V.* erected a new Order of Knights denominated S. S. from these Letters in the Collar, for which he quotes <sup>p</sup> *Juvenal de Ursins*, whose Expression is, *That Hen. V. declared all present in the famous Battle of Agincourt to be Gentlemen, giving them Permission to wear a Collar of the Letters S. of his Order.*

This conferring of Gentility at this celebrated Victory was certainly only a verbal Concession, and therefore omitted out of our printed Historians; but this Method of Encouragement and Reward is fully intimated in the Words of a <sup>q</sup> Writ which was in the fifth Year issued to the Sheriffs of this Kingdom, and allows the bearing Coats of Arms by those

<sup>m</sup> Several Subjects of England have been Companions of foreign Orders, one of the Founders of the Collar in Savoy, was of this Nation; many have been Knights of St. Michael; the valiant and advised Thomas Duke of Norfolk, whose Deservings *Hen. VIII.* knew not how to value, having never omitted any Thing that concerned his own Honour and the King's Service (which is the Character justly given him by Sir Walter Raleigh) was of that Order, as was also his Grandson, and likewise Charles Brandon, See Camden ad A. D. 1566.

But the present Enquiry is of such who have received the Devises, which by the Mistake of Writers, have been called Orders. The Writers on this Subject have mentioned an Order, said by them to be erected by Charles V. at Tunis in 1535, which they call the Burgundian Crosse, and in a Church within the City of Norwich is this Inscription, "Here under lyeth the Corps of Peter Rede, Esq; who hath worthily served not only his Prince and Countrey, but also the Emperour Charles the fyfth both at the Conquest of *Barbara* and the Siege of *Tunis*, but also in other Places, who had given him by the said Emperour for his valiant Deeds the Order of *Barbara* who died the twenty ninth Day of December in the year of our Lord God mccccxviii," and on his Arms are two Cantons sinister, the First the Burgundian Crosse with the Steel or Fusil in the Middle, and in the Second Mercury, the Figure of the tenth Planetary Hour, at which Time the Emperour made his magnificent Entry into Tunis. But the Appellation of Esquire, here given him, shews, That this was no Knightly Order; for there are several Instances of the Subjects of this Kingdom knighted by that Emperour, who were allowed that Title in this Kingdom, which belonged of Right to them, as will

appear in other Parts of this Discourse.

Mr. Lobineau en preuves de l'Hist. de Bretagne, p. 627. hath obliged his Readers with a Catalogue of several Companions of the Order of the Ermine and Esqy, among whom he places the following Englishmen, William Rigmaiden in 1431, two Esquires of the Household of the Lord Scales 1431, an Esquire of the Lord Talbot a Collar of Silver 1433; James Abourre a Collar of Esqy or Ear of Corn 1447; Oliver Huet, Lieutenant of the Captain of Vire 1447. It appears then that Esquires Menials to English Lords had this Badge, which seems to exclude it from the Classis of a Military Order, and if it had been really such, that Distinction might not have been an improper Complement to these Lords themselves, unless it should be supposed that the Lord Scales and Talbot would not accept it, being before that time Companions of the Garter, &c.

<sup>n</sup> Selden's *Tules of Honour*, p. 691, 692. Ashm. Hist. p. 224.

<sup>o</sup> Theatre d'honneur & de Chevalerie, l. 5. c. 2.

<sup>p</sup> Le Roy d'Angleterre exhorta ses gens, & leur commanda, que si aucuns avoient rancune les uns contre les autres, qu'ils se missent en paix & concorde, &c. En les exhortant a estre bonnes gens a la Journee, & de fair bien leur devoir. Avec ce il accorda que tous ceux de sa Compagnie, qui n'estoient Nobles, il les ennoblirait, & leur en donneroit Lettres, & vouloit que deslors ils jouissent de telles franchises comme les Nobles d'Angleterre, & afin qu'on les cogneust, il leur donna conge de porter un collier de lettres, S. de son Ordre.

<sup>q</sup> Rymer, vol. 9. p. 457. and in the Introduction to Gore's Catalogus Rei Heraldicæ; as also in Sandf. Geneal. Hist. p. 283.

present



present at *Agincourt*, though they had no prescriptive Right or any [other] particular Grant thereof, that is, by any former written Instrument or Donation. But then it must be acknowledged that this Collar of S. S. was only the *r* Ensign, and a Right incident to Gentility, or bearing Coat-Armour, and not (as the *French* Author supposes) a particular Order of Knighthood.

The Preface to the *Black-book* and Dr. *Heylin*, imagined a Collar was one of the Emblems of the Knights of the Garter, instituted by the Founder; but since there remain several Warrants to send the Habits thereof to Foreigners, wherein there is no mention of any Collar 'till about the Reign of *Hen. VII.* it may be justly questioned whether the Collar was any Symbol of the Order in these former Ages.

My late Friend / Mr. *Rymer*, for whose Memory I have a just Esteem, hath docqueted or entitled an Instrument in 12 *Hen. VI.* *De Colaribus liberatione Ordinis Garterij per Imperatorem in Consilio Basiliensi distribuendis*, whereas the Minute of the Privy Council mentions only Collars *de ordine et Liberatione Regis*, of the King's Order and Livery.

This Inscription or Lemma, implies not only, that there were Collars at that Time belonging to the Knights of the Garter, as Part of the Ensigns, but that also these Collars of the Garter were distributed to other Persons that were not Companions of that Order.

It is beyond controverting that some ancient Knights of the Garter wore Collars, which (if I am not mistaken) were not any Symbol peculiar to this Order, but distinct from it as the Livery Badge, or Devise of the Crown, which Matter I am now to examine, and into the Fashion of these Collars.

*Froissart* then informs us, that the Earl of *Ostrevant* in 14 *Rich. II.* received the blue Garter, and the Devise of that King, *Et la devise du Roy d' Angleterre*. His Words in Strictness seem to imply, that this Devise (whatever it was) must have been separate and distinct from the Emblems of the Order.

A late " Jesuit hath determined this Devise to have been a Collar of the Letters S. S. which he saith were the Cyphers of the Countess of *Salisbury*, for whom, as he will have it, this Order was originally instituted; such a positive Averment without any Proof to support it will be of little Significancy, whatever Ingenuity or Acuteness may appear in the Conjecture at first Sight.

*r* Upton de milit. officio, p. 33. In Angliâ autem quando Dominus Rex aliquem nobilitat, solet unum feodum, ut prædictum est, liberatam suam nobilitati coadonare: Quæ liberata est unum Collarium cum literis S. de auro vel argento fabricatum, &c.

*f* Vol. 10. p. 576.

The Warrant from the Privy-Council dated 14 Apr. 12 H. vi. pro sex Colar. auri, 24 argenti deaurati, et lx argenti de ordine et liberat. Regis destinatis Imperatori ad ea deliberand. inhabitantibus villæ Basil. et aliis militibus et Armigeris secundum discretionem dicti Imperatoris et Ambass. Regis ibidem existentium.

In the same Year we find more Collars sent to this same Emperor. Priv. Sigill. 19 Dec. 12 Hen. vi. — que vous facez deliverer cxxii livres, quæ Johan Mer-

son Gardein de noz joiaix faut paier pour quatre vintz Colers d'or, d'argent dorrez, et d'argent, queux nous faut envoyer a nostre trescher frere L'Empe- reur de Rome pour les donner as Countes Barons Chevaliers et Esquiers de sa pais, &c.

*t* l. 4. c. xxii. p. 86.

*u* Menestrier de la Chevalerie p. 44. — qu'outre la Jartiere, il prit ce colier des S. d'or ou d'argent, qui estoient les Chiffres de la Comtesse de *Sarisbury*, en faveur de qui cet ordre fut institue avec ces mots, *bony soit*, &c. Thus he indulging his Fancy in Orig. des Ornaments des Armoiries p. 116. saith that the Dragon the sinister Supporter of the Arms of the Crown was on occasion of this Order dedicated to St. George, whose Symbol was the Dragon, which will be shewn to be also a Mistake.



Before I endeavour to settle the Figure or Fashion of this Devise, which I conceive was the *White Hart* hanging probably at a Collar of *Broom-codds*, I beg Leave, for the Affinity of the Subject to cite <sup>x</sup> *Walsingham*, who saith that *Hen. V.* invested the Emperor *Sigismond* with the Habit of the Order, and also “*put about his Neck the Royal Sign, which the* “ *Emperor afterwards constantly wore in Publick and Private.*”

This Royal Sign was certainly a Collar, for this Emperor entred into *Constance* “*wearing the Livery or Devise of our King, which was dis-* “ *pleasing to the French, or as 'tis expressed by <sup>z</sup> another. “ The Kyng of* “ *Rome entride the Cite of Constaunce with lyvere of the Colar about his* “ *necke — and on Sonedaye the last daye of Januarie your Brother the* “ *Kyng of Rome (as it is worded in a Letter to our King) werede* “ *the Gowne of the Garterez wyth your Coler opynly ad the Hyze Messe.*” This Collar might in all Probability be different in Shape from the Devise given to the Earl of *Ostrevant*, both which I shall endeavour to explain.

But I take it not amiss to premise, that our Princes from the Reign at least of *Rich. II.* inclusive wore Collars, from which Badge an <sup>a</sup> Officer of Arms took his Denomination, as the other Badges, Cognifances, or Devises of the Crown, gave likewise Titles to other such Officers, as <sup>b</sup> *Faucon*, *Fleur de lis*, *Leopard*, *Blanch Sanglier*, *Eagle*, *Griffon*, *Leon d'or*, &c.

Our Kings not only wore <sup>c</sup> Collars themselves, but presented them (as we learn from our Records) to foreign <sup>d</sup> Princes, <sup>e</sup> Embassadors and <sup>f</sup> Foreigners,

<sup>x</sup> Ypodigma Neustriae p. 192. et Hist. p. 441. honorans illic eum et tantæ fraternitatis titulo et Religionis illius nobili vestimento, signumq; regale imposuit collo suo, quod Imperator exposit semper concessit in omni conventu publico et privato.

<sup>y</sup> Rymer, vol. 9. p. 440, 441. a Letter from the Bishop of Durham — liberatam seu Devisam metuendissimi Regis nostri continue deferens, quæ in Gallorum oculis multum tædiosa et nociva consistit.

<sup>z</sup> Ibid. p. 434, 435. a Letter to Hen. V. from one Forester.

<sup>a</sup> Our Records mention this Purservant from 15 Hen. 6. to 3 Hen. 7. inclusive, but it would be too foreign to insert these Passages. He is also mentioned in the Cotton Library in Cleop. F. 5. p. 62.

<sup>b</sup> Faucon is mentioned in several printed Books. Rymer, vol. 6. p. 417. Monstrelet vol. 1. c. 2. p. 5. Bertrand D'argentre p. 425. Froiss. vol. 1. c. 202. c. 221, &c. we meet with *Fleur de lis* created at Windsor, 13 Hen. vi. at St. George's Feast. *Leopard* in Rymer vol. 10. p. 505, 506, &c.

Collars for the King.

<sup>c</sup> Exit Pell. Pasch. 16 R. 2. Super fabricatione duorum Collarium et unius Nouche auri cum per-ry rubies baleys dyamantes et saphires ornatorum pro persona Regis 26 l. 17 s. 6 d.

Priv Sig. 8 Sept. 4. H. iv. pur un Coler achate au temps de Noepces parentre nous et nostre tresamee Campaigne la Royne Sept Centz marcs, &c.

Priv Sig. 7 Feb. 21 E. iv. Whereas Reynold Undecolt, Goldsmith hath delivered unto our Use a litell Colier of golde price ffty Shillings, a signet graven with our bool armes of England, price six pounds ten Shillings, a grete Coler of gold price twelve pounds, and also a Gar-

ter of gold le price thre pounds sixteen Shillings and eight pence, &c. We find mention made of the Kings rich Collar called Pyssan in several Records, and which upon extraordinary Occasions was frequently mortgaged. See Priv. Sigill. 20 Aug. 21, H. vi, &c.

Brevia Mich. 8. Hen. iv. The King recites that he had mortgaged to Lewis de Portico for 2500 Marks deux Colers d'or et une rubie, et diverses autres pierres pretieuses en mesmes les deux Colers esteantz, &c.

<sup>d</sup> Foreign Princes. Lib. Comp. 8 H. iv. Domino Regi pro xix Collar. argenti, uno deaurato de liberatura Regis emptis et de mandato ipsius Regis Rogero Syglem militi liberatis ad deliberand. Duci Polan. et aliis extraneis de familia sua. 4 l. 4 s. 10 d.

<sup>e</sup> Embassadors. Priv. Sigill. 2 March 18 E. iv. To a Goldsmith for a Colar of Gold of the Kings Livery, bought of him by the Kings Highnesse, and given to Stephen Van Kelham Ambassador of the Duke of Ostrich and Burgoin. C s.

Liber Comput. Mich. 7. H. 7. Johanni Bargons [Berghes] militi nuper venienti a Rege Romano-rum in valore unius Coleri de auro de liberata Regis xii l.

<sup>f</sup> Foreigners. That to the Duke of Quimbre will be hereafter inserted. 3 Febr. anno 6 [Hen. 6.] apud Westm. concordatum fuit quod fiat warrantum The-saurar. et Camerariis de scaccar. de solvendo Johanni Comiti Oxon. xx. marc. per viam regardi pro uno Collari aureo, quod Dom. Rex sumpsit manibus propriis de ipso Comite, et dedit cuidam Jacobo de Bailalanez de regno Polonie militi. Signed by the privy Councillors, and the privy Seal for this Payment calls it un Coler d'or de nostre livere.

Exit Pell. Mich. 8. H. 6. Johan. Merston custodi Jocalium Regis 90 l. 16 s. 3 d. pro uno capho de auro et uno Colar. de auro datis Nicholao Merston militi



reigners, as likewise to our own <sup>g</sup> Noblemen, to their Domesticks, their Favourites, the <sup>b</sup> Gentry, and even to <sup>i</sup> Ladies, and that either as Pledges of a stricter Amity, Tokens of Honour to be worn as Memorials, Rewards for Merit, or Symbols of immediate Service, and as a more especial Mark of Favour, these Collars were sometimes sent to <sup>k</sup> foreign Princes, to be distributed at their Discretion to Persons of noble Descent and Character. The Instances of each particular Assertion are in the Margin, to which may be added one Article of the Impeachment against the Duke of *Suffolk* in 28 *Hen. VI.* which shews these Liveries were worn as Badges of Alliance and Friendship, for that Duke is charged to have levied *English* Souldiers for the *Dauphin* to make War against your [that is the King's] Friends of *Almayne* — “ So that many Nobles of that Parties having your honourable Lyvere, departed from their good Will, &c.” But these Collars were not military Orders, or any Ensign of them, though sometime improperly stiled in Latin Instruments, *de ordine Regis* that is of his Livery, Sect, or Badge, for these were frequently given to Persons under the Degree of Knighthood, and these Collars were not only (as I presume) varied in their Figures by our Kings at least of different Lines, but were made of different Materials under the same King, according to the Distinction and Quality of the Person to whom they were presented, being often of Gold, enriched sometimes with precious

militi cum Duce *Savoye* existenti; Et pro lxi Colar. datis diversis militibus et *Armigeris* post coronationem Domini Regis, &c.

Account of John Merston. A Heer Wolstane Escuier Seigneur de la pais d' *Ostrie* del done du Roy ung Coler d'argent oue une Nouché d'or garniz d' une gros diamand pointe.

Priv. Sig. *Hen. 6.* sine data. pur un nouché, deux Colers d' or, dys Colers d' argent par nous donnez a l' Estrangers d' *Almaigne* sessante et trois livres sjs souldz et oyt deniers.

Priv. Sig. 9 Oct. 31 *Hen. 6.* Forasmuche as Tho. Burneby by our Commandement delivered late a Coler of Silver of our Livery unto a Straunger, whome we at that time departed the same our Lyvere, which Coler was of the value iiii unc. &c.

Lib. Comp. Mich. 2 *Hen. 7.* Richardo Gilford militi pro corpore Regis pro pretio unius Colaris de auro per mandatum Regis cuidam extraneo de partibus *Flandrie* 17 l.

Rot. Parl. 28 *H. 6.* art. 31.

<sup>g</sup> Our Noblemen. The Earl of Oxford hath been already mentioned.

Exit Pell. Pasch. 8 *H. 6.* Johan. Merston custodi Jocalium pro uno Colar de auro dato Comiti *Devon* 8. 13. 4.

The Lord Berkely in his Will made 1417. gives to the Church of Kingewode, meum optimum Collarium de Liberata Regis. Reg. Chichele p. 1. f. 307 b.

<sup>b</sup> Order of Council 23 Juill. 32 *Hen. 6.* at Westm. The King by th'avis of his Counsaill wold and graunted to his Right trusty and right entirely welbeloved Cousin the Duc of York protectour and defensour of England, that he shold have power and auctorite to yewe the Kings livery of Colers to xxiiii gentilmen after his discretion, they and everich of thaim to be sworn to be a feed with no man but with the King withoute his special licence, and that hereupon letters under the prive Seel and greet Seel be made in due forme.

London.  
Eliens.  
Bathon.

Salisbury.  
Bourghier.  
P. Sancti Johannis.

<sup>i</sup> Ladies. Account of John Merston keeper of the Jewels 18 July 14 *H. 6.* à la Duchesse d'York un Coler d' or avec ung nouché garniz de iiii Rub. iiii Perl. et en une lieu d' une diamande quarre donne autrefois au Roy par la Roine Katherine a Roen.

<sup>k</sup> We find Collars twice sent to the Duke of Mantua; Priv. Sigill. 8 Oct. 8. *H. 6.* a Simon Crema quarante livres, un hanap d' argent coverez a son oeps propre, comme trois Colers d' or, dont deux sont esmelez oue blanc pur les faire deliverer au Sire de Mantua.

Exit Pell. M. 8. *H. 6.* Johanni Merston custodi Jocalium pro tribus Colaribus de auro, quorum duo erant enamelizata cum alb. deliberandis Domino de Mantua.

In Rymer, vol. 10. p. 655. is a memorable Instrument, and the privy Seal, upon which it past is extant. *Henri &c.* a l' onourable Pere en Dieu Levesq; de Bathe nostre Chaunceller Salutz. Comme par la report de nostre treschier et foial Counsaillieur *Fihan*. Sire de Scrope eons entenduz les grandes humanites, honours, benevolences, et faveurs queux le noble et puissant Prince nostre treschier et tresame Cousin le Marques de Mantua nadgairs luy avoit faite en alant parmy ses terres et pouvires a la Sepulture nostre Seigneur et retournant par ycelles: Parquoy Nous volons faire chose a luy agreable: Et pur tant que par la dit report Nous eons aussi bien entenduz, que le dit Marques espetialment desire d'avoir de Nous licence pur donner nostre Livery de Coler ou Devise as divers ses subgitz et amys pour l' onneur de Nous, et pur avoir de Nous espetiale remembrance &c. Nous favourablement encline a son dit desire, luy avons donez licence de donner noz Liveres de Coler ou Devyse a cynquant personnes, per ainsi q'ils soient nobles et de grand progenye et Sange &c. 19 Oct. [15 *Hen. vi.*] in the white Tower, London.

The fourscore Collars sent to the Emperor Sigismond are mentioned above.



Stones; others were Silver guilt, and others Silver only, some of them seem to have been of Silk, and others of Stuff of *Meaulx*, many of them enamelled, and which is remarkable with divers Colours, as White and Green, White and Red, White and Black, of all which we have Instances in the Inventory of the *Jewels* that *Hen. V.* left at his Death.

I shall first examine the Form (as I guess) of that Devise of *Rich. II.* given to the Earl of *Ostrevant* when he was invested with the Garter, and afterwards the Figure of the Royal Collar given to the Emperor *Sigismund*.

Among your Lordships most invaluable Collections, is a Picture of *Rich. II.* wherein he is represented in the Posture of Devotion, habited with a long Gown, with large Sleeves, which Robe is throughout embroidered with Broom Codds, Husks, or Shells placed in as circular a Manner as their Form and Figure would admit, and in the Center of each of these Circles is a [White] *Hart* couchant gorged with a Coronet; and this King hath about his Neck a Collar composed of the same Broom-codds, to which the like [White] *Hart* is appendant, and which is somewhat singular, the Angels in the same Picture have this Livery of the *Hart* on their left Shoulders. That great Master *Hollar* hath published a curious Etching of it, which he dedicated to King *Charles* the First, with a *m* Copy of Verses to explain the Contents of the Picture, but hath

*l* Rot. Parl. 2 *H. 6. n. 30* Inventory of the Jewels of *H. 5.* delivered to his Executors.  
The Riche Colar valued 5162*l.* 13*s.* 4*d.*

## Gold.

*l* Cuiler d'or resceux de *Tho. Gloucester* pois i unc. iii quart. pris le unce xxiii*s.* iiiii*d.* xl*s.* x*d.*

## Guilt.

*l*. 46 Colers d'argent dorrez pris le pece x*s.* xxiii*l.* It x Colers d'argent dorrez de la livere du Roy le pec 3*s.* 4*d.*

## Silver.

*l*. xiiii Colers d'argent blanc pris le pece vi*s.* viii*d.* en tout iiiii*l.* xiii*s.* iiiii*d.*

It xiii Colers d'argent de la livere du Roy poifans ensemble iii*l.* iii unc. demy.

## Stuff.

*l*. i Coler de tissu vert garniz d'or l'escripture Sauns departier pois de troie vi unc. iii quart dount abatuz pur le tissue ii unc. ii quart. pris lunce xx*s.* iiiii*l.* v*s.*

*l*. v Colers d'or fait del Estuf de Meaulx pois xv unc. i quart. pris l'unce xxi*s.* viii*d.* xvi*l.* x*s.* v*d.*

*l*. i Coler de soy noier garniz d'or pois vi unces dount abatez pur le corps demy unce pris lunce xxi*s.* viii*d.* xix*s.*

## different Colours.

*l*. i Coler de Noer garniz d'argent d'orre pois xi unc. demy dount abatuz pur le tissue ii unc. pris del unce xxi*d.* en tout xxiii*s.* vi*d.* ob.

*l*. i Coler d'esmaille blanc et vert pois de troie x unc. iii quart. demy pris lunce xxi*s.* xi*l.* viii*s.* iiiii*d.*

*l*. i Coler dor fait d'un wrethe esmaille de vert et blanc pois iii unces pris del unce xx*s.* lx*s.*

*l*. i grande Coler d'argent dorrez et enamez de blanc et rouge pois x unc. iii quart.

*l*. ii Cheynes d'or overez d'attornes blanc et vert pois ensemble 26 unc. pris lunce xx*s.* en tout 26*l.*

## Colours not mentioned.

*l*. i doseyn de Colers diverses fortes pois ensemble vii unc. pris l'unce ii*s.* vi*d.* xvii*s.* vi*d.*

*m* Serenissimo Potentissimo et excellentissi. Principi Carolo Dei Gratia Magnae Britanniae Franciae & Hiberniae Regi fidei Defensori, Has tabellas Aqua forti secundum antiqua Originalia Coloribus depicta æri insculptas Humillime dedicat consecratq; Wenceslaus Hollar Bohem. A. 1639.

Plantagenetorum Richardus Stripe secundus

Ortus hic est auro pulchrior ore nitens.

Huic adstant bini Reges, Edmundus ab unda

Danica cui extracto tela tulere necem.

Annulum Edwardus gestat Confessor, et alter

Baptista est  $\pi\rho\beta\alpha\sigma\tau\eta\varsigma$  (Christe Supreme) tuus:

Dicitur hos Princeps sibi delegisse patronos,

Devotè votis et coluisse magis.

Cur Regi è filiquis torques contexta genistæ

Cognomen Regis Plantagenista fuit.

Pendulus est albus Cervus, cui colla Catena

Perq; quiescentis terga reducta ligat,

Regia cum fuerat mater pulcherrima cervam

Albam insigne tulit filius unde marem.

Quod toga confertis aquilis (cervisq;) refulget,

Filia Wencellai Caesaris uxor erat.

Hæc Christum puerum cum virgine Matre tabella

Quem Rex suppliciter pronus adorat habet;

Ceu benedicturus digitos experrigit infans

Annuit an præcibus Rex quia sancte tuis. [core

Credo equidem, angelicus quid adest chorus ille de-

Vultu, carulea vesteq; conspicitur.

Virtutes bis sex morales credimus illas

Conspectu quarum pulchrius orbe nihil,

Signatæ cervis pueri famulantur Jesu

Querentis Christum Regis in obsequium

Erigit una crucem Periscelidis Ordinis Arma

Edwardus quem Rex instituisse avus.

Pingitur innumeris tellus et floribus herbis

Sub pedibus violas lilia cerne rosas:

Quippe ubi virtutes Christo præsentate morantur

Est ver perpetuum lætaq; cuncta vigent.

omitted



omitted to observe, that on the Reverse of the Original, there are the Arms of the Confessor as they are termed, empaling those of England, as also a White Hart couchant gorged, with a gold Coronet and Chain, which we find used as his Supporter in several Places in *Westminster-Hall*.

Here then we have the Devise of *Rich. II.* which I shall endeavour to explain, and shew that the same was given to the Earl of *Ostrevant* when he was invested with the Garter.

The Hart thus gorged was used by *Charles VI* King of France for his Devise, and likewise for the Supporters of his Arms, in or about the Year 1480, in Memory, as *Juvenal des Ursins* gravely relates, of the Hart taken at *Senlis*, with a Chain about his Neck, inscribed *Cæsar hoc mihi donavit*; and our Writers would not bear the Reproach of coming behind a People, whom they had beaten by their Valour, in any other Particular, and therefore ran into the same romantick Humour about an *Hart* taken at *Bagshot* near *Windsor*, and (as Legends encrease) with the Addition that *Julius Cæsar* gave the Collar, a convincing Argument of the Antiquity of the French Language. *Froissart* ascribes the flying Hart (as he names it) to a Dream of this King. Legends are best answered by Legends, and these here recited are as credible, as that which *Du Bellai* found in an old Chronicle, that a King of France after Dinner chased a Stag from *Compiègne* to *Loudun*, at the Distance of about 100 Leagues.

Certain it is, however, that *Richard the II* bore the White Hart for his Badge, and the Supporter of his Arms. And the Authority of this Picture will be amply confirmed by Records. He is said expressly to have first assumed it at the *Justs* held in *Smithfield*, on Sunday next after *Michaelmas* Day, the 14th Year of his Reign, and several Authors describe him at this Solemnity with this Devise or Badge.

Now this Earl of *Ostrevant* came to these very Justs, and within a few Days afterwards was installed a Companion of the Garter, and also received the King's Devise, and the Conjecture that it was this White Hart is farther strengthened, in that we find in this very Year *Henry*, then Earl of *Derby* Knight of this Order [afterward *Hen. IV.*] ordered the Sleeves

*n Hist. de Ch. vi. p. 10. A. D. 1380 fut trouve un cerf qui avoit au col une chaisne de cuivre dore, et defendit qu'on ne le prit que au las, sans le tuer, et ainsi fut fait: Et trouva on qu'il avoit au col la dite chaisne ou avoit escrit Cæsar hoc mihi donavit. Et deslors le Roy de son mouvement porta en devise le Cerf volant couronne d'or au col. et par tout ou on mettoit ses armes y avoit deux Cerfs tenans ses armes d'un coste et d'autre. A French Author gravely thinking this could not be Julius Cæsar abuses his Leisure by an Enquiry which of the Emperors of Germany was in France that might give this Collar to this Hart.*

*o Upton de re militari p. 159. with this Inscription*

Julius Cæsar quantjeo fut petis  
Cest coler suz mon col ad mys.

and thus the Family of Pompei in Italy use two Harts for their Supporters collard with the Letters N. M. T. in Memory of one taken, on whose Collar, as tis said, were these Words Nemo Me tangat, Cæsaris sum. Menestr. Ornem. des Arm. p. 118.

*p Vol. 2. p. 176.*

*q Prologue to his Ogdoades.*

*r Tiberius C. 9. in bibl. Cotton. Historia Rich. 2. per Monachum Evesham p. 25. b. 12 Octobris Rex tenuit suam magnam Curiam in Episcopatu London, et apud Smythfeld hastiludia grandia, ad quam Curiam venerunt extranei de Francia, de Selandia, de Alemannia, et de aliis partibus ducentes secum equos optimos, et arma pertinencia, ubi datum erat primo signum vel stigma illud egregium cum cervo albo cum corona et catena aurea. Et ad demonstrandam suam regiam excellentiam extraneis prædictis tenuit Rex festum S. Edwardi apud Kenyngton, solenniter sedens in regalibus tam ad missam coronatus, similiter et Regina: Cui solennitati Comes de Sancto Paulo cum uxore sua, quæ fuit soror Regis Angliæ, et Comes de Ostrevant, qui tunc effectus est miles de Carbur intererat.*

However this may be, We find that this King had Jewels a la guyse de Cerfs blancs which he mortgaged in his ninth Year. Rymer, vol. 7. p. 359.

*s Lelands Collectan. per Hearne, p. 482. vol. 2. White Harts with chains of Gold the Kings Lyvery at the Justs when the Earl of Ostrevant was here.*

*Ibidem p. 312.*

G g

of



of his Coat to be embroidered with 'Harts of the King's Livery, and his Father *John of Gaunt* in his Will " gives to his Daughter the Queen of Portugal *mon second meilleur Cerf d' or*, and the Dutcheſs of York whose Will was proved in January, 1392. devises to the King " *mon Cerf de Perle*. I would add hereto because it hath some Reference to the Order, that *Rich. II.* in his 22d Year had a ' Belt and Sheath of a Sword embroidered with White Harts, to be hung up under his Helmet at *Windsor*, whereas there were no such " Harts embroidered on that hung up in his 13th Year, which was probably before he took that Symbol.

But this White Hart was not appropriated to be an Emblem of our Order, because the same was given by this King, not only to his own Subjects, but to Foreigners, and even to " Ladies, who were not of this Order. And the Historians observe, that several Persons after his Abdication wore this Devise as <sup>b</sup> Proofs of their Adherence to his Interest, and we find that afterwards <sup>c</sup> *Ed. IV.* reassumed the Hart crowned and chained: And that the Duke of *Bretagne* in 1445, took <sup>d</sup> flying Harts for his Devise.

<sup>e</sup> Then as to the Broom-codds, for such they are, and not Peascods, (as Mr *Sandford* supposed, being misled probably by <sup>f</sup> Mr *Camden*,) which are engraven upon the Robe of his Effigies on his Monument; and by the Way this Tombe is of great Authority, because it was erected by <sup>g</sup> himself in his Life Time, which extricates some Doubts that have been made touching the Inscription on it.

<sup>t</sup> Comp. Willi. Loveney clerici magn. Garder. Dom. Hen. Lancastrie Com. Derb. 14 Rich. ii. pro brouder. duarum manicarum de velvet rub. et i par. plates ejusdem festæ cum cervis de liberatâ Regis. xl s. In altero comp. de anno 20 Rich. ii. pro furrura cervi auri pro Domino et pro positione des Baleys inter cornua ejusdem, et alterius Baleys in pectore ejusdem, &c.

<sup>u</sup> 3. Febr. 1397. in Registro Henr. Beaufort Episcopi Lincoln.

<sup>x</sup> Lib. Rous in Cur. Prærog. Cant.

<sup>y</sup> Comput. Joh. Macclesfield Custodis magnæ Garderobæ a festo Mich. anno 22 Rich. ii. penes Remem. Regis. Super broudatur. unius vaginæ et zonæ pro uno gladio Dom. Regis operat. Super velvet rub. cum Cervis Albis ad pendend. subtus Galeam Regis in capella de Wyndesore xxx s. vi d.

<sup>z</sup> Lib. Cotom. in Officio Garder. p. 156 b. ad broudatur. unius vaginæ et unius zonæ de velvet rub. cum literis de auro, de Cipr. et serico pro uno gladio contra festum S. Georgii, &c.

<sup>a</sup> Exit. Pell. Mich. 21 R. 2 pro viii cervis argenti de liberatâ Regis traditis et deliberatis viii Scutiferis de novo penes Dominum Regem retentis de Liberatâ prædicta &c.

Claus. 21 R. 2. Quod omnes et singuli Magnates, Milites, Armigeri et alii Generosi liberatam nostram de Cervo gerentes, &c. Rymer, vol. 8. p. 13.

Exit Pell. Mich. 22. R. 2. Hillario Militi fratri Imperatoris Constantinopolitani venienti usq; in Angliam Rex liberare mandavit de dono suo in pretio unius Cervi cum certis Margaritis ornati de liberatâ dicti Domini Regis 8 l.

We have a privy Seal of this King without the Date of the Year of his Reign, which grants to several foreign Ladies, Knights, and Esquires Liberty to wear his Livery of the Hart according to their several Degrees and according to the Custome in this Kingdome. Trescher et bien ame Savoir faisons, que à l'instance et Supplication de vous, Nous avons octroiez, et par ces presents ottoions à les Dames

Chivalers et Esquiers desouz nommez coungie de porter et user nostre Livere du Cerf, cheſcun selonc son Estat, par maniere et selonc ce, come y est usez deinz nostre Royaume d' Angleterre, Cest a sçavoir a Dame Blanche Zentelles, Dame Aldonza de Quezall, Dame Beatrix de Sentapan, Dame Castellana de Vilanova, Dame Maximenez Selia, Dame Danifara de Blaves, Dame Nabel Duzea, Dame Blanc Darte, Dame Yol de Valterra et Aldonza, Dame Johanna de Calbar, Agnes de Blaves, et a Dame Johanna de Casteln. A Gilebert Zentelles Baro de Zentelles, Baro Gilbert de Praxida, Baro Thomas de Praxida, Baro Rodrigo diez Martidorez, Ramo de Blaves, Guilem de Cartella, Johan Fabra, Loys de Casteln, Alfonso Suarez, Jamme Darte, Jamme Castella, et a Jamme Despignes Chivaler. A Johan. Gasto, Johan. Castell, Frances Castella, Vidal de Blaves, Johan. Munyoz, Pere Zelnella, Pere Codinats, Pere de Valterra, Bernart de Velarig et a Jofre de Velarig Esquiers. Donne souz nostre prive Seal a nostre Paloy de Westminster le seconde jour de Juy.

<sup>b</sup> Walsingham ad A. D. 1404. Comitissa Oxon—fecit fabricari cervos argenteos et auratos plurimos (signa videlicet quæ Rex Richardus conferre solebat suis militibus scutiferis et amicis) ut his vice Regis distributis facilius allicerentur in vota sua milites &c. and Henry Hotspur gave to his Souldiers the White Hart the Cognisance of Rich. 2. Leland Collect. p. 388.

<sup>c</sup> Lelands Collect. per Hearne p. 619. and Mr. Sandford in his Genealogical Hist. p. 404. takes notice of his several Badges which are depicted in the House of one of the Prebendaries of Westminster, among which is a White Hart attired accolled with a Coronet and chained or on a Mount Vert, and over it a Scrole, Ex Rege Ricardo.

<sup>d</sup> Lobineau preuves de Hist. de Bretagne, p. 1113.

<sup>e</sup> Geneal. Hist. p. 191.

<sup>f</sup> Remains, p. 215.

<sup>g</sup> Rymer, vol. 2. p. 795. 797.



*Hollar's* Verses intimate these Broomcodd's were taken in Allusion to the Sobriquet of *Plantagenet*, which he conceives was the Surname of our Kings, who in Truth like those of *France*, and other ancient Monarchs, had no peculiar Ones; and even *Rich.* the II. was before his Accession to the Throne, and after his Abdication, stiled of *Burdeaux* the Place of his Nativity, which was the most customary Method of denominating the Children of the Crown. I shall postpone the Proofs of this Matter, 'till I consider the Case of *Arthur Plantagenet* Knight of this Order.

It is certain that our Kings were very jealous of their Title to the Crown of *France*, and as *Edw.* III. took the Arms thereof in the first Quarter, being then semée of *Fleurs de lis*, so when the King of *France* reduced them to Three, the same Method was observed here. And it may be conjectured that *Rich.* II. might have practised the same, not only with Regard to the *White Hart*, which had been taken as the Badge of that Crown, but also with Reference to the Broomcodd's, which *Upton*, who was present at the Siege of *Orleans* in 1428, tells us was in his Time the <sup>b</sup> Devise or Signum of that Crown. Their ancient Authors say the same was anciently an Order called *Cosse de Geneste*, and <sup>i</sup> *Meneftrier* informs us that he had seen the Picture of *Charles VI.* and behind him his Herald, who had about his Neck the Collar of "du Genest de deux " Cordons, tortillez, l'un blanc & l'autre vert, d'où pendent deux Gouffes de " Genest, l'une blanche, et l'autre Vert." And which is very remarkable we find that this King in 1393, sent to <sup>k</sup> *Rich.* II, and to the Dukes of *Lancaster*, *Gloucester*, and *York* his Collar with the Broomcodd's in it, but as yet I do not suppose our King used this Collar in Memory of this Present, not only because he placed the Broomcodd's on the <sup>l</sup> Habits of the Queen, but because his Successors *Hen.* V, and *Hen.* VI. used the same <sup>m</sup> Badge on several Occasions; and I am induced to believe that the above-

<sup>b</sup> de militari Offic. p. 33. Rex autem *Francia* dat pro suo signo sive liberata unum collarium factum de filiis Genistæ de auro similiter vel argento, &c.

<sup>i</sup> Art du Blason. p. 97.

<sup>k</sup> Registre de la Chambre des Comptes à Paris de 19 Sept. 1393. a Jean Compere Orfevre pour quatre autres Colliers d'or, l'un partit au Collier du Roy, pour le Roy d'Angleterre, cest a sçavoir iceluy Colier fait en facon de deux gros tuyaux ronds, et entre iceux tuyaux *Cosse de Geneste* doubles entretenans par les queues, et autour d'icellui sur les cosses fait neuf potences, autour chacune de neuf grosses perles, et l'entre deux d'icelles potences autour du dit Collier a Cinquante lettres d'or pendant a l'un d'iceux tuyaux, qui font par dix fois le mot du Roy JAMES: et au devant d'icellui Collier, à un gros balay quatre, environne de huit gros perles, pareilles aux perles du Collier du Roy, et au derriere a deux cosses en forme de couffe de *geneste*, ouvertes emaillees, l'une de blanche l'autre de vert, et à dedans chacune d'icelles cosses trois grosses perles, et les dits tuyaux poinsonnez de branches fleurs et cosses de *Geneste*. Et les trois autres Colliers, l'un pour le Duc de *Lancastre*, l'autre pour le Duc de *Gloucester*, et l'autre pour le Duc d'*North* semblables a celui ci, à quelques perles un peu moins fortes. pource, pour tout 830.

Franks 3 S. 4 deniers. Hist. des Ordres Religieux vol. 8. p. 278.

<sup>l</sup> Conip, *Joh. Maclesfield* Custodis magnæ Garderob. anno 22 *Rich.* 2. pro broudatur. ii gown. long. cum manicis larg. una de panno sanguin. in grano, et altera di Blanket long. operat. in brouder. cum frondibus de *Rosemary* et *Geneste*: de auro de Cipro et serico pro dom. Reginâ contra festum Natalis Domini ad broudatur. ii gown.

<sup>m</sup> In the Account of the Jewels left by *Hen.* V. Coler d'or de *Bromecoddes* avec 1 Saph. et ii perles pris vi s. viii d. pois. xxxvii d. dount abatez v d. de pois, pris del unce xxiii s. iiiii d. en tout xliiii s. Item 1 Coler d'or de *Bromecoddes* pois de troie vii unces. pris l'unce xxiii s. iiiii d. viii l. xv s. Par. 1 H. 6. p. 5. m. 4. et Rot. Parl. 2 H. 6. n. 30.

As to *Hen.* VI. We find a Gold Collar of S. and Broomcodd's made for him. The Warrant hath several Curiousities, and therefore is inserted at Length.

*Henri* 8<sup>e</sup>. as Treas. &c. Pource que nostre ame servante *Johan. Merston* ad delivrez &c. parcelles dessouz escriptes &c. cestassavoir pour dys Colers d'argent enorrez de nostre livere achate de diverses gentz de nostre Citée de Londres pour chacun coler douze souldz, et pour vyngt & sys colers d'argent pour chacun coler sys souldz & oyt deniers; lesqueux Colers feurent donez en nostre presence par



abovementioned Collars of *Hen. V.* enamelled White and Green, were of this Livery of the Broomcodd, which might be probably taken by our Kings in their own Rights as Kings of *France*. We find that the Queen of *Hen. IV.* gave to her Son the Duke of *Bretagne* for New Years Gift, 1410. *un<sup>n</sup> fromaillet en faczon de Couronne à gosses de Genest.*

Having mentioned this Present of the Broom-Collar, by this King of *France* to our King *Rich. II.* I crave Leave for the Affinity of the Matter, to observe that it was an usual Complement before that Time, for Princes to present each other also their Liveries yearly, and which was practised even as low as the Reign of *Hen. VIII.* which Liveries had no Relation at all to any military Orders.

I come now to the Form of the Collar given by *Hen. V.* to the Emperor *Sigismond* at the same Time when he was created Knight of the *Garter*. The wearing the *White Hart* being the Proof of an Adherence to *Rich. II.* after his Abdication, seems to intimate, that his Successor *Hen. IV.* had a Devise of a different Form, otherwise the Continuance of the same Emblem would have made no Discrimination. That his Livery was a Collar, is plain in that *Sir Walter Hungerford* is called "*Miles noster de liberatâ nostrâ vocata Colere, quâ utebatur pretes viginti li-*

par nostre treschr. Uncle de *Gloucestre* a nostre manoir de *Eltham* le 24 jour de *Novembre* dairain passez as diverses Chlrs. et Esquiers de nostre tresame Cousin le Duc de *Quimbre*, et aussi qu'il ad payez a deux *Poursevaniz* de mesme le Duc a lour departir de nostre don, &c. sessante & dys souldz & oyt deniers. Et a *Robert Yarondale* Escuier nous presentant a nostre manoir de *Eltham* oves que les *Estraines* a nous donnees par nostre treshonoree Dame & Miere le premier jour de l'an par commandement du Seneschal de nostre houstel & de nostre bien ame la Dame de *Bouiller* 40 souldz, et a *Estephen Natfeld* Esquier nous presen ant ovesq; les *Estraines* a nous donnees par nostre tresame Uncle le Duc de *Bedesford* le premier jour de l'an par Commandemt. des Seneschal & Dame 66 souldz & oyt deniers, Et a *Johan. Stanley*, Esquier nous presentant ovesq; les *Estraines* a nous donnees le dit premier jour de l'an par nostre treschr. Uncle le Duc de *Gloucestre* par Commandemt. des ditz Seneschal & Dame 40 souldz, Et a les *herauldes* pour leur regard le dit prim. jour de l'an par commandemt. de les ditz Seneschal & Dame Cent souldz, Et a noz *ministrals* pour leur regard a icel feste paie mesme le jour 66 Soulds & oyt deniers Et a *Jakke Travail* & ses Compaignons gentz de *Londres*, qui furent en nostre houstell par tout la feste de *Noel* pour faire et jouer divers *entreludes* devant nous a nostre manoir de *Eltham* 4 livres, Et a quatre *Enfantz* faisans autres *Entreludes* apres la dite feste de *Noel* par Commandemt. de nostre Cousin d' *Excestre* 13 s. 4 d. Et a trois gentz de la tres noble Princeesse la Royne *Johane* ames nautz ovesque eulx une chaar ovesq; les chivalx pour carier les gentiles femes de nostre houstell de nostre Chastell de *Wyndesore* jusques a nostre ville de *Leicestre* 26 s. & 8 d. Et pour diverses noz offrandes entre les festes de *Noel* & de *Pasq;* per deux fois en nostre Chapelle de *Saint George* a *Wyndesore* 13 s. 4 d. Et le jour de *Chandeleur* 33 s. 4 d. Et pour une cheyne d'or a la quelle pendoit une peice d'unycorne et une piece de serpentine pour mettre en nostre bouire 19 s. 6 d. Et a deux hommes de l'abbe de *Chertefeye* ames nantz sept. chivalx de la duce abbaie pour carier les dites gentiles femmes de nostre houstel de nostre manoir de *Eltham* jusque a *Wyndesore* 13 s. 4 d. Et pour nostre Mande faire le

jour de la Cene de nostre Snr. paie et donne a treinte & trois poure hommes par Commandemt. de vous nostre dit Tresorier, assavoir a chacun de eux 2 s. et 9 d. Et pour nostre offrande le jour de *Lascencion* par Commandemt. de vous nostre dit Tresorier 6 s. 8 d. Et que a *Johan. Palyng* Orfevre de *Londres* font dues pour un Coler d'or fait de S. & *Bromecoddes* pour nous mesmes, poissant deux unces et demy & trois deniers d'or, price lunce de 26 s. 3 d. sessante & noef soulds quatre deniers maill et ferlyng, et pour loverage dicel 30 s. &c. don sous nostre prive Seal a *Westm.* le xxvi jour de Juill. lan de nostre regne quart. [4 H. 6.]

Comput. *Rob. Rolleston* custod. magn. Garderob. a vigilia S. *Mich.* anno 17 H. 6. — pro opere et brouderatur. vii gown. pann. violet in grano per ambas manicas cum flor. de opere damasc. et *Ramis de Brome*, et Dieu et moun droyt operat. cum serico et argent. cibr. &c.

V Henxmen ad v gown. fact de panno ruffet jagg. cum lirip. et rotul. de pann. nigr. Stuff. cum flokks—embroud. in qualibet manica cum ii flor. de opere damascen. et cum *Ramis de Brome*, et Dieu et mon droyt, &c.

Of the 11 of Hen. 6. see *Ashm. Hist.* p. 575.

Comp. Garder. 19 H. 6. x henx. pro x gown. fait de pann. vindi embroud. per ambas manicas et scapul. cum longis ramis de *Brome* tort. et simul nodul. in diversis locis et isto dictamine dieu et mon droyt, &c. contra festum S. *Georgii*.

n Lobineau preuves de Hist. de *Bretagne*, p. 921.

o Exit. Pell. M. 36. E. 3. cuidam valetto Regis *Francie* portanti per annum Domino Regi pro una Roba de liberata Regis *Francie* ante festum Natalis Domini prox. futur. 6. 13 4.

Exit. Pell. M. 40. E. 3. cuidam valetto Regis *Francie* portanti Domino Regi *Anglie* Liberatam ipsius Regis *Francie* contra festum Natalis Domini proxime prateritum de dono Regis 66 s. 8 d.

In the View of the standing Wardrobe made 12 H. 8. in Custody of Sir Robert Worley Bart. it appears that King sent Robes yearly to the Emperor and to the King of France, and received the like from them, which by the Description of them therein contained did not relate to any knightly Orders.

p Rymer, vol. 8. p. 165.

“ brarum,



“*brarum*, &c.” And no Inconsistency appears in supposing he might after his Accession to the Throne, continue the Collar in the same Form which he had used for his own Badge while he had been Duke of *Lancaster*; of which Title he was very <sup>9</sup> fond, and this seems to have been made of the Letters *S. S.* which was doubtless continued by his Son and Grandson, as their principal and chief Emblem, and the Collar given to this Emperor may be thought to have been of this Fashion, because the like still remains on the Effigies of some <sup>r</sup> Knights of the Garter who dyed under the Reign of the *Lancastrian* Line.

In a Manuscript Historical-Poem of the famous <sup>s</sup> *John Gower*, about the Life of *Rich. II.* the Nobility are there described under the eleventh Year of his Reign, by the Names of their Badges only, as the Duke of *Gloucester* by the *Swan*, the Earl of *Arundel* by the *Horse*, the Earl of *Warwick* by the *Bear*, the Earl Marshal by the *Ostrich-feather crowned*, the Earl of *Northumberland* by the *Crescent*, the Earl of *Oxford* by the *Boar*, and then follows this hobling Verse,

*Qui gerit S. tandem turmam comitatur eandem.*

which he himself in the Margin explains to denote *Henry* then Earl of *Derby*, afterwards *Hen. IV.*

Hence it appears that he bore the Cognisance of *S*, and we have a Record to ascertain it; for in 15 *Rich. II.* a Payment is made for a <sup>t</sup> gold Collar made for him with seventeen Letters of *S*, and another <sup>u</sup> made with *Esses* and the Flowers of *Soveigne vous de moy*. It might be esteemed a very precarious Conjecture to guess, That the Repetition of the Letter *S*, took its Rise from the initial Letter of this Motto or Sentence, though possibly 'tis on as good a Foundation as the common Derivation of it from <sup>x</sup> *Sanctus Simplicius*, a canonized Lawyer, scarce to be found in our Kalendars. We find indeed that *Rich. II.* himself had a Gown made in his fourteenth Year, whereon this <sup>y</sup> Motto was embroidered, to be used at the famous Tilt in *Smithfield*.

But this Earl of *Derby* not only wore himself this Collar of *S S*, but gave the same Livery to his <sup>z</sup> Esquires, and no doubt the same was the Badge of his Domesticks and Reteiners; and it will be needless here to

<sup>q</sup> For which Purpose he got an Act of Parliament to prevent the merging of that Dutchy in the Crown. See Camden. Britan. He also ordered that the Sword which he wore at his coming to Holderness should be born on solemn Occasions, and ever to be called *Lancaster Sword*. Rymer, vol. 8. p. 95. He likewise instituted a King of Arms by this Title, &c. and in his Affiancing the Queen Relict of the D. of Bretagne, he styles himself Henry of Lancaster, Lobineau en preuves de l'Hist. de Bretagne, p. 876.

<sup>r</sup> See Sandford's Geneal. Hist. p. 310. Of the Duke of Clarence, and of John Beaufort Earl of Somerset. and p. 328. of another Earl of Somerset, &c.

<sup>s</sup> Tiberius A. 4. in Bibl. Cotton. p. 153. Sunt Olor, Ursus, Equus, stat eorum quilibet eques, &c. Penna coronata tribus hiis fuit associata, Qui gerit S. tandem turmam comitatur eandem, &c. Hac sub fortuna præfens Aquilonica luna, &c. Querit Aper latebras fraudes mortisq; tenebras, &c.

<sup>t</sup> Comp. Willm. Loveney Clerici Magnæ Garderobæ Domini Henrici Lancastria Comitis, &c. anno 15 Rich. II. pro i coler auri facti pro Domino cum xvii literis de S. ad modum plum. cum rotulis & Scriptur. in eisdem cum Sign. in tore. ejusd.

<sup>u</sup> Comput. Garderobæ Henr. de Lancastria Com. Derb. 20 R. II. pro pondere unius Colerii facti cum Esses de Floribus de Soveigne vous de moy penden & amail' ponderis viii unc. In Officio Ducatus Lancastria.

<sup>x</sup> Ashm. Hist. p. 224.

<sup>y</sup> Lib. Cotom. in Garderob. p. 157.

<sup>z</sup> Comput. Magnæ Garderobæ Henrici Lancastria Com. Derb. 20 R. II. pro ponder. argenti unius Colerii facti cum Esses rollati & dati Roberto de Waterton eo quod Dominus dederat colerium ipsius Roberti alio Armigero ponder. v. unc. xviii d. ob. prec. ii s. v d. xiiii s. iii ob. In dicto Officio.



prove, that it was the Practice of the Nobility heretofore to give their Cognizances for such Purposes: I will therefore only observe, that I take the Swan which now hangs at the End of the Collar on the Effigies of our Author *John Gower*, in *St. Mary Overies Church*, to imply his Service to the Duke of *Glocester*, whom <sup>a</sup>he takes all Occasions to extol; and that several Knights of the *Garter* have had Officers of Arms by the Titles of their Devises, as the <sup>b</sup>Lord *Dudley* had *Leon d'Or*; the Duke of *Clarence*, *Noir Tawren*; the Duke of *Gloucester*, *Blanch Sanglier*; the Earl of *Dorset*, *Cadran*; the Duke of *Norfolk*, *Blanch Lyon*; and Sir *Charles Brandon* Duke of *Suffolk*, *Merlion de Aye*, &c.

*John* of *Gaunt*, the Father of this Earl of *Derby*, placed on a Saltfeller the *Garter*, with a <sup>c</sup>Collar worked about it; but I must confess I have not been able as yet to ascertain the Make and Fashion thereof; neither have I any positive Proof from any Record that *Hen. V.* used the Collar of *S. S.* The Covering of Silver upon his Effigies on his Tomb, and the Regalia of Silver which were there repositied, being long since sacrilegiously stol'n; but because *Hen. VI.* used the same Collar as his Grandfather, 'tis not incongruous to believe the same was transmitted down to him by his Father. Now *Upton* is very expresse that this was the Form of his <sup>d</sup>Badge; and we find a "*Coller of golde of Effes of this Kings*" "*livery was yeven to my Lord of Gloucestre for his xerisyist*" [New-Years Gift], who was at that time Knight of this Order, and I cannot conceive this was given him never to be worn, and that it ought not to be esteemed parallel to a Legacy made by a Nobleman of the Habits of his Degree to his Servant, which the Civil Law hath interpreted to be *Non ad ornandum, sed ad ditandum*.

Here I cannot omit to observe, that we find in the Account of the Keeper of the Jewels of the Duke of *Bretagne* from 1414 to 1424, a Collar of twenty-six *S. S.* of the Order (that is Livery) of the King of *England* enamelled, with the Words *A MA VIE*, which is the Motto of the Order (as 'tis called) of the *Ermine* in that Dutchy.

It may be objected against these Suppositions, that the Collar of *S. S.* was about the Neck of the Effigies of Sir *Simon de Burly*, Knight of the *Garter*, beheaded in the Time of *Richard II.* The same appears very faintly in the Type of it in *Dugdale*, which can only extend to prove, that this might be the Figure of the Collar till that Year when his Attainder happened, which too must have been altered by the same Prince into another

<sup>a</sup> Mr. Selden in his Titles of Honour, p. 692, hath corrected the Mistake of those who supposed, from the Collar that he was a Knight. His Praises of the Duke of Gloucester, under the Badge of the Swan, run thro' his Works. He ends his first Book in Tiberius A. 4. In Christi signo sit semper Gloria Cigno, &c. And we find that this Duke gave to the Abbey of St. Albans, monile aureum circulare in cujus medio Cignus albus alis quasi ad volandum expansis. Nero D. 7. in Bibl. Cotton.

<sup>b</sup> Leon d'Or mentioned in a Privy Seal, 24 H. VI. Noir Tawren in W. C. in Off. Arm. p. 16. Blanch Sanglier, ibid. compared with M. 14. Cadran, Priv. Sigill. 25 Nov. 19 H. VI. Blanch Lyon, M. 6. in Off. Arm. p. 6. Pat. 29 H. VIII. p. 2. m. 40. Merlion de Aye in MS. Job. Hare nuper Richmond.

<sup>c</sup> Testam. Job. Ducis Lancast. in Registro Hen. Beaufort Episc. Lincoln. — a ma tresfredoute Neveu le Roy mon Saler d'Or ovecque le Garvir, & le Coler overez entour le Saler.

<sup>d</sup> De Milit. Offic. p. 33. In Anglia autem quando Dominus Rex aliquem nobilitat solet unacum feodo, ut prædictum est, liberatam suam nobilitato condonare. Quæ liberata est unum collarium cum literis S. de auro vel argento fabricatum, &c.

<sup>e</sup> Rot. Strenarum, 18 H. VI.

<sup>f</sup> Lobineau Preuves de l'Hist. de Bretagne, p. 921. Un Collier a S. S. de l'Ordre du Roy d'Angleterre & y a xxvi S. S. qui sont esmaillees du Mot *A Ma Vie*, & ii bars es deux bouts, garny d'un balay & poile i m. 10. xvii. c. ob.

<sup>g</sup> In the History of St. Paul's Cathedral.

Form :



Form: But then it is to be enquired at what Time this Monument for Sir *Simon* was originally erected, for it might be after the Reversal of his Attainder under another <sup>b</sup> Reign, when the Crown might have assumed a Collar in another Shape: Though if it was erected soon after his Death, why might not *Burly* be represented even in the Reign of *Rich. II* with the Badge of this Earl of *Derby*, who had used his utmost <sup>i</sup> Interest to save his Life?

And 'tis some Sort of Presumption that the Collar of the Emperor might be of the Letters *S. S.*, in that such Collars are represented on the Monuments of several Knights of the *Garter* who died in the <sup>k</sup> Reigns of *Hen. V.* and *Hen. VI.* though these Collars might not be any Part of the Ensigns of the Order, or any Ways appropriate to it, but wholly distinct and separate; for the like Collars of *S. S.* are found on the Effigies of several Persons who died during these Reigns, that were not Companions of the *Garter*, which may be seen in several Churches.

And here I would remark, that I am informed, the Pourtraiture of Sir *Robert Harcourt*, Knight of this Order, under the Reign of *Ed. IV.* remains in the Church of *Stanton-Harcourt*, exhibiting him with a Collar of Roses, to which a white Lyon is appendant, with his Tail passed between his hinder Legs and turned over his Back; The white Rose was the Badge of the House of *York*, taken from the Castle of (1) *Clifford*, or from the Family of (2) *Mortimer*, wherewith the (3) Seals of the Dukes of *York* are embellished, and *Ed. IV.* calls it his (4) Devise, who is said to have erected a Pursivant by the Title of (5) *Blanch Rose*, that attended at his (6) Funeral; and the white Lion was the Badge doubtless of the Earldom of <sup>l</sup> *Marche* born by *Ed. IV.* (to whom this noble Knight inviolably adhered to the Loss of his own Life;) whence we find this King had likewise a (7) Pursivant stiled *Blanch Lion*: So that it may be guessed, the Image of *St. George* was not at that Time an Emblem of this Order, worn by the Companions at their Breasts, and that *Ed. IV.* did give a Collar distinct from the Kings of the *Lancastrian* Race.

But to confirm this Hypothesis of the Collar's being no Ornament essential to this Order in former Ages, I must beg Pardon now to quote a Book fraught with such dull Conceits and far-fetch'd Mysteries and Extravagancies, as <sup>m</sup> *Dr. Heylin* professes he never met with such a Piece of Stuff. But notwithstanding this Abatement to its Character, which relates to the allegorical mystical Explanations of the Meaning of the Habits of this Order; yet this Treatise being wrote under <sup>n</sup> the Reign of *Hen. VI.* and by a Stranger, a Monk of *Clumy*, who came hither with Credentials and a Deputation to that King, and since Foreigners have been always more curious than Natives in describing the Particularities of Habits, it may be allowable for that Reason, and more especially because the learned Abbot of *St. Alban's*, *John Wbethamstead*, (to whom it was sent, and to whose Corrections it was submitted, and who must be

<sup>b</sup> Parl. 2 *H. IV.* Art. 19.

<sup>i</sup> *Walsingham* ad A. D. 1388, p. 365.

<sup>k</sup> See Sandf. Gen. History, p. 310. *Tomb of the Duke of Clarence* p. 327. *of the Duke of Somerset*, &c.

(1) Domitian in bibl. Cott. A. 9. n. 20.

(2) *Mf. Ashm.* in Mus. n. 1121. p. 236.

(3) Sandf. Gen. Hist. p. 382, 386, 403.

(4) Pat. 1 E. 4. p. 2. m. 6. Quod *Franciscus* de Copinis Interamnenfis, Papæ legatus, & Nepotes ejus in superiori parte Armorum insignium suorum possint deferre unam Rosam albam videlicet Devisam Regis.

(5) Cerem. vol. 3. in Off. Arm. p. 16. *Mf. Ant.* a Wood in Mus. Ashm. n. 33. p. 22.

(6) *Recueil de Richmond Clarenc.* *Mf. Norf.* in

Coll. Arm.

<sup>l</sup> Domit. A. 9. Bibl. Cotton n. 20. Sandf. Gen. Hist. p. 303, &c.

(7) *Collect. mag. Rymer* 21 E. 4.

<sup>m</sup> *History of St. George*, p. 349.

<sup>n</sup> *Acta Joannis Wbethamstede Abbatis Sancti Albani* in Offic. Armorum. Litera Mundi Beuvalet Theologorum minimi ad dictum Abbatem. Transmittito vobis unum brevem tractatulum, quem hic edidi, non pro Clericis, sed pro Ordine serenissimi Dom. Regis, & suorum Nobilium, ideo in illo nullam infero scientiam, quia nec unum librum possideo; corrigatis si placet ignorantiam meam. Vide *Reineri Apostol.* *Benedictin.* in Appendice, n. lxxiii. sub A. D. 1457.



well acquainted with the Emblems and Ornaments of this Order) returned him<sup>o</sup> Thanks for it, without finding any Fault with his Description of the Badges of the Order: Upon these Commendations of his Station, and these other Circumstances, and his own Experience in the World by Reason of his advanced<sup>p</sup> Age and the Knowledge he professes of other Orders, I may without any Offence or Discredit observe, that this Author *Mondonus Belvaleti* in his *Catechismus Equitum Ordinis Periscelidis* mentions nothing of any Collar appropriate to the Order; and however trifling this Treatise is in the fanciful visionary Allegories, yet being a very uncommon scarce Book, I have taken the Pains of giving <sup>q</sup> Extracts of the most material Passages

<sup>o</sup> He returns him Thanks pro munere cujusdam tractatuli de ordine militiae hujus regni, &c. qui instruit ad mores & dat doctrinationem; Tractatulus quippe plenus est pinguedine moralis scientiae, moraliterq; unumquemq; instruit, qui in ipso vel legere vel studere velit.

<sup>p</sup> P. 22. Quia cum septuaginta sex annis jam pergrassem, &c. missus perlustrassem Angliam. P. 6. Cum sim senex & ferme octogenarius, humilisque ex Cluniaco Monachus, &c. P. 75. Nam citra adulationem & cum pace loquendo, cum noverim quinq; Regum Ordines, & plurimum Dominorum illustrium Ducum, nullum Ordinem scio. tot in suo significato continentem secreta, differential & mysteria, ut hic Ordo (*Periscelidis*.)

<sup>q</sup> The Title Page of the Book is,

Catechismus Ordinis Equitum Periscelidis Anglicanae, seu Speculum Anglorum, Autore R. Dom. F. Mondono Belvaleti S. Theologiae Professore, Ordinis sui Cluniacensis Archidiacono, Pœnitentiario Apostolico, & quondam ad Anglos Oratore, nunc primum ex Membranulis vetustissimis, plane regie scriptis, pictisque erutum, castigatum, & editum studio Fr. Philippi Bosquieri Caesarimontani Ord. Minorum Reg. Obs. Prov. Flandriae ad Serenissimum Anglia Regem, &c.

Eccl. 39.

Sapientiam omnium antiquorum exquiret Sapiens.

Coloniae Agrippinae  
Apud Henricum Crithium  
Anno MDCXXXI.

P. 2. **A**ppulissimam ad illam opulentam famosamque Civitatem Londoniensem.

P. 3. Vidi viros strenuos & gloriosos, primos Aulae Regiae, Torques aureas (vel quasi) gestantes non certe in dextera, sed sinistra, mox percunctatus hinc inde, quid sibi illud vellet?

P. 7. Et sunt plerique nonnulli autumantes, hunc Ordinem Exordium sumpsisse a sexu muliebri —

P. 13. § Quid color significat, in quo fundatur dictus ordo?

— Nam hic Color lividus est & caelestinus —

P. 17. § Quid ordinis figura præstendit?

— quia Sphærica est — inserto puncto jungitur & stringitur.

P. 22. § Quid ligatura cum Pluscula significat?

P. 23. — hæc ligatura — quandoq; est ferrea, aliquando argentea & interdum aurea fuit inventa. Sed quia hæc pretiosior a paucis incolitur.

P. 29. Quid Ligula in Pluscula?

— ligatura hujus ordinis sit fortis, & magna lataq; regatur Pluscula —

Est enim Pluscula, sine Boucla sine lingula —

Pluscula est rotunda, vel quasi quæ barrata [clathrata] in medio duos oculos aperit —

P. 30. Lingula in ejus Barra situatur.

P. 32. Pluscula transversali Barra vel repagulo armata.

P. 33. § Quid Nodus post Plusculam?

P. 36. Quod post ligaturam & non ante vinculum seu nodussequitur.

P. 38. § Quid Pendulus ex nodo defluens?

P. 39. — ipsum Pendulum stringitur, sed post libertati conceditur. Quid autem arctatio ipsius Pen-

duli inter duas corrigias, &c.

P. 42. Quid sonat Redda in ipso ordine?

— cui nomen Redda (alias le Mordent Gallice) & cui catena jugiter inheret. — Redda dicitur a redeundo, eo quod plerumq; egreditur & ingreditur per Plusculam. P. 45.

P. 47. § Quare Ordo non solum in Tibia, sed alibi deferatur?

Et licet Ordo, de quo agitur determinatum locum habeat, in quo deferatur quoad Primates: nihilominus parum refert ut in aliis locis supra humanum corpus transportetur; quia modo unus supra brachium, alius per totam vestem; & ita licet cuiq; portare ubi placet — Ordo est locum proprium habeat, viz. tibiam sinistram sæpius (ut dictum est) eundem variat locum.

P. 50. Et licet principaliter in Prætorio, id est in tibia sinistra, nihilominus in omni loco, id est, in omni parte corporis (ut dictum est) deferri potest hic ordo.

P. 51. § Quid clavus qui lingula penetratur?

In hoc ordine notatur unus Clavus cujus medietas later, reliquaque pater.

P. 52. Clavelli medietas videtur tantum —

P. 55. § Quid tres Clavi in Ordine?

— ad laxandum & arctandum tres clavi seu Barrae situantur.

P. 60. § Quid Brodatura [Limbus] in ordine?

P. 61. Brodatura, quæ tam pulchra & delectabilis est — quod enim constat ex multis honestis & delectabilibus variis, & suis locis congrue sitis —

In hoc ordine, licet quædam essentialia (ut puta Pluscula, Lingula sive LEDARDAILLON, duo Clavi, duplex lamina; necnon & corrigia, in qua talis ordo sistitur: tres Barrae; Catena; Nodus, duo Clavelli; nihilominus plura sunt ceremonialia —

P. 64. § Quid Lamina cum duobus clavellis?

— Lamina aurea duplicata in qua Boucla vel Pluscula firmatur, & quæ Lamina duobus clavellis penetratur optime riblatis — Lamina duplicata, quæ retinet Bouclam sive Plusculam. Hæc Lamina plana & aurea, & fenestralis decorata.

P. 65. Hujus Laminæ duplex est officium, nam illius est stringere corrigiam, & gubernare Plusculam sive Bouclam. — duo Clavi Laminam penetrantes, ut Plusculam sive Bouclam virtuosè regant.

P. 68. Et quædam Repagula — quæ mediat Plusculam, cujus extremitates penetrando totum regit ordinem, circa cuius essentiam jogiter Ligula ledendo volvitur, quæ licet non videtur, omnium efficaciarum doctrix, altrix & origo.

Ibid. § Quid colores in ordine?

— Et enim ibi color Albus, Niger, Viridis, Lividus, Rubens & Aureus.

P. 72. § Quid Catenula cum Pendulo?

P. 73. Illa Catenula quæ ex Pendulo defluit — Etenim quemadmodum illa Catenula ex plurimis textitur annulis aureis minimis & quasi innumeris —

P. 74. Nam si quod nependet a catena sit

Lapis pretiosus, sive  
Sol illuminans, sive  
Luna radians, sive  
Cor aureum, sive

Stella



Passages therein, which describe the Fabrick of the *Garter*, and on that Account it would be a very valuable Curiosity if the Original, which the Title Page saith was Royally depicted, could be now retrieved.

After so long and problematical a Discourse upon Collars, wherein I must have tired your Lordship's Patience, I crave Leave now to descend to the present One composed of *GARTERS* with the Image of *St. GEORGE* appendant thereto, which is first mentioned in the Statutes of *Hen. VIII.*, and made peculiar to the Order. The Form is described by Mr. *Asb-mole*, who hath produced some Proofs that the <sup>r</sup> Same was used before the Reign of *Hen. VIII.*, to which I shall add an indisputable One as to the Collar, from the Will of <sup>j</sup> *John de Veer* Earl of *Oxford*, dated 10 April, in the last Year of *Hen. VII.*, wherein he devises "his <sup>i</sup> *Chaine with the* " *Whistell having sixscore and one links weighing <sup>xx</sup> <sup>iii</sup> <sup>xviii</sup> ounces to be sold,* " *and to his Cousin John Veer his Coler of Garters and rede Roses of Gold.*" But when this Collar first became thus appropriated to this Order will not be probably discovered till the old Entries of the Jewel-Office shall be recovered; though from the Narrative inserted "above of our Embassadors to the Emperor *Maximilian*, it may be conjectured, this Collar was instituted in the Interval between the sixth and eighteenth Years of *Hen. VII.*

If that should prove to be the Fact, we must be on our Guard in reading some of our Historians. The learned <sup>x</sup> *Dr. Heylin* seems to be under an Apprehension, that the Image of *St. George* was one of the original Ensigns upon the Institution, and some of our <sup>y</sup> Annalists acquaint us that the Duke of *Bedford*, Regent of *France* under *Hen. VI.*, took from the celebrated Sir *John Fastolf* the *George* as well as the *Garter*, which Point shall be considered in the Narrative of his Life.

But though the Knights of the *Garter* might not antiently wear the Image of *St. George* pendant at a Collar, I would not be misunderstood to intend there were not such Usages beyond Sea, in preceeding Times, for 'tis plain that <sup>z</sup> *Hierax* gave to the Emperor *Cantacuzene* the Figure or Impress of *St. George*, which hung at his Breast as the Pledge of his Loy-

Stella matutina, seu  
Rosa vespertina,  
— Si vero sit Stella splendida,  
Si — rosa  
— Si Sol rutilans,  
— Si Luna  
— Si gerit speciem cordis aurei.

P. 75. — Sed non est subticendum — quod catena extra & non intra tibiam defertur.

P. 76. § Cur magis defertur in sinistra quam in dextera?

Et si quis vellet se expedire dicendo quod ita placuit primo condenti seu Inventori, ratio transiret.

P. 77. Quando quis Miles efficitur, primo armatur calcari dextero tanquam digniori, deinde sinistro vel accessorio.

P. 80. § Quid sonat Diſtamen in ordine?

<sup>r</sup> *Hist.* p. 221, 222.

<sup>j</sup> *Fettyplace* in *Curia Prærog.* qu. xi.

<sup>i</sup> This Earl was then Admiral, whereof the Whistle was the Badge or Emblem.

Thus Sir Edward Howard by his Will made in 1512 devises to " Sir Charles Brandon, the Roope of bowed

" Nobles that He wore his greate Whistle by, and to the Kings Grace his greate Whistle. Liber *Fettyplace* in *Cur. Prærog.* qu. 18.

In the 10th of *Hen. VIII.* the Earl of *Surry* High Admiral — on a great Courſier richely trapped and a great Whistle of gold set with stones and perle hanging at a great and massy chayne baudrick-wiſe. *Hall's Chron.* p. 654. And the same Ensign was used by the Admiral of *France*.

*Thevet* es vies des hommes illustres l. 5. p. 384. l'Admiral de *France* à pour armoiries l'ancre, & le sifflet, pour monſtrer que tous ceux, qui ſont ſur la mer, luy ſont ſubjects, & doivent au ſimple ſifflet de ce General de la Marine, ſe ranger vers luy, tout ne plus, ne moins, que en une navire le ſifflet du Capitaine, retient guide & pouſſe la vogue de la chiorne. And that our Captains of Ships wore Whistles appears from the Proviſion in the Statute of Apparel, 24 H. VIII. c. 13.

<sup>u</sup> Vide ſupra p. 85. Note l.

<sup>x</sup> *Hist.* p. 323. and in other Places.

<sup>y</sup> *Hall* in *Hen.* 6. j. 26 b. *Hollingſh.* p. 601. n. 5c.

<sup>z</sup> *Cantacuzene Hist.* l. 3. c. 9.



alty, which <sup>a</sup> *Papebroch* remarks hung at a Collar in the Manner that the Knights of the *Garter* wear it; and I am not ignorant that the same was likewise used by the Brotherhood of *St. George* in *Franche Comté*: But I do not find that Instance of Respect shewn him by our antient Companions of this Order, though they always esteemed him with a particular Devotion the Tutelar Saint, Advocate, and Patron, not only of the Order, but of the whole Nation.

It is as certain that there were also several Jewels stiled <sup>b</sup> *Nouches de St. George*, *Tabuleæ auri de Sancto Georgio*, enriched with precious Stones; but these might be in all probability Images of *St. George* designed to be placed on Shrines according to the Devotion of that Age, and one of them was deposited at *Windsor*, another was of great Value <sup>c</sup> being bought for two thousand Marks in 23 *Hen. VI*, a large Sum in that Age.

There is an obscure Passage in the <sup>d</sup> *Black-Book*, importing that *Ed. IV.* ordered the Knights to wear the Image of the *Virgin Mary* on their right Shoulders at the Feasts dedicated to her Memory, wherein there is a Reference made to the Custom of the Feast of *St. George* in such dark Terms, as I do not understand whether the Intention of the Writer was to intimate that the Image of *St. George* was worn on the other Shoulder; but if he meant the Scutcheon of *St. George*, that Fact is evidently true.

Nothing now remains untouched but the Consideration of the Habits which are said to be necessary to the constituting Orders, but here I shall only consider such as Ladies formerly received, leaving those of the Knights to a particular Chapter, which must contain not only all the Robes and Ornaments, their several Variations, the Ensigns hung up in the Chappel during their Life-times, and after their Deaths, of what Antiquity the Plates are that now remain, the Antiquity of the Method of surrounding Arms with the *Garter*, &c. And notwithstanding this immethodical Letter is insensibly swelled to an extraordinary Length, it would be an unpardonable Crime in an Herald to conclude it without performing the Promise I made above to your Lordship in relation to the Ladies.

I do not think my self obliged to verify the Story of the slipping the *Garter* of the *Queen*, or of the Countess of *Salisbury*, which hath been thought a Romance feigned by <sup>e</sup> *Polydor Virgil*: However that may be, I must do the Justice to the Ladies to aver, that a Tradition obtained as far back as in the Reign of *Hen. VI*, that this Order received its Original from the <sup>f</sup> Fair Sex, the particular Occasion is not expressed in my Author, which must therefore be left in the Dark: <sup>g</sup> *Dr. Heylin* observes,

<sup>a</sup> Utiq; eo modo, quo eam [imaginem S. Georgij] gestare solent e collo Equites Garteriani. *Papebroch. Acta Sanctorum in S. Georgio*, c. x.

<sup>b</sup> See *Privy Seals* dated 24 Nov. 16 H. 6. 15 Febr. 30 H. 6. &c.

<sup>c</sup> Exit. Pell. 6 Apr. and 25 May, 23 H. 6.

<sup>d</sup> Lib. Nig. p. 37.

<sup>e</sup> Heylin's *Cosmography* l. 1. page 287. edit. 1652.

<sup>f</sup> Mondonus Belvaleti *Catech. Equit. Ord. Periscelid.* p. 7. Et sunt pleriq; nonnulli autumantes hunc Ordinem exordium sumpsisse a sexu Muliebri, &c.

<sup>g</sup> *History of St. George*, p. 321.

there



there is no such Spur to Valour and heroick Resolutions as the Love of Ladies.

A late foreign <sup>b</sup> Author treating on the Institution of the Order (as he calls it) of the *Ermine* in *Bretagne*, remarks a Singularity, (as he thought) not observed in other Orders, that Ladies were admitted thereto. I shall not endeavour to contradict him with Precedents from the Orders of *Malta*, *St. James*, of the *Sword*, of *Calatrava*, *St. Stephen*, and of the *Amarante*, &c. but confine my self to the *Garter*, wherein Mr. <sup>i</sup> *Ashmole* hath produced incontestable Evidences of their receiving a Participation in the Robes from the 7th of *Rich. II.* to the 16th of *Edw. IV.* which he supposed to be the last Entry of them; 'tis strange he had not in his view the Verses of *Skelton* under *Hen. VII.* quoted by himself in <sup>k</sup> another Part of his Book, and the Passage in the *Black-Book* in the third Year of that Reign, "*Regina vero, & Domina Mater Regis vestibus etiam Ordini Militari congruentibus tunc induebantur,*" which in a contemporary <sup>l</sup> Manuscript is worded, "*The Quene, my Lady the Kings moder wer in gownys of the Garter of the same as the Kyng and the Lordes wer,* &c. and *Skelton* <sup>m</sup> the then Poet-Laureat, in his Verses,

*O Knightly Ordere clothed in Robes with Gartere,  
The Queens grace and thy Mother clothed in the same.*

I shall not repeat the splendid Appearance of *Queen Philippa* at the first grand Feast of the Order, and the large Sum issued for her Apparel against another Feast, but only observe, that the Queens at *Windfor* made Offerings at the High Mass "celebrated on *St. George's Day*, in the same Manner as the King did: And shall confine my self at present to remark, That the Ladies who received the Robes of this Order, are <sup>o</sup> stiled *Dames de la Fraternité de Seint George*, and *Dominae de Seictâ & liberaturâ Garter*, which are the same Epithets as are given to the Knights, and that these Habits were delivered them annually by Warrants from the Crown, in the like Manner as the Knights received them, and that their Robes, as those of the Knights, were differenced in the Number of *Garters*, according to the Superiority of the Titles, and Degrees of the Ladies.

I must confess my Ignorance, whether these Ladies were heretofore nominated by the sole Pleasure of the Crown, or chosen by any Sort of Election, whether any Ceremonies were performed at their Admission, or whether they were under Obligations to observe any Rules or Statutes peculiar to them.

It would be too tedious here to run over the List of these Ladies mentioned in the Records, which I reserve for a particular Chapter, wherein it will be shewed which of them were then Consorts, and which of them Widows, a Task of some Difficulty; for several of them will be found

<sup>b</sup> Lobineau l'Hist. de Bretagne, p. 442, &c.

<sup>i</sup> Hist. p. 217.

<sup>k</sup> P. 594.

<sup>l</sup> Julius B. 12. in Bibl. Cotton, p. 46.

<sup>m</sup> Ashmole's Hist. p. 594.

<sup>n</sup> Expensæ Philippæ Reginae Angliæ ab ultimo Sept.

anno Regni Regis Angliæ xxv ad xxvi. In oblationibus factis ad magnam missam celebratam in capella castri de *Windesore* in die Sancti Georgij, 13 s. 4. in Bibl. Cotton:  
<sup>o</sup> Rymer, vol. 9. p. 3.



to have been the Widows of Knights of the *Garter*, and after their Deaths married to Noblemen of higher Titles, by which Denominations they received the Robes of this Order, though their then Husbands from whom they had these Titles, were not Companions; others being the Relicts of Noblemen of higher Titles not of the Order, and being re-married to Knights-Companions, retained however their first superior Titles, and by these Appellations received the Habits, though in consequence of their latter Marriages. And another Difficulty occurs, that some of these Ladies, being themselves Heiresses, retained always their paternal Surnames, notwithstanding their Marriages to Knights of the *Garter*.

By turning our Eyes upon the Lists printed in the *p* Introduction, it will appear that several Consorts of the Knights shared in this distinguishing Priviledge of the Habits of the *Garter*, which will be therefore unnecessary to be proved; so I shall only mention an Order of the Privy Council made on 21 May, 10 Hen. VI. *Concordatum per Dom. de consilio quod fiat warrantum Custodi Magnæ Garderobæ Regis ad deliberandum Isabellæ Comitissæ Warwic & Aliciæ Comitissæ Suffolk liberatur. vestur. cum pellur. de la Garter pro festo S. Georgii ult' præterit. modo quo aliæ Comitissæ ante hæc tempora extra dictam Garderob. pro consimili festo liberat. fuit.*

Richard Beauchamp was then Earl of *Warwick*, who had been elected into this Order before the *r* 9th of Hen. IV, and he married to his second Wife *Isabel*, Daughter of *Thomas le Dispenser* Earl of *Gloucester*, Sister and sole Heir to her Brother, *Jon* the 26th of Nov. 1423, who survived her Husband and died on 27 Dec. 1439.

*William de la Pole* was at that Time Earl of *Suffolk*, after created Marquess and Duke of that Place, who had been Knight of the *Garter* from the 9th Year of Hen. V. This *Alice* was the Daughter of Sir *Thomas Chaucer* of *Ewelme*, Widow first of *Sir John Philip*, and secondly of *Thomas Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury*, which Earl her second Husband died on the 3d of Nov. 1428, and she died *x* 20 May 1475.

The sumptuary *y* Laws for Distinction of Degrees, while in force, allowed them the Wearing of Velvet upon Velvet, by which these Consorts were known in their ordinary daily Habit. The Wife-man, in describing the Wife of an Husband who sits clothed in Scarlet among the Elders of the Land, intimates, That she never lacked the Spoils her Husband brought back from his Victories, for in her his Heart securely trusted; and as she participated in the Spoils, 'tis reasonable she should partake in the other Rewards given for these Victories, for the Law, by reason of the strict Union, counts Husband and Wife only one Person.

As to Relicts, I have already shewn, that the *z* Countess of *Arundel* receiv'd the Habits very soon after the Death of her Husband; she was a Lady of great Quality, being the natural Daughter of *John* King of *Portugal*, married to this Earl in 1405 in *a* presence of Hen. IV, who

*p* P. 10, Note *u*. P. 11, Note *e*. P. 12, Note *d* & *e*.  
*P*. 13, Note *f*. P. 14, Note *g*. P. 15, Note *k*, &c.  
*q* Cleopatra F. iv. in Bibl. Cotton.  
*r* Above, p. 36.  
*s* Lib. Teuksbur. in Mon. Angl. vol. 1. p. 158.  
 & 159.

*t* E Testamento ejus [in libro *March*] condito  
 20 Junij 1415, probato 23 May 1418.  
*u, x* Inscription on her Monument in *Ewelme*.  
*y* Stat. 3 E. 4. c. 5, &c.  
*z* Above in p. 16.  
*a* Walsingham, p. 474.



was Brother-in-law to that King, with great Solemnity, and was re-married to <sup>b</sup> Gilbert Lord Talbot, Knight also of this Order, who dyed 19 Oct. 7 Hen. V, so that <sup>c</sup> Dugdale is mistaken in making him her first Husband: After his Death she was made a free <sup>d</sup> Denizen and had Dower out of his Lands, and as <sup>e</sup> Camden saith was married to Thomas Fettyplace, by whom she had Children, and afterwards to <sup>f</sup> John Holland Earl of Huntington, and died at <sup>g</sup> Bourdeaux 13 Nov. 1439; her Marriages are thus particularly specified, because <sup>h</sup> Mr. Asmole presumes that John Fettiplace was sent to the King of Portugal with the Garter, upon the Account of this Relation or Kindred.

The Entries of the Delivery of these Habits to the Duchesses of York, the Elder and Younger, in the first and third of Hen. V, do not prove that the Elder then remained in her Widowhood; because, though this Addition of the Elder must of course denote one who had been Dowager, yet she might possibly have been the Wife at these Times of an actual Knight of the Garter, and in that Right have received these Habits, her first Title being out of Courtesy continued to her, which will be plain by examining this very Case.

The Duchess of York, senior, in this First and Third of Hen. V, was Joan de Holland, second Wife, and then Relict of Edmond de Langley, Knight of this Order, after whose Death in the 3d of Hen. IV, she first re-married with William Lord Willoughby, then in the 12th Year of that Reign, with <sup>k</sup> Henry Lord Scrope of Masham, Knight of this Order, and therefore might receive these Robes as his Consort in these Years, after whose Attainder she was again married to Henry Bromflet Lord Vespi, and died without <sup>l</sup> Issue in 12 Hen. VI.

The Duchess of York, junior, was in these Years <sup>m</sup> Philippa, Daughter and Coheir of John Lord Mohun, the Consort of Edmond Duke of York killed at Agincourt soon <sup>n</sup> after these Habits were delivered, which Lady was re-married to the Lord Fitzwater, and <sup>o</sup> died Issueless.

In this <sup>p</sup> first Year of Hen. V. the Countesses of Salisbury, the Elder and Younger, are named as receiving these Habits.

This elder Countess was Elizabeth, another Daughter and <sup>q</sup> Co-heir of John Lord Mohun, who had received the Habits of this Order <sup>r</sup> in the 7th, 11th, and 12th of Rich. II. in the Life-time of her Husband William Earl of this Place, one of the Founders, and she lived <sup>s</sup> till the 2d of Hen. V.

The Countess of Salisbury the Younger, in 1 Hen. V. was <sup>t</sup> Maud, Daughter of Sir Adam Francis, the Relict of John Aubrey, and also of

<sup>b</sup> Ypodigma Neustr. p. 175.

<sup>c</sup> Vol. 1. Baron. p. 328.

<sup>d</sup> Claus. 7 H. 5. m. 6.

<sup>e</sup> Britan. f. 203, latine.

<sup>f</sup> Pat. 11 H. 6. p. 2. m. 14.

<sup>g</sup> Registr. Priorat. de Lewis.

<sup>h</sup> Hist. p. 383.

<sup>i</sup> Esc. 3. H. 4. n. 36.

<sup>k</sup> Wallingh. p. 421. n. 10. Pat. 4 H. 5. m. 18.

Claus. 12 H. 6. m. 2 & 6.

<sup>l</sup> Esc. 12 H. 6. n. 43.

<sup>m</sup> Her Will in Chichele's Register.

<sup>n</sup> Esc. 3 H. 5. n. 45. Wallingh. 439, 440.

<sup>o</sup> Esc. 10 H. 6. n. 45.

<sup>p</sup> See above Page 14, Note g.

<sup>q</sup> Rot. Fin. 6 H. 4. m. 5. her Dower assigned to her.  
See Claus. 1 R. 2. m. 3.

<sup>r</sup> See above p. 10. Note d. p. 11. Note c. p. 12. Note d.

<sup>s</sup> Esc. 2 H. 5. n. 39.

<sup>t</sup> Claus. 1 H. 4. p. 2. m. 13.



Sir *Allen* <sup>n</sup> *Boxhall*, a Knight of this Order, then of *John Montagu* Earl of this Place, who hath been proved a Companion of the *Garter*, whom she survived, and lived 'till the 3<sup>d</sup> of *Hen. VI.* And hence we see that the Title of *Younger*, attributed to her in the Wardrobe-Account <sup>x</sup> in the 3<sup>d</sup> of *Hen. V.* might have been omitted, because the *elder* Countess was dead before that Time; and may observe, that this Lady retained the Title of Countess notwithstanding the Attainder of her Husband by 'Act of Parliament, though the same was not reversed 'till many Years afterwards.

The Lady *Roos* received these <sup>z</sup> Robes in 22 *Rich. II.*

The first Lord *Roos* that was Knight of this Order, is in the Catalogue numbered 97, elected in the Reign of *Hen. IV.* and by Mr. *Ashmole* called *Gilbert*, whereas his Name was without doubt <sup>a</sup> *William*; the Lady therefore thus stiled *Roos* in 22 *Rich. II.* seems to be *Beatrix* the Relict of *Thomas* Lord *Roos*, Father of this Knight of the *Garter*, after whose Death in the <sup>b</sup> 7<sup>th</sup> Year of *Richard II.* she was remarried to <sup>c</sup> Sir *Richard Burly* Companion of this Order, that died at *Arpent* in <sup>d</sup> *Spain* in the 12<sup>th</sup> Year, and she might share in these Habits in this 22 *Rich. II.* as his Relict, for whom she erected afterwards a <sup>e</sup> Chantry and lived 'till the <sup>f</sup> 3<sup>d</sup> of *Hen. V.* But then the Lady *Roos* receiving Robes in the first Year of *Hen. V.* in all probability might be <sup>g</sup> *Margaret* the Daughter of Sir *John Arundell* then Consort of *William* Lord *Roos*, who had the like Habits, but this Lord dying on <sup>h</sup> 1 *Sept. 2 Hen. V.* this same Lady might as his Relict receive this Habit in <sup>i</sup> 3 *Hen. V.* for she lived 'till the 17<sup>th</sup> of <sup>k</sup> *Hen. VI.*

I come now to unmarried Ladies who were admitted into the Distinction of the Habits of this Order, and here some of the Royal Blood present themselves, *Philippa* and *Catherine* Daughters of *John of Gaunt*, appeared thus <sup>l</sup> habited in the 7<sup>th</sup> Year of *Rich. II.*

This *Philippa* was his Daughter by his first Lady <sup>m</sup> *Blanch* of *Lancaster*, married to <sup>n</sup> *John* King of *Portugal*, in or after the Year 1387, when he obtained a Dispensation from his Vow of <sup>o</sup> Celibacy made by him as Great Master of the Order *d'Arvis*; and as she thus received these Habits before her Marriage, so she had them again by the Stile of Queen of *Portugal* in <sup>p</sup> 22 *Rich. II.* when as yet her Royal Husband had not been elected into this Order; for 'tis evident he could not be at this time a Knight of the *Garter*, since the *Windsor-Tables* place him the Successor to Sir *William Arundel* in the second Stall of the Sovereign's Side, which Sir *William* received these Habits in this 22<sup>d</sup> Year; but this King being

<sup>n</sup> *His Will made* 2 June 1424, in Regist. Luffenham in Cur. Prerog. lego, Alano de Buxhull filio meo, &c. See Esch. 1 H. 4. n. 11.

<sup>x</sup> See above p. 15. Note k.

<sup>y</sup> *His Attainder was from* 1 Jan. 1 H. 4. Rot. Parl. 2 H. 4. n. 30. and in Parl. 4 H. 5. n. 16. a Petition for the Reversal, which not then obtained, was done Parl. 9 H. 5. m. 6.

<sup>z</sup> See above p. 13. Note f.

<sup>a</sup> Thus named in Glover's Catalogue, Mills de Nobilitate Polit. & Civil. p. 166.

<sup>b</sup> Esch. 7 R. 2. n. 68.

<sup>c</sup> Pat. 9 R. 2. p. 1. m. 40.

<sup>d</sup> Froiss. vol. 3. p. 229. & vol. 1. p. 208.

<sup>e</sup> Rot. 10 H. 4. p. 1. m. 7.

<sup>f</sup> Esch. 3 H. 5. n. 44.

<sup>g</sup> Dugd. Baron. vol. 1. p. 552.

<sup>h</sup> Monast. Angl. vol. 1. p. 728 b.

<sup>i</sup> See above p. 15. Note k.

<sup>k</sup> Esch. 17 H. 6. n. 51.

<sup>l</sup> See above p. 10. Note a.

<sup>m</sup> n Knighton, vol. 2675. Froiss. vol. 3. ch. 39.

<sup>o</sup> From Pope Urban the Sixth, &c.

<sup>p</sup> See above p. 13. Note f.

after-



afterwards elected into this Order, he together with his Queen <sup>q</sup> received the Robes in 3 *Hen. V.*

*Catherine* was another Daughter and only Child of *John* of *Gaunt* by his second Lady <sup>r</sup> *Constance* of *Spain*. She had these Robes in 7 *Rich. II.* and was afterwards married to *Henry*, created Prince of *Asturias* in 1388, who afterwards in her Right became lawful King of *Spain*; and though this "King died in 1407, without being ever elected into the Order of the *Garter*, yet this Queen (to whom her Father gave a <sup>x</sup> Legacy in his Will made in 1397, and who is <sup>y</sup> said to die on 2 *June* 1418) received again this same Habit from her <sup>z</sup> Nephew *Hen. V.* in his 3d Year, when she was a Queen-Dowager.

Then again in 16 *E. IV.* the Lady <sup>a</sup> *Elizabeth*, that King's Daughter, had the like Robes together with the Duchefs of *Suffolk*, the Marchionesses *Montagu* and *Dorset*, and other Ladies.

This Lady *Elizabeth* was afterwards the <sup>b</sup> Queen of *Hen. VII.* and the Marchioness *Montagu* was then the Relict of <sup>c</sup> *John Nevil* who had been slain before at *Barnet Field* on <sup>d</sup> *Easter-day* 1471, and who in the 17th of *Ed. IV.* is said to be re-married to <sup>e</sup> Sir *William Norreis* of *Bray*.

But here it may be supposed, that this Participation of the Habits was allowed to these Ladies upon the Account of the Grandour of their Birth, to which all Degrees of Honour were due. I must therefore beg Patience to inspect the Qualifications of another Lady mentioned in these Lists, the celebrated *Katherine Swinford* who received these <sup>f</sup> Habits in the eleventh, twelfth, and thirteenth of *Rich. II.* "This Lady, according to <sup>g</sup> *Froissart*, "knewe moche honour, for in her youth and all her dayes "she had been brought up therein," as the Lord *Berners* translates it. Her Parentage was from <sup>h</sup> Sir *Paen Ruette* or *Roette* a Knight in *Henalt*, who is said to have been *Guyenne* King of Arms, and as that Author goes on, had sometime been married to Sir *Thomas Swinford*, by whom 'tis certain she had a <sup>i</sup> Son. But the greatest Occasion of her Fame is, that though she had been first Mistress of *John* of *Gaunt* the great Duke of *Lancaster*, and had bare him three Sons and a Daughter, yet this Duke after the Death of his second Wife <sup>k</sup> *Constance* of *Spain*, married this Lady, but this *Constance* living 'till near the <sup>l</sup> Feast of the Apostle's *St. Peter* and *St. Paul* in 1394, must be the Duchefs of *Lancaster* and of *Acquitaine* who received the Robes of this Order <sup>m</sup> in the 7th, 11th, 12th, and 13th of *Rich. II.* in whose Life-time this Lady *Swinford* had

<sup>q</sup> See above p. 15. Note *k*.

<sup>r</sup> Knighton, col. 2677.

<sup>s</sup> See above p. 10. Note *a*.

<sup>t</sup> More ex Angliâ translato. Mariana l. 18. p. 158. See Knighton col. 2677.

<sup>u</sup> Mendoza Origen de las Dignidades, p. 138.

<sup>x</sup> A ma Treschere fille *Catherine Roigne de Chastyll* & *Lyon un hanap d'Or*. In Registr. *Henr. Episc. Lincoln*.

<sup>y</sup> Mendoza, p. 138.

<sup>z</sup> See above p. 15. Note *k*.

<sup>a</sup> Ashm. Hist. p. 549, 218.

<sup>b</sup> Records, Genealogies, and Histories.

<sup>c</sup> Hall in E. 4. f. 29 a. Pol. Virg. l. 24.

<sup>d</sup> e Pat. 17 E. 4. p. 2. m. 20.

<sup>f</sup> See above p. 11. Note *c*. p. 12. Notes *d*, *e*.

<sup>g</sup> Vol. 4. ch. 71. p. 208.

<sup>h</sup> Hic jacet *Pagnus Roett* miles *Guyenne* Rex *Armorum*, pater *Catherinae Ducissae Lancast.* Wever's Funeral Monum. p. 661.

<sup>i</sup> Pat. 13 H. 4. p. 1. m. 35. Quod dilectus miles noster *Tho. Swinford* est filius & hæres inclitissimæ *Dominae Katherine de Roelt* nuper *Ducissae Lancast.* in legitimo matrimonio procreatus, & quod quoddam scriptum ipsius *Thome* præsentibus annexum sigillo *Armorum* ipsius *Thome* signatum est factum ejusdem *Thome*, Quodq; ipse & Pater ejus & Antecessores sui ex parte *Patris* Arma prædicta totis temporibus retroactis portaverunt.

<sup>k</sup> l Knighton col. 2741. Walsingham, p. 387. &c.

<sup>m</sup> See above p. 10. Note *a*. p. 11. Note *c*. p. 12. Notes *d*, and *e*.

the



the like Robes long before her Marriage to this Duke which was on the Octaves of *Epiphany* in the 19th of that Reign, whereby she became, as *Froissart* phrases it, the second Lady or the next to the Queen, to the great Dissatisfaction of the Court.

Then again *Constance* Lady *Dispenser* received these <sup>o</sup> Habits in the 11th, 12th, and 13th of *Rich. II.* she was of Royal Lineage, being Daughter of *Edmond de Langley* by *Isabel of Castile*, and as it appears from a <sup>p</sup> Legacy in her Mother's Will, was married to *Thomas* Lord *Dispencer* before the 6th of that King, but her Husband received not any Robes of the *Garter* in the Years here mentioned, though being afterwards created <sup>q</sup> Earl of *Gloucester* and elected into this Order, he had the <sup>r</sup> Habits in the 22d of that King's Reign, as had also this Lady, being then <sup>s</sup> Countess, who survived her <sup>t</sup> Husband.

I shall now dismiss this Subject by shewing, that these Ladies had not only the Habit of the Order, which was *Semée* of *Garters*, which were more or less according to their Degrees, but that they, like as the Knights, had also the Ensign of the *Garter* delivered them; the Records are <sup>u</sup> express in this Particular; and 'tis probable, these *Garters* might be worn by them about their Left-arm, as <sup>x</sup> Mr. *Ashmole* tells us the Countess of *Tankerville* is represented by the Effigies on her Monument, to which may be added that of the Lady of *Sir Robert Harcourt* who is on her <sup>y</sup> Tomb pictured with the *Garter* just above her Elbow on her Left-arm, with the Motto, *Hony soit quy mal y pense*, whereas at this time there is no visible Distinction or Badge for these Ladies, and even the Knights do not impale the Arms of their Consorts within the *Garter*, though there are several antient <sup>z</sup> Precedents on the Plates in the Stalls where the Ladies Arms are inserted within it.

Your Lordship will pardon me in making one Reflection, which appears naturally to arise on Occasion of what I have observed relating to the Ladies who formerly shared the Honours of this Order and wore the Robes of it. In a Nation so tender of the Rights and Priviledges of the *Fair Sex*, and where Beauty seems to have fixed her Empire, it is really surprizing that any Custom in their Favour should be disused, while no reasonable Pretence has been assigned, or in my humble Opinion can be assigned, for the Discontinuance of it. The Order of the *Garter* was

<sup>n</sup> Walsingham, p. 388.

<sup>o</sup> See above, p. 11. Note c. p. 12. Notes d e.

<sup>p</sup> Lib. Rous, f. 49.

<sup>q</sup> 8 Sept. Chart. 21 R. 2. n. 21.

<sup>r</sup> See above p. 15. Note f.

<sup>s</sup> Ibidem.

<sup>t</sup> Walsingham, p. 416.

<sup>u</sup> Priv. Sigill. 2 R. 2. Richard, &c. As Tresorier, &c. parce que Nous devons a nostre cher & bien ame Nicholas — pur les choses, lesquels il ad fait & liverez a nous en nostre chamber, cestascavoir pur trois jarters d'argent susforrez pur dames dys foldz — Item pur l'amendement d'un nostre jartier d'or & pur le tissue svs folds & oyt deniers, &c. — Mars l'an de nostre regne second.

*Rolle of New years Gifts*, 18 H. 6. in Offic. Pell. Item, to my Lady of Gloucestre the same day a Garter of gold barred thurgh with barres of gold, and this reson maad with letters of gold therupon *Hony soit quy mal y pense* and garnished with a floure of diamands on

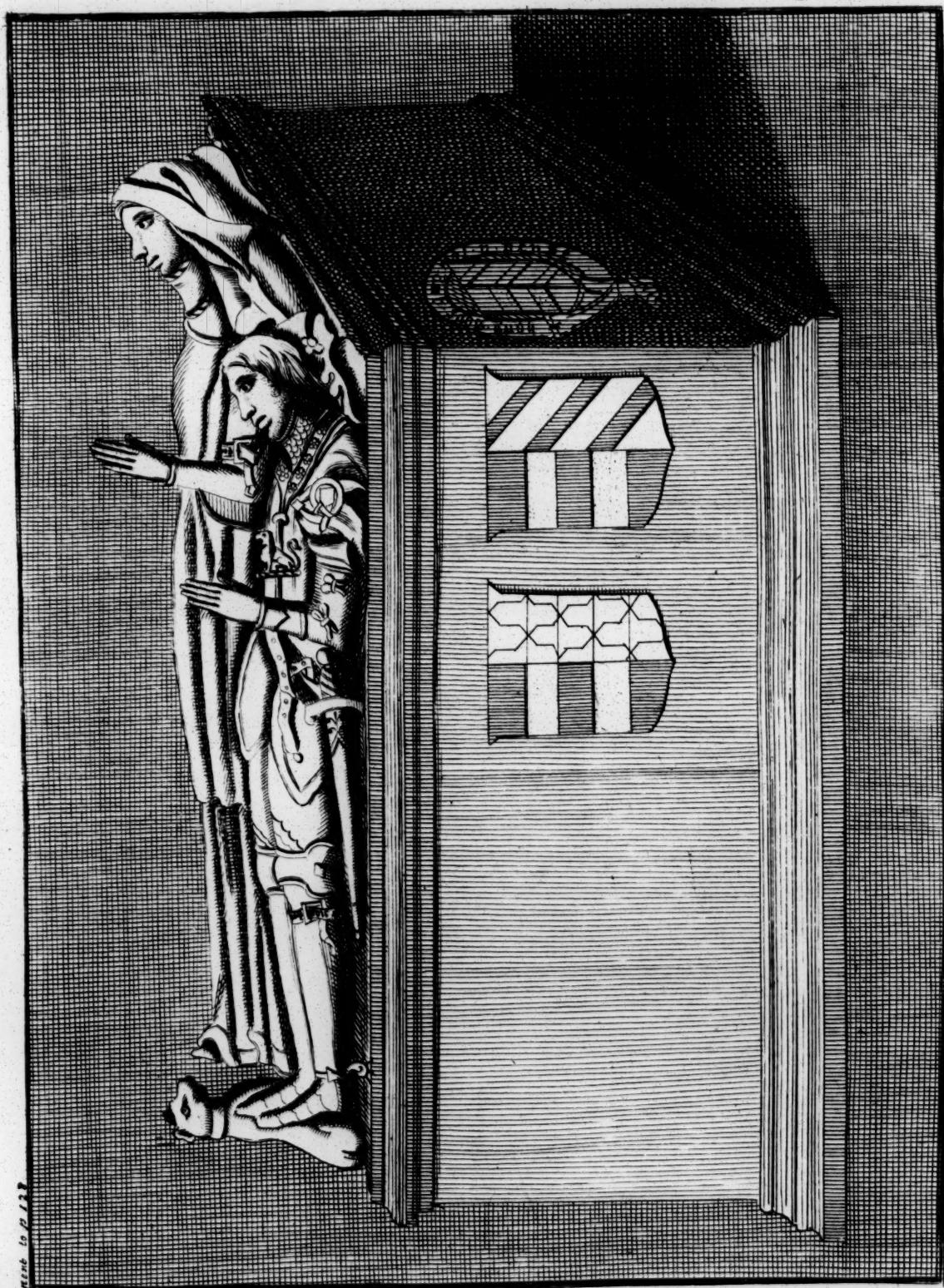
the bokell and ij gret perl and a ruby on the pendant and ij gret perl with oither 26 perl on the said Garter.

<sup>x</sup> Hist. p. 218.

<sup>y</sup> In the Church near Stanton-Harcourt in Oxfordshire.

<sup>z</sup> Richard Earl of Warwick, n. 179, bears his Ladies Arms in the first Place; as also William Nevil, n. 149. The Lord Montacute, n. 186. and Lord Strange, n. 231, bear their Ladies Arms on Inescutcheons of Pretence, and Sir Charles Somerset, n. 243. empales those of his Wife; as those of Sir Simon Burly, n. 75. and Ralph Nevil Earl of Westmerland. n. 96. were in the like Manner on their Monuments. Ashm. Hist. p. 206. And at Amiens in France the Arms of the Earl of Oxford, n. 226. are empaled within a Garter with those of his first Lady. *Traite Historique du Chef de St. Jean Baptiste par du Fresne*, p. 129.







1000000



a political Institution: It is not easy to conjecture by what Maxims of Polity that Prince governed himself, who first relinquished a Right exercised by his Predecessors of giving so honourable a Distinction to Ladies of superior Quality or Merit; since such Ladies, if they do not preside, must at least be allowed to have always a very powerful Influence in Society. The Consorts and Relicts of the Knights Companions especially seem to have a more peculiar Claim to any relative Honours of the Order, which the Sovereign shall think fit to confer: But it may with all Submission be more proper to enquire, whether so valuable a Privilege of the Sovereign might not, upon wise and good Reasons, be resumed, than how the Exercise of it came to be originally discontinued.

One of the most heroick Actions by which the *Patron* of this Order is said to have signalized himself, was in Defence of a young Lady, no less distinguished by her personal Accomplishments than her high Birth. I am under no Obligations to verify all the Circumstances of that Story; however I may inoffensively say, the Moral of it may be extended to shew, that it is very consistent with the Institution of an Order nominated from *St. George*, that all the Advantages at any time belonging to the other Sex should be inviolably preserved to them; and that it will be unaccountable if among so great a Number of Hero's, several Champions should not be found to assert and espouse their Cause.

In all probability they would not at this time have wanted any Advocate, if the rebellious War had not prevented the Revival and Re-establishment of this Custom by <sup>a</sup> *Charles the First*, a Prince who, as the noble Historian characterizes him, <sup>b</sup> *kept State to the Full, which made his Court very orderly.*

This Prince intended to have all Solemnities observed with the exactest Distinction of proper Rites, and for that purpose having in his View the Practice of the Greatest of his Predecessors, thought fit, after mature Deliberation, to confirm to the <sup>c</sup> *Heralds* their antient Rights in all Assemblies and Processions of State. Their Education and Study must render them the best Judges and Guardians of the Decorum and Punctuality of Ceremonies, and their Experience enable them to keep a Rule uniform to the Precedents of former Ages, and the Consent of foreign Kingdoms. I am with the utmost Deference, *My Lord,*

*Your Lordships most obedient and ever faithful Servant,*

**JOHN ANSTIS, Garter.**

<sup>a</sup> *Ashm. Hist.* p. 218.

<sup>b</sup> *Clarendon's Hist.* vol. 3, p. 198.

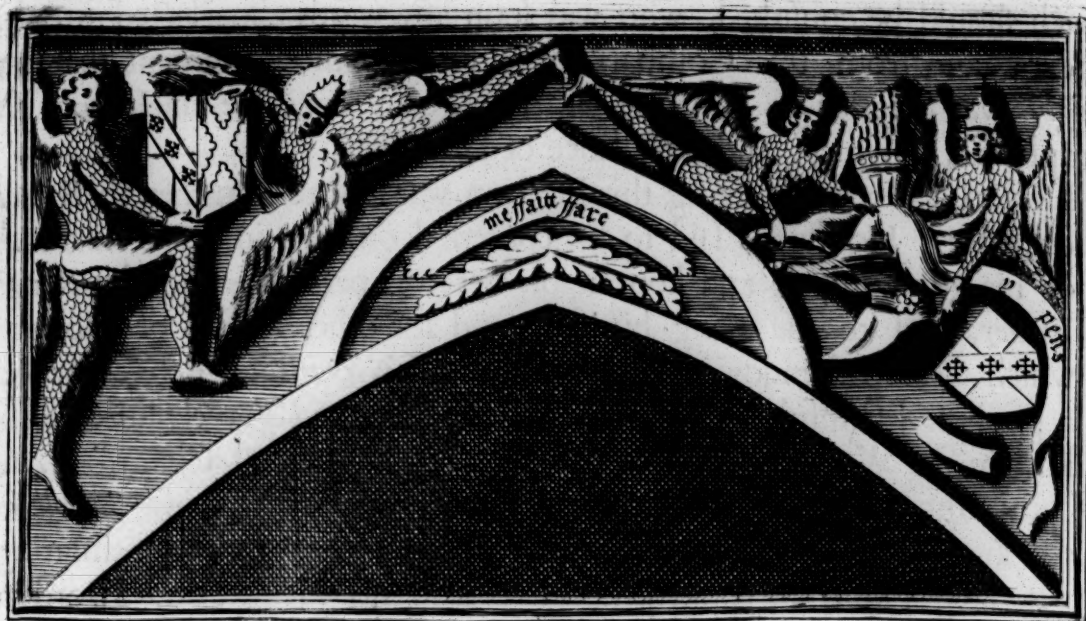
<sup>c</sup> 19 June 1630. — Whereas we have lately taken Notice of the antient Rights and Priviledges of our Trusty and Welbeloved Servants the King's, *Heralds*, and Pursuivants of Arms, by them claimed, and before the Lords of our Privy Council by many Precedents approved and allowed, We minding the Continuance and Establishment of the said Rights and Priviledges to our said Servants, do hereby signify and declare our Pleasure to be, and so We Will and Command that they our said Servants the Kings, *Heralds*, and Pursuivants of Arms

shall from henceforth in all manner of Assemblies and Proceedings of State, as also for delivering of all Messages, Summons, and other our Commands touching Matters of Honour and Arms, aswell at home as abroad both in Time of War and Peace, be called, used and employed in our said Service, as by Right to them appertaineth and by antient Custom hath been used: and that for all such their Services and Attendance they be allowed such Fees, Droits, Liveries, and Largeesses as of ancient Right and Custom, they have used to have and enjoy in time of any of our Progenitors Kings of England, &c.









# MEMOIRS

Of the LIFE of

## Sir JOHN FASTOLF.



SIR JOHN FASTOLF *n.* 139, succeeded the Earl of *Westmorland* in the third Stall of the Prince's Side; for the *Black-Book* (as *Mr. Ashmole* hath observed) is mistaken in placing him in the Stall of the Lord *Fitzhugh*. In the Scrutiny for an Election on St. GEORGE'S EVE 4 *Hen. VI*, there chanced to be an Equality of Votes for our Knight and Sir *John Radcliff*, whereon the Duke of *Bedford*, Lieutenant in the King's Absence, esteeming them both most worthy of an Election, however judged Sir *John Fastolf* more worthy of the Two, whom he according to his Authority declared to be admitted into this Order.

This Preference, upon a Competition, shews the Largeness of his Deserts, especially when determined by so great a Judge of them as the



Duke of Bedford, who <sup>b</sup> himself in a Recommendation to the Companions of the *Garter*, enumerated the noble Actions of Sir *John Radcliff*, which should be consulted, who was soon afterwards also elected into this Order; and from this Comparison and an Acknowledgment that our *Knight* was superior to him in Merits, we may conceive an Idea of the Amplitude, Dignity, and Excellence of them.

Hereon a Letter signifying this Election was sent to him then in *France*, wherein this 'Honour is said to be conferred on him in "consideration  
" of his good, loyal, and honourable Services performed to the King's  
" Father, and to the King himself, and for other Deserts of Honour,  
" which God had endowed him with, in his constant Behaviour, as  
" a good and faithful Subject, and for the Pains and Travels sustained by  
" him in the Wars, to support the King's right and just Claim." And a Commission issued to the Earls of *Warwick*, *Salisbury*, and *Suffolk* to receive his Oath, and to invest him with the *Garter*; farther intimating, that he should with all convenient speed send his Helmet and Sword to be hung up in the Chapel at *Windſor*, and depute an honourable Knight without Reproach to take Possession of his Stall, and accordingly he appoints Sir *Henry Ingloſe* and Sir *William Breton* his Proctors jointly and severally to receive it, to offer his Mantle, Helmet, and Sword, and to take the Oath required by the Statutes; and on the 25th of *February* 5 *Hen. VI.* a Commission was directed to Sir *John Robessart* to install him by his Proctor, wherein to his former <sup>d</sup> Character is the Addition made of his *great Sense, Valour, and Experience in Armes*; these are honourable Testimonies and Attestations of his personal Qualifications and Vertues, and of his Fortitude and Merit in publick Services.

Such authentick Eulogies deserve the Trumpets of Fame; but as of Old the Reputation of *Socrates* was in his Life-time sullied by *Aristophanes* in personating him on the Stage, so the Memory of our Heroe hath in this last Age met with the same hard Fate by Enterludes in Plays. The Deriding the Absent is contrary to all good Manners and good Nature, as well as the Precept of a grave Philosopher; but the Impairing or Lessening the Fame of the Dead is a more disingenuous Abjection as well as an Injustice; for they are incapable of making their own Defence. Such Usage is against the common Principles of Humanity, for the Best as well as the Greatest of Men have placed their Reputation in the next Degree to their Souls, as giving some shading Shew of Existence, and a Sort of Immortality whereby they survive their Bodies, a Principle so far implanted by Nature that even the Heathens have cheerfully yielded up their Lives in the Contemplation of the Glory of it.

It is indeed remembred that the abovementioned *Socrates*, upon Notice of this or other such contumelious Speeches behind his Back, made no other Reply than that, *his Detractor might beat him too when he was absent*: But now-a-days Persons are not of the Temper of that Philosopher, who could abstract himself from the World to that Excess of Contem-

<sup>b</sup> *Alhm. Hiſt.* p. 270. *This Certificate might poſſibly be after the Admiſſion of Sir John Faſtolf; but it appears from it, that Radcliff had been xxviii Wynter* | *unreproched in Armys.*  
<sup>c</sup> *Alhm. App. n. xxi, xxii.*  
<sup>d</sup> *Ibidem, n. L.*



plation, as to stand in a thinking Posture two whole Days together with his Eyes steddily fixed on the same Object: The Comick Writers have drawn Characters with unaccountable Freedoms, and have run to that Length, as to burlesque the Best of their Poets from whom they derived their own little Knowledge, and therefore 'tis the less Wonder they should in their Plays distort Historical Facts, and like Harpies defile what they touch; which strange License can be only to the Taste of those who would rather leave behind them Stench than Perfume, and choose rather to live in ridiculous Satyrs and Invectives, than in just Panegyricks and Commendations.

*Shakespear*, however, cannot be charged with any premeditated Spleen against the Memory of our Knight, at the Time when he composed his Comedies; for ' Sir *John Oldcastle* was at first introduced by him upon the Stage and personated in the *Drama*, which being resented as a great Affront, the Poet altered the Scene, and when there was nothing to Fear from any Resentment, or any Hope for Favour, he in its Room substituted the Name of Sir *John Fastolf*, which might be done at random, since his first Design was evidently no more, than to entertain the Theatre with the Character of a fat, amorous, vain, cowardly, drunken, old Fellow, the Corrupter of *Hen. V.* while Prince, as the Subject of Mirth and Ridicule: And it must be confessed, that he hath performed his Design with incomparable Wit and inimitable Humour, which have made such lasting Impressions on the Generality of Spectators, that they have been induced or bewitched into a Belief, that this Drollery was a Piece of true History.

It would be too serious to begin the Justification of our Knight, by observing, that the Comedian is guilty of a strange Anachronism in representing him an old Man before *Henry* the Fifth's Accession to the Throne, when <sup>f</sup> he could be only Thirty four Years of Age. But the late Remarker on these Plays knows not (as he expresses himself) whether this Poet might not be somewhat to blame in this his second Choice of personating our Knight, since he was a Man of Figure in the Army and a Companion of the *Garter*; yet at length he is pleased upon the Whole to conclude, that the Comedian merits Applause therein, because (as he goes on) the Cowardice of our Knight lost the Battle and betrayed the brave *Talbot*, which ought to stigmatize any Character to all Posterity. Such a decisive Determination ought not to have been given without the Certainty of the Truth of the Fact; let his Behaviour in this, and his Courage and Integrity in all other Actions be then examined, and if he should prove unexceptionable in these Articles, such coarse Usage and Buffoonry of his Memory cannot be justified, much less commended; for sober Men will prefer Truth before Wit pointed with Satyr, as much as real before theatrical Pleasures.

To proceed then to some Memoirs of the Life and Actions of our Knight: It is much to be lamented that a particular Treatise wrote pro-

<sup>e</sup> Fuller's Church Hist. l. 4. p. 168.

<sup>f</sup> Compared with his death in 1459, being then 80 Years Old.



lessly on this Subject, entituled, *Acta Domini Johannis Fastolf*, which *Bale* had seen who reports the initial Words of it, should (if it be still extant) remain at this time concealed in private Hands: This Misfortune is the greater, since this Book was compiled by *William Wyrcester* or *Botaner*, an Antiquary, Physician, and Astronomer of great Abilities for the Age he lived in, as appears from several Fragments wrote by him dispersed up and down in Libraries; and the Loss or Secreting of this Tract is the more to be regretted, in that he was an Eye-witness of most part, if not of all the Facts related by him, since his Son in the <sup>b</sup> Dedication of a Volume to *Edw. IV*, saith, that “*his pore fadyr William Worcestre sometyme* “*servaunte and* <sup>i</sup> *Soget withe his Reverent master John Fastolf Chevalier, he* “*exercised in the werres continually above xliiii yers.*”

If by this Expression he meant that his Father attended our Knight for that Number of Years, then from the Calculation of Sir *John's* Death in 1459 he must have been in his Service <sup>k</sup> from the Year 1415. By a Note in a <sup>l</sup> Manuscript we know that he was in his Family in 1432, and that at his <sup>m</sup> Instance he compiled a Treatise of Astronomy in 1440: And it can be no Digression in this Place to enquire into the Quality of this Writer, because some of his Books still remaining, furnish us with some considerable Passages relating to this his Patron.

*Bale* calls this Author, *Equestris ordinis homo*; but the Editor of the Antiquities of *Oxford* saith, “*Huic [Johanni Fastolf] ille Armigeri vicem præstitit clypeumq; viro detulit, quoties bellici quippiam aggredereetur,*” with this farther Particularity, that he compiled the Genealogies of the Gentry of the County of *Norfolk*, which is there stiled a Treasure of the greatest Value, wherein we have all reason to guess the Pedigree of *Fastolf*, then an ample and flourishing Family might be deduced, and supported with proper Vouchers.

This *Latin* Expression, importing that this *Wyrcester* was the Esquire or Armour-bearer of Sir *John*, is a wrong Translation of the *English* original Words of the Author *Anthony à Wood*, “*to which Person he did belong in the Quality of an Herald, and attended him with his Coat, when he went upon any Encounter,*” who might probably ground this Assertion on the Authority of <sup>p</sup> *Fuller*; however that may be, our Knight had a Pursivant by the Title of <sup>q</sup> *Segret* in 1432, which in Sound approaches very near to *Soget* abovementioned; though indeed <sup>r</sup> *Peter Bassett*, his contemporary, stiles our Writer in *Latin*, *Secretarius*; but whether he was of the Retinue of our Knight, as his Secretary, or an Officer of Arms, in either Capacity he was enabled to relate his Actions on his own personal Knowledge,

<sup>g</sup> In his Centuries of British Writers.

<sup>h</sup> MS. in Bibl. Lambeth, 40. n. 141.

<sup>i</sup> Thus spelled in the Original.

<sup>k</sup> It will be shewn, that our Knight is said to have been only forty Years in the Wars.

<sup>l</sup> MS. in Coll. Nov. Oxon. n. 162.

<sup>m</sup> MS. in Bibl. Bod. Gul. Laudi 504.

<sup>n</sup> Tom. 2. p. 347.

<sup>o</sup> In Custody of the most learned Dr. Tanner Chancellor of Norwich.

<sup>p</sup> Norfolk, p. 250, in the Margin.

<sup>q</sup> By an Instrument under the Seal of the Commis of the Bailliage of Dieppe, dated 4 Sept. 1432, it is certified, that Glocestre le Herault, heralt de treshault & trespuissant Prince Monsieur le Duc de Glocestre, Segret le Poursuivant de Noble homme Monsieur Jean Fasto Chevalier, grant maistre d'ostel de l'ostel de treshault & trespuissant Prince Monsieur le Regent le Royaume de France Duc de Bedford, that they had been robbed by Thiefs, who said they were Allies of the Enemies of our King, &c.

<sup>r</sup> M. 9. in Officio Armorum, hereafter inserted.

and



and it was within the Compass of each of these Employments to be acquainted with the secret Springs and Motives of them, and with his private Counsels and Instructions, and his Conduct therein.

No Improbability appears to this Editor, in supposing, that he might be his Pursivant at first by this Title of *Segret*, and from that Office (which was a Sort of Noviciate or Apprenticeship) be afterwards promoted to the Degree of his *Herald*, by the Title of *Botaner*, and therefore stiled *Wircestre* alias *Botaner*, according to the Method used in these Cases, which is the more credible in that his Son omits that Addition of *Botaner*. It was the Practice of the Nobility of that Age to give such of their Officers the Denomination of some principal Bearing in their Escutcheons, Crests, Supporters, Cognizances, Motto's, or of the Title of their Honours, or some chief Lands or Seigneuries; and though it may be too precarious a Conjecture, to imagine this Title might be taken from the Cross-Crosslets *Botonée* in Sir *John's* Arms, yet it must be confessed that his high Station in the Household of the *Regent of France*, did qualify him by the strictest Rules of Chivalry, to the Privilege of an Herald to attend his Service; and that our Knight placed an entire Confidence in this Person will hereafter appear, by his constituting him one of the Executors of his last Will.

By the Loss of this Treatise, we are reduced to the Necessity of collecting Scraps and Fragments scattered here and there, like saving Planks after a Shipwreck. *Caxton* on 12 Aug. 1481, (which is only twenty three Years after the Death of our Knight) printed a Translation of *Tully de Senectute* in *English*, which is there said to have been "translated and thystories openly declared by the ordenaunce and desyre of the noble auncient knyght Sir *Johan Fastolf* of the Countee of *Norfolk* baneret lyvyng the age of fourscore yere, exercysyng the warrys in the royaume of *Fraunce* and other Countrees For the diffence and unyversal welfare of bothe royames of *Englond* and *Fraunce* by fourty yeres enduryng, the fayte of armes hauntyng, and in admynystryng justice and polytique governaunce under thre kynges that is to wete *Henry* the fourth *Henry* the fyfthe *Henry* the sixthe and was Governour of the Duchye of *Angeou*, and the Countee of *Mayne* Capytain of many townys Castellys and fortressys in the said royaume of *Fraunce* havynge the charge and saufgarde of them dyverse yeres occupyeng and rewlyng thre honderd speeres and the bowes accustomed therine and yeldyng good accompt of the forsaide townes castellys and fortresses to the seyd Kynges and to their Lyeutenantes Prynces of noble recommendation as *Johan* regent of *Fraunce* Duc of *Bedforde Thomas* Duc of *Excestre Thomas* Duc of *Clarence* and other Lieutenants.

*Leland* observes that the Translator hereof is not named, but *Bale* and *Pits* ascribe it to *John Tiptoft* Earl of *Worcester*, upon no other Grounds possibly than that this Book was (as *Caxton* expresses it) annexed by him to the latter's Translation of *Tully de Amicitia*; the One being a strict

f MS. in Bibl. Regia E. n. 1403. Symphorien Champier Traitise de fondement & origine des Titres de Noblesse, &c. MS.  
t Hall's Edit. p. 481.



verbal Translation and the other very Paraphrastical; from which different Manners one should be induced to guess them to be the Labours of different Persons; and from this Passage relating to Sir *John Fastolf*, it might be reasonably conjectured, that this same *William* of *Wircestre* alias *Botaner* was the real Translator, since in his own "Memorials he hath entred "A. D. "1473, die 20 Aug. presentavi W. Episcopo Winton. librum Tullii de Senectute per me translatum in Anglicis." Though this Translation, by whomever it was done, is not from the original *Latin*, but as *Caxton* informs us from the "Frenshe by Laurence de primo facto at the commaundement of the noble Prynce Lowys Duc of Bourbon." The Son of this *William Wircestre* made a "Collection of several Matters relating to the Wars in France, entituled by him, *Declaration de la Chevalerie de Johan de France Duc de Bedforde*, which he dedicated to *Edw. IV.* and among other Things there is a Catalogue of the Princes, Dukes, Earls, Barons, Bannerets, Knights-Bachelors, and other Noblemen of the Household of the Regent, where it is remembred, that "*John Fastolffe*, Knight-Banneret, Baron of *Gilliguillin*, was great Steward, otherwise called Great Master of the Household of the said Regent, and for one Year was the King's Lieutenant in the Dutchy of *Normandy*, and afterwards Governor of *Angewe* and *Maine* for many Years, Captain of the City of *Mauins* and the Castles and Towns of *Allaunson*, *Mayn*, *Fresney le Vicont* for 14 Years and likewise — — — of *Cane* — — — of *Vernolle* and *Houmsflue* some Years." In this same Book are several political Advertisements relating to the grand Articles of Peace and War, composed at sundry Times by our heroick Knight, who not only performed Actions fit to be wrote, but wrote what is very Instructive to be read, being a Minister of State as well as a General, and as able to counsel as to execute; and, as that Author remarks, if these his Advices had been observed, several Miscarriages had been prevented.

These are general Characters of him, but to descend to Particulars: He being 80 Years Old at his Death in 1459, must be born in or about 1379: His Education and his Actions till about the 35th Years of his Age remain undiscovered to this Collector, save only that he was in *Ireland* in 10 Hen. IV, where he was then married. In 1 Hen. V. the Castle and Dominion of *Veires* in *Gascoigne* were then granted to him, whence it may be conjectured that he then resided in that Dutchy, which belonged to the Crown of *England*. In the Colledge of *Arms* is the first Part of the Manuscript wrote by *Peter Bassset*, whose Character may be consulted in *Bale*, with this *Latin* Title, "Iste liber de Actis Armorum & conquestus regni Franciæ, Ducatus Normanniæ, Ducatus Alenconix, Ducatus Andegaviae & Cenomaniæ cum pluribus Comitatus compilatus fuit ad nobilem virum Joh. Fastolf Baronem de Cylyyeguillem in Anno Domini 1459, quo anno dictus Joh. Fastolf obiit per Petrum Bassset Armigerum Anglicæ nationis, exercentem arma in Francia sub victorioso Principe Hen. V. — — — & Xpofero Hanson — — — quod cum Thoma Beauford

<sup>u</sup> MS. in Coll. Bened. Cant. f. 322.

<sup>x</sup> MS. in Bibl. Lambeth, 40. n. 141.

<sup>y</sup> See a Note hereafter inserted.

<sup>z</sup> 1 Hen. V. Int. Collect. Rym. ad finem, Vol. 17.

<sup>a</sup> Cent. p. 600.

<sup>b</sup> M. 9. In Officio Heraldorum.



“ Duce Exceſtre — — — — — de Thoro Joh. Faſtolf, per diligen-  
 “ tiam Willimi Worceſtre Secretarii dicti Joh. Faſtolf, & ſub Joh. Duce Bed-  
 “ fordie Regen. regni Franciæ, necnon aliorum Principum ſub Henrico VI, in  
 “ toto per ſpatium xxxv annorum;” which acquaints us that *Harſleur* being  
 taken in 1415, our Knight was eſtabliſhed Lieutenant thereof by the Earl  
 of *Dorſet*, in which Year being then only an Eſquire, he was retained  
 by ‘ Indenture on the 18th of *June* with ten Men of Arms and thirty Ar-  
 chers, to ſerve the King in his intended Voyage into *France*, and having  
 received the Honour of Knighthood before the 29th of *January* follow-  
 ing, had the Mannor and <sup>d</sup> Demefnes of *Fritenſe* near *Harſleur* then grant-  
 ed to him during his Life for his good Services. He was preſent at the  
 Battle of *Agincourt*, one of the moſt glorious Victories that our Nation  
 can boaſt of, where he ſignalized himſelf with others, by taking the ‘ Duke  
 of *Alençon*. In 6 *Hen. V.* he was ordered to ſeize the Caſtle and Domi-  
 nion of <sup>f</sup> *Bec Creſpin* and other Mannors, which *James d’Auricher*, *William*  
*de Horn*, and *Percival Deſvanal*, Knights, had held, and had that Caſtle  
 and other Lands to the yearly <sup>g</sup> Value of 2000 *Scutes* granted to him in  
 ſpecial Tail: In 1420 he was at the Siege of <sup>b</sup> *Monſtereau*, and in the next  
 Year at that of *Meaulx-en-brie*. After the Demife of *Henry V.* in *January*  
 1422, the Town of *Meulent* being ſurpriſed, *John* Duke of *Bedford* the  
 Regent, with Sir *John*, then Great Maſter of his Houſehold and *Senefchal*  
 of *Normandy*, laid Siege to that Place and re-took it. In the next Year,  
 after the Relieving of the Caſtle of *Crauent*, Sir *John* was conſtituted Lieu-  
 tenant for the King and the Regent in *Normandy* in the Baillywicks of  
*Roan*, *Eureux*, *Alençon*, and the Countries beyond the River *Seine*, and  
 Governour of the Counties of *Anjou* and *Maine*, and before the Battle of  
*Vernoyle* was advanced to be a Banneret; and about three Months after-  
 wards a *French* <sup>i</sup> Author tells us, that our Sir *John*, then Captain of *Alen-*  
*çon* and Governour of the *Marches* thereof, laid Siege to the Caſtle of *Ten-*  
*nuye* in *Maine*, which was ſurrendered to him, and in 3 *Hen. VI.* was  
 ſent to <sup>k</sup> prevent the Delivery of *Alençon* to the *French*, upon a Diſcovery  
 that a *Gascoigner* had ſecretly contracted to betray it. In *Sept.* 1425 he  
 beſieged <sup>l</sup> *Beaumont le Vicomte*, which ſurrendered, and then alſo took the  
 Caſtle of *Sillie-le-Guillem*, (which as we ſee gave him the Title of Baron,  
 which Place revolting afterwards, was in 1432 re-taken in an <sup>m</sup> Affault  
 by the Earl of *Arundel*;) and in this Year our Knight took likewiſe *St. Ouen*  
*d’Eſtrais* near *Laval*, as alſo the Caſtle of *Gravelle*, and about this Time  
 was elected into this Order of the *Garter*. In 1426 the Lord *Talbot* was  
 conſtituted Governour of <sup>n</sup> *Anjou* and *Maine*, and for this purpoſe <sup>o</sup> Sir *John*  
*Faſtolf* was removed to another Place of Command, which in all proba-  
 bility might be the Original of Suſpicions, Emulations, and Competi-  
 tions between them which were never reconciled. On the 20th of *October*,

<sup>c</sup> Rymer, vol. 9. p. 270.

<sup>d</sup> Ibid. p. 329.

<sup>e</sup> G. 6. Penes me, p. 286.

<sup>f</sup> Rot. Norman. 6 H. 5. m. 40.

<sup>g</sup> Ibid. m. 36.

<sup>h</sup> Baſſet ut ſupra.

<sup>i</sup> Chartier Hiſt. de Ch. VII. p. 9.

<sup>k</sup> Hollingſh. p. 589. b. n. 10.

<sup>l</sup> Baſſet.

<sup>m</sup> Hiſt. de Ch. VII. p. 62.

<sup>n</sup> Baſſet.

<sup>o</sup> Hollingſh. p. 597. b. n. 10.



7 *Hen. VI*, he had a <sup>p</sup> Protection, being then going into *France*, and there he performed an Action of that Bravery and Conduct as can scarce be parallel'd in antient or modern History, the Victory or Battle, (as 'tis usually called,) of the *Herrings*, because a great Quantity of that Fish was at that Time, being in *Lent*, carrying to those who besieged *Orleans*, the Narrative whereof, as related by <sup>q</sup> *Basset* and a *French* <sup>r</sup> Historian, is placed in the Margin: 'Tis indeed almost incredible that Fifteen hundred *English* under the Fatigue of a March, encumbered with the Charge of a large Quantity of Provisions, should gain a compleat Victory over Nine or Ten thousand of the Enemy, who attacked them under the Conduct of Persons of the first Distinction, and that by killing Fifteen hundred of them on the Spot, without the Loss of a single Soldier of Reputation.

It appears from the Title of *Basset's* Manuscript, that he continued his History to the Time of the Death of our *Knight*, though this Copy unhappily ends with this Battle; but if there be any perfect Exemplar remaining, it may furnish us with several Memorials relating to him, which otherwise may never be retrieved.

Hitherto his Courage seems to be unquestionable, and consequently no Foundation for the Character attributed to him by the Comedian; but the Remarker lays hold on his flying from the Battle of *Pataye*, which was immediately after the Breaking-up this unfortunate Siege of *Orleans*: And indeed some *French* <sup>s</sup> Historians say, That he and others fled from it; which <sup>t</sup> others express in more significant Terms, That he, and such others

<sup>p</sup> Rymer, vol. 10. p. 408. 7 H. 6.

<sup>q</sup> Et environ le temps de *Karesme* ensuivant, pource que vivres & artilleries commençoient a failir ou dit Siege, fut appointe & ordonne, que Sire *Jehan Fastolf* & Sire *Tho. Rampston* avec leurs gens vroyent devers le dit Regent a *Paris*, pour querir & leur admener au dit Siege des vivres & Artilleries; Lesquelx venuz & arrivez au dit lieu de *Paris*, par l'ordonnance du dit Monsieur le Regent firent charger grant nombre des vivres tant blez, farines, *harènes* & autres, comme artilleries sur chariotz chargez & chevaux. Et pour iceulx mener & conduire plus seurement au dit Siege, ordonna Sire *Simon Morbiere* Chivalier Prevost de *Paris* avec lui les Arbalestres de la cinquantane de *Paris*, & une partie des gens du propre hostel d'icellui Monsieur le Regent, pour aler avecques les ditz *Fastolf* & *Rampston* conduire iceulx vivres jusques au dit Siege, lesquelx partirent touzensemble jusques au nombre de quinze cens hommes de guerre, ou environ, & alerent avecques leurs ditz viveres jusques a *Tarnville* en *Beausse*. Et ung matin qu'il avoit tresfort gele & faissant grant froit, partirent du dit lieu de *Tarnville*, tendans leur chemin vers le dit Siege, & comme ils furent alez jusques environ ung village nomme *Rouvroys*, en unes grandes landes appercevoient les *François* adversaires venir de loings venir a l'encontre de eulx, & estoient bien en nombre tant *François* comme *Escois* de neuf a dix mille ou environ, ou estoient les Seigneurs & autres Nobles dont les noms en partie sensuivent, cestascavoir, Sire *Charles de Bourbon* filz aîné du Duc de *Bourbon*, Sire *Will. Steward* Connestable d'*Escoce*, &c. & plusieurs autres: pourquoy le dit *Fastolf* ordonna & mist tous les *Anglois* & autres de sa compaignie en bataille, & fist planter devant chacun archier ung pal agu pour rompre la force des chevaux a l'arriver des adversaires, & — fist mettre enclaver & lyer touz

les chevaux & charroiz, qu'ils avoient admenez avecques eulx, & yleques attendrent la venue des ditz adversaires, qui viendrent & assaillirent les ditz *Anglois* dedeins le dit cloz, qu'ils avoient ainsi fait comme dit est, mais iceulx *Anglois* se deffendrent moult viguerusement & vaillamment & tellement, que lesditz *François* se desconfirent & retrayrent & honteusement perdirent le champ, & s'enfuirent, & a celle noble victoire & decroulle furent occis, cestascavoir le dit Sire *Will. Steward* Connestable d'*Escoce* & son frere, &c. & plusieurs autres tant *François* comme *Escois* au nombre de xxv. ou environ. Apres laquelle noble & glorieuse victoire icellui Sire *Jehan Fastolf* & tous ceulx de sa compaignie, dont aucun ne fut occis ne navre, dont il doyt estre fait mention, partirent avecques leurs vivres & autres artilleries, & s'en alerent au dit Siege. *M. 9. in Officio Armorum.*

<sup>r</sup> Chartier Hist. de Ch. VII. p. 17. *Jehan Fastolf* estoit party de *Paris*, pour a vitailier & amener vivres au Siege, & pour ce que c'estoit au temps de *Karesme*, il y avoit plusieurs chars chargez de *harènes*, & furent iceux rencontrer pres de *Janville* en *Beausse* par le Duc de *Bourbon* & sa compaignie, lesquelx estoient beaucoup en plus grand nombre que les *Anglois*, la y eut de tresgrandes & grosses escarmouches, & *Stuart* Connestable d'*Escoce* & le Sire d'*Orval* y furent tuez, & environ deux cent hommes en leur compaignie; & icely *Fastolf* & ses gens s'en allerent au dit Siege d'*Orleans*.

<sup>s</sup> Hist. de Ch. VII. p. 378. Hist. de *Arthur* Duc de *Bretagne*, p. 756.

<sup>t</sup> Chartier Hist. de Ch. VII. p. 26. *Jehan Fastol* & plusieurs *Anglois*, qui peurent eschaper de ce combat, se retirent a *Corbeil*. *Menstrelet*, vol. 2. p. 46. mesmement messire *Jehan Fastol* — departirent enfuyant a plain cours pour sauver leurs vies.



as could escape [that is, from being killed or taken] in that sudden unexpected Surprise retired to *Corbeil*, while the Lord *Talbot* with the Lord *Scales*, *Hungerford*, and Sir *Thomas Rempston* had the Misfortune to be taken Prisoners of War: To which our own later \* Historians add, “*That for this his Departure from this Battle, the Duke of Bedford took from him the George and the Garter.*” A Charge of so high a Nature, and such a severe Animadversion, should have been vouched by authentick contemporary Writers, and ’till such shall be produced, let us consider what absurd Consequences are necessarily implied in this Censure, and whether these do not afford us reasonable Presumptions to doubt the Truth of this Tradition.

And here to omit that the Image of *St. George* was not in all probability a Symbol of the Order in that Age, and admitting that these Words of the later Historians should be construed only to mean, that the Cross of *St. George*, an Ensign of it, was taken from him; it will be however confessed, that this Duke, then Regent of *France*, could not constitute, or invest any Person with this Order, though by this Action (if it should be true) it must be allowed, that he had an absolute Power to divest a Companion, and that without the Knowledge of the Sovereign or any concurrence of the other Knights; and which is the more incredible, that he actually exercised this Power upon an Information only, without hearing or examining into the Truth of the Charge or Complaint, which seems not consistent with the Honour, Generosity, and exalted Character of this Regent, who had the greatest \* reverence for this Order, and was a most \* punctual Observer of its Statutes, as appears from several Circumstances: And it is very surprising that this most heroick Duke, who esteemed himself limited and circumscribed to the Statutes in the Case of the Election of our Knight, should be on a less Guard in deposing him, and thereby casting on him an indelible Infamy by a voluntary Power not allowed by the Statutes then in being; for the Degradation of a Knight who should fly from Battle was an Article first inserted into the Statutes made by *Hen. VIII*, which too is there restrained, “*if it should please the Sovereign, and the Company in the next Chapter.*”

But taking it for granted that the Regent, upon the first Representation of his Behaviour, should have been so far warmed as under that Impression to declare that our Knight might in his Opinion deserve to be degraded for this his supposed Demerit; or in the highest Extent as these Authors deliver it, that the Ensigns of the Order were really demanded and taken from him, yet this hasty Prepossession of the Regent cannot be construed to be any Diminution to the Character of our Knight, since

\* Hall's Chronicle, fol. 26 b. Hollingsh. p. 601. n. 50, &c.

x *Johannes* filius & frater Regum Dux *Bedfordie* Comes de *Richmund* & de *Kendale* & Constabularius *Anglia* — Licet pater meus Prioratum de *Okburne* mihi sub certa forma donasset — Volentes occupationem Spiritual. a nobis abdicari — Custodi & Canonicis liberæ Capellæ Sancti *Georgii* — in honorem gloriosi Martyris, quem inter omnes Cælicolas ex ordinis Militaris debito & præsertim præ-

textu Societatis Militaris, ad quam in eodem Collegio, quanquam immerito & minus digne socialiter sumus ascripti, præ cæteris cogimur singulariter quantum in nobis est plenius & integraliter concedimus. 3 Dec. 9 Hen. V. In Registro *Arundel* apud *Windsor*, p. 90. This being confirmed by the King on 21 July following, may probably be enrolled in the Tower.

y See *Ashmole's Hist.* p. 269.



these same Historians inform us, that after an Examination of this Charge these Ensigns were restored to him, and as they word it, *for apparent Causes of good Excuse, and against the Mind of the Lord Talbot*, who must have been a powerful Adversary: And though we have not the Particulars of his Vindication, or Specification of his Conduct, yet such an honourable Acquittal under these Circumstances gives reasonable Grounds to presume, that this sudden Accusation had no Pretence of Foundation but was a causeless Defamation, and that his Retiring was irreproachable.

It is the greatest Degree of Evidence that this Regent was fully convinced and satisfied in the Management of our Knight in this critical nice Juncture, in that he afterwards continued to employ him in military and civil Administrations of the highest Importance; for in 1430 he constituted him his <sup>2</sup> Lieutenant in *Caen*, as being a Person of Vigilance and Experience in Wars: In 11 *Hen. VI.* he went <sup>a</sup> into *France* in the Company of this Regent, and was soon afterwards one of the Embassadors sent to the <sup>b</sup> Council of *Basil*, and one of those appointed to treat of a <sup>c</sup> final or temporary Peace with the Adversary of *France*. In 1432 he with the Lord <sup>d</sup> *Willoughby*, commanded the Army which assisted the Duke of *Bretagne* against the Duke of *Alençon*: In 12 *Hen. VI.* being then going into foreign Parts <sup>e</sup> he had License to constitute *John Fastolf* of *Olton*, Esq; his general Attorney; and in the 14th Year was again one of the <sup>f</sup> Embassadors to conclude a Peace with the Adversary of *France*. In this Year the Regent died, and with him all the *Englishmens* good Fortune; and which is the fullest Proof of his Confidence in our Knight he constituted him one of the <sup>g</sup> Executors of his last Will.

But least it should be imagined that this Regent might be any ways partial in his private Affections for our Knight, that Suspicion will be obviated by the Grant made by the Duke of <sup>b</sup> *York*, the succeeding Lieutenant of *France*, of an Annuity of Twenty Pounds yearly out of his own Lands to him *for his notable and laudable Service and good Counsel*, which is a convincing Argument of this Duke's Sentiments of his Deserts. In 22 *Hen. VI.* he obtained License to employ some <sup>i</sup> Ships for the Furnishing of his House: In 29 *Hen. VI.* he conveyed to *John* the Cardinal <sup>k</sup> Archbishop of *York* and others, his Mannor of *Castre* in *Fleg*, and several other Lands therein mentioned.

Being arrived to the Age of Eighty, he was seized with an <sup>l</sup> hectic Fever and Asthma, under which he laboured for 148 Days 'till <sup>m</sup> St. *Leo-*

<sup>z</sup> Huet Origines de Caen, p. 50.

<sup>a</sup> Rymer, vol. 10. p. 525.

<sup>b</sup> Ibid. p. 527.

<sup>c</sup> Ibid. p. 530.

<sup>d</sup> Chartier Hist. de Ch. VII. p. 59.

<sup>e</sup> Rot. Fran. 12 H. VI. m. 5. 26 January.

<sup>f</sup> Rymer, vol. 10. p. 642.

<sup>g</sup> Registr. Chichele, vol. 1. p. 475.

<sup>h</sup> Sandford Geneal. Hist. p. 386.

<sup>i</sup> Rymer, vol. 11. p. 44.

<sup>k</sup> Claus. 29 H. VI.

<sup>l</sup> E MS. penes Dom. *Hans Sloanne*, Baronetum. Cum hanc ad Ethicam febrem sive passionem devenerunt plurimum senescentes disponuntur ad illam passionem sicut *Johannes Fastolf* miles in ætate octa-

ginta annorum illo morbo cum passione Asmatis, videlicet stricti anhelitus occasione pulmonis tumescantis non potuit de leni attrahere anhelitum sive aerem suum quando emittitur, unde obiit ex dictis passionibus infra 148 diebus a prima die inceptions dictæ febris ethicæ, ut bene per experientiam numeravi.

<sup>m</sup> In 1459, Title to Basset's MS. in the Heralds Library. MS. in Bibl. Bodl. Gul. Laudi n. 504. Quo Anno 1459, *Job. Fastolf* miles de Comitatu *Norfolk*. obiit. An old Book of Law-Terms and Memorandums collected by one *Reynes of Acle* in *Norfolk*, Obiit præclarus Vir *Johannes Fastolf* miles Dominus de *Castre* in die Sancti *Leonardi* 1459, & sepelitur in Abbatia S. *Benedicti* de *Hulmo*.



nard's Feast 1459, when he died, and was buried in the Abbey of St. Benedictus de Hulme in Norwich.

He made a Will, and therein John Paston sen. William Worcestre and others his <sup>n</sup> Executors, which the Collector hath not had the good Fortune to find; in which 'tis probable several of his Benefactions may be specified.

After his Death a Writ of Enquiry issued to know what <sup>o</sup> Lands he held in York and Wilts, and the <sup>p</sup> Jury find that he died seized of the Mannors of Redham, Vannes, Bozuns in Castre, Drayton, Haylsdon, Heynford Saxthorp, Wurterton, Heringby Fennes, Heringby Spencers, Guton in Brundeston, Tickwell, Beyghton, the third Part of Rumbam, and One hundred Acres of Land in Erleham in Norfolk, Burneviles, Caltoftys, Hemyhals in Cotton Kirkley, Ashthorp Mareland in Suffolk, Lands in Gorlesb, the Mannors of Wyghton, Neathrewold, and Bentley in Yorkshire, and Castlecombe in Wilts.

The Lands in Yorkshire and Wiltshire came to him by his Marriage with Milicent the Widow of Sir Stephen, third Son of the Lord Scroope, to whom he was married in Ireland on the Feast of <sup>q</sup> St. Hillary in 10 Hen. IV, when he settled on her 100 l. yearly for Pinmoney, which Lady was Daughter and Coheir of Robert Lord Tibetot, and a Legatee in the Will of her first Husband <sup>r</sup> made in 6 Hen. IV; and we find that these Lands descended to <sup>j</sup> Stephen Lescrope Esq; her Son and Heir.

This Extract relating to the Time of his Marriage, with some others taken from the Itinerary of William Wircestre and the Proctor's Book, was communicated in the most obliging Manner by the Reverend Mr. Baker of Cambridge, who after observing the Insufficiency of human Learning in all its Articles, is the most noted Person for his Readiness in assisting and directing all Searchers into Antiquities, and is above all the Praise and Acknowledgements they can render him.

The Black-Book of this Order mentions, besides his Election, nothing more than his Presence or Absence at the Feasts; that in the 5th and 8th of Hen. VI, he was in France, in the 9th in Normandy, in the 10th and 13th with the Regent in France, in the 14th, 15th, and 16th in Normandy; and that in 32 Hen. VI, he was so old and infirm, that he could not travel on Foot or Horseback without the greatest Hazard of his Health, so that his Absence was afterwards excused.

In the Church-window of Pulham-Mary in Norfolk, was formerly his Effigies or Picture in Armour gilt, his Crest on a Wreath Azure and Or, a Plume of Feathers Argent, and two Escutcheons with the Cross of St. George within the Garter, and his Lady kneeling in her Coat-Armour

<sup>n</sup> See the Itinerary of William Worcestre quoted in the following Note (q) wherein at p. 245, is an Instrument whereby Sir William Yelverton, one of the Executors of Sir John Fastolf and Will. Jenney and Will. Wurcetre another of his Executors, appoint a Surveyor of the Lands of the Testator in Southwark and the County of Surry.

<sup>o</sup> Pat. 38 H. VI. p. 1. m. 19 d. 28 Nov.

<sup>p</sup> Esch. 38 & 39 H. VI. n 45.

<sup>q</sup> Miscell. M. 221 in Bibl. C. C. C. Itinerar. Willm Worceter. Md. quod — temporis quo Johannes Fastolf Armiger sponsabat Milcentam Fastolf Dominam de Castelcomb filiam Domini Roberti Ti-

betot & Relictam Domini Stephani Scrope Chevalier fuit apud — in Hibernia in festo S. Hillarii anno 10 R. R. Henrici quarti & obligavit se in Mille libris — ut eadem Domina Milcenta quolibet anno durante vita ejus haberet ad Cameram centum libras & sic recepit a dicto anno usq; annum xxiiii R. R. Hen. VI. See Thoroton's Nottinghamshire, p. 104. Claus. 13 H. IV.

<sup>r</sup> Registr. Arundel. f. 40 b. vol. 2.

<sup>s</sup> Rot. Fin. 38 H. VI. & 1 E. IV.

<sup>t</sup> E. 26. penes me p. 23 b. & L. 13. p. 23. and in Bicklinge Church were his Arms within a Garter.



*Argent*, a Saltire Gules, with these Words subscribed, *Orate pro animabus Johannis Fastolf, qui multa bona fecit tempore vite* — the Residue not legible when this Description was taken.

But though this Picture of his Person be defaced, we have however ample Testimonies of the Magnificence and Greatness of his Mind in several Articles very honorary to his Memory.

He was very splendid and sumptuous in his Buildings; at *Caſtre* near *Yarmouth*, the antient Seat of the Family, are to be ſeen the Remains of a noble Caſtle or Houſe erected by him, at one Corner whereof is ſtill a ruined Tower of Brick above One hundred Foot high, built in an odd Shape; which Houſe, according to the current Tradition, was erected by a *French* Nobleman taken Priſoner in the Wars by our Knight, according to the Model and Architecture of his own Caſtle in *France* as the Price of his Ranſome; which if true, might be the abovementioned Duke of *Alençon*. On an Arch over a Bow-window on the Inſide of theſe Ruins in Stone-work, in Baſſe-relieve, are carved the Arms of our Knight ſurrounded with the *Garter*, exhibited in the Frontiſpiece of theſe Memoirs, becauſe his Plate of Arms is not to be found in the Chapel of *Windſor*. He likewiſe built an Houſe in *Yarmouth*, and a "Royal Place (as 'tis termed) in *Southwark*.

His Munificence was very extenſive: He was a great Encourager of Learning in General by his Benefactions, and a Patron and *Mecenas* to learned Men in Particular: But it happens, that the Compleating ſeveral of theſe Deſigns being left to the Direction of his Executors, happened by ſome Means or other to be abortive, or at leaſt his Name, as the Founder, is almoſt wholly forgotten.

In the Proctor's Book of the University of \* *Cambridge* there is entred the Expence of ſeveral Meſſengers ſent to the Executors of our Knight, and to the Lord Chancellor of *England*, the Superiſor of his Will, for a Beneficence towards the Building the Schools of Philoſophy and Law, which by the Care taken in procuring it, ſeems to have been conſiderable, yet his Name occurs not in the *Miſſa pro Benefactoribus*.

To *Magdalen-Colledge* in *Oxford* he was a conſiderable Benefactor, for which his Name is commemorated in an Anniverſary Speech; but it happens that the College cannot give the Particulars at large, becauſe our Knight enfeoffed the Founder in his Life-time; but it is known that the *Boars-head* in *Southwark*, which now retains that Name, though divided

\* Vinc. MS. in Off. Arm. n. 18. p. 122.

x A.D. 1459. Item pro cera pro literis miſſis Executoribus *Foſſalfe* militis 2 d.

Item pro Scriptura duarum literarum miſſarum eiſdem Executoribus 20 d.

Item ſolut. Procuratoribus pro expenſis ſuis equitando ad *Telverton*, *Paſton*, Executor. Domini *Foſſalff* militis unacum 8 s. pro conductione trium equorum ad octo dies & 2 s. 8 d. pro conductione famuli 18 s. 8 d.

Item ſolut. magiſtro *Olivero* Procuratori pro expenſis ſuis equitando cum literis Univerſitatis ad Dom. Cancellarium *Anglia* pro benevolentia habenda, eo quod ſit Principaliſ Executor, Superiſor bonorum *Johannes Faſſolff* militis & pro conductione equorum & ſcriptura literæ 15 s. 4 d. 9.

Item una lagena vini tradit. M. *Paſton* Executori *Foſſalff* 10 d.

Item ſolut. magiſtro *Roberto Calton* Equitanti ad Executorem *Johannis Faſſolff* militis cum literis Univerſitatis in procuracionem pecuniarum ad novam Edificationem 6 s. 8 d. & in ſcriptura earundem literarum 8 d. ob. — 7 s. 4 d.

The new Buildings here referred to, were doubtleſs the Structures of the Schools of Philoſophy and Civil Law, for which the firſt Order under Lawrence Biſhop of *Durham* Chancellor of the Univerſity, is dated the Laſt of June 1458; for in the ſame Register under 1463, ſolutum magiſtro *Calton* (the Perſon abovementioned) pro ſcolis Juris Civilis & Philoſophiæ, which were not perfected 'till 1467 or later.



into Tenements, yielding 150 *l.* yearly, and *Caldecot* Mannor in *Suffolk* were Part of the Lands he gave, and that *Lovingland* in that County, as 'tis conjectured, was another Part of his Donations.

At *Castre*, his Seat in *Norfolk*, he intended his Executors should erect a College for a Master, six Priests, and seven poor Men, and to Endow it with an Annuity of 120 Marks chargeable upon several Mannors, and a Petition was exhibited to the Crown for a License, and an Inquisition was taken thereon, which noble Design, by some Accident, dwindled down to a Chantry; for in the Valuation taken 26 *Hen. VIII.* *Cantaria in Castre-Hall ex fundatione Joh. Fastolf militis, valet 53 s. 4 d. per Annum.*

It is particularly remembred that he was bountiful to the Officers of Arms; and we find by this *Worcestre* and *Basset* that he was a Patron to Persons of Learning and Industry.

Having this Misfortune, that the Memory of his particular Liberalities to publick and pious Uses was soon worn out, *John Beauchamp* Lord of *Powyke*, in his Will made 15 *Ed. IV.* appointed a Chantry more-especially for the Soul of Sir *John Fastolf*.

These are the few Notices that the Collector hath hitherto been able to retrieve of the publick Actions of our Knight, and the Estimate of the Merits of them is left to the Reader's Judgement: But since the Statutes of this Order require a noble Birth, as one of the Qualifications for an Admission, let us also search into his Lineage and Descent: And on this Article *Peter Le Neve* Esq; *Norroy King of Arms*, an exact Enquirer into Antiquities, hath been pleased to impart several Memorials (distinguished by the Letters *P. L. N.*) taken out of the immense Magazine that he hath with an unusual Industry amassed together, with a Design to compile a perfect History of the County of *Norfolk*, which he is now digesting into Method, whereby he will raise a durable Monument of his great Zeal for the Promoting the Honour of the Families of those Parts.

To pass by the Observation that one *Fastolfes* was Master of a Mint under King *Edgar*: Our Knight was certainly descended from a Family of great Distinction in *Norfolk*, seated at *Castre* in *Fleg* near *Great Tarmouth*.

*Nicholas Fastolf* held <sup>d</sup> Lands in 9 *Ed. II.* in *Wychinton*, *Redham*, &c. and in that Year two Fines were levied, the <sup>e</sup> First between *John Fastolf* querent, *Thomas Fastolf* Parson of *Ekenham* and *Nicholas Fastolf* deforciant of Lands in *Castre* and *Great Tarmouth*; and by the Second several Lands in *Tarmouth* and *Fleg* in *Norfolk*, and *Reydon* in *Suffolk*, were settled on the said *John* and *Joan* his Wife for their Lives, the Remainder to *Nicholas* Son of *John* and *Ida* his Wife in Tail, Remainder in Fee to the right Heirs of *Joan*. *Nicholas* was <sup>f</sup> Chief Justice of *Ireland* in 1 *Ed. III.* and

<sup>y</sup> In custody of Dr. Tanner.

<sup>z</sup> Vinc. MS. in Off. Arm. n. 18. p. 122.

<sup>a</sup> Logge Qu. 13. in Cur. Prærog. Cant.

<sup>b</sup> Sir And. Fountain's Saxon Coins, Tab. 5. n. 10. P. L. N.

<sup>c</sup> Camden Britan. de Icenis. Castor sedes quondam fuit Joannis Fastolf militis celeberrimi.

<sup>d</sup> Nomina villarum.

<sup>e</sup> Fines 9 E. 2. P. L. N.

<sup>f</sup> Claus. 1 E. 3. p. 2. m. 20.



was a <sup>g</sup> Justice itinerant in *Nottingham*, and this <sup>b</sup> *Nicholas* Son of *John* with *Ada* his Wife, settled Lands in *Castre* and other Places in *Norfolk*, and *Reydon* in *Suffolk*, on themselves in Tail, then to the Heirs of *Nicholas*, Remainder to *John* Son of *John* in Tail, Remainder to *Thomas* and *Richard* Brothers to *John*. In the 20th Year <sup>i</sup> *Alexander* held Lands in *Reppes*, and in the 23d *Thomas* Son of *Alexander* held <sup>k</sup> others in *Tarmouth*, and in the 35th Year this *Thomas* died seized of <sup>l</sup> *Pankesford*, *Southwalsham* and *Randeworth*, and in the 48th *John Fastolf* was sent into <sup>m</sup> foreign Parts about some secret Affairs which the King laid much to Heart; in which Year *Hugh* <sup>n</sup> *Fastolf* of *Great Tarmouth* and *John Bite* of *Little Tarmouth* were Lieutenants of *William Nevil* the Admiral, as the said *Hugh* had <sup>o</sup> formerly been in the 38th Year to *William Herle* Admiral of the North Parts, against whom, being of *Great Tarmouth*, we find a Complaint lodged in Parliament 50 Ed. III. of Extortions and Oppressions to the great Damage of the King and his Subjects, of which Imputation after an Enquiry he was honourably acquitted in the <sup>p</sup> following Parliament, and this *Hugh* was Brother of <sup>q</sup> *John*. In 51 E. III. *John Lakenhith* grants to *John* Son of *Hugh Fastolf* and *Margaret* his Wife Daughter of *Robert Fitz-Rauf*, and to the Heirs of the Body of the said *Margaret*, the <sup>r</sup> Mannors of *Bentley*, *Longeston*, *Playford*, *Foxhale*, *Conharwe*, *Rendlesham*, and *Sholondhall* in *Naketon*, with the Advowsons of *Sholond*, *Naketon*, *Hokton*, and *Wendham combusta*. And in 1 Rich. II. the Earl of *Warwick* Admiral, makes <sup>s</sup> *John Fastolf* of *Tarmouth* his Deputy, who being a Knight had a <sup>t</sup> Protection in the third Year, being then going to Sea in the Service of the Crown, and made *Hugh Fastolf* and *John* the Elder his general Attornies in his Absence; he held <sup>u</sup> Rolebies in *Tarmouth* in Right of his Wife *Margaret*, and <sup>x</sup> Sir *Hugh* [his Father] dying in 5 Rich. II, he obtained a <sup>y</sup> Confirmation of Free-warren in his Demesne-lands of *Castre* and *Thwayte*, first granted in 44 Hen. III. to *Robert de Castre*. <sup>z</sup> *Hugh Fastolf* granted in 2 Rich. II, to *John* his Brother, the Mannors of *Old Kerkale*, *Pakefield*, *Karleton*, *Kelrugland*, *Braderwell*, *Belton*, *Saplof*, &c.

This Family being divided at length into several Branches, shared among them the Inheritances mentioned above to be conveyed by *Lakenhith* and others: *John Fastolf* Knight, in the <sup>a</sup> Right of *Margaret* his Wife, held Rolebies, *Tunstall*, *Botillers*, *Wichampton*, and <sup>b</sup> *Hugh* Son and Heir of *John* held the Mannor of *Naketon* in *Suffolk*; *Hugh Fastolf* Knight, held <sup>c</sup> *Tunstall*, *Biston*, *Renghammershe* in *Norfolk*, and *John* was his Son and <sup>d</sup> Heir. *Maud*, Widow of Sir *Hugh*, held half of <sup>e</sup> *Tunstall* Mannor and half of *Wheteacremershe*; and *John Fastolf* held the Mannor of <sup>f</sup> *Sho-*

<sup>g</sup> Dugd. Chron. Series.

<sup>h</sup> Fin. 6 E. 3. P. L. N.

<sup>i</sup> Auxil. ad primogen. Reg. milit. faciend.

<sup>k</sup> Fin. 23 E. 3. P. L. N.

<sup>l</sup> Esch. 35 E. 3. n. 26. Norf.

<sup>m</sup> Rymer, vol. 7. p. 33.

<sup>n</sup> Fran. 48 E. 3. m. 20. 3 Febr.

<sup>o</sup> Plac. Mich. 38 E. 3. coram Rege, P. L. N.

<sup>p</sup> Rot. Parl. n. 96.

<sup>q</sup> Fin. 41 E. 3. P. L. N.

<sup>r</sup> Claus. 51 E. 3. in dorso.

<sup>s</sup> Fran. 1 R. 2. m. 2.

<sup>t</sup> Rymer, vol. 7. p. 257.

<sup>u</sup> Esc. 7 R. 2.

<sup>x</sup> Esc. 5 R. 2. n. 49.

<sup>y</sup> Pat. 7 R. 2. p. 1.

<sup>z</sup> Claus. 2 R. 2. m. 18.

<sup>a</sup> Esc. 7 H. 4. n. 34.

<sup>b</sup> Hill. Fin. 10 H. 4.

<sup>c</sup> Esc. 5 H. 5. n. 49.

<sup>d</sup> Fin. 22 H. 6.

<sup>e</sup> Esc. 15 H. 6. n. 39.

<sup>f</sup> Esc. 26 H. 6.



*lond-hall* in *Suffolk* with the Mannors of *Bentley* and *Langston*, and also the Mannors of *Tunstall*, *Biston*, *Benghammershe* in *Norfolk*, leaving his Son *Thomas* then seven Years old. But the Branch whence our Knight descended was seated at *Castre*, where <sup>g</sup> *John* Son of *Nicholas* in 1393 orders himself to be buried in the Church of the *Holy Trinity*, in which Place was also a free Chappel dedicated to St. *John the Baptist*, to which <sup>b</sup> *John Fastolf* the Elder presented in 1377, and *John* Son of *Alexander* in 1383, and our Knight himself in 1444. *Wever* calls it a College, wherein he is mistaken, as that Oracle in all the Learning relating to Monasteries the Reverend Dr. *Tanner*, the worthy Chancellor of *Norwich*, hath acquainted this Collector, who hath very kindly imparted several Notices touching the Families and Persons of the Knights of this Order, who have been resident in that Diocess, and who hath frequently condescended to instruct him in several other Parts of Antiquities, in which the Doctor is a compleat and accurate Master. In the Registry of *Norwich* there are several Presentations and the last Wills of many of this Family, which being so numerous, and spreading into several Branches with the same Christian Names, by these Means and the Frequency of mutual Settlements, it becomes a difficult Task to deduce the Pedigree of our Knight in a direct Line, though there seems to be no Doubt but that he was the chief Heir-male, being seized of the antient Patrimony of *Castre*; we cannot however be mistaken in the Person of our Knight, who dying on St. *Leonard's* Day in 1459, at the Age of eighty Years, must of course be born in or about 1378. <sup>k</sup> *Wever* saith, that *John Fastolf* Esq; was his Father, and in another <sup>l</sup> Place mentions one of this Name who died in 1445, who married *Catherine* Daughter of *Bedingfield*, who survived till 1478. Some MSS. <sup>m</sup> make him Son of *Hugh*, who was the Son of *John* by *Margaret* Daughter and Co-heir of *John*, Son of Sir *Thomas Holebroke* as follows, which is here inserted in order for a farther Examination.

<sup>g</sup> Liber Haydon in Registro Norwic.

<sup>b</sup> E Registris Episcop. Norwic.

<sup>i</sup> To Holton by Sir John Fastolf Kt. in 1384, as also Rendlesham in 1388, to One-House in 1396, to Naketon in 1404, to Brandeston, Hellefden, and Quidenham in 1448, to West Tofts in 1393, to Saint Margaret's in Norwich 1439, to the Mediety of Ta-

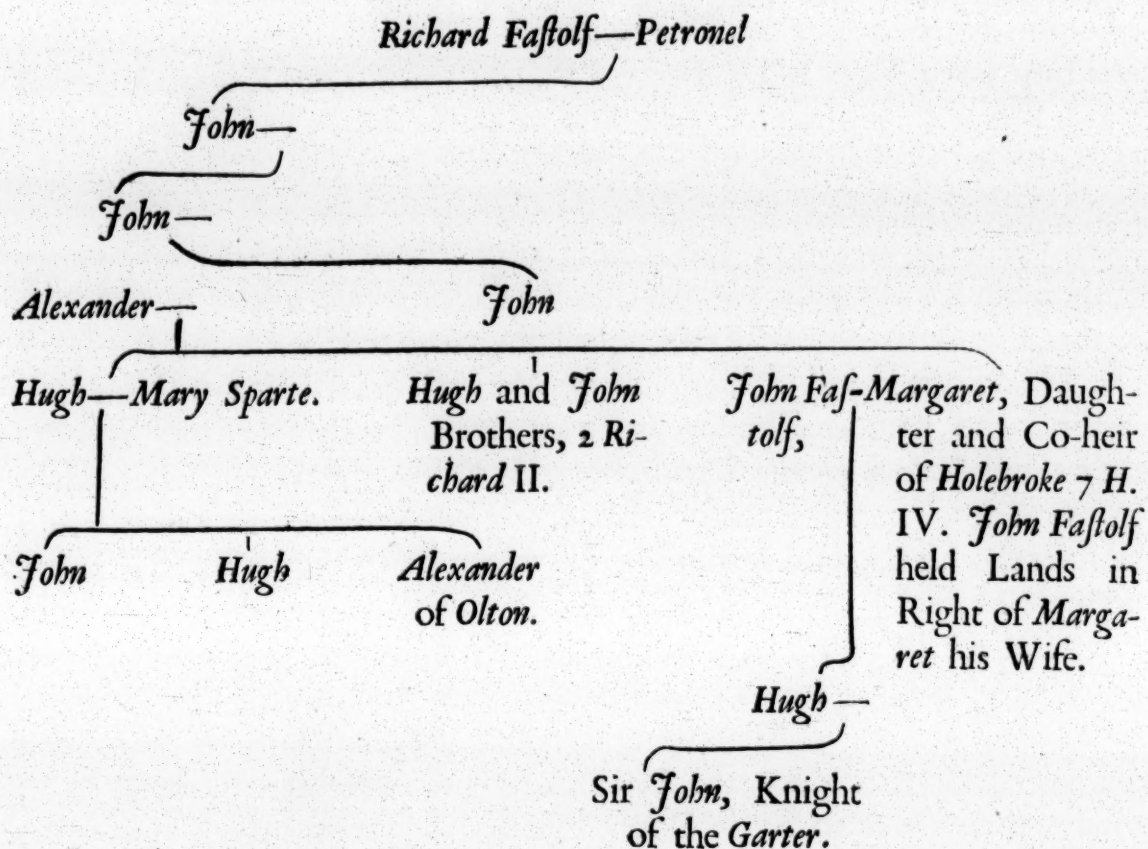
versham, and to the Rectory of Stokesby in 1444, and several others.

<sup>k</sup> P. 363.

<sup>l</sup> P. 784.

<sup>m</sup> A xi. penes me, p. 201. A 21. p. 18 b. Vinc MS. n. 40. in Off. Arm. in the later Part.





'Tis certain *Margery* Wife of <sup>n</sup> John Son of *Hugh Fastolf* being sixteen Years of Age, was one of the Heirs to *John Holbroke*, in which Right the Mannours of *Holbroke*, *Tatington*, *Langeston*, *Bentley*, *Foxhale*, *Rendlesham*, *Sholland-hall* in *Naketon*, and *More-hall* in *Playford* descended to her.

Indeed we find one *Hugh* Sheriff of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk* in 13 R. II, and in the following Year <sup>o</sup> Knight of the Shire for *Norfolk*, and <sup>p</sup> one of this Name was Son and Heir of Sir *John Fastolf* in 7 H. IV, whose <sup>q</sup> Homage was taken in 7 H. V, and this *Hugh* (or another of that Name) <sup>r</sup> died 7 H. VI, leaving his Son *John* then 21 Years old, which latter cannot be our Knight of the *Garter* for at that Time he must have been 49 Years old, and therefore this *John*, Son of *Hugh*, might be the Person <sup>s</sup> who died in or before 22 H. VI.

The Arms of our Knight have been already blazoned in this Narrative, and these and his Crest as carved upon the Arch of a Window, are exhibited in the Frontispiece of these *Memoirs*.

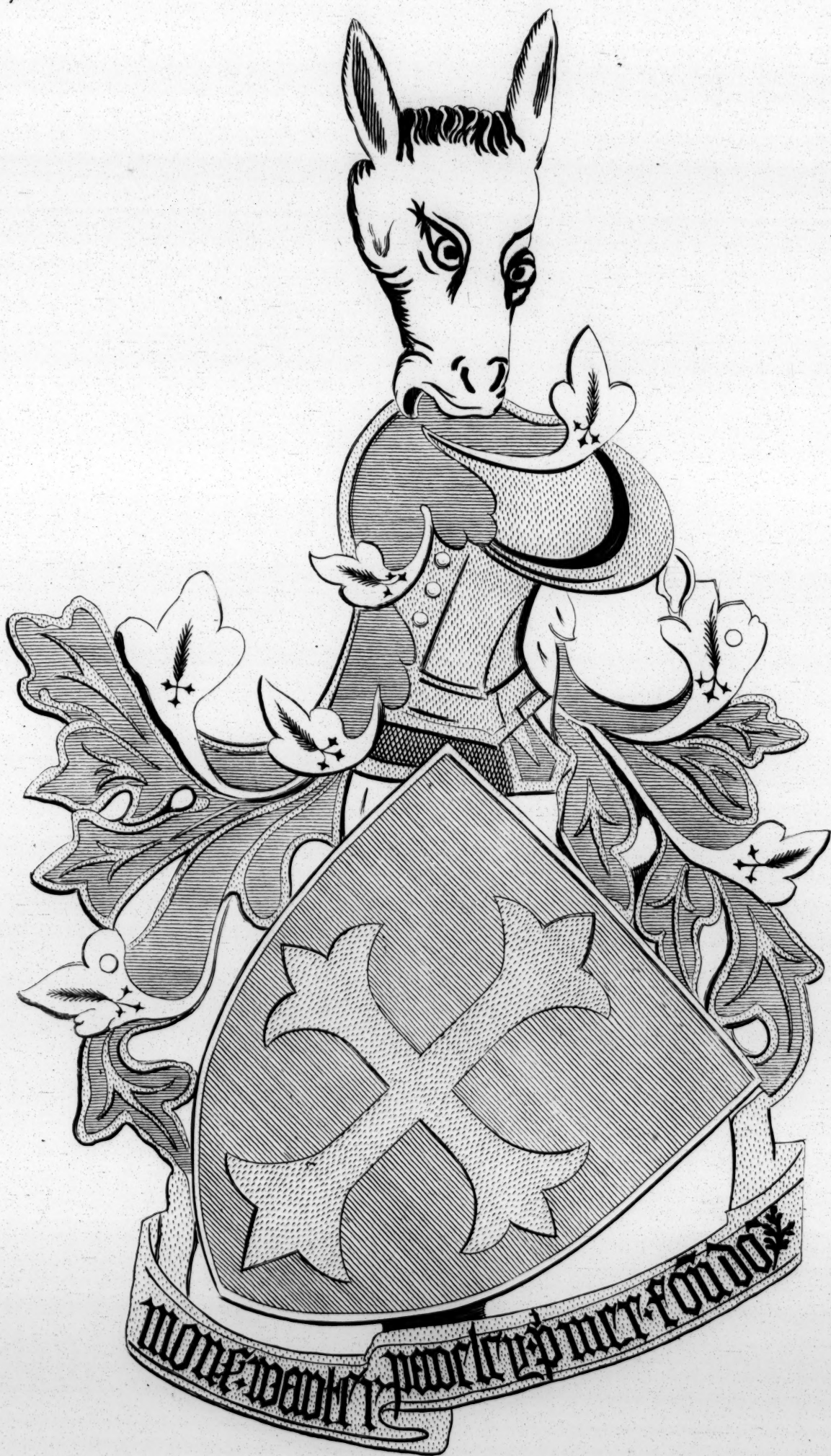
<sup>n</sup> Esc. 50 E. 3. n. 31.  
<sup>o</sup> Claus. 14 R. 2. m. 30 d.  
<sup>p</sup> Esc. 7 H. 4. P. L. N.

<sup>q</sup> Fin. 7 H. 5. m. 10. P. L. N.  
<sup>r</sup> Esc. 7 H. 6. n. 61. Esc. 8 H. 6. n. 51. P. L. N.  
<sup>s</sup> Rot. Fin. Mich. 22 H. 6. P. L. N.

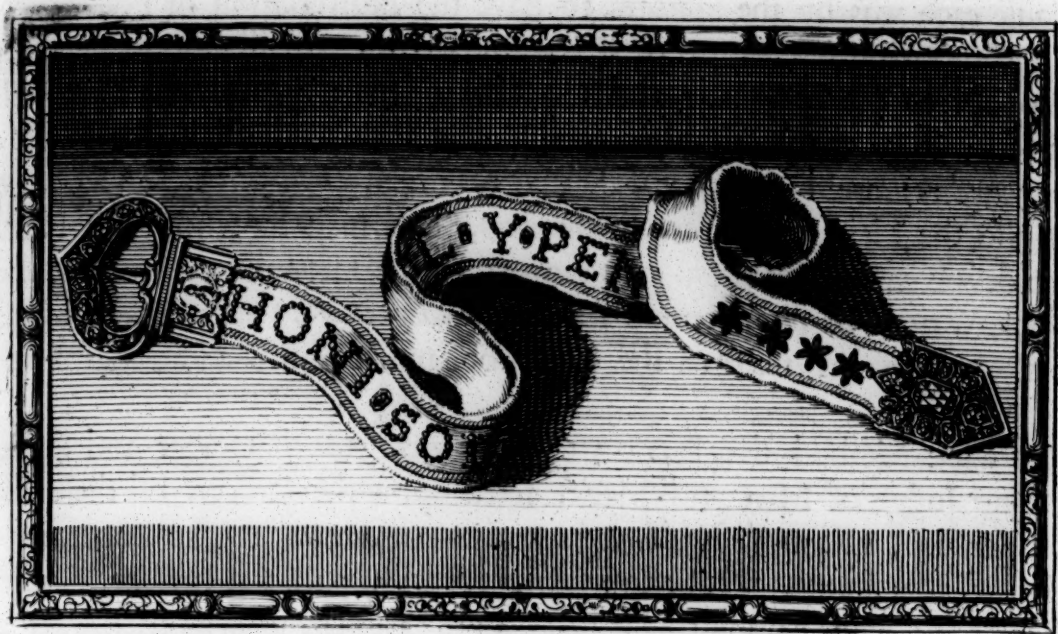












# MEMOIRS

Of the LIFE of

Sir Walter Paveley.



SIR WALTER PAVELET is on his Plate in this Stall stiled *Premier Foundour*; that is, he was one of the original Companions appointed or elected upon the Erection of this Most Noble ORDER, whose Glory (as <sup>a</sup> Mr. Camden saith of them collectively) can never be obliterated, having in those Days, for military Vertue and Bravery, had few Equals, and upon that Account were advanced to this Honour: so fair and conspicuous was the whole Building contrived and finished by the first grand Architect the FOUNDER. This Appellation of <sup>b</sup> *First Founders* is always attributed to the first Knights, to distinguish them from their Successors, who by the Statutes are likewise for ever accounted and named <sup>c</sup> *Founders*.

<sup>a</sup> In Berkshire.

<sup>b</sup> Stat. Ed. III. Primi, Primarii, Primævi Fundatores.

<sup>c</sup> Ibid. Art. 19.

<sup>d</sup> Dr. Heylin



<sup>d</sup> Dr. Heylin imagined, that the Title of *First Founders* was given them, because each was by the Statutes to have the Nomination or Presentation of a Canon in the Chappel of *Windsor*, but this Appellation seems rather analogous to the Language and Customs of that Age observed in lesser Matters; so as the Visitors of some Colleges (who stand in the Place of the *Founders*) are by the local Statutes termed, *Fundatores in perpetuum*; and also the Heirs of the true Founders, and such to whom the Patronage devolved by Purchase, or Grants from the Crown, were in the monastick Writers in like manner stiled, *Founders*: As <sup>e</sup> also other Benefactors, who either restored the Old, or made some additional Foundation.

By what Method the ROYAL FOUNDER, that great and distinguishing Judge of Men and Merit, fixed upon the Persons of these first Companions, will in all likelihood remain undiscovered: The Commencement of the Statutes ascribed to him, according to the present Copies, intimate his own Appointment of them: <sup>f</sup> *Froissart* indeed mentions an Election *Adoncques furent eleus*, but omits by whom or in what manner the same was made.

The Fancy of a <sup>g</sup> Poet may be innocently indulged, in virtue of a License peculiar to that Art, which is not fettered by the strict Rules that confine Historians, in supposing, that since this Order hath been said to have been erected at, in, or after a general *Justing*, the *Garter*, as the Reward and Signature of the greatest Honour might be given to those, who behaved themselves best in that military Prelude or Exercise, by the Command of the Founder himself, according to his own Judgement singly, or

<sup>d</sup> *History of St. George*, p. 704.

<sup>e</sup> Dr. Tanner's learned *Introduction to his Notitia Monastica*.

<sup>f</sup> See above in Page 95.

<sup>g</sup> *Christopher. Oclandi Anglorum Prælia* 1582.

Sic pius *Eduardus*, certamina ludicra Martis  
Mox haud injucunda meæ spectacula plebi  
Exhibeamus, ait. Proceres quid dicitis? omnes  
Assensum præbent. Phalææ bullatæq; fræna,  
Auratæ sellæ, ornamenta parantur equorum,  
Conscendunt & equos. Rex sculptis aureis armis  
Sternaci utebatur equo, gravioribus armis  
Fraxinei ligni grandi concurritur ictu,  
Aere ut hastarum summo fragmenta volarent.  
Quiq; sui frontem vibrata percutit hostis  
Cuspide, perrupto lignoq; reverberat ipsum  
Crebrius, hic primas hujus certaminis aufert.  
Nox interveniens cursum dirimebat equorum,  
Rex proceresq; ejus repetunt convivia læti,  
Noctes & cœnas dixisses esse Deorum.  
Quatriduo exacto concertatoribus ampla  
Præmia dat Princeps, baccatas induit illis  
Crura periscelides, quas unio mistus Eous  
Commendat, flammis interlucente pyropo.  
Præterea ex auro puro, quod odorifer Indus  
Miserat, inserta donabat Jaspide gemma,  
Si formam spectes, duplicato ex Sygmate torques.  
Et statuit numerum præclara hac classe locandum  
Stirpis honorificæ primates *quattuor* atq;  
*Viginti*, ante alios quorum laus bellica floret.  
Hoc sacrum ille suos jussit servare nepotes,  
Egregium fane factum, quod nulla vetustas,  
Nulli aut annorum series abolere valebit.

Namq; ad virtutes ingens est gloria veras  
Ac oblatus honor stimulus. Mittuntur ad ædes  
Inde suas satrapæ regali munere dites.

De Eduardo Tertio.

Ille memor veteres *Arthuri* instaurat honores,  
Heroasq; vocat duri ad præludia belli:  
Quisquis equos melior domat, & qui viribus audet  
Cominus aut gladio certare, aut eminus hasta:  
Seu valido malit bellum committere pugno:  
Cuncti adsint, meritæq; expectent præmia palmæ  
Quoscunq; accendit peregrini gloria Martis;  
Invitat fama Juvenes, duriq; laboris  
Cruralem vittam gemmis ostroq; rigentem  
Mercedem ponit, pretium par talibus ausis.  
Convenere Duces, & nunc per tela, per hostes  
Haud dubiam in mortem vadunt, & fata futura  
Securi famæ non jam metuenda laceffunt.  
Ex illo florere *Edwardi*, & crescere laudes,  
Gallorum fortuna retro sublapsa referri.  
Sed *Britonum* neu forte ingens decus interrumpat  
Longa dies, tantiq; abolefcet gloria fasti,  
Perpetua serie succedit Martius ordo  
Heroum: Si quis bello est præclarus & armis,  
Sive fide, fidei monumentum & præmia belli,  
Aurea Rex lævæ subnectit cingula suræ,  
Nunc eadem jactant eadem ad fastigia vecti  
Quinq; & viginti proceres, quos æquus amavit  
*Carolus*, atq; ardens instigat ad optima Virtus.

*J. Spark* *Ædis Christi Alumnus in Aula Vindesoria*  
*D. Georgio instaurata in Mus. Angl. vol. 2.*  
p. 64.

with



with the concurrent Advice of others ; and certainly no Incongruity will result from this Hypothesis. But in what Manner soever the Designation might be, it is manifest that the first Fraternity consisted generally of young Gentlemen of great Quality, and of the most promising Hopes, many of whom were at that time under the Degree of the Peerage, to which some of them were afterwards most deservedly promoted ; and as it is evident that several Noblemen of most illustrious Extractions, of large Fortunes, and in great Favour with the Crown, and eminently distinguished by their Courage and Actions in War, as the Earls of *Oxford*, *Pembroke*, *Huntington*, &c. were not chosen of this Society upon its Institution, 'tis very remarkable that others who had before that time sufficiently signalized themselves in War, being pretermitted at the Foundation, were afterwards elected into this Order upon some of the earliest Vacancies ; such were the Earls of *Suffolk* and *Northampton*, the Lord *Cobham* of *Sterborough*, and the ever Famous Sir *Walter Manny*, Persons of the first Figure in the Histories of that Age, and renowned for their Valour and successful military Actions.

The Design of the present Collection is by Way of Promptuary to ascertain the Persons of the Knights Companions, and their Successions in the several Stalls, and to shew, that each of them answered the Qualifications required by the Statutes, of a noble Birth, and Merit in military Exploits, and that briefly : for the Drudgery of compiling Pedigrees from Records, is no more suitable to the Genius, than consistent with the Leisure of the Editor, for which Defects there will be found in these genealogical Tables, as in geographical Maps of distant Countries, some void Spaces, which might be supplied by taking the proper Pains. Then again, with regard to the personal Actions of these Knights, it is become impossible, by Means of the Distance of Ages, and the Silence of the contemporary Writers, to give any other Narrative of them, than a bare unedifying Relation of their Presence in Camps, Sieges, and Battles, with the Series of their Employments in the civil Government, which will be transcribed in the obsolete Terms of the Records and antient Historians, tinctured with Barbarisms, and recited in the old Spellings, since some may think a certain Sort of Veneration is due to them : These naked Annals of Facts without their Causes, Springs, and Motives, deserve by no means the Name of *Biography*, which should inform us with them, and the particular Abilities, Endowments, and Excellencies of the Persons, whether their Talents were mostly for the Field or the Cabinet, or equally to both, the two grand Branches of political Studies. The Friends to Antiquity are however not few, and some may take the Labour of running over these jejune Extracts ; wherein there will occur the Actions and Deaths of Generals, the Loyalty and Courage of Commanders fighting for their Prince and Country, and in truth the Characters of the individual Persons will appear very bright ; whence by all Rules of Proportion it may be inferred, what a Mass of Honour or Constellation of Glory was united in the whole Fraternity or Collective-body. Some Particularities of Heraldry will incidently offer themselves among this dry Detail of Atchievements, of which some cursory Explanation will be given in



the Margin, that the Thread of the Discourse may not be too much interrupted, which Comments may be omitted by such (if there are any) who have no relish for this Science of Gentlemen.

Though that Part of Mr. *Asbmole's* History which is published, grew very voluminous, and without doubt is the most compleat in its Kind that hath been published about any Order, yet he was fully convinced, as he <sup>b</sup> informs us, that some Memorial of the Lives of the Companions was so essential a Part of his Subject, that he made a laborious and chargeable Collection of Materials for that Purpose, which probably remain in the *Museum*<sup>i</sup> at *Oxford*, but that he waved the Prosecution thereof (as he terms it) upon receiving some great Discouragement. The Expression would have been more suitable to the Fact, if he had been pleased to say, That he discontinued those Enquiries upon the Disappointment in his Solicitation to be Historiographer and Remembrancer of this Order, according to the Tenor of a <sup>k</sup> Patent which he had prepared; which was prevented, upon a Representation made by some of the Officers that the same was invasive upon their Rights. After such a Number of Rewards, and the several <sup>l</sup> Offices conferred upon him by the Sovereign, the <sup>m</sup> Encouragement of having Paper imported without Payment of Duties for the Edition of his History, and the respective Bounties of all the <sup>n</sup> foreign and domestick Companions, such a Complaint might have been decently spared.

<sup>o</sup> Mr. *Asbmole* having already entertained the Publick with the foreign Employments and Expeditions of this worthy Knight, the Reader may consult that History: And thence, as also from an Inquisition hereafter quoted, collect, that he was only Twenty-seven Years of Age at the Institution of this Order, if the same was erected in 18 *Ed. III.*, as it hath been hinted in another Place of this Discourse.

But little being said there of his Parentage, it may not be amiss here to add, That this Sur-name, like most antient Ones, hath been variously spelled, *Paruele*, *Parveli*, *Parveilli*, *Pavilli*, and *de Paviliaco*; and that this Family was seized of many Knights-Fees in <sup>p</sup> *Normandy*, and frequently attested the <sup>q</sup> Charters granted by our *Anglo-Norman* Kings in that Dutchy.

Mr. *Asbmole* acquaints us, That our Knight had Lands in *Northampton* and *Wiltshire*: In the Latter we find this Family were Lords of the <sup>r</sup> Hundred of *Westbury*, and had their Seat at <sup>s</sup> *Broke*; which at length, in the Reign of *Hen. VII.*, gave the Title of Baron to *Robert Willoughby* [Knight also of this Order] derived from this Family by his <sup>t</sup> Mother the Daughter and Co-heir of *Sir Edmund Cheney* of that Place: Which Barony is now by Descent in his Heir at Law, the Right Honourable and Reverend *Dr. George Verney*, Dean of *Windsor*, and Register of this Noble Order.

<sup>b</sup> *History*, p. 643.

<sup>i</sup> n. 7395. *Ec.*

<sup>k</sup> Now in the Editor's Custody.

<sup>l</sup> Secretary and Clerk of the Courts in Surinam, Comptroller of the Excise, &c.

<sup>m</sup> Signet in June 1673.

<sup>n</sup> Register of the Garter 29 May 1674.

<sup>o</sup> *History of the Garter*, p. 708.

<sup>p</sup> *Norman. Scriptores*, p. 1032, 1039, 1047, 1057.

<sup>q</sup> *Mon. Anglic. vol. 2.* p. 952, 978, 1003, 1008.

<sup>r</sup> *Esc.* 40 *H. 3.* n. 41. *Esc.* 8 *E. 1.* n. 24. *Esc.*

17 *E. 2.* n. 70. *Esc.* 21 *E. 3.* n. 28.

<sup>s</sup> *Camden. Britan. in Wilt.*

<sup>t</sup> *Dugd.* 2 vol. *Baron.* p. 87.



In this County the Family of *Pavely* were "Benefactors to the Abbey of *Stanley*, and were often Sheriffs and Knights of that Shire.

In *Northamptonshire* we find a \* Writ directed by *Hen. I.* to *Robert de Paveli*, together with many ' Inquisitions and other <sup>z</sup> Instruments relating to this Family, and their <sup>a</sup> Benefactions to religious Houses in this and other <sup>b</sup> Counties.

*Bocton Olaus*, and many other Lands in *Kent*, belonged formerly to the Family of <sup>c</sup> *Burghersh*, and descended to <sup>d</sup> *Paveley* by the Marriage of *Walter* (Father of our Knight) with *Maud* Daughter and Heiress of *Stephen de Burghersh*; and hence doubtless it was that our Knight, being Twenty-five Years of Age, was in 16 *Ed. III.* found to be Cousin and Heir to *Henry de <sup>e</sup> Burghersh* Bishop of *Lincoln*, for Lands situated in *Northamptonshire*; which two Families engaged in the same publick Hazards; for as the <sup>f</sup> Bishop and <sup>g</sup> Sir *Bartholomew Burghersh* adhered to *Thomas* Earl of *Lancaster*, so <sup>h</sup> *Walter de Paveli*, Father of our Knight, at length obtained a Pardon upon that Account; and Sir *Bartholomew Burghersh*, Son of the former Sir *Bartholomew*, and one of the First Founders of this Order, in his <sup>i</sup> Will made in 43 *Ed. III.* gave our Knight a standing Cup gilt, and his whole Suit of Arms for the *Justs*, with his Coat of Male and Sword, and constituted him one of his Executors. It is very easy, if it should be thought necessary, to give much larger Notices of this Family.

There were other famous Men of this Surname contemporary with our Knight, among whom <sup>k</sup> *John Paveli* was Prior of *St. John's of Jerusalem*, and Captain of the King's Navy in 34 *Ed. III.* which was not thought inconsistent with the Religion of that Order; and we find that his two immediate Successors *Robert de Hales* and *John Radington*, were constituted Admirals; for this Prior was reputed among the Temporal Barons, and sat at the Head of them in the Parliaments, stiling himself <sup>l</sup> *Primus Baro Angliæ*, as the Archbishop of *Canterbury* was *Primus Par Angliæ*. There had been another of this Surname Prior of this House before this Person.

The Registers of this Order go no farther back than 4 *Hen. V.* but our Records assure us, that our Knight had Robes of the "Garter in 34 and 37 *Ed. III.* so that the Authors who miscal our Knight <sup>m</sup> *Paynell* and <sup>n</sup> *Paganel*, the Surnames of other Families, are in apparent Errors. He died, as Mr. *Asmole* rightly informs us, on 28 *June*, 49 *Ed. III.*

- \* *Mon. Angl. vol. 3. p. 261.*  
 x *Ibid. vol. 1. p. 868.*  
 y *Efc. 16 E. 1. n. 35. Efc. 26. Junii 11 E. 2. Efc. 23 Nov. 20 E. 3. Efc. 28 Jan. 23 E. 3. Efc. 38 E. 3. n. 48. Efc. 35 E. 3. n. 24. pt. 2. Efc. 49 E. 3. p. 2. n. 34. vide etiam Rymer, vol. 1. p. 635, 706. vol. 2. p. 74, 190, 199, 342, 641, vol. 4. p. 109, 80, 109.*  
 z *Testa de Nevill. Will of William Paveli in 1241, printed, n. 770, in Formul. Anglic. &c.*  
 a *To St. Mary de Pratis, Mon. Angl. vol. 1. p. 1018. To Sulby, Ibid. vol. 2. p. 627, 628.*  
 b *To Castleacre in Norfolk, Ibid. vol. 1. p. 625. to West Derham, Ibid. vol. 2. p. 625, had Lands in Neuton in Southampton Testa de Nevill.*  
 c *Dugd. 2 vol. Bar. p. 34.*  
 d *Efc. 1 E. 3. n. 5. Efc. 44 E. 3. n. 5. Efc. 49 E. 3. Philpot's Kent, p. 86. and see p. 6, 64, 115, 132, 277.*  
 e *Efc. apud Northr. 8 July, 16 E. 3.*  
 f *Rot. Rom. 15 E. 2. m. 12. Rym. vol. 3. p. 909. Rot. Fran. 16 E. 2. m. 9. Walsingham. ad A.D. 1324.*  
 g *Leland's Collectan. vol. 1. p. 329.*  
 h *Rymer, vol. 3. p. 444, and vol. 4. p. 256.*  
 i *Dugd. Bar. vol. 2. p. 36.*  
 k *Fran. 34 E. 3. m. 18.*  
 l *Pat. 10 E. 4. p. 1. m. 13. See Camd. Brit. p. 123.*  
 ll *See above p. 44, Note r, and p. 6. Note d.*  
 m *Camden in Berkshire.*  
 n *Segar, Norroy, of Honours, &c.*

The



The Arms ascribed to *John de Pavilly* in that <sup>o</sup> antient and valuable *Repertory*, which from the Discoverer hath been called *Jennings's Book*, (the Original whereof is now in this Collector's Custody) are thus blazoned, "*Il port d'Azure oue une Croice d'Or, les boutes fleuretez*", which were doubtless intended by this Draught. But whether this and the other Escutcheons for the First Founders and their Successors were affixed to their Stalls, in pursuance of the Statute of *Ed. III.*, and of what Age the same are, will more properly come into Examination, when the Reader hath taken a View of the Types of all of them.

This Crest is by some thought to be an *Hind's*, and by others an *Horse's Head*.

The Mantling is *Azure*, lined *Ermine*, and of that Sort properly termed *Cappeline*, covering the Helmet like a Cap, having *Lambrequins* issuing from it, the Use whereof was not only to defend the Head from the Heat of the Steel, occasioned by the Rays of the Sun, but also to distinguish Persons in Wars or Tournaments, by their Upper-parts, in the same Manner as the Coats of Arms did their Bodies.

Least the Reader should imagine that the Engraver hath mistaken the Position of the Arms of the Knights in this Stall, which are in a quite different Posture from those made by the Impressions of their Seals: It is here to be remembred, that it was the antient Method to place these Arms in this Chappel, so as the Crest might front or encline towards the Altar, and that this Stall is situated on the Left-hand as you enter into the Choir from the West-end. A <sup>p</sup> French Author terms the like Usage in placing the Helmets of the Companions of the *Golden Fleece* in the Chappel of *Dijon* to be Bastard-heraldry, and imputes it to the Ignorance of the Painter, not recollecting possibly, that it had the Appearance of a decent religious Respect. The Plates are now removed from one Stall to another, according to the Translations of the Knights, and being thus ambulatory, 'tis uncertain which Way the Crests may front at the Times of their Deaths, till which they do not become fixed.

The Metals and Colours are for the most Part enamelled on these Plates, which in these Draughts are expressed by *Hachures* or Lines.

---

<sup>o</sup> Laudatissimus ille vetus Armorum Liber, qui a repertore Liber *Th. Jennings* appellatur. Camdeni Apologia, p. 13. | <sup>p</sup> Favyn's *Theatre of Honour*, vol. 2. p. 22. in English.













# MEMOIRS

Of the LIFE of

## Sir Thomas Banaster.



IS Successor in this Stall was Sir *THOMAS BANASTER*, numbered 55 in the Catalogue. This Family had long flourished in the Palatinates of *Cheshire* and *Lancashire*. *Richard Bannastre* attests a Charter made to *S. Werburgh* by *Hugh Lupus*; and he, or another of the same Name, is Witness to the Grant of *Randolf Meschines* made to the same<sup>b</sup> Monastery; and *Hen. II.* confirms the Donation made by<sup>c</sup> *Robert Banastre* to *Basingwerk* in *Flintshire*. This Family had divers Knights Fees in *Lancaster* mentioned in *Testa de Nevill*, and were frequently Knights of the Shire for that<sup>d</sup> County, as also for<sup>e</sup> *Shropshire*. In 7 Ed. II, *Robert Ba-*

<sup>a</sup> Mon. Anglic. vol. 1. p. 201.

<sup>b</sup> Ibid. p. 986.

<sup>c</sup> Ibid. p. 720.

<sup>d</sup> Cl. 8 E. 2. m. 31. d. Tho. Bannister. Cl. 6 E. 3. m. 29. Adam Banastr. *Of the Tenure of Makefeild* see Rot. Pip. 7 Joh. Fin. 15 Joh. m. 7. of the Bailiwick of Amondene, Plac. Trin. 8 E. 3. rot. 27.

<sup>e</sup> Cl. 22 E. 3. p. 1. m. 24. d. William Bannastre

de Yorton. Similiter Clauf. 18 E. 3. p. 2. m. 26. Cl. 25 E. 3. m. 27. d. Will. Banaster de Hadenhale. Similiter Clauf. 29 E. 3. m. 3. d. Clauf. 31 E. 3. m. 31. d. Clauf. 35 E. 3. m. 38. d. Clauf. 36 E. 3. m. 28. 3. d. *A Family of Banastre, with Arms like these of our Knight, is entred in Vinc. Shropshire, p. 139.*

<sup>f</sup> Rymer, vol. 3. p. 443.



*nastre* had a Pardon for adhering to *Thomas* Earl of *Lancaster*, though  
 “*Adam Banastre* a Batchelar of *Lancastreshire* (as <sup>g</sup> *Leland* tells us) moved  
 “*Ryot* agayn *Tho. Lancaster*,” which <sup>b</sup> happen’d in the Year 1316, and  
 the Reader may inspect what <sup>i</sup> *Knighton* saith of this Matter.

But to come to the Actions of our Knight, who, for his good Services performed in the Engagement at Sea against the *Spaniards* under the Earl of *Lancaster*, had a <sup>k</sup> Pardon for the Death of *Ralph de Blakeburn*, whom he had the Misfortune to kill; and in 1360 he attended on *Ed. III.* in the Wars into *France*, where that King having entred as far as *Bourg-la-Roine*, conferred the Honour of <sup>l</sup> Knighthood upon him, who thereon undertook a bold Enterprize even to the Barriers of *Paris*. Then he waited on the <sup>m</sup> *Black Prince* into *Spain*, and was present at the famous Battle at *Nazar* in 1367, and in the following Year was sent to the Dutchy of <sup>n</sup> *Aquitaine* with Forces, when the King of *France* had defied *Ed. III.* about the *Fouage*. In 1369 he made a great Inroad into <sup>o</sup> *Anjou*, and before *Perigourd* had the ill Fortune to be taken Prisoner of War, and was afterwards exchanged for *Caponel de Capommat*, who had <sup>p</sup> summoned the *Black Prince* upon the Appeal of the *Gascoigners* about the Imposition of the *Fouage*; so that it appears the <sup>q</sup> *French* do an Injustice to this Prince’s Memory, by saying, he was put to Death for that Action. In 2 *Rich. II.* Sir *John Arundell* (then Marshal of *England*) with this our *valiant and good Knight* (as <sup>r</sup> *Froissart* calls him) were ordered to conduct an Army into *Bretaigne*, when a violent Tempest drove them into the *Irish* Sea, where this *most noble Knight* (as <sup>s</sup> *Walsingham* stiles him) was <sup>t</sup> drowned on the 16th of *December*; which, if true, he survived Sir *John Arundell* by one <sup>u</sup> Day.

In an Inventory of the <sup>v</sup> Ornaments, &c. of the Chappel of *Windsor* taken in 8 *Rich. II.* there is mention made of the *Sword* of our Knight preserved in that College, which continued there under the Reign of *Hen. IV.* being a Proof that he had been a Companion of this Order.

The Arms ascribed to him in *Jenning’s* Book are, “*Argent & une Croice Patée de Sable*”: The present Heralds might be apt to blazon it (as *Wall* doth) by *Sarcelé*, and as another *Potencé*. The Crest, which was formerly enamelled hereon, is, by the Injury of Time, broken off; but if some old <sup>w</sup> Draughts may be credited, it was a Peacock in its Glory, with Wings *Argent*; or, as the *Latin* Blazoners would call it, *Pavo cum oculatâ caudâ in orbem explicatâ*. <sup>x</sup> *Wall* Garter, calls it a “*Pecocke in his Pryde* sitting on a Wreath *Silver* and *Sable*, mantled *Sable*, lined *Silver*.” The Mantling is of the *Cappeline* Form, *Sable* lined *Ermine*.

<sup>g</sup> *Leland’s Collect.* vol. 2. p. 546. Edit. per Hearne.

<sup>b</sup> *Ibid.* vol. 1. p. 249.

<sup>i</sup> *Col.* 2533. n. 30.

<sup>k</sup> *Rymer*, vol. 6. p. 691. 24 E. 3.

<sup>l</sup> *Froiss.* vol. 1. p. 220, throughout that Book he is, by mistake, called *Balaistre*.

<sup>m</sup> *Ibid.* p. 287, 303.

<sup>n</sup> *Ibid.* p. 341.

<sup>o</sup> *Ibid.* p. 354.

<sup>p</sup> *Froiss.* vol. 1. p. 315.

<sup>q</sup> *Entreveue de l’Emper.* Char. IV. & V. p. 96.

<sup>r</sup> *Ibid.* vol. 2. p. 69.

<sup>s</sup> *Walsingh.* p. 242.

<sup>t</sup> *Ibid.* p. 231. see p. 239, 240, &c.

<sup>u</sup> *Efc.* 3 R. 2. n. 1.

<sup>x</sup> *Ashm. Hist. of the Garter*, p. 635.

<sup>y</sup> *Mon. Angl.* vol. 3. p. 86.

<sup>z</sup> *Vinc. MS.* n. 18. f. 80 b.

<sup>a</sup> *B. 1. MS.* penes me.



SIR ROBERT DUNSTAVILLE is numbered 84 in the Catalogues, and placed in them as elected in the Reign of *Rich. II.*, and in a late <sup>a</sup> Manuscript is inserted between Sir *Thomas Banastre* and Sir *Soudan de la Trau*; so that if he had this Honour, he could enjoy it only for a short Space of Time. The Want of a Plate of Arms at *Windsor* is no convincing Proof that there was no such Companion, since several have been stol'n; but the Silence of the *Windsor-Tables* is a considerable Negative-Authority against his Election, if he did not die before his Installation, or was not afterwards degraded. The Wardrobe-Accounts of this Time, when discovered, will settle this Particular. He is said to have been seized of *Castlecombe* in *Wiltshire*, which indeed belonged to the Family of <sup>b</sup> *Dunstavil* till the 54th Year of *Hen. III.*, when <sup>c</sup> *Petronilla* the Heiress thereof brought it to her Husband *Robert de Montford*, whose Son sold it to <sup>d</sup> *Badlesmeere*, and by a Daughter and Coheir of that Family it came to <sup>e</sup> *Tybelot*, whence by a Daughter and Co-heir it descended to <sup>f</sup> *Scrope* of *Bolton*, and for some time it was in <sup>g</sup> Sir *John Fastolf*, who had married the Widow of one of that Family, and after his Death it returned to the Heir of *Scrope*, so that it was not in the Name of *Dunstaville* at this time: And the Collector doth not at present remember that he hath had the good Fortune to meet with any Knight of this Surname in the Records during this Reign, so as at present he is induced to suppose, that some Person might mis-read *Robert Dunstaville* for *Robert Dunfraville*, who was seated in the sixth Stall of the Sovereigns Side from 9 *Hen. IV.*, to 15 *Hen. VI.*, especially when he considers that a former <sup>b</sup> Officer of Arms born at <sup>i</sup> *Colatford* near *Castlecombe*, claimed a Descent by his Mother from one of this Surname, and took such Dissatisfaction to his own monosyllable Paternal-surname as to lengthen it to a Mouthful, in the Spelling whereof he at first used a Variety, and was pleased in Memory of this his Descent (as he conceived) to take the Vanity of placing for some Time an <sup>k</sup> Half-Garter about his Arms. The Editor is certain of the latter Facts, but gives his Opinion as to this Sir *Robert's* not being of the Order with Diffidence, reserving Liberty to retract it when he shall be better informed.

The Arms ascribed to him are *Argent*, a Fret *Gules*, within a Border engrailed *Sable*, over all on a Canton of the *Second* a *Lyon passant Or*.

<sup>a</sup> Vinc. MS. n. 417. n. 18. in Offic. Arm.

<sup>b</sup> See Dugd. 1st Vol. Bar. p. 591.

<sup>c, d</sup> Camd. Britan. in Wilts & Dugd. Baron. vol. 2. p. 58. 59.

<sup>e, f</sup> See Dugd. & Camd.

<sup>g</sup> Above in p. 141.

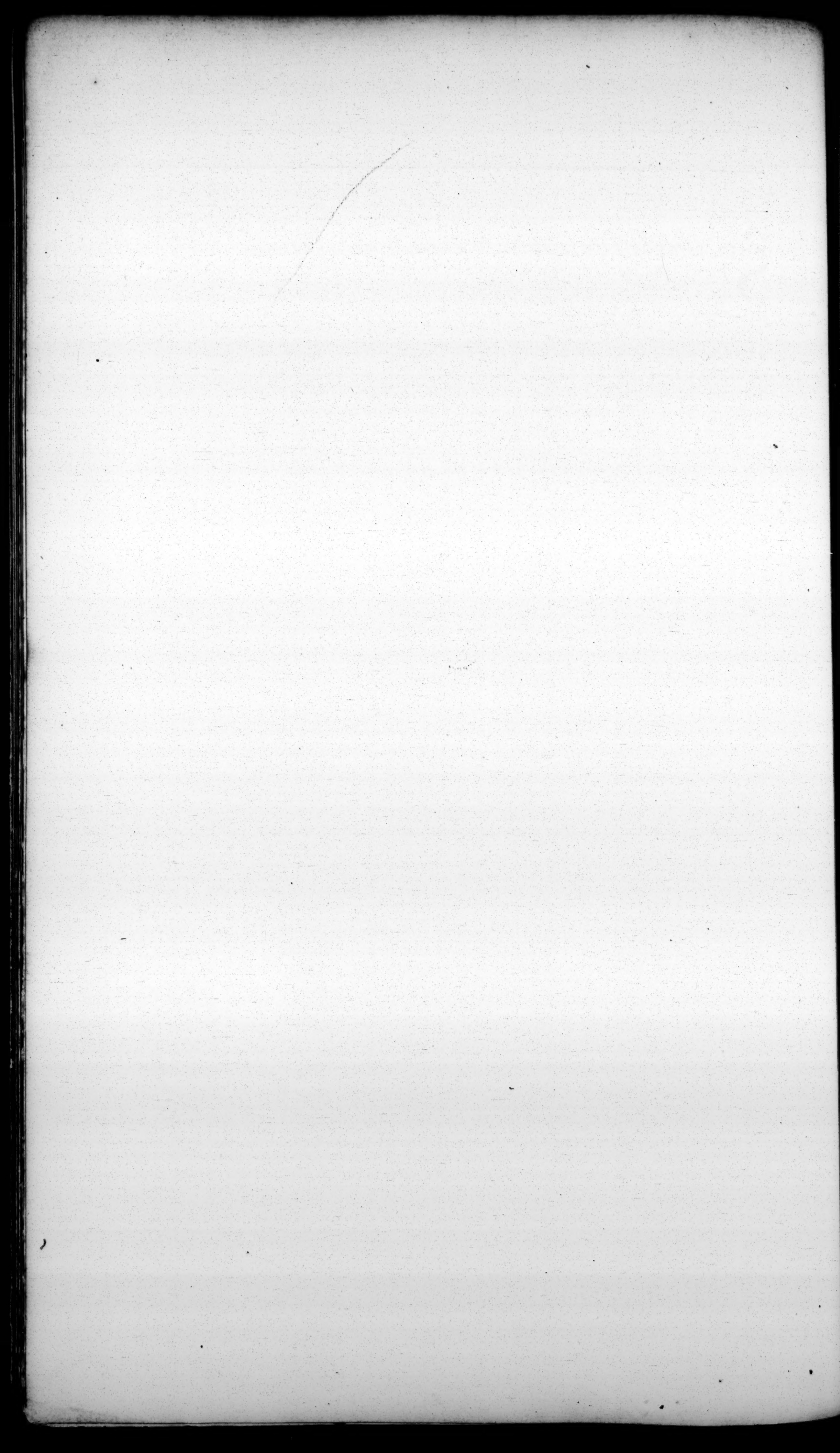
<sup>h</sup> In several Pedigrees of his own drawing.

<sup>i</sup> A. x. penes me, p. 66.

<sup>k</sup> H. 3. penes me, p. 1164, & A. x.

## MEMOIRS



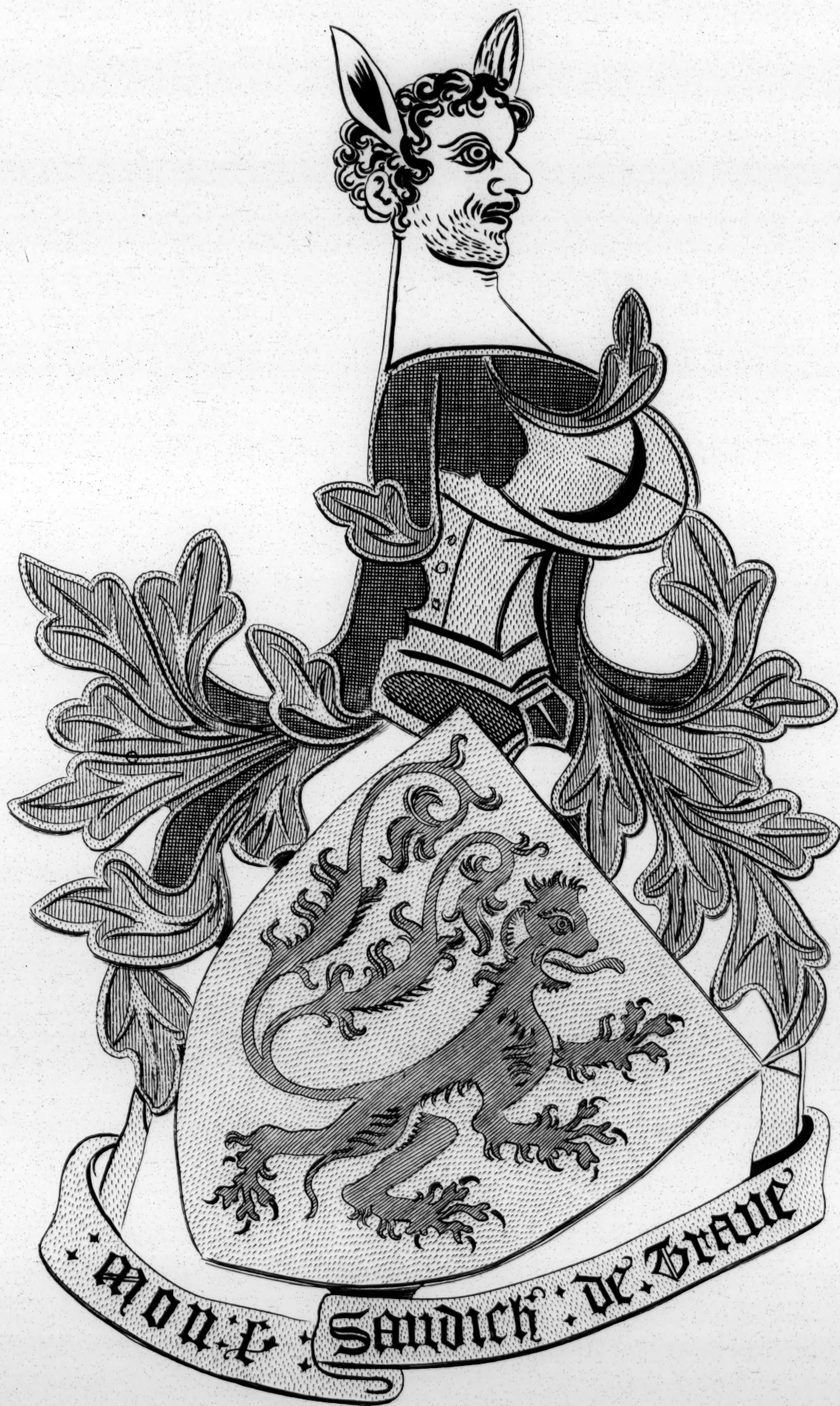








next to p. 155







# MEMOIRS

Of the LIFE of

## Sir Sandich de Trane.



THE next Knight after Sir *Thomas* mentioned in the *Windsor-Tables*, and whose Plate remains in this Stall, is Sir *SANDICH DE TRANE*, as his Name is spelled, and in the Catalogue numbered 110; he was a noble enterprizing *Gascoigner*, and is misplaced by Mr. *Ashmole*, Doctor *Heylin*, and others, as elected under *Hen. IV.*, whereas the Former might have corrected that Mistake from his own *History*, where he hath faithfully quoted an Entry for Delivery of the Robes of this Order to him

at the Feast held in the 7th Year of *Richard II.*

The Letters (*n*) and (*u*) bearing the same Form or Character in ancient Manuscripts, 'tis very difficult to assert the true Reading in the Names of Persons or Places; but since we find this Word sometime spelt *Trawe*, we may thence be certain of the Pronunciation in this Case.



There are large Accounts of his martial Atchievements; yet, the Collector is induced to believe, this is not the Surname of his Family, but the Appellation of some Office: For tho' there occur in our <sup>b</sup> Records some Instances where *de la Trane*, or, *de la Traue*, looks like the Surnames of some particular Persons, as it was lately of one who dedicated a fabulous History of an 'Order of Knighthood to Queen *Mary de Medicis*; yet the following Reasons, submitted to the Readers Judgment, may possibly be found of Weight sufficient, to determine otherwise in this Case.

A late *Gascoign* <sup>d</sup> Author complements the *Comte d'Estrades* with this *Souldic d'Estrades*, as he spells the Name of our Knight, for one of his lineal Ancestors; but later 'Genealogists run not up that Pedigree to such an Heighth, and it will soon appear his Conjecture was groundless. About the Time of our Knight we meet with <sup>f</sup>*Soldanus de Pressaco Miles*, whose true Name seems to be *Arnaldus Bernardi de Pressaco*: But what is of great Consequence in this Matter, our Records in the French Language, and the Historians generally; if not constantly, prefix the Particle *Le* to *Soudan*, as is usual to Surnames taken from Offices or Functions, such as *Le Dispenser*, *Le Marechal*, or from Incidents or Soriquets, as *Le Bigot*, *Le Strange*, &c. Distinctions, as <sup>g</sup>Mr. *Camden* observed, religiously retained in our Records until about the Time of *Ed. IV*: And which is more, we are certain, That *Soldanus de la Trau* was given as an <sup>b</sup>Addition of Honour or Office (as the Lawyers term it) to *Montferrant* in 28 *Hen. VI*. The Words must be recited, "*Petrus de Montferrant Soldanus de la Trau duxerat Mariam filiam naturalem carissimi avunculi nostri Johannis nuper Ducis Bedford.*" And in another Place, "*Petrus de Montferrant Ar-*" "*miger Soldanus de la Trau in Ducatu nostro Aquitannie — supplicans, &c.*" who, after his Death, is stiled <sup>k</sup>*Dominus de la Sparre* (a <sup>l</sup>Barony in *Gascoigne*, granted fundry Times to divers Knights of this Order): And in another Place, <sup>m</sup>*Soldanus de la Trau, Dominus de Landiras*; and this *Mary* his Relict, hath the Title of <sup>n</sup>*Domina de la Sparre*, after the Death of her Husband, who for his <sup>o</sup>Loyalty to our King, met with the Severity of losing his Head when *Aquitain* was taken by the French in 31 *Hen. VI*. And <sup>p</sup>two Years afterwards, we meet with a safe Conduct granted, "*ad*

<sup>b</sup> Vasc. 3, 4 & 5 H. 4. m. 19. Pro Bertrando de la Trane mil. Vasc. 3 H. 5. Rym. vol. 9. p. 259. Fauquet de la Trau.

<sup>c</sup> Discours de l'Ordre, &c. du Saint Esprit par messire Olivier de la Trau 1629.

<sup>d</sup> Louvet Hist. d'Aquitaine, p. 202.

<sup>e</sup> Anselme, p. 493, &c.

<sup>f</sup> Vasc. 27 E. 3. m. 14. *Soldanus de Pressaco miles Dominus de Didon*, & Rymer vol. 3. p. 530. *Arnoldus Bernardi de Pressaco dictus Soldan. Dom. de Dydone*, p. 572, 586.

<sup>g</sup> Remains, p. 121.

<sup>h</sup> Rymer, vol. 11, p. 275.

<sup>i</sup> Ibid. p. 341. Vide etiam Rot. Vasc. 29 H. 6. m. 11. Rex concessit dilecto Petro de Montferant Soldano de Latrau custodiam castri Civitatis nostre Aquensis ad vitam. Fran. 33 H. 6. m. 23. Rex ad humilem Petitionem dilecti Johannis de Mountferrant nuper filii Petri de Mountferrant Soldani de la Trau, & Domini de l'Esparra defuncti suscepit in saluum conductum Stephanum de Nova Domo, &c.

<sup>k</sup> Ibid. p. 422.

<sup>l</sup> Rym. vol. 9. p. 383.

<sup>m</sup> Claus. 27 H. 6. d. *Petrus de Monferan Soldanus de la Trau, Dominus de Landiras de Aquitannia filius & hæres Eliz. filie & hæredis Margarete Stratton filie Johannis de Stratton, &c. relaxat jus in Stratton.*

<sup>n</sup> Collectan. Rymeri ad finem, vol. 17. ad An. 2 E. 4.

<sup>o</sup> Hollingsh. p. 614. Du Tillet p. 133. Privat. Sigill. 12 Aug. 35 H. 6. That our dear and beloved Mary, Daughter of our Oncle late Duke of Bedford, whom God pardone, hath shewed unto us by supplication the great losses that she hath susteined sub the death of Piers Mountferrant Lord de la Sparre late hir husband which was slayne in our werres in our Duchie of Guyenne, &c. We have granted xxv marks yerely, &c. And by another Privy Seal she had C Saluz yerely, &c.

<sup>p</sup> Fran. 33 H. 6. m. 23.



"*supplicationem Johannis de Mountferrant nuper filii Petri de Mountferrant*  
 "*Soldani de la Trau & Domini de la Sparra defuncti:*" Whence it should  
 seem, That *Soldanus de la Trau* was as much the Name of some Office in  
 him, as the other Title, *Dominus de la Sparr*, a Town or Seigneurie in  
*Guienne*, was of an Honour. But however, it is not pretended this *Peter*  
 could be our Knight of the Garter, because our *Le Soudan*, (whoever  
 he was) must die before 1 *Hen. V*, when his Successor in this Stall,  
 Sir *Simon Felbridge*, receiv'd Robes of this Order, which was under the  
 Reign of a King preceeding the Death of this *Peter*; who, as it appears  
 above, was not even of the Degree of Knighthood in the 28th Year of  
*Hen. VI*.

It may not therefore be unreasonable to suppose, *Soldanus de la Traue*  
 might, under the Reign of *Ed. III*, and *Rich. II*, be as much the Ap-  
 pellation of some Office, as it must have been under *Hen. VI*; and, pro-  
 bably, *Le Soldan*, *Soudan*, *Soudain*, *Sandich*, *Sondyke* or *Souldich* (as it is  
 generally printed in *Froissart*) *de la Trane*, *de la Traue*, or *de l'Estrade*, might  
 denote the Governor or Captain of some Town or Castle of that Name  
 in *Gascoigne*, where <sup>q</sup> were Three hundred and two Baronies, and above  
 One thousand Captainships and Baillywicks; in the same Manner as <sup>r</sup> *Le*  
*Capital*, *Capitow*, or *Capitan de la Buch* in the same Country, is the only  
 Title attributed by the Statutes of this Order, to one of the First Foun-  
 ders, whose Surname was certainly *Greyly*; and as the Title of Lord *Du-*  
*ras*, in the same Country, is likewise given to a Successor in this Stall,  
 whose Surname was *Durefort*.

This Writer freely owns, he doth not at present recollect this Word  
*Soldanus* (derived from <sup>s</sup> a Verb which in *Arabick* and *Hebrew* signifies to  
 govern as a Lord, and not as one of our <sup>t</sup> Historians conceived, from the  
*Latin*, *Solus Dominus*) hath been used in the Western Parts, for any others  
 than the Sultans of the East; and for a certain Officer in the <sup>u</sup> Court of  
*Rome*; and in the present Case, if this is the Appellation of some Office,  
 or Governour of some Castle or Place, as it doubtless was, for the <sup>x</sup> *Chro-*  
*nickles* inform us that Pope *Clement V*, built the Castles of *de la Traue*,  
*Landiras*, and others in *Aquitaine*, and we shall hereafter find that the  
 Sister of this Pope was married to the lineal Ancestor of this *Soldan*.  
*William Brewer* was in 2 *Hen. V*, made Captain of this <sup>y</sup> Castle *de la*  
*Traue*, situated in the *Frontiers*, and we know our Knight received Mo-  
 ney in 22 *Ed. III*, to fortify his Lands lying in the <sup>z</sup> *Frontiers*.

Whatever his Surname might be, his steady loyal Adherence to the  
 Interests of our Kings in *Aquitaine*, and his noble military Actions on that  
 Account, seem fully to merit this Honour: For we find him present at  
 the <sup>a</sup> Battle of *Poitiers*, 19 Sept. 1356, and he was one of the Conservators  
 of the <sup>b</sup> Truce made 31 *Ed. III*, for two Years. He then served the

<sup>q</sup> Hollingh. p. 614.

<sup>r</sup> See third Stall on the Sovereign's Side.

<sup>s</sup> Selden's Titles of Honour, p. 71.

<sup>t</sup> Order. Vital. p. 828.

<sup>u</sup> Ceremoniale Roman. 1560, p. 17. Marescallus  
 five *Soldanus Curie*, where also the Titles of Janizarii  
 and Mamalucci are used. Cohellii Notit. Cardinal.  
 p. 224.

<sup>x</sup> Lurbe Chronique Bourdeloise, p. 25.

<sup>y</sup> Comp. Will. Clifford Constab. Burdegal, 2 H. 5.  
 in Off. Pip.

<sup>z</sup> In rot. Pip. 36 E. 3. in comp. *Johannis de*  
*Stretle* Constab. Burdegal.

<sup>a</sup> Froiss. vol. 1. p. 173.

<sup>b</sup> Rym. vol. 6. p. 7.



Duke of Normandy against the <sup>c</sup> King of Navar at the Battel of Cokerell, on 24 May 1364, where he was <sup>d</sup> wounded: This was long before Sir Soudan was elected into this Order; for otherwise the *Capit de Buch* being the chief Commander on the other Part, he could not have born Arms against him. He then went with the <sup>e</sup> Black Prince in the Expedition into Spain, and was present at the famous <sup>f</sup> Battle of Nazar in 1366.

In 43 Ed. III, that King grants (as the <sup>g</sup> Patent expresse it) a *Notre chier & feal Chevalier le Soudan de la Trau*, and to his Heirs, a Place called *Talement sur Gonde*, (which is in *Xaintongne*) to hold until such Time as he should recover his own proper Inheritance in the Petit-Customs of Royan. He was one of the <sup>h</sup> Captains in the Castle of *Montauban* in *Britagne*; and in 1370 at the <sup>i</sup> Siege and Taking of *Limoges*; and the next Year went to the <sup>k</sup> Siege of *Montpaon*. And on 24 Febr. 45 Ed. III, the Black Prince gives a <sup>l</sup> *Nostre bien amè Le Soudain de la Trau*, the Baillewick of *Marampne* during Life, in Consideration of the painful Diligence and Travels which his said faithful Knight had performed to him in his Wars, and at the Siege of *Montpaon* and other Places. In 1372 he was <sup>m</sup> one of the Captains in *Rochelle*. In 50 Ed. III, he is <sup>n</sup> named immediately after the *Seneschal* of *Aquitaine*, for observing the Truce made with the King of *Castile*, and in the next Year the King confirms to him the Grant of <sup>o</sup> *Marempne*.

In 1 Rich. II, the King <sup>p</sup> commands him to obey the Orders of *John* Lord *Nevil*, Lieutenant of *Aquitaine*, which Sort of Mandate usually issued upon the Constituting of that Officer: And in this Year he <sup>q</sup> valiantly defended himself in the Castle of *Mortaigne sur Mer*. in *Poitou*: The Words of the Historian, who must personally have known him, are so material as to be inserted, "*Dedans Mortagne estoit un Chevalier nommé le Souldich, qui estoit de Gascoigne, vaillant Chevalier & bon homme d'armes*"; which Place he held out <sup>r</sup> during the Siege of one Year and half, 'till such Time as he was relieved by the said Lord *Nevill*; for which noble Action he received Five hundred *Franks*, as the <sup>s</sup> Patent runs, for his good and agreeable Services to the late King, and which he shall perform to the present King, and for his great Pains, Travel, and Charges which he and his Souldiers had suffered for a long Time in the Siege of *Mortaigne*. In 4 Ric. II, the King confirmed the Grants of the Black Prince made to him of *Montandre* and *Marempne*, by an Instrument which will be hereafter inserted at Length. Being a <sup>t</sup> Knight and *Banneret*, he served in *Portugal* and *Spain* under the Earl of *Cambridge*, with One hundred Men of Arms, and the like Number of Archers: But we are informed, that in his Passage or Voyage to *Lisbon*, he was separated from his Company by a violent Storm, whereby it was concluded he was drowned; but after forty Days he arri-

<sup>c</sup> Froiss. vol. 1. c. 220.

<sup>d</sup> Ibid. c. 221.

<sup>e</sup> Ibid. p. 287.

<sup>f</sup> Ibid. p. 298.

<sup>g</sup> Rym. vol. 6. p. 612.

<sup>h</sup> Froiss. vol. 1. p. 331.

<sup>i</sup> Ibid. p. 366.

<sup>k</sup> Ibid. p. 374.

<sup>l</sup> Rym. vol. 6. p. 683.

<sup>m</sup> Froiss. vol. 1. p. 387.

<sup>n</sup> Rym. vol. 7. p. 107.

<sup>o</sup> Vascon. 51 E. 3. n. 8.

<sup>p</sup> Rym. vol. 7. p. 198.

<sup>q</sup> Froiss. vol. 2. p. 10.

<sup>r</sup> Ibid. p. 9, 25.

<sup>s</sup> Ibid. p. 25.

<sup>t</sup> Rym. vol. 7. p. 328.

<sup>u</sup> Indentura in Off. Pellium.



ved thither, in the Moment while his Friends were performing an *Obsequy* for him in mourning Habits. After escaping this Danger and unhappy Omen, he received the Congratulations of his Companions, and was present at the Taking of *Fighiere* from the *Spaniards*, and was sent to the <sup>2</sup> King of *Castile* to desire a Time and Place of Battle; but the Peace being suddenly struck up, and, according to the Humour of that Age, *Jufts* being appointed, *Miles de Windfore*, one of the Combatants, received the Honour of Knighthood (as the Historian expresseth it) from “*Messire le Souldich de l’Estrade pour le meilleur Chevalier de la place & qui mieux s’estoit travaille & trouve en belles besongnes*,” which the Lord *Berners* translates, “*Souldyche of l’Estrade as of hym that was reputed the best Knyght in that Company* :” And we know it was the Custom of that Age for Knights to confer that Degree on others, and that it was thought more an Honour to receive it from a Person who had acquired great Reputation in Feats of Arms, than from the immediate Hands of a King or Prince. In the said 4 *Rich. II.*, for consideration of his Loss of Lands of 6000 Livres of yearly Rent (*sex mille libratis terræ*) in *Aquitain*, and for his Loyalty to our King, he had a <sup>b</sup> Recompence of 1500 *l.* yearly granted. In 7 *Rich. II.*, he acknowledges the Receipt of some <sup>c</sup> Money, and in this Year received <sup>d</sup> Robes of the *Garter*, though he was doubtless chosen into this Order soon after the Death of Sir *Thomas Banastre*, which will be settled by the Wardrobe-accounts if they shall be discovered. In 8 *Rich. II.*, the King grants to him and his Heirs <sup>e</sup> a Fair, to be held Weekly within his own Territory or Dominion of *Darbenatz* in *Aquitain*.

Either this Person, or another *Soldanus de la Trau*, is named One of the Conservators of the <sup>f</sup> Truces made from the 11th to the 18th of *Rich. II.* inclusively.

Hence ’tis certain, that all the Books which place his Election under *Hen. IV.*, and his Death in 21 *Hen. IV.*, are in apparent Errors; but none of these Writers have attempted to describe his Person or Family.

The most learned Monsieur *Clairambault* hath obliged this Editor with Copies of several valuable Instruments, which, compared with the Records of this Kingdom, ascertain the Family and Surname of our heroick Knight, to whom we owe the Merit of these military Atchievements: Let us therefore with Pleasure, render due Honour to the Memory of — — — *de Preissac Sire de Didon*, a Seigniorie in *Xantongne* near the *Garonne* somewhat above *Royan*.

These <sup>g</sup> Instruments remain under Seals of the same Impression; by the first *Soudam de la Traue* Knight *Seigneur de Dydone*, acknowledged the Receipt

x *Froiss. vol. 2. p. 121, 136, 137.*

y *Ibid. p. 144.*

z *Ibid. p. 155.*

a *Lobineau l’Hist. de Bretagne, p. 851.*

b *Vasc. 4 R. II. m. 2.*

c *Collet. Rymeri ad finem, vol. 7.*

d See above p. 11. in the Notes.

e *Rym. vol. 7. p. 436.*

f *Ibid. p. 598, 640, 721, 775, 786.*

g Copie sur l’original estant en parchmin. Sachent tous que nous *Soudam de Lairane* Chevalier

*Seigneur de Dydone*, confessons avoir heu & recehu par la main de *Jehan du Doubet* Clerc Lieutenant de honorable homme *Regnant Crollebois* Receveur du Roy nostre Sire en *Poitou* & en *Xaintonge*, par le commandement de Noble & puissant homme Monsieur *Iber* Seigneur de *Maignac* Chevalier du Roy nostre Sire Cheiaptayne Souverain de parti depute en *Xaintonge* per tou *Limouzin* & es lieux voisins & Seneschal de *Xaintonge* au compte & paiement de noz gages serviz ou a deservir en ceste presente guerre dis livres monnoye courante: Desquelles  
T t nous



ceipt of his Wages in War, dated 7 June 1340; by the Second, on the 5th of the next Month *Soudam de Prissac Sire de Didone*, gives a Discharge for a farther Sum; and by the Third of the like Nature, bearing Date in the following Month, under the Title of *Souldam de Persac Seigneur de Didonne*; whence it appears, that the *Seigneur de Didonne* was the same Person who is stiled *Soudan de la Traue* and *Soudan de Preissac*, the former in respect probably of the Office and Place of his Government, and the latter with regard to the Name of his Office prefixed to his Surname.

This most accomplished Antiquary, with the greatest Civility, hath taken the Trouble of transmitting the Copy of another Record bearing Date in 1350, whereby the King of France gave the Chastellany of *Didon* to Sir *Fouk de Matas*, who had taken it by Force from the *Soudan de la Trau*, then his Enemy, reserving therein Power to himself to vacate that Grant within the Term of one Year, which was done with a Prospect doubtless, that the *Soudan* might within that Term return to the Embracing his Interest; and in Fact we find him in that Capacity at the Battle of *Cocherell*, which Action was not inconsistent with his Allegiance to the Crown of *England*; and here he performed such signal Services, that the King of France rewarded him 1364 under the Appellation of *Soldan de la Trau Chevalier Seigneur de Didonne*, with the Castle of *Beavoir*, for which he performed Homage.

The Identity of the *Seigneur de Didonne* with *Soldan de Trau* and *Soldan de Preissac*, is amply confirmed in our Records. In the Account of the Constable of *Burdeaux* from 17 July 1352 to *Michaelmas* 1353, are different Payments, *Soldano de la Trau Domino de Didon* and *Soldano de Pyssaco* and *Soldano de Preysfaco Domino de Didon*. *Richard II*, reciting two Grants made by the *Black Prince* his Father, *Soldano de Pressaco Domino de Didona* and *Soldano filio suo primogenito*, and *a le Soudain de la Trau* confirms both of them by an Instrument which is docquetted or entituled in the Margin of the Roll, *Pro Soldano de la Traue Chevalier*.

Being

nous le dit *Soudam* & Chevalier nous tenons pour bien paie, & en quipons ledit Receveur & son Lieutenant par cez noz lettres de nostre propre scel scellees le 5 jour de *Julhet* l'an Mil ccc & quarante.

Sachent tuit qui je *Soudam de Prissac Sire de Didonne* confesse avoir eu & receu de honorable & sage *Regnant Croullebois* Receveur du Roy nostre Sire en *Xaintonge* par la main de *Jehan du Doubec* son clerc par mandement de Mr. le Capitaine & Seneschal de *Xaintonge* quatre vins sept livres tournois en prest sur mes gages de moy & des Gens d'armes estans en ma Compagnie, & de ceulx de pie serviz & a servir en ceste presente guerre: Desquelles *iiiixx. vii l.* je me teings parbien paie par ces lettres scellees de mon scel. Donne a *Xaintes* le 7e jour de *Juing* l'an Mil *iiicxl*.

Autre Quittance du meme commençant par ces mots. Sachent toz que je *Souldam de Persac Seigneur de Didonne* Chevalier par lui donnee au dit *Regnault Croullebois* de la somme de 93 l tournois en prest sur ses gages & des Gens d'armes & sergens de sa Compagnie en datte du 19 jour d'*Aoust* 1340.

Ces tres quittances sont scellees en cire rouge, & sur le sceau est un Chevalier arme, tenant de la

main droite l'Espee haute & de la gauche un Bouchier, sur lequel il y a pour armes un Lion parti de trois faces. Les Caparaillons du Cheval femez de ces mesmes armes.

*b* Tresor des Chartres du Roy de France.

*i* Ibid.

*k* Entred in Rot. Pip. 36 E. 3.

*l* Ex. Rot. Vascon. de 20. 40. Ric. 2di. m. 20. De Confirmatione pro *Soldano de la Traue* Chivalier.

Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem. Inspeximus tenorem Literarum patentium carissimi Domini & Patris nostri sub sigillo *Guilli. Bovell* Judicis Appellationum Curie nostre *Vascon.* in hæc verba. *Edwardus* Illustrissimi Domini Dei gratia *Angl' & Franc'* Regis Primogenitus Princeps *Wallie* Dux *Cornub'* & Comes *Cestr'* universis & singulis presentes literas inspectur' salutem & presentibus dare fidem: meminimus nos nuper ex legalibus & gratuitis servitiis dicto Domino & progenitori nostro & nobis per dilectum & fidelem nostrum *Soldanum de Preissaco Dominum de Didona* Militem prestit' & impens' & quæ per in antea verisimiliter speramus impend' eidem locum de *Montandre* cum omnibus redditibus



Being thus ascertained of the Surname of this *Soldan*, it is within the Connection of this Discourse to give some short Notices of this Family, to shew that the Linage of our Knight answered the Qualification required by the Statutes. Pope *Clement V*, extended Nepotism to great Lengths, in the Number of such his Kinsmen were *" Gaillard de Preyssaco* Bishop of *Thoulouse* and *" Arnald de Pressaco*; and we find that *Regine de Gutto* Countess of *Armagnack* the Grandaughter and Heiress of *Arnald Garfiæ del Gout* Brother of that Pope, in her *o* Will made 1325, devised the Viscomties of *Leomagne* and *Auvillar*, the Chastellanries of *Duras*, *Blanquefort*, and several other Lands to her Husband, and the Heirs of his Body to be begotten, and for Want thereof substituted *Arnald Bernardi de Pressaco* Kt. called the *Soldan*, *Aymery de Durfort*, and others of her Relations, in equal Portions: And Liberty is here craved to insert a genealogical Table, to shew this Consanguinity more intelligibly to the View, because the Descent of another noble Knight, seated hereafter in this same Stall, will thence receive some Light. But it must not be understood that these two Families owed their Originals to this Alliance, though their Fortunes might be considerably advanced thereby; for we have Memorials of them both antecedent to this Papacy; That of *P Preissac* occurs as early as the Reign of King *John*, and the Title of *o Soldan* was used in 9 *Ed. II*, which was in the Year next after the Death of this Pope, and *Arnaldus Bernardi de Pressaco* was two Years before retained to be of that *r* King's Council and Household, who, or another of that Name, had in 1 *Ed. III*, Thanks return'd to him for his *s* Loyalty; and in the 27th Year was made *r* Regent of the Office of Seneschal of the Dutchy of *Aquitaine*, and in the 35th Year he received a considerable Sum for one Years Salary in *"* executing that Office.

bus juribus deveriis proficuis emolumentis & aliis suis pertin' universis cum mero & mixto Imperio alta & bassa ac omnimoda jurisdictione ad dictum locum pertinent' & pertinere debent' quoquo modo sub certis forma & modis per nostras Literas duxerimus contulisse. Cum igitur excrecentibus subditorum meritis & servitiis Regiæ largitionis interfit ad ampliores gratias se reddere liberalem Idcirco dicti *Soldani* intuent' obsequia & servitia de diebus in dies in regis honorum & tuend' juribus ut est fidelis cujuslibet adaugeri ex hiis sibi facere uberiores gratiam & merito appetent' eidem *Soldano* ad vitæ suæ terminum, & *Soldano* filio suo Primogenito pro se & heredibus suis dictum locum de *Montandre* cum omnibus redditibus juribus deveriis proficuis & emolumentis & aliis suis pertin' universis ac mero & mixto Imperio alta & bassa ac omnimoda jurisdictione ad dictum locum pertin' & pertinere debent' quoquo modo de nostra certa Scientia & gratia speciali potestateq; nobis super hoc attributa dedimus & concessimus Damusq; ac concedimus per presentes habend' tenend' possidend' regend' gubernand' per dictum *Soldanum* ad vitæ suæ terminum & per dictum *Soldanum* filium suum pro se & heredibus suis ut est dictum quacunq; donatione concessione vel assignatione per inantea in contrarium facienda in aliquo non obstante dicto Domino progenitori nostro & nobis Superioritate Resorto & Homagiis & in aliis salvis juribus regis quibuslibet alienis. Dat. *Burdegali* sub sigillo nostro primo die *Aprilis* Anno Dom. Millefimo cccmo. quinquagesimo septimo.

Inspeximus insuper tenorem aliarum Literarum patentium ejusdem Domini & patris nostri sub si-

gillo prædicti Judicis in hæc verba *Edward Aisne* filx du Roy de *France & D'engleterre* Prince *D'aquitaine* & de *Gales* Duc de *Cornouaille* Counte de *Cestre* Seignour de *Biscaye* & de *Castro Dordials* faisons savoir a tous qe pur le penyble diligence & travaill que nostre bien ame le *Soudain de la Trau* nostre foial Chivaler nous a fait en noz Guerres & services tant a Siege de *Montpaon* come aillours & ferra en temps avenir Et en recompensation de ses gages les quels il dit a lui estre due luy avons donnees & attroyes donnons & attroyons per ces presentes de nostre Grace especial la Baillie de *Marempne* avecques touz les profits & esmolumentis dicelle a terme de sa vie, &c.

Nos autem dictas Donationes concessiones & confirmationes Patris & Avi nostrorum prædictorum approbamus ratificamus & confirmamus prout Literæ suæ prædictæ rationabiliter testantur. Ita semper quod idem *Soldanus* fil' & heredes sui homagium Ligeum & alia deveria supradicta nobis & heredibus nostris pro rebus supradictis faciant ut est justum In cujus, &c. Teste Rege apud *Westm.* x<sup>o</sup> die *Julij*.

*m* Baluzii notæ in vitas *Papar.* Avenion. p. 621, 656, 733, 739. *Gallia Christiana* vol. p. 692.

*n* Rymer, vol. 3. p. 379.

*o* Baluz. ibidem, vol. 2. p. 465.

*p* Rymer, vbl. 1. p. 116. vol. 2. p. 398.

*q* Ibid. vol. 3. p. 572, 586, &c.

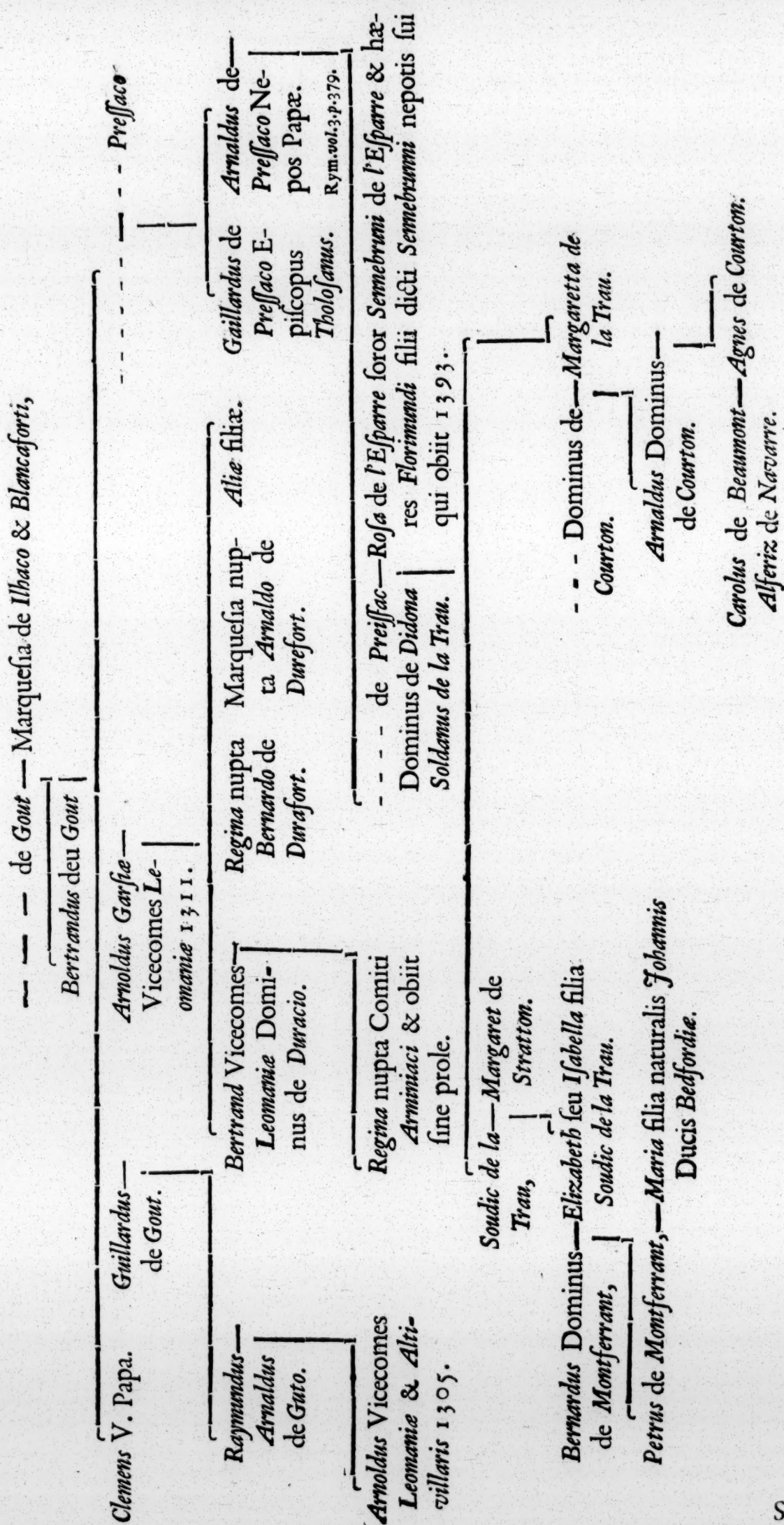
*r* Ibid. p. 530.

*s* Pat. 7 E. 2. p. 2.

*t* Vascon. 28 E. 3. m. 14.

*u* Rot. Pip. 36 E. 3.







So that *Soudan de Preissac* the Father, married <sup>x</sup> *Rose* Sister of *Sennebrun* Lord de *l'Esparre*, by whom he had a Son and a Daughter. *Soudic* the Son married <sup>y</sup> *Margaret* the Daughter of *John de Stratton* or *Stretton* <sup>z</sup> Lord of *Landiras* and Constable of *Bordeaux* in 6 Rich. II, who had several Lands in *England*, by whom he left a Daughter his Heiress married to *Peter de Montferrant*, whereby the Titles of *Soudan de la Traue* and Lord of *Landiras* and of *l'Esparre* was brought into this Family. The Daughter of *Soudan* the Father was married to the *Sire de Courton*, from whom descended the *Alferiz* of *Navarre*, which Pedigree is proved by an Instrument placed at large in the Margin, because it shews the Method of Descents of Lands in *Bourdellois*, while the same was under the Crown of *England*.

This *Margaret de Stratton* survived her Husband, and under *Hen. IV*, had several Controversies with the <sup>a</sup> Prior of *St. Stephen de Moretanke* in *Guyenne*.

<sup>x</sup> A vous tresexcellent & trespuissant Prince & nostre tres Souverain Seigneur le Roy d'Angleterre & a Mess. du Conseil.

Signifie treshumblement suppliant la vostre lige Agnes Dame de la baronie de *Courton* de vostre Duchie de *Guyenne*, laquelle est mariee a son Seigneur *Mary Charles de Beaumont Alferiz* de *Navarre*, Que comme a la dicte Suppliant & a ses enfans par droite lignee & succession de nature soit appartenante & due la moitie de tout l'ostel, terre, baronie, & heritage de *l'Esparre*, de *Carcans*, de *Listrac*, & de *Brully*, avecques toutes les appartenances & appendences, sicome de cest droit de succession, &c. Et soit ainsi que la mesme heritage est retenu & mis en vostre main Royal par vos Officers & gens de la vostre Conseil de *Bordeaux*, &c. Qu'il plait a vostre Royaute de lui faire droit & raison selon le loy de Justice & Coustume de *Bourdellois*, &c.

Et afin que vostre Royaute & vostre hault Conseil serent informez de la vraye lignee de la dicte Suppliant, en le dit heritage, La verite du fait si est, Que Dame *Rose* de *l'Esparre* sa entiere fuer germaine de Monsieur *Sennebrun* Seigneur qui fu de *l'Esparre* & pere du noble Seigneur Monsieur *Florimont* Seigneur de *l'Esparre* nagueres ale de vie a trespassement, fut mariee en l'ostel de *Latrau*, laquelle Dame *Rose*, si fusse a present en vie fusse & devoit estre proprietaire sans doubt de tout l'ostel, baronie, & affaire de *L'Esparre*, Et de la dite Dame *Rose* descendirent & furent filz & fille de son dit mariage, le noble baron Monf. *Soudain* de *Latrau*, & la noble Dame Dame *Marguerite* de *Latrau*, mere qui fut du noble baron Mess. *Arnault* Sire de *Courton* derien ale de vie a trespassement, Du quel la dite Dame *Agnes* quereillante & suppliant est fille loyalle & vraye heritiere, Et le dessus dit Monf. de *Courton* son pere, Et Monsieur le *Soudic* fils dudit Monsieur le *Soudan*, autemps qu'ils vivoient, estoient Cousins germains filz de frere & de seur, Et come par les choses & causes dessus dictes, lesquelles sont prouvables & vrayes abondeusement selon droit divin, & selon droit escript, & selon la vraye coustume de *Bourdellois*, laquelle est & contient que es terres & biens provenans & advenus de la partie de la mere, filz & fille succedent & doivent partir egaleement & per egales portions, se demontre & aparaisse clerelement, que la dite moite de tout ledit Chastel, Seigneurie, & affaire de *L'Esparre* par droite succession de nature & linage soit due & appartenante a la dite Dame suppliant, Et aussi que des enfans du Sire de

*L'Esparre* derreinement mort est devenus sans hoir de eulx descendans.

Le Roy d'Angleterre & de France & Seigneur d'Irlande.

Treschers & bien amez foialx. Nostre treschere & bien amee Anne Dame de la Baronie de *Courton* dedeinz nostre Duchie de *Guyenne* femme a nostre treschere & foial Cousin *Charles* de *Beaumont Alferiz* de *Navarre* per sa supplication monstrez ad en compleignant devant nostre Conseil, Que combien que a elle & a ses enfantz par droite lignee & succession de nature soit appartenante & due la moitie de tout l'ostel, terre, baronie, & heritage de *L'Esparre*, de *Carcans*, de *Listrac*, & de *Brully*, &c. De l'assent de nostre dit Conseil volons & vous mandons, &c. que selon la leye & coustume de nostre Duchie & de nostre pais de *Bourdellois*, facer faire a la dite Dame en la susdite cause ce, que droit raison & justice demandent, &c. Don a *Westm.* le viii jour de *Mars* l'an premier.

A nostre treschere & foial Chevalier *Johan Radcliff* nostre Seneschal de *Guyenne*, & de los *Landes* & as autres noz foialx a nostre Conseil de *Bordeaux*.

In dorso.

Tertio die Martij Ao. po. apud fratres prædicatores London concess. est quod, fiant literæ sub privato sigillo secundum quod infra scribitur super contentis in supplicatione huius annex, presentibus Dom. Ducibus Glouc. & Exon. Lon. & Winton. Episcopis, Comite Warr. Tiptoft Canc. Thes. & Custode Privati Sigilli. [i.e. 3 Martij, 1 Hen. 6. Anno Dom. 1422-3.]

<sup>y</sup> Above in Note m, p. 158.

<sup>z</sup> Vascon. 1 R. 2. m. 4. Vascon. 5 R. 2. m. 10. Rymer vol. 7. p. 325, 332, 366.

<sup>a</sup> Ex Origin. in Off. Pell. Henri — a l'onorable Pere en Dieu *Lercesq*; de *Bordeux* Saluz. Monstrez *Fauquet* de la *Roka* Priour du Monster de *Estephne* de *Moretanche* en nostre Duchie de *Guienne*, que Dame *Margarete* de *Stratton* jadis femme du *Soudic* de la *Traue* — ne veulloit soeffrir avoir sa possession de la dite Priorie, &c. volons que vous facez faire droit selonc ce que les leies & custumes de nostre Duchie de *Guienne* le requierent.



The abovementioned most obliging Gentleman hath farther informed this Editor, that after the Beheading of the *Sire de Montferrant le Soudan de la Trau* at *Poitiers* in 1454, his Lands being distributed as forfeited, and his Children insisting that Confiscations were contrary to the Law of *Guyenne*, that Controversy remained undecided 'till after the Year 1500, and that his Posterity at this Time continue the Usage of the Title of *Soudan de la Trau*.

His Arms on the Plate are *Or, un Lyon rampant queue fourchue Gules*, which differ in the Addition of *fourchue* from those on his Seal to the abovementioned Instrument, which are there impaled with three Fesses. His Crest, as some Manuscripts blason it, a Satyr's Head *Argent* or *Proper*; but rather the Head of *Midas* with Asses Ears, not unlike That of his Countryman the *Capitain de Buch*, which hath been observed to be as good a Crest according to the Rules of *Heraldry*, as the <sup>b</sup> Chieftans Head *Proper*, in a white Scarf goodly enveloped, born by Sir *John Chandos*.

<sup>b</sup> *Witley's true Use of Armory*, p. 27.













# MEMOIRS

Of the LIFE of

## Sir Simon de Felbrigg.



**A****FTER** Sir *Sandich*, Sir **SIMON DE FELBRIGG** numbered 114 filled this Stall, who in the Catalogues is said to be elected under *Hen. V.*, and by *Mr. Asmole* in the fifth Year of that Reign; whereas 'tis certain, he was chosen in the <sup>b</sup>Reign of *Rich. II.*, a Prince not only extremely fond of his Royal Consort Queen *Anne*, but very liberal in his Favours to her Relations, and among others to our Knight, who had married her near Kinswoman one of her Maids of Honour, and our Knight

expressed his Gratitude for these Benefactions in his last Will made even under the *Lancastrian-Line*, by ordering Masses for that King's Soul, according to the Religion of that Age.

The *Black Book* in 2 *Hen. VI.*, when the Duke of *Gloucester*, who had been elected in 1 *Hen. IV.*, is mentioned to be present, proceeds to describe

<sup>a</sup> MS. in Mus. Ashm. n. 7395.

<sup>b</sup> See above Page 13, Note f.

this



this Sir *Simon* (as 'tis there <sup>c</sup> worded) to be *Ordinis maxime Senex*; and in the following Year, in the Absence of our Knight, this same Book stiles the Lord *Hungerford cœtus illius natu maximus*, at a Time when several Companions, Seniors to this Lord *Hungerford* by Election, were present; so that our Knight might be the eldest Companion by Priority of Election, and possibly in Years too, of the Knights present in this Second of *Hen. VI.* and the Lord *Hungerford* be the Senior in Years, or the eldest Person of the Knights present in the Third of *Hen. V.* when Sir *Simon* was absent.

Our Sir *Simon* was descended from an ancient knightly Family furnamed from <sup>d</sup> *Felbrigge*, a noble Seat, Mannor, and Parish in *Norfolk*: *Richard de Felebrig*, by a Deed without Date, gave to the Church of the <sup>e</sup> *Holy Cross* in *Thetford*, several Lands, which descended to him from *Maud de Raunton* his Grandmother; and it appears from a <sup>f</sup> *Fine*, that *William* Son and Heir of *Richard* married *Mary de Merlay*, but dying without Issue, was succeeded by his Sister <sup>g</sup> *Maud* married to *Simon Bigot*, who in her Widowhood by a <sup>h</sup> *Letter of Attorney* empowered her Son *Roger* to agree to an alternate Presentation with the Prior of *Beeston* for the Church of *Ranton*, and who in 2 *Ed. I.* had the Right of <sup>i</sup> *Wreck*, Assize of Bread and Beer, and View of Frankpledge in *Ranton*, which doubtless was first brought into this Family by the abovementioned Marriage. This Sir *Roger*, by the Name of *Roger le Bigot de Felbrigge*, had free <sup>k</sup> *Warren* in *Felbrigge*, *Ranton*, and other Places, who by *Cecilia* his Lady named in Deeds the 19th and 23d of *Ed. I.* jointly with her Husband to have held Lands in <sup>l</sup> *Tuttington*, was Father of another Sir *Simon*, who stileth himself frequently <sup>m</sup> *Simon Bigot de Felbrigge*, and is in the Tract called *Nomina villarum*, called *Simon Felbrigge* Proprietor of the Mannor of *Felbrigge*, and of other Places in 9 *E. II.* and of *Pallinge* in *Norfolk*, and who in the Aid for the Knighthood of the *Black Prince* in 20 *Ed. III.* is there said to hold *Pellinge*, which *Simon Bigot* formerly held, and likewise one Knights Fee in *Ranton*; which *Simon Bigot* of *Felbrigge* purchased Lands in <sup>n</sup> *Barringham* and other Places from *Mary de Hastings*, and with his Wife *Alicia* Daughter of Sir *George Thorpe*, levied <sup>o</sup> *Fines* of several Messuages in *East Harling* and other Places, and settled the <sup>p</sup> *Mannor* and Advowson of *East Harling* on *John Herling*, and was Father of Sir *Roger Felbrigge* that had the Grant of a <sup>q</sup> *Market*, Fair, and View of Frankledge in *Felbrigge* in 26 *Ed. III.* and had a Writ of <sup>r</sup> *Ad quod Damnum* in 28 *Ed. III.* in which Year by the Title of *Roger* Son of *Simon de Felbrigge* he had another Grant of <sup>s</sup> *View* of Frankpledge in *Felbrigge* and *Ailmerton*, with Waif, Stray, Market, and Fair; and in the Thirtieth, being then a Knight, purchased Lands

<sup>c</sup> Lib. Nig. Garterii.

<sup>d</sup> Spelmanni Icenia, p. 152.

<sup>e</sup> Ex. Origin. penes, P. Le Neve Norroy.

<sup>f</sup> Fin. 4 H. 3. penes eundem.

<sup>g</sup> Gloveri Stemata inter Philp. MSS. in Off. Arm. p. 245.

<sup>h</sup> Fin. 56 H. 3. P. Le Neve Norroy.

<sup>i</sup> Inq. per hundreda penes eundem.

<sup>k</sup> Cart. 9 E. 1. n. 74.

<sup>l</sup> Penes P. L. N.

<sup>m</sup> E. Collect. Tho. Tanner, S. T. P. Cancellarii Ecclesie Norwic.

<sup>n</sup> Fin. 28 E. 1. penes P. L. N.

<sup>o</sup> Fin. 6 E. 3. penes eundem.

<sup>p</sup> Fin. 25 E. 3. penes eundem.

<sup>q</sup> Cart. 25 & 26 E. 3. n. 15. Rogerus fil' Simonis de Felbrigge.

<sup>r</sup> Efc. 28 E. 3. n. 40.

<sup>s</sup> Cart. 28 E. 3. n. 22. P. L. N.



in <sup>1</sup> *Roughton* and other Places; and in the 33d Year confirms to Sir *Walter de Walcot* and others the Mannors of *Felbrigge* and *Ailmerton*, with Lands in *Ranton*, *Beston*, *Gresham*, *Becham*, *Southside*, *Metton*, *Roughton-shippedene*, *Thurgarton*, and *Aldeburghe*, with the Advowsons of *Felbrigge*, *East-Harling*, *Ailmerton*, and *Ranton*, to which his Lady <sup>2</sup> *Elizabeth* is a Party, and her Seal hath the Impression of the Arms of *Felbrigge* empaling those of *Scales*: In 38 Ed. III, *Thomas de Wingfeld* and *Margaret* his Wife farm out the Mannor of *Metton* to <sup>3</sup> *Roger Felbrigge* Knight, and *Elizabeth* his Wife, for seven Years: In the 41st Year he purchased Lands in <sup>4</sup> *Donyham*, *Colby* and other Towns, and was living in 41 Ed. III, with his Lady *Elizabeth*, who was Daughter of *Robert* Lord *Scales*, and at length one of the <sup>5</sup> Heiresses of that noble Family; he died it seems in *Prussia*, having an honorary Monument or Cenotaphium erected for him in the Church of *Felbrigge*, leaving our <sup>6</sup> Knight his Son and Heir.

If Credit may be given to the Genealogists, the first *Simon Bigot* above-mentioned was Brother to *Roger* Earl of *Norfolk*, which if true, he must be younger than *John*, who by <sup>7</sup> Inquisition was found to be the Brother and Heir of that Earl, and in confirmation of this Tradition, it hath been supposed, that the Similitude or Analogy of the Arms of *Felbrigge* to those of *Bigot*, is owing to this Consanguinity: But whatever the present Case may be, 'tis certain that there were several Families of the *Bigots* seated in different Counties who bore different Arms, and that a Conformity or even Identity of antient Arms, without further Proofs, is no certain Argument of Kindred, since Feudataries holding beneficiary Lands by Tenure of performing Services in the Wars, did frequently take <sup>8</sup> Clientelary Arms very near resembling those of their High Lords, and it may be their Surnames too, as one Part of the Manumitted among the *Romans* assumed those of their Patrons: It is however certain, that *Roger Bigot* held *Felbrigge* at the Time of making <sup>9</sup> *Domesday-Book*, and it is not improbable that a younger Branch of that Family on whom this Mannor might have been settled, did, according to the Humour of former Ages, assume this Surname from this Seat or Habitation.

But 'tis high time to proceed to the Actions of our Knight, who presented Clerks to several <sup>10</sup> Churches in the Diocess of *Norwich*, from the 13th of *Rich. II*, 'till 18 *Hen. IV*, and among others to that of *Felbrigge* in 1430. It appears from his Deposition hereafter inserted, that he was present with the Duke of *Lancaster* at the Relief of *Brest*, and in the Voyage into *Spain*, which was in 9 *Rich. II*, and in the 11th Year he <sup>11</sup> purchased the Mannor of *Colby*, and granted an Annuity issuing out of it to <sup>12</sup> Sir *William Philip*: In the 13th Year he had a <sup>13</sup> License to travel together with Sir *William Arundell* (who was a Knight also of this Order) for

<sup>1</sup> Fin. 30 E. 3. penes eundem.

<sup>2</sup> x y Penes eundem.

<sup>3</sup> Camden. Britan. in *Hertfordshire*.

<sup>4</sup> Gloveri MS. n. 2. Tom. 33 inter Philp. MS. in Off. Arm.

<sup>5</sup> Efc. 35 E. 1. n. 46. Vide *Walsingh. Ypod Neustr.* p. 496.

<sup>6</sup> Spelman's *Aspilogia* p. 49. Camden's *Remains*

p. 181. Dugdale's *Warwick* p. 647. Vincent against *Btoke*, p. 693.

<sup>9</sup> *Domesday-Book*.

<sup>10</sup> Registr. Episc. Norwic. To the Medietie of *Aylmerton* in 1389, to *Snoring* in 1400, and many others.

<sup>11</sup> Fin. 11 R. 2. P. L. N.

<sup>12</sup> Claus. 11 R. 2. m. 25. dor.

<sup>13</sup> Pat. 13 R. 2. p. 2. m. 12.



a Pilgrimage, probably to St. *James*, as was very usual in that Age; and in the 18th succeeded Sir *Nicholas Sarnsfeild* (Knight also of this Order) as the King's <sup>i</sup> Standard-bearer (an Office formerly granted to none but Persons of most experienced Valour and Bravery, endued with great Strength of Body as well as with a known Genius for the Functions of War, and for that Reason the same was mostly in the Companions of this Order;) in Memory whereof the King's Standard is represented on the Monument which our Knight in his Life-time caused to be erected for his Lady and Himself. In 22 *Rich. II.*, being one of the Knights of the King's Chamber, he had granted to him in Tail-male the <sup>k</sup> Mannour of *Beston* in *Norfolk*, lately belonging to the Earl of *Arundell* attainted, in which Year he went into <sup>l</sup> *Ireland*, waiting probably on the King thither. In 9 *Hen. IV.*, our Sir *Simon* was <sup>m</sup> examined in the Court Military, in the Controversy about Arms between *Grey* and *Hastings*: And a <sup>n</sup> Memorial which hath no Date affixed to it, shews, that our Knight had four Mannours belonging to the Alien Abbot and Convent of *Cluny* in *France*; and we meet with one of his Deeds <sup>o</sup> enrolled in the Reign of *Hen. IV.*, whose Successor *Hen. V.*, in his first <sup>p</sup> Year reciting Grants made by *Rich. II.*, of 100 Marks issuing out of the Fee-farm of the City of *Norwich*, and of the like Sum from the Issues of the Counties of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk* confirmed to him by his Father, orders the same to be annually paid; in which Year also he received Robes of this <sup>pp</sup> Order, and was retained on the 29th of *April* in the third Year by <sup>q</sup> Indenture to serve in the Wars in *Guienne* and *France* with twelve Men of Arms and thirty-six Archers; as also in the following Year, when he again received <sup>r</sup> Robes of the *Garter*; and on the 4th of *October* being at <sup>s</sup> *St. Albans* with *John Duke of Bedford*, was received into the Suffrages and Fraternity of that Monastery. He settled on <sup>t</sup> *William Mersford* and other Feoffees the Mannours of *Felbrigge*, *Tottington*, *Routon*, *Ailmerton*, *Ingworth*, *Barningham*, and *Colby* in *Norfolk*, *Brysworth* in *Suffolk*, and *Sharpenhow* and *Stratley* in *Bedford*. The *Black-book* of the Order gives

<sup>i</sup> Pat. 18 R. 2. p. 2. m. 17. 17 Apr. & Pat. 19 R. 2. m. 30.

<sup>k</sup> Pat. 22 R. 2. p. 3.

<sup>l</sup> Pat. 22 R. 2. p. 3. m. 21. 28 Apr. *Simo Felbrigge* Chevalier qui versus partes *Hibernie* profecturus habet literas de generali Attornato &c. sub nominibus *Georgij Felbrige* Chevalier, & *Rob. Berney* Chevalier, *Robertus Felbrig* Armigeri, sub nominibus *Joh. Felbrigge* Clerici, &c.

<sup>m</sup> Mesme le Jour, l'an & lieu avant ditz [i. e. 20 de *Juyl* en la vicarage de *Northwalsam* l'an ix] par les ditz Commissaires & Examinours, en presence du dite associe, Monsieur *Symond Felbrygge* Chevalier requis & diligemment examine, de & sur tout les matieres, sur queux ses contestes preexaminees feurent demandes & requis, dist c'est Chevalier soy tant savoir, que luy mesme fust present a le rescous fait a Siege de *Brest* par le Duc de *Lancastre*, qi dieu assoile, sur son viage en *Espaigne*, & illeuques vist le Baner du dit Monsieur *Hugh* [*Hastings*] sanz interruption ou chalenge; Et celle partie dist, & concorde mesme c'est Chevalier oue Monsieur *Thomas Erpyngham* preexamine, touchant le pertur des ditz armes durant la dite siege en *Espaigne*. Item dist c'est Chevalier q'il feust hors del Royalme a temps de la departison del heritage & terres des Countz de *Penbroke* entre la partie pleyntif, &

Monsieur *William Beauchamp*, & a son revenir en *Engleterre*, Il soy merveillaist de ceo, qar il guidoit, qe le dit Monsieur *Edward* par cause del noun de *Hastynge* deust avoir les terres & heritage sus ditz, & dist ausi c'est Chevalier, q'il suppose verriement, si ledit Monsieur *Edward* eust este du pleyne age al temps du dite departison, ledit Monsieur *Reginald* n'eust heut livere si legerement, comme il avoist, des terres avant ditz. Item quant as generaulx Interrogatories dist c'est Chevalier come il ad dit devant, & outre & concorde oue Monsieur *Miles Stapulston* preexamine, Plus nautrement as dictes matieres ne a les Interrogatories, ses depositions concernantz ne a nulle parcelle dicelles, ne scut c'est Chevalier dire, ne deposter au present, come il dist; noun obstant qe sur les dictes matieres, & chescun partie dicelles, & ausi sur le Interrogatories il feust bien & diligemment examinees.

<sup>n</sup> In Off. Pell.

<sup>o</sup> Claus. 12 H. 4. m. 8.

<sup>p</sup> Priv. Sigill. 19 Dec. 1 H. 5. in Off. Pell.

<sup>pp</sup> Above p. 14, Note g.

<sup>q</sup> In Off. Pell.

<sup>r</sup> Rymer vol. 9. p. 335, which should be in the 3d of *Hen. V.* See above p. 15.

<sup>s</sup> Nero D. 7. in Bibl. Cotton.

<sup>t</sup> Claus. 5 H. 5. P. L. N.



no other Notices of him than his Prefence or Absence from the Feasts; that he attended at That held 7 *Hen. V.*, in which Year we find him as a Witness of the Promise made by "Arthur of Bretagne upon his Release-ment, to return under the Penalty of the Reversal of his Arms, which in that Age was the Mark of perpetual \* Infamy. He was one of the Commissioners for borrowing ' Money in the County of Northampton on a Loan to the King, in which Year, and the following One, we meet with two of his <sup>z</sup> Deeds enrolled in *Chancery*; he was present in the <sup>a</sup> Chapters of this Order held in the 8th and 9th of *Hen. V.*, and received the Habits of this Order against the Feast held in this <sup>b</sup> latter Year, and

was

\* Rymer, vol. 9. p. 744.

x Hence the Clause commonly inserted in Agreements made with Prisoners upon their Ransom, that in case they did not perform the Conditions, they consented reputari pro felono & infami, ac Arma sua reversari. Rym. vol. 7. p. 228. Rym. vol. 9. p. 444, 743, 744. See Du Tillet recueil des Rois de France, p. 432. See Froiss. vol. 2. p. 123, &c.

y Rym. vol. 9. p. 814.

z Claus. 7 H. 5. m. 16. d. Cl. 8 H. 5.

a Lib. Niger.

b Comp. Roberti Rolleston Custodis magn. Garderobæ pro anno nono *Henr. Quinti* penes Remem. Regis in Scaccario.

Pro broudat. mclxx Gart. eor. pret. vd. 24l. 7s. 6d. pro opere & broudat. mclxii Gart. operat. de seric. & auro de Cipre pro qual. pret. v d.

Ad i goun. long. i capuc. duplicat. de pann. Blanket long. fac. & dict. goun. furr. cum bests de Erm. & Erm. ventr. ac operat. in brouder. cum Gart. de aur. de Cipre & seric. cum isto dictamine *Hony soit qd mal y pense* pro eod. Domino Rege erga festum Sancti Georgij.

ix uln. pann. blanket. long.

xiii timbr. bests. de Erm.

17 panes de Erm. vent.

xx

Ciiiiix de aur. Gart.

i qrt. dim. unius uln. tel. lin. Braban.

Ad i capuc. simpl. de panno nigr. long. fac. pro Rege erga dict. festum & ad i cingl. pro eodem domino Regi fac. de Tissut. seric. nigr. & i Bokell. i pendant. & Barr. auri pur. & ad vi. wardebrac. pro Rege fact. & garnis. cum tissut. seric. conf. i Bokell. & i pendant & Barr. de —

Johanni Cavendish Broudati dom. Regis sup. broudat. iii. M. cccxxii Gart. rotund. de Tarterin. Boker. & Carde operat. cum seric. & aur. de Cipr. cum isto dictamine, *Hony soit qui mal y pense*, ordinat. pro Robis de pann. Blanket. long. viz. pro Domino Rege, Duc. Bedf. & al. Duc. Comit. Baron. & Milit. de Societat. Gart. ac pro Domina Regina & Comitissa Hunt. p. Rob. suis conf. operat. in broudar. de pann. conf. cum Gart. conf. erga festum Sancti Georgij anno ix p. tpus. hujus computi p. literam dorman. de Priv. Sigillo dict. Custod. inde direct. dat. xx Feb. anno vii.

v pec. ii uln. iij. qrt. Tarterin.

xiiii l. ix unc. auri de Cipr.

viii l. de unc. Seric.

iiii pec. x uln. Carde.

i pec. ij uln. Boker.

ilb. x unc. Pakfil.

ilb. Fil.

Domino Regi ad mt. goun. de pann. rub. curt. fac. & in med. ante & retr. dict. goun. consuend. cum Cruce Sancti Georgij mod. unius Sol. &c.

Duc. Bedd. Gloucester, & Exon. ac al. Comit. Baron. & Milit. de societat. Gart. erga festum Sancti Georgij hoc anno ix. ad rob. suas de pann. Blanket. long. de dono Domini Regis fact. & furr. ac operand. in brouder. cum Gart. de Tartin. auri de Cipr. & seric. cum isto dict. *Hony soit qui mal y pense*, viz. prædict.

Duc. Bedford,  
Gloucester, &  
Exon. ac

Comit. Warr.  
Sarum,  
Westm. &  
Hund.

Cuilibet eorum v. uln. pann. Blanket. long. & i furr. de cc ventr. min. pur. ac dictis tribus Duc. cuilibet eor. cx. Gart. de seric. & aur. de Cipr. ac cuilibet dict. comit. c Gart. consil.

Ac Domino de Fitzhugh,  
Domino de Willowby,  
Johanni Cornewalle,  
Willmo Philip,  
Johanni Robessart,  
Walt. Hungerford,  
Willmo Harrington,  
Thomas Erpyngham,  
Simoni Felbrigge,  
Rob. Umsfreville,  
Here Tancke, &  
Lodowic Robessart, milit.

Cuilibet eor. v. uln. pann. blanket. long. conf. i furr. de cxx ventr. men. gross.

Ac præfato Dom. de Fitzhugh, &  
Waltero Hungerford.

Utrique eorum C Gart. & cuilibet al. Domin. & Milit. lxxx. Gart. confimil.

Ac Comitissa Hunt.

Ad Conf. Rob. suam de panno Blanket. conf. de conf. dono Regis fact. furr. & operand. in brouder. cum Gart. erga dict. festum v. uln. pann. Blanket. conf. i furr. de cc ventr. Men. pur. & c Gart. conf.

Ac venerabili in Christo Patri Episc. Wynton.

Ad rob. suam fac. & furr. de conf. dono Regis erga idem fest. i pan. Blanket. cont. i furr. de DC, & i capuc. de cxi ventr. men. pur. i furr. de cccc. & i furr. de cclx ventr. de men. gross. & i furr. de Byf. de cxi. best p. breve Regis dat. xii Decemb. anno ix.

iiii pann.



was excused for his Absence in the following One; and at the Feast 1 Hen. VI, hath this Addition, *Dom. Simon. Felbrigge senior*, which seems to relate to his Seniority in the Order, since it may be difficult to find any other Knight at that Time of his Name; and indeed if there was, that Addition would however be foreign in an Entry in the Register of this Order. At this Time he settled an 'Annuity of two Nobles on *Garter King of Arms*; in the next Year he is described as above, *Ordinis maxime Senex*, and is by mistake in the third Year called *Dominus Thomas Felbrigge*, and was present at the Feasts in the 4th, 5th, 6th, and 7th of Hen. VI, excused in the 14th and 15th, and omitted in the 16th Year; from which Time there is a Chasm or Silence in this Book 'till the 22d Year, before which Time he died, having in 19 Hen. VI, with his Lady <sup>d</sup> *Katherine*, purchased Lands in *East Beckham* and *Beeston* by the Sea. His Will was made on 'St. Matthew's Day, [Sept. 21, 1442,] 21 Hen. VI, and proved on the 20th of February following, wherein he mentions his Mannors of *Felbrigge*, *Ailmerton*, *Routon*, *Barningham*, *Colby*, *Totington-Hall*, and *Ingworth* in *Norfolk*, *Pressworth* in *Suffolk*, and *Sharpenhoe* and *Stattele* in *Bedford*, ordering himself to be buried in the Church of the Friars Preachers in *Norwich*, appointing Masses for the Souls of his Wives and of *Richard* late King of *England*, and giving Legacies to his Wife *Katherine*, to *Thomas Tindale*, to the eldest Son of *Sir Thomas Warwton* by *Alana* his (this *Sir Simons*) Daughter, and also to another Daughter a Minorels at *Bruserd*; yet the Jury finding that he died seized jointly with *Katherine* his Wife of *Felbrigge*, and of these other Lands, give however their Verdict of their Ignorance of his Heir at Law; which seems very surprizing, unless the same was occasioned in that this Lady *Alana* might be his Daughter by an Alien not naturalized, wherein the abovesaid Pedigrees so far agree as to make this *Alana* to be his Daughter by *Margaret* the Daughter of a Brother to *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia* and Emperor; and yet it seems the Descent of *Tindale* from this Marriage, was afterwards esteemed no <sup>g</sup> Bar to his being One of the Heirs to the Lord *Scales*, whose Sister was Mother of our Knight.

iiii pann. x uln. pann. Blanket. long.  
viii qualt. de CC }  
i de DC } ventr. } furr. }  
i de CXL } capuc. } men. pur.

xii qualt de Cxx }  
i de CCCC } ventr. Furr. men. gross.  
i de CCCLX }

i de CxL bests furr. de Byf.  
MDCCCLX de feric. & aur. Gart.

Imperator. *Roman.* ad rob. suam fac. de pann. blank.  
long. & furr. cum bests de Erm. ac operat. in broud.  
cum Gart. cum literis aur. pro liberat. fraternitat.  
Sancti Georgij p. breve. præd.

ix uln. dim. pann. Blanket. long.  
xxv timbr. v. bests. de Erm.  
CxLi cum literis aur. Gart.

In this Account are the Particulars very large provided for the Coronation of Queen Katherine.

Eidem Regine ad i gown. long. fac. de pann. Blanket. long. de liberat. Gart. erga dict. festum Sancti Georgij & furr. cum panes de Erm. ventr. & bests. de Erm. ac operat. in brouder. cum Gart. rotund. feric. & aur. de Cipre cum isto distamine, *Hony soit qi male y pense*, erga idem festum per breve Regis 12 Dec. anno ix.

ix uln. pann. Blanket long.  
xix timbr. xii best. de Erm.  
iii panes de Erm. ventr.  
CLXXV cum literis aur. Gart.

c Ashm. App. to the History of the Garter.

d Fin. 19 H. 6. P. L. N.

e Lib. Rous in Curia Præ. Cantuar.

f Esc. 21 H. 6. n. 33.

g Camd. Brit. in Engl. p. 293.



The Inquisitive and most learned Sir Henry <sup>b</sup> Spelman saith, that our Knight's first Lady was the Daughter of the Duke *Thasæ* (as 'tis printed) who was Nephew to the King of *Bohemia*, and entertains his Reader with a Tradition current in his younger Years, That this Lady's Great Grand-son *William Tindal*, made Knight of the *Bath* at the Creation of the Prince, was on the Right of this Descent declared Heir of that Kingdom, " *jure* " *Margarettæ Proavia sue heredem regni Bohemiæ denunciatum.*" <sup>i</sup> Fuller mentions the same Tradition in substance, but varied as to the Person; acquainting us, That Dr. *Humphry Tindal* Dean of *Ely*, and Master of *Queen's College* in *Cambridge*, was in the Reign of *Queen Elizabeth* " prof- " fered by the Protestant Party in *Bohemia* to be made King thereof, " which he refused, alledging he had rather be *Queen Elizabeth's* Subject, " than a foreign Prince:" He reckons it improbable, but proceeds to add, " I know full well that Crown is Elective; I know also that for " some Hundreds of Years it hath been fixed to the *German Empire*: " However because no Smoak without some Fire, or Heat at least, there " is something in it, more than appears to every Eye: True it is, that " he was Son to Sir *Tho. Tindall* of *Hockwold* in *Norfolk*, and how *Bohe-* " *mian* Blood came into his Veins I know not; sure I am, he gave the " Arms of *Bohemia*, viz. *Mars*, a Lyon with a forked Tail *Luna*, crown- " ed *Sol*, with a Plume of Estrich Feathers for a Crest."

The Manner how *Bohemian* Blood came into his Veins hath been hinted, but possibly the Arms and Crest which Mr. *Fuller* conceived to be those of *Bohemia*, were only the paternal Arms and Crest of *Felbrigge*, which *Tyndal* might bear [Quarterly] or allusive thereto, as the Heir thereof.

Ostrich Feathers were indeed the <sup>k</sup> Crest of the Arms of *Bohemia*, and in all probability the *Black Prince* might assume them as his Cognizance, in memory of killing that King at *Cressy*; but those of *Bohemia* were not *Ermined*, whereas *Tyndal* (as *Wall Garter* saith) bore for his Crest " a Busche " of Ostriche Feathers bound *Ermyns* in a Crowne gold mantled *Gules*, " lyned *argent*;" and the Arms of *Felbrige* differ from those of *Bohemia*, not only in the Colours but in the Tails of the Lyon.

But to return to this first Marriage of our Knight: Sir *Henry Spelman*, by Duke of *Thasa* intended without doubt *Primislaus Dux Teschinensis*, that is of *Tessen*, a Principality in *Silesia*, which Person was not natural Brother, but *sororius* (as our <sup>l</sup> Records term him) to *Wenceslaus* Brother of our Queen *Anne*. *Balbinus* <sup>m</sup> acquaints us, that *Wenceslaus* VIIth King of *Bohemia* married *Viola* Sister of *Casimir* the third Duke of *Tessen*, Father of *Primislaus*; this Duke waiting on Queen *Anne* hither, had many distinguishing Marks of <sup>n</sup> Honour and Bounty given him, and this Lady *Margaret* died, as appears from the Inscription on the Monument, on the 27th of *June* 1416, 4 *Hen. V.* and our Knight after some time married again.

<sup>b</sup> *Icenia*, p. 152.

<sup>i</sup> *History of Cambridge*, p. 81.

<sup>k</sup> *Vredii Sigill. Flandriæ*, p. 63, &c.

<sup>l</sup> *Rymer vol. 7.* p. 283, 293, 295, &c.

<sup>m</sup> *Miscell. Hist. Bohemiæ*, in *Genealogiis*.

<sup>n</sup> *Pat. 4 R. 2.* p. 3. retained of the King's Council, &c.



There remain other Difficulties in Entries about our Knight, who (as we are certain from the Probate of the Will) died before 20 Febr. 21 Hen. VI, and therefore the Account of the Wardrobe transcribed into a Book by one *Cotom* Clerk of that Office, said in the Title thereof to <sup>o</sup> commence from *Michaelmas* 22 Hen. VI, charging Robes to have been delivered to our Knight, must either be mistaken in the Date, or be understood to relate to the Year wherein that Officer passed the same, according to the Forms of the *Exchequer*.

Then as to his Burial, Mr. *Wever* in one Part of his <sup>p</sup> Book places it in the Black Friars at *Norwich* in 1442, and that of his Lady *Katherine* at the same Place in the Year 1449; and yet in another Part saith, that at "<sup>q</sup> *Cromer* lieth the Body of Sir *Simo Felbrigge* Knight of the *Garver* in the Reign of Hen. VI. with his Effigies, which he there describes to be in compleat Armour, in both his Emerases the Cross of St. *George*, holding in his Right-hand a Pennon of Arms, his Belt bossed and gilt, his Hanger by his Side, his Spurs gilt, the blue *Garver* about his

<sup>o</sup> Liber *Cotom* in Officio Magnæ Garderobæ, p. 91 b.

Venerabili in Christo Patri Episcopo Wynton Cardinali *Anglie* ad robam suam de liberat. Fraternitat. Sancti *Georgij* hoc Anno fact. de pann. Blanket. furr. cum men. pur. & gross. & Byf.

i pann. cont. xxiiii uln. Blanket. long.  
i de cxi capuc. } men. pur.  
i de de furr. }  
i de cccc } furr. men. gross.  
i de cccix }  
i de cxi bests. furr. Byf.

Duci *Glouc.*  
Duci *Fbor.*  
Duci *Excessr.* &  
Duci *Somerf.*

Cuilibet eorum v. uln. pan. Blanket. i furr. de CC ventr. Men. purr. & Cxx Garters.

March. *Dors.*  
Com. *Suff.*  
Com. *Staff.*  
Com. *Sar.*  
Com. de *Langvile*, &  
Com. *Salop*,

Cuilibet eorum v. uln. pann. Blanket. i furr. de CC ventr. Men. pur. & C Garters.

Domino de *Weloughby*,  
Domino de *Scales*,  
Domino de *Hungerford*,  
Domino de *Sndely*,  
Vicount de *Beaumont*,  
Domino de *Fauconberge*.

Cuilibet eorum v. uln. pan. Blanket. i furr. de Cxx ventr. Menev. gross. & lxxx Garters.

*Johanni Robelhart*,  
*Johanni F.istolf*,  
*Henr. Tanke*, &  
*Simoni Felbrigge*,

Cuilibet eor. v. uln. pann. Blank. furr. de Cxx ventr. men. gross. & Lxx Garters operat. cum literis

feric. & aur. cipr. more consueto, de dono dom. Reg. contra fin. Sancti *Georgij* hoc anno.

iii pann. & uln. Blanket. long.  
x qlt. de cc ventr. furr. menev. pur.  
x qlt. de Cxx ventr. furr. men. gross.  
MDCCCxl Garters.

Regi *Portugal.* ad habend. i mantell. de Velvet blod. plan. lin. cum damasc. alb. cum i *Garver* gross. embroud. de Armis Sancti *Georgij* cum i laq. long. cum knopp. & Tassell. de rem. ultimi Comp. anni præcedent. ac ad i gown. long. fac. de pann. scarlet. garnizat. cum Garteriis de liberat. Sancti *Georgij* & furr. cum men. pur. purfilat. Ermyns cum i capuc. de eodem panno similiter. garnizat. cum Garters.

v. uln. pann. scarlet.  
iiii integr. Ermyns  
xxxvii tymbr. de men. pur.  
i de Velvet blod. } mantell.  
lin. cum damasc. alb. }  
i long. cum knopp. } laq; feric.  
tassell. feric. }  
i gross. operat. cum armis } Gart.  
Sancti *Georgij* Cxx

Comitissæ *Suffolk* ad habend. de dono Regis con. festum Sancti *Georgij* hoc Anno pro liter. dorman. de Priv. Sigillo dict. Custodi qui nunc est, vel qui temp. fuerit inde direct. dat. iii Nov. Anno Regis xii liberat. & comp. dicti computan. de eodem Anno xii & sup. annot.

v. uln. pan. Blanket. long.  
i de CC ventr. furr. men. pur.  
C Garters.

*Johanni Mounshill* broudr. Regis ad superbroudr. *Garteria* præd. sup. Tarterin. & Card. confut. cum feric. & operat. cum aur. cipr. pro divers. Dom. & *Dominabus* supradict.

iiii pec. i uln. Tarterin.  
iii pec. di. uln. Card.  
viih. iiii unc. i qrt. aur. cipr.  
iiilb feric.

p *Funeral Monuments*, p. 805.  
q *Ibid.* p. 856.

" right





hic Jacet Symon felbrigge miles quondam verillarius illustri  
 ssimi dñi regis ricardi scđi qui obiit die mensis anno dñi  
 mcccc et dñe Margarita quondam consors sba nomine boema ac  
 olim domicilla Illustrissime dñe dñe anne quondam inclite regine  
 que obiit xxvii die mensis juij anno dñi mccccxiii quarantū quies amicu







"right [he should have said about his left] Leg, his Feet resting on a Lyon all engraven in Brass, his Lady by his Side, &c." by which Particulars it appears, that *Cromer* is by mistake inserted for *Felbrigge*, where such a Monument still remains, which was doubtless erected by himself upon the Death of his first Lady, and where he intended at that time to have been laid, and accordingly there are Blanks in the Inscription for the Day, Month, and Year whereon his Death should happen, which were never filled up, because he afterwards altered that Resolution, and ordered himself to be buried in the Black Friars in *Norwich*, which we shall soon find was observed; but 'tis necessary first to give some larger Description of this Monument, a Type whereof is here exhibited, the same being of very great Authority as to the then Habits of the Order, and very Instructive in other Curiosities. He being under great Obligations to *Richard* the Second, to whom he was Standard-bearer, hath the Standard displayed, the Shaft thereof resting on a Lyon, and in the Standard or Banner, as also in the Upper-part of the Monument are that King's Arms empaled with or after those ascribed to the *Confessor*, which are said to be *r Azure*, a Cross fleure Or, between five Martlets of the *Second*, taken probably from the Reverse of a <sup>1</sup> Coin of *Edward* found in that dark Age, when Arms were thought to have been established long before the Conquest: And *Richard* II, towards the End of his "Reign, out of regard to his great Patron *St. Edward* (as he esteemed him) placed his Arms before his own; and accordingly we find many Entries in the Accounts of the "Wardrobe 22 *Rich. II*, of several Things embroidered *de Armis Sancti Eduardi & Domini Regis nunc partitis*, which he allowed to be also born as Augmentations in the first Place, by some of his chief Favourites, and among others by *Thomas Mowbray* Earl of *Nottingham*, the Usage whereof by his Descendant the most learned and generous Nobleman of his Age the unfortunate Earl of *Surry*, Knight also of this Order, was made a chief Article of the Accusation against him, and Inuendo's of Treason found out of that and other Simbols.

<sup>r</sup> Upton de re milit. p. 129.

<sup>f</sup> Camd. Brit. in English, in Saxon Coins, Tab. 7. n. 14, 16, 20, but Fontaine de Numism. in Tab. 7. ad finem Thesauri ling. Septentr. attribuit it to Edward Senior.

<sup>t</sup> In the Case of Arms between Scrope and Grosvenour, John of Gaunt Duke of Lancaster attests, That in the Reign of Ed. III, upon a Reference to Six of the most eminent Knights of that Age, Carminow of Cornwall proved his Right to his Arms, by the constant Bearing thereof from the Time of King Arthur, &c.

<sup>u</sup> Froissart vol. 4, p. 188, tells us, That the Irish had great Reverence and Dread of Edward the Confessor, whereof King Richard receiving Information, did upon his Expedition into that Country leave off the Usage of the Leopards and the Fleurs de Lis, and took the Arms of that Saint, viz. A Cross potencee d'Or, & de Gueules, a Quatre Coulombs blanc, which induced the Irish to submit to him.

Chron. Melros de ferali Parlamento inter MSS. Will. Pety Arm. in Bibl. Interioris Templi. Rex vero qui jam triumphasset ex infestissimis hostibus sic superbivit sic efferebatur vanis cogitationibus, ut jam respuerit omne medium, & sic se supra se extolleret, ut mutaret arma sua, quae pater & Avus & patruus sui gestaverunt & adderet scuto suo Arma S. Eduardi,

sic ut anterior pars arma Sancti plena forent, & pars reliqua plena esset recognitio armorum parentum ejus.

<sup>See</sup> Walsing. p. 355. ad Annum Domini 1398.

<sup>w</sup> Comp. Johannis Macclesfield Custod. Magn. Gard. 22 R. 2. penes Remem. Regis.

<sup>x</sup> To the Duke of Hereford, Surry, Exeter, &c. Comp. Willimi Lovency Custodis Magnae Garderobae dom. Henrici Lancaster Ducis Hereford ab anno x R. 2. in Officio Ducat. Laac. pro pondere argenti unius Sigilli Domini facti cum Armis Sancti Eduardi & Angliae ac Hereford, cum nomine Ducis Hereford ponderantis xv uncias iii gran. pretii unc. ii s. iii s.

<sup>Seal of the Duke of Exeter in Vinc. n. 88. p. 87. and I have seen some Originals.</sup>

<sup>y</sup> Mon. Angl. vol. 2. p. 194. Richardus Rex anno 22mo dedit Tho. de Mowbray Comiti Nottingham ad portandum in sigillo & vexillo suo Arma S. Eduardi, idcirco arma bipartita portavit scilicet S. Eduardi & Domini Marecalli Angliae cum duabus pennis struccionis erect. &c.

<sup>See</sup> Vinc. MS. in rough Leather in Off. Arm. n. 63. p. 39. See Vincent against Brook, p. 389.

<sup>His Arms were so empaled in the Windows of Kegworth Church in Leicestershire.</sup>



The Arms of Queen *Anne* impaled likewise with those of *Richard* the Second, are placed over the Head of the Lady *Felbrigge*, to whom she was related, being Quarterly, those of the Empire *Or*, an Eagle displayed with two Heads *Sable*, and the Kingdom of *Bohemia Gules*, a Lyon rampant *Argent*, *queüe furchée*. <sup>z</sup> *Upton* indeed blazons those Arms of *Rich. II.*, and Queen *Anne*, not by Empalement, but Quarterly Quarterly: But there possibly is an Anachronism committed in Heraldry upon this Monument, for Queen *Anne* died on the 7th of *June* 1394, in the End of the 17th Year of *Richard II.*, which is supposed to be before that King took the Humour of empaling the Arms of the Confessor.

The Effigies of our Knight represents him in compleat Armour, and thereon the Cross of *St. George* in a Scutcheon on both Shoulders, but not surrounded with any Garter, that on the Left being doubtless an Ensign of the Order, and the Collector cannot as yet adventure to determine, whether That on the Right hath also any relation thereto; he is certain that the *English* Souldiers wore in the Army the Emblem of the Red Cross for several Ages after this Time, but knows not whether the same was placed on the right Shoulder. Beside his Sword, which is dependant on his Left-side, he hath a Dagger on the Right, which was then used in order to stab an Enemy, that should chance to be dismounted, in such Place as any Defect could be found in his Armour, then termed <sup>a</sup> *Misericordia*, and antiently <sup>b</sup> *Anelace*.

The Armour is made of large Plates of Iron or Steel, which about this Age succeeded to the Coat of Mail, then newly discontinued by reason of the Greatness of its Weight, because it required several other Accoutrements to make it useful. <sup>c</sup> *Chaucer* lived about this Time and describes his Knight *Sir Thopas* in full Armour, being first a Shirt of fine Cloth, over it a *Haketon* or Jacquet without Sleeves, sometimes called *Gambeson*, which was stuffed with Cotton or some such Materials, to take off the Impression that the Annulets in the Coat of Mail must otherwise make on the Body when run against by a Spear or Lance, over this was an *Habergeon* or Coat of Mail made of Rings or Annulets interwoven, then the *Hauberke* and thereon the Coat of Arms in Silk, in the Form of a *Dalmatick* or Herald's Tabart without Sleeves. This seems somewhat too foreign, so that at present there is only a Reference made in the <sup>d</sup> Margin to a Claim, wherein the Armour of a Knight in former Ages is particularly described.

Our Knight was certainly buried in pursuance of his Will at the *Black Friars* in *Norwich*; because his second Lady *Katherine*, who survived him

<sup>z</sup> De re Militari, p. 223.

<sup>a</sup> Du Fresne Gloss. in voce.

<sup>b</sup> Ibid. in voce Anelacius. Chaucer in his Description of the Squire's Yeoman,

And by his side a sword and bokeler,  
And on that other a gay daggere, &c.

<sup>c</sup> Tale of Sir Thopas, v. 3360, &c.

<sup>d</sup> Registrum Sacristæ Monasterii de Burgo Sancti Petri penes Ducem de Montagu. Quod Abbas & con-

ventus fuissent in pacifica possessione percipiendi nomine mortuarii meliorem dextrarium armatum si fuerit, alioquin equum alium meliorem cum armatura sua omnium militum & aliorum feodum militare, seu partem feodi militaris de dictis Abbate & conventu tenentibus una cum armatura militari, videlicet, cum *Aketon*, *Gambeson*, lorica, Galea, bacinetto cum Anentayle & pyfan, cirothecis de plares five baleyn, scuto, lancea, quisseis, pulleynis, Jambers five caligis de mayle, gladio, sella & fræno, &c.



about 19 Years, in her Will <sup>e</sup> directs her own Burial in the Choir of the Friers Preachers there, near the Body of Sir *Simon* her Husband: She could not be ignorant that the Directions given her by her Husband's Will, had not been observed, to lay his Body in that Place. This Lady was Daughter<sup>f</sup> of *Ansketill Mallory* of *Winwick* and Relict of *Ralph Grene* of *Draiton*, who died on the 24th of October, 4 Hen. V, and being married to our Knight, received<sup>g</sup> Robes against the Coronation of Queen *Katherine* in the ninth Year.

Contemporary with him and of *Suffolk*, and (as a Manuscript Pedigree faith) his Brother was Sir *George Felbrigge* of *Playford*, a Person of great Eminency in Military and State-Affairs, to whom<sup>h</sup> *Rich. II*, gave forty Pounds yearly to support the Degree of Knighthood conferred upon him, and employed him in several Embassies of Consequence, whose Lady *Margaret* was one of the Daughters and <sup>i</sup> Co-heirs of Sir *John Aspale*. He died seized of the Mannor of *Cowling* in *Suffolk*, and bore the same Arms with our Knight, with a Mullet for Difference: Sir *John Felbrigg* was likewise of *Playford*, whose Will was proved in 1423, with several others of this Surname.

As to the Arms. The Family of *Bigot*<sup>k</sup> bore, *Parti per Pale d'Or & Vert, au Lion Gules, sur tout armè & lampassè d'Azur*, by reason, as 'tis supposed, of their Intermarriage with the Daughter and Co-heir of *Marshal* Earl of *Pembroke*: But those of *Felbrigge* are in the Repertory of *Jennings* blazoned *d'Or, a un Lion embelliff rampant de Goules*, that is a Lion *Saliant*, and in this manner the same without the Colours are represented on the Monument in *Felbrigge*.

The Crest is a *Plume of Ostrych Feathers* Ermined, issuing out of a *Coronet* Gules, placed upon a *Cappelle*, which Crown in that Age was a Proof that he was a <sup>l</sup> Gentleman (as the Term was) *de Nom, d'Armes & de Cry*, which Cry or Motto was *Sanz juver*. These *Pennaches*, as they were termed, were a common Bearing on the <sup>m</sup> Helmet, and used by several Knights of this Order.

The Mantling over the Helmet *d'Or* is the same Feathers, or rather Cloth *Ermined*, lined *Gules*.

The Fetterlocks on the Monument were his Badge or <sup>n</sup> Cognizance.

*Peter Le Neve* Esq; Norroy, hath in his Custody some Deeds of our Knight, as also of Sir *George Felbrigge*, sealed with the Crest of a Lyon's Head erased within a Fetterlock.

<sup>e</sup> Lib. Bosyard in Registr. *Normic.*

<sup>f</sup> *Genealogical History* of Mordaunt, p. 154, 187,

193.

<sup>g</sup> Ex Compot. in Offic. Rem. Regis.

<sup>h</sup> *Rymer* vol. 8. p. 51, 535, 564.

<sup>i</sup> Indent. 47 E. 3. P. L. N.

<sup>k</sup> Vinc. against Broke, p. 340.

<sup>l</sup> Menestrier Orig. des Armoiries, p. 69, 70.

*Froiss. vol. 1. c. 29. The Lords of Germany promise to serve E. III. with a certain Number des Gens d'armes à Heaumes & Timbres couronnez.*

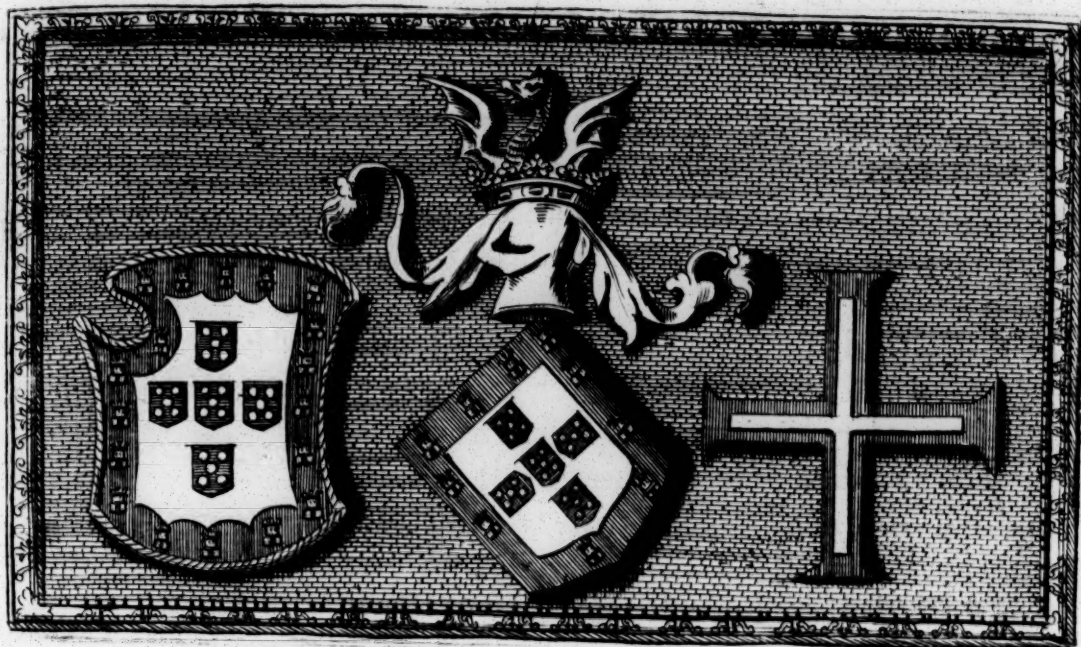
<sup>m</sup> Du Fresne Gloss. voce Tufa, &c.

<sup>n</sup> E. 26. penes me p. 27 b.









# MEMOIRS

Of the LIFE of the

## Duke of VISEN.



AFTER the Death of Sir *Simon* succeeded *Henry* Duke of *Viseu*, mispelled *Visen* in the Catalogues and numbered 153, <sup>a</sup> fourth (and not as <sup>b</sup> Dr. *Heylin* saith second). Son of *John* the first King of *Portugal* by *Philippa* Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, Sister of our *Hen. IV*, and thereby Great Uncle to our *Hen. VI*, in whose Reign he was elected a Companion of the Garter, after he had been for several Years <sup>c</sup> Great Master of the Religious Military Order of *Christ* in *Portugal*, and the Insertion of his Name in

the *Windfor-Tables* in this Stall is a Proof that he actually received an Installation according to the Statutes.

There is a Silence in the Black-book from the 16th till the 22d (which is there misentred for the 23d) of *Hen. VI*, in which Interval he might

<sup>a</sup> Anselme, Morel, &c.

<sup>b</sup> Cosmography, p. 278. But in the Hist. of St. George, p. 367, *It* is right.

<sup>c</sup> From the Year 1419. Ordres Militaires, Vol. 3. p. 320.



be elected, and in all probability at the next Feast of this Order held after the Death of his Predecessor in this Stall. <sup>d</sup> Dr. Heylin placed his Election in 1444, upon the Authority possibly of this Register, which numbers him among the Companions on St. *Georges Eve* in that Year; but if the Doctor had weighed the whole Journal of that Chapter, he must have been convinced, there was no Election then made, it being expressly averred that the four Stalls then vacant were not filled for want of the Presence of a sufficient Number of Knights necessary for that Purpose.

In that Grand Treasury of Antiquities the *Harleian Library* there is a Copy of an <sup>e</sup> Act of Council which intimates the preparing the Ensigns of the Garter for this Illustrious Prince in the following Words,

“ July 21. *Hen. VI.* Be there made a Letter to the *Wardrobe* commanding him in all goodlye haste to make two Mantles of Velvet lined with Sattin with the *Garter* of St. *George*, and also that he ordain two Gown Clothes, and two Hoods, and the Furrurs of Ermine for them, and deliver them to *Garter* King of Arms, He to bere and deliver one Robe with a *Garter* for the Lege of the King of *Arragon*, and the other to *Lynfranc de Henryche* of *Portugal*, Uncle to the King of *Portugal*.”

Though the printed Books consulted by this Collector do not give our Knight this Appellation of *Lynfranc*, yet the Identity of the Person is ascertained by the succeeding distinctive Character or Designation of *de Henryche* Uncle to the then King of *Portugal*, that is to *Alfonso* V, who ascended that Throne in 1438, upon the Demise of *Edward* eldest Brother of this our Knight, who is frequently mentioned in the Black-book by the Title of Duke of *Viseu*.

'Tis to be supposed the Transcriber copyed this Minuit of Council from the Original still extant in the *f Cotton Library*, in which at the Top of the Leaf there is entred in the antient small Hand *Day of July*, and the other Words *Acta Concilij 21 Hen. VI.* have been added in much later and larger Characters, and on a distinct Paper, pasted on to supply what was either wearing out by length of Time, or grown almost unlegible.

The Body of the Instrument remains entire and hath all the Marks of *Genuinenesse*, so that the Date of the Year being under these Circumstances can only be questioned, It is plain there was in this Stall a Vacancy occasioned by the <sup>g</sup> Death of Sir *Simon Felbrigge* before the 20th of *February*, *A. D.* 1443, which preceeds the Time of the Date hereto affixed. But tho' these Ensigns might in pursuance hereof be delivered to *Garter* King of Arms within a short time, yet 'tis to be presumed he did not immediately carry them, because on the 19th Day of this same *July*, this Officer was sent to the Duke of <sup>b</sup> *Bretagne*, and was ordered

<sup>d</sup> *Hist. of St. George* 367. *Cosmography*, p. 278.

<sup>e</sup> 34. B. 21.

<sup>f</sup> *Cleopatra F. v.* p. 110.

<sup>g</sup> See above, p. 172.

<sup>h</sup> *In Officio Pell.* 19. *Juyl.* 21. *H. 6. Henri, &c.*

*A Nostre cher & bien ame Gartier Roy d'armes, lyquel nous Envoyons presentement avec nos lettres & Instruccion a nre trescheir & tresame Uncle le Duc de Bretagne en Bretagne vynt livres.*



on the 25th of *August* <sup>i</sup> following to attend on the Bishop of *Salisbury*, and others in an Embassy, but it is probable he executed this Commission afterwards, for <sup>k</sup> we find by a Reward paid him in the following Year that he had then been with a Message into *Portugal*, where he tarried ten Months, and it may be conjectured he might then invest this Duke with the *Garter*, as well as his Nephew the King of *Portugal*, at the same time of which more will be said hereafter.

This Act of Council consists of two Parts, importing the Elections of the King of *Arragon* and of this Duke before *July*, in the 21. *Hen. VI.* But if any Failure in Chronology should appear in the Date given to this Minuit relating to this King, its Credit will be empaired with reference also to this Duke, and here the *Black-book* must be examined, which makes this Duke to be many Years Senior in this Order to this King of *Arragon*, for it names the former under the 22d (which should have been the 23d) Year of *Hen. VI.* which is consistent enough with this Minuit as to this Duke, but places the Election of this King in profest terms as late as on 4th of *August* in the 28th Year, which is long subsequent to the Date that this Minuit now bears.

This King was *Alfonfus V.* stiled the *wise and magnanimous*, who succeeded to the Throne in 1416, and having conquered *Naples* in 1442, dyed on 8th of *June* 1458, but the Time of his Election into the *Gar-ter* is the present Subject of Enquiry, and till the Wardrobe Accounts shall be discovered, which will infallibly settle this Point both as to this King and this Duke, it may not be amiss in the mean time to search if any farther light in this Particular may be obtained from this *Black-book*. We learn indeed from thence that he never was installed, for the Signification ordered to be given him to depute his Proctor for that purpose <sup>l</sup> chanced to be after the time of his Death, when the notice thereof had not reached this Kingdom, which is the Reason that his Name doth not occur in the *Windsor-Tables*.

There are several other Entries relating to him, and <sup>m</sup> Mr. *Asb-mole* supposing that there were great Perplexities contained in Labours to disentangle them, but it will be found these were only imaginary Difficulties raised by himself. Thus he <sup>n</sup> conceives these plain Words in the Chapter held in 34. *Hen. VI.* "*Ad Regem Arragonum, Regem Poloniae, & Ducem Bromiswichiae, ut prius electos, Trabea cum insigni Subligaculo per Dom. Fettiplas & Dom. Newport transmissa fuit,*" to import only an Intention or Design of sending the Ensigns to these Knights Elect, and that this Decree of Chapter was either not put in Exe-

<sup>i</sup> Privat. Sigill. (25. d'Augst) 21. H. 6. Henri, &c. *As Tresorer*—A nostre Chier & bien amye Serviteur Gartyer Roy darmes, lequel nous Envoions presentement en nostre Service avec ly revd. Pier in Dieu L'evesque de Saresbirs & nostre trescheir & foial Cousin le Counte de Suff. & autres Seigneurs, en nostre Ambassade pour la Matier de la Pays—quarante livres.

Exit. Pell. P. 21. H. 6.—Gartero Regi Armorum p. Dom. Regem ad presens missio in Servizio suo, cum vener. in Christo patre Episcopo Sarum ac Comite Suff. quos dictus Dom. Rex mittit in Ambas-

siata sua pro Materijs Pacis, &c. 40 l.

<sup>k</sup> Exit. Pell. P. 22. H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum nuper missio in Nuncio Regis versus Regem *Portugal* 22 l. quas Dom. Rex eidem pro tantis denarijs per ipsum persolut. in dicto Nuncio, quo erat occupatus per spatium x. Mensium de denarijs suis proprijs ultra quandam summam eid. Gartero alias liberatam, &c.

<sup>l</sup> *Black-book* n. 37. H. 6.

<sup>m</sup> <sup>n</sup> *Hist.* 382. 383.



cution, or countermanded, or at least that these Habits miscarried by some Accident in the Voyage; for as he goes on, if these had come safe to their Hands, then the Letters signifying their Elections sent to them in the 36 Year reported in this same Register, would have been entirely needless, and he conceived this his Interpretation to be clear beyond all doubt, and that the Embassy (if any) for this purpose to the King of *Poland* in the 34th Year here named took no Effect, in that 'tis again remembred in the 37th Year. "*Ad Regem Poloniae Subligaculum ac Trabea missa sunt,*" which as he imagined would imply the sending the Habits to him a second time, an Action that his Argument presupposes irregular or incredible, and thence upon the whole concluded, that in this 34th Year the Name of this King of *Arragon* is by mistake substituted for the King of *Portugal*, which he tells us, is justified by the Entry in the *Registrum Chartaceum* quoting the Words thereof, "*Le Roy de Portugale est esleu & ad le Jarretier & le mantel envoiez par Fettiplas,*" which King of *Portugal* was according to him elected in 25. Hen. VI, wherein he likewise hath erred in the Chronology as will be soon proved.

'Tis certain that the Kings of *Arragon* and *Portugal* were both at that time called *Alfonfus*, and each was the Fifth of that Name; yet we shall soon be convinced Mr. *Asbmole* hath not given us any solid Reasons for his Conjecture, that the Habits had not been sent to the Kings of *Arragon* and *Poland* in or before this 34th Year, this Fact may be demonstrated without the Assistance of the *Registrum Chartaceum*, the Loss or Suppression whereof is an inestimable and irreparable Misfortune to the History of this Order; For the above recited Words in the 34th Year, as also those quoted by <sup>o</sup> Mr. *Asbmole* from this latter Register, "*Le Roy de Poleyne est esluz & ad le Jarretier & le mantel envoyez par Newport,*" are in the *preterperfect Tense*, and by the Rules of *Grammar* must be plainly construed that these Ensigns had been actually sent before the time of that Chapter, and not a Decree made therein for the future sending them, and in Truth the Fact is incontestably proved by a <sup>p</sup> Record, that *Newport* had carried them three Years before this time to these Kings of *Arragon* and *Poland*, and from this Instance it may reasonably be guessed that *Fettiplas* might have been also employed in the like Errand to the Duke of *Bromswick*, notwithstanding this same Person was, as Mr. *Asbmole* <sup>q</sup> rightly thinks, employed on that Errand into *Portugal*, which we find was in <sup>r</sup> Sept. in this 34th Year, for he might in all probability have before executed the like Commission to the Duke of *Bromswick*, and possibly about the same time that *Newport* went to these two Kings Knights Elect. And hence we are ascertained in what Sense the Note relating to this King of *Poland* in the 37th Year is to be understood.

But then as to the Foundation of Mr. *Asbmole's* Reasoning, there doth not appear to this Collector any Incongruity in sending an Intimation to a Stranger Elect to depute a Proctor after an actual Investiture,

<sup>o</sup> Above in the Introduction, p. 52. note n.

<sup>p</sup> Hist. p. 385.

<sup>q</sup> Above in the Introduction, p. 53. note z.

<sup>r</sup> Art. 20. Stat. Ed. 3. Art. 20. Stat. Hen. 5. Art. 21. Hen. 8.



or the least Absurdity in a second Investiture, in Case the first Election became null and void, which Methods seem consistent with the Letter of the Statutes that absolutely require the Stranger Knight-Elect to send his Proctor within some Months after his Investiture, and in failure thereof declare the Election vacated, and consequently the Investiture must be void also: But such Stranger who by such a neglect of Installation thus forfeits his Election is not laid under any Incapacity from being again elected into this Order, and if it should chance that He should have that Honour reconferred on him, He ought without all doubt to be invested anew, which seems to have been the Case of the Emperor *Maximilian*, as low as in the Reign of *Hen. VII.* and without the Benefit of this Explanation several Instances about the Times of the Elections of foreign Knights may remain inexplicable, and in all likelihood it may be found that the Foreigners whose Names are mentioned in the *Black-book* as not installed in several Years successively, might however be annually re-elected; and were, as it may be guessed, upon these re-elections frequently chosen into Stalls different from those to which they were designed upon their first Elections; this is proposed here barely as a Conjecture, and not asserted as a positive Determination. And certainly Conjectures under these Circumstances may be proposed with modesty in Historical Matters remote from our Age, wherein we have no certain Guides to govern us. To avoid any ambiguity, by the term Investiture is here meant only that with the Royal Ensign the *Garter*, and not the delivery of the Surcoat which was annually ordered for Foreigners, as well as Subjects, who were in full Possession after their Installations. If any one knows any better Way to clear the Difficulties which appear in some Entries, He will do a worthy Service to this History, and no one will be more thankful for such a Discovery than the Collector of this Notes.

According to the Strictness of the Statutes, the Election of this King of *Arragon*, whensoever it happened, became void for the Omission of sending his Proctor, and the Supposition that He was frequently re-elected is in some measure confirmed in that, though this *Black-book* places him as elected into the Stall of the Earl of *Averence* in 28 *Hen. VI.* yet in the *Registrum Chartaceum*, as appears by a short Extract of Mr. *Asmole's*, He is said to be chosen into the Stall of Sir *John Robsart*, and both may be right as referring to the Elections of him at different Times, and yet these Elections into these two distinct Stalls can be no Argument, that He had not an earlier Election, and before the Time mentioned in the Date affixed to this Minuit of the Privy Council.

But this same *Black-book* at first Sight furnishes us with an Objection against the Possibility of his Election in this 21 Year of *Hen. VI.* for that in the 22d, (as 'tis misdated for 23d) *Hen. VI.* there is inserted a List of the Knights wherein the Name of this King is omitted,

<sup>s</sup> See above, p. 84.

<sup>t</sup> *Mus. Asm.* n. 1135. prout in Catalogo impresso.

<sup>u</sup> *Hist.* p. 266.

and



and yet there are 21 Companions enumerated, and four Stalls said to be then vacant, which doth complete the Number of the whole Fraternity, and according to this Computation here could be then no room for him; so that if He was elected in or before the 21 Year, that Election is to be supposed vacated for want of an Installation.

It is necessary therefore to reflect on the Negligence of the Compiler of this Book, who as Mr. *Asbmole* hath observed omits sometimes the Names of Knights recorded in the *Registrum Chartaceum*; and 'tis capable of such a Demonstration as Historical Facts can demand, that in this (22d or 23d Year) under Examination, He must be guilty of a gross Error by not placing the Name of the Duke of *Conimbre* among the Companions, who as we shall soon see, had been installed in Form before this Time, and which is memorable, He is in this same *Black-book* ranged as One of this Society in the preceeding and subsequent Years.

The Addition of this Duke would exceed the total Number, and if this King should also be ranged in this List, the Difficulty would encrease; But here we are to consider, whether if the four Stalls said to be thus vacant, should be understood not absolutely void in the strict Acceptation of the Word, but according to the restrained Language of the Statutes, that is, remained legally and reputedly void, because the Knights elected to them had not received actual Installations, whether then in this Sense these Difficulties may be answered, and in that Acceptation there may not be a Reduction of those seeming Supernumeraries; and indeed there is some Countenance that this may be the true Method of Construing this Word *Vacant* in this Place, in Regard, in this same Year one of these four vacant Stalls is said to be that of the Emperor *Sigismund*, whereas we know from this same Book, that the Duke of *Austria* had been formerly elected thereto in 16 *Hen. VI*, who dying before Installation, this Stall was however still reputed empty by the Death of *Sigismund* only. The farther Disquisition of this Point is reserved to the History of the Stall, to which this King was elected.

So much for the first Part of this Act of Council, but before we come to the Examination of the remaining Part relating to this Duke of *Viseu*, though it may be some sort of a Digression, yet it may not be discommendable, by way of Introduction, or Preparative, to set in one View the Entries relating to the seven Companions of this Order, that the Royal Family of *Portugal* produced within the space of ninety Years, and not only because Mr. *Asbmole* is puzzled by some, and misled by others of them, but more particularly with a design to obtain some Light towards guessing at the Time of the Investiture of this Duke. But if any one thinks such Disquisitions over curious or needless, He may, it is true, employ his Time (if he pleases) on other Subjects, if his Disposition be not suitable to Enquiries about this Order.

*John* the first King of *Portugal*, surnamed the Father of his Country, married the Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, and receiv-

<sup>x</sup> See above, p. 15. note k.



ed \* Robes of this Order in 3 Hen. V, and dyed on 14 Aug. 1433, in the End of the 11 Year of Hen. VI.

Edward V, his eldest Son being elected into this Order, this *Black-book* relates that *Garter* King of Arms, was on 8 May 13 Hen. VI, commanded to carry him the Ensigns, in which Year He was certainly elected, but we know from a Warrant, that Directions were not given to prepare the Mantle Surcoat and Garter till the Month of May in the following Year, to be then \* carried by this Officer.

In this Warrant there is a Singularity, or at least a very rare Occurrence that the Robe or Surcoat of the Order furred with Minever, and the *Garter* should be also then prepared to be sent to Don Pedro Duke of *Conimbre*, Brother to this King; who was elected into this Order (as the *Black-book* informs us) on 22 Apr. 5. Hen. V, long before the Death of his Father, and Seated in the Stall, then void by the Death of *Thomas* Duke of *Exeter* which happened on the 27 Day of the preceeding *December*, and a <sup>a</sup> Record assures us, that *Gloucester* Herald had Money advanced to him out of the *Exchequer* for carrying to this Duke the Robes in that Year, and this *Black-book* gives us the Narrative of his Installation by his Proctor on 22 Apr. in the sixth Year, whereof we have undeniable Evidence from other <sup>b</sup> Records; 'tis therefore Extraordinary, that the

Ensign

\* See above, p. 15. note k.

† Rymer Tom X. p. 639.

De Liberatura Garterii, Portugalie Regi & Infantii Petro Portanda. An. 14. H. 6. Pen. Cler. Pell. Roy, au Garderobier, &c. Saluz.

Nous Volons, &c. que a notre Chier & bien ame, *Gartier* Roy d'Armes facez liverer, hors de notre dite Garderobe, notre Liverie de la *Jartier* (assavoir) un Mantel, & un Robe Furrez ove *Hermine*, & le *Jartier*.

Pour les porter & amesner, de par nos a notre Treschier & Tresame Frere le Roy de *Portugale*. Et volons, &c. & que par ycell, &c.

Item, soient faites semblables Lettres au dit Garderobier, pour delivrez au dit *Jartier* la Liverie de la *Jartier* (assavoir) une Robe Furrez, avec menybar & le *Jartier*, pour les porter & amesner au Don Pedro, Frere du dit Roy, Duc de *Conimbre*.

H. Gloucestre.

J. Ebor.

J. Huntyngton.

J. Bathon Canc.

H. Northumberlande.

Dorso

Primo Die Maii, Anno, &c. xiv. apud Westmonasterium, in Camera Parliamenti, concessum fuit, per Dominum Regem, de avifamento Concilii sui, quod fiant consimiles Literæ Custodi Magnæ Garderobæ Regis, secundum quod infra patet.

Præsentibus Dominis infra scriptis.

\* Rymer Tom X. p. 641.

Super Garterio Regi Portugalie destinato.

An. 14. H. 6. Penes Cler. Pell.

Soient faites Lettres, dessous le Prive Seal, as Tresorer & Chamberleyns, &c. pour Deliverer ou *Gartier* Roy d'Armes alant par le Commandement du Roy avec son Liverie de la *Jartier* au Roy de *Portugale*, XL l. par voie de Regard.

H. Gloucestre.

J. Ebor.

J. Bathon Canc.

Suffolk.

H. Northumberlande.

Dorso

Le Douziesm Jour de May, L'An. &c. xiv. estoit octroie, par le consent, que sur ceste copie soient faites Lettres, dessous le Prive Seal, en manere, que dedeins est desirez,

Estantz Presents les Seigneurs dedeinz esserit, &c.

Priv. Sigill. 12. Maii. 14 H. 6. (In Officio Pellium) *Henri*, &c. as Tres. &c. que vous facez delivrer a nostre bien ame *Gartier* Roy d'armes alant pur nostre Commandement avec nostre liverie de la *Jartier* a nostre tresch. & tresame frere le Roy de *Portugal*, quarante livres par voye de Regard.

Exit. Pell. 14. H. 6. Gartero Regi Armor. eunti de Mandato Regis cum liberatura sua de la *Garter* ad Carissimum fratrem suum de *Portugale* 40 l.

Priv. Sigill. 26 Apr. (15 H. 6.) in Officio Pellium. *Henri*, &c. as Tres. &c. Come depuis nadingariss eussions envoyez en nostre Message nostre bien ame *Serviteur Jarretier* Roy d'armes devers nostre frere le Roy du *Portugal*, liquel *Jarretier* ait fray & despens en nostre dit Message, en quelle il estoit occupie par l'espace de dys Moys la sone de vynt & deux livres de ses propres deniers oultre la sone a lui donne Vous facez paiez le ditz vynt & deux livres.

\* Priv. Sig. in Off. Pell. 22 May 5. H. 6. *Henri*, &c. as Tre. & par. les coustages queux nostre bn. ame *Gloucester* Heraud sustiendra on alant de nostre Commandement, devers nostre tresch. Cousin le Duc de *Queneburgh* pour lui appotter nostre liverie de *Jarter* vous payez xx livres.

Exit. Pell. Pasch. 5. H. 6. Gloucestre heraldo misso versus Ducem de *Queneburgh* cum vestura de liberata de *Garter* eidem Duci deliberand. xx Libr.

b Bibl. Cotton. Cleopatr. ff. 4. de Ter. Mich. 6.

H. 6. 8. Juill, accorda fut que garrant soit fait pour paier pr. l'Instalmt. de Duc de *Quimbre* filz au Roi de *Portugal* compaignon de Lordre de *Gartier* a *Windefore* accordant a les Estatutz du dit Ordre X l. Ibid. Ult. Apr. fiat warrantum pro solvendo pro Installacione Ducis de *Quymbre* filij Regis *Portugal* socij Ordinis *Garterij* in Anglia infra Collegium apud *Windefore* decem libras.

Priv. Sigill. in Off. Pellium. *Henri*, &c. as Tres. B b b &c. nous



Ensign of the *Garter* should be sent him in this 14 Year so long after his Installation, unless we should believe that this Order to the Wardrobe meant no more than a *Garter* to be embroidered on the Surcoat then sent him to be worn for the greater Honour and Splendour of the Order, at the Time of the Investiture of his Nephew: However that may be the Entry of the Reward paid to <sup>c</sup> *Garter* King of Armes for this his Journey into *Portugal* in this 14th Year, mentions only the carrying this Livery to the King without any Intimation of this Duke, who was afterwards killed at the Battle of *Alfato Robera*, on 20 May 1449.

The above-named King *Edward* dyed on 19 Sept. 1438, in the beginning of the 17 of *Hen. VI*, and his Crown descended to his Son *Alfonfus V*, then about six Years old, who was the only Prince with whom our King had any <sup>d</sup> Alliance. The Time of his Election is render'd disputable by means of some Entries in the *Black-book* which seem to disagree; for tho' it specifies that on 28 Apr. 28 *Hen. VI*, this King had been elected four Years, which runs back to the 24th Year, yet on *St. George's Eve* in the 25th Year, He is there said expressly to be then elected into the Stall of the Duke of *Glocester* deceased, and upon this latter Authority Mr. <sup>e</sup> *Asmole* settled it in this Year, whereas if he had cast back his Eyes to the 22d Year, He would have found him Registered in this same Book, as a Companion at that Time. And it will be found He was elected before the Death of Sir *Simon Felbrigge*, and consequently before the <sup>f</sup> 20th of *Febr.* 21 *Hen. VI*; for at the same time when a Surcoat was delivered to this Knight, a <sup>g</sup> Mantle was also prepared for this King, which was certainly <sup>b</sup> sent to him in the 22 Year. The Reader for avoiding Repetition may consult what hath been already said relating to the Election of this King in the Introduction, p. 52, 53.

This King dyed 24th Aug. 1481. 21 *Edw. IV*, leaving the Throne to his Son *John* the *Second*, Surnamed the *Grand*, and *Severe*, who very soon renewed the antient <sup>i</sup> Alliances. He is in this *Black-book* mentioned to have been elected at distinct Times into different Stalls, first on 15 Sept. 22 *Edw. IV*. A. D. 1482. into the Stall of the Duke of *Clarence* there said to have been long void, and He is again said to be elected on 3 *Hen. VII*, to the Stall of the Earl of *Arundel*.

*Ec.* nous volons de l'avis & assent de nostre conseil & vous mandons que vous facez paier pour l'estallement de nostre tresch. Cousin le Duc de *Quymbre* filz a nostre tresch. frere le Roy de *Portugale* Compagnon de l'Ordre de *Gerter* a nostre Chastell de *Windefore* accordant a les Estatutz du dyt Ordre dys livres 8 July 6. H. 6.

Exit. Pell. P. 6. H. 6. In denar. solut *Tho. Browne*, pro Stallacione Ducis de *Quymbre* Consanguin. Regis & fil. Regis *Portugal* socii de Ordine de *Garter* ad Castrum Regis de *Windefore* juxta ordinem Statutor. inde edit. X. libr.

<sup>c</sup> See above, note 2.

<sup>d</sup> *Rymer*, Vol. x. p. 766.

<sup>e</sup> *Hist.* p. 383. 528, &c.

<sup>f</sup> See above, Page 172.

<sup>g</sup> See above, Page 174 note o.

<sup>b</sup> Priv. Sigill. 22. Oct. 22. H. 6. *Henry*, &c. que

au *Balance* pursuant a nostre treschier & tresame frer. le Roy de *Portugale*, liquel est en alant devers nostre dit frer. & avec liquel nous envoions presentement a mesme nostre frer. le *Jartier* & nostre liveree de la *Jartier* de l'ordre de *S. George*, vous facez paier dys livres.

<sup>i</sup> Exil. Pell. Mich. 22. H. 6. Balaule pursuant Regis *Portugal*. qui de Regno Angliæ versus dictum Regem profecturus est, & cum quo Dom. noster Rex misit ad prefens *Garter*, necnon liberatam Ordinis sancti Georgij versus Regem *Portugal*. X. libr.

Here the masculine and feminine Particles *le* and *la*, being in different Places prefixed to the Word *Jartier*, it may be supposed the first may denote the King of Arms by that Title, as the second expressly doth the Livery of the *Garter* or of the Order.

<sup>i</sup> 8 Febr. 21. E. 4. *Rymer*, Vol. 12. p. 145.

Norwith-



Notwithstanding this first Entry under *Ed. IV.* Dr. <sup>k</sup> *Heylin* is positive of Opinion, He was not chosen till the Reign of *Hen. VII.* because he thought it not likely, that this King, being descended from the House of <sup>l</sup> *Lancaster*, should either be chosen or accept the Honour of the *Garter* from *Edw. the IV.* that was so great an Enemy to his House, and having in his <sup>m</sup> Margin inserted the Year 1489, He places his Election at that Time and not before: But with due Deference to the Memory of this Great Historian, His Election, whenever it was, must have been Prior to 1489, because the Ensigns of the Order were sent him <sup>n</sup> on 4th of *Dec.* 1488, with which he was <sup>o</sup> invested on 2 *May* 1489,

<sup>k</sup> *Hist. of St. George*, p. 372.

<sup>l</sup> *Ibid.* p. 377.

<sup>m</sup> *Ibid.* p. 374.

<sup>n</sup> *Rymer Tom. XII.* p. 351, 352.

De Communicando cum Rege Portugaliz.

An. 4. *H. 7.* Franc. 4. *H. 7. m.* 17.

Rex Omnibus, ad quos, &c. Salutem.

Cum ab omni redacta Aetate firmata fuerint Amicitiz & Fœdera inter Illustrissimos ac Potentissimos Angliz & Portugaliz Principes, quos non sola mutua Intercursuum necessitas, verum etiam Sanguinis Affinitas copulant, Hinc est quod Nos,

Qui Pacis Vires novimus eique totis Viribus insudamus, quique peculiarius tamen Potentissimi Regis Portugaliz, cui sumus Sanguinis benivolentia devincti, mutuum, firmam, ac stabilem esse desideramus,

De Fidelitatibus, Industriis & providis Circumspectionibus, Dilectorum & Fidelium Consiliariorum nostrorum, Magistrum Thomæ Savage Legum Doctoris Comitatus nostri Marchiz Cancellarii & Ricardi Nanfan Militis quamplurimum confidentes,

Ipsos nostros veros & indubitatos Commissarios, Oratores, Procuratores, Legatos, Deputatos, & Nuncios speciales, Assignamus, Facimus, Constituimus, Ordinamus & Deputamus per Præsentes,

Dantes & Concedentes eisdem plenam, Tenore Presentium, Potestatem & Auctoritatem, ac Mandatum generale & speciale, pro Nobis & Nomine nostro, cum Serenissimo Principe Rege Portugaliz Consanguineo nostro carissimo, seu ejus Commissariis, Procuratoribus, Deputatis, & Nunciis, sufficientem Potestatem & Auctoritatem ab eodem Consanguineo nostro ad hoc habentibus, Conveniendi, Communicandi, Tractandi, Concordandi, Appunctuandi, Componendi, Paciscendi, ac finaliter & integre Determinandi & Concludendi, tam de & super vera, firma, perpetua, & reali Pace & Concordia, Ligis, Confœderationibus, Amicitiiis, Fœderibus, Affinitatibus, & Intelligentiis quibuscumque, ac Intercursu Mercium & Mercandiarum, mutisque Auxiliis, & Assistentiis hinc inde præstandis, inter Nos & dictum Consanguineum nostrum, Hæredes & Successores, ac Regna, Patrias, Dominia, Subditos, Vassallos, Alligatos, Faventes, Confœderatos, Amicos, & Adhærentes nostros & suos quoscumque hincinde ineundis, capiendis, celebrandis, & habendis, atque Pacem, Ligas, Amicitias & Confœderationes, hujusmodi, Pactionesque & Conventiones viis & modis quibus melius expedire eis videbitur Componendi, Ineundi, Vallandi, Roborandi, & Paciscendi,

Dantes ulterius & Concedentes eisdem nostris Commissariis, Oratoribus, Procuratoribus, Legatis, Deputatis, & Nunciis, plenam etiam, Tenore Presentium, Potestatem & Auctoritatem ipsum Consanguineum nostrum suis exigentibus & condignis Meritis ad Ordinem Militiz *Garteræ* Nobis & No-

mine nostro Acceptandi, ipsumque in Confratrem & Comitem ejusdem Ordinis Admittendi, Præficiendi, & Insigniendi, eiq; Munera & Insignia ejusdem Ordinis Tradendi & Liberandi, habendum cum suis Juribus, Honoribus, Præeminentiis & Dignitatibus, sicuti eidem Consanguineo nostro ex Parte nostra per dictos nostros Commissarios & Oratores latius intimabitur & declarabitur,

Ac etiam Communicandi, Tractandi, & Appunctuandi de & super omnibus & singulis Attempatis, Contentionibus, Quæstionibus, Querelis, Litibus, & Causis, una cum suis Circumstantiis, Emergentibus, Incidentibus, Dependentibus, ac connexis, quæ inter Nos & præfatum Consanguineum nostrum, ac Regna, Terras, Dominia, Patrias, Loca, Subditos, Vassallos, Alligatos, Confœderatos, & Adhærentes nostros & suos prædictos hincinde pendere dinoscuntur.

Ac etiam si necesse fuerit, unam aliam Dietam in talibus Locis & Tempore, prout eis Melius visum fuerit, Deputandi, Limitandi, atque Statuendi, & inibi de & super omnibus & singulis Præmissis & ab eis qualitercumque dependentibus Communicandi, Tractandi, Appunctuandi, & finaliter Concludendi, prout eis expediens visum fuerit & opportunum.

Præmissaque omnia & singula Firmandi, Appunctuandi, Asscurandi & Concludendi.

Nec non de & super hujusmodi Appunctuatis & Conclusis, cæterisque omnibus & singulis, Præmissa qualitercumque concernentibus, quæ cum præfato Consanguineo nostro, seu ejus Commissariis, Procuratoribus, Deputatis, & Nunciis prædictis, Appunctuata, Concordata, & Conclusa fuerint, Literas validas & efficaces pro Parte nostra Tradendi & Liberandi, Literasque alias consimilis effectus & vigoris ex altera Parte Petendi & Recipiendi,

Et generaliter omnia Præmissa & Præmissorum singula eaque qualitercumque concernentia Faciendi, Exercendi & expediendi, ita & eodem modo sicut Nos ipsi faceremus & facere possemus si in propria Persona interessemus, ac etiam si talia sint quæ Mandatum de se magis exigant speciale;

Promittentes, bona Fide, & in Verbo Regio, Nos Omnia & singula, quæ per præfatos, Commissarios, Oratores, Procuratores, Legatos, Deputatos, & Nuncios nostros prædictos Appunctuata, Promissa, Concordata, & Conclusa fuerint, in hac parte, Nos Rata, Grata, & Firma habituros & observaturos, & superinde Literas nostras Patentes, novas aut Ratificatorias, & Confirmatorias in forma Debite & autentica, daturus.

In cujus, &c.

Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium undecimo Die Decembris.

Per ipsum Regem.

<sup>o</sup> *Recueil des certains choses de Richemont Clarendon.*



1489, and was Installed in or before the 6<sup>th</sup> Year of Hen. VII. But then this Investiture and Installation is no conclusive Argument, that He had not been formerly elected in the Reign of Ed. IV; and the Supposition that a Regard to his descent from *John of Gaunt* his Great Grandfather, should prevent his Election into this Order, or his Acceptance of it in the End of the Reign of Ed. IV, is a precarious and imaginary Speculation; for Princes are not usually governed by such remote Tyes in Blood, but the Interest of State and the Ballance of Power are by the Rules of Politicks their Guides, and in pursuance of these Mysteries the 9<sup>th</sup> King of *Portugal* entred into Treaties with Ed. IV, which were renewed by 1<sup>st</sup> this King *John* after his Father's Demise, and therefore it is not so unlikely, as the Doctor presumed, that He should be elected at this Time when the House of *Lancaster* was in the lowest Fortune. The Insertion of the Name of this King of *Portugal* in the Scrutiny under Rich. III, would have been a more plausible Objection against his Election in the Reign of Ed. IV, but in Truth this Nomination is no real Argument of Weight, because that former Election, if he had obtained that Honour, might be vacated by the Import of the Statutes for want of an actual Installation in due Time, and the Stall was thereby empty, to which He might be again nominated.

But a greater Difficulty arises against the Probability of his Election into the Stall of this Duke of *Clarence*, in the 22<sup>d</sup> Year of Ed. IV, from an explicate Entry in this same *Black-book*, that the King of *Spain* who lived beyond this Time, had been elected into it on the 10<sup>th</sup> of *February* in the 19<sup>th</sup> Year: These two Passages may indeed be capable of being reconciled upon the former Hypothesis, that this Election of this King of *Spain*, whoever He was, might be vacated also for

*ceux.* Ms. in Off. Arm. inter Codices Ducis *Norfolc.* He gives a Narrative of his Attendance on Dr. *Savage* and Sir *Richard Nanfan*, 4 Hen. 7. first into *Spain*, and thence to *Portugal*. Le Roy print l'Ordre de la Jarretiere le second jour de May moult honorablement—& tient la Feste de S. *Jorge* le second jour de May, comme accoustume est de la tenir en Angleterre, assavoir commenca a la prendre le Samedi a disner, & en ces mesmes abillemens alla a seoir a disner, & chevaucha apres disner a vespres sur ung beau coursier, & de vespres derechief a souper, & en caas parail lendemain, qui estoit beau a veoir. Le jour que le dit Roy recheut la dit Jarretiere, il estoit abillie de une Jaquette longue de fin drap de violet en graine, & estoit prodre richement de fill d'or bien fin, & sur ce avoit ung manteau a la mode de pais de fin escarlate, les quels abillemens Il donna a *Richmond* Roy d'armes pour son feef, pource que la Jarretiere lui fust presente—Et *Richmond* Roy d'armes eut a lui donne en un gant L'espadris qui vallent XL.

p Rymer Tom. XII. p. 448, 449.

Super Installatione Regis *Portugaliae* in Ordinem *Garterii*.

An. 6. H. 7. Penes Cler. Pell.

Henry by the Grace of God, King of England and France, and Lord of Ireland, to the Treasurer and Chamberlains of our Exchequer, Greeting

It is shewed unto us, on the behalve of our welbelov'd Subget *John Stephens* of our Citie of *London* *Coper Smyth*, how that th' Ambassadors of our Right Dere Cousin the King of *Portugale*, late beeing here with us from the same our Cousin, Covenanted and Agreed with Him for the making of an Helmet with a Corone and a Tergat of *Coper* and *Gilt*, for th' Use of th' Enstalling of the said King into th' Ordre of One of the Companions of our Noble Ordre of the *Garter*, for the Summe of thre Pounds ix s. Sterling, whereof our said Subget is behinde unpaid of xxvi. s. x. d. as We certainly be enformed.

Which Ambassadors be now Departed and goon,

We, nat willing our said Subget to be hindred or to have any Losse in this Partie, for certain Causes Us mooving, Wil and Charge you that, of our Tresour beeing in your Warde, ye Incontinent, upon the Sight hereof, Content and Pay unto the said *John* the said Summe of xxvi. s. x. d. and every Part and Parcel thereof, without any Prest or other Charge to be set upon him for the same; and this our Letters shall be your Warrant.

Given undre our Prive Seel, at our Maner of *Greenwiche*, the eighth Day of *July*, the sixth Yeaere of our Reigne.

Bele

q 12 E. 4. Rymer, Vol. XI. p. 741, 762.  
r See above note i.

his



his Omission of Installation, so as this Stall might properly be said still to be void by the Death of the Duke of *Clarence*, notwithstanding the Election of this King of *Spain* thereto.

Mr. *Asmole* treating on the King of *Spain* thus elected names him *Henry*, whereas *Henry* Stiled the *Impotent* was only King of *Arragon*, and in Truth dyed in *Dec.* 1474, 14 *Ed.* IV, before this Duke of *Clarence*, so that the King of *Spain* elected in 19 *Ed.* IV, must of course be *Ferdinand* the Catholick, King of *Castile*, and by matrimonial Right King also of *Arragon*, and there is Reason to believe He either refused the Acceptance of this Order, notwithstanding there were *Treaties* of the greatest Confidence between *Ed.* IV. and him, or rather that his Election was annulled for want of an Installation, and that one of these Incidents happened seems very plain, for though He is by the Stile of King of *Castile*, ranged among the Knights not Installed in 20 *Ed.* IV; yet He is in two Scrutinies by the Title of King of *Spain*, and in another as King of *Castile* under *Rich.* III, and in all the Suffrages in 4 *Hen.* VII, and in some in the 14th Year, and also in several in the first and second of *Hen.* VIII, by the Appellation of King of *Arragon*: For the Queen who brought him *Castile* by Marriage, dying on the 5th of the Calends of *Dec.* 1504. 20 *Hen.* VII, devised that Realm to her Daughter *Joan* then married to *Philip* Archduke of *Austria*, which Will was ratified by this *Ferdinand* and the States with a *Provision*, that the Father and Son-in-law might both use the Title of King of *Spain*, which this *Ferdinand* continued after his Retirement into *Arragon*, till his Death on 22 *January* 1516, 7 *Hen.* VIII.

To return to this *John* King of *Portugal*, \* Mr. *Asmole* relying implicitly upon the Credit of this Narrative in the *Black-book* of his Election in the 22 of *Ed.* IV, into this Stall of the Duke of *Clarence*, which was the second of the Prince's Side, is thence induced to believe, that there is a Mistake in the *Windsor-Tables* in placing him in the second Stall on the Sovereign's Side. The Collector esteems these Tables genuine and of great Authority, and in the present Case, they chance to be in some measure corroborated by the Plate of this King which still remains in this Stall; and it is some Confirmation of them, that the second Stall on the Prince's Side, wherein the Duke of *Clarence* was seated, was at the Time of the Installation of this King of *Portugal* filled by *Jaspar* Duke of *Bedford*, according to the *Windsor-Tables*; which Duke is named a Companion in 37th *Hen.* VI, under the Title of Earl of *Pembroke*, and being attainted by Parliament 1 *Ed.* IV, this Duke of *Clarence* succeeded him in this Stall, after whose Death this King of *Portugal* might be designed thereto; but before his Installation, *Hen.* VII, restored his Uncle this *Jaspar* to this Stall, whereof He had been thus dispossessed, and we meet with him as one of the Nominators in

<sup>s</sup> *Hist.* p. 317.

<sup>t</sup> *Rymer*, Vol. 12 p. 2, 3, 36, 42, 110, 147.

<sup>u</sup> *Vredij Sigilla Comitum Flandriæ*, p. 137.

<sup>x</sup> *Hist.* p. 317.

<sup>y</sup> *Vinc. Ms. in Off. Arm. n. 417.*

<sup>z</sup> *Ibid.* which saith He was here placed after the translating the King of *Portugal*;



<sup>4</sup> *Hen. VII*, and he survived this King of *Portugal* about two Months, for he lived till <sup>a</sup> 21 Dec. 1495.

*John* King of *Portugal* dyed on 25 Oct. preceeding, leaving his Crown to devolve upon *Emanuel*, Great Grandson of *Edw. V*; who is nominated in all the Scrutinies save one in 14 *Hen. VIII*, and was in the following Year unanimously elected, and, if the <sup>b</sup> Manuscripts do not mislead us, to the Stall which *Hen. VIII*, enjoyed upon his Election into this Order when He was Duke of *York*, that is, the third on the Sovereign's Side, It is remembred that He was <sup>c</sup> never Installed, for which Reason it may be that He is named in a Scrutiny on St. *Georges* Eve 13 *Hen. VIII*, and He dyed 13 Dec. following.

After so long a Recapitulation of the Times of the respective Elections of these *Portugueze* Princes, which must be allowed within the Compass of the History of the *Garter*, though 'tis here inserted with no other View than that the whole Series of them may be found in one Place, and that from this Connection it may be reasonably supposed this Duke of *Viseu* might be invested at the same Time, if not before his Nephew *Alfonfus V*.

This Duke of *Viseu* or *Viseo* (*Visontium* as the *Latins* call it) hath rendered his Memory famous to Posterity for his Vertue, Valour and Letters, being deservedly celebrated for his disinterested Largeness of Soul, his distinguished Courage, and His strong Genius for Astronomy, Navigation, and all the Functions of War. The Religious Military Order of *Christ* in *Portugal*, was Instituted upon the Dissolution of the Knights Templars, and <sup>d</sup> endowed with their Lands, but its Chief Grandour and Renown is owing to this Duke, who in his <sup>e</sup> younger Years was constituted Grand Master thereof, under whose Presidency, this Fraternity recovered from the *Moors* several Territories in *Africa*, whereof *Edw. V*, gave them the Sovereignty confirmed by Pope *Eugene IV*, with an Appropriation of the Tythes of whatever Provinces they should gain by Conquest: His Nephew *Alfonfus V*, in farther recompence granted the Spiritual Jurisdiction over all their Possessions beyond the Sea, which was ratified by Pope *Calixtus III*. But our Knight was not satisfied with the augmenting the Revenues, but took Care to reform and correct the Discipline and Oeconomy of his Order by the Permission of the Pope, and having nothing left to merit more from it, He extended his Benefactions by improving the Advantages of his High Birth and Exalted Capacities in Projecting and Promoting the universal Service and Glory of his Native Country, for being convinced from his Observation of the Stars, as an <sup>f</sup> Author words it, that there were Islands in the *Ocean* then undiscovered, He taught the *Portugueze*, as another <sup>g</sup> Writer phrases it, to Form their Navigations according to the

<sup>a</sup> Esch. 11 H. 7. n. 172.

<sup>b</sup> Vinc. Ms. *ibid*.

<sup>c</sup> See the Bull in Baluzij Vitæ Papæ Avenion. Vol. 2. p. 741.

<sup>d</sup> In 1419 Hist. des Ord. Militat. Vol. 3. p. 320.

<sup>e</sup> See the Writers upon this Order, and St. Marthe Hist. General. de France, Vol. 2. p. 677. for several of the Particulars here mentioned.

<sup>f</sup> Mariana l. 20. c. xi. Henricus Lusitani filius

ex Astrorum cognitione, in qua magnam vitæ partem consumpserat, suspicatus est in Oceani maris vastitate ad novas insulas, novasq; gentes cursum patere, missis classibus tentatum, si quod operæ pretium existeret, &c.

<sup>g</sup> Il s'ayla si bien les Portugais a dresser leurs Navigations selon le cours des Astres. St. Marthe *as above*.



Course of the Stars; whatever these Expressions mean, 'tis certain that by his Encouragement and Example the <sup>b</sup> Isles of *Azores*, in the Atlantick, <sup>c</sup> *Holy Port*, *Capo Verde* and several Ports in the *Indies* were found out, and *Madera* was peopled at his Expence, and that his Countrymen under his Direction and Conduct extended their Conquests on the Western Coasts of *Æthiopia*, and in *Africk* even as far as *Guinea*. His Courage was eminently signalized in the Enterprize, and taking of *Sept*, (the antient *Exiliffa* since called *Ceuta*) in the Year 1415, in Memory whereof the King his Nephew incorporated it as a Dominion among his Stiles, and erected a <sup>k</sup> King at Arms by that Title. In order to Prosecute the practicable Schemes he had laid down with the greatest Application, an <sup>l</sup> Author informs us, that He abstained from Marriage; which Observation seems to be built on a Mistake, because the Rules of this Order of *Christ* which prohibited Marriages were not dispensed with till <sup>m</sup> several Years after the Death of our Knight; For the Improvement of his Mathematical Contemplations and Studies He for some Time fixed his Residence at *Cape St. Vincent*, that by the Serenity of that Climate, He might have the Opportunity of better observing the Motions of the Heavens, and at length turning his Thoughts wholly to the extending his Discoveries and Conquests in the *East*, He removed to the *Cape of Sagra* in *Algarbe*, being more commodiously scituated for these Purposes, where being over vigorous in those Noble Designs, and fatiguing himself beyond the Strength of his Constitution, He dyed to the great Detriment of that Kingdom on the Ides of <sup>n</sup> *November* 1460, or 1461. and not as <sup>o</sup> Dr. *Heylin* saith in 1465, for before that Time the Lord *Duras* was Seated in this Stall. He was 67 Years <sup>p</sup> old at his Death, and not as another <sup>q</sup> Writer hath it 77; for his Brother who was next before him was Born <sup>r</sup> in 1392. He was deservedly admired for several Splendid and Heroick Qualities, and hath been transmitted down to Posterity under the rare Character of a Prince who lived with the most undefiled <sup>s</sup> Chastity, and that in Celibacy: This latter State of Life might be enjoined him by the Statutes of his Order, and at this Distance of Time and Remoteness of Country no one will undertake to determine, whether He might be so tender in his Conscience as to conceive himself obliged to obey the Rules imposed on the *Templars* as enjoying their former Possessions; For these *Religious* Knights were Prohibited from <sup>t</sup> kissing any Woman, upon Account of which Restraint the truly Great <sup>u</sup> Mr. *Selden* with a seeming Air of Se-

<sup>b</sup> Heylins *Hist. of St. George*, p. 367.

<sup>c</sup> Heylins *Cosmogr.* p. 278.

<sup>k</sup> Exil. Pell. p. 7 Hen. 5. *Cept Regi Armorum de Portugalia de regardo spetiali per Regem sibi facto*, &c. Chaucer in the *Man of Laws tale*, v. 947.

Forth goth her Ship thorough the narrow Mouth Of Jubalter and Cept ydryving ay.

<sup>l</sup> St. Marthe as above.

<sup>m</sup> Pope Alex. VI. on 12 Cal. Julij 1496. Leibnitz Codex Jur. Gent. Diplom. Vol. 1. p. 475.

<sup>n</sup> Anselme *Hist. Geneal. de la maison de France*.

<sup>o</sup> Heylin's *Cosmogr.* p. 278.

<sup>p</sup> Nonnij Leonis Regum Portugal Geneal. p. 236.

<sup>q</sup> Mariana l. 23. c. 2.—Henrici Lusitani Regis Patruī, cælibe vita, nulloq; fœmineo contactu fœdata, qui septem & septuaginta natus annos, Sagræ suæ ditionis oppido ad Algarbiam decessit Idibus Novembris, &c.

<sup>r</sup> Anselme as above.

<sup>s</sup> See note q.

<sup>t</sup> } First Edition of *Titles of Honour* printed in Quarto.

rioufness



riousness would exclude these *Templars* from the Classis of Orders, adding the following Remark, that Honourary Knighthoods and the Favours of Ladies even by antient Institution ran together sometimes as Vertue and Reward.

If any Plate was here placed after the Death of our Knight, the same was embezilled or removed long since, because there remains in an antient \* Hand-writing an Examination made to discover what Arms of the Companions named in the *Windsor-Tables* remained in the Stalls, and upon that search it appeared that xxxv Plates therein specified were wanting on the Sovereign's Side, and Lix on the Princes, among which were those of *Don Pedro Duc de Quynber fytz a Roy de Portygall*, and of *Monsieur Henry Duc de Vyfeu fytz a Roy de Portugal*, on which view there were found affixed in the second Stall of the Sovereign's Side four Plates for the Kings of that Place, one of which was stol'n before the Year 1569, and at this Time only one of them remains here, which is inscribed *Johan Roy de Portingale*, having a Crest over the Arms. In the third Stall of the Prince's Side there is a large Copper Plate without any Crest or Inscription, which certainly belongs to some of this Royal Family, and there being no doubt but that our Knight bore the Arms of that Crown with some mark of Cadency, it may not be improper to shew some of the material Differences in these two Plates; In that of the King, the two Escutcheons in the Flanks of the Shield have their *bas* Points turned towards the Escutcheon in the Center, and the Border is charged with eight Castles only, In the other these two side Escutcheons have their Points turned towards the bottom of the Shield, and the Border is charged with Eighteen Castles, which are contained in a Shield whose Largeness is remarkable, being 15 Inches deep and 9 Inches broad, and whose Figure is as memorable, being in the Tilting form, that is, it hath an Hole or rather vacant space just under its *dexter* Corner, which seems designed for the Passage of the Spear or Lance, and for the better Support and Direction of it, when this Shield should be fixed before the Breast of the Ryder in these Tilting Exercises. But although such a Difference in the Positions of the Bearings and the Additions of Charges in the Border have been in this and foreign Kingdoms usual Brizures taken by younger Branches, yet the Collector dares not presume without farther Light to ascribe the same either to the Duke of *Coimbro* or to our Knight, neither can He pretend to guess whether this Plate was fixed in this Stall by any Right or by Mistake or Accident. He hath not had the Fortune to meet with any Types of the Seals used by this Royal Family, or by our Knight, but in the Genealogical <sup>2</sup> History of *France* opposite to the Context where our Knight is mentioned, there are inserted in the Margin in two Lines the Words *Portugal, Vyfeu* which is the Method observed in that Work to describe the Coat Armour, and if that docqueting may be depended upon as a sufficient Authority, then our Enquiry is satisfied, and we have his Arms being those of *Portugal*

\* H. 8. penes me, p. 104, &c.

† Q. 1. penes me, by Nich. Desbick Bleumantle.

2 St. Marthe l'Hist. Geneal. de France, Vol. 2. p. 677.



with the Addition of *Vifcu*, Or *quatre Pals de Gules*, which indeed were born by one of his Successors in that Title, and in Truth several of that Royal Family have differenced their Arms by the Addition of their Dutchies.

This Subject then shall be dismissed for the present, since it may be resumed hereafter, in treating upon the Arms of this Crown, if in the mean Time sufficient Information can be obtained, so that it will now be only hinted, that though it is the common tradition <sup>a</sup> of the Historians that *Alfonfus* III first assumed the Border *Gules*, charged with seven Castles Or, in memorial of his Marriage with *Beatrix* natural Daughter of *Alfonfus* IX of *Castile*, and not as the Arms of the Kingdom of *Algarves*, which he used among his Titles, yet that in an Authentick Certificate remaining in our <sup>b</sup> Archives of an Instrument executed by King *John* on 12 August, *Sub Era Cesarum* 1435, as 'tis there wrote, that is in the <sup>c</sup> Year of our Lord 1397, there is no notice taken of any Border. The Impression on his <sup>d</sup> Bull or Seal on Lead being described in the following Words. "*Sigillo ejusdem Principis in plumbo impresso in formâ rotundâ, In quo quidem Sigillo sculpta erant ex utraq; parte Sigilli quinque Scuta ejusdem quantitatis ad modum Effigiei Crucis, & in singulis scutis decem petræ rotundæ ut apparuit,*" but for several Ages these Escutcheons have been charged only with five *beasants*. This is noted here more especially because this King *John* was one of the Companions of this Order.

<sup>a</sup> St. Marthe l'Hist. Geneal. de France, p. 659.

<sup>b</sup> In Offic. Pellium.

<sup>c</sup> A Method of Computation used in Spain and Portugal, and in the latter till the Year 1415, at least.

<sup>d</sup> Sealing on Lead was used in some Occasions al-

most by all Princes, This Instrument being dated during the Reign of Rich. 2. we may observe that King practised it. Rymer. vol. 7. p. 510. and many other Instances this Custom by our Kings might be added.









# MEMOIRS

Of the LIFE of

**Sir GALEARD de DUREFORT**  
**Lord Duras, n. 194.**



HOUGH the time of his Election is not mentioned in the *Black-book*, which Names neither the Duke of *Viseu*, nor this Lord, in the *first* Year of *Ed. IV*, and is wholly silent as to any Transactions in the second Year, yet being entred as present in the Chapter held 22 *Apr.* in the third Year, It may be presumed He was chosen in some short time after the Death of that *Duke* was regularly signified. That Book gives only the following Memorials of him, that in 4 *Ed. IV*, He was in

foreign Parts, obeying the King's Commands, being misentred *Comes Duras*, in the 5th and 6th was at *Calais*, and abroad in the 7th, from whence there is a Chasm till the 12th Year, when he is entred as present in two several Chapters, and a severe Censure is laid on his Memory on the 4th *Nov.* in the sixteenth Year, where 'tis said that Sir *Thomas Montgomery* was declared elected Companion of this Order in the Place



Place of the Lord *Duras*, who had deserted the King, and like a *Bat*, that flies abroad in the dark [*tanquam Vespertilio*] had fled into *France*, submitted to that King, and took the Oath of Fidelity to him.

After some short Account is given of this most noble Family, which hath produced in our Days *Lewis Duras* Earl of *Feverſham*, another Knight of this Order, it may be no unpardonable Offence to state the Fact of the Behaviour of this *Galiard* in ſo critical a Juncture, and probably the Circumſtances may, if not defend and juſtify his Proceedings, yet mitigate and in ſome meaſure abate from this Harſh Character of Deſertion.

If the Collector had the Fortune of peruſing the Antiquities of this Family lodged in a <sup>a</sup> Library in *France*, this Narrative muſt certainly have been more complete; however our Records ſufficiently Inſtruct us, that this noble Family Lords of *Duras* and *Blanquefort* long flouriſhed with great Honour in the Provinces of *Guyenne* and *Foix*, and for many Centuries rendred faithful Services to our Kings Dukes of *Aquitaine*.

The French <sup>b</sup> Genealogiſts commence the Pedigree with *Arnold de Durefort*, who by Marriage with *Marqueſe* the Daughter of *Arnold Garſiæ de Gouth* Vicomte of *Loumayne*, Brother of Pope *Clement V*, had the Lordſhip of *Duras* and other Lands; Our Archieves inform us that the Caſtle of *Blancford*, was in *Peter* <sup>c</sup> *Bertram*, and granted by *Edw. II*, to <sup>d</sup> *Bertrand Deugod* [Son of the ſaid *Arnold*] one of the Nephews of that Pope, in as full a manner as the ſame came into the Hands of the King's Father, which *Bertrand* is ſtiled <sup>e</sup> *Vicecomes Leomannie & Alti Villar*.

The French <sup>f</sup> Authors tell us, that Sir *Bertrand del Gout* Father of this Pope, married *Marqueſia de Ilhacoë*, who held *Blanquaſort* in the Pariſh of *St. Severin de Ramafort*, in the Dioceſſe of *Bordeaux* in Dower, and in the Year 1312, this ſame *Bertrand* then ſtiled <sup>g</sup> *Dominus de Duracio*, the Son of this *Arnald Garſiæ*, Viſcount of *Leomayne* and *Auvillar*, had a Confirmation from *Ed. II*, of the Caſtle and Town of *Blancafort* to him and the Heirs of his Body, which Caſtle had great <sup>h</sup> Dependancies, and doubtleſs, theſe two Places, *Duras* and *Blanquaſort* came to this Family after the Death of <sup>i</sup> *Regine*, the Grandaughter and Heireſs of the ſaid *Garſiæ* in purſuance of her Will, and an <sup>k</sup> Author obſerves that this Family enjoys the Privilege of preſenting to the Churches of *Vinhendraud* and *Uzeſta*, which latter was the Place of the Nativity of this Pope *Clement V*.

But we meet with the Name of *Durfort* before this Time, <sup>l</sup> *William* was Councillor of the King of *Arragon* and <sup>m</sup> *Renfry* aſſiſted *Ed. I*, for the Recovery of *Aquitaine*; and divers other Branches occur in our Records, <sup>n</sup> *Bernard* upon a ſudden Invaſion of the French was for ſome Time drawn into their Intereſt, but ſoon returned to his Allegiance with

<sup>a</sup> Le L. Bibl. Hiſt. n. 16524.

<sup>b</sup> Anſelme l. Hiſt. Genealog. de France, Vol. 1. p. 812.

<sup>c</sup> Vaſcon 38 H. 3. m. 19.

<sup>d</sup> Rym. Vol. 3. p. 93, 107.—Oihenarti Notitia Vaſcon. p. 481. tells us, that Philip the fair granted this Viſcomty to Arnald Garſiæ Gutto, Brother of Pope Clement, which Arnold was Father of this Bertrand, and of Regina married to Bertrand Durofort.

<sup>e</sup> Rymer, vol. 3. p. 372, and in Baluz. p. 618.

<sup>f</sup> Baluz. not. in vitas Pap. Avenion. p. 616. A. D. 1308.

<sup>g</sup> Ib. p. 618. in a Grant of our Ed. 2.

<sup>h</sup> Rymer, Vol. 3. p. 372.

<sup>i</sup> In the Life of Sir Sandich de Trave above, p. 164.

<sup>k</sup> Lurbeins de illuſtribus Aquitaniz viris, p. 71.

<sup>l</sup> Rymer, Vol. 2. p. 370.

<sup>m</sup> Ib. p. 618.

<sup>n</sup> Ibid. Vol. 4. p. 115, 116.



*Adomar de Duford*, Lord of *Sapiere Clairmont* and *Sobireim*, which *Bernard* Lord of *Flamarius* is said to have married *Regine*, another Niece of this same Pope and Sister to the former Lady, but our *Arnold* during this sudden Invasion of the *French* stood firm in his Loyalty: About this space of Time <sup>o</sup> *Arnold de Duroforti* Knight was Lord of *Fespuch*, another *Bernard* of *Carlinhaco*.<sup>p</sup> One *Arnold* in 1326, had our King's Letter directed to *Katherine* Lady de *Sancta Basilica*, Relict of *Jurdan de Insula* to persuade her to marry him, which <sup>q</sup> *Arnold* being in *England* had a Silver Cup gilt given him on 6 Oct. 3 E. 3. and on the 19 May 4 E. 3. a Reward of 500 Marks in <sup>r</sup> Consideration of the Damage he had suffered in the Service of that King's Father. It would be too tedious to run through the numerous Branches of so spreading a Family.

This *Arnold* had several <sup>s</sup> Grants from the Crown and dyed in 1324, being by the *French* Authors said to be Father of *Aymery*, who follows in the next Paragraph, and also of <sup>t</sup> *Gaillard* Prebend of *Wetewang* in *York*, who revolting to the *French* was made Præcentor of *Cahors* in 1345, and an <sup>u</sup> *Archdeacon*, and likewise of *Bernard* who accompanied the latter in the Desertion.

II. *Aimery* his Son and Heir <sup>x</sup> adhered constantly to the *French*, who place his Death in 1345, so that our Records scarce mention him; the *French* <sup>y</sup> *Archives* let us know that *John* Comte d'*Armagnac* in 1335, made a Cession to the King of *France* of his Right in the Vicomtez de *Leomayne* and d'*Anvillars*, and in the Castles and Towns of *Blanquesfort* and other Places within the Archbishoprick of *Burdeaux*, saving that of *Duras* and *Chasteau Gaillard*, which with several others he had assigned formerly to Messire *Aymery de Duresford*, which Vicomtez belonged formerly to Messire *Bertrand de Gouth*, and after his Death descended to his Daughter *Regine*, Wife of the said Comte d'*Armagnac*: But though the Head of this Family embraced the Interest of the *French*, yet in this Interval of Time, several other considerable Persons of it adhered to their Loyalty, and therefore our <sup>z</sup> Records mention *Arnald de Duroforti*, who received at once <sup>a</sup> 1200 Marks. *Ramfred de Duroforti* Lord of *Baiolmont*, and his Sons *Rainfred* and *Reymond*, *Arnald* Son of Sir *Arnald*, and that Sir *Arnald* was sent Embassadour to the King of *Jerusalem* and *Sicily*, *Bertrand* Lord of *Cadilhak* received a Letter of Thanks from our King for his good Behaviour, Sir *Bernard* Lord de *Capella*, *Bertrand* Lord of *Cadilias*, &c. Pope *Clement*, recommends Sir *Arnald de Duroforte* Viscount *Laburde*, and *Arnald* Lord of *Fespuch* to the Favour of our King.

III. *Galiard* Son of *Aimery* embraced at first the Interest of *England*, and there is a <sup>b</sup> Number of Grants made to him extant on Record,

<sup>o</sup> Ibid. vol. 3. p. 530.

<sup>p</sup> Ibid. vol. 4. p. 191.

<sup>q</sup> Priv. Sig. 6 Oct. 3 E. 3.

<sup>r</sup> Priv. Sig.

<sup>s</sup> Vascon. 5 E. 3. m. 4. Vascon 6 E. 3. m. 5. Vasc.

7 E. 3. m. 3. Vascon. 8 E. 3. m. 3. 10 E. 3. m. 4. 11

E. 3. m. 34. 12 E. 3. m. 1. & 22.

<sup>t</sup> Rym. vol. 9.

<sup>u</sup> Rym. vol. 5. p. 329, 567.

<sup>x</sup> Vascon. 15 E. 3. m. 9. Rebellio Emerici de Duroforte.

<sup>y</sup> Du Chesne Hist. des Chancel. de France, p. 322.

<sup>z</sup> Rym. vol. 4. p. 191, 171, 342, 250, 678, 766, 841. vol. 5. p. 192, 193, 603, 784.

<sup>a</sup> Liberat. 26 E. 3. m. 3.

<sup>b</sup> Rot. Vascon. 22 E. 3. m. 9, &c.



but being seduced from his Allegiance in 1352, the Castle of *Blanquaforti* was in 28 E. III, given to <sup>c</sup> *Augery de Muysfidano*, in which Grant our King reserved Power to vacate it upon Assigning him other Lands to the Value of one thousand *Scutes* of Gold, which was a prudent Clause, for this Lord returning very soon to his Loyalty had in *Apr.* 1356 Restitution of this *Barony* of *Blancafart* in 32 Ed. III, by a memorable <sup>d</sup> Patent, the Chastellany of *Blavia* being in the preceeding Year given to this *Muysfidano* in Lieu and Satisfaction thereof, together with other <sup>e</sup> Rewards. He by *Margaret de Caumont* had

IV. *Galiard* the Second in 1365, did <sup>f</sup> Homage to the King of *England*, in pursuance of the Peace made at *Bretigny*, and thereon the Castle of *Blanquafort* with *Veyzimes*, and the Seignory of *Bessau* were restored to him, and by the Title of Lord <sup>g</sup> *Duras* and *Blancford* had in 50 E. III, a Gift of 308 *l.* 8 from the *Exchequer*, in 1377 was taken <sup>b</sup> Prisoner by the Duke of *Anjou*, and in 1 R. II in Regard of the Loss of some <sup>i</sup> Lands by the Wars in *Aquitaine* had an Annuity of 200 *l.* being often named *Sire de Duras & de Blanquesfort*, without any Christian or Surname. In 1 H. IV, Money was advanced to him for his Passage from hence into <sup>k</sup> *Gascoigne* upon the Affairs of the Crown, he having first a Grant of the *Prevostée* of *Bayonne* in Lieu of the 200 *l.* above-mentioned, <sup>l</sup> formerly granted by *Rich. II.* on 23 *Decemb.* and was by Endenture reteined to be <sup>m</sup> *Seneschal* of *Aquitain* during the King's Pleasure, and as such by the Stile of <sup>n</sup> *Galiard* Lord of *Duras* and *Blancafart*, had 1000 Marks in part of the payment of his Wages in the Wars out of the Subsidy given by the Clergy. In X H. IV, was in *England* and received a <sup>o</sup> Reward of a 100 Marks, and continuing in this high Office had in 3 *Hen. V.* the Hôtel of <sup>p</sup> *Limran* granted him, and in 1420, was at the <sup>q</sup> Siege of *Monstreau*, who by *Elioner de Perigord* had

V. *Galiard* the third, who in the 1 *Hen. VI.* petitioned the King reciting the <sup>r</sup> Grant of the *Prevostée* of *Bayonne* made by R. II, to his Father for Life, and confirmed by *Hen. IV.* to him and to the first Heir from him descending for Life, by vertue whereof the said *Galiard* being in Possession desired a Confirmation thereof, which was done during the King's Pleasure, which He again in the <sup>s</sup> eighth Year petitions to hold during his Life, when he was reteined by an <sup>t</sup> Endenture for one whole Year with 20 Men of Arms, accounting himself and two other Knights in that Number, and the Remnant were to be Esquires, and 10 Archers to do Service in the Voyage which the King intended in Person into

<sup>c</sup> Rymer. vol. 9. p. 406, 407. per Inspex.

<sup>d</sup> Vascon. 32 E. 3. p. 2. m. 6. See Vascon. 31 E.

3. m. 2.

<sup>e</sup> Rot. Pip. 36 E. 3.

<sup>f</sup> Vascon. 31 E. 3. m. 2. Inspexim. Cartæ Principis factæ 4 *Apr.* 1356.

<sup>g</sup> Exit. Pell. p. 50 E. 3.

<sup>h</sup> Du Chesne *Hist. d'Angleterre*, p. 867.

<sup>i</sup> Rym. vol. 7. p. 261.

<sup>k</sup> Priv. Sig. 17 *Junij* 1 H. 4.

<sup>l</sup> Rym. vol. 8. p. 117.

<sup>m</sup> In Off. Pell. & in Priv. Sig. 24 *Dec.* 1 H. 4.

Vide Rymer, vol. 8. p. 117, 371, 588. Rot. Vascon.

1. 2, 3, 4, 5 & 6 H. 4.

<sup>n</sup> Rym. vol. 8. p. 371.

<sup>o</sup> Priv. Sigill. in Off. Pell. 21 *Aug.*

<sup>p</sup> Rym. vol. 9. p. 259.

<sup>q</sup> Basset *Hist. MS.* in Off. Arm.

<sup>r</sup> 18 *May* 1 H. 6. in Off. Pell. Rym. vol. x. p.

288, 272.

<sup>s</sup> 8 *May* 8 H. 6. Ibid.

<sup>t</sup> Priv. Sig. 20 *Febr.* 8 H. 6. & etiam Indent. in Off. Pell.



his Realm of *France*, in 1432, He was " banished out of that Kingdom, and in the 15th Year for his own good Services performed to the King and to his Father, He was constituted \* Seneschal of *Landes*. By the means of the Identity of the Christian Name *Galiard* in the Father and Son, and not knowing the exact Time of the Death of the Father, it is not improbable that some of the Actions above-mentioned may have been ascribed to the one instead of the other: But by a Recital in a ' Patent we know this *Galiard* was dead before the 20th Oct. 23 Hen. VI, leaving by *Jeane de Loumayne*

VI. Our Knight of the *Garter Galiard* the Fourth <sup>z</sup> under Age, who in 24 Hen. VI, had <sup>a</sup> a Safeguard or Conduct to come into this Kingdom, and to return to *Aquitain* at his Pleasure, in which Year (if <sup>b</sup> *Manuscript* may be credited) He was made Marshal of *Calis*, which <sup>c</sup> *Comines* mistakes and calls him Marshal of *England*, having before in 1451, been present at the Surrender of <sup>d</sup> *Bordeaux* to the *French*, and as their <sup>e</sup> Authors say did Homage to the King of *France* in Sept. 1452, for his Seignory of *Duras*, to which he was compelled by the Necessity of Affairs, for He soon retired to *Calis* whereof He was Marshal, and from thence returned into *Aquitaine* with the most valiant Earl of *Shrewsbury*, after whose unfortunate Death at *Chatillon*, a <sup>g</sup> Record dated 21 Apr. 32 H. VI, informs us, " That the King's humble Subject and " faithful Liegeman *Guillard de Durasfort* Knight of *Gascoigne*, did in this " present Year when the Adversary of *France* seized on that Dutchy for- " tify his own Castles with Soldiers and Provisions, and most valiantly " defended himself in *Blanquafort*, so as the Counts of *Clermont* and " *Foix*, the Lords *de la Bret*, *Dorval*, and *Potton de Sainterailles*, who " lay before the same with a great Army, were however forced to break " up the Siege, by which means He kept his Lands in the Obedience " of the Crown till such a Time as the City of *Bordeaux* was taken, " whereby He was constrained to consult the Safety of his Person and " fly, since if it had chanced that He had been taken Prisoner, He " would certainly have been put to Death." This last Suggestion was no groundless Apprehension, proceeding from Fear or Caution, since two of the Family of *Monferrant* did at that Time meet with that severe Fate. Upon this Account the King granted him an Annuity of one hundred Pounds, and took him afterwards into his special <sup>b</sup> Protection for two Years, being reduced (as 'tis worded) to the very Abyss or Extremity of Poverty for this his firm Alliance, which Summ was afterwards made payable out of Issues of Lands in <sup>i</sup> *Guisnes*, and Parts thereabouts. By the way the *French* King in this Interval gave the Lands of *Blanquafort* to the Compte of <sup>k</sup> *Dampmartin*, and the Barony of *Duras*

<sup>u</sup> Du Tillet Chron. Abrege des Rois de France, p. 133.

<sup>x</sup> Vasc. 15 H. 6. m. 5.

<sup>y</sup> Rym. vol. xi. p. 71.

<sup>z</sup> Vasc. 23 H. 6. m. 8. 21 Oct.

<sup>a</sup> Vasc. 24 H. 6. m. 4. 14 Aug.

<sup>b</sup> Vinc. MS. in Off. Arm. n. 18. p. 143 b.

<sup>c</sup> Hist. l. 3. c. 4.

<sup>d</sup> Moreri Diction. Hollingh. ad A. D. 1431.

<sup>e</sup> Anselme, p. 813. & Moreri. Vide Du Tillet recueil des traitez, p. 368.

<sup>f</sup> Hollingh. p. 636. Comines ut Supra.

<sup>g</sup> Vasc. 32 H. 6. m. 9. 21 Apr. Rym. vol. xi. p.

348.

<sup>b</sup> Rym. vol. xi. p. 348.

<sup>i</sup> Fran. 36 H. 6. m. xi. 9 May Rym. vol. xi. p.

410.

<sup>k</sup> Anselm. l'Hist. Geneal. p. 831. & 1361.



to the Siegneur *du Lau*, which latter at length had this Chastellainy of *Blancafort* also. After this Time we meet with Recitals of these his unfortunate Losses and Sufferings, and several Orders for Payment of the Arrears of this Annuity. Henceforth he was reputed an *Englishman* by the *French*, and accordingly that King gives a Reward to his Pursivant <sup>1</sup> *Blanquefort* as the Officer of an *English* Nobleman. In *April* the first Year of E. IV, by the King's Appointment He laid Siege with three or 400 Persons to the Castle of <sup>m</sup> *Hammes* then detained by certain Rebels, and He, which is somewhat remarkable, was made Knight of the *Bath* at the Coronation of the <sup>n</sup> *Queen* in 1465, and in 1469 was one of the Embassadors sent with the *Garter* to the <sup>o</sup> Duke of *Burgundy*. In the XI. of E. IV, He was sent into <sup>p</sup> *Lancashire* to suppress a Rebellion, and was one of those who in <sup>q</sup> Parliament did on Oath perform Homage to the Prince of *Wales*. In the 12th had the <sup>r</sup> Dominion of *Lesparr* in *Gascoigne* granted to him and to his Heirs Males, and on 15 *July* in that Year was retained by Endenture (as the Words are) to do Service of War unto the Duke of *Bretagne* against the Might and Malice of *Louys* calling himself King of *France*, and in Regard, "Our Knight could not chevish, (as the Term is, that is borrow) Goods to prepare himself to wayte and intende upon the King in his Wars against his great and auntient Enemy of *France*, because of the Non-certeinté of his Life," It was Enacted in Parliament 14 E. IV, that in Case He should <sup>t</sup> dye within five Years, his Assigns or Executors should for that Term next after his Decease enjoy the Annuity of one hundred Pounds granted to him on 6 *Sept.* in the fourth Year of the King, under the Seal of the Dutchy of *Lancaster*, Issuing out of the Lordship of *Bolynbroke*. In 14 E. IV, was one of the Embassadors <sup>u</sup> to the Duke of *Burgundy* and *John* Lord *Audley*, and this *Galiard* being by an Indenture dated 21 *Nov.* retained to serve the King with 2000 Archers in the War of *Bretagne*, received Money from the *Exchequer* upon that Account, and they in the next Year had the <sup>x</sup> Government of the Army sent thither, In the 15th He obtained a Grant of the <sup>y</sup> Mannors of *Shelford*, *Stokebardonf* and *Gedling*, in the Counties of *Nottingham*, *Derby* and *Lincoln*, to himself and the Heirs Males of his Body, for *Gascoigners* being Born within the <sup>z</sup> Ligeance of the King, were capable of Grants and Inheritable here. He was one of the <sup>a</sup> Embassadors into *Bretagne*, and had served according to a <sup>b</sup> MS. under *Edward* the IV in *Flanders*,

<sup>1</sup> Du Compte 3 de Sire Guillaume de Varie General des finances du Roy du premier Octobre 1463, au dernier Sept. 1464, a *Blanquefort* Pourfuiuant d'Armes du Seigneur de Duras *Anglois* 27 l. 10 s. a Tournay pour avoir apporte des nouvelles d'Angleterre. Comuniquee par Monf. Monf. Clairembault.

<sup>m</sup> E. Signet 16 Junij 3 E. 4.

<sup>n</sup> Vita Ed. 4. edita per Hearn. p. 295.

<sup>o</sup> Athm. App. n. Lxii.

<sup>p</sup> Exit Pell.

<sup>q</sup> Claus. 11 E. 4. m. 1 d.

<sup>r</sup> Pat. 12 E. 4. p. 1. m. 7. 28 July, Rym. vol. xi. p. 410.

<sup>s</sup> Indent. in Off. Pell.

<sup>t</sup> N. 26. Ancienne Chronique dans le Supplemt.

aux Memoires de Comines, p. 399. le 22 Avril 1474. Messire Gerard de Duresfort Snr. de Duras & Mr. Jean Morton, Docteur es loix Maistre des Rolles Ambassadeurs d'Angle. prirent conge de ce Duc, Ils eurent en present pour eux deux cent dix Marcs de vaisselle d'argent, & chacun un cheval. Bertrand de Duras frere du dit Gerard qu'il avoit accompagne dans cette Ambassade eut aussi un cheval en present.

<sup>u</sup> Exit. Pell.

<sup>x</sup> Pat. 15 E. 4.

<sup>y</sup> Ibm. p. 2. m. xi. 12 Julij.

<sup>z</sup> Co. 7. Rep. p. 19 b.

<sup>a</sup> Fran. 15 E. 4. m. 17. 16 Junij.

<sup>b</sup> H. 8. penes Authoren, p. 186, 284.



the last Entry that this Collector hath found of him in the Records, is in *March* 16 E. IV, whereby he surrendred the Grant of the <sup>c</sup> Annuity issuing out of the Mannor of *Bolynbroke*, and the other Grants of the Mannors above-mentioned, for which the King ordered him the Payment of 485 *l.* from the *Exchequer*.

Hitherto his Loyalty is irreproachable, for which He lost one of the <sup>d</sup> four Chief Baronies in *Aquitaine*, with an ample Patrimony and all his <sup>e</sup> Moveables, and a Re-establishment therein after so long a Dispossession was no Ways blameable, if it could be obtained upon honourable Terms by the Consent of all Parties interested. The Fact certainly is, that He performed <sup>f</sup> Homage to the King of *France* in 1476, upon the Restitution of his Inheritance, and the Enquiry ought to be whether this Regulation of his Conduct was defensible.

For want of the *Registrum Chartaceum*, it cannot be determined whether the Compiler of this *Black-book* might not fling in this Comparison to a Bat as an Ornament to his Style and Oratory: However that may be, it is not pretended that this Behaviour of our Knight can be in any measure justified by the Inducement of his own Interest, though that hath always been a prevalent Motive, and a Principle, that hath had too visible a Power over the Actions of Men even in exalted Stations: But we are here to recollect that it was the current Doctrine of former Ages, that when a Person had in Form renounced and surrendred his <sup>g</sup> Homage to one Prince, He was esteemed discharged from it, and at liberty to transfer it to another Prince: At the Time when this was the common Practice, there can be no Doubt, but if the Prince who had the Right to the Allegiance should consent to the Alienation of it, that must have been then allowed a good Plea.

When our Knight thus submitted to *France* upon the Restoration of his antient Estates, the Dutchy of *Guienne* had been several Years in the Possession of that Crown, and there seemed to be no Prospect that the Crown of *England* should recover it after the Treaty concluded in <sup>h</sup> *August* 15 *Edw.* IV, a Treaty which though it was shameful to the King of *France*, who petitioned and paid for it, was however in no other Respect honourable to our King, save only that He returned Home loaden with the Tribute of his Ally, to whom He was reconciled upon that Purchase. Both these Kings expressed entire Satisfaction in this Peace, and the greatest Expressions of Affection passed between them at their Interview, when they took their Oaths for the mutual Observation of the Articles, and in a short Time they consented to prolong the Continuance thereof during the Terms <sup>i</sup> of their respective Lives, and for one Year after the Demise of the first of them. These Treaties remain still on Record, and no Provision or Recompence is made therein with

<sup>c</sup> Priv. Sig.

<sup>d</sup> Du Chesne *Hist. d'Angleterre*, p. 867. A. D.

1377.

<sup>e</sup> *Fran.* 34 H. 6. m. 23. 20 Nov. ad petitionem dilecti & fidelis Regis Galiardi de Durford militis Domini de Duras in Ducatu Aquitanie oriundi, qui cum Adversarius Regis Ducatum predictum inva-

serit & sibi subjugaverit omnia bona sua mobilia & immobilia fidelitatem ligeantie sue observando amisit, &c.

<sup>f</sup> Anselme, Moreri, &c.

<sup>g</sup> See above, p. 71.

<sup>h</sup> Rymer, vol. 12. p. 14, 18.

<sup>i</sup> Ibid. p. 47.



Regard to those *Gascoigners*, who for the Reverence of their Loalty had unfortunately lost all their Lands in that Dutchy, and how offensive this League was to those of that Country appears from the free Censure made upon it by *Lewis de Bretailles* in his private Conversation with *Philip de<sup>k</sup> Comines*, that *Ed. IV* received greater Dishonour by returning Home, than he had obtained Honour in winning nine Battles in Person.

The State of Affairs was in this Scituation, in Reference to the *Gascoigners*, and if a Relation in a<sup>l</sup> Manuscript can be credited, *Ed. IV* consented that our Knight should become a Subject of *France*, for 'tis there said, "That after the Peace He asked Licence that He might sue  
" to the *French* King to be restored, which done and granted, He took  
" his Leave of the King at *Calais*, where He caused a Mass of *St. George*  
" to be celebrated, and there offered up his *Garver*. This seems to be countenanced not only from the Continuance of the Name of our Knight in the *Windsor-Tables*, wherein such as were degraded, are generally omitted, but from the Management of *Ed. IV*, who was a Prince versed enough in Politicks, and 'tis scarce conceivable He should not suspect the Motive that induced our Knight at that Juncture to surrender the Grants made to him in Fee-Taile, and that He tacitly at least consented to his Intention of submitting to *France* by his Acceptance of these Grants, and giving him so slender a Consideration, which was no Ways equivalent to the Losses he had sustained, and would rather irritate and provoke him to a Desertion, than be an Allurement to keep him firm in his Interest.

Our Knight by his Lady *Jeanne de la Lande* left *John de Duresfort* his Son, from whom in a direct Line descended the Duke of *Duras*, the *Compte de Lorges*, the Earl of *Feversham* Companion of this Order, and other Branches in *France*. Whether this was a Deposition or Resignation, there might be no Plate for him ever affixed to this Stall, for in that Age it was not customary to set any up, till after the Death of the Knight: His Arms however may be seen in Mr. <sup>m</sup> *Asbmole's* History which were Quarterly *Gules* a Lion Rampant Argent, and Argent a Bend azure for *Duresfort*.<sup>n</sup> *Spéner* was ignorant to what Family the first Coat did originally belong, but a late<sup>o</sup> Author acquaints us, that 'tis for *Lomagne*, probably He means the Antient Viscompte of that *Placé de Gout*; His Crest is in some Manuscripts said to be a Lion's Head erased Or on a *Chapeau azure* lined Ermine, having three tassels Or,

<sup>k</sup> l. 4. c. x.  
<sup>l</sup> H. 8. penes me, p. 186, 284.  
<sup>m</sup> p. 712.

<sup>n</sup> Speneri theoria Insignium, p. 619.  
<sup>o</sup> Moreti Diction. v. *Duresfort*.





# MEMOIRS

Of the LIFE of

## Sir Tho. Montgomery.



His Successor was Sir *Thomas Montgomery* numbered 215, elected on the 22 *Apr.* 16 *E. IV*, *An. Dom.* 1476. under the Character of a most Eminent <sup>a</sup> Knight [*Peregrinus Eques*] of whom the *Black-book* contains no other Entries than his Presence in, or Absence from Chapters till the 8th Year of *Hen. VII*, and from thence there is a Chasm in it till the 14th Year, in which Interval he dyed.

He was Son of Sir *John Montgomery* of *Falkburn* in *Essex*, who was probably the first of that Surname seated at that Place, which in 13th *Hen. IV*, had been in the Family of <sup>b</sup> *Bohun*, and indeed the Collector cannot discover

<sup>a</sup> Lib. Nig.

<sup>b</sup> From the Information of Mr. Holman, who will merit largely from this County by his Topographical description of the Antiquities thereof.

his



his Descent, unless it was from *Scotland*, as the Person who lately published *c* *Cambdene* there, conjectures from the small Distinction between his Arms and those of *Mongomery* Earl of *Eglinton*. This Sir *John* created Knight of the *Bath* at St. *George's* Feast held in *Caen*, was famous for many military Exploits recorded by the *d* Historians during the Wars in *France*, where he was Privy Councillour to *John* Duke of *Bedford* the Regent, Captain of the strong Castle of *Arques* and other *e* Fortresses, Bailif of *Caux*, and had the Honour of being nominated in the Scrutiny of this Order in 23 *H. VI*. It would be too foreign to give the Particulars of his Life, He married *Elizabeth* Sister to *Ralph Boteler* Lord of *Sudeley* (Knight also of this Order) who by the Title of *f* *Lady Say* made her Will on the last of *January* 1464, which was proved on the 9th of *March* following, wherein "She appointed her Funeral in the " Priory of *Erbury*, where the Bones of her Ancestors lay, and constituted Sir *Thomas Mongomery* her Son one of her Executors, and gives " a Legacy to her Daughter *Alice* Wife of *Clement Spice* Esq; making " her Brother *Ralph Boteler* Lord *Sudeley* Surveyor thereof.

*Erbury* in *Warwickshire* was the Burying Place of these *z* *Botelers*, and by a far fetcht Courtesy she constantly retained the Title of *Lady Say*, being only the Relict of Sir *b* *William Heron* stiled Lord *Say*, by Reason of his first Marriage with *i* *Elizabeth* the Daughter and Heiress of the Lord *Say* Widow of Sir *John Falvesle*. This Sir *William* entituled Lord *Say* dying without Issue in or *k* before 6 *Hen. IV*, this his Lady must have been the *l* Widow of Sir *Henry Norbury*, because *m* Sir *John Norbury* her Son was in 13 *E. IV*, found to have been one of the Heirs of this *Ralph* Lord *Boteler*, Hence our Knight in his Will orders Masses for the Soul of his Uncle the Lord *Sudeley*, and devises a Legacy to his Nephew *Ralph Norbury*, and we find some other intermarriages between these Families, for *n* *Gawine Boteler* had formerly married *Alice Montgomery*, and *Elizabeth* an Heiress of the Chief branch of the *Botelers* was married to *John Say*.

This Sir *John Montgomery* *o* dyed in 27 *Hen. VI*, being with his said Lady seized of *Falkburne*, leaving *John* his Son and Heir then 22 Years of Age, and a Deed of this Lady by the Stile of *Elizabeth Lady Say* late the Wife of *John Montgomery*, dated in the next Year, hath been *p* published, and the *q* Jury find that this Lady dyed 4 *Edw. IV*, seized of *Cheloughton* and *Blounteshall* in *Southampton* and *Essex*, together with Sir *Ralph Botiller* and *Ralph Browne*, and that *Tho. Montgomery* then 30 Years of Age was her Son and Heir, so that *John* the elder Brother of our Knight by the same Mother must be then dead (and probably was the Person

*c* Printed at Edinburg in 8vo.

*d* Ms. in bibl. *Lambeth*. n. 141. *Basset Historia*

Ms. in Off. Arm. m. 9.

*Hollingsh.* p. 604, &c.

*e* Capitaneus de Meullent. Rot. Norm. 7 *H. 5*.  
de Mauliverer. *Ibid.* m. 56. de Danfront. Norm.

8 *H. 5*. p. 2. m. 15.

*f* Lib. Godyn in Prerog. 56.

*g* See Dugd. *Warwickshire*.

*h* Vinc. *Baronage* Ms. in Off. Arm. p. 259.

*i* Dugd. *Bar.* vol. 1. p. 730.

*k* G. 7. penes me, p. 70.

*l* Esch. 6 *H. 6*. post mortem Petronellæ uxoris  
Hugonis de Mortuo Mari.

*m* Esch. 13 *E. 4*. n. 58.

*n* See the Pedigrees of Boteler and Say.

*o* Esch. 27 *H. 6*. *Essex*.

*p* Madox Form. Anglic. n. DCxx.

*q* Esch. 4 *E. 4*.



that was<sup>r</sup> beheaded in 3 *Edw.* IV,) for the Lady *Say* being married to Sir *John Montgomery*<sup>s</sup> on or before 5 *H.* V, it is evident she was Mother to these two Brothers, and there was only the Difference of nine Years in their Ages.

By the Interest and Merits of his Father, who had distinguished himself in the Wars, our Knight seems in his early Years to have been admitted into Court; for *Hen.* VI, in his 25th Year gave forty Pounds<sup>t</sup> " to his well-beloved Squier *Thomas Montgomery* oon of the Marechalx " of, his Hallé for his entandance upon the Duke of *Norfolk* at *Killing-* " worth and in the *Tower* of *London*, and afterwards upon Sir *John* " *Asteley*, and in fetching *Alianore Cobham* from *Ledys* to *London*, and " for his awaiting upon *John Davy* appellant to teche and informe him " Points of Arms, such as He cowde, ayenst the tyme that He should " have at do in *Smythfeild*, and also in Regard the Grant of an Office " in *Wales* late made to him, which should have been worth xxl. yerly " was not valuable to him.

One should scarce imagine that this Passage related to our Knight who was at that Time only about 13 Years old, an Age scarce capable to give any effective Instructions in Points of Arms to an Appellant in the Case of a Duel *al oultrance*, where the Charge being Capital, the Combat was to continue, till one of the Parties was killed; though there can be little doubt of the Identity of the Person, because, as we shall soon see, *Thomas Montgomery* by the same Appellation of one of the Marshals of the Hall was three Years afterwards advanced to be Warden of the *Mint*, which very Office was confirmed to our Knight by *Ed.* IV. Hence therefore it may be presumed that this Instrument cautiously intimates such Instructions, as He cowde give, with respect to the Tenderneſs of his Age, which Words are omitted in the Privy Seal to another who was to teach the Prior of *Kilmayn* in the like manner, which may be seen in the Margin.

This *Alianor Cobham* from the Mistress became the Wife of the Duke of *Gloceſter*, and had been<sup>u</sup> arrested for Conspiring the Murther of the King, and we may observe, which is somewhat remarkable, that by the Rules of the<sup>x</sup> Court military Appellants were allowed to be taught in

<sup>r</sup> Hollingſh. p. 605. *Life* of *Ed.* 4. published by *Hearne*, p. 290

<sup>s</sup> Lib. S. Albani in Bibl. Cotton. Nero D. 7. 23 Oct. 1417. suscepit beneficium nostræ fraternitatis *Elizabetha Domina Say*; cujus interventu concessa fuit fraternitas nostri Capituli Domino *Johanni de Montegomerico* viro suo, qui pro tunc in ultramarinis militavit Domino nostro Regi *Henrico*.

<sup>t</sup> Privat. Sig. 28 Apr. inter brevia in Off. Pell.

<sup>u</sup> Lelands Coll. vol. 1. p. 708. Hollingſh. p. 623. Speed 678. Hall 64 b.

<sup>x</sup> There are two other Instances in this same Year. Priv. Sig. 28 Dec. 25 H. 6. To Philip Treher Fishmonger xxl. for his Attendance and Labours by oure Commandement as wel in teching certain Points of Arms unto the Prior of *Kilmayn*, which late appeled th<sup>e</sup> Erl of *Ormond* of hault Treason, as in teching and counsailling *John Davy*, which hath appelleed oon *John*

Catour Armorer of Treason. These two Appellants had another Councillor allowed them, who was as Experienced in Feats of Arms as any Person of that Age, the famed Sir *John Asteley*, who was afterwards elected into this Order. Exit. Pell. 25 H. 6. *Johanni Asteley* militi, qui nuper ex speciali mandato per literas de privato Sigillo fuit intendens, & de consilio in quadam materia concernen. personam ipsius Dom. Regis cum Priore de *Kilmayn*, & postmodum cum *Johanne Davy* in alia materia appellationis concernen. personam Dom. Regis xli. The Defendants also had the same benefit, and therefore a Privy Seal was directed to Sir *William Lille*, setting forth that whereas Battle was adjudged between *Upton* and *Down*, and the Defendant had desired him, " De luy assister, & a luy entendre a ses propres frais & aider & informer en, de, & sur certains choses la faict d'armes concernentz, & pur son defense en le dit batrail besoignables, Vous nientmains luy assister,



in the Management of their Arms; though the Permission of Combats for Tryals in doubtful Cases where ordinary Proofs were wanting, could be grounded only on a Notion of the Interposition of Providence by the visible Sign of giving to the Innocent the Victory over the Guilty.

In 28 H. VI, being then the King's Esquire and Marshal of the Hall, He had the Custody of the <sup>y</sup> Exchange, and of the Money within the Tower of London, and the Wardenship of the Coynage of Gold and Silver within the Kingdom granted him during his Life.

Under the Reign of Edw. IV, He was one of the greatest Favou-rites, and of his Cabinet, "*Un Chivalier fort privé de luy*, as a <sup>z</sup> judicious Statesman acquaints us, and had several Posts of considerable Profit; in the first Year He was constituted Steward of the Castle of <sup>a</sup> Haddede for Life, and had the Office of the Linnen Armory within the Tower of <sup>b</sup> London for the like terme, and was <sup>c</sup> made Treasurer of Ireland for Life, and had the Stewardship of <sup>d</sup> Havering at the Bower, with a Confirmation of the <sup>e</sup> Wardenship of the Mint on 15 June, being then only an Esquire, but received the Honour of Knighthood before the 19th Nov. following, when a <sup>f</sup> Tally formerly made out in the Name of his Father Sir John, was ordered to be changed and assigned to him, and in February that Year He had <sup>g</sup> 2 Parts of the Mannour and Town of <sup>h</sup> Saldeyn with its Members in Bucks and Bedford granted to him, in the next Year had the Captainship of <sup>i</sup> Caernarven for Life, and was <sup>j</sup> Sheriff of Norfolk and Suffolk, sent in the 3d Year Embassadour into <sup>k</sup> Scotland and afterwards to the Duke of <sup>l</sup> Charolois, to treat of a Marriage between him and the King's Sister, and He afterwards attended on that <sup>m</sup> Princess in her Journey thither, and He was empowered to treat with the <sup>n</sup> Embassadors of Lewis the King's Adversary, having had the Constableship of the Castle of <sup>o</sup> Caen for Life, and was in or before Nov. 8 E. IV, discharged from the Office of <sup>p</sup> Warden of the Mint doubtless with his own Consent, on the 14 Oct. in the 9th Year being then Knight for the King's Body, had for his laudable Services the Constableship of <sup>q</sup> Bristol for Life, and in the following Year in Regard he had done his true Devoir to the King at all Times, had a Pardon for the <sup>r</sup> Forfeitures incurred by him in the Common Pleas, by Reason

ou a luy entendre en ascun faict d'armes aider & enfourmer, ou enseigner n'avez voulu, ne ungore ne veuillez en ascune manere faunz nostre coungie, The King therefore by the Advice of his Privy Council charges him, "Que Vous vous adressez personnelment au dit John Donne, & a luy soiez assistant, aidant, & confortant, & luy donnez autiel counseil en de & sur le faict d'armes & les circonstances dicell a luy pur son dit bataill nécessaires, comme de bon foi, & selonc la ley d'armes vous semblera bon, just, sain, &c. — In Officio Pell. The distinction was, the Appellant being supposed to support the Interest of the Crown, was Taught at the Charges of the Crown, whereas the Defendant paid for his own Instruction, and in the like Manner the Armour was provided by the Crown for the Appellant, and if he was the Conqueror, was given to him as to this Upton by a Privy Seal dated 17 Apr. 8 H. 6.

<sup>y</sup> Pat. 28 H. 6. p. 1. m. 10. 25 Oct.

<sup>z</sup> Comines l. 4. c. xi. p. 245.

<sup>a</sup> Pat. 1 E. 4. 8vo. Julij.

<sup>b</sup> Ibid.

<sup>c</sup> Ibid.

<sup>d</sup> Ibid.

<sup>e</sup> Ibid.

<sup>f</sup> Priv. Sig. 19 Nov. 1 E. 4.

<sup>g</sup> Pat. Ibid. sub mense Febr.

<sup>h</sup> Ibid. 11 Junij.

<sup>i</sup> Priv. Sigill.

<sup>k</sup> Rot. Scot.

<sup>l</sup> Rot. Fran. 6 E. 4. m. 6. 22 Martij.

<sup>m</sup> F. 2 penes me, p. 83.

<sup>n</sup> Rot. Fran. 6 E. 4. m. 7.

<sup>o</sup> Fran. 3 E. 4. 29 Martij.

<sup>p</sup> Priv. Sig. 29 Nov. 8 E. 4.

<sup>q</sup> Pat. 9 E. 4. 13 Oct.

<sup>r</sup> Priv. Sig. 3 Nov. 10 E. 4.



of his Office of Sheriff of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*. The King having in his 12th Year created his Son Prince of *Wales* and Earl of *Chester* in Parliament, a special Provision was inserted in the ' Act that the Livery of the Dutchy of *Cornwall* should not be prejudicial to the Grants of Offices made to the King's trusty and well-beloved *William Stanley* Knt. *Tho. Burgh*, *Thomas Montgomery*, &c. In 13 E. IV, He purchased from the Earl of *Kent* the Mannor of ' *Braxsted Magna* for 1000 Marks, and was in Parliament in the next Year with *Thomas Burgh*, *William Parr*, Knights, and others constituted one of the Feoffees for the Hereditaments of the " Dutchy of *Lancaster* in order for the Performance of the King's Will, and in that Year had the Stewardship of all the Lands of <sup>x</sup> *Francis* Son and Heir of *John Lovel* Knight, lying in *Essex* during his Minority, and being then a Banneret and Knight for the King's Body, received the first ' Quarter's Pay for his Voyage into *France*, with ten Men of Arms and one hundred Archers according to his Endenture, and for his good Services had the <sup>z</sup> Stewardship of the King's Forest of *Essex* during Life, and on the 2d of *Dec.* a Commission was directed to him then Knight for the King's Body and his <sup>a</sup> Steward [*nostroq; Dapiscidi*] to make a League with the *Emperor* against *France*, where being at *Seintre* on 13 *Aug.* 15 E. IV, He was one of those who advised that King to enter into a <sup>b</sup> Treaty with the King of *France*, and afterwards <sup>c</sup> *Margaret* Queen Dowager of *Hen. VI*, was put into his Custody to be delivered to that King upon such Terms as He should judge reasonable.

This Treaty with *France* soon ended in a Peace, which however dishonourable to that King who stooped so low to purchase it by an yearly Tribute or Pension, was however ungrateful to the Genius of the *English*, who imagined they had thereby lost the Opportunity of making glorious Conquests. The compliance of *Ed. IV*, to the Proposals offered him, is attributed by a late <sup>d</sup> Historian to the Advice and Approbation of some Members of the House of Commons who attended him, in that Expedition, who soon became tired of lying in the Field like Souldiers, which if true, is an antient Instance that *Deputies of States* have not been always proper Councillours, touching the Critical junctures when Battles ought to be fought. Our Knight having gone formerly through the Fatigues of foreign Voyages, and having several military Employments at Home, it is to be hoped He was not one of this tender delicate Number, but it may be questioned whether He might not be influenced by a Motive of a worse Denomination; for it appears that by Reason of the general Discontent of the Nation, the Continuance of this Peace seemed so very insecure, that to support it the politick *Lewis XI* condescended to pay annual Pensions to the Ministers and Favourites of *Ed. IV*, and among others to our <sup>e</sup> Knight; How far the Knowledge and Consent of the Sovereign can justify, or how far excuse

<sup>s</sup> Parl. 12 E. 4. n. 12, 13, 14.

<sup>t</sup> Collect. Rich. Symonds in Off. Arm.

<sup>u</sup> Parl. 14 E. 4. n. xi.

<sup>x</sup> Pat. 26 Janij 14 E. 4.

<sup>y</sup> Rymer, vol. xi. p. 846.

<sup>z</sup> Pat. 15 E. 4. 27 Apr.

<sup>a</sup> Fran. 14 E. 4. m. 1.

<sup>b</sup> Rymer, vol. 12. p. 15.

<sup>c</sup> Ibid. p. 21. 22. Du Tillet. recueil des Traitez,

p. 374.

<sup>d</sup> Matthieu Hist. de Louis xi. l. 6. c. 19.

<sup>e</sup> Comines l. 4. c. 8. p. 227.



any Courtiers in taking Money from a foreign Prince in such Circumstances is not the present Subject, but if it was culpable in our Knight, there were several other of great Quality Partners with him in the Guilt.

He was chosen into this Order when He was about forty two Years old. In 17th Year was Knight of the <sup>f</sup> Shire for *Essex*, and continuing Knight of the King's Body was by that <sup>g</sup> Title deputed to treat with the Embassadors of *France*, and in the next Year being <sup>h</sup> *pro corpore nostro miles*, ac *Ordinis Garterij* was one of the Embassadors to treat with the Dutcheſs of *Burgundy* about the Courſe of Money, as alſo with thoſe of the Duke of <sup>i</sup> *Oſtriche* and *Burgoyne*. In 19 E. IV, hath the Addition of <sup>k</sup> *Conſiliarius Regis*, and in the following Year being *Ordinis Garterij miles*, was at <sup>l</sup> *Bruges* when *Maximilian* and *Mary* Dukes of *Austria* and *Burgundy* took their Oaths for obſerving the Treaty of Marriage between *Philip* Count of *Charolois* and *Anne* Daughter of our King. He was one of the Founders of a Gild or <sup>m</sup> Fraternity at *Utyng* in *Essex*, and He met with the good Fortune to ſtand ſo far in the Graces of *Rich. III.* that He in his firſt Year granted him the Caſtle of <sup>n</sup> *Hyngham* for Life, and continued him one of the <sup>o</sup> Knights for his Body, and ordered him by Reaſon of the Infirmary of the Lord *Montjoy* in the 2d Year to take Care of the Caſtle of <sup>p</sup> *Guiſnes*, upon the Rumour that the *French* intended to attack it, and he was one of the Embassadors who concluded ſeveral Articles with <sup>q</sup> *Philip* of *Austria* Duke of *Burgundy*, and was one of thoſe who agreed to prolong the <sup>r</sup> Truce with the Duke of *Bretagne*. In the 4th Year of *Hen. VII.* He had a Pardon for all Amerciaments laid on him for not appearing at the ſeſſions held at <sup>s</sup> *Colcheſter* as Bailiff of divers Fraunchiſes, and was commiſſioned in that Year to provide <sup>t</sup> Archers within the County of *Essex* for the Relief of *Bretagne*. In the 6th Year was conſtituted Sheriff of <sup>u</sup> *Norfolk* and *Suffolk* for one Year from *Michaelmas*. His <sup>x</sup> Will made at *Falkborne* in *Essex* bears date 28 July 1489, (4 H. VII,) ſome Years before his Death, wherein he orders his Burial in the Chapel of our Lady which he had made at *Tower-Hill*, and that the Body of his Lady Dame *Philip* ſhould be removed from *Falkborne* thither, mentions the Lord *Sudeley* his Uncle, *Ralph Norbury* his Nephew, his Siſters *Anne Montgomery*, *Alice Langley*, and *Alice Spice*, and gives Legacies to Dame *Lore* then his Wife, and ſeveral other Relations. The <sup>y</sup> Inquiſition taken 9th of May, X H. VII, finds his Death on the XIth of *January* preceeding (ſo that He was about 55 Years of Age) and that he held *Falkborne* and *Bluntishall*, and that *Alice* Wife of *Robert Langley* then 60 Years of Age was his Siſter and Heir (who had been the Wife of *John Forteſcue* Eſq; whoſe Poſterity by her enjoyed

<sup>f</sup> Clauſ. 17 E. 4. d.

<sup>g</sup> Pat. 17 E. 4. p. 1. & Fran. 17 E. 4. m. 20.

<sup>h</sup> July.

<sup>i</sup> { Fran. 18 E. 4. m. 3: 18 Dec.

<sup>k</sup> Pat. 19 E. 4.

<sup>l</sup> Rym. vol. 12. p. 139.

<sup>m</sup> Pat. 21 E. 4. p. 1. m. 9.

<sup>n</sup> Pat. 1 R. 3. 26 Apr.

<sup>o</sup> Ibid.

<sup>p</sup> Rym. vol. 12. p. 131.

<sup>q</sup> Ibid. p. 248.

<sup>r</sup> Ibid. p. 261.

<sup>s</sup> Priv. Sig.

<sup>t</sup> Pat. 4 H. 7. m. 20 d. 23 Dec.

<sup>u</sup> Rot. Fin.

<sup>x</sup> Vox in Prærog. qu. 23.

<sup>y</sup> Eſch. in Cap. Rotul.



*Falkburne*) and which *Alice* notwithstanding her Age was re-married to *Edmund Wiseman* in or before 1502, and dyed in 24 H. VII, so that his other Sisters named in his Will either dyed before him, or were of the half Blood.

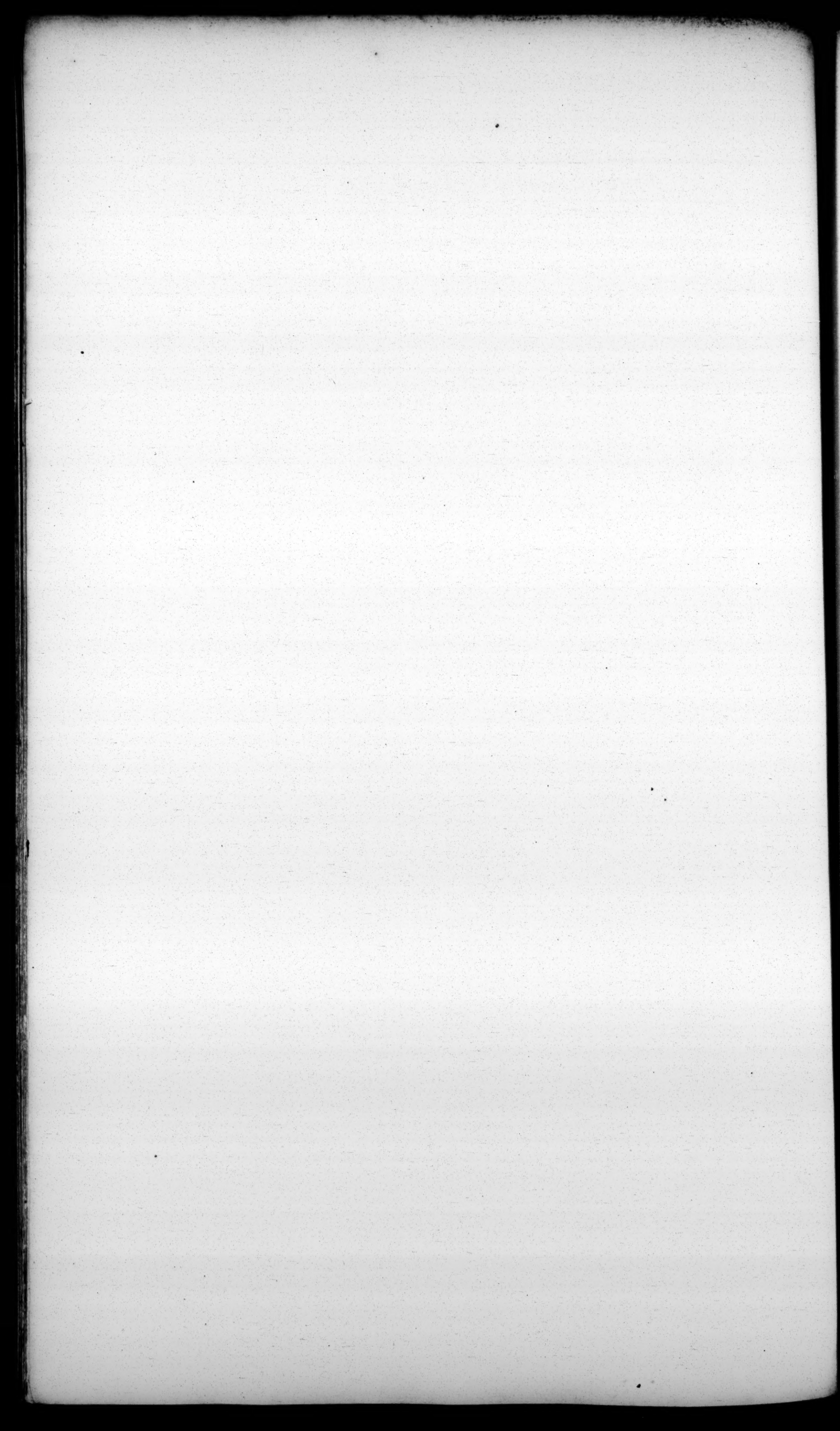
He was doubtless buried (as we shall presently find) in the Place he appointed, and the Body of his first Lady *Philippa* (Daughter and Coheir of <sup>2</sup> *John Helion* of *Bumsted-Helion* in *Essex*, Son of *John* by *Alice* Daughter of *Robert Swinborn* and *Johan* Daughter of Sir *John Bottetourt* of *Otes Belchamp*) was probably removed thither, who dying in or about 1 H. VII, our Knight married *Lora* the Relect of *John* Lord *Montjoy*, whose Son the Lord *William* (Knight also of this Order) did by his Will dated 26 H. VIII, order a Tombe for his Mother, who (as 'tis therein worded) lyeth interred with Sir *Thomas Montgomery* her late Husband at the *New Abbey* (that is at *Tower-Hill*) and our Knight had the Wardship of this Lord *William*. This Lady *Lora* was the Daughter of Sir *Edward Barkley* of *Beverston*, and was one of the Executors of the Will of her Husband the Lord *Montjoy*, made in 1 H. VII, and surviving our Knight was re-married to <sup>b</sup> *Thomas* Earl of *Ormond*, who in his <sup>c</sup> Will made in 1515, mentions Dame *Lore* late his Wife, by whom this Earl had a Daughter that lies buried at *Sheffield* in *Yorkshire*.

The Plate of our Knight remained in this Stall, when a View was taken of all the Arms in this Chappel by <sup>d</sup> *Nich. Dethick Bleumantle* in 1563, since which Time it hath been torn off with some Violence, as appears from the Marks left in the Board. His Effigies was also in a Window of *Falkbourn Church*, when <sup>e</sup> Mr. *Symonds* made a Survey of *Essex*, but that is also taken away, He was there pictured in his Tabart of Arms as exhibited in the Frontispiece of these Memoirs. *Wall Garter King of Arms* blasons them. " *Gules a Chevron Ermyns between*  
" *three fleurs de lys Gold*, His Crest was the like *fleur de lis*.

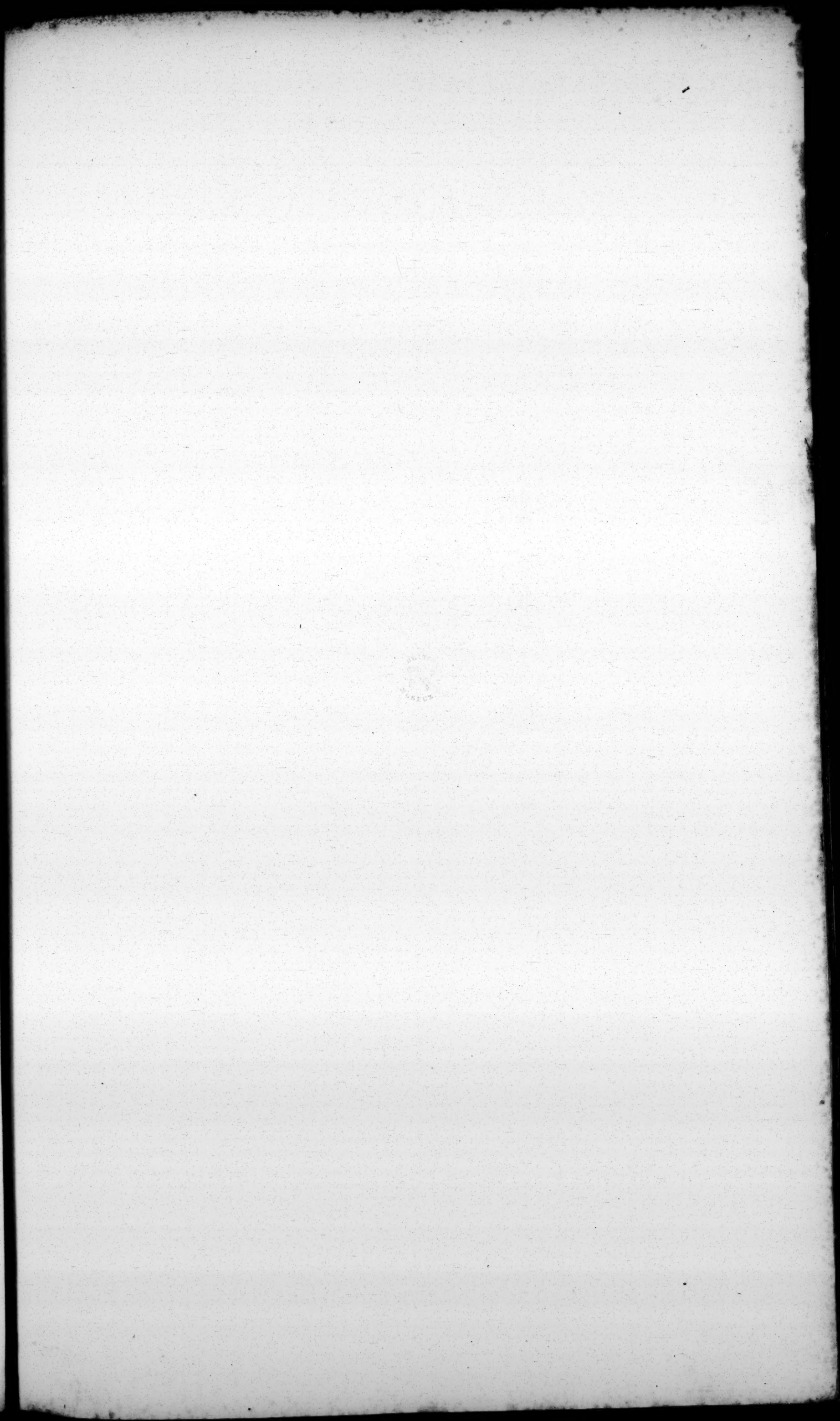
<sup>2</sup> Esch. 23 H. 6. post mortem *Johanna Swinborn*  
& Esch. 28 H. 6. post mortem *Johannis Helion*.  
<sup>a</sup> Dug. 1 Vol. Baron. p. 521.  
<sup>b</sup> See Newcourt Registr. Paroch. vol. 2. p. 494.

<sup>c</sup> Lib. Holder in Prærog.  
<sup>d</sup> Q. r. penes me.  
<sup>e</sup> In Off. Armor.



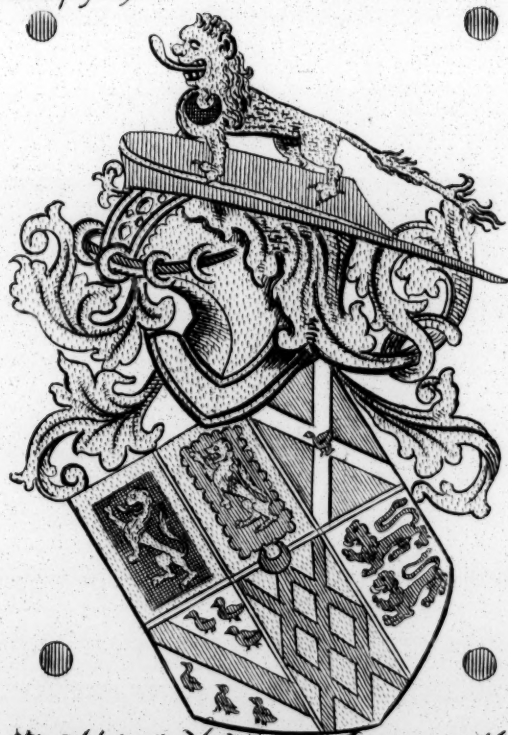






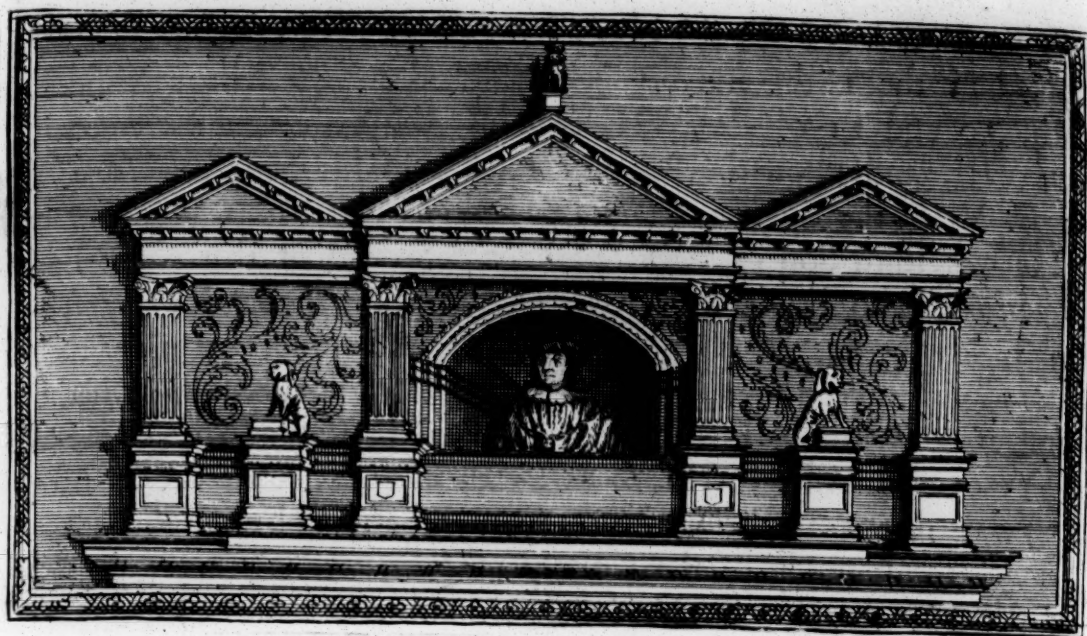


next to page 209



Guillaume + La Roche + Viscomte de  
Le fils du Roi de Le Roy de France





# MEMOIRS

Of the LIFE of

## Sir Gilbert Talbot.



I R Gilbert, Numb. 246, was a Person of that Eminency and Merit, that in the IVth Year of *Hen. VII* he had the Majority by one Vote in the *Scrutiny* beyond Sir *John Savage*, who however had the Honour of being then declared elected; but Amends were afterwards made him, during the Time that the *Black-book* is silent, which contains no Entries from the VIIIth to the XIVth Year, the Original Commission for his <sup>a</sup> Installation, bearing date under the Seal of the *Garter* on the 20th of *December*, in the XIth of *Hen. VII* being still extant, wherein the Day of

<sup>a</sup> Penes Comitum Salopie.  
 Henry by the grace of god king of England and of France, Lord of Ireland and sovereign of the noble Order of our garter, To our Right trusty and right wel-  
 beloved Cousen Therle of Shrovesbury, To our Right trusty and entierly beloved Uncle the viscount Welles, and to our Right trusty and welbeloved Counsellour the lord Daubenay our Chambrelain, and the lord Broke Sward



of his Election is not mentioned, being only said therein to succeed Sir Thomas Montgomery.

This *Black-book* remembers only his Presence in the 14th, his Absence excused in the 18th, and his being abroad in the King's Business in 19th, 20 and 21 of *Hen. VII*, that his Absence is again excused in 8 *Hen. VIII*, and upon the Scrutiny to fill up his Stall made 24 *Apr.* 10 *H. VIII*, the Epithet of *Strenuus Eques* is given him after his Death.

He was third Son of *John Talbot* the <sup>b</sup> Second of that name Earl of *Shrewsbury*, who being slain at the Battle at *Northampton* 10 *July*, 38 *H. VI*, leaving his eldest <sup>c</sup> Son only 13 Years old, we may thereby make some Conjecture of his Age; for his eldest Brother (if he had been living at the Time of this Installation) would have been no more than 48 Years old; After his Brother's Death in 1473 Our *Knight* had on 28 *July* <sup>d</sup> that Year, being then only an Esquire and one of the King's Carvers, the Custody of the County of *Weisford* in *Ireland* during the Minority of the *Earl* his Nephew, without paying any Rent for the same, and on the 8th *Oct.* <sup>e</sup> following was made Steward of the Towns and Lordships of *Blakemere* and *Whitchurch* for the same Term. He early addicted himself to the Wars serving in the Quality of an Esquire <sup>f</sup> in *France* with 3 Men of Arms and 30 Archers, in 14 *Ed. IV*. By his Descent from this most Antient and well allyed Family, He was nearly related to many of the greatest Nobility, who having Experience of his Knowledge and Abilities granted him beneficial Offices, as the Stewardships of their Lands were then esteemed: On the 11 *Apr.* 15 *E. IV*, *John* Duke of *Norfolk* and <sup>g</sup> *Elizabeth* his Wife (who was Aunt to our Knight) in consideration of the good and laudable Services, and of the Council of their beloved Kinsman *Gilbert Talbot* Esquire, granted him the Mannor and Lordship of *Stodesden* for his Life without any Rent. In 1479 <sup>h</sup> Indulgences were given him, and *Elizabeth* his Lady and their Relations by an Officer under the Pope, and in 20 *E. IV*, *Ralph* Lord *Graystock* and <sup>i</sup> *Wemme* constituted him Steward of all his Lordships Mannors and Lands in *Wemme* and *Hinderstock* during his Life, with such Fees and Profits as the *Earl of Shrewsbury* formerly had by vertue of that Employment.

Under *Rich. III*, He was Sheriff of <sup>k</sup> *Shropshire*, which probably was

Stuard of our housholde knights and Compaignons of the said Ordre greting Whereas by the deceas of Sir Thomas Montgomery late oon of the Compaignons of the said Ordre a Stad in the queir and a voue in the Chapiltre is now voide, and oure trusty and welbeloued knight for our body Sir Gilbert Talbot by us and the Chapiltre of the forsaid ordre is accordingly to the statuts therof named and elected to be oon of the knights and Compaignons of the garter, We therfor wol and desire you and by these presents committe unto you oure ful power and auctorite too doo the said Sir Gilbert at such tyme as ye think convenient, to be enstalled by you into the said ordre in suche maner and fourme as the statuts of the same doo require, Charging and straitely comaunding all suche othre knights and officers of the said Ordre as shalbe then and there present with you and all othres to whom it belongeth, that in and for the due execution of

the premisses they and every of theym be unto you obeying helping and assisting As the caas shal require, As they tendre the honor of us and of the said Ordre yoven undre oure seal of the garter at our Palais of Westm. the xxth Day of Decembre The xith yere of oure Reigne.

<sup>b</sup> Lelands. Itinerary, vol. 7. p. 18. Edit Hearne. Monast. Angl. vol. 2. p. 939. Camden's Britann. p. 518, &c.

<sup>c</sup> Esc. 38 H. 6. n. 36.

<sup>d</sup> Pat. 13 E. 4.

<sup>e</sup> Ibid.

<sup>f</sup> Rym. vol. xi. p. 846.

<sup>g</sup> } Ex Origin. penes Com. Salop.

<sup>i</sup> }

<sup>k</sup> Fuller's Worthies, p. 16.



not given him as any Mark of Favour, since our <sup>1</sup> Historians are very particular in their relating the great Assistances he brought to *Hen.* Earl of *Richmond*, and that He himself was the Leader of the Right Wing of the Army at *Bosworth* Field, where He had the hard Fortune of being forely wounded. <sup>m</sup> Upon the Accession of *Hen.* VII to the Throne, He was soon made a Privy <sup>n</sup> Counsellour, when his eldest Brother would have been only about 38 Years of Age if he had been living, and further to Reward his Valour that King grants to him being then Knight for the King's Body and his Heirs Males, the Mannor of <sup>o</sup> *Grafton* with that of *Upton Warren* and several Lands and Tenements in *Hambury*, *Bromesgrove*, *Kingis Norton*, *Kedermyster*, *Kenneswyk* and *Eftbury*, forfeited by the Attainder of *Humfry Stafford* by Act of Par. made on 7 Nov. and He had an Assignment of 100 l. towards his <sup>p</sup> Charges of being Sheriff of *Salop* for the Year then ensuing. He was made a Banneret before the <sup>q</sup> Battle of *Newark*, or as a MS. <sup>r</sup> saith at *Stoke* Battle, which was xi<sup>th</sup> June 1489.

In 5 H. VII, He was in the <sup>s</sup> Expedition into *Flanders* made on behalf of *Maximilian* the Emperor, and which is remarkable, there is an Indenture preserved dated 7 March, 6 Hen. VII, whereby *John Pounce* Citizen and Grocer of *London*, is placed an Apprentice to Sir *Gilbert Talbot* Citizen and <sup>t</sup> Mercer of *London*, and Merchant of the Staple at *Calis*, so that this City hath had the Honour of having two of their Freemen very famous in their Ages for Bravery, Companions of the *Garter* if Sir *Robert Knolles* was ever elected into this Order. In the 7th Year He was by <sup>u</sup> Indenture reteined to serve in the Wars beyond Sea, and in the 8th the Queen <sup>x</sup> grants him the Stewardship of the Lordship of *Feckenham*, and the Mastership of the Game with the Custody of that <sup>y</sup> Park.

In the 10 or 11 Year He was elected into this Order, being as Mr. <sup>z</sup> *Camden* justly characterizes him a Person of Bravery in War and of extraordinary Wisdom, and as it will appear a Friend to the Churchmen, and Religious according to the Modes of that Age. The Bishop of *Worcester* in 13 H. VII, granted him a <sup>a</sup> Bullery of Salt in *Wyche* for his Life, and constituted him Steward of *Alnechurch* and Supervisor of his Warren, Parke and Deere there, He had granted him <sup>b</sup> the Guardianship of *Giles* Son and Heir of Sir *William Alyngton*, and was sent in 14 H. VII, with <sup>c</sup> *Bere* the <sup>d</sup> learned Abbot of *Glastenbury* to congratulate Pope *Pius* III, upon his Election to the Papal Chair, who had been as the Term was, Protector of this Realm. In 14 H. VII, *William Hare-*

<sup>l</sup> Hall's Cron. f. 30. Hollingsh. f. 755. n. 50.  
<sup>m</sup> Leland's Itin. vol. 7. p. 8.  
<sup>n</sup> Polyd. Virg. p. 567.  
<sup>o</sup> Pat. 1 H. 7. p. 4. 18 Julij.  
<sup>p</sup> Priv. Sig. 13 Nov. 1 H. 7.  
<sup>q</sup> Seld. Tit. of Hon. p. 656.  
<sup>r</sup> Claudius C. 3. in Bibl. Cotton.  
<sup>s</sup> Pol. Virg. p. 584. n. 30.  
<sup>t</sup> Ex Orig. penes Com. Salop. There are no Books of Freedoms in the City of London from the 15 Year of Edw. 3. till the x of Hen. 7. but we find that He was admitted Free of the worshipful Company of Mer-

cers in 1489.  
<sup>u</sup> Indent. in Off. Pell.  
<sup>x</sup> } Ex Orig.  
<sup>y</sup> }  
<sup>z</sup> Britann. p. 518.  
<sup>a</sup> Ex Orig.  
<sup>b</sup> E. Registro Episc. Norwic. 13 H. 7. pro Rectoria de Rushmeere.  
<sup>c</sup> Polyd. Virg. p. 615. n. 20. Leland. Itin. vol. 7. p. 8.  
<sup>d</sup> Epistol. Erasmi.



well <sup>e</sup> of *Wooten* in *Warwick* makes him Steward of his Lordship of *Browesley*, and the Prior of *Worcester* <sup>f</sup> for his good and laudable Counsel, and Aid gives him an Annuity of 5 Marks, and in 17 H. VII, the Prior of the *Dominicans* in <sup>g</sup> *Cambridge* makes a Present of the Suffrages and Prayers of that Order to the most puissant Sir *Gilbert Talbot* Knight of the *Garter* [*Equiti Garterij fortissimo*] the Lady *Ethelrede* his Wife and their Family in Life and Death. In the 18th Year the Prior and <sup>b</sup> Convent of *Worcester* grant him 4 Marks Yearly for his Life, to defend and protect the Revenues of their Church from all Invaders. On the 1st of *January* 19 H. VII, the Provincial Prior of the *Dominicans* <sup>i</sup> in *England, Wales* and *Ireland*, directs his Letter *Strenuissimo militi*, wherein the great Devotion and Favours of Sir *Gilbert* to this Order are extolled, and the Prayers of the Brethren are promised for him during his Life and after his Death, as also for his Brothers and Sisters. On 24 Feb. in that Year He was <sup>k</sup> commissioned with *Richard* Lord Abbot of *Glastenbury* and *Sherburn* Dean of *Pauls* to present the *Garter* to the Duke of *Urbini*. On 20 May the Bishop of <sup>l</sup> *Worcester* grants him the Stewardship of all his Lands in the Counties of *Worcester* and *Norwick*, and the King makes him <sup>m</sup> High Steward of the Honour of *Tutbury* with the Fee of 100 Marks under the Seal of the Dutchy, and the Bishop of *Worcester* in the <sup>n</sup> next Year for the laudable Services that Sir *Gilbert* had done him and the Church, and for the good Peace and Tranquillity of all his Tenants, and the Preservation of all his Castles and Lands, confirms the above-mentioned Stewardship to him for Life.

In 20 H. VII, Pope *Julius* directs a <sup>o</sup> Bull to the Bishop and Dean of *Worcester* on behalf of Sir *Gilbert*, to prosecute such as detained any Goods belonging to him or his late Lady *Ethelrede*, and in Case of Non-restitution within a Term prefixed, to pronounce them Excommunicate.

In this Reign He was Deputy of <sup>p</sup> *Calis*, where He purchased 132 Acres and Half, and 18 Rods of Lands from <sup>q</sup> *John Tremaine* and *Katherine* his Wife, and other Lands from <sup>r</sup> *Thomas Robertson*. And in 23 H. VII, was one of the Commissioners for the Marriage to be had between *Charles* Archduke of *Austria* and *Mary* the King's Daughter.

The Services which this King expected from him to oppose the two Impostors are specified in the <sup>s</sup> Instruments placed in the Margin; being under the Signet, and containing some Particularities of History.

He continued in his Office at *Calis* under *Hen. VIII*, which was confirmed

<sup>e</sup> }  
<sup>f</sup> } Ex Orig.  
<sup>g</sup> }  
<sup>b</sup> }

<sup>k</sup> Ex Origin. penes Com. Salop. *Hollingsh.* p. 794, 795. P. 19. penes me, p. 115.

<sup>l</sup> Ex Orig.

<sup>m</sup> In Ducat. *Lancast.*

<sup>n</sup> } Ex Orig.

<sup>p</sup> He is so stiled in several Instruments.

<sup>q</sup> } Ex Orig.

<sup>r</sup> *Rym.* vol. 13. p. 172.

<sup>s</sup> By the KING.

H. R.

**T** Rusty and welbelovyd, We grete you wele, and not forgetting the grete malice, that the Lady Margarete of Burgongne bereth continually against us, as she shewed lately in sending hider of a fained boye, surmising him to have been the son of the Duc of Clarence,



firm'd to him during the King's " Pleasure, on 26 Sept. in his first Year, and held a Muster \* there, having some Months before obtained a general Pardon by several Additions, which express the different Places of his Residence and several Employments, some not y already mentioned. In Sept. the Queen grants him the Stewardship of ~ the Lordship of Firkenham, and on 27 Oct. he was empower'd to receive the Money from the <sup>a</sup> French King according to the Articles of the Peace. On 10 January 4 H. VIII Sir Charles Brandon constitutes him <sup>b</sup> Steward of his Mannors of Chaddefley, Corbert and Ribbesford for Life, and on 4 Febr. the King grants him and his Heirs Males the Mannor of <sup>c</sup> Dyrfeild Abbot in Berks, and in the 5th He and Sir Richard Wingfeild and the longest liver of them (who became afterwards his Successor in this Stall) were made Deputies of <sup>d</sup> Calis. In the 6th Year He had a special <sup>e</sup> Pardon, as also a general <sup>f</sup> one in 8 H. VIII, to himself and to Sir Gilbert his

rence, and caused him to be accompanied with Therl of Lincoln, the Lord Lovel, and with a grete multitude of Irishmen and of Almans, whoes ende, blessed be god, was as ye knowe wele; and forseing now the perseverance of the same her malice by thuntrue contriving esponses of anoother fayned lad, called Perkyn Warbek, born at Tournay in picardy, which at his surst comynge into Irland, called himself the bastard son of king Rich. after that the son of the said Duc of Clarence, and nowe the secund son of our fadre king Edward the IIIth, whom god assoile, wherethorowh she entendeith by promising unto the Flemyns, and othr of Tharcheduks obeissance, to whom she labourith daily to take her way, and by her promes to certain aliens Capitains of estrange nacions, to have ducbies, Counties, baronies, and othr land, within this our Roym, to induce them thereby to lande her. to the destruccoon and disenheritance of the noble men and othr our Subgiets, inhabitants of the same and finally to the subversion of this or Royme, in cas she may atteigne to her malicious propos, that god defende: We therfor, and to thintent, that we may be alwey perveied, and in a redynes to resiste her malice, write unto you at this tyme, and wol and desire you, that preparring on horsbak defensibly arrayed fourscore personnes, wherof we desire you to as many speser with their custrelles, and dim. lanes wele horsled, as ye can furniche. And the remanent to be archers, and billes, ye bee thoroughly appointed and redy to come upon a day warnyng, for to do us service of were in this caas. And ye shall have for every horsman wele and defensibly arrayed, that is to say, for a spere and his custrel xiid, a dim. lance ix, and an archer or bille on horsbak viiid by the day, from the tyme of your comyng out unto the tyme of your retourne to your home again; And in thus doing ye shal deserve suche thanks of us for your loving and true acquitall in that behalf, as shalbe to your weale and honour for tyme to come. We praye you that herein ye wol make suche diligence, as that ye be redy with your said nombre to come unto us upon any our sodein warnyng Teven undre our signet at oure Castel of Kenelworth the xx day of July. To oure trusty and welbelovyd knight and Counsellor Sir Gilbert Talbot.

By the KING.

H. R.

**T**rusty and welbelovyd, We grete you wele. Signifying unto you that whereas Perkyn Warbek, and his Wif were lately sette ful porely to the see by the king of Scotts, and asire that landed within our land of Irland in the wylde Irishterne, where he had be taken by our Cousins Therls of Kildare and of Desmond, if he

and his said Wif had not secretly stollen away, the same Perkyn being soe upon the see is commin to land in our Countie of Cornewaille with 7 small shippes and a Breton Prinse, Whereupon we have sent our right trusty Counsellour the Lord Daubency our Chamberlaine by land toward thoes parties to — our Subgiets for the subduyng of him, and our right trusty Counsellour the Lord Broke Steward of our household by water, with our Armee on the see now late returned to take the said Perkyn, if he retourne agayn to the see, And we shal in our owne persone, if the case soo requir, goo so accompanied thiderward with our Lords Mercy without delay, As we shal subdue the said Perkyn and all othre that wil take his part, if any such be, And therfore we heritly pray you to addresse you unto us with sixscore talle men on horsbak, defensibly arrayed, and no moo, without any long delay, And to mete with us at our Maneor of Wodestok the 24 day of this present moneth, and at your comyng unto us, we shal soe content you for your and thair conduyt money, and also wages as of reason ye shal holde you pleased, And that ye faile not thereof, as our espetial trust is in you Teven undre our signet at our said Manoir the xiith day of Septembre.

u Pat. 1 H. 8. p. 1.

x Rym. vol. 13. p. 265.

y 20 June, Pardon to Sir Gilbert Talbot Knight Deputy of Calais and the Marches thereof, otherwise called G. T. late Deputy to King Hen. VII, of the Town of Calais and the Marches there, otherwise called G. T. of Grafton in the County of Worcester Knight, otherwise called G. T. of Horthead in the County of Cambridge Knight, otherwise called G. T. of Balhim in the County of Cambridge Knight, otherwise called G. T. late one of the Justices of the Peace to King Hen. VII, for the Counties of Worcester and Salop, otherwise G. T. Knight late Steward of the Honour of Turbury, otherwise called G. T. Knight late Steward to King Hen. VII, of the Town of Feckenham and the Forest thereon, otherwise called G. T. late Chamberlain to Hen. VII of Northwales, otherwise called G. T. Knight Executor to Richard late Lord Beauchamp, otherwise called G. T. late of London Gent. or by any other name, &c.

z } Ex Orig.

c Pat. 4 H. 8. p. 2. 4 Feb.

d Priv. Sig. 5 H. 8. 6 Aug. & Pat. 5 H. 8. p. 1.

e 23 May, 6 H. 8.

f 12 Feb. 8 H. 8.

Son



Son with several Additions, and in the following Year he dyed on <sup>g</sup> the 19 Sept. and was buried at *Whitechurch* in *Shropshire*.

It appears from a Passage in the Will of his Son Sir *Gilbert* proved in <sup>b</sup> *January* 1543, that his Father made a Will, wherein he bequeathed to the Use of the Chappel of St. *John* the Evangelist of *Whytechurch* in *Shropshire* a Cloth of Gold, a Robe of blew Velvet used for the honourable Order of the *Garter* with other Things, but the Collector hath not yet had the Fortune to find it.

Our *Knight* was buried certainly at *Whitechurch*, where a Chantry was <sup>i</sup> erected for him, and the Agreements between him and the Mason dated 6 *January* 6 H. VIII, are still <sup>k</sup> extant, as likewise the Draught of a <sup>l</sup> Licence granted to his Son for setting up a perpetual Chantry with many Priviledges in St. *John's* Chappel, wherein it is recited that his Father Sir *Gilbert* was buried there; So that the Tradition that He was buried under a large Marble <sup>m</sup> Stone in the Porch of that Church, where 'tis said there was an Inscription in Brass on the Right Hand relating to him, and where his Coat of Arms carved in Wood within the *Garter* stood, seems to be a Mistake.

*Leland* in his <sup>n</sup> Itinerary tells us, that the Earl of *Shrobbesbyri*, of whom *Aeneas Sylvius* Bishop of *Rome* maketh right famous mention was slain in *France*, &c. "*John* Earl of *Shrewsbury* had among his Brethren "one caullid *Gilbert Talbot*, after a *Knight of Fame*, the which buried the "Erle his Grauntfathers Bones brought out of *France* at *Whitechurche*, in "a fair chapelle, where He is also buried himself".

He first married *Elizabeth* Daughter of the Lord *Greystock*, Widow of the Lord *Scrope* of *Massam*, to whom by the Name of *Eliz.* Lady *Scroope* Wife of *Gilbert Talbot* late Wife of *Tho.* Lord *Scroope* her <sup>o</sup> Feoffees convey divers Lands in *York*, *Suffolk*, *Essex*, *Lincoln*, *Kent* and *Richmundshire*, and a Letter of Attorney was made by *Gilbert Talbot* then an Esquire and *Eliz.* Lady *Scroope* of *Massam* his Wife, dated 20 Dec. 1 R. III, to receive Seisin of some of these Mannors; By this Lady He had two Sons, Sir *Gilbert* and Sir *Humfrey*, which latter dyed without Issue in the Holy Land, and after her Death *Henry* the VIIth writes to *Eliz.* Lady *Scroope*, who was the Widow of *Thomas* Lord *Scrope* of *Upsal*, recommending his Servant Sir *Gilbert Talbot* to her for an Husband, with whom our Knight had many Suits about her Dower, but this Recommendation not taking Effect, he married with *Ethelrede* or *Audrey* Daughter of Sir *John Cotton* of *Cambridge*, the Relict of *Richard Gardiner* sometime Lord Mayor of *London*, by whom he had Issue Sir *John Talbot* of *Albryghton*, to whose Great Grandson after the Extinction of all the prior Branches of the Male Line of *John Talbot* the first Earl of *Shrewsbury*, this Earldom being in Tail Male descended in 15 Jac. I.

<sup>g</sup> Vinc. against Brooke, p. 465.

<sup>b</sup> Lib. Spert. in Prerog.

<sup>i</sup> *Leland's Itinerary*, vol. 7. p. 8.

<sup>k</sup> } Ex Orig.

<sup>m</sup> Dagd. Visitation of Shropshire in Off. Arm. p. 17.

<sup>n</sup> Vol. 4. p. 40.

<sup>o</sup> E. divers. Orig. penes Com. Salop.



This *John Talbot* of *Albryghton*, by his first Lady the Daughter and Heir of *Troutbeck*, was direct Ancestor to the present Earl of *Shrewsbury*, and to *Talbot* of *Longford*, and by his second Wife *Elizabeth Wrotesley* was Father of *John Talbot* seated at *Saltwarp*, who by *Olive* Daughter and Coheir of Sir *Henry Sherington*, was Father of *Sherington Talbot*, who had several Children by his first Wife, as also by his second, and among the latter a younger Son *William*, who by *Mary*, Daughter of *Thomas Doughty* of *Whittington*, was Father of the Right Reverend *William* now Lord Bishop of *Durham*, lately Bishop of *Salisbury*, and Chancellour of this most noble Order.

At *Grafton*, the Seat of this our Knight, is preserved his Busto, exhibited in the Frontispiece of this Narrative: On the Right Pedestral are his Arms impaled with those of his first Lady, and on the Left impaled with those of his second; over his Head are his Arms surrounded with a Garter. There are several other Quarterings in them, besides those on the Plate in *Windsor*. The latter are 1. Azure, a Lion Rampant within a Border Or, the Bearing ascribed to *Belisimo* or *Mongomery*, the Antient Earls of *Shrewsbury*, and it is presumed that *John Talbot* the first of that Name, created Earl of this Place, assumed these as local feudal Arms, and not by Right of any Descent or Alliance. Though this Method be somewhat particular, yet it was not singular; for during the Life-time of that Earl, the Earldom of *Richmond* was granted to the renowned *John Duke of Bedford*, "*Cum Armis integris Comitatus, Honori, & Dominio de Richmond annexis*", and thence probably he bore per Pale on his Labels, the *Ermyns*, the Arms of the Dukes of *Bretagne*, who had been long time honoured with this Earldom. Thus afterwards *Woodvile Earl Rivers* sometimes bore the *Griffin*, which is supposed to be the Arms of *Rivers Earl of Devon*, upon an Inescutcheon, And the Family of *Stanley* Azure a Lion Rampant Argent the Arms of *Montault*, by reason of the Possession of that Castle, &c. for there are several Instances where the Arms and Badges of the Ancient Possessors of Earldoms and Honours became in Tract of Time to be esteemed annexed to these Honours.

The next Quarter, Gules, a Lion Rampant within a Border engrailed Or, is the Coat of *Rhys ap Griffith* Prince of *South Wales*, whose Daughter was Married to *Gilbert Talbot*<sup>p</sup> before the 29th of *Henry III*. The Descendants from this Lady after she became an Heiress discontinued the bearing of their Paternal Arms of *Talbot*, Bendé Argent and Gules, and according to the prevailing Custom in former Ages used those of this distinguished Heiress.

3. Gules, on a Saltoir Argent a Martlet of the first, *Nevil of Raby*.
  4. Argent, a Bend between six Martlets Gules, *Furnival*.
  5. Or, a Frett Gules, *Verdun*.
  6. Argent, two Lionceaux passant guardant Gules, *Strange of Blackmeere*.
- The Right to which several Arms of *Nevil*, *Furnival*, *Verdun* and *Strange*, may be easily found in *Dugdale's Baronage* under these Titles.

<sup>p</sup> Vinc. MS. in Off. Arm. n. 431. The Copy of a Deed dated that Year.



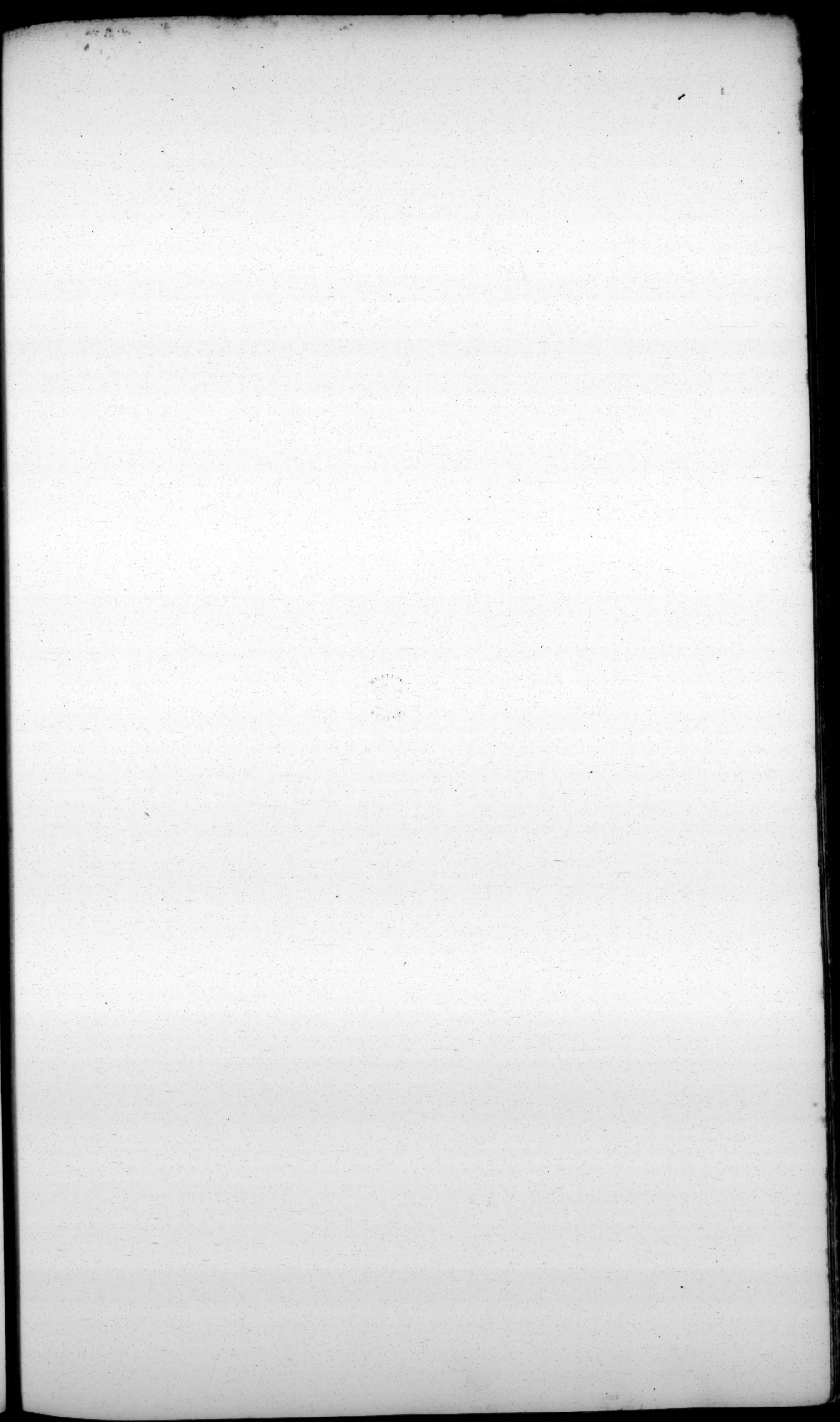
In the Center of the Whole is a Crescent Gules, the Difference of a second Brother, for *James* the Second Brother dyed without Issue, being slain in the same Battle with his Father: The Crest is a Lion, Or, with a Crescent Sable, for the filial distinction, upon a Chapeau or Ducal Hat Gules, lined Ermin; and these are the first Arms that remain in this Stall in such Position as Seals make their Impressions, and not inclining towards the Altar.

---

MEMOIRS

---



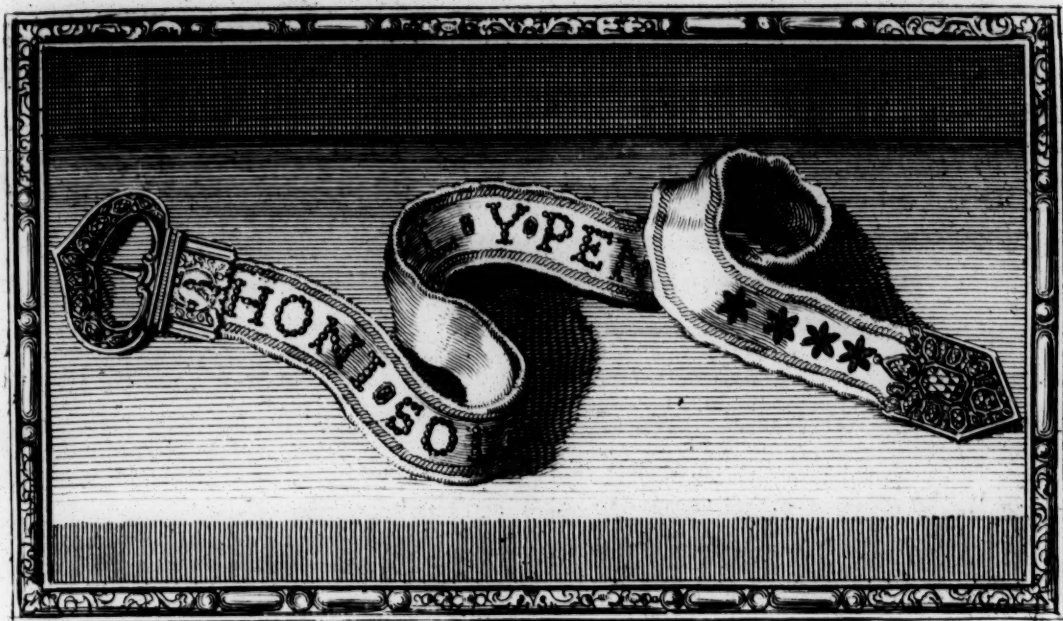




next to page 219







# MEMOIRS

Of the LIFE of

## Sir Richard Wingfeild.



O Sir Gilbert Talbot succeeded Sir *William Sandys*, who being removed to the 11th Stall of this Side (where an Account will be given of him) <sup>a</sup> Sir *Richard Wingfeild* was here Seated, having the Honour of being elected in the same Scrutiny with *Ferdinand* afterwards Emperor, on 23 April, and Installed 11 May, 14 Hen. VIII.

*Wingfeild* is a Manor with an half ruined Castle in *Suffolk*, which as Mr. <sup>b</sup> *Camden* writes, gave both a Name and Seat to a large Family in those Parts, famous for their Knighthood and Antient Nobility; but though in all probability the Name might be originally taken from thence, yet till some farther Discoveries be made, it may be doubted whether it was the Seat of this

<sup>a</sup> Blackbook, p. 214.

<sup>b</sup> Britan. in Suffolk.



Family till the Time of Sir *John*, since the <sup>c</sup> Patronage and Advowson of that Place was in Sir *Richard Brews* in 1302, 1323. and 1329. Mr. *Camden* <sup>d</sup> in another place adds, That this Family had brought forth an Abundance of renowned Knights: At length it produced two celebrated Companions of this Order under the Reign of *Hen. VIII*, this our Sir *Richard*, and Sir *Anthony* his Nephew, Son to his eldest Brother.

In this Collection the Editor owns that he hath amassed together several very trivial Passages, in conformity to the Liberty taken by Genealogists, relating to Persons who lived in Ages distant from them, that he hath inserted the Purchases and Sales of *Estates*, and other Particularities that belong to Persons in most Spheres of Life, for which he hath no other Apology to make, save that for want of a Sufficiency of Materials there is no Room left to shew any Judgement in the Choice of them. However it hath been a Curiosity allowed to those of his Profession to search for the minutest Circumstances relating to the Personages of Great Men.

This Pedigree will be carried no farther back than is absolutely necessary to explain the Arms quarter'd on the Plate in this Stall, for the upper Part of it will be reserved to be inserted in the Narrative of the Life of Sir *Anthony* the direct Heir Male of the Chief Branch.

This Antient Family came early to be divided into several Eminent Branches, which from Time to Time afforded <sup>e</sup> Knights of the Shire and Sheriffs of the County of *Suffolk*, many of whom were likewise Famous in Feats of War.

It is remarked that the <sup>f</sup> Cottices are said to be added to the Old Coat, as a Brizure of a younger Branch, and we shall find this Family was several Centuries since separated into three Male Lines of considerable Distinction.

Sir *John*, towards the End of the Reign of *Edw. II*, or in the <sup>g</sup> first Year of *Edw. III*, left three Sons. The Eldest was Sir *John*, who presented to the Church of *Saxmundham* in 1348 and 1349, of whom there will be more said hereafter. He left only one Daughter and Heiress married to *Michael de la Pole*, the first of that Name, Earl of *Suffolk*, to whom she brought an ample Estate, <sup>h</sup> the Mannour of *Netherhall* in *Saxlingham*, and the Advowson of that Church of *Saxlingham Thorp*, 2 Messuages, 400 Acres of Land, 10 Acres of Meadow, 20 Acres of Pasture, and 42 s. Rent in *Saxlyngbam*, *Floleman*, *Neuton*, *Brokedysband*, *Herleston* in *Norfolk*, with the Mannors of *Wyngefeild*, *Stradbrook*, *Silham*, *Fresyngfeld* and *Saxmundham*, the Mannor of *Wyngefeild* called *Old-hall*, the Advowsons of the Churches of *Stradbrook* and *Saxmundham*, the Chantry of *Wingefeild*, and 700 Acres of Land, 20 Acres of Meadow, 100 Acres of Pasture, 20 Acres of Wood, 100 Acres of Marsh, and 100 s. Rent

<sup>c</sup> The Reverend and Learned Dr. Tanner, Chancellor of Norwich, kindly imparted the Notices touching this Family, taken from the Registers of that Church, to whom the Editor is indebted for several Assurances, whose freedom in communicating, (to give it a great Character) is as extensive as his Skill in Antiquity.

<sup>d</sup> In Northampton.

<sup>e</sup> Rol. Parl. 50 Ed. 3. n. 34. Cl. 50 E. 3. p. 2. m. 23. Cl. 2 R. 2. m. 22. Cl. 5 R. 2. m. 5. 22d. Cl. 6 R. 2. p. 1. m. 17 and 13d. Cl. 7 R. 2.

m. 1 d. Cl. 8 R. 2. m. 27 d. Cl. 10 R. 2. m. 16 d. Cl. 13 R. 2. p. 2. m. 17 d. Cl. 14 R. 2. m. 30 d. &c.

<sup>f</sup> D. 25. penes me p. 205.

<sup>g</sup> Feoda pertinent. ad Dom. Reginam ratione Ducatus Lancastrie primo Edw. 3. Hæredes Johannis Dom. de Wingefilde tenent unum feodum in Ikerne.

<sup>h</sup> Claus. 13 R. 2. p. 1. m. 2.



in *Wingfeild, Silham, &c.* It will soon appear that the Lady of this Sir *John* was named *Alianor*, and that after his Death she presented to *Saxlingham Thorp*, in Sept. 1361, and died in 49 *Edw. III*, who, according to the Pedigrees, was Daughter of Sir *Gilbert de Glanville*, though there is an Appearance she was the Daughter of the above-mentioned Sir *Richard de Brews*, who not only presented to several Churches immediately before the Advowsons thereof came into this Family of *Wingfeild*, but this same Lady, as we shall soon see, being Coexecutrix of her Husband's Will, order'd in the Foundation of the College at *Wingfeild*, Prayers for the Soul of Sir *Richard de Brews*, there named immediately after the Father and Mother of her deceased Husband, and the Name of *Glanvill* is not mentioned in that Bead-roll: And her younger Son *Thomas* in his Will, devises Silver Plates with the Arms of *Brews*. To the Master-ship of this College, Sir *Michael de la Pole* presented in Oct. 1379, in Right of his Lady sole Daughter and Heiress of Sir *John Wingfeild*.

*Richard* was the next Brother to this Sir *John Wingfeild*, and he was beyond Sea with <sup>k</sup> *Edward II* in 1325, and seated himself at *Dynington*, to which he presented in 1342, and was Father of Sir *William*, who by the Name of *William*, Son of *Richard de Wingfeild*, presented to *Dynington* in 1349, and again in 1355 he was a <sup>l</sup> Member of Parliament 50 *Edw. III*, and Knight of the Shire for <sup>m</sup> *Suffolk* in 5, 6, 7, 10, 13 and 14 *Rich. II*. He received the Honour of Knighthood before 1371, before which Time he had given to the <sup>n</sup> Earl of *Oxford* a Coat of Mail; and with other Feoffees presented to *Watlesfeild* in 1392, 1393, and to *Cretyng St. Peters* 1397. This Person lies buried under a fair Stone in the Chancel at *Dynington*, which <sup>o</sup> Mr. *Wever* by mistake places at *Lethe- ringham*, whereon is the Pourtraicture of an armed Knight with a Lion at his Feet, and this Inscription, "*Hic jacet tumulatus Dom. Will. Wingfeild miles Dominus istius villa, & Patronus istius Ecclesie, qui obiit 1 Junii 1398, cujus anime, &c.*". There were two Coats of Arms, but the Brasses are reaved off, so that we know not the Coat Arms of his Ladies, for by his Will <sup>p</sup> dated 17 July 1397, he mentions his then Wife *Margaret*; and we shall soon be instructed that by his former Lady *Joan* he was Father of another *William*, who died without Issue, leaving a Widow; who by the Name of *Catherine Wingfeild alias Wolfe*, made her <sup>q</sup> Will at *Cotton* on 19 May 1418, and therein gave 10 *l.* to the Parishioners of *Cotton* to keep an Anniversary for her Husband on the Feast of *St. Bartholomew*, and 20 *l.* to be kept in a Chest to be lent to her Tenants upon Pledges without Interest, every Borrower to say five Pater-nosters, five Ave's, and Credo for the Souls of the said *Katherine*, late the Wife of *William Wingfeild* Esquire, the Son of Sir *William Wingfeild* and *Joan* his Wife; she lived some Years afterwards; and presented to *Denington* on

<sup>i</sup> Esch. 49. E. 3. m. 54.

<sup>k</sup> Rymer, Vol. 4. p. 161.

<sup>l</sup> Rot. Parl. 50 E. 3. n. 34.

<sup>m</sup> See the Dorse of the close Rolls in these Years for the Expenses.

<sup>n</sup> Dugd. 1 Vol. Bar. p. 193.

<sup>o</sup> Fun. Mon. p. 755, 759.

<sup>p</sup> Lib. Haydon in Reg. Norwic.

<sup>q</sup> In Reg. Norwic.



2 August 1421, in the Chancel of which Church this Lady lies buried by her Husband, with this broken Inscription, *Hic jacet Willelmus Wingfeild Armiger, & Katherina uxor ejus.*

This Pedigree of the eldest Branch, and of this second, seated at Denington, is proved by an Inquisition taken after the Death of this William 6 Hen. V, when the Jury find that he died without Issue, and that his next Heir was William de la Pole Earl of Suffolk, Son of Michael, Son of Michael de la Pole late Earl of Suffolk, and of Catherine Daughter and Heiress of Sir John Wingfeild Knight, Brother of Richard, Father of Sir William, Father of William Wingfeild then deceased, by which several Lands descended to the De la Poles, and among others this Denington, where that Family founded an Hospital.

The third Brother was Sir Thomas, direct Lineal Ancestor to our Knight, who by his Marriage with Margaret the Daughter and Heiress of William Bovile, Widow of William Carbonel, became seized of Letheringham before the 38th of Edw. III. in which Church He and his Lady are interr'd, and several of their Descendants, this Family continuing there till after the Restoration. The Memory of this Match is preserved in the second Quarter on the Plate now at Windsor, and by it this Family became Patrons of the Priory of Treve founded by John Bovile. He presented to the Free-Chapel of St. Andrew in Stradbroke in 1349, 1352, 1355, and to Cretyng St. Peter 1358, 1361, and being Coexecutor of the Will of his eldest Brother Sir John with Dame Alianor his Relict, represented to the Bishop of the Diocese, That it being the Testator's Intention to re-build and endow the Parish Church of Wingfeild, and to found a College therein, but dying of the Plague, *Sed eum invadens mors pestifera*, they his Executors had new built it larger than ordinary, with the Steeple and all proper Offices, therefore pray'd that the Bishop would be pleased to make it Collegiate for three Secular Priests to be afterwards made up to nine, with three Choristers, and one Priest or Secular Canon to be added upon any Increase of their Revenues to the Value of ten Marks yearly, which the Bishop by Consent of his Chapter allowed, and made Statutes for the Government thereof, dated June 6. 1362, which College was founded to the Honour of the Holy Trinity, St. John Baptist, and St. Andrew (to which later the former Parish Church was dedicated) and these Priests were to pray for the Peace and Unity of the Church, the Tranquillity of the King and Kingdom, for the good Estate of the King, Prince Edward, Dame Alianor Wingfeild, Sir Michael de la Pole, and Catherine his Wife, Thomas Wingfeild, William Bishop of Winchester, Robert Earl of Suffolk, and Dame Margaret his Wife, and for the Souls of Sir John de Wingfeld deceased, his Father and Mother, of Sir Richard de Brews, and of John de Verley and of Joan his Wife. The Will of this Thomas bears Date at Letheringham, on 17 July 1378.

r Wever ibid.

f See Vinc. against Brook, p. 501.

i Hollingb. p. 1256. Leland's Itin. vol. 2. p. 6.

u See above, p. 169. Thus feoda militum quondam Humfridi de Bohun. Com. Hereford, 47 E. 3.

Septem feoda militum in maneriis de Letheringham, Thorp, &c. quæ Thomas Wingfeld tenet, & fuerunt quondam Willimi de Bovil.

x Mon. Angl. vol. 1. p. 545.

y Lib. Haydon in Reg. Norwic.



and was proved on 27 Sept. following: In it he orders himself to be buried in the Choir of that Priory, and that 46 l. 13 s. 4 d. should be expended on his Funeral, and devises several Sums for the Repairs of that Priory and Parish-Church, with his Silver Cross, and a Vestment of the Arms of the Earl of *Warren*, gives Legacies to the Abbey of *Sypton*, to the Nunns of *Campes*, to the Abbey of *Leyston*, to the Friars Carmelites of *Ipswich*, to each Convent of begging Friars in the Counties of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk* to pray for his Soul; bequeathes to the Servants of his Household, and to his poor Tenants in the Villages of *Stradbroke*, *Wyngfeild*, *Fresyngfeld*, *Westhale*, *Laxfeild*, *Badyngham*, *Eston*, *Letheringham* and *Thorp*; devises to *John* his Son 12 of his best Silver Dishes, and 12 Silver Saucers, and 12 Silver Spoons, and 6 Silver Pieces with the Coat Arms of *Brews*, and his Golden Cross, upon Condition that it should not be sold or alienated, but remain to his Heirs for ever; and gives him all his Wardrobe with Clothes and Armure, and other Legacies, to Sir *William Wyngfeld*, Sir *William Hoo*, *John Wyngfeld*, *Margaret Wyngfeld*, and *Elleanor Wyngfeld*, to each of them a Silver Cup gilt worth four Pounds, and to *Peter Brown* Clerk, a Silver Cup, with Cover [pommel] with his Arms, and that his Goods be divided into four Parts, one to remain to *John Wyngfeld* his Wife and Sons, another to the Priory of *Letheringham*, the third to his Confessor, to be distributed as he should think most expedient, and the other Part to be divided among his poor Tenants, constituting Sir *William Wynfeld*, *Peter Brown* Rector of *Stradbroke*, *Margaret Hardel* his Daughter [Wife of Sir *Thomas Hardell*] and others, his Executors.

*John* his Son and Heir is said in some Pedigrees to have served the *Black Prince* in the Wars in *France*, and to have wrote his Acts very learnedly; but it is much more probable that it was his Uncle Sir *John*; for these Letters, which gives an Account of the Progresses and Victories in *Gascoigne*;<sup>z</sup> bear Date in 1355, the Writer whereof was doubtless the Person who went over to *France* under the Earl of *Salisbury*<sup>a</sup> in 1338, and being a Knight attended there again upon the *Black Prince* in 1356; however 'tis certain that this *John* Son of *Thomas*, had the Honour of Knighthood when he presented to the Free-Chapel in *Stradbroke* in 1389; he married *Margaret* (named above in his Father's Will) the Daughter of Sir *Hugh Hasting* of *Elsyng*, who surviving him remarried with Sir *John Russel* Knight, and by her Will,<sup>c</sup> dated in *August* 1387, orders herself to be buried in the Choir of *Letheringham*, near the Grave of *John Wyngfeld* her first Husband; their Effigies were formerly in the Glass Windows of *Lackefelde* Church.

Their Son was Sir *Robert*, who married *Elizabeth* Daughter of Sir *John Russel*, which was doubtless occasioned by the second Marriage of his Mother, and they both are buried at *Letheringham*, and not as <sup>d</sup> *Wever*

<sup>z</sup> *Hollingb.* p. 348. Avesbury ex Edit. Hearne, &c.

<sup>a</sup> *Rymer*, vol. 5. p. 63.

<sup>b</sup> *Ibid.* p. 849.

<sup>c</sup> Lib. Haydon in Reg. Norw.

<sup>d</sup> Fun. Mon. 755. See p. 755.



faith in *Denington*, which Sir *Robert* dyed on the third of *May* 1409, leaving *Robert*, *William*, *Ann* and *Margaret* a Nun.

This *Robert* was Knighted<sup>e</sup> by *Hen. VI.* on *Whitsunday*, in his fourth Year at *Hereford*, and increased the antient Inheritance by his Marriage with *Elizabeth* the Daughter and Coheir of Sir *Robert Goufil*, by *Elizabeth* the Eldest Daughter of *Richard* Earl of *Arundell*; by *Alice* Sister and Heirefs of *John* Earl *Warren*, and at length one of the Heirs to her Brother *Thomas* Earl of *Arundel*, and for this Reason the Arms of *Goufil*, quartering those of *Warren*, are inserted on the Plate at *Windsor*. This great Lady had been first<sup>f</sup> married to *William* Son of the Earl of *Salisbury*, then to <sup>g</sup> *Thomas Mowbray* Duke of *Norfolk*, afterwards to this <sup>gg</sup> Sir *Robert Goufill*, and surviving him to <sup>h</sup> Sir *Gerard Uflete*. This Sir *Robert*, stiled of *Letheringham*, attended on the Duke of *Norfolk* in<sup>i</sup> an Embassy, and was made<sup>k</sup> Steward of his Lands for the good Services he had done to the noble Prince his Father and to himself, and is said to die in 1431, being, if *Wever* may be credited, buried at *Letheringham*: He left several Sons, who raised different Families of great Estimation.

His second Son was Sir *Robert*, who whilst Esquire in 3 *Edw. IV.* had License to perform Feats of Arms with <sup>kk</sup> *Lewis de Brueil* of *France*. He presented to *Dallingho* in 1432, and to *Trimly St. Martin* in 1437, and had a plentiful Estate by the Marriage of *Anne* Daughter and Heirefs of Sir *Robert Harling*, in whose Right He presented to the Church of *Quidenham* 1466, *Barnham-Grove* 1467, *Bicherston* 1468, 1472, *Lound* 1475, 1479, *East-Harling* 1474, for which Place he being then Comptroller of the King's<sup>l</sup> Household, obtain'd a Fair and Market in *Apr.* 15 *Edw. IV.* and having joined in presenting his Nephew *Henry* to *Baconsthorp*, on 30 *July* 1480, dyed before 26 *Apr.* 1482, when his Relict, with others, presented to *Lound*. By a Record inserted hereafter, it will be found he was dead before 23 *Nov.* 1481, being, at the Time of his Death, Comptroller of the Household to *Edw. IV.* and was buried at *Rusheforth*, as 'tis mention'd in the Will of his Nephew Sir *Robert*. It will be pardonable to say something more of this great Lady, since she was first married to Sir *William Chamberlaine*, and thirdly, to *John* Lord *Scrope* of *Bolton*, both Knights of this Order. She was sole Daughter and Heirefs of <sup>m</sup> Sir *Robert Harling*, who<sup>n</sup> dyed at *Paris* in 13 *H. VI.* during the Wars, and being marry'd to Sir *William Chamberlaine*, that King, in his 25th Year, in Consideration of his<sup>o</sup> laudable Services in the Wars of *France* and *Normandy*, and of the great Summ he had paid for his Ransom, when he was taken Prisoner by the Enemies, gave Liberty to

<sup>e</sup> *Hall's Chron.* p. 18.

<sup>f</sup> *Pat.* 2. *R.* 2. p. 1. m. 9.

<sup>g</sup> *Mon. Anglic.* vol. 2. p. 194.

<sup>gg</sup> *Claus.* 2 *H.* 4. p. 2.

<sup>h</sup> *Esch.* 1 *R.* 3. n. 43. *Suffex.*

<sup>i</sup> *Fran.* 17 *H.* 6. m. 9.

<sup>k</sup> *Claus.* 22 *H.* 6. m. 17.

<sup>kk</sup> *Fran.* 3 *Ed.* 4. m. 9.

<sup>l</sup> *Pat.* de dicto Anno.

<sup>m</sup> See *Lelandi Collect. Edit. Hearn.* vol. 1.

p. 41. *Parker's Sceletos Cantabrig.*

<sup>n</sup> See *Registr. Walt. Lyhert Episc. Norw.* p. 185. and the Inscription on his Monument.

Saxo Marmoreo tumulatur in hoc Poliandro  
Herling Robertus miles, vir nobilis armis,  
Laus sua Francigenis florebat cognita multis,  
Tandem Parisiis vi succubuit mutilatus,  
C. quater & Mille xxxv. cadit ille  
Gregorii festo, Septembris quoq; die nono.

<sup>o</sup> *Registr. Lyhert, ibid.*



erect a perpetual Chantery in the Parish Church of *East-Harling*, after whose Death she made her <sup>p</sup> Will on 10 Febr. 1477, which she took Care to get enrolled in Chancery, wherein by the Name of *Anne Wyff* of *Sir Robert Wyngesfield* Knight, Daughter and Heyre of *Sir Robert Harlyng* Knyght, and of *Jane* his Wyff Daughter and Heire to *John Gonville* Esq; she recites, "That I have no heyre of myn body begotten, ne any other heyre nygh of myn kyn as within three Degrees of marriage that I know," and therefore makes several Devises to her then Husband, and farther according to the Custom of that Age, provides for Prayers for the Souls of "her right worshipful fyrst husband *Sir William Chamberlayn* Knyght, of her Grandame Dame *Cecile Harlyng*, and of her Grandfather *Sir Robert Mortymer* Knyght," but surviving this Husband, she was in Oct. 1492, married to *John* Lord *Scroop* of *Bolton*, for which a particular <sup>9</sup> Licence was granted, which may be here inserted. "Die sexto mensis Octobris Anno Dom. 1492, apud Thorp emanarunt literæ Commissionis prædicti reverendi Patris [Goldwell Episcopi Norwicensis] Curato Ecclesiæ parochialis de East-Harling ad solemnizandum matrimonium in secunda editione bannorum, bannis prius unâ vice rite & legitime editis, inter nobiles personas Joannem Dominum Scrope de Bolton & Dominam Annam Wyngfeld de East-Harlyng prædictâ in capellâ infra dictum manerium situatâ absq; præjudicio Ecclesiæ parochialis; super quibus in eisdem literis idem reverendus Pater non modo cum dicto Curato, verum etiam cum dictis Joanne & Anna, & omnibus aliis hujusmodi matrimonio interessentibus, quantum de jure potuit, misericorditer in Domino dispensavit". She out-lived likewise this Husband, who in his Will made at *East-Harling* on 3 July 1494, gave this his Wife all his Goods South of *Trent*, and she herself makes another <sup>s</sup> Will at *East-Harling*, dated 28 August 1498, proved on 8th of November following; wherein by the Stile of *Ann Scrop Lady Scrop*, she orders herself to be buried there in the Tomb with her late Husband *Sir William Chamberleyn*, and devises Legacies to the following Persons, which seem to be related to her by her Marriage with *Sir Robert Wyngfeld*, to wit, "To her neice dame *Anne Wyngfeld*, to iché of her newewes her Sister Dame *Elizabeths* chyldren, to her neveu *Sir Edward*, her neveu *Sir John*, to her brother *William Wyngfeld*, and to her neveu *Robert Wyngfeld*, which she had brought up of a Childe". And in this Church between the Chancel and a little Chapel there is an Arch chequered Monument, whereon were several Brass Plates with Inscriptions and Arms now torn away, as the Collector is informed, over which, towards the Chapel, still remains the Coat of *Chamberlain* within a Garter, and on Part of the Tomb

Anna fuit dicta Christi mulier benedicta  
Mundi—— fuit Harling nata Roberti  
—— Mortimer de stripe benigna  
C. quater. & mille——

<sup>p</sup> Claus. 18 E. 4. m. 5 d.  
<sup>9</sup> Registr. Goldwell, p. 161. a.

<sup>r</sup> Dugd. 1 Vol. Bar. p. 657.  
<sup>s</sup> Lib. Horne in Cur. Præiog.  
M m m

And



And in the Windows are the Effigies of this Lady, which is superscribed, *Pater de celis miserere nobis*; of Sir Robert Wingefeld superscribed, *Fili redemptor mundi Deus miserere nobis*; of Sir William Chamberlain superscribed, *Spiritus Sancte miserere nobis*, and there was another Effigies over which the Supercription remains, *Sancta Trinitas unus Deus miserere nobis*, which doubtless was of this Lord Scrope; these Pourtraictures are all in their Tabarts or Coat Armors, that of Wingefeld being cottised and quartered with *Bovill*. Hence it appears that *Leland* was mistaken when he writes, That as he remembers, one of the *Wingfeldes* had Issue male by his Lady, unless such Child died in its Infancy.

The other younger Sons were *Richard* and Sir *Thomas*, both mention'd to be dead in the <sup>u</sup> Will of *William Wyngfeld* Esquire the fifth Son, dated last of *Febr.* 1 *Hen.* 8. and proved on 29 *Apr.* 1510, who orders himself to be buried near by them and under the same Stone within the Priory of *Letheringham*, and devises Legacies to *Edmund* Son of his Nephew Sir *John Wyngfeld*, and to the other Sons of the said Sir *John*; to his Nephews *Humfry*, and *Robert* one of the Executors of the Lady *Scrope*, and Sir *John Wyngfeld* Clerk, his Neice Dame *Anne Wyngfeld* Widow, late Wife of his dead Nephew Sir *John*; and devises Lands for the Maintenance of one Canon of the Order of St. *Austin* for fourscore Years in the Priory of *Letheringham*, to which he likewise bequeathes two Silver Basons with an Ewer of Silver, with a plain Cup of Silver and Cover, and gives divers Sums to the Prior of *Dodnashe*, to every Place of the Friars in *Ipswich*, to the Prior of *Wodbridge*, to the Priorefs of *Camsey*, to the Prior of *Butley*, to the Abbots of *Layston* and *Sibton*, to the Priorefs of *Flexton*, to the Priors of *Blyburg*, *Wangford*, and *Rambour*; and to every of the Places of the Friars in *Norwich*, for observing of a Trental to be sung in every one of these Places for his Soul and the Souls of his Friends. *Thomas*, named in this Will, had a Privy-Seal dated last *Nov.* 7 *Edw.* IV. directed to the Chief Justice, to cease all Proceedings against him upon an Indictment for giving Liveries to thirty Persons, and he married *Philippa* one of the Daughters of the Lord *Tiptoft*, and Coheir to her Brother the Earl of *Worcester*, who was the Relict of *Thomas* Lord *Roos*, and obtained a Grant on 23 *January*, in the 8th Year, of several Lands belonging to that Lord, forfeited upon his Attainder by Parliament in the first Year, which *Thomas* died before the 12th Year, when the same <sup>x</sup> Lands were confirmed to her for her Life, and the Reversion thereof then given to *Anthony* Earl *Rivers*, and this *William* the Testator seems to be the <sup>y</sup> Person who bore Arms in *France* in 1475. The sixth Son was Sir *Henry*, seated at *Orford*, who made his <sup>z</sup> Will 21 *Feb.* 1483, ordering himself to be buried in the *Freres* of *Orford* by *Alice* his first Wife, and gives Legacies to his Sons *Thomas* and *Robert*, as also to his Nephew *Robert*, Dame *Elizabeth Wyngfeld* his Sister, Dame *Anneys* Sir *John Wyngfyld*'s Wife, his Neice *Margaret John Wyngfyldys* Wife: And

<sup>1</sup> Collect. ut supra.

<sup>u</sup> Lib. Spiltymbre in Reg. Norw. f. 257.

<sup>x</sup> See Pat. 19 E. 4. m. 16. per Inspe.

<sup>y</sup> Rymer, Vol. 11. p. 844.

<sup>z</sup> Lib. Vox in Cur. Prærog.



his second Lady was the Daughter of Sir Robert Rooks, and lies buried in *Westthorp Chancel*, with an Inscription, *Orate pro anima Elizabethæ Wingfield uxoris Henrici Wingfield militis*. His eldest Son *Thomas* Captain of the Castle of *Deale* dying without Issue, his Brother *Robert*, afterwards a Knight, had in 35 H. VIII, a <sup>a</sup> Grant of the Manors of *Upton* and *Ailesworth* in *Northamptonshire*, and other Lands thereabouts, and at *Upton*, as Mr. *Cambden* relates, *Robert Wingfeild* had a fine House with lovely Walks; a younger Branch of this Line was seated at *Tickencote* in *Rutland*.

But to return to the Principal Stemm of this Family, *John* the eldest Son seated at *Letheringham*, had a Licence to erect a <sup>b</sup> Chantery in *Stradbroke* in 15 H. VI, and on 21 Oct. 1455, being an Esq; presented to the Chapell of the Manor of *Skelton* in *Stradbrook*, and after he had been knighted to *Easton* in 1470, to *Dallingho* in 1480, and in the same Year presented his Son *Henry* to *Baconsthorp*: He was Sheriff <sup>c</sup> of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk* in 33 Hen. VI; and again, in 11 Ed. IV, being then one of the King's Privy-Council, for which Attendance he had granted to him by a <sup>d</sup> Privy-Seal Forty Pounds yearly, as had been accustomed to other Knights in such Cases. The *Pelle Rolles* inform us that heretofore Annuities were constantly paid to Privy-Counsellors according to their Degrees of Titles: He had received the Honour of Knighthood on 26 June 1 E. IV. and in the 17th Year he was one of the Commissioners appointed to treat with the *French* Ambassadors at <sup>e</sup> *Amiens*, and in all probability the broken Inscription in *Letheringham* Church, whose Fragments are in *Wever*, relates to his Death on 10 May 1481, for we find *Elizabeth* his Relict presenting to the Church of *Waldringfield* 1483, 1485, 1496, to *Dallingho* in 1488, to *Easton* in 1498. She was the Daughter of Sir *John Fitz-Lewis* by *Anne* Daughter of *John* Earl of *Sarum*, and in her <sup>f</sup> Will made 14 July 1497, proved on 22 Dec. 1500, mentions her Sons by this Sir *John*, who are therein ranged in this Order according to the Legacies given them, which probably is not according to their Seniorities in Birth, Sir *John*, *Walter*, *Lewis*, *Richard*, *Edmund*, *Humfry*, *John* the younger, Sir *Edward*, Sir *William*, *Henry* a Clerk, *Edward*, *Robert*, *Lewis*: These were then living, though their may possibly be a Repetition of some of their Names; but she had another Son *Thomas*, said in the Pedigrees to be killed at the Battle of *Bosworth*. In this Will she orders herself to be buried near her Husband's Tomb in *Letheringham*.

*Richard* here named was our Knight of the Garter, but some short Narratives may be given of the other Brothers.

Sir *John* the Eldest is within the Compass of the present Enquiry, for he by *Anne* Daughter of the Lord *Audley*, was Father of Sir *Anthony* a Companion also of this Order, whose Plate remains in the twelfth Stall of the Sovereign's Side, and of two other Sons and four Daughters. He

<sup>a</sup> Pat. de dicto Anno.

<sup>b</sup> Privat. Sigill.

<sup>c</sup> Priv. Sig. 23 Nov. granting him 1601. to bear the Expences thereof.

<sup>d</sup> Priv. Sigil. 7 Oct. 11 Ed. IV.

<sup>e</sup> Rymer, Vol. 12. p. 45.

<sup>f</sup> Lib. Cage. in Reg. Norwic.

while



while an Esquire was in the <sup>ff</sup> *French Wars* 14 *Ed.* IV, and being one of the Esquires for the King's Body, & had in 21 *Ed.* IV, the Stewardship of several Lands held of the Honour of *Richmond* in *Norfolk*, void by the Death of Sir *Robert Wingfeild*, and in the next Year he had 1601. paid him by the Crown to bear <sup>b</sup> the Expences of his Shrievalty of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*, and by the Title of <sup>i</sup> *Armiger pro corpore Regis*, presented to *Creting St. Peter* 1481, 1482, 1488, to *Wilby* 1497, and was Commanded to receive <sup>k</sup> the Honour of Knighthood [of the *Bath*] at the design'd Coronation of *Edward V.* He was Sheriff of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk* in 1 *R.* III, and was one of the Privy-Council to *Henry VII.*, was again Sheriff in the Eight Year, and one of the Commissioners to <sup>l</sup> muster the Archers of *Suffolk*, who would go to the Relief of *Bretagne*, and died before 10 *Nov.* 1509, when his Lady presented to *Creting St. Peter*. There have been divers Descendants from him, whereof Sir *Henry Wingfeild* Baronet sold *Letheringham* in the Reign of King *William*; Sir *Edward* is by <sup>m</sup> *Brooke* said to have married *Anne* Daughter of *Richard* Earl *Rivers*, the Widow of *George Grey* Earl of *Kent*, wherein he contradicts himself under the Title of *Kent*, saying, That this Earl married another Wife after her Death. <sup>n</sup> *Dugdale* marries this Lady to Sir *Anthony Wingfeild.* *H.* VII, in his <sup>o</sup> eighth Year, granted to this Sir *Edward* an Annuity of twenty Pounds during his Life.

*Henry* was Rector of *Rendlesham* and *Baconsthorp*, who in his <sup>p</sup> Will dated 5 *August*, and proved 22 *Dec.* 1500, orders a Tomb to be made for himself in the Churchyard of *Letheringham*, upon which the Palmes may be laid in Passion Week, and therein mentions *Anthony* and *Elizabeth* the Son and Daughter of his Brother Sir *John*, and his Brothers Sir *Edward* and *Humfry*, his Sister *Anne*, and his Brothers in Law *Echingham* and *Brews*.

The fourth Son was Sir *John*, to whom *H.* VII, in his second Year, <sup>q</sup> granted an Annuity of forty Pounds for Life, who by *Margaret Durward* left a Family seated at *Dunham* in *Norfolk*, of which the younger Branch was settled at *Winch*. His youngest Son *William* an *Austin* Canon, at the Surrender of the Monastery of *Westacre* in that County, was afterwards instituted to the Rectory of *Burnham Thorp*, where he was deprived in the Beginning of Queen *Mary's* Reign for being <sup>r</sup> married, and was forced to be divorced; he made <sup>s</sup> his Will 16 *Nov.* 1555, proved 24 *Feb.* 1556, wherein he gives his two Sons *Thomas* and *Anthony* 120 *l.* to each, and that *Margaret Petingale* [who had probably been his Wife] should have such Portion of his Goods as should appear reasonable to his Executor. The chief Branch of this Line ended in Heirs Females, and from it descended a younger Line seated at *Speckworth*.

<sup>ff</sup> *Rym.* Vol. 11. p. 846.

<sup>g</sup> *Pat.* 16 *Febr.*

<sup>h</sup> *Priv. Sigill.* 8 *Nov.*

<sup>i</sup> *Registr.* *Norw.*

<sup>k</sup> *Rym.* vol. 12. p. 185.

<sup>l</sup> *Rym.* vol. 11. 356.

<sup>m</sup> *Catal.* of *Nob.*

<sup>n</sup> Vol. 2. *Baron.* p. 231.

<sup>o</sup> 2 *Pat.* 8 *H.* VII. 20 *Febr.*

<sup>p</sup> *Lib. Cag.* in *Reg.* *Norw.*

<sup>q</sup> *Pat.* 2 *H.* VII. p. 2.

<sup>r</sup> *Collect.* *Dom.* *Tanner.*

<sup>s</sup> *Ibid.*



William the fifth Son was Sewer to Hen. <sup>i</sup> VII, and died 4 Dec. 1491, according to the Pedigree he married Joan Daughter of Thomas Waldegrave, and left Posterity.

Thomas the sixth Son was sometime Captain of Deal-Castle, and slain at Bosworth on the Part of Henry VII.

The seventh Sir Robert, was bred up by his Aunt the Lady Scrop, became Knight of the Holy <sup>u</sup> Sepulchre, High Marshal of Calis, afterwards Lieutenant of that Castel, then Deputy of that Town and the Marches, and then Mayor of that Place; he was one of the Privy-Council to Hen. VIII. He was in 3 H. VIII sent <sup>x</sup> Ambassador with the Bishop of Winchester to the Council of Lateran, and in the next <sup>y</sup> Year to the Emperor, when he procured out of the Archives of the City of Constance, and caused to be Printed at Lovain, *Disceptatio super dignitate & magnitudine Regnorum Britannici & Gallici habita ab utriusq; Oratoribus & Legatis in Concilio Constantensi*. He was Embassador to <sup>z</sup> Pope Leo. We may make some Computation of the Time of his Birth, since he was above 50 Years old in 11 H. VIII, when he was one of the <sup>a</sup> Maskers at Newhall, so was born in or before the 9th of Ed. VI. In 1523-4 he went into <sup>b</sup> France in the Army under the Command of the Duke of Suffolk. He styles himself in his Will made on 25 March 1538, and proved 12 Nov. 1539, Sir Robert Wingfeild <sup>c</sup> Knight Councellour of King Hen. VIII, and late Alderman of Calais, and remaining Burges of that Town, and therein orders himself to be buried in the North East of St. Nicholas Church in Calais, where he had edified a Place for his Sepulture, if he should fortune to decease in that Town or the Marches thereof, but if he should die in Norfolk within ten Miles of his College of Rushford, then to be buried in the Midst of a Chapel on the South Side in that College where the Body of his Uncle and Godfather Sir Robert Wingfeild Knight Comptroler of King Edward the Fourth's House lies, and that upon his Grave be laid a Marble Stone, and thereon graven a Cross of Jerusalem, and in case he should die in London, then to be buried in St. Peters in the Parish his House stands. He devises to his Wife the Lady Jane Clinton his Mansion Place at Bulloign-Gate, and Lands in Calais, and after her Decease to his Neice Frances Hallet and her Heirs Males, in default thereof to his Nephew John eldest Son of his Brother Lewis and his Heirs Males, and in default thereof to his Brother Richard and his Heirs Males, then to his Brother George and his Heirs Males, then to Robert third Son of his Nephew Sir Anthony Wingfeild and his Heirs Males, then to his Brother John Briswood in like manner, then to his Cozen and Godson Jchyngame and his Heirs, and for want thereof to his Brother John and his Heirs Males, and in default thereof to his Sister Eliz. Jchyngame his Goddaughter for ever. He gives the Patronage of the College of Rushford to his Nephew

<sup>i</sup> See Wever who mistakes the Year of his Death.

<sup>u</sup> Glov. inter MSS. Philp. in Off. Arm. n. 17.

p. 69.

<sup>x</sup> Rym. 14. p. 453.

<sup>y</sup> Ibid. p. 344.

<sup>z</sup> Ibid. p. 354.

<sup>a</sup> Hall f. 69. b.

<sup>b</sup> Ibid. f. 113.

<sup>c</sup> Dingley in Cur. Præ. qu. 33.



*John Wingfeld*, together with his Target of Steel and his light Harness, his Armysn Sword, and twelve Footmens Harness and as many Halberds; to his Nephew *Richard* his Brother his compleat Harness which was made at *Owsbroke* in *Almayn*, and his two Hand Swords, and to his Nephew *George* his Brother another Harness, and to his Brother *Sir Humphrey* his Gilt Goblet, and he died on <sup>d</sup> *Tuesday* 18 *March* 1338, 30 *H. VIII.*

The eighth was *Sir Walter*, and *Lewis* the ninth by the Daughter of *Mackwilliams* was the Ancestor of the Family settled in *Hampshire*, whereof *Sir Richard* was Governour of *Portsmouth*, and his Son *Sir Richard* Marshal of *Ireland* was created Viscount *Powerscourt* by King *James* the First,

*Edmund* the tenth was living in 1509, at the Time when his Brother *William* made his Will, and married *Margaret* the Relict of *John Astefield*, who in Right of her Dower presented to the Church of *Stow Langford* in 1506, 1515. He made his Will in 14 *Feb.* 1526, proved 17 *May* 1530, wherein he makes *Margaret* his Wife his Executor, and his Brother *Humfry* Supervisor.

*Humfry* was 12th Son, and one of the Executors of the Will of his Brother *William* in 1509, he was bred up in *Gray-Inn*, where he was Lent Reader in 8 *H. VIII.*, Sheriff of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk* 12 *H. VIII.*, and chose Speaker of the House of Commons 24 *Hen. VIII.* He was one of those appointed to hear Causes in the Absence of the Cardinal then Chancellour; being a Knight, the Mannours of *Overhal* and *Netherhal* in *Dedham* in *Essex*, Part of the Possessions of the Monastery of *Campsey*, and the Mannour of *Creping-Hall* in *Stutton* in *Suffolk*, late belonging to *Coln-Abbey*, were granted to him 29 *June* 29 *H. VIII.* He was seated at *Brantham* and from him that Branch and the *Wingfeilds* of *Winston* are descended. He made his <sup>f</sup> Will on 13 *March* 24 *Hen. VIII.*, which was not proved till 26 *Nov.* 1546, 38 *H. VIII.*, wherein he then devised his Mannours of *Overhal* and *Netherhal* in *Dedham*, and other Towns, to his Son *Robert* and the Heirs Males of him the Testator, and in default thereof to the King's Majesty his Heirs and Successors, according to Letters Patent to him made; bequeathes his Mannour of *Braham-Hall* to his said Son *Robert* and his Heirs lawfully begotten on *Bridget* his Wife, and in default thereof to his own right Heirs, as also his Mannour of *Bridge-Place* and Park in *Codenham*, and other Places in *Suffolk* and *Essex*, which he had purchased of his Daughter *Dorothy Adgore*, one of the Daughters and Heirs of *Gregory Adgore* Serjant of Law, then Wife of *William Callabut*, and for default of Issue, the Mannour of *Brigge* to descend to his Daughter *Anne* Wife of *Alexander Newton* and the Heirs of their Bodies, and in default thereof to *William Callibut* Son of *William* by *Dorothy* his Wife. A great deal more might be added touching the Persons herein named.

To come then to our Knight, who according to some Books was the Eleventh, others say the Thirteenth Son; *John Wingfeild*, *Robert*, and <sup>ff</sup> *Richard* his Brother were Commanders against the *Cor-*

<sup>d</sup> *Glov. ut supra.*  
<sup>e</sup> *Rymer* 14. p. 299.

| <sup>f</sup> *Allen in Cur. Præ. qu. 23.*  
<sup>ff</sup> *Polyd. Virg. p. 600.*



*nish* Rebels 12 *Hen.* VII. In 3 *Hen.* VIII. *Richard Wingfeild* had the <sup>g</sup> Office of Marshal of the Town and Marches of *Calis*; in the fourth Year being a Knight, was one of the <sup>b</sup> Embassadors to treat with the Pope and the Emperor, being then Knight for the King's Body, and one of the King's Council, and to him doubtless <sup>i</sup> *Erasmus* refers. This Marshallship of <sup>k</sup> *Calis* was 5 *H.* VIII. regrantd to him, and to Sir *Robert Wingfeld*, for the Life of the longest Liver of them, and in that Year our Knight being then <sup>l</sup> Marshal of the Army, was created a Banneret at the Siege of *Turney*, and was jointly with Sir *Gilbert Talbot* (who was his Predecessor in this Stall) constituted Deputy of *Calis*, and was <sup>m</sup> sent Embassador to *Charles* Prince of *Spain* into *Flanders*, and is named Deputy of *Calis* <sup>n</sup> in 6 *H.* VIII, in which Office he had a Pursuivant at Arms stiled *Toell-Volant*, a Title in all probability taken from the Wings in Lure Part of the Arms, and the Ancient Crest of the Family: And here by the way these Arms are doubtless of the Paronomastick Kind, alluding to the Surname, which the *French* stile *Speaking* Arms: A Method, notwithstanding the Obviousness and Coarseness in the Invention, in all probability as Antient as any other manner of bearing whatever.

In the Collector's Custody is an <sup>o</sup> Original Letter of the following Tenour, whose Direction or Supercription is lost. " My Lorde, I spake " to my Lorde of *Norfolke* for your man *Baker*, He saide He would " spekke to the King's Majestie in that, And I shewed him, that Sir *Richard Nanfant* had oon *Serishall*, and Sir *Richard Wingfelde* had oone " *Toel Vollant*, and the Lord *Barnes* oone *Barnes*, and the Lord *Lysle* one " *Lysle* Purcevaunts; and that that was nedefull, that your Lordeshipp " had oone for suche causes and besynes, as you have to doo, &c.

All these Persons were in their respective times Deputies of *Calis*, and we meet with some of these Officers of Arms mentioned in other Entries. *Serreshal* was present at the Funeral of <sup>p</sup> *Elizabeth* Queen to *Hen.* VII, who in the Obsequy Book in the Wardrobe is spelt *Suresant*. *Barnes* <sup>q</sup> Purservant receives a Share in the Fees in 23 *H.* VIII, and *Lisle* is remembered in <sup>r</sup> *Spelman*.

The jingling Complement made to <sup>s</sup> Sir *Anthony Wingfeld*, with a Device or Rebus of a Wing with the Letters *F. E. L. D.* quarterly, and over the Wing a Cross, to shew he was a Christian, and on it a red Rose, to intimate that he followed the Interest of the House of *Lancaster*, made a very poor sorry Design worthy of no Reward.

Our Knight was appointed with the <sup>t</sup> Duke of *Suffolk* to receive the Queen *Dowager* of *France*, and to settle her Dowry and conduct her into *England*. In 7 *H.* VIII, he had the Custody of the Lands of <sup>u</sup> *Tho.*

<sup>g</sup> Pat. 3 *H.* VIII. p. 1. 14 Nov.

<sup>b</sup> *Rym.* vol. 13. p. 344.

<sup>i</sup> Epist. f. 1546. 13 Dec. 1515. Tradideram Epistolam *Roberto Wimpfeido*, sed ille semper dehinc Curiam secutus est, locutus es tu forsitam cum fratre illius, qui & ipse aliquando apud *Cæsarem* Oratorem Regis sui egit.

<sup>k</sup> Pat. 5 *H.* VIII. p. 1. 6 Aug.

<sup>l</sup> G. 2. penes me p. 157.

<sup>m</sup> See above, p. 215. note d.

<sup>n</sup> *Rym.* vol. 13. p. 466.

<sup>o</sup> *H.* V. p. 167.

<sup>p</sup> J. XI. in off. Arm. p. 32.

<sup>q</sup> *P. VII.* Book off. Arm. p. 41.

<sup>r</sup> Gloss voce Heraldus.

<sup>s</sup> *Camd.* Rem. p. 166.

<sup>t</sup> *Stow.*

<sup>u</sup> Pat. 7 *H.* VIII. p. 5. 25 Oct.



*Brews* Esquire, who was his Nephew, and had Licence to import an <sup>x</sup> Hundred Hogsheads of Wine, and in the 10th divers <sup>y</sup> Mannours in *Suffolk* were granted to him in Reversion after *Elizabeth* Countess of *Oxford*; on 15 May, in 11th Year, had an <sup>z</sup> Annuity of 50*l.* payable by the Treasurer of the Chamber, as likewise another of 200*l.* by the Title of the King's trusty and right well-beloved Counsellour and Knight for his Body. He was one of the four sad and antient Knights as <sup>a</sup> *Stow* expresth it, who were made Gentlemen of the Bedchamber to the King in 1520, was one of Cardinal *Wolsey's* retinue into *Flanders* to meet the Emperor 1521.

Being Chancellour of the <sup>b</sup> Dutchy of *Lancaster*, and of the Bedchamber and Privy-Council, he was elected into this Order in the 14th Year having obtained some <sup>c</sup> Months before a Grant to himself and the Heirs Males of his Body of the Castle of *Kimbolton*, in the County of *Huntington*, with the Advowsons of several Abbies and Priories forfeited by the Duke of *Buckingham*.

In this Place he built new fair <sup>d</sup> Lodgings and Galleries upon the old Foundation, and in this same Year, with Sir *William Sandys* Knight of this Order, led the Rear of the <sup>e</sup> Army sent into *France*, and attended in 14 H. VIII upon the Emperor into *Spain* with the Lord Admiral, and in his Return from thence was present at the Burning of <sup>f</sup> *Morlaix*. In 15 H. VIII, had a Grant of the Mannours of <sup>g</sup> *Swynesshead* in *Huntington* and *Hardwyk* in *Bedford*, forfeited likewise by the Duke of *Buckingham*, and a Messuage in *St. Swithins* for 24 Years. He accompanied the Duke of *Suffolk* into *France*; the Register of the Order mentions only his Presence 23 Apr. 16 H. VIII. his Absence from the Feast held 8 May in that Year, and that his Hatchments were offered on 10 May 18 H. VIII.

He and *Cuthbert* Bishop of *London* were sent Embassadors into *Spain*, in which Employment he <sup>b</sup> died at *Toledo* on *St. Mary Magdalens* Day, being 22 July 17 H. VIII, at four of the Clock in the Afternoon, and was with great Solemnity buried in the Church of the Friars Observants of *St. John de Pois* by the Directions of *Navera* King of Arms of *Spain* and *Richmund* Herald, who was *Christopher Barker* afterwards *Garter* King of Arms and Knight of the *Bath*. In this Place none were buried unless by the special Command of the Emperor; at this Funeral the Banner of *St. George* was carried, and his Nephew *John Wingfeild* offered the Mass Penny, where if a Manuscript may be credited, a sumptuous Monument was erected for him. Upon his Appointment to that Employment, he on the fifth of April 16 Henry VIII made his <sup>i</sup> Will, and therein by the Title of Knight of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*, and

<sup>x</sup> *lb.* 10 Oct.

<sup>y</sup> Pat. 16 H. VIII. p. 2. 4 Martii.

<sup>z</sup> Bill. sign. 11 H. VIII. 2 July.

<sup>a</sup> P. 509.

<sup>b</sup> Vinc. MS. in off. Arm. n. 18. p. 181. *Wetzer*

fun. Mon. p. 334.

<sup>c</sup> Pat. 14 H. VIII. p. 2. Nov. 20. Pat. 25 H. VIII.

p. 1. Sept. 15.

<sup>d</sup> *Leland's Itin.* vol. 5. p. 2.

<sup>e</sup> *Hollingsh.* p. 875.

<sup>f</sup> *Hall.*

<sup>g</sup> Bill. sign. 15 H. VIII. Sept. 1.

<sup>h</sup> *J. XI.* in off. Arm. p. 77.

<sup>i</sup> Lib. Porthe in Cur. Prærog.



Chancellor of the Dutchy of *Lancaster*, mentions his Sons *Charles*, *Thomas*, *James*, and *Lawrence*, then all under Age, and his Daughters *Katherine*, *Cecill*, *Mary*, and *Elizabeth*; gives a Legacy to the Prior of *Letheringham* in *Suffolk*, where his Father, Mother, and other of his Ancestors were buried; orders Masses for the Soul of his singular good Lady Dame *Katherine* Dutcheſs of *Bedford* and *Buckingham* his late Wife, and devises ſeveral Things to his Wife Dame *Bridget* during the Lives of Sir *John Wiltſhire* and Dame *Margaret* his Wife, her Father and Mother, and names his Nephew *John Brewſe*, ending with this Clause, "All which things  
" notwithstanding, forasmuch as at the tyme of the making and ſealing  
" hereof, I am going as the King's Ambaſſadour into *Spayn* to th' Em-  
" perour there, leaving here behind this my preſent teſtament with my  
" moſt truſty Brother *Lewes Wyngfeld*, named herein oon of myn Exe-  
" cutors, yet my mind is to be ever at ſuch libertee, that I may here-  
" after chaunge the ſame at my pleaſure." We may make <sup>k</sup> ſome Gueſs at his Age, becauſe he was one of the Maskers at *Newhall* in 11 H. VIII, when he is ſaid to be above 50 Years old.

This his firſt Wife was the youngeſt Daughter of *Richard Widderville* Earl *Ryvers*, by *Jacquet* of *Luxemburgh* the Relict of the moſt renowned *John* Duke of *Bedford*, who after the Death of her Brothers was one of the Heireſſes of that Earl; ſhe had brought ſeveral Children to her firſt Husband *Henry Stafford* Duke of *Buckingham*, and was re-married to *Jasper* of *Hatfeild* Duke of *Bedford*, upon which Account the Titles of thoſe Dutchieſs are given to her in this Will, and by this Marriage of our Knight he became great Uncle to *Hen. VIII*, in whoſe Reign he was elected into this Order. His ſecond Lady was Dame *Bridget*, Widow of *Sr. Michael Harvey*, Daughter and ſole Heir of Sir *John Wiltſhire* ſome time Comptroller of *Calis*, who, in his Will <sup>l</sup> made in 1526, gives all his Lands after the Death of his Relict to his Daughter Dame *Bridget Wyngfelde* for Life, and to the Heirs Males begotten between Sir *Richard Wyngfelde* and the ſaid Dame *Bridget*, and by this Match <sup>m</sup> *Stone Caſtle* near *Gravesend* came into this Family. An <sup>n</sup> Inquiſition was taken on 12th *March* 17 H. VIII, wherein the Jury find that he died ſeized of the Manors of *Kimbolton*, *Swynneſhed*, and *Tilbrooke* in *Huntington*, that *Charles* his Son and next Heir was at his Father's Death of the Age of twelve Years, and that this Sir *Richard* died at *Tholedo* in *Spain* the 22d of *July* before the taking this Inquiſition. His Poſterity continued at *Kimbolton* till the Time that his great Grandſon's Grandſon ſold it. *Thomas* and *Lawrence* the younger Sons of our Knight left Poſterity, but his Son *James* Maſter of the Ordnance in *Ireland* died without Iſſue.

The Arms are quarterly; in the firſt and fourth the Paternal Coat Argent on a bend Gules, three pair of Wings in Lure of the firſt; in the ſecond *Bovil* Sable and Or, quarterly; and in the third quarterly *Gouſhill* Or and Gules barrulee of ſix Pieces a Canton Ermin, and *Warren Checquy* Or and Azure, and in the Center of the Whole for

<sup>k</sup> Hall. f. 69.

<sup>l</sup> Lib. Porthe in Cur. Prærog.

<sup>m</sup> Wev. Fun. Mon. p. 354.

<sup>n</sup> In the Chapell of the Rollers.

O O O

Difference



Difference the Sun or an Etoile with sixteen Rays, which may be allusive to the Course of his Birth. This is a beautiful and costly Plate, being inlaid with Gold, the Motto being in Letters of pure Gold, let into Enamel, some of which are now missing, and the whole is surrounded with an Oval Ornament of *Foliage* wrought with Wire Gold, having four Cordons placed at the Corners of the Plate interlaced with Tassels, which seem to be in the Form of those which fasten the Mantles of this Order.

The Seal of *Letheringham Priory*, which was in the Patronage of this Family, had the Impression of the Blessed Virgin, and under it the Arms of *Bovil* and *Wingfeild* quartered.

The Crest born by him is an Eagles Head *Or*, beaked *Gules*, between two *Wings* erected *Argt.* mantelled counterchanged on the Sides Azure lined *Or*, and *Gules* lined *Or*, the Crest of the eldest Branch is an high Bonnet between two *Wings* displayed.

---

MEMOIRS

---







next to page 234







# MEMOIRS

Of the LIFE of

## Sir Henry Guldeford.



**T**HIS Knight number'd 290, whose Surname is abbreviated in the Pronunciation to *Gulford*, and often spelt in that manner, was elected on 24 *Apr.* 18 *H. VIII* at *Greene-wich*, and installed on *St. George's Feast* following, which the *Black Book* places on the seventh of *May*; but as this Feast began on the *Vigil*, so there is no doubt but that he received this Honour on the *Eve* which was upon a *Saturday*, as 'tis placed in the Narrative of that <sup>a</sup> Ceremonial, which was the Practice in Cases of Instal-

lations, at which Time he settled on <sup>b</sup> *Garter King of Arms* an Annuity of Fourty Shillings.

He was, as we shall find, about 39 Years of Age at the Time of his Election, and was descended from a very antient Family, famous for

<sup>a</sup> H. 1. penes me p. 67.

<sup>b</sup> M. 7. in Off. Arm.

considerable



considerable Services to the Publick; one of his Ancestors is said to have been a great Benefactor to the Priory of <sup>c</sup> *Taning*, probably the Place is mistaken either for *Tanington* near *Canterbury*, or for *Tanbridge* in *Surry*: But the Pedigree shall not at present be carried farther back than to the Time of the Marriage of *William* with *Joan* the Daughter and Heir of *John Halden* of *Rolvenden* in *Kent*, whose Arms are quartered on this Plate by our Knight. This Lady brought large Possessions to this Family, which continued in her Descendants, who frequently resided at *Halden*, and at other times at *Hempsted*, which later Mannor being forfeited by an Attainder was granted to this *William Guilford* then Sheriff of this County in 11 R. II.

His Grandson Sir *John* made a considerable Figure in the King's Household, being Comptroller of it under E. IV, and was Father of Sir *Richard*, who under the Usurpation of Rich. III. espoused the Earl of *Richmond*, and in order to advance him to the Throne raised Forces, and began the <sup>d</sup> War in *Kent*, but upon the sudden Defeat of the Duke of *Bucks*, he was obliged to seek Refuge in *Bretagne*, and it is probable that the Father being supposed to favour the Son in this Enterprize, was therefore attainted by an <sup>e</sup> Act in Parliament made at that Time.

This Sir *John* married three Wives, the first dyed without Issue, the second was *Alice* Daughter of *Thomas Waller* of *Gromesbridge* Esq; by whom he had Issue Sir *Richard*, and the third Wife survived him, and with *Richard* his Son was constituted Executor of his <sup>f</sup> Will made 20 March 1492-3, and proved 25 August following, wherein he ordered himself to be buried at *Tenterden*, but possibly he countermanded that Direction, because he was buried at <sup>g</sup> *Canterbury* in the Body of that Cathedral.

*Richard* his Son and Heir came back from *Bretagne* with Hen. VII. and received the Honour of Knighthood upon the Landing at <sup>h</sup> *Milford-Harven*, and upon the Accession of H. VII to the Crown, he was on 23 Oct. appointed to prepare the <sup>i</sup> justes of peas ayenst the Coronation, and on 24 Sept. was constituted one of the <sup>k</sup> Chamberlains of the Exchequer, and also made Master of the <sup>l</sup> Ordnance and of the King's Armory; and he was one of those of whom that King made Choice of for his <sup>m</sup> Privy-Council, by which Title he had the Custody of the <sup>n</sup> Heir of *Rob. Mortimer*, and in the second Year had likewise the Marriage of *Eliz. Mortimer*, having on the 6th of October a Grant of the Mannor of <sup>o</sup> *Hogben* in *Suffex* to him and his Heirs Males, with License to build Towers there; and on the 15th of Apr. by the Name of the King's right trusty Counsaillour and Knight for his Body, was appointed to take Care for the Building of a <sup>p</sup> Ship of 700 Tunns, to be like a Ship called the *Columbe of France*. On 5 Oct. 3 H. VII, the Summe of 100 Markes was ordered to be paid him for preparing Requisites for the <sup>q</sup> Justes against the Queens

<sup>c</sup> Philpot's Kent, p. 71.

<sup>d</sup> Pol. Virg. p. 552. Stow, &c.

<sup>e</sup> Parl. 3 R. 3. m. 6.

<sup>f</sup> Dogget in Cur. Prærog. Qu. 29.

<sup>g</sup> Cerem. of his Fun. in the Herald's Office.

<sup>h</sup> Philpot's Kent, p. 28. F. 14. in off. Arm p. 13.

<sup>i</sup> Priv. Sigill.

<sup>k</sup> Pat. 1 H. 7. p. 3.

<sup>l</sup> Ibid. p. 1. m. 17. & p. 3. 8 Martii.

<sup>m</sup> Pol. Virg. p. 566.

<sup>n</sup> Priv. Sig. 14 July, Pat. 2 H. VII. p. 1. 31 Dec.

<sup>o</sup> Pat. 2 H. VII.

<sup>p</sup> Priv. Sigill.

<sup>q</sup> Priv. Sigill. apud Warw.

Coronation,



Coronation, and in 5 H. VII, he covenants by <sup>r</sup> Indenture to serve the King upon the Sea with 550 Mariners and Soldiers for two Months, from the 12th July in three Ships, and on the 13th May had given him 300 Marks of the first Money arising from the <sup>s</sup> Subsidies in the Port of *Chichester*; on 30 March 7 H. VII, <sup>t</sup> the King reciting, That he had granted 40*l.* yearly, besides the Fees belonging to the Offices of Master of the Ordnance, and of the Armory; orders that 20*l.* thereof be immediately advanced for his good and acceptable Service, and that (as the <sup>u</sup> Words are) “ Now specially in this our great journey to our Royaume of *France* “ to him right ponderous and chargeable.

In the Eight Year, he with Courage and Prudence opposed the <sup>x</sup> Cornish Squadron on *Blackbeath*, and was there made a <sup>y</sup> Banneret. In 8 H. VII, the Marriage of <sup>z</sup> *Thomas de la Mere* was granted to him. In the 9th Year he had 100*l.* given him towards his Charges in being <sup>a</sup> Sheriff of *Kent*, and in the same Year the Office of the <sup>b</sup> Armory was re-granted to him, and to *Edward Guilford* for the Lives of each of them, which *Edward* was his eldest Son. In the 11th Year he was made <sup>c</sup> Steward of the Lands which were the Dutcheys of *York's* in *Surrey* and *Suffex*. In 12th Year we meet with <sup>d</sup> Licences granted to the Abbots of *Battle*, *Feverham* and *Roberts-bridge*, to enfeoff him and his Heirs with sundry Lands, and Liberty granted them to purchase other Lands, and in this Year Money was ordered to be issued to him being then Comptroller <sup>e</sup> of the Household, for keeping of St. <sup>ee</sup> *George's* Feast, on which Feast in the 14th Year his Name occurs in the Scrutinies, in both the Classes of Barons and of Knights, when *Sir Richard Poole* was elected. The *Black-Book* contains no other Transactions of this Order in 15 H. VII, save the Observance of the Feast by the Prince, and is silent in the 16 and 17 Years; but since *John Viscount Wells* died on the 9th Febr. 14 H. VII, and the *Windsor-Tables* inform us that he was succeeded in the 8th Stall on the Prince's Side by this *Sir Richard*, there is the greatest Probability he was elected into this Order about St. *George's* Day 15 H. VII. In 19 H. VII, he procured an <sup>f</sup> Exemplification under the Great Seal, and had Letters of Constat in 21st Year, and a special Pardon. In 22 was beyond Sea, and on the 14th Nov. <sup>g</sup> Licence was given to *Rich.* and *Walter Culpeper* to enfeoff him in the Mannors of *Thorn* and *Grace*. He made <sup>h</sup> his Will on 7th Apr. 21 H. VII, which was proved on 10 May 1508, 23 H. VII, wherein he devises to his Wife 50 Marks yearly for her Dower, and the Residue to his Son *Edward*.

This *Edward* his eldest Son by his first Lady, became Marshal of *Calis*, Lord Warden of the *Cinque Ports*, and Master of the Ordnance, and a Person of great Distinction, and this *Sir Rich.* had by her also *George*, and four Daughters. He re-married with *Joan* the Sister of *Nicholas*

<sup>r</sup> Ex Indentur.

<sup>s</sup> & <sup>t</sup> Priv. Sig.

<sup>u</sup> Priv. Sigill. 30 Martii 7 H. VII.

<sup>x</sup> Philp. Kent. 295.

<sup>y</sup> Ibid. p. 28. *Asbm.* Hist. p. 282.

<sup>z</sup> Pat. 8 H. VII, 1 Feb.

<sup>a</sup> Priv. Sigill. 23 Nov.

<sup>b</sup> Pat. 9 H. VII, 1 Dec.

<sup>c</sup> Pat. 11 H. VII, Apr. 21.

<sup>d</sup> Pat. 12 H. VII, Martii 12 & Junii 5.

<sup>e</sup> Pat. 19 H. VII, Junii 2.

<sup>ee</sup> See Notes to the Black-Book, p. 236.

<sup>f</sup> Pat. de dict ann.

<sup>g</sup> Pat. 22 H. VII.

<sup>h</sup> Fetiplace in Cur. Prærog.



the first Lord *Vaux*, and by her was Father of our Knight Sir *Henry*, and he died according to a <sup>i</sup> MS. in the 22d *Hen. VII.* leaving a Vacancy in this Seat for Sir *Thomas Brandon*, who is said to be Installed on the 9th of *May* in that Year.

This Lady *Joan* survived her Husband, to whom *Henry* the VIIIth on 23 *Nov.* in his <sup>k</sup> sixth Year grants an Annuity of 20*l.* during her Life for her Services to his Father, Mother, the Queens of *France* and *Scotland* his Sisters, and to himself; and in the 7th *H. VIII.* she had an Additional <sup>l</sup> Annuity of 40*l.* payable for her Life out of the Issues of the County and Honour of *Richmond*, who as we shall find hereafter by a Letter from *Erasmus* was living in *May* 1519.

This *Henry* our present Knight whilst he was an Esquire, (to use the Words of <sup>m</sup> Mr. *Philpot* in 1 *Hen. VIII.*) "Went into *Spain*, and engaged himself under *Ferdinand* and *Isabel* in their Wars against the *Moors*, and behaved himself with that exemplary Resolution, that upon the Reduction of *Granada*, the above-mentioned Prince added to his Paternal Coat an Augmentation of a Pomgranet slipped upon a Canton [which we know were the Arms of that regained Province] and likewise dignified him with the Order of Knighthood, and, he continues on to inform us that in the fourth of *Hen. VIII.* he was again invested with the abovesaid Order by our King.

That the Degree of a Knight Batchelour should be reconferred is so singular an Instance, that it seems scarce credible without direct positive Proof. An Accollade or Dubbing of a Knight, by any Person that had a Right to convey that Honour, was a Creation universally received throughout all Kingdoms; that is, a simple Knight Batchelour made according to the Laws of Chivalry in one Kingdom, retained that indelible Character in all Places whatever, and therefore the same was not only conferred by Princes within their own Territories on " Strangers, but

was

<sup>i</sup> Vinc. MS. n. 40. p. 40. 71 in off. Arm. See Notes to the Black-Book, p. 254. Note g.

<sup>k</sup> Rym. vol. 13. p. 470.

<sup>l</sup> Priv. Sigill. Junii 9.

<sup>m</sup> In his History of Kent.

<sup>n</sup> Kings themselves went to foreign Princes to receive this Order, therefore Alex. III, King of Scotland, pleaded quia si placeret ei, potuit ipse arma suscipere a quovis Principe Catholico vel ab aliquo nobilium suorum. M. Paris A. D. 1252. The Instances of that Practice are too numerous to be inserted. Two Years before this Time Prince Edward, eldest Son of H. III, received this Honour from Alphonfus the Wise King of Castile, see Claus. 38 H. 3. m. 4 dorf. Rymer vol. 1. p. 527, to which King many Princes applied for that Honour. Propter gloriosam famam multi nobiles & egregii viri de diversis mundi partibus veniebant ad ipsum ut ab eo acciperent cingulum militare, inter quos fuit illustris Rex Angliæ nomine Odoardus, nobilis vir Philippus Imperatoris Constantinopolitani filius, Aboadla Rex Granatæ, nobilissimi infantes Dom. Philippus Dom. Emanuel Ferrandus, & Sanctius qui postmodum in regno successerit, filii Alphonfi Regis prædicti; Egregii viri Alfonso & Johannes filii quondam inclyti Regis Johannis de Acon, Radulphus Comes, qui fuit postmodum Rex Alema-

niæ. Gaufr. Toletan. App. ad Hist. Roderici Tolerani. Here by the way is a Moorish Mahometan King knighted, which was preceded, for our Rich. I at Acon in 1122, filium Saphadini insignivit magnifice in angulo [cingulo] militiæ. Vinefauf Iter Hierosol. p. 380, and who this Saphadine was may be seen in the same Book, p. 368, 422, and Joinville informs us that Frederick knighted Scencedum Facardin General under the Soudan of Egypt.

A Kings received this Honour from Foreign Princes; so their Subjects likewise followed the same Example, which was always esteemed lawful; we find indeed sometimes Licences given for this Purpose; the Reason was doubtless because such Persons were Tenants who held of the Crown, and that by the taking this Honour their Wardships determined, which seem to be the Ground of that Article in Eyre recited in Braeton, p. 117. Therefore in Rot. Pip. 15 H. II. Avelina de Ria debet C. libras de misericordia pro filio suo quem fecit militem dum esset in custodia Regis. This is explained in Par. 35 H. III. m. 9. Rex Roberto de Graystock, &c. Licet de nobis teneas in Capite, tamen tibi licentiam concedimus, quod te militem fieri facias iu festo Pentecostes a dilecto & fideli Willimo Comite Albemariæ vel a quocunq; alio pro tua libito voluntatis. And this may explain the Reason that our H. III, in his 44th Year, wrote to the Duke of Bretagne



was given by them when <sup>o</sup> they resided in foreign Countries to the Natives there, and sometimes even to their <sup>p</sup> Enemies in War. Hence when Pope Clement VIII knighted John Mocenigo one of the Venetian <sup>q</sup> Ambassadors, who had been formerly advanced thereto by Hen. IV of France, that Action was judged to be without Precedent, and a Papal Implication, that the Creations by that Prince before his Absolution, in the Opinion of his Holiness, were null in themselves.

This Instance of a Venetian is the rather mentioned, because some Particularities are observed in that Republick, for as their Ambassadors claim a Title to receive Knighthood from that Sovereign to whom they are first sent, and to have a Charter attesting it with some Badge relating thereto given to them (which in this Kingdom was usually a Gold Collar, and sometime the Sword wherewith they were advanced to that Degree) so at their Return Home they lay down those Ensigns to the <sup>r</sup> Senate, which however always approves the Fact, and from thenceforward these are reputed Knights of their own Order of the Stole.

The present Subject is confined to the conferring simple Knighthoods and of the same Degree, for it hath been always allowed to a Knight of an inferior Form to receive another Knighthood of an higher Precedence, and there are Instances likewise that Knights of a Superior Form have accepted inferior Degrees, as the Companions of our Order, who have been only Knights Batchellors at their Installations into this Order have been made <sup>s</sup> Knights of the Bath and <sup>t</sup> Banneretts, which are collated with distinct Ceremonies, the former to grace some great Solemnity, and the latter to be entituled to an Advance of daily Wages in the Wars, and it hath never been thought any Inconsistency to receive several Military Orders under due Protestations.

Some

Bretagne of his Desire to confer this Honour upon that Duke's Son John, in festo beati Edwardi, quod inter ceteras solemnitates anni specialius veneramus, dum tamen hoc vestre federit voluntati, & assensum domini Regis Franciæ, quem hoc diligenter rogabimus, habuerimus, Rymer, vol. 1. p. 698. and he actually conferred that Honour upon him, Chron. Tho. Wikes, p. 54. A Clause of this Nature to receive Knighthood from any Person at their Pleasure was usually in France, La Roque de la Noblesse, p. 66, 73, &c. That to Lawrence Pouffart and his Posterity, granted by King John, qu'ils peussent demander recevoir & obtenir de quelconq; person le noble ordre de Chevalerie was confirmed by Rot. Cales 34 E. III. m. VIII. It would be endless to recount the Knighthoods conferred on Foreigners by our Kings through the several Reigns, and the Knighthoods of English Men by Foreign Princes. But it seems reasonable, that in such Kingdoms where Civil Exemptions are annexed to Knighthoods, such as Freedom from Taxes, that it should not be in the voluntary Power of any Foreign Prince to privilege the Subjects against their natural Sovereign, and discharge them from contributing to their Support, upon which Foundation it was that the Charters of Cavalleria Armada, granted by Charles V as Emperor, were not allowed of Validity in Spain, notwithstanding he was King also of that Realm, Ordin. l. 4. tit. 1. l. 8. But it is not improbable that if any of the Hidalgos of Spain, who had in Right thereof an Exemption from Taxes, had received the

Honour of Knighthood from Ch. V. as Emperor, the same might have been absolutely admitted; and hence it also was that though the King of England had knighted Ralph Coots of Bruges, and made a particular Request to Charles the Second King of Spain to ratify the same, yet he was again knighted by Letters Patent passed at Madrid without any reference to the former. Noblesse de Brabant, p. 113, and this was in pursuance of the souverain Placaert Heraldique 16 Dec. 1616, which declares the Reception of such Honour to be contrary to the Sovereignty of the Prince, et a la surcharge & mespris de nos autres Subjects contribualdes, en aucune Provinces es tailles & subsides d'icelles, Jurispr. Heroica, vol. 2. p. 7.

<sup>o</sup> The Emperor Sigismund conferred a Knighthood on a Frenchman in March 1415 at Paris, who contested for a Stewardship annexed only to that Degree, Du Fresn. Gloss. v. Alapa. Du Tillet recueil, p. 433. Savaron de l'espée Franc. p. 30, 31. Some Authors write that the Permission of the King of France was obtained, but Choppin saith the King of France was angry with the Parliament for permitting it.

<sup>p</sup> See Note to the Black Book, p. 75.

<sup>q</sup> Wicquefort Ambassadeur, p. 450.

<sup>r</sup> Hist. des Ordres Relig. vol. 8. p. 363.

<sup>s</sup> See Life of the Lord Duras.

<sup>t</sup> Sir John Chandos one of the first Founders, was not created a Banneret till the Battle of Nazarre in Spain in 1367 Froiss.



Some Instances that have the Appearances of a "second Collation of simple Knighthoods are considered in the Margin, it being sufficient to the present Purpose that the great <sup>x</sup> Oracle of the Common Law of *England* hath delivered his Opinion positively that Knighthoods are universal.

In pursuance then of this Maxim we are to examine into the Fact of his Knighthood, Mr. <sup>y</sup> *Camden* and <sup>z</sup> *du Fresne* take Notice of the Augmentation granted him, but are both silent in the Point of Knighthood. *Hall*,<sup>a</sup> who might personally know him, saith that the King of *Spain* dubbed *Henry Guilford, Weston, & Browne*. But his Authority is much lessened in this Case, since he makes *Weston* and *Browne* two separate Persons, whereas it was Sir *Weston Browne* of *Langehow* in *Essex* that received that Honour, whose *Privilegios de Cavalleria* (as the *Spaniards* term it) is copied into several Books, and placed in the <sup>b</sup> Margin, because the Collector is induced to believe that the like Patent *mutatis mutandis* was then given to our Knight, because in a MS. containing the List of <sup>c</sup> Knights with their Arms, it is entred "Lord *Henry Guldeford*, dubbed by the Kinge " of *Arragon* at *Bruges* [it should be *Burgos*] in *Castile* 15 Sept. A.D. 1511, " 3 H. VIII," and whose Arms are there drawn with the Augmentation, and without any Mark of Cadency, and then immediately follows " Sir *Wystan Browne* dubbed at the same Time and Place." But which

<sup>x</sup> Rot. Lib. 41 H. III. Liberate de thesauro nostro Willimo Chamlet, quem nuper tertio militum cingulo decoravimus xxx Marcas. Mr. Thinne *Lancaster Herald* in a MS. interprets it to have been the receiving the Degrees of Bachelor, of the Bath, and of Banneret; but though these Degrees should have subsisted at that Time, yet then the Word should have been militie not militum; therefore the Collector supposes it means only that he was one of the three Persons who had received Knighthood, answerable to the Expressions frequently in Rolls of Payment of Wages se soli, se alteri, se tertio, se quarto, &c. Thus Fin. 15 Johan. Walterus de Turbevil venit se tertio militum in servitio Regis Fin. 15 H. 3. m. 11. Rob. Courteney venit se vicefimo militum in servitio Domini Regis in unum annum ad costum suum, a very Ancient Form used in the Laws of H. 1. c. 66, 67, 74, for so many Pledges or Compurgators, and even Froiss. vol. 1. c. 160. Le Roy Johan arme luy vingtiesme en ses paiemens.

<sup>x</sup> Coke's 7 Rep. p. 15b. 16a.

<sup>y</sup> Britan. in English, p. 352. Remains, p. 193.

<sup>z</sup> Sur Joinville, p. 308.

<sup>a</sup> In Hist. of Hen. VIII.

<sup>b</sup> A Certificate by Garter and Clarenceux of this Knighthood and Augmentation is entred in the Office of Arms, H. V. 2. p. 11. The Patent follows, Ferdinandus Dei Gratia Rex Aragonum Siciliae citra & ultra Farum Hierusalem Valentiae Majoricarum Sardiniae & Corsicae Comes Barchinonae Dux Athenarum & Neopatriae Comes Rossilionis Cerdaniae Marchio Oristani & Gotiani. Universis & singulis ad quos praesentes nostrae litterae pervenerint & praesentatae fuerint notum facimus quod attendentes ex cultos mores quibus decoratus estis vos magnificus & devotus noster Wistanus Brown Anglicus Serenissimi & potentissimi Principis Henrici Angliae Regis fratris & filii nostri charissimi subditus & alumnus ac etiam laudabile propositum & desiderium quibus impulsus natale solum dimittendo ad nos profectus es in Africam trajecturus unacum

nostro valido exercitu quem parabamus ad bellum gerendum contra Spurcissimos Mauros Christiani nominis hostes pro Christiana Religione augendi, proque extirpanda nefanda Secta Mahometana, his & aliis meritis personae vestrae vos eundem Wistanum Brown tanquam benemeritum & condignum die datae praesentium militem fecimus atque creavimus in modum sequentem, Quoniam vobis personaliter coram Majestate nostra constitutis in quodam Atrio Hospitii quod impresentiarum fovemus in Civitate Burgenfi Regni Castellae ense praecincto & capite galea testeo ense ipso evaginato vos lente percussimus, dicentes vernaculo ydiomate Hispano; haec verba Dios vos faga buen cavallero y los bienaventurados Sant Jago y Sant Jorge sic & prout fieri ac dici solitum est in similibus militum Creationibus. Necnon ad majoris decorationis cumulum vobis eidem Wistano partem insigniorum nostrorum contulimus atque per praesentes conferimus videlicet ut vos & soboles ac tota posteritas vestra deferre possitis & possis in clypeo sive scuto Aquilam nigram in campo albo, prout hic patet depictam; Volentes & decernentes vos totamque sobolem & posteritatem vestram gestare posse atque debere absque ulla contradictione quorumvis officialium nostrorum dicta insignia ac etiam gaudere, & uti privilegiis, praerogativis, gratiis, Franchitatibus, honoribus, immunitatibus & exemptionibus, usibus & consuetudinibus, quibus gaudere debent & consueverunt ac possint ceteri milites militari cingulo decorati. In cujus rei testimonium praesentes fieri iussimus sigillo nostro impendente munitas. Datum in civitate prefata Burgenfi die xv mensis Septembris Anno a Nativitate Domini Millesimo quingentesimo undecimo, Regnorumque nostrorum, videlicet Siciliae ultra Farum Anno quadagesimo quarto, Aragonum & aliorum tricesimo tertio, Siciliae autem citra Farum & Hierusalem Nono. Dominus Rex mandavit mihi Michaeli Perez Dalmacan.

<sup>c</sup> Claudius C. 3. in bibl. Cotton, p. 78.



is of <sup>d</sup> Authority, Sir Robert Wotton hath left us this Entry A. D. 1511, 3 H. VIII. Dom. Darcy cum Classe in comitatu Nobilium missus in Hispaniam ad ferendam opem adversus Mauros, sed cum illuc appulisset, Hispani eam expeditionem suscipere noluerunt, redeunt ergo nostri domum re infecta, Henricus tamen Guldeford, & Wistanus Browne profecti ad Aulam Castellani bene habiti sunt ab eo & militiae cingulo donati. Our Knight afterwards married the Daughter of this Wotton, who was Born 19 March 1498.

This same Manuscript Catalogue farther informs us, that one Sir Henry Guildford, whose Arms are therein also delineated without this Augmentation, but with the Abatement of the Mullet for a Brizure, was dubbed at Westminster on 20 March the last Day of the Parliament 3 Hen. VIII 1511-12, and it remains to be enquired, whether this was the same Person who had been thus ennobled with that Augmentation in the Month of September preceeding, which this Editor is not as yet enabled to determine, or whether there were two Sir Henry Guildfords at this Time. 'Tis evident from the Arms on the Plate, that our Knight of the Garter is the Person who received this Honour from the King of Spain.

In 2 H. VIII, Henry Guildford Esq; had the <sup>e</sup> Custody of Anne Daughter and Heiress of John Langford during her Minority, and in the 4th Year the King grants to him, being then <sup>f</sup> a Knight, and to his Wife and the Heirs of their Bodies, the Mannors of Hampton in Arderne in Warwick, and Dyker in Lincoln, as likewise the Baillywick of Sutton in Warwick, with the Custody of the Park during his Life, and in that <sup>g</sup> Year also had the Constableship of the Castle of Leedes, with the Parkership thereof, and of Langley for his Life. Upon the Reputation of his Martial Abilities by Sea as well as by Land, he was sent with Sir Charles Brandon in the Sovereign with the <sup>h</sup> Fleet against the French, and not as <sup>i</sup> Philpot saith in the Regent, for that Ship with its Captains was burnt in Grapling. He carried the Royal Standard at the Siege of <sup>k</sup> Therouenne, which Office <sup>l</sup> had been granted to him for Life in such manner as Sir Edward Howard, who was a Knight elect of this Order, had enjoyed the same, and at Turney he was created <sup>m</sup> Banneret: In the 7 Hen. VIII, he was constituted <sup>n</sup> Master of the Horse for Life, and at the same <sup>o</sup> Time had an Annuity of 50*l.* during the like Term for the Executing the Office of an Esquire of the King's Body. In the 10th Year, on 11 August, Sir Henry <sup>p</sup> Guylford and Nicholas Carewe, had each of them from the Standing Wardrobe 6 Yards of Blue Cloth of Gold towards a Base and a Trapper, and 15 Yards of White Cloth of Silver Damask to perform another Base and Trapper for the Kings *Justs* appointed to be at Greenwich upon the Arrival of the French Embassadors. In 1519 Erasmus wrote

<sup>d</sup> MS. penes. Rich. Folcy Arm. Protonotar.

<sup>e</sup> Pat. 2. H. 8. p. 1. 29 Martii.

<sup>f</sup> Pat. 4. H. 8. p. 1. 3 Dec.

<sup>g</sup> Pat. 4. H. 8. p. 2. 23 Dec.

<sup>h</sup> Herb. Hist. of H. 8. p. 25.

<sup>i</sup> Kent. p. 295.

<sup>k</sup> Herb. p. 37.

<sup>l</sup> Pat. 5 H. 8. p. 1. 28 May.

<sup>m</sup> Vinc. MS. n. 40. p. 475. Glover's MS. among Philpot's Books, in Off. Arm. n. 8. p. 15 b.

<sup>n</sup> Pat. 7 H. 8. p. 3. 6 Nov.

<sup>o</sup> Ibid.

<sup>p</sup> MS. penes Rob. Worsley Baronet.



him some Letters, which it hath been thought proper to print in the <sup>9</sup> Margin at length, not only for his Character of the Personal Virtues and Studies of our Knight, but for his Description of the *English* Court, wherein the great Personages distinguished themselves for their Learning, and at their Tables had modest Disputations touching Points of Erudition and Piety, contrary to the then prevailing Practice of the Ecclesiasticks. In the next Year he had the Custody of the Mannor of *Leedes*, with other Perquisites for 40 Years, and in the 14th was appointed to attend on the *Emperor* at his coming hither, and on 24 *Apr.* being then <sup>11</sup> Comptroller of the King's Household, as his Father and Grandfather were formerly, had the Mannor of *Hadlow*, with the Advowson and Appurte-

## 9 EPISTOLA CCCCVII.

Henrico Guldefordo, Equiti Aurato, Praefecto rei equesstris Regis Angliae. Erasmus S. D.

**V**IR clarissime, multorum sermone cognosco, quam amico sis in nos animo, siue scintillas istius benevolentiae ex meis lucubrationibus concepisti, siue ex *Johannis Coleti*, ceterorumque amicorum hausisti sermone. Tu me diligis, quod vere talem esse credas, qualem illi praedicarunt. Ego te vicissim amo, quod toto pectore virtuti, quod honestis studiis faveas, quando horum gratia mihi quoque faves, non quod praeditus sim, sed quod tibi persuasum sit his praeditum esse me. Certe recta studia, praesertim ea quae ad veram faciunt pietatem, provehere semper conatus sum, sed utinam perinde feliciter, ac sedulo. Mundus respicit velut ex altissimo somno expergiscens: & tamen pertinacibus animis adhuc repugnant quidam, veterem inscitiam suam manibus pedibusque, ac mordicus etiam, retinentes. Sed hos pudebit amentiae suae, si viderint summos Reges, ac Regum Proceres amplecti, fovere, tueri meliores literas. O miras rerum humanarum vicissitudines! olim literarum ardor penes religionis professores erat, nunc illis magna ex parte, ventri, luxui, pecuniae quae vacantibus, amor eruditionis ad Principes profanos, ac proceres aulicos demigrat. Nam quae schola, quod monasterium usquam tam multos habet insigni probitate, doctrinaque praeditos, quam vestra habet aula! An non optimo jure nos nostri pudeat? Sacerdotum ac Theologorum convivia madent vinolentia, scurilibus opplentur jocis, tumultu parum sobrio perfrepant, virulentis obtricationibus scatent: & ad Principum mensas modeste disputatur de iis, quae ad eruditionem ac pietatem faciunt. Nimirum ad optimi Regis exemplum properant omnes, cujus ut ceteras illas dotes omitam, quas sic habet cum aliis Regibus communes, ut plerisque praecurrat, nulla sit inferior: quid illo ad disputandum argutius, ad inveniendum felicius, ad judicandum sanius, ad eloquendum venustius? Olim oculi literarumque dulcedine captus, ab aulis Regum abhorrebam: At in talem aulam, vel cum tota suppellectile, quae fere chartacea est, liberet immigrare, ni valetudinis imbecillitas, & aetas jam ingravescens dissuaderet. Ubi nunc sunt qui jactitant, Principum vigori officere literarum cognitionem? Quis *Henrico octavo*, vel in bellicis rebus dexterior, vel in condendis legibus cordatior, vel in consiliis oculatior, vel in coercenda scelerum licentia vigilantior, vel in deligendis magistratibus, atque officiis diligentior, vel in conciliandis foedere Regibus efficacior? Equidem aureum quoddam seculum exoriri video, quo mihi fortassis non continget frui, quippe

qui jam ad fabulae meae catastrophem accedam: gratulor tamen orbi, gratulor juvenibus, in quorum animis ob officiorum memoriam utcumque superstes erit *Erasmus*. Sed ut finiam, ornatissime *Henrice*, redamo te amantem, proque officiis in me tuis, non vulgaribus, hoc majorem habeo gratiam, quod ea praestiteris nullo unquam a me lacessitus officio. Generosae dominae matri tuae, mihi uno atque altero colloquio cognita, precor omnia laeta prosperaque. Istum animum tibi, te nobis servet Opt. Max. *Iesus*. Hunc *Erasmum* pergat tua nobilitas inter suos clientulos ponere, studio certe nulli cessurum. Antuerpiae 15 Maii, Anno 1519.

## EPISTOLA CCCCLXXV.

Erasmus Henrico Guilfordo, rei Equesstris Regio praefecto. S.

**V**ides, ornatissime *Guilforde*, virtute nihil amabilius, quae sic omnium animos ad se pellicit, ut nulla incantatio possit efficacius. Si quidem fragrantia honestissimae famae, quae nusquam non divulgat aulam *Britannicam*, praeter Regem, omnibus absoluti Principis dotibus egregie cumulatam, & huic simillimam Reginam, tot insuper integris, eruditis, gravibus, cordatisque viris abundare, Principem *Bergensem*, virum in primis prudentem, hoc est, a tergo pariter atque a fronte oculatum, excitavit, ut *Antonium* natu minimum ex liberis, quem natura videtur genuisse virtuti, non alteri scholae tradendum judicaret: unde rediret, non solum incorruptus ab his vitiis, quibus fere sunt obnoxiae magnatum aulae, verum etiam iis virtutibus instructus, quae tam clavis stemmatis, tantisque negotiorum molibus, ad quas haud dubie vocabitur, dignae sint. Nihil agam si tibi juvenem commendem. Ea est indoles, ea morum suavitas, is pudor ac probitas, ut optimum quenque protinus in sui amorem rapturus sit. Atque hic quoque sentio mihi *Rhamnusia* infensam. Ante complures annos & Regis benignitas, & Cardinalis *Eboracensis* humanitas, me ad aulae consortium non semel invitavit, eodem provocavit *Guilmi Montjoii* fidele semper & amicum consilium. Sed mihi laeva mens erat, furdo canebatur fabula. Sciebam haud ullam usquam aulam ista esse incorruptiorem, at quis divinare poterat Principis domum tale musarum domicilium fururum? Nunc id Consilium sequar oportet, quod dant aetas ac valetudo. Vobis interim gratulabor istam felicitatem, quando meam infelicitatem deplorare, nihil attulerit fructus. Bene vale, vir ornatissime. Lovanio 18 Octob. An. 1519.

r Pat. 12 H. 8. p. 2. 12 Febr.

f Rym. vol. 13. p. 767.

11 Pat. 14 H. 8. p. 2.



nances granted to him and his Heirs Males, and the Farm of <sup>i</sup> *Eltham*, and other Places for 40 Years. A Licence was granted to him and <sup>ii</sup> *George Guldeford* Esq; for the King's Body, to export One Hundred Woollen Cloths, and in 16th he had the Park of <sup>x</sup> *Northfryth* in *Kent*, with other Lands given him in Tail Male, and upon the Surrender of his <sup>y</sup> Patent of Stand-bearer, that Office was conferred upon Sir *Ralph Egerton*, and Sir *Edward Goldeford* for their Lives, in which <sup>z</sup> Year the above-mention'd Mannors of *Hampton* in *Arderne* and *Dyker*, the Mannor of *Hadlow* in *Kent*, and the Kings Park of *Northfryth* were granted to him and *Mary* his then Wife, and to the Heirs Males of their Bodies. In the 17th he was made one of the <sup>a</sup> Chamberlains of the *Exchequer*, and in the next Year elected into this Order. In the great Case of the <sup>b</sup> Divorce his Evidence was only upon the Article of publick Report, and that the Form of Stipulation, or the Contract of Marriage used in this Kingdom, was in Words *De Præfenti*, of this later every Person could give Testimony, since that Part was in the *English* Language, though the Office of Matrimony was in *Latin*: He among others subscribed the <sup>c</sup> Articles exhibited against Cardinal *Wolsey*, and he averred in <sup>d</sup> Parliament, That being one of the Executors of Sir *William Compton's* Will, the Probate could not be obtained from the Cardinal, and the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, till One Thousand Marks had been paid; he was one of the <sup>e</sup> Knights who in that Parliament subscribed the Letter to the Pope, and on 23 *Apr.* 23 *Hen. VIII.* he with others had the Office of <sup>f</sup> Constable of *Leeds*, and on the 7 of *May* was one of the Nominators in the Scrutiny for an Election into this Order, and died in that <sup>g</sup> Year being about forty four Years Old.

And on the 12th of *June* the <sup>b</sup> Sovereign advertized the Companions of his Death, that they might cause Masses and Suffrages for his Soul according to the Tenour of the Statutes. His Stall continued empty till 27 *Oct.* 24 *H. VIII.* when *Philip Chabot* Earl of *Newblanch* was elected thereto. The Collar of this Order of our Knight was after his Death returned to the <sup>i</sup> Master of the *Jewel-House*, who by the King's Command delivered it to the Duke of *Suffolk* in recompence of one borrowed from him at *Calis* and given to this *Chabot* then Admiral of *France*.

<sup>i</sup> Pat. 14 *H. 8.* p. 2.

<sup>ii</sup> Priv. Sigil. 6 Febr.

<sup>x</sup> Pat. 16 *H. 8.* p. 2. 15 July.

<sup>y</sup> Pat. 16 *H. 8.* p. 2. 13 Sept.

<sup>z</sup> Bill. Signat.

<sup>a</sup> Bill. Sign. 26 Apr.

<sup>b</sup> *Herb. Hist.* p. 271, 273.

<sup>c</sup> *Ibid.* p. 302.

<sup>d</sup> *Ibid.* p. 324.

<sup>e</sup> *Ibid.* p. 334.

<sup>f</sup> Pat. de dict. ann.

<sup>g</sup> Vinc. n. 40.

<sup>b</sup> Titus A. 7. in bibl. Cotton.

HENRY,

**R**ight trusty and right welbeloved We greet you well,  
and forasmuch as that it hath pleased Almighty

God to call unto his infinite Mercy Sir Henry Guldeford late one of the Companions of the Noble Order of the Garter, we therefore advertize you thereof to thintent you may with convenient diligence cause such masses and suffrages to be done and said for his Soules health, as by the Statutes of the said Order ye be bounden in that behalf. Given under the Signet of the said Garter at our Mannor of Eltham the xii. day of June.

To our right trusty and welbeloved Cofin  
and Counsellour the Erle of *Essex* one of  
the Companions of the noble Order of  
the Garter.

<sup>i</sup> Comp. *Tho. Cromwell* 24 *H. 8.* in offic. Jocal.

Our



Our Knight was twice married but left no Issue. His first Lady was *Mary* Daughter of *Sir Thomas Brian*, and the second *Mary* Daughter of *Sir Robert Wotton*, re-married to *Sir Garwen Carew*.

His Picture drawn by the famous *Hans Holbein* remains in the Earl of *Stafford's* Gallery, whereof a Sculpture is exhibited in the Frontispiece of this Narrative, which hath this Inscription, *Anno MCCCCXXXVII ætatis XL, Sir Henry Guilford Comptroller to King Hen. the VIII.* On his Bonnet is a Badge which seems to represent a Sort of a Clock, having on each Side somewhat like two Hammers, and underneath a Carpenter's Square and Compass.

The Arms Or, a Saltire between four Martlets Sable, quartering those of *Halden* Argent, a Chief Sable surmounted by a Bend engrailed Gules, on the Center a Mullet Gules for Distinction, the Crest a Firebrand on a Wreath Silver and Gules, mantled Sable doubled Silver.

On the Crest, and in the first Coat on a Canton is the Augmentation, being the Arms of the Kingdom of *Granada* Argent a Pomegranet, the Shell open grained Gules, stalked and leaved proper, with which Fruit that Country abounds, *præsum malum punicum ramulo & foliolis viridibus sustentatum hiant cortice, granulis coccineis.*

Either our Knight himself, or one of his Name, was the Principal " Benefactor to the Abbey of *DURFORD*, which is placed by the *Monasticon* in *Hampshire*, which may be a Mistake for *Suffex*.

As the Conferring of Knighthoods, so the Concessions of Arms and Augmentations have been allowed to be universal, and Sovereign Princes to reward the Vertues and Merits of Foreigners, or as Instances of their particular Favours, have granted them the Honour of bearing their Arms either entire, or the most considerable Figure thereof to be used singly, quarterly, or on some eminent Part of the Escutcheon. The \* Examples in Foreign Kingdoms, and even in Republicks are too numerous to be inserted, so that it is no ways singular that the whole Arms of *Granada* in a Canton should be granted to our Knight, as those of *Sicily* were at the same Time given to *Sir Wylton Browne*, the last Instance of this Nature probably to an *English* Man was the Concession made by *Gustavus Adolphus* in 1627, to *Henry St. George* an Herald then knighted by him, who had a Grant to bear a Canton, *Cum tribus insuper Coronis flavis regnorum nostrorum insigniis.* Foreign Princes have gone further by adopting Persons into their ~ Surnames as well as Arms. But the Editor doth not at present recollect any Record whereby our Kings gave Liberty to Foreigners to bear their whole Arms, the usual Method being of assigning some Badges or Principal Part of the Arms of the Crown, however some

u See Menestrier Orig. des Arm. p. 233. Orig. des Ornaments des Armoires p. 363. Le laboureur Orig. des Arm. p. 39. Campanile dell Insigne p. 256. Speneri Theoria Insign. p. 55. Du Tillet recueil, p. 322. Wicquef. Ambass. p. 450. Daniel de la milice Franc. vol. 2 p. 557, &c. Every one knows the Instance of the Grant made to Bartholus the Civilian.

\* Mon. Anglic. vol. 1. p. 545.

y Selden's Titles of Honour, p. 381.

z Zazzera della Nobilita dell Italia in Bevilacqua. Lellis Famiglie di Napoli, p. 215. Guichenon Preuves de l. Hist. Gen. de Savoye, p. 647, &c. The Collector hath seen the Copy of a like Grant, by the King of Scotland in 1500, to Balthazar Tuerd of Piedmont, to whom the Duke of Albany afterwards granted the Lion of Scotland during the Minority of Queen Mary in 1515.



Foreigners have born them entire. The Learned <sup>a</sup> Dufresne acquaints us that our Rich. I, gratified Geoffry de Joinville for his signal Services at the Siege of Acon, with the uncommon Honour of *empaling* or *demidiating* his Arms, which is only inserted out of Deference to the immense Learning of that Author; for doubtless it hath no better Foundation than common Tradition, and if that Family did ever use the three Leopards of England *Passant Guardant* (for such <sup>b</sup> they have been frequently

<sup>a</sup> Notes at the End of History of Joinville.

<sup>b</sup> As the French Authors have controverted whether their Arms are the Heads of Javelots or Fleurs de lis, and if the latter, whether these Flowers were of the Kind called Iris, or otherwise plain Lillies of the Valley; so it seems a Controversy of the like Difficulty arose about the Arms of this Kingdom, whether they were Lions or Leopards. Upton de re milit, p. 125, determines positively for the former, and in support thereof gives a Romantick Deduction of the Arms born by several of our Kings from Brute. There is however a Manuscript of this Book, in which the Arms of Queen Anne are blazoned Leopards by Richard II. Vinc. MS. in Off. Arm. n. 444. This Author, according to the Degree of Learning in his Time labours this Point, and the Occasion of his Zeal in this particular appears in p. 130, That he had been provoked by several disgraceful Reproaches, which he had heard in Sieges to be flung upon Hen. V. by reason of bearing Leopards, and on the good Lady his Mother. He doth not explain in this Place in what Manner these Sarcasms were drawn from Leopards, but we know it was a vain groundless Conceit in that Age that Coat Arms contained a concealed Hieroglyphical Signification of the Qualities, or some remarkable Circumstance of the Bearer, which idle Dreams run through that Work. 'Tis not surprising such Notions should then prevail, since we know a more unwarrantable Folly in later Times, when Predictions of future Events to the Bearers of Arms descended to them from their Ancestors were drawn from them; a Divination prohibited by Stat. 33 H. 8. c. 14. 4 and 5 Ed. 6. c. 15, and 5 Eliz. c. 15, which lay a severe Penalty on those who make fond fantastical Prophecies upon or by occasion of any Arms, Fields, Beasts, Badges, or like Things accustomed in Arms, Cognizances, or Signes. Now this Author, p. 148, saith, That Leopards born for Arms import that the first Assumer was begotten in Adultery, and thence probably the Satyrs against Hen. V. and his Mother were fetched with the greatest Rudeness. He wrote under Hen. VI, and the Nature of the present Subject may be an Apology to propose a Conjecture, that since Leon d'or was in that Reign a Pursuivant to the Lord Dudley, while Leopard was an Herald to that King, that the Leopard and not the Lion d'or was taken by the Heralds, who must be competent Judges, to be the Cognizance or Principal Part of the Bearing of that King. No great Weight will be laid on this Supposition, though it is well known that it was the Practice of that Age to denominate the Officers frequently from the Arms or Badges of their Founders. Leopard Herald then had a Salary from the Crown, Rymer, vol. 10. p. 505, 506. Leon d'or was an Officer in that Reign, Exit. Pell. p. 24. H. 6. Leon d'or pursuant missio cum Ambassiatoribus Regis versus avunculum suum de Francia Cs. and at that Time the Lord Dudley, afterwards a Companion of this Order (whose Arms were Or, a Lion Rampant Vert) was one of the Ambassadors sent thither, Rymer, vol. 12. p. 138, 152, 161, and this Officer is in the Manuscripts, which contain the Ceremonial of the Duel between Chalons and Du Breuil performed in France in 25 H. 6, expressly styled Purse-

vant to this noble Lord. See hereafter in the Succession of Garter. Let us now weigh the Authorities on both Sides.

On behalf of the Lions it may be alledged, when Henry I. knighted Geoffry of Anjou upon his Marriage with his Daughter, there were put in a Shield golden Lions about his Neck, and the same upon his Boots. Richard the First, before he came to the Throne being in the French Wars, is described with the Impress of Lyons on his Shield, for the Duke of Bar in his Speech, —Rictus agnosco Leonum Illius in scuto. Brito Philippidos l. 3. p. 398. He is the first of our Kings who bore Arms in his Shield upon his Seals. That used by him before his Expedition to the Holy Land exhibits only the Dexter Half of it, which shows one Lion (as it hath been called) Rampant; and Sir Henry Spelman, Aspil. p. 46. conjectures that we should imagine another Lion to be covered from our View, so that his whole Arms were then two Lions combatant. There hath been lately published a contemporary Writer, who proves it as to the Comparisons, "Rex insiliens insedit sellæ. —Parte posteriore binis aureis sese respicientibus hinc leunculis, singulorum uno pedum anteriorum versus alterum tanquam ad lacerandum porrecto. Vinetauf Iter Hierosol." From this Bearing Spelman conceives he had the Sobriquet of Cor Leonis: Another Author supposes on the Reverse, that he took these Arms from this Sobriquet, as he saith that Loys le Jeune, about the same Time, took the Lis or Lillie with the like Allusion to his Name, Menestrier Orig. des Arm. p. 216. These Conjectures both concur that his Arms were Lions, and 'tis true that Authors coeval with him say, He was Corde Leonino, Brito Philippid. l. 4. v. 398. Leonem & plusquam Leonem Gir. Cambr. which Knighton, Col. 2404, 36. writes he deserved by his Courage, but in Col. 2407, he entertains us with an incredible Story that this King had the Appellation of Cor Leonis because during his Captivity he thrust his Hand down the Throat of an hungry Lion let loose to devour him and plucked out his Heart and did eat it. The like Romance hath been given for the Title of Leo attributed to his Brother in Law Henry Duke of Bavaria and Saxony, which Crantzius Saxon. l. 6. c. 34. hath judiciously exposed, see Schurtzschichius de Henrico Leone, p. 575.

But if the Arms of Richard I. were esteemed to be Lions in that Age, yet Heraldry was then in its Infancy, and probably not settled into a Science; but since the Rules of Blazoning became fixed, it no way becomes an Herald to deviate from them. M. Paris, who died in 1259, and hath drawn the Coats of Arms of the Nobility in his Original Manuscript, is very express, Hist. p. 416. That the Emperor Frederic sent H. III. three Leopards, in signum regalis Clypei, in quo tres Leopardi transeuntes figurantur, in the Reign of his Son Ed. I. at the Battle of Falkirk in 1299. Peter de Langtoft, as translated in 12 E. 3. Thei sauh Kynges banere rampaund thre Lebarde. MS. in bibl. Inter. Templi.

R e r

Thus



frequently blazoned) it must have been upon the Grounds of an unaccountable Anticipation, for that King did not bear his Arms in that Manner till after his Return from the Holy Land. The same Learned Author saith, That *Aeneas Silvius*, afterwards Pope *Pius II*, wrote to *Adam Moulins*, Secretary of the King of England, in favour of the Emperor's Secretary, that he might have the Privilege of bearing that King's Arms: Its left to the Reader to judge whether there was any other Intention than to have the Liberty of bearing the Badge, Livery, or Collar. The

Thus the *Antient Poem* in bibl. Cotton. of the Arms of those who attended the Siege of Caerlaveroc in 1300, speaking of King Ed. I.

En fa baniere trois Luparte,  
De or fin estoient mis en rouge  
Courant felloun, fier, & harouge, &c.

And of John Duke of Britaigne,

Baniere avoit cointe & paree  
De or & de asur eschequerec,  
Au rouge Ourle o jaunes lupars  
Determine estoit la quarte pars.

And the Stat. 28 E. I. c. 20. appoints, That Vessels of Gold and Silver should be Marked with the Leopard's Head: This was afterwards enjoined to be observed by the Goldsmiths. Vasc. 18 H. 6. m. 10. in which Year our Gold Coyns were impressed with a Leopard, tria genera auri, quorum primum impressum duobus Leopardis, secundum cum uno Leopardo, & tertium cum un heaume. Claus. 18 E. 3. p. 1. m. 11. The Black Prince by his Will orders, That there be placed on his Tomb, under his Effigies, Nostre heaume de Leopard Registr. Sudbury, p. 90. and what his Widow hath said in her Will may be seen in Dugd. 2 Vol. Baron. p. 94. The Poem of his Life wrote by Chandos Herald, who lived in his Time, introduceth him asking the Advice of his Knights, whether it was proper to make an Expedition into Spain. MS. penes G. Clerk. L. L. D.

Que le Leopardz et lour compaignie  
Se desployerent en Espagne &c.

In the Ballad upon the Battle of Poitiers

Scutis Edwardi sic flos fit amore Leopardi.

To which the Counter Ballad

Et finat Edwardo cum flore frui Leopardo.

Contin. Murimouth, p. 109, 110. The Dutcheff of Lancaster gave the Church of Lincoln a Cheafible with Orfrays of Gold with Leopards, Mon. Angl. vol. 3. p. 278, and Edmund of Langley Duke of York devises his Beds embroidered with Leopards and Leopard's Heads, Dudg. 2 Vol. Bar. p. 157. In the Reign of Rich. II. there are Records which blazon his Arms and Crest. He grants to Peter de Manudell Arma de Gueules cum tribus Leopardis de auro, quolibet eorum portante quandam coronam de Azura circa collum ad differentiam armorum infantum & filiorum Regis, Pat. 13 R. 2. m. 15, and he recites the Right of the Earl Marshal, Ad portandum pro Crista sua unum Leopardum de auro cum uno labello albo, qui de jure esset Crista filii nostri primogeniti, si quem procreassemus: And Froiss. vol. 4, p. 188, acquaints us, That, this King discontinued the Arms of England, 'C'est a entendre les

Liepars — Et print celles du Roy Edward qui est Saint. And the French Gentleman who wrote his Life in Prose and Verse, En ce faisant le Roy, qui les Liepars porte en blason. Bibl. Harley 68. C. 23. John Gower, in his Poems, denominates the Noblemen who conspired against Rich. II, from their Arms and Badges, Tiber. A. 4. p. 161. Tunc Rex Ricardus lepus est, & non Leopardus, and at the End of his Confessio Amantis. See Seld. Notes on Polyalb. p. 182. Hen. V is described by his Tabert at Agincourt Tres Leopardi aurei in agro lascivientes putpureo apparatus regium non modicum solempnizant, Elmham in Bibl. Harley 62. B. 5. and his Tents were embellished with Lillies & Leopardis, Livius in vita H. 5. p. 73.

Alain Chartier Hist. de Ch. 7. p. 3, and the Author of la Mer des Hist. c. 125, describes the Impression of the Great Seal of Hen. 6, to be quarterly Lillies and Leopards, and the former, p. 24, acquaints us, That the Leopards were Part of the Impress on his Money coined in France. This King grants to the College of St. Mary, and St. Nicholas in Cambridge, Parcelles armorum quæ nobis in regnis Angliæ & Franciæ jure debentur regio, in summo scuti locari statumus, partitum principale de azoreo cum Francorum flore deq; rubeo cum peditante Leopardo. Cart. 27 H. 6. n. 49; and the same Year to his College of Eaton, with some Variation, Cart. 27 H. 6. n. 48; and the Leopard's Head was ordered to be the Mark on Silver, St. 2. H. 6. c. 14, which was re-enacted by St. 7. E. 4. c. 1, which King granted to Lewis Gruthuse, when he created Him Earl of Winchester, D'azur a six mascles d'or enarme d'ung Canton de nostre propre d' Engleterre, cestascavoir de Goules un Leopard passant d'or enarme d'azur. To these Testimonies may be added the Attestations of some very Antient Writers: That of the Author of L' Arbre des Barailles is quoted by Upton, p. 125; in his 125th Chapter, La fleur de lys pour l'ostel de France et le Lyepart pour l'ostel d' Engleterre, and the famous Christine de Pise, who lived in the Reign of Charl. V of France, Dufresn. Gloss. vol. 1. p. 163. Bibl. Reg. n. 1361. The Ancient MS. called Jennings's Repertory of Arms, Le Roy d' Engleterre porte de Goules a troys leopards passantz d'or, and thus he blazons the Arms of Denmark to be Leopards, and those of Spain, Armenia, Cyprus, Norway and Bohemia to be Lions passantz d'or. Hence the Reader will determine, whether the Augmentations given to the Venetian Ambassadors Gjustiniani, Valeresius, and Sir Jerom Lando, as likenesse to Sir Peter Paul Reubens, &c. were rightly blazoned, the former having Leonem Anglicum granted, and the later, Unum de Leonibus nostris Angliæ. The Writer's on Heraldry concur, that where both Eyes appear, the Blazon should be by the Word Lion, and when only one Eye is seen, it is to be called a Leopard, though Upton, p. 147, dissents, to make himself consistent with his former Opinion; some Writers to compose this Difference have found a Distinction by adding a further Term, either Lion Leoparde, or Leopard Lionne. c Dissert. 25. sur Joinville.



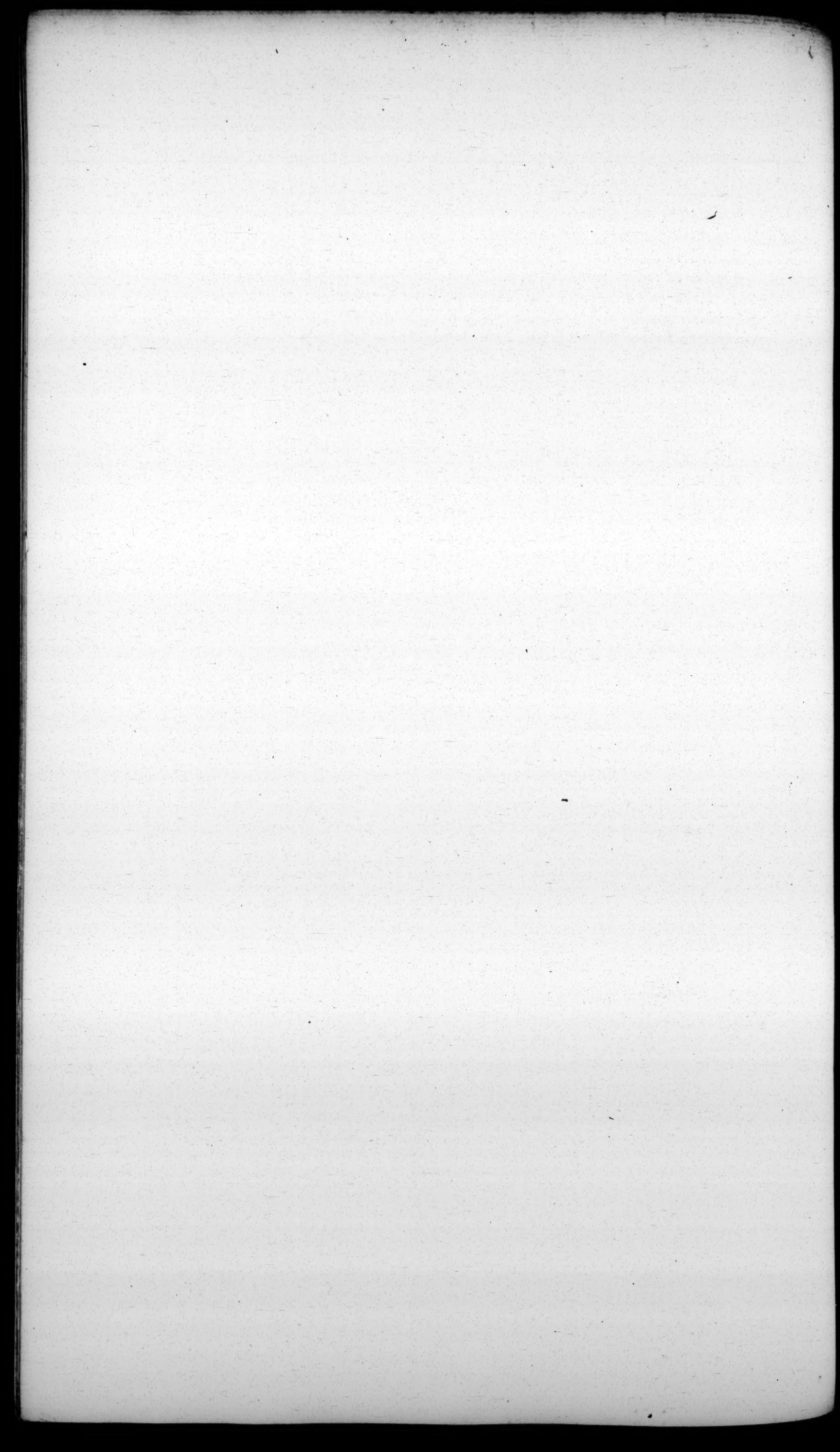
The Words in his <sup>d</sup> Epistle dated 23 Oct. 1444 (23 H. 6.) are, *Æneas Silvius Imperialis Secretarius Reverendo patri Adæ de Mulin Apostolicæ sedis Prothonotario, ac Serenissimi Regis Angliæ Secretario S. P. D. Cum lator præsentium probus ad te venturum se diceret, hanc brevem Epistolam statui ad te mittere. Verum quia nulla petitio amici causa refutanda est, cum litteratus vir magnâq; virtute præditus Michael Pollentorius Secretarius Imperialis mihi amantissimus in signe Serenissimi Principis Regis vestri deferre cupiat, sitq; hoc munere dignissimus, te precor, hortor, obtestorq; ut hoc sibi apud regiam Majestatem impetratum reddas, litteras mihi transmittas regias, per quas ei hoc ferre liceat.* The Family of <sup>e</sup> *Leirva* in Spain have born the *English* Leopards, which they say is in Vertue of the Marriage of their Ancestor *Sanchius Martinez de Leirva* with *Isabel* a natural Daughter of the Royal Founder of this Order, which Lady hath not been named (if the Collector's Memory doth not fail him) in the *English* Genealogies. The Family of <sup>f</sup> *Goulaine* in *Bretagne* have born the Leopards dimidiated with the Arms of *France*, said to be granted by both Kings to one of them in recompense for the Negotiating a Peace between them, and the Precedency being in this Coat given to the Arms of *England*, Le<sup>g</sup> *Laboureur* takes Pains to remove that Difficulty.

There is a Mistake in the Print of the foregoing Page, in the Metal of the Field of the Coat, and of the Wreath, which may be easily rectified by inspecting the Plate, as also in the Mantlings which are *Gules* doubled Silver, double tasselled Or.

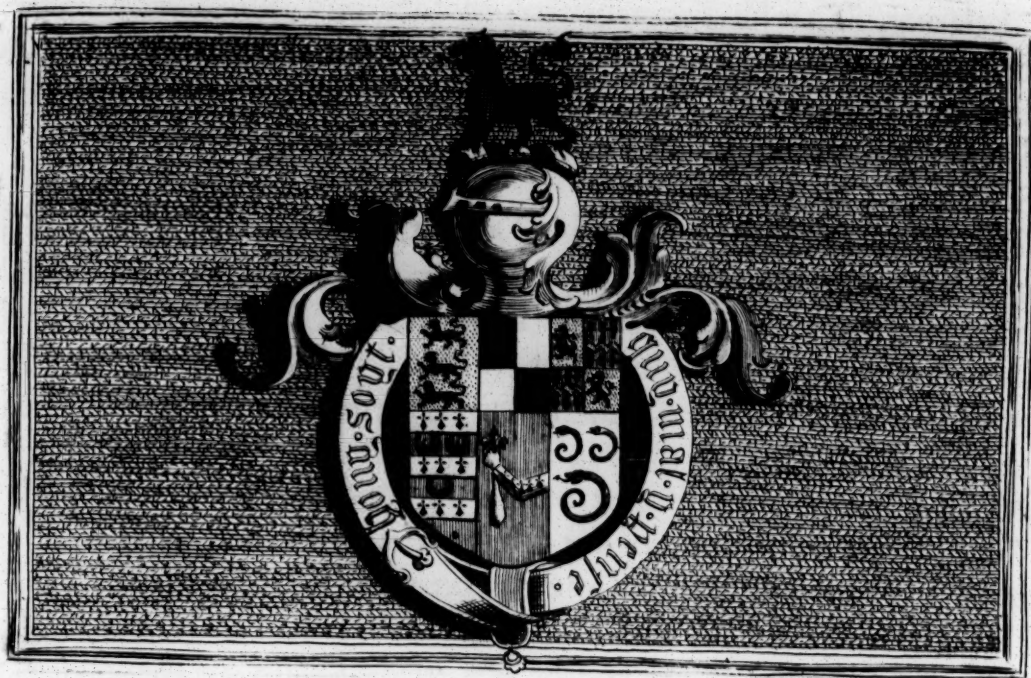
<sup>d</sup> Edit. 1483, per Joh. de Westfalia in Univer-  
sitate Lovan.  
<sup>e</sup> Spener Theor. Infig. p. 55.

<sup>f</sup> Du'Paz. Geneal. de Bretagne. Menestrier Orig.  
des Arm. p. 238.  
<sup>g</sup> Orig. des Arm. n. 5c.









# MEMOIRS

Of the LIFE of

## Sir Richard Carew.



AFTER the Death of Sir *Henry Guildford*, the Earl of *Newblanch* was elected to this Stall on the 28th of Oct. 24 H. VIII, upon whose Translation Sir *William Fitz-Williams* was removed hither, who being again translated from it, Sir *Nicholas Carew* number'd 297, was on the 23d Apr. 28th H. VIII, after a Scrutiny, declared by the Sovereign most worthy to be elected, in regard (as the <sup>a</sup> *Black-book* words it) of the Majority of Votes, the Eminency of his Extraction, his own

Fame, and the many and noble Actions he had performed, which ample Declaration was unanimously applauded by the *Knights* Companions, and being thereon conducted into the Chapter-house to receive his Investiture, he returned infinite Thanks to the Sovereign and Companions

<sup>a</sup> Lib. Nig. Garterii, p. 271.



for the **great** Honour done him, who esteemed himself most unworthy of it, declaring, That his Preference to other Persons, much more deserving than himself, was not to be attributed to his Merits or Actions, but solely owing to the Sovereign's Bounty, and the Favour of the Companions, and a Warrant being signed for his <sup>b</sup> Robes, he was <sup>c</sup> installed on 21 May, at St. George's Feast following.

This eminent Testimony of his Descent, and the Lustre of his Genealogy, will justify the enlarging on some Particulars thereof. He was indeed only the Heir of a younger Branch of the Family of Carew, which had seated itself at Bedington in Surrey, where it had flourished a long Time, especially (as Mr. <sup>d</sup> Camden saith) after [Sir] James Carewe had married the Daughter and Heiress of the Noble Baron Hoo.

Nicholas Carew, the Ancestor of this Line of Bedington, was third Son of Sir Nicholas of Devonshire by Amicia the Sister and Heiress of John Peverell of Ermington in that County, on whom <sup>e</sup> Reimund de Carew, in 43 E. III, settled the Mannors of Bedynton magna, Portlee and Brightwell in Surrey, Berks, and Oxon, and he was made Keeper of the <sup>f</sup> Privy-Seal, on 27 July 45 E. III, and had free Warren granted him in the <sup>g</sup> Villages of Croydon, Bedington, and other Places in Surrey and Berks, and this Nicholas, or rather his Son, was <sup>h</sup> Knight of the Shire for Surrey in 1 R. II.

Anne <sup>i</sup> Bonstede, Cousin and Coheir of Sir Thomas Huscarl, in the third Year, grants to Nicholas Carreu the Elder, and his Heirs, her Right in the Mannors of Purle magna in Berks and in Bedington, and in the Advowson of the free Portion in the said Church; in the next Year this Nicholas released his Right in divers Lands that were formerly Sir Thomas Huscarls, and <sup>k</sup> Nicholas, Son of Nicholas de Carew, confirmed the same, and in the Year following <sup>l</sup> Maud, Widow of William Syndlesham, released to Nicholas de Carreu and his Son Nicholas, all her Right to the Mannor of Bedynton and the Advowson thereof. The King confirms the Release of the Mannor of Parrock made by this <sup>m</sup> Nicholas to Sir Simon de Burley, being a great Benefactor (*fructuosissimus* <sup>n</sup> amator, as the Terms are) to the Abbey of St. Albans, was in 1387 admitted with his Son Nicholas into the Benefits of the Fraternity of that Monastery: He was Examined in the <sup>o</sup> Case of Alice Perrers, and dying <sup>p</sup> seized of several Lands in the aforesaid Counties, and in that of Kent left his Son Nicholas his

<sup>b</sup> In offic. magnæ Garderobæ.

Per warrant' apud Grenewiche dat. 1 May  
21 H. 8. pro Nich. Carewe mil. ordinis Garter.

Pro xxii. virg. velvet crimsin pro una toga &  
uno capucio pretii cujuslibet virg. xvii.  
Pro xvi virg. Taffata alb. pro linura ejusd.  
Pro xxvi virg. Velvet blod. pro un. mantell pretii  
cujuslibet xviii.  
Pro xviii virg. Taffata alb. pro linura ejusd.  
Pro xviii unc. dim. seric. blod. pro Laquez  
knopes Button & Tassels pro eisdem robis ad xvi d.  
1e unc.  
Pro xviii unc. di. auri pro eadem causa ad vs.  
1e unc.

Pro vi Buttons magn. de auro pro eisdem laquez  
iiii s.

Sum Lxvii l. xix s. iid. nova empla.

<sup>c</sup> Lib. Nig. Gart.

<sup>d</sup> Britannia in Surrey.

<sup>e</sup> Pat. 6 H. VIII. p. 2. per innotescimus.

<sup>f</sup> Pat. 45 E. 3. vide Rymer, vol. 6, p. 742, 747.  
vol. 7, p. 19, 82, 122.

<sup>g</sup> Cart. 48 ad 51 E. 3. n. 20.

<sup>h</sup> Claus. 1 R. 2. m. 22d.

<sup>i</sup> Claus. 3 R. 2. m. 40d.

<sup>k</sup> Claus. 3 R. 2. m. 16d.

<sup>l</sup> Claus. 4 R. 2. m. 36.

<sup>m</sup> Pat. 7 R. 2. p. 1.

<sup>n</sup> Nero D. 7. p. 137. Bibl. Cotton.

<sup>o</sup> Parl. 1 R. 2. n. 41.

<sup>p</sup> Esch. 14 R. 2.



his Heir then 28 Years Old, who in 16 R. II, paid his <sup>9</sup> Relief for the Mannors of *Bedington* and *Huscarle*, and for a Portion of the Church of *Bedington* held of the Honour of *Wallingford*, &c. He was Knight of the <sup>r</sup> Shire for *Surrey* in the Parliaments 17, 18 and 20 R. II, of whom by the <sup>f</sup> Title of *Nicholas Carreu de Bedyngton*, there are many Deeds enrolled touching the Mannors of *Maycham*, *Malemeins*, *Nutfeild*, &c. and who held <sup>i</sup> *Great Maytham* in *Benenden* in *Kent*, and by the Title of *Nicholas<sup>u</sup> de Carreu Armiger de Bedyngton*, made in 3 H. V, a Feoffement of Messuages in *London*, which his Father *Nicholas* had by Letters Patents from *Edw. III*, of whom there are Deeds enrolled on the *Clofe-Rolle* 9 H. V. touching *Maychame* and *Malemeins*, with a Chantery in *Kent*, and of the Mannors of *Nutfeild* with the Advowson, *Carshalton*, *Norbury*, and several other Places; and having married *Luce*, Daughter and Heiress of *Richard de Willeby* Relict of *Sir Thomas Hurscarle*, <sup>x</sup> died the 4th of *Sept.* in the 11th of *Hen. VI*, leaving *Nicholas* his Son and Heir, who in his Father's Life-time, being then an Esquire, served in the <sup>y</sup> Voyage into *France*, and in his <sup>z</sup> Will made on *Tuesday* before *St. Bartholomew's Day* 1432, and proved on the 9th of *Sept.* following, mentions his Mother *Lucia*, his two Wives *Isabel* and *Murcia*, constituting the latter his Executrix, and devises Legacies to his Son *Nicholas*, and lies buried under a Monument in the Church at *Bedyngton*, where the Inscription informs us, He died full of Years on the 4th of *Sept.* 1432. The Sirname of his first Wife *Isabell* doth not appear to the Collector, but *Murcia* Daughter of *Stephen<sup>a</sup> Heyme* was his second Lady, in or before the 10th of *Hen. VI*, when by a <sup>b</sup> Fine he settled on her, and the Heirs Males of her Body by him to be begotten, the Mannors of *Maytham* and *Stoke*, with the Advowson of the Chantery there, the Mannors of *Purle*, *Salham* and *Hyde* in *Essex*, the Mannors of *Brandon*, *Cressalton*, and *Nutfeild* in *Surrey*, and for this Lady *Henry Sever* Doctor of Divinity by his <sup>c</sup> Will 4 *July* 1471, order'd an Obit to be for ever observed in *Merton College* in *Oxford*.

*Nicholas* his Son was <sup>d</sup> Sheriff of *Surrey* and *Sussex* for one Year from *Michaelmas* 27 H. VI, and out of the Issues thereof was ordered to pay the Master of the *Buck-Hounds*, and having married *Margaret* Daughter of *Sir Roger Fenis*, made his <sup>e</sup> Will in 1456, proved in 1458, and therein *Margaret* his Wife his Executrix devising *Bedington*, and several other Mannors to *Nicholas* his Eldest Son, and to the Heirs of his Body, and for want thereof to *James* his Second Son, which Eldest Son died <sup>f</sup> seized of *Bedington*, *Huscarl*, *Kershalton*, and *Nutfeild*, leaving by *Margaret* Daughter of *Edward Langford* another *Nicholas* his Son then three Years Old, and three Daughters, but after the Death of the said *Nicholas* the Son,

<sup>9</sup> Pasch. Fin. 16 R. 2. in Scaccar.  
<sup>r</sup> Claus. 17 R. 2. m. 9. dorso Claus. 18 R. 2.  
m. 6d. Claus. 20 R. 2. p. 2. m 2d.  
<sup>f</sup> Claus. 9 H. 5.  
<sup>i</sup> Philpot's Kent. p. 71.  
<sup>u</sup> Madox Form. Anglic. n. CCCxliii.  
<sup>x</sup> Efc. XI. H. 6.  
<sup>y</sup> Indent. in off. Pell.

<sup>z</sup> Lib. Luffenham in Off. Prærog. Cant. p. 124.  
<sup>a</sup> Vinc. Baron. MS. in Off. Arm. p. 242 l.  
<sup>b</sup> Claus. 10 H. 6. in dorso.  
<sup>c</sup> Warty's in Cur. Prærog. Cant. p. 19.  
<sup>d</sup> Priv. Sig. 2 March 28 H. 6.  
<sup>e</sup> Liber Stokton in Cur. Prærog. p. 94.  
<sup>f</sup> Efc. 6 B. 4.



Son, *Bedington*, &c. came to the said *James* his Uncle though the <sup>g</sup> three Sisters of the said *Nicholas* laid claim thereto, who <sup>b</sup> died 8 H. VII, and left by *Elizabeth*, <sup>i</sup> Daughter and Coheir of the Lord *Hoo*, Sir *Richard* his Son, created a Banneret at *Blackheath*, Sheriff of *Surrey* in 1501, to whom in the 19th Year the King <sup>k</sup> grants the Stewardship of the Mannor of *Walton* upon the Hill in *Surrey*, who was made <sup>l</sup> Lieutenant of *Calis* by *Hen. VII*, and continued in that honourable Post under *Hen. VIII*, to whom, and to Dame *Matilda* his Wife, *Thomas* Marquis of *Dorset* <sup>m</sup> granted all his Lands in *Calis*, and the *Marches* thereof, for their Lives, and in the 5th of *H. VIII*, that King was pleased to grant the <sup>n</sup> Lieutenantancy of *Calis* to him and *Nicholas* his Son during the Life of the longest Liver of them, and having been Sheriff of *Surrey* and *Sussex* in 17 H. VII, made his <sup>o</sup> Will on 10th of *May* 1520, proved in 1522, therein mentioning his Lady *Malyn* (who <sup>p</sup> was Daughter of *Robert Oxenbridge* of *Forden* in *Sussex*) and devising his Lands in *Surrey*, *Sussex*, *Lincoln*, *Essex* and *Guifnes* to *Nicholas* his Son, who was afterwards our Knight of the *Garther*, died on 23d of *May* 1520, as appears from the broken Inscription on the Tomb for him and his Lady still remaining at *Bedington*.

The Reader will observe that his Election into this Order was 24 Apr. 28 H. VIII, which was a very short Time before the Arraignment of Queen *Anne Bolein*, who being descended likewise from the <sup>q</sup> Lord *Hoo* by another Daughter, was nearly related to our Knight; but 'tis probable the King's Affection might be alienated from this Queen before this Time, since he gave Orders for her Restraint to her Chamber on the First of *May*.

This is the State of his Pedigree of our Knight from the Time of the Settlement at *Bedington*, but doubtless the Eminency of his Extraction mentioned as one of the Inducements for his Election had a View also to his Ancestors of the chief Line from whom he descended, which can be deduced from the Conquest with proper Vouchers.

In the first place it will be necessary to insert a <sup>r</sup> Record which points out the Period when this Surname was taken; by it King *John* confirms to *William de Carrio* the Mannour of *Molesford* in *Berkshire*, originally granted by *Hen. I*, Son of the Conqueror, to *Girald Fitz-Walter*, Grandfather of *Odo*, Father of this *William de Carrio*.

Here is an ample Voucher of the Antiquity of this Surname of *Carew*, and their lineal Descent from *Girald Fitz-Walter*, together with their early Possession of *Molesford*, which continued in this Family from Father to Son till the Reign of *Hen. VII*, as may be seen in the Inquisitions.

*Giraldus*

<sup>g</sup> Orig. 1 H. 7.

<sup>b</sup> Efc. 8 H. 7. n. 94. Orig. 8 H. 7. Rot. 8.

<sup>i</sup> Dugd. Bar. vol. 2. p. 234.

<sup>k</sup> Pat. 19 H. 7.

<sup>l</sup> Rymer, vol. 13. p. 232, 298, 310.

<sup>m</sup> Cart. 1 H. 8. penes Comitem Salopie.

<sup>n</sup> Bill. signat. 20 Nov. 5 H. 8.

<sup>o</sup> Lib. Bodseid in Cur. Prærog. Qu. 2.

<sup>p</sup> Lib. A. xi. penes me, p. 234. b.

<sup>q</sup> Dugd. 2 Vol. Baron. p. 234.

<sup>r</sup> Pat. 14 Johannis. Sciatis quod reddimus & hac carta nostra confirmavimus *W. llimo de Carrio* manerium de *Moleford* cum pertinentiis suis, quod *Henricus* Rex Avus Regis *Henrici* Patris nostri dedit *Geraldo* filio *Walteri* Avo *Odonis* patris prædicti *Willelmi de Carrio*, Tenendum eidem *Willelmo* & heredibus suis de nobis & heredibus nostris per servitium unius militis, &c. Datum per manus magistri *Richardi de Marisco* Archidiaconi Northumb. apud Westmon. 25 Maii Anno Regni nostri 14.



*Giraldus Cambrensis* <sup>f</sup> was about 20 Years old when he studied in *Paris* at the Time of the Birth of *Philip the August*, which being in 1166, he was born about 1146 (11th of King *Stephen*) and he tells us that he himself was the fourth Son of *William de Barri* by *Ankareth* Daughter of *Girald Fitz-Walter*, and *Nesla* Daughter of *Refus* Prince of *South-wales*, who were also the Father and Mother of *William de Carrio* Father of *Odo* (Father of *William de Carrio* to whom this Confirmation was made) and therefore he calls this *Odo* *Consobrinum suum* his Mother's Brother's Son.

This Appellation of *Fitz-Walter* mentioned in the Record and this Historian was given to this *Gerald Castellán* of *Pembroke*, because he was a " younger Son of *Walter Fitz-Other* Castellán of *Windsor*, mention'd in *Domesdaie*, and therefore *Cambrensis* calls him <sup>x</sup> *Giraldus de Windesora*, and names his Son *Willielmus filius* <sup>y</sup> *Geraldi de Pembrokeſhire*, who was Father of *Reimond le Grosse* hereafter mentioned, and of this *Odo*, who according to the Custom of that Age nominated himself <sup>z</sup> *Odo filius Willimi filii Geroldi*, but at length fixed on the Sirname of *Carrio*, which he transmitted down to his Posterity, and which he assumed (not from *Charru* a Plough, as the Learned <sup>a</sup> Descendant from him conjectured but) from *Kaerew* a Word signifying in the *British* Language the <sup>b</sup> Ramparts of a Fortrefs, being the Name of a Castle in *Pembrokeſhire* the <sup>c</sup> Patrimony and Seat of this Family, and which continued in the Heir Male till the Reign of *Hen. VIII*, when *Sir Edmund Carew Baron Carew* mortgaged it to *Sir Rhis ap Thomas* Knight also of this Order, upon the Expedition to *Therouenne*, where being himself Master of the Ordnance, he had the Misfortune to be kill'd by a <sup>d</sup> Canon Ball the second Day after the Siege commenced.

This *Odo* surnamed sometimes *de Carrio*, notwithstanding the Grant of the Mannor of *Molesford* by *Hen. I*, met with Controversies from <sup>e</sup> *Geffery de Chause*, who pretended some Title to it. Before this Sirname became steadily fixed, *Richard the First* granted the Mannour of *Braunton* in *Devon*, <sup>f</sup> *Odoni filio Willimi filii Geraldi*, under an yearly Rent, and King *John* in his 5th Year grants to *Robert de Sechevill* the same Land that <sup>g</sup> *Odo de Carrio* held in *Braunton*, which shews the Identity of the Person, and probably this was after *Odo's* Death, which we shall immediately find must have happened before the 9th of that King, when his Son met with new Troubles about *Molesford*. However that may be, we learn from <sup>h</sup> *Cambrensis* that he certainly married the Daughter of *Richard Fitz-Tancred*, who

<sup>f</sup> MS. de Principis Instructione in Bibl. Cotton Julius B. 13.

<sup>t</sup> Anglia sacra, vol. 2. p. 468.

<sup>u</sup> Dugd. 1 Vol. p. 509.

<sup>x</sup> Apud Camdeni Britan. in Pembroke.

<sup>y</sup> Anglia sacra, vol. 2. p. 483. Lib. Rub. in Scaca. 12 H. 2. Will. fil. Gerardi de Pembroke tenet Hermitage in Com. Berks.

<sup>z</sup> Regr. de Reading in Bibl. Harley 92 C. 20. p. 69.

<sup>a</sup> Carew's Survey of Cornwall, p. 103.

<sup>b</sup> Lhwyd's Addit. to Camd. Britan. p. 591.

<sup>c</sup> Camd. Britan. in Pembroke. Dugd. Warwickſhire, p. 514. Leland's Itiner. vol. 4. f. 49.

<sup>d</sup> Holling. p. 8. 17 b. 10.

<sup>e</sup> Placita de Ter. Mich. 6 R. 1. Rot. 3. Berks. Odo de Karriou ponit Willielmum filium suum versus Gaufr. de Chause de placito terræ in Molesford.

<sup>f</sup> E. Collect. Willielmi Pole mil.

<sup>g</sup> Liber 5 Joh. m. 6. 19 Januarii Roberto de Sechevill terram quam Odo de Carrio tenuit de nobis in Braunton. Fin. 7 Joh. m. 4. Rob. de Sechevill dat. L. marc. & un. palefrid. pro habenda terra, quæ fuit Odonis de Karriou in Braunton, &c.

<sup>h</sup> Angl. Sacra, vol. 2. p. 468.



was a Man of Power in <sup>i</sup> *Pembroke*, her Christian Name might be <sup>k</sup> *Margaret*, and they had two Sons *William* and <sup>l</sup> *Stephen*.

This *William* finding *Gilbert* (probably Son of *Geffery*) *de Cauze* had demanded *Molesford* by a Writ of Right, followed the Practice of that Age by giving <sup>m</sup> King *John* 40 Ounces of Gold that he might not be impleaded, and thereon obtained the above-mentioned memorable Confirmation of this Mannour. After the Death of his Uncle *Reimond the Grosse*, *William Marshall* seized on his Lands, and even of the Mansion or Castle *de Carrio*, which compelled him to apply by the same Method in paying the King 400 Marks for a Writ of *Mort D'Ancestor*, which is entered in the " Pipe Roll 15 *Joh.* and relates to the Time of the Beginning of the Payment of that Summ, for the Composition was doubtless made in the former Year, when a Writ was issued to the Bailiff of <sup>o</sup> *Glamorgan* to deliver to him *Dominium suum de Carrio*. *Harpeter* gives a Fine for the Lands of this *William* <sup>p</sup> *citra Mare Hibernicum*, which strongly implies he had Lands in *Ireland*, where this *Geraldine* Family (as <sup>q</sup> *Cambrensis* names it) had a great Share, and probably these Lands might likewise come to him from his Uncle *Reymond*, who married <sup>r</sup> *Basille* the Sister of *Richard Strongbowe*, and might in all likelihood accompany him in the Expedition for the Conquest of *Ireland*: Whether this Oblation (as it was then called) of *Harpeters* was after the Death of this *William de Carrio*, and for the Custody of these Lands during the Minority of his Heir might be discovered from the Pipe Rolls, since *William de Carrio* had obliged himself to pay the 400 Marks in four Years next after the 15th of King *John* by even yearly Portions, and that it was so seems credible in that this same *Harpeter*, in 8 H. III, made a Composition for the <sup>s</sup> Fine which he should have paid King *John* for the Custody of the Lands and the Wardship of the Son and Heir of this *William*, whose Christian Name was *Nicholas*, of whom there are very few Materials, because he was thus in his Minority in 8 H. III, and died in or before the 12th Year of that King, when <sup>t</sup> *Bertram de Criol* had Seisin of *Molesford* du-

<sup>i</sup> Camden's Britan. in *Penbroch*.

<sup>k</sup> Lib. Rub. in Scacc. Bucks, *Margaretta* quæ fuit uxor *Odonis filii Willielmi* tenet unum feodum, &c. but it may be doubted whether this be the same Lady.

<sup>l</sup> Registr. Abb. S. Thomæ in Dublin *Stephanus* filius *Odonis de Karru* dat Ecclesiam de Trumore.

<sup>m</sup> Fin. 9 Joh. m. 6 *Willielmus de Carrio* dat. 40. uncias auri quod non implacitetur de terra sua de *Molesford*, vide Rot. Oblat. de dicto Anno Magn. Rot. Pip. x. *Johannis* apud *Madox Hist. of the Exchequer*, p. 311.

<sup>n</sup> Magn. Rot. 15. Joh. Rot. 5. *Berkfira Willielmus de Cario* debet 400 Marcas pro habenda seissina de *Molesford* cum pertinentiis in Com. de *Berch-sira* & pro habenda inde Carta Regis, ut manerium illud tenere possit, sicut Antecessores sui tenuerunt; Et pro habendo Breui de Morte Antecessores versus *Will. Marescallum* de x libratibus terræ cum pertinentiis, quas clamat ex parte *Reimundi Avunculi* sui: & pro habenda Seissina *Domus de Carrio*. Et inde Regi obfides invenit de fideli servitio, de quibus debet reddere per Annum 100 Marc. *Madox History of the Exchequer*, p. 340.

<sup>o</sup> Pat. 14. *Johannis* m. 6. Sciatis quod reddidimus *Willielmo de Carrio* Dominium suum de *Carrio* cum terris, quas habuit die, qua venimus ultimo usq; *Penbroach* ante transfretandum in *Hibernia*, &c.

<sup>p</sup> Fin. 15. Joh. m. 6. 17th Sept. *Will. de Harpeter* finem fecit cum Domino Rege pro 40 Marc. & 4 Palefridis, pro habendis terris *Willielmi de Carrio*, quas habet citra mare *Hibernicum*, & pro jure quod prædictus *Willielmus de Carrio* clamat de terris sitis citra mare *Hibernicum*, &c.

<sup>q</sup> Angl. Sacra, vol. 2. p.

<sup>r</sup> Gemeticensis, l. 8. p. 307.

<sup>s</sup> Fin. 8 H. 3. m. 8. *Willielmus de Harpeter* finem fecit pro 280 Marc. quas Domino Regi debet de fine quem fecit cum Domino *Johanne Rege* pro custodia terræ & hæredis *Willielmi de Carrio*.

<sup>t</sup> Pat. 12 H. 3. m. 1. 20 Febr. Rex conc. *Bertram de Criol* manerium de *Molesford* quod *Nicholaus de Karru* tenuit in capite usq; ad ætatem Hæredum ipsius *Nicholai*.

Claus. 16 H. 3. m. 15. *Bertramus de Criol* habet Seissinam manerii de *Molesford*, quod *Nicholaus de Carriko* de Rege tenuit in Capite, habendum ad ætatem hæredum dicti *Nicholai*.



ring the Minority of the Heir of this *Nicholas de Carriko*: He is said to have married *Ada* Daughter of *Adam*, Great Grandson of *Arnulph de Montgomery* Lord (and others say " Earl of) *Pembroke*, whence probably the Tradition took its Rise, that this Family of *Carew* was first called *Montgomery* <sup>x</sup>, and whose Arms they are said to bear. This *Nicholas* living so little Time must of course leave in Minority his Son.

*William*, who conveyed Lands held *de Baroniâ suâ de Karreu*, by a <sup>y</sup> Fine levied before the Steward of the Earl of *Pembroke*.

*Nicholas* his Son is doubtless *N. Carewe*, by whose Marriage, (as Mr. <sup>z</sup> *Camden* saith) with the Daughter of one *Digon*, the Barony of *Ydron* or *Odron* was brought into this Family, which, by the way, is a <sup>a</sup> Barony within the County of *Catherlogh* in *Ireland*, a sort of *Palatinate* having Royal Liberties (belonging formerly to *Margaret* Countess of *Norfolk*) and which Barony, in Mr. *Camden's* <sup>b</sup> Remembrance, was recovered after a long Usurpation by Sir *Peter Carewe* the Heir Male of this Family. This Lady is in the <sup>c</sup> Deeds named *Amicia*, Daughter of *Richard Tuit* of *Odron* whose Grandfather was Founder of *Granard* Monastery, and slain by the sudden fall of a Tower at <sup>d</sup> *Athlone*.

Sir *Nicholas* their Son was a Person of great Figure in the Reign of *Ed. I.*, who used a <sup>e</sup> Seal in 1283, having the Impression of the Bodies of three Lions concentring in one Head, like the <sup>f</sup> contemporary one of *Edmond* second Son of *Hen. III.* He was in 27 *E. I.*, summoned to appear with Horse and Armour in the Expedition against the <sup>g</sup> *Scots*, and again upon the same Account 29 *E. I.*, and a rhiming Poet acquaints us what Arms he bore at the Siege of <sup>h</sup> *Karlaverock*, which agree with those on his Seal appendant to the famous Instrument to the Pope, signed by the Great Men [*Proceres*] in the Parliament at *Lincoln* (as the Terms are) *Tam pro nobis, quam pro totâ communitate prædicti Regni Angliæ* (among whom this Person is stiled <sup>i</sup> *Nicholaus de Caureu Dominus de Mulesford*, setting forth the King's Right to *Scotland*: He by *Amicia*, Sister and Heiress of <sup>k</sup> *John Peverel*, had Issue Sir *John* of *Mounts Otery*, his Heir, *Thomas*, and *Nicholas* Ancestor to our Knight.

This upper Part of the Pedigree, containing only the ascending Line or Progenitors of our Knight before the Settlement of this Branch at *Bedington*, shews sufficiently the Eminency of his Extraction, and if the De-

<sup>u</sup> Mr. *Camden's* Brit. in *Pembrokeshire* does not affirm him to have been an Earl, but Mon. Angl. vol. 1. p. 381, and *Ordericus Vitalis*, l. 8. p. 708, seem to confirm it.

<sup>x</sup> *Leland's* Itiner. vol. 3. f. 40. vol. 4. f. 49. *Camden's* Britan. in *English*, p. 630.

<sup>y</sup> *E. Collect. Willimi Pole* mil. Hæc est finalis concordia facta in Curia Domini *Willimi de Valence* Comitis *Penbrock* Anno R. R. *Hen.* 37. coram R. de N. tunc senescallo, &c. inter Dominum *Willielmum* de *Karru* petentem, & R. M. tenentem de III *Carucatis*, &c. in *Baronia* sua de *Karren*, &c. falvis servitiis, quæ accidere debent in *Baronia* sua de *Karren*, &c.

<sup>z</sup> *Britan. in Engl.* p. 987.

<sup>a</sup> *Davis's Reports*, p. 65.

<sup>b</sup> *Camden* in *Catherlogh*.

<sup>c</sup> *Ex Apographis Cartarum* penes me.

<sup>d</sup> *Annals of Irel. in Camd. Britan.* sub A. D. 1211.

<sup>e</sup> *E. Collect. Willimi Pole* mil.

<sup>f</sup> *Sandf. Geneal. Hist.* p.

<sup>g</sup> *Ryley's* Plac. Parl. p. 486.

<sup>h</sup> *Les Noms & les Armes de Seigneurs, &c.* a l'asseige de *Karlaverok* en *Escoce* 1300. in *Bibl. Cotton*.

Un vaillant home, & de grant lei  
Olui *Nichole* de *Harru*.  
Dont meinte foiz orent paru  
Li fait en couvert e en land  
Sur la fellowne gent d' *Ireland*  
Baniere & jaun bien passable  
O trois passans Lyons de Sable

<sup>i</sup> *Rymer*, vol. 2. p. 84.

<sup>k</sup> *Ex Apographis Cartarum*.



sign of the present Work would allow it, the Collector would be very glad to carry down the Succession of this eldest Branch, which hath received many additional Honours by Matches with several noble Families, and hath produced a long Series of Baron Carews of great Fame for Military and Civil Affairs, of which Sir *Tho. Carewe*, now of *Haccombe* in *Devon*, and Sir *William Carewe* of *Anthony* in *Cornwall* both Baronets, are the direct Descendants in the Male Line; for he readily owns that he hath given the Proofs of this Pedigree more largely with Regard to the latter, for he shall never esteem it Criminal to pay his due Respects to his Friends.

But here is a Particularity as to the Title of Baron Carew, which in a Scrutiny of this <sup>l</sup> Order in 25 *Hen. VI*, being given to the then Heir of this Family, who is in that Suffrage placed in the *Classis* of Barons, it cannot be any Digression, because it will explain that Entry in the *Black-Book*, to observe, that tho' none of this Family had been summoned as Barons to any regular Parliament till Sir *George Carewe* Baron of *Clopton* in the Reign of *Jac. I*, made Earl of *Totness* by *Car. I*, (it is said regular Parliament because Sir *John de Carewe* was summoned to a great Council held in 35 *E. III*, about the Affairs of <sup>m</sup> Ireland) yet the Title of Baron was not only used by this Family in their private Deeds and <sup>n</sup> Epitaphs, but was attributed by our <sup>o</sup> Historians, and which is of undeniable Authority, our Kings themselves in the <sup>p</sup> Records give them the same honourable Appellation.

Mr. *Cambden* <sup>q</sup> styles the above-named *Nicholas Baro de Moulesford*, led thereto probably by the Expression *Dominus de Molesford* in the above-mention'd Letter to the Pope; but that alone seems not a full Proof, that He was Baron of that Place, because there are no less than Twenty Seven subscribing that Letter, who all of them have the Title of *Dominus* of some Place prefixed to each of their Names, and yet none of them were summoned as *Barons* to that Parliament. The Conclusion of this Letter to the Pope seems somewhat like that in the Parliament 8 *H. IV*, where *Tiptoft* the Speaker subscribes with the Lords, <sup>r</sup> *Vice totius Communi-*

<sup>l</sup> Lib. Nig. Garterii sub dicto Anno.

<sup>m</sup> Dugd. Summons, p. 264. Rym. vol. 6. p. 319.

<sup>n</sup> In Ecclesia Abbatis Westm. Orate pro animabus *Nicholai Baronis* quondam de *Carew* qui obiit 1470, &c. *Keeps Monuments*, p. 78.

<sup>o</sup> *Hollingshead*, *Stow*, *Hall*, &c. *Camd.* in Britan. in Berks, & Devon. in *Haccomb*. MS. *Radulphi Basset* de conquestu Regni Franciæ in Officio Arm. M. 9. p. 32. le Baron du *Karne* du pays de *Cornewaille*.

*Scala Mundi* MS. in Offic. Arm. inter Libros Ducis Norfolciæ n. 5. Anno 6 *H. 5.* cum Duce *Clarentia*. Baro de *Carew*.

G. 2. penes me among the Knights made at the Coronation of *Hen. VI*. Le Sire & Baron de *Carn*.

*Fenning's MS.* of Coat of Arms. Chron. Godstovian. edit. per Hearn ad calcem vitæ *Tho.* Mori. p. 243. In Registro Bourgchier Archiepiscopi Cantuar. 21 Feb. 1457, Baroni de *Carew*. Chron. St. Albani in Bibl. Bodl. A. F. ixi. 8 *H. 4.* *Tho.* Baro de *Karrew* ad obsidionem castri de *Aberustwick*.

*Acta Conc.* Priv. 21 *H. 6.* in *Cleopatra* F. iv. p. 68 b. To the Baron of *Carreu*.

<sup>p</sup> Claus. 14 *H. 4.* m. 9. *Thomas* Baroni de *Carrene* Chevalier Rym. vol. p. 773.

Privat. Sigill. 8 Juin 3 *H. 5.* —Que veue Endenture d'entre nous & nostre foial Chevalier *Thomas* Baron de *Carrem*, sur ce quil est retenuz devers nous avec douze hommes d'armes lui mesmes acontez & quatre archers pour nous faire service en guerre en le viage, &c. Fran. 4 *H. 5.* m. 24. *Tho.* Baro de *Carrem* super salva custodia villæ de *Harslew* habet protectionem.

Pat. 4 *H. 5.* m. 9. pro bono & acceptabili servitio, quod dilectus & fidelis miles noster *Thomas* Baro de *Carrene* nobis impendit, &c.

Fran. 6 *H. 5.* *Tho.* Baro de *Carew* miles profecturus in Comitatu *Thomas* Ducis *Exon*.

Fran. 6 *H. 5.* *Tho.* Baroni de *Carew* militi apud *Rymer*, vol. 10. p. 168. Priv. Sigill. 14 *H. 6.* in Off. Pell. a nostre Chier. & foial Chevalier le Baron de *Carewe* par certains noz Joialx, &c. Priv. Sig. 20 Oct. 9 *H. 6.* in Off. Pell. a nostre tresch. & foial le Baron de *Carrem* Cent marcs, &c.

<sup>q</sup> Britan in *Haccomb*. in *Devon*.

<sup>r</sup> See Prin's Preface to Cotton's Records.



tatis. In other places we meet with this Family likewise using the Title of / Dominus de Carreu.

But *Molesford* is no where, that this Collector knows, added to the word *Baron*, as the word *Carreu* is, which *Castle* (that first gave the Surname to this Family) being called a *Barony*, and Mr. *Camden* being informed by some Sages of the Law, that *Baron* and *Barony* are conjugates, it may not be improbable the Appellation of *Baron* in this Family might be taken from this Place, which continued in their Possession till the Reign of *Hen. VIII.* but then this *Castle* being seated in *Pembroke-shire*, where the Ancient Earls had " *totum Regale*, and in a Pleading were allowed to have the like Privileges with *Ches-ter* and *Dur-ham*, and the same is expressly called a *Palatinate*, and since all such either *Foreign* or *Domestick* had *Barons*, and it being certain that *Pembroke* had those of *Haverford*, *Camneys*, *Roch*, and *Castle Garwen*, probably *Carewe* might be of the like nature, unless the same was one of the *Barons* in the *Marches* of *Wales* near adjoining to this *Castle*, as indeed it is reckoned in a *MS.* for which there seems to be some Foundation by those Inquisitions which find that this Family held *Carew* *Castle* in *Marchiis* *Walliæ*, wherein we know were likewise several such *Baronies*.

But 'tis high time to return to the Actions and Employments of our Knight, who had his Education in *France*, as by an *Author* of that

f E charta origin. penes *Ptr. le Neve* Norroy Reg. Arm. Pateat universis quod Ego *Johannes* de *Carreu* dominus de *Carreu* recepi de dom. *Gilberto Talbot* decem libras 12 E. 2. pro maritagio filii mei ad *Alianoram* filiam dicti *Gilberti*.

i Britann. in Salop. de Baronia de *Burford*.

u Ryley placita Parl. p. 34, 40, 41, 44, 103.

x Fragment Plac. ad temp. H. 3. in Turre. A nuper obit being brought against *John Scot* Earl of *Ches-ter* by the other *Coberts* of *Randal* Earl of *Ches-ter*, and the Summons being made on some of his Lands in *Northampton*, he pleaded, Quod noluit respondere ad hoc breve, nisi curia consideraverit, & consideratione *Parium* suorum, per summonitionem factam in Comitatu *Northampton* de terris in Comitatu *Castria* ubi brevia Domini Regis non currunt. But the Judgment is, Quia usitatum est hucusque quod Pares sui, & alii qui libertates habent consimiles sicut *Episcopus Dunelm.* & Comes *Marescallus* [Comes *Penbrochiæ*] respondent de terris infra libertates suas per summonitionem factam ad terras extra libertates suas. This Pleading was about 14 H. 3. and there is some Reference to it in *Fitz. Brief* 881, Partition 18.

y Confirmation to *Laurence Hastings* printed in *Camd. Britan. of Penbroke*.

z The *Palatinate* of *Champagne* had seven *Barons* or *Peers*, the Earl of *Guifnes* twelve, the Earl of *Vermandois* six, the Earl of *Haynalt* eight, the Earl of *Flanders* twelve, the Earl of *Boulonnois* &c.

a Those of *Ches-ter* are well known, as are many of those of *Durham*, who have had the Titles of their *Baronies* given them by our Kings in the Records: Thus the *Baron* of *Hilton*, Parl. 1 H. 4. n. 73. *Rymer*, vol. 7. p. 668, 750. *Esch.* 27 H. 1. Pat. 1 H. 6. p. 1. That of *Burford* in *Salop* will be explained in the *Memoirs* of the Life of *Sir John Cornwall*.

b Ryley ut supra.

c *George Owen* in his Description of *Penbroke*.

d *Joh. Carreu* de terris in *Molesford*, *Southampton*, *Devon*, & *Carreu* *Castle* in *Marchiis Walliæ*.

e There hath been a great deal said of these *Baronies*,

to which shall be here only added, that in a Pleading, Coram Rege de Ter Michaelis Anno 19 E. 1. finiente, incipiente 20 Rot. 54. Hereford. Quod continetur in magna Carta *Johannis* Regis de *Ronemede*, quod si aliquis Baro de *Marchia* disceissus fuerit de libero tenemento in *Marchia*, restum teneatur secundum constitutiones *Marchiæ*. These are sometimes stiled generally *Marchiones*, as is observed by *Camden* in *Shropshire*, to which may be added, Pat. 5. 3 H. 3. m. 28. Quod *Edmundus* filius Regis habeat in Terris de *Hermenden*, &c. Regale Regis, sicut alii *Marchiones* habent in terris suis in *Marchiis Walliæ*. Gours est un baronie en *Marches* de *Gales* Affise 382. Plac. coram Rege M. 9. E. 1. Rot. 35. *Gilb. de Clare* Comes *Gloc.* clamat terras suas in *Glamorgan*, sicut Regale, and pleads *Magna Carta* to the same Purpose. This Pleading about *Glamorgan* is the rather here mention'd because the above Order in 14th of King *John*, for the Delivery of the House of *Carewe* was directed to the Bailiff of this Place. See the Names of the Lord *Marchers* of *Wales*, Rot. Scot. 9 E. 2. m. 2. & 1. & Rot. Scot. 11 E. 2. m. 6. & Scot. 10 E. 3. m. 21. d. & m. 19. & Rot. Scot. 1 E. 2. m. 8. 9. dors de libertatibus Dom. *Marchar*. Pat. 15 E. 2. p. 2. m. 10. pro Abb. de *Goldclive*.

f Vinc. MS. in Offic. *Armor.* n. 91. See *Stow* 10 H. VIII. In a Letter from *Tho. Bolein* to *Card. Wolsey*, May 10. 1519, That it is written to the French King (as he told me) how the King's Grace hath put away divers of his *Mignons*, as *Carew*, *Bryan*, *Nevel*, *Guilford*, *Peché* and *Pointz*; that the manner of it was thus, The Cardinal and the Council sent for these Gentlemen, and said to them how the brute was, that they governed the King after their appetite which was not honourable, wherefore they should come no more to Court, &c. others were put into their places, viz. *Weston*, *Kinston* and *Jerningham*, and the Cardinal in his Answer saith these young Men (as he calls them) were removed, and other sad Counsailors put in their places. Collect. Master in *Bibl. Coll. Jesu Oxon.*



Nation we are informed that *Nicholas Carew*, *Francis Brian*, and other young Gentlemen bred up for a long Time in the Court of *France*, being made Gentlemen of the Privy-Chamber to *Hen. VIII*, not only behaved themselves according to the *French* Manners and Fashions, but took all Opportunities of extolling the King and Court of *France* as superior to that of *England*, were therefore in 1519 removed without assigning any Reason, and *William Kingston*, *Richard Wingfeild*, *Richard Ferningham*, and *Richard Weston* Knights placed in their Rooms.

It hath been already mentioned that in 5 *Hen. VIII*, he was joined in the Patent with his Father for the Lieutenancy of *Calis* during the Life of the longest Liver of them, and in 6 *H. VIII*, on 27 *Apr.* the King grants to him and his Heirs the Reversion of the Mannors of *Plompton*, *Bercombe*, *Fletching*, *Pedingho*, *Buskegage*, and *Birling*, after the Death of the Countess of *Oxford*, and the first Avoidance of the <sup>b</sup> Chantry of the Holy Cross in *St. Nicholas* Church in *Calis*, and in the next Year 7 *May* had an <sup>i</sup> Annuity of 20 *l.* during his Life issuing out of the Revenues of *Calis*, and on the 6th of *Nov.* the like <sup>k</sup> Annuity of 50 Marks for executing the Office *unius Ciphariorum ad receptam Scaccarii*. In 8 *H. VIII*, the King, <sup>l</sup> Duke of *Suffolk*, Earl of *Essex*, and *Nicholas Carewe*, were Challengers at the Justs then held. In 9th Year had the Custody of the Mannor of *Plefaunce* in <sup>m</sup> *East-Grenwich* for Life, and in the 10th Year <sup>n</sup> was again one of the Justers, and in the 11th had the Lieutenancy of the Tower of *Ruysbanke* in <sup>o</sup> *Picardy* for the like Term, having also an <sup>p</sup> Annuity of 109 *l.* during Pleasure, and was one of the <sup>q</sup> Justers on the *English* Side at the Interview between *Hen. VIII* and *Francis I.*

In the 13th *H. VIII*, being then a Knight had the Office of Constable of the Castle of <sup>r</sup> *Wallingford* with the Stewardship of that Honour, *St. Valeries* and the four Hundreds, and in the 15th served in the Wars against *Scotland* under the <sup>s</sup> Earl of *Surrey*.

In the 14th the King makes him three Grants dated the <sup>t</sup> same Day to be Master of the Horse for Life, Steward of *Bradsted* in *Kent*, with the Custody of the Park which lately belonged to the Duke of *Bucks*, and granted to him and *Elizabeth* his Wife and their Heirs, the Mannor of *Blechingele*, with the Advowsons of the Churches thereto belonging. He was one of the Embassadors in *Nov.* 1527 (19 *H. VIII*) appointed to carry <sup>u</sup> this Order of the *Garter* to the *French* King. In 28th Year he was appointed chief Steward of the Mannors of <sup>x</sup> *Perching*, *Preston*, and others in *Suffex*, and in the 29th Year was made Captain of the Isle of <sup>y</sup> *Gernesey*, and of *Cornet* Castle, and is said to have been *de z in-*

<sup>g</sup> Pat. 6 *H. 6.* p. 2.

<sup>h</sup> Priv. Sigill. 6 *H. 8.* 5 *May*.

<sup>i</sup> Priv. Sig. 7 *H. 8.*

<sup>k</sup> Pat. 7 *H. 8.* p. 3.

<sup>l</sup> Stow's *Annals*, p. 504.

<sup>m</sup> Pat. 9 *H. 8.* p. 2. 18 *Dec.*

<sup>n</sup> Above, p. 241. in the *Life* of *Sir Henry Guil-*

*ford.*

<sup>o</sup> Pat. 11 *H. 8.* p. 2. 20 *May*.

<sup>p</sup> Ibid. 18 *May*.

<sup>q</sup> Lord Herbert's *History* of *H. 8.* p. 89.

<sup>r</sup> Pat. 13 *H. 8.* p. 1. 2 *Junii*.

<sup>s</sup> *The English Historians.*

<sup>t</sup> Pat. 14 *H. 8.* p. 2. 18 *July*.

<sup>u</sup> *Ashm. Append. n.* 116. where there is a *Mistake* in the Year of the Kings Reign.

<sup>x</sup> Pat. de dicto Anno.

<sup>y</sup> Pat. 29 *H. 8.* p. 2. 26 *June*.

<sup>z</sup> Vinc. *Surrey*, p. 39.



*teriori Cubiculo Regis*, and was Captain also of <sup>a</sup> *Ruysbanke* near *Calais*.

Being accused for being of Counsel, as <sup>b</sup> *Stow* expresses it, with the Marquess of *Exeter* and others, by endeavouring to maintain, promote and advance Cardinal *Poole* the King's Enemy, and to deprive the King. He <sup>bb</sup> was attainted by Act of Parliament in 31 *H. VIII*, wherein 'tis said *Nicholas Carewe* Knight, and several others, abominable Traitors and Rebels, who were and be by the Common Laws of this Realm attainted of High Treason, and have suffered Execution for the same, and another Act passed at the same Time for the Attainder of *Gertrude Courtney* Wife to the Marquess of *Exeter*, for confederating her self with the said Traitor *Nicholas Carewe*, but in the Parliament 1 *E. VI*, *Francis* his Son procured a Reversal of this Attainder. 'Tis remembred in a Law <sup>c</sup> Report that he said, Marvel greatly that the Indictment against the Lord Marquess was so secretly handled, and to what Purpose, for the like was never seen.

He was beheaded on the 3d of *March* on *Tower-Hill* 1538-9, who had been a zealous Papist, yet when he came to suffer, exhorted all People to read the Scriptures carefully, acknowledging that the Judgements of God came justly upon him for the Hatred that he formally bore to the Gospel, as a <sup>d</sup> Writer of great figure expresses it, but the Words of *Hollinshed* are not of so extensive a force. His Body was <sup>e</sup> buried in the Church of *St. Botolphs Aldgate*.

*Fuller* in his <sup>f</sup> *Worthies* entertains his Readers with a Tradition in the Family, that the King having given this Knight opprobrious Language between jest and earnest while they were at Bowels, the Knight returned an Answer rather true than discrete, as more consulting his own Animosity, whereby he offended and fell into displeasure: He mentions not the particular Answer said to be made.

He married *Elizabeth* Daughter of *Sir Francis Brian*, who after the Death of her Brother became one of his Coheirs, and by her he had a Son and four Daughters. *Sir Francis* his Son was restored in Blood by Act of Parliament 2 *Marie*, and died unmarried Aged 81 Years on 16 May 1611, having adopted *Sir Nicholas Throckmorton* Son of *Anne* his [third] Sister to be Heir to his Estate, and to bear his Surname, as 'tis worded on his Monument in *Bedington Church*.

A Plate of his Arms was doubtless affixed in the Chapel upon his Installation, which was removed upon his Attainder, and in a Parchment <sup>g</sup> Manuscript of the then *Garret* King of Arms, the Coat of our Knight consisting of six Quarterings is surrounded with the Ensign of this Order, as exhibited in the Frontispiece of these Memoirs.

The first contains the Ancient Arms Or, three Lions passant Sable, without any Distinction of Cadency, which notwithstanding the Separation of this Branch from the Trunk or chief Line, was as old as the Reign of *Edw. II*, in strictness possibly should not have been omitted. The

<sup>a</sup> Dugd. 2 Vol. Bar. p. 423.

<sup>b</sup> *Stow's Annals*, p. 576. *Wever's Funeral Monuments*, p. 426.

<sup>bb</sup> *Hollingshead*, p. 946, taken from Hall in 30 *H. 8*.

<sup>c</sup> 1 Cro. p. 124.

<sup>d</sup> *Burnet's Hist. Reform. Vol. 3*.

<sup>e</sup> See *Wever's Funeral Monuments*, p. 426.

<sup>f</sup> In *Surrey*.

<sup>g</sup> *Vinc. MS. n. 152. in Off. Arm.*



second Quarter *Hoo*, the third *Wells* quarterly with *Engayne*, the fourth *Waterton*, the fifth *Mohun*, the last *Idron*.

Mr. <sup>b</sup> *Vincent* writes that *George* Baron *Carew* of *Clopton*, (afterwards Earl of *Totnes*) derived himself in a Lineal Descent from *John de Mohun* who lived in 1 E. III, 'tis certain that in the 10th of Ed. I, Sir *John Carew* had the Mannors of *Otery Mohun*, *Monketon*, *Galmeton*, and *Stoke-fleming* in *Devon*. by his Marriage with *Alianor* one of the Daughters and Coheirs of *William de Mohun*, by whom he had only two Sons, who both died without Issue, yet the Descendants of this Sir *John* have quarter'd the Arms of *Mohun* by Vertue as 'tis said of a ' Conveyance of them made by this Lady to her Husband and the Heirs of his Body.

Here being a Concession of Arms and an Adoption into them, it may not be amiss to insert cursorily some short Notices on both Articles. The Proprietors of Coat Armours did frequently assign and transfer them to the Exclusion of their own Heirs by particular Grants, whereof some are <sup>k</sup> enrolled in the *Tower*, and others may be consulted in ' printed Authors, for Arms were then esteemed Inheritances alienable; some Civilians have thought Ladies were not entituled to this Power, grounding themselves on the Texts, *Mulier sue Familiae caput est, & finis, & Descendentes ex foemina non sunt de Familia*; though this Privilege hath been allowed to them in this Kingdom, for the Lady <sup>m</sup> *Lucy* by a Fine upon Record made such a Conveyance to her Husband the Lord *Percy*, and to the Heirs Males of his Body, though she had no Children by him; and there is published another such Grant of Arms by a <sup>n</sup> Widow that was an Heiress, and this Notion of the Civilians is contrary to the Forms of several Matrimonial Contracts; but though such Dispositions have been in Fact made, yet the Legality of such Concessions have been called in question. It appears from the <sup>o</sup> Depositions in the Case between *John* Lord *Lovel*, and *Thomas* Lord *Morle*, touching the Arms born by the Antient Lord *Burnels*, that *Robert Morle* the Defendant's Grandfather had been Esquire of *Edward* Lord *Burnel*, who died without Issue in 9 E. II, and that afterwards this same *Robert* bore these Arms in the Wars of *Scotland*, where being demanded for what Reason he did so, answered, That he took them because they were void. This Lord *Burnell* left one Sister his Heir, who by her first Husband was Grandmother of the Plaintiff, and by her second Husband had a Son *Nicholas*, that assumed the Sirname of *Burnell*, who finding this *Robert de Morle* invested in these Arms at the Siege of *Calis* prosecuted him in the Court Military for bearing them, which made so great an Impression on him, that he made a publick Declaration confirmed by his Oath, that if Sentence should be given against him, he would never undertake any other Military Expedition, on which (as the Words are) the King considering the Nobility of this *Robert* (whose Merits indeed were large) and to eschew a Trial

<sup>b</sup> *Against Brooke*, p. 475.

<sup>i</sup> *MS. Will. Pole mil.*

<sup>k</sup> See *Prynne on the fourth Inst.* p. 70, &c.

<sup>l</sup> See several Instances in *Camden's Remains*. Ryshe in *Upton*, p. 103, 104. Thus *Helmet's* have been also granted over *Madox's Form* *Angl.* n. 572.

See *Leicester's Antiq.* p. 230, 234, 242, 244, 245.

<sup>m</sup> *Prynne ibid.*

<sup>n</sup> *Camden's Remains.*

<sup>o</sup> A. 7. penes me in a contemporary Hand, containing an Extract of the Depositions.



by Duel, and other ill Consequences, interposed with the then Plaintiff, that he would permit the Defendant to use those Arms during the Term of his Life only, to which Proposal he readily consented out of Reverence to the King, and a Sentence thereon was given accordingly, with a particular Provision that his Heirs should be entirely excluded. This *Robert Morle* died in *Burgundy* 34 E. III, and his Banner according to his own Direction was delivered to this *Nicholas* who chanced to be present. Notwithstanding those Provisions *Thomas de Morle* the Grandson used these Arms, for which *John Lord Lovel* commences an Action before the Constable and Marshal in 1395, and therein among other Things sets forth in his Libel, that a Man cannot sell or grant his Arms to the Prejudice of his Posterity, on which Article several Witnesses were examined, among whom were *le Roy Vaillant* Heraud Aged 60, and *Aquitaine Roi* Heraud Aged 70 Years, whose long Experiences should render them competent Witnesses in a Matter within the Cognizance of their Professions; Sir *Ralph Ferrers* adds in his Deposition, That this very Point had been judicially determined in the Court Military in a Case which depended between Sir *Thomas Cowyn* and Sir *John de Norwych*. Sir *John Sully*, probably the Companion of this Order, was another Witness, who saith, He was then above one hundred Years Old, and that he had travailled in Arms above fourscore Years, though by the way, he was younger than some others produced in that Dispute, whereof one was Aged 120, another 140.

This Doctrine of the Illegality of alienating Arms is also asserted by *Jean P le Fevre* in 1461, whose Authority is the greater, not only from his Profession, being then King of Arms of the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, but in that the Honourable Character of his Sufficiency for that Province is given him by his <sup>9</sup> Contemporaries. His Words are express, *Qu'on ne peut vendre, ne aliener les Armes de son lignage*. These last Terms seem to contain the Reason of this Prohibition, for Coat Armour was esteemed a Right or *jus quæsitum*, which ought to descend to the whole Family *jure successorio*, and varied with proper Marks of Cadency according to the Degrees of Consanguinity belonged to every Branch of it exclusive of all others, and thereby not only the Distinction from other Families, but the Proximities or Distances of any Branch from the Heir were visible, and therefore it seemed a consequence that the Sale of the Hereditary Arms of a Family by any Branch of it, while others were subsisting, must be prejudicial to them, if their <sup>r</sup> Consents were not obtained. But though it may not be lawful for a Father to appoint a younger Son, to whom he should devise all his Estate, to bear his full Arms without any Distinction, yet in case a Person chances to be the last of his Name and Family, that is have no Kindred of his Father's Side alive, an Adoption or a Donation of his Name and Arms by his last Will should, as the Collector at present thinks, admit no Controversy; for if the Arms should

<sup>p</sup> Menestrier Orig. des Armoires, p. 26.

<sup>q</sup> Olivier de la Marche, p. 40, 257, 259. La vie de Jaques Lalain, p. 62, 179.

<sup>r</sup> Boer. qu. 146. n. 6. but see Chassan. Catal. Glor. mundi concl. 46.



not be devised, the same, as being entirely extinct according to the Heraldick Systems, should be entered with the Bearer at his Funeral. This Method of Substitutions is consonant to the Opinions of the <sup>J</sup> Civilians who place such Legacies of Arms and Surnames by Will *inter fideicommissa*, and whereof there are Instances in our <sup>t</sup> Records, some by Settlements, others by Will.

As such a Substitution into the Surname and Arms of a Family doth no way derogate from the Native Nobility of the Person thus adopted, the same being cumulative not privative, so notwithstanding the Adopted may herein obtain the Name and Arms of a Family, *de quatre lignes ou de nom & d'armes*, yet he cannot pretend hereby to that Privilege of those Distinctions which flow only from Birth, Blood, and Nature, but like an emancipated Person or *Libertinus*, who though he gained the Effects of an *Ingenuus* as to the Civil Parts, yet his Manumission did not alter any Natural Rights.

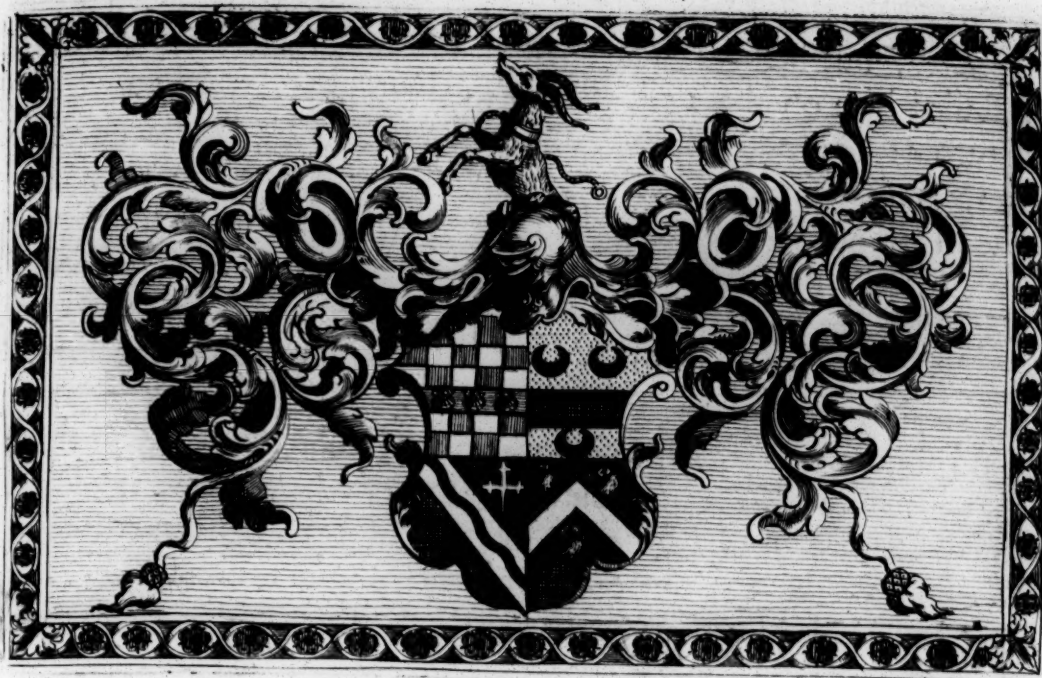
<sup>f</sup> Les Nobles dans les Tribunaux, p. 40, and the Authors quoted in Jurisprudentia Heroica, &c.

<sup>t</sup> See Prynne on fourth Inst. p. 65. The Settlement made by John Earl of Pembroke is recited in Rot. Pat. 50 E. 3. where in case he should die without Heir of his Body, his Lands are granted to William de Beauchamp and his Heirs, Sur tiel condition, qu'il port nostre entiers armes, & qu'il face tant eides a nostre seigneur le Roy qu'il port nom du Count de Pembroke a luy & a ses heirs. Et si le dit William ne veuille, ou ne puisse les avoir en maniere avantdite, que nostre bien asme Cousin Monf. Will, de Clinton ait sur mesmes les forme & conditions a tous point. Ralph Basset by his Will

in 1399, dat terras Hugoni Shirley nepoti suo & hæredibus masculis de corpore suo procreatis ea conditione, ut portet cognomen de Basset & insignia ejus, & si dictus Hugo obierit sine hæredibus masculis de corpore suo procreatis, remanebunt Gulielmo de Stafford fratri Comitis Stafford sub Conditione, prædicta. Ita quod si idem Gulielmus obierit sine hæredibus masculis de corpore procreatis, vel recusaverit portare cognomen & insignia de Basset, remanebunt Johanni de Grey, &c. ut antea. Vinc. MS. n. 222. p. 114. in Off. Arm. See his Will in Registr. Bekyngham Episc. Linc.

See that of Touchet in Vinc. MS. n. 86. in Off. Arm. and several others.





# MEMOIRS

Of the LIFE of

*Sir Robert Rochester* a Knight Elect.



SEVERAL Knights had been placed in this Stall after *Sir Nicholas Carew*, who were upon Vacancies removed to higher Seats, these were,

*Sir William Kingston*, elect 23 *Apr.* installed 18 *May* 31 *H. VIII.*

*Sir Anthony Brown*, elect 23 *Apr.* installed 9 *May* 32 *H. VIII.*

*Sir Anthony Wingfeild*, elect 23 *Apr.* installed 8 *May* 33 *H. VIII.*, void in 36 *H. VIII.*

Lord Chancellour *Wriothesly*, elect 24 *Apr.* installed 16 *May* 37 *H. VIII.*

*Sir William Paget*, elect 17 *Feb.* installed 23 *May* 1 *Ed. VI.*

*Sir William Herbert*, elect 1 *Dec.* installed 22 *Dec.* 3 *Ed. VI.*, void in 6 and 7 *Ed. VI.*, and 1 *Mary.*

*Sir Edward Hastings.*

*Viscount Montacute*

These



These two latter were indeed chosen in the same <sup>a</sup> Chapter held 23 *Apr.* 1st and 2d *Phil.* and *Mary*, and the Viscount is the first that is declared to be elected, but being then at *Rome* in an Embassy, Sir *Edward Hastings* was installed here on the 29th of *May* following, and was removed upon the Return of the Viscount, who notwithstanding his Precedence in the Election, and his superior Quality, was however placed here on the 17th of *Oct.* in 2d and 3d of *Philip* and *Mary*, upon whose Translation our Knight Sir *Robert Rochester* was hereto elected on 22 *Apr.* 3d and 4th of *Philip* and *Mary*, and his Installation was appointed to be on the Feast, which was designed to be held in *May* following; but the Feast being several times <sup>b</sup> prorogued upon Weighty Reasons relating to the King and Queen. — It happened that our Knight elect died in this Interval, whereby according to the <sup>c</sup> Tenour of the Statutes he lost the Privilege of being in the Number of one of the Founders; upon his Election however he was not only invested with the Ensign of the *Garter*, but became intituled by the <sup>d</sup> Statutes to half the Number of Masses required for one of the Founders, for which Reasons it may not be improper to give some short Narrative of him.

His Pedigree entred in the Visitation Books of the Heralds, goes no farther back than to his Grandfather *Robert* seated at *Terling* in *Essex*, but we learn from <sup>e</sup> Records, that *John Rochester* and *Agnes* his Wife purchased in this Place, in the Reign of *Edw.* II, and in that Church, are or lately were <sup>f</sup> Monuments for *Robert Rowcheester*, and *Johan* his Wife without any Date, for *John Rowcheester*, and *Agnes* his Wife the Relict of *William Gotham*, which *John* died in 1444, for *Robert Rochester* and *Elizabeth* his Wife, which *Robert* was Comptroller of the Household to *John* Earl of *Oxford*, and died 4 *May* 1508, and for his eldest Son *John Rochester*, who died before his Father on 16 *January* 1507, which *John* by *Grisolda* the Daughter and Coheir of *Walter Wryttell* was Father of *William*, and of our 2 Knight the second, and *John* a third Son.

Being Comptroller of the Household to Queen *Mary*, and Chancellor also of the Dutchy of *Lancaster*, he was constituted one of the Commissioners to treat about that Queen's <sup>b</sup> Marriage, and in that Year was Knight of the Shire for the County of *Essex*. On 1 *May*, 2d and 3d of *Philip* and *Mary*, *William Barnes* by Licence alienated to him and others the Mannor of <sup>i</sup> *Kynton* in *Glouc.* On 9 *November*, in the 3d and 4th, he had a Grant of divers <sup>k</sup> Lands in *Essex* to him and his Heirs, and on 7 *May*, Licence to found a <sup>l</sup> Chantry in the Church of *Terling*, and on 1 *Dec.* had the Bailiwick of the <sup>m</sup> Liberties of the dissolved Monastery of *St. Albans* for Life, as also a special <sup>n</sup> Pardon on 1 *June*, and

<sup>a</sup> Lib. Carul. *Garter*.

<sup>b</sup> *Ashm. Hist.* p. 313.

<sup>c</sup> Art. 19.

<sup>d</sup> Art. 20.

<sup>e</sup> *Fin.* 20 *E.* 2, &c.

<sup>f</sup> *Symond's Collect.* of *Essex*, in *Off. Arm.* p. 146, 147.

<sup>g</sup> *Visit.* of *Essex* in *Off. Arm.* p. 2.

<sup>h</sup> *Rymer*, vol. 15. p. 377, 393.

<sup>i</sup> *Pat.* 2 & 3 *Ph.* & *M.* p. 3.

<sup>k</sup> *Pat.* 3 & 4 *Ph.* & *M.* p. 4.

<sup>l</sup> *Ibid.* p. 5.

<sup>m</sup> *Ibid.* p. 10.

<sup>n</sup> *Ibid.*



on the 12th of Dec. a Lease of the <sup>o</sup> Mannors of *Benington, Weston, Argenton, Monden parva, Monden magna, Sabridgworth*, with others in *Hertford, Suffolk*, and *Essex* for 40 Years, and on the 18th of Sept. was <sup>p</sup> Licenced to keep Retainers, and on the 30th of that Month the Lord <sup>q</sup> *Windsor* had Liberty to alienate to him and others the Manor of *Almounton*.

He made his <sup>r</sup> Will on the Twenry Seventh of *May 1557*, wherein by the Title of Knight of the most Honourable Order of the *Garter*, Chancellour of the Dutchy of *Lancaster*, and Comp-troller of the Queen's most Honourable Household, he bequeathes to the Queens Highnesse, as a poor Witnesse of his humble Heart, duty and service due to the same, one hundred Pounds in Angells, and to every of her Highnesses Women his old Fellows who served her Grace before she came to this Estate, and being yet attending in her Majesties Service, one Ring of fine Gold of the Weight of an old Royall, which he requires them to wear as a Token of his good Will born to them, and to put them in Remembrance to pray Christ to have mercy on his Soul. He devises Legacies to his Nephew *John* Son of his Brother *William Rochester*, to his Nephew Sir *Edward Walgrave*, to his Sister *Rice*, to his Nephew *John Walgrave*; to the Prior of the *Black Friars* in *London*, and to his Brethren, the Sume of 50*l.* to pray for his Soule, his Father, Mother, his Ancestors, and all Christian Souls: And to the Warden of the Observant Friars in *Greenwich*, and to his Brethren, the like Sume on the same Account. Concerning his Mannors, Lands, &c. he humbly beseeches the Queens Highness his most gracious Sovereign Lady and Mistris, to whom he hath born his faithful and true Service to the utmost of his Power, that it would please her Majesty after his Decease to give her Royal Assistance to such as he should put in Trust, that his Will may be perform'd, which he trusts is agreeable both to God's Laws and her Majesties, and in nothing contrariant to her Prerogative Royal; he wills his Manor of *Ashfeild magna* in *Com. Suff.* with the Appurtenances, and all his Lands in *Brodwell, Hunston, Texworth* and *Emmswell*, in the said County, his Mannor of *Milles* in *Essex*, with the Appurtenances, and all those Lands known by the Name of *Milles* in *Sistred*, being a third Part of his Inheritance, to descend to his Heir. As to the Residue of his Mannors he bequeathes to the Prior of the House of *Jesus of Bethlem of Sheen* in *Com. Surrey*, to the Honour of God, and his Son *Jesus Christ* his Saviour and Redeemer, and for the better Maintenance of his Honour, and Glory and Divine Service, and of his Blessed Mother the Virgin, and all the Holy Company of Heaven, all those his Mannors and Lordships of *Halsted, Stansted, Abells, Hemmyngham, Clavering, Lucas Pitchards* and *Marks* in the County of *Essex*, with all and singular the Appurtenances, as also his

<sup>o</sup> Ibid. p. 12.  
<sup>p</sup> Ibid. p. 11.

<sup>q</sup> Ibid. p. 15.  
<sup>r</sup> Lib. Welles in Cur. Prærog. Cant.



Capital House of *Stansted*, and the Advowsons and Rights of Patronage of the Churches of *Stansted* and *Henyngham Sible*, and all those his Lands known by the Name of *Bowcher's Wood* in *Gosfeild, Essex*; and all those lying in *Halsted, Stansted*, and *Branktree, Henyngham, Pe-bursh, Gosfeild, Tynsted, Henny magna, Henny parva, Myddleton, Bulmere, Alphamston, Maplestede, Foxeherd, Belcheham, Otton, Toppefeild, Colne, Engayne alias Colnesgayne, Stisted, Henningham Sible, Aldeham, Patteneswick, and Markehall* in Com. *Essex*, or elsewhere in the said County, which he purchased of the King's and Queen's Majesties to him and his Heirs for ever, as by Letters Patents, dated at *Westminster* 19 Nov. in the 3d and 4th of their Reigns appeareth; except the Park of *Stansted*, and those Lands, Tenements, &c. within the said Park, the said Prior and his Successors to hold for evermore all and singular the said Premises, &c. desiring them, and requiring them for evermore to Pray for the good Estate of the King and Queen's Majesties, whilst it shall please God to send them Life, and after their Decease for their Soules, and for the Soul of him the said Sir *Robert Rochester*, his Father and Mother's Soules, all his Ancestor's Soules, and all Christian Soules. And whereas he obteyned a Licence of the King and Queen, that he in his Life-time, or his Executors after his Decease, might erect and found one perpetual Chantry within the Parish Church of *Terling* in *Essex*, and might give to the said Chantry Priest and his Successors for ever Lands, &c. to the yearly Value of 10*l.* his Will is that the said Chantry shall be erected and founded in as convenient Time as may be after his Decease, according to the said Licence, and that the said Chantry Priest, and his Successors, shall have assured to them by the said Prior and Convent of *Sheen*, and their Successors for the Time being, one Annual Rent Charge of 10*l.* out of the afore said Mannors, the said Chantry Priest, and his Successors, praying for evermore for the good Estate of the King's and Queen's Majesties, whilst they live, and after for their Souls, and for the Soul of him the said Sir *Robert Rochester*, his Father and Mother's Souls, all their Ancestor's Soules, and all Christian Soules. He likewise wills that the said Prior and Convent of *Sheen* pay 20*l.* yearly to the Abbess and Convent of *Syon* to perform Divine Service after the same manner, and 5*l.* yearly to the Prior and Convent of *Langley* for ever. He ordeyns Executors, *Ralph* Bishop of *Coventry* and *Lichfeild*, Sir *Edward Walgrave* Knight his Nephew, *William Cordell* Esq; *John Carrell* Esq; *Thomas Lewen* Clark Steward to the Lord Cardinal's Grace, and *Reginolde Hollingworth* Gent. and Overseer of the same his singular good Lord the Lord Chancellor of *England*. The Residue of his Goods and Chattels, his Funeral and Debts duly contented, he bequeathes to his Executors to be bestowed in Deeds of Charity for the Wealth of his Soule, and especially on the House of *Sheen*.

As to *Sheen*, the Queen on the 28th of *March* 1515, before the Lord Chancellour, *J* Sir *Robert Rochester* Comptroller, and others, de-



clared her Resolution to render up all the Church Lands in her Hands, to be disposed as the Pope and Lord Cardinal should think fit, and in 1556, she founded an House for the *Carthusians* at *Sheen*, in Gratitude to that Order for their Sufferings upon her Mother's Account, an Order of strict Discipline and Mortification.

The Jury on the 24th of *February*, 4 *Philip* and *Mary*, find that he died in the Parish of *St. Andrew Undershaft* London, on 28 Nov. before, seized of the Mannor of great *Asbefeild* in *Suffolk*, and several other Lands and Rents in *Asbefeild*, *Uxworth*, *Hanslon*, *Badswell* and *Emeswell*, and that *William Rochester* his Brother, aged 60 Years and more, was his next Heir, which *William* <sup>u</sup> died on 2 Sept. 1558, who, and his Wife *Eliz.* are buried at *Terling*.

His Funeral was solemnized on 4 Dec. 1558, at *Sheene*, when his Escutcheons were not surrounded with the \* *Garter*, because he died before his Installation.

*Boisseau* in his *Promptuaire* <sup>7</sup> *Armorial* ascribes to our Knight Argent three Chefferokes Sable; but he must be certainly mistaken, for he bore 1st, Checque Argent and Gules on a Fesse Azure three Escallops Or. 2d, Or, a Fesse between 3 Crescents Sable. 3d, Sable, on a Bend Argent a Bendlet wavee of the first. 4th, Sable, a Cheveron between three Rams Heads erased Argent; the three later are the Arms of the Heiresses from whom he was descended, and doubtless he used the Crescent for a Brizure.

His Crest on a Wreath a Demy Tyger Azure, horned, maimed, hoofed, and collared Or, studded Gules.

<sup>t</sup> Esc. in Capella Rotul. p. 3.

<sup>u</sup> Symonds ut supra.

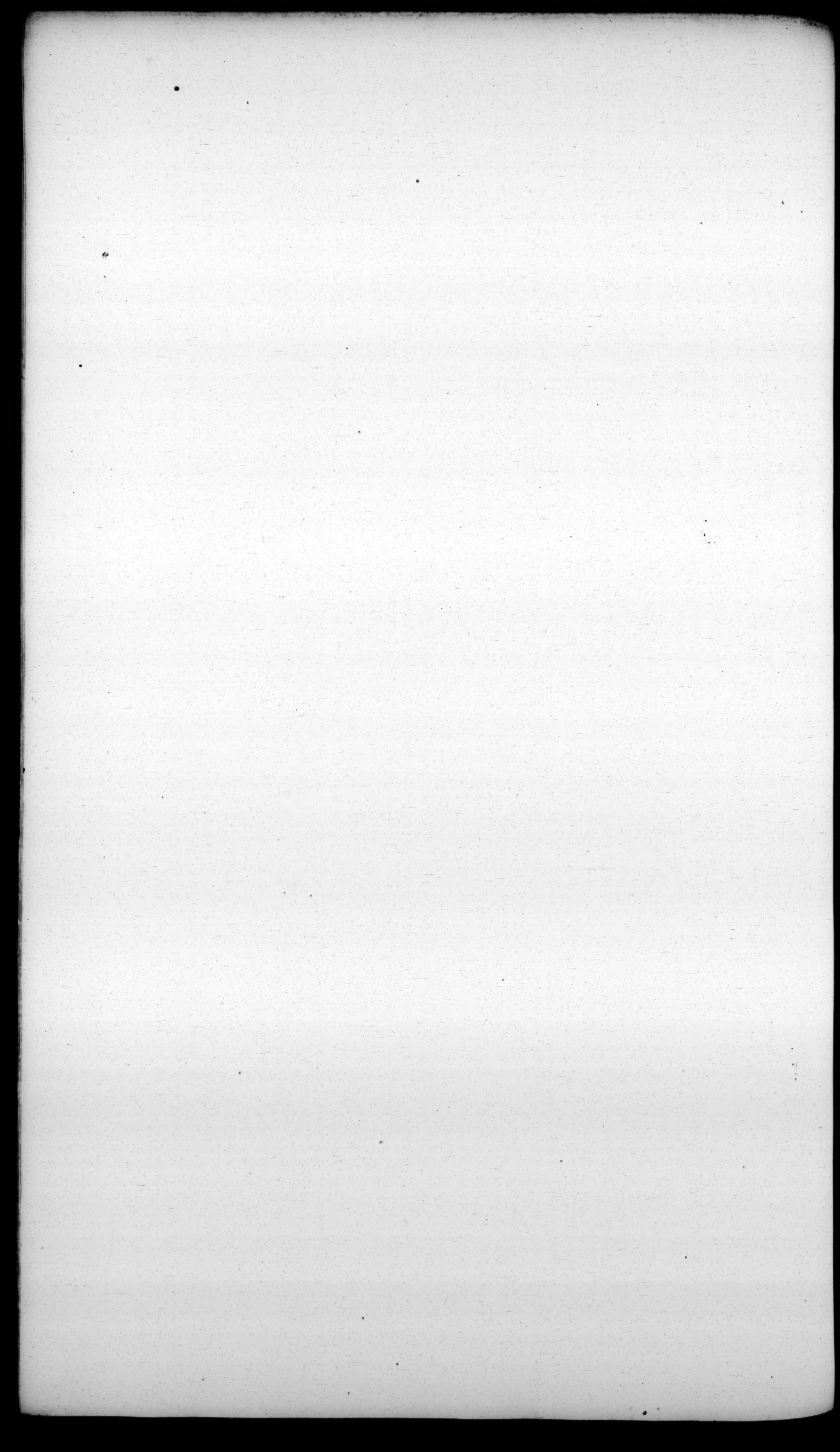
<sup>x</sup> Vitell. F. 3. in Bibl. Cott. 4 & 5 Ph. & M.

<sup>4</sup> Dec. was bered at Shene the Charter-house Sir Rob. Rochester Knight, the which he was chosen Knight of

the Garter, but he was never Stallyd at Wyndfor, so he was not bered with the Garter, but after another Knyght.

<sup>y</sup> Gybbon. Introd. ad Latin. Blason. p. 13.







1875  
JUL 15

1875  
JUL 15



next to page 267

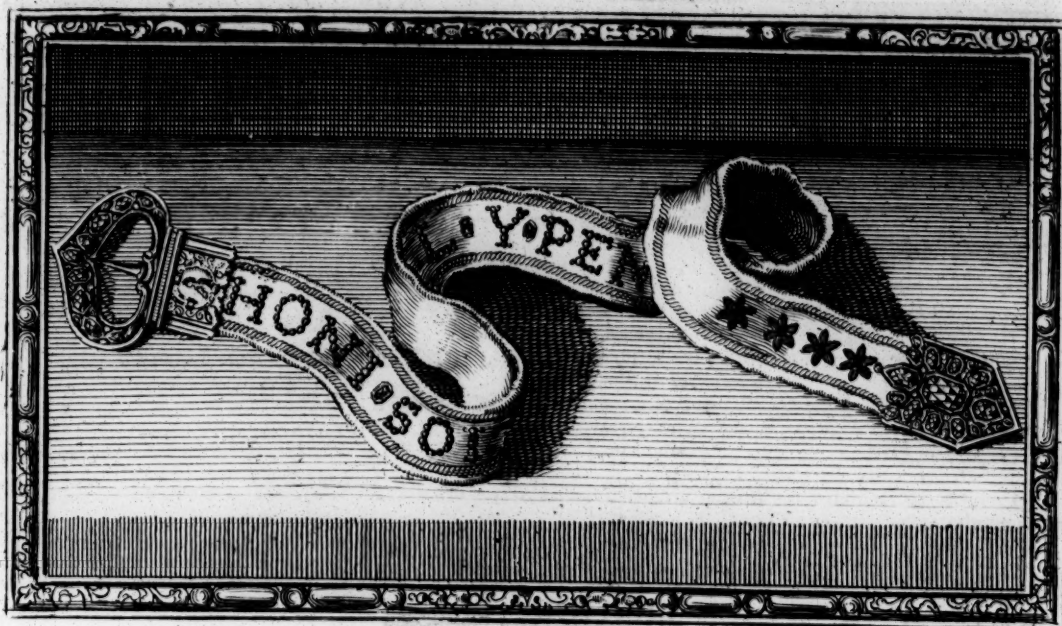
● AVANT DARNLY. ●



Du treshault, et trespuiſſant Prince, Emme Duc  
de Lenox, Comte de Marche, et de Darnley Bar<sup>on</sup>  
de Saughton Bronswold D'Aubigny, Terboulton,  
Methuen, et S<sup>t</sup>. Andrè, grand Chambellan, et  
Admirall d'Eſcoſſe, gentilb<sup>omme</sup> de la chambre  
du li<sup>ct</sup> de ſa Ma<sup>te</sup>. et Ch<sup>tr</sup> du trefnoble Ordre  
de la Jarrierre. Enſtallè a Windesore le 22 d'Auril

1624





# MEMOIRS

OF

*Esme Steward Duke of Lennox.*



ERE was a Vacancy in this Stall, according to the Language of the Statutes, from the Time of the Removal of the Lord Viscount *Montacute*, notwithstanding the Election of Sir *Robert Rochester*, and it continued void till the 3d of Queen *Elizabeth*, when on 18 *May* the Lord *Hunsdon* was here installed, after whose Removal succeeded

Sir *Henry Sidney*.

The Earl of *Huntington*, void in 15, 16, 17 *Eliz.*

Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*, void in 27 *Eliz.*

Earl of *Pembroke*, void in 2, 3, &c. *Jac. 1.*

Marquess of *Hamilton*.

All which were likewise severally removed to higher Stalls, and our Knight the Duke of *Lennox* was hereto elected 24 *April* 22 *Jac. 1.* installed on 26 *April*, for the Day is mistaken on his Plate if the Register of this Order may be credited, and he died on the 14th of *February* following.

Z z z

He



He is stiled on his Plate Duke of *Lennox* [in Scotland] Earl *Marche* [in England] and of *Darnley* [in Scotland] Baron of *Leighton Bronswold* [in England] of *D'aubigny* [in France] of *Torbolton*, *Methuen*, and *St. Andre* [in Scotland] Great Chamberlain and Admiral of *Scotland*, and Gentleman of his Majesty's Bedchamber.

It would be superfluous to transcribe the Pedigree of this most illustrious Duke, which may be consulted in several <sup>a</sup> Historians and Genealogists, so that nothing need to be added, save only what conduceth to the Explanation of this Plate.

The Office of *Dapifer* of *Scotland* was given in Fee to one of his Ancestors, which Stile in Tract of Time was altered into *Steward*, and from thence the Family took this Sirname, which branched out into several Lines honoured with divers Titles, whereof *Robert* by Descent from his Mother succeeded to the Throne of *Scotland* in 1370, as did afterwards *James VI* to the Crown of *England*.

The *Scotch* <sup>b</sup> Historians inform us, that *Malcolm IV* in 1158, confirmed (as the Words are) "*Hereditarie Waltero filio Alani Dapifero meo*" & *heredibus suis in feodo & hereditate Senescalliam meam* — *Ita bene* & *plenarie, sicut Rex David Seneschalliam suam ei dedit*", who by the Title of "*Walterus filius Alani Dapifer Regis Scotiæ*", founded the Monastery of *Pasley*, whose Son by the Stile of "*Allanus filius Walteri Dapifer Regis Scotiæ*" makes several Donations to that Abbey, and that his Son *Walter* altered the Name of this Office to *Senescallus Scotiæ*. The *Dapifera* comprehended a Superintendency over the Ministers of the Household, which in the 11th Century became generally entituled the Stewardship, whereof we have some contemporary Instances. Our *Henry* the Second confirmed to <sup>c</sup> *Hugh Bigot* Earl of *Norfolk*, "*Dapiferatum suum, ita libere sicut pater suus melius habuit tempore Regis Henrici Avi mei*", which <sup>d</sup> *Rich. I.* confirms to his Son by these Words, "*Senescalliam suam, ita libere habendam, sicut Rogerus Bigot avus suus, & Comes Hugo pater suus illam habuerunt tempore Domini Regis Henrici Avi nostri, vel tempore patris nostri*": Thus *Eudo* was called <sup>e</sup> *Dapifer* of *Normandy*, whose Daughter and Heiress being married to *William Mandevill*, their Son *Geffery* in that Right named himself <sup>f</sup> *Steward* of that Dutchy. In the same manner the Family of <sup>g</sup> *Mancade* in *Catalonia* discontinued the Title of *Dapifer*, and substituted that of *Seneschal* in its room; *Hugh de Cleeris* is express in this Point, where he <sup>h</sup> treats of the "*Regiæ domus dapiferatus*" of *France* granted in Fee to the Counts of *Anjou*, which in the same Book he stiles the *Stewardship*, as doth a <sup>i</sup> *Chronicler* in 1177, and we find in *Ingulfus Alan de Corona* in one place stiled *Dapifer*, and in another *Senescallus Regis*, and we know that the Family of <sup>k</sup> *Montealto* in the Palatinate of *Chester* used the Appellation of *Dapifer*, and afterwards that of *Senescallus Comitum*

<sup>a</sup> Anselme. *Moreri Dict.* &c.

<sup>b</sup> Crawford's *Hist. of the Royal and Illustrious Family of Stewart.*

<sup>c</sup> *Cart. Antiq. S. n. 13.*

<sup>d</sup> *Ibid. n. 14.*

<sup>e</sup> *Mon. Angl. vol. 1. p. 724.*

<sup>f</sup> *Dugd. 1 Vol. Bar. p. 201.*

<sup>g</sup> *Hist. de Bearn par Marca l. 6. c. 2. &c.*

<sup>h</sup> *Inter Scriptores edit. per Du Chesn.*

<sup>i</sup> *Rob. de Monte in dicto Anno.*

<sup>k</sup> *MS. Glov. inter Philpoti MS. in Col. Arm. n. 17. p. 45, 46.*



*Cestriae.* By the way, <sup>l</sup> *Richard* Earl of *Arundel*, in the Tenth of *Ed. III.*, reciting, That the Stewardship of *Scotland* belonged hereditarily to him, surrenders the same to that King, who gives him One Thousand Marks in Recompence for it, which was confirmed by *Edward* [*Baliol*] King of *Scotland*; probably his Title to it might be by some Grant from that Family.

The Creations to the *Scotch* Honours mention'd in this Plate may be found in their Authors, and those within *England* in our Writers. *Aubigny* is a Town in *Berry*, situate upon the River *Nerre*, about two Leagues from *Concreffant* in *France*, given according to <sup>m</sup> *Pere Daniel* to *John Steward* the Second, on the 24th of *March* 1422, to whom the County or Earldom of <sup>n</sup> *Eureux* was also granted in 1426, who was killed at the Battle of the *Herrings* in 1429.

The Arms on the Plate are quarterly 1st and 4th of *France*, within a Border Gules charged with 8 Buckles Or, which are said to be an Augmentation by the King of *France*, being the Coat of *Eureux*, with the Charge of the Buckles supposed to allude to the Ancient Bearing of *Croc*, whose Heiress was married into this Family; 2d and 3d Or, a Fesse Checkie Argent and Azure within a Bordure engrailed Gules, the Arms of *Stewart* with a Brisure; over all is an Inescutcheon of Prentence Argent, a Salter engrailed between 4 Roses Gules, thought to be the feudal Arms of *Lenox*, a common Practice in *Scotland*.

The Crest a Bull's Head Sable armed Or, breathing Fire issuing out of a Ducal Crown.

Supporters two Wolves proper.

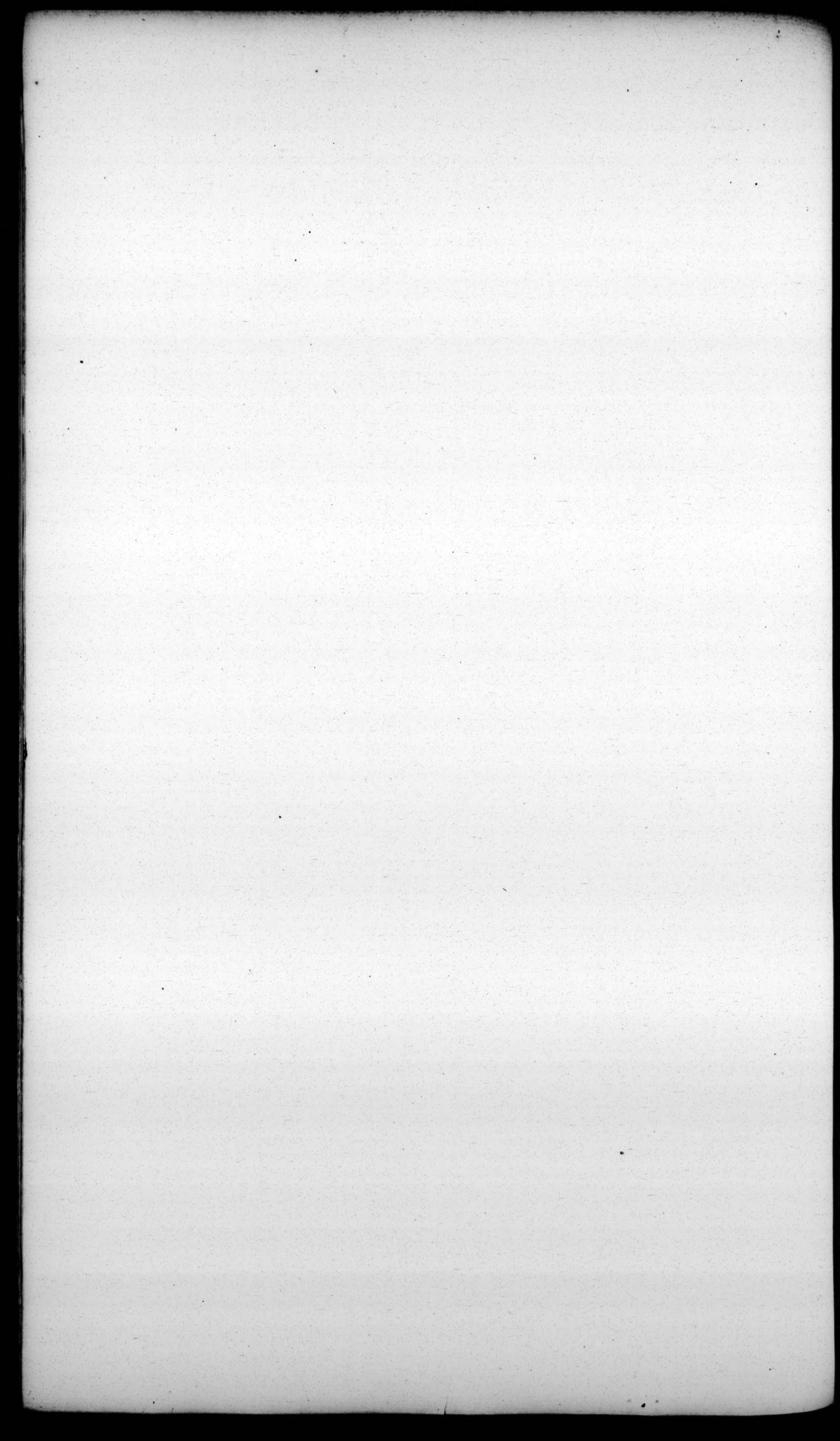
The Mantlings Gules doubled Ermin.

The Cry *de Guerre Avant Darnley*.

<sup>l</sup> Pat. 10 E. 3. pt. 2. m. 10.  
<sup>m</sup> De la Milice Franc. Vol. 2.

<sup>n</sup> Moreri Diction.









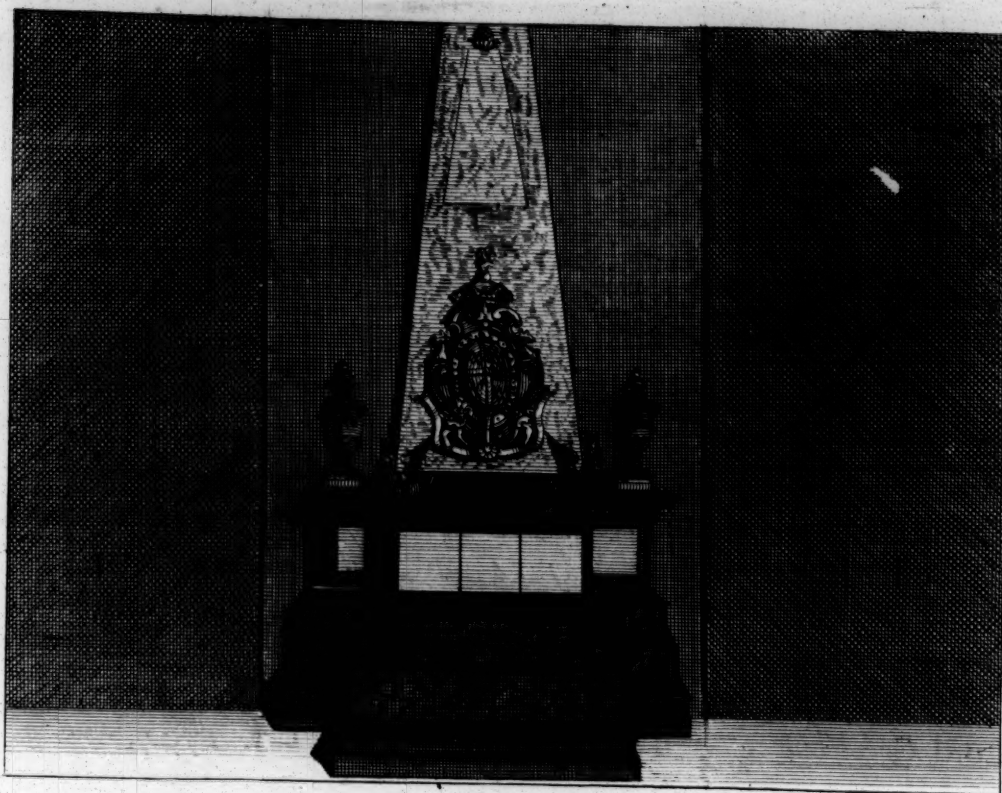


next to page 271



Du Tres-noble et Puissant Seigneur, CHARLES  
Comte de HALIFAX Vicomte de SUNBURY,  
Baron de HALIFAX, Premier Commissaire  
pour l'Execution de la Charge du Tresorier de  
l'Echiquier de la GRANDE BRETAGNE,  
un des Seigneurs du Conseil d'Etat et Privé de  
sa Majesté, et Chevalier du Tres-Noble Ordre de  
la JARRETIERE, Installé au Château de  
WINDESOR, leneuvième Jour de Decembre  
l'An MDCCXIV.





# MEMOIRS

Of the LIFE of

*Sir Charles Montague Earl of Halifax.*



**A**FTER the Duke of *Lennox*, several Knights had been seated in this Stall, who upon Vacancies were removed higher, these were

The Viscount *Andover*, elected 15 *May*, installed 23 *Nov.* 1 *Car.* I, void in the third Year.

Earl of *Suffolk*, elected 24 *Apr.* installed 24 *Sept.* 3 *Car.* I, void in the fifth Year.

Marquess of *Hamilton*, elected and installed 5 *Oct.* 6 *Car.* I, void in 10 and 11 Years.

And after the King's Restoration the Earl of *Strafford*, elected 1 *Apr.* 13 *Car.* II, and was here seated on 15 *Apr.* and upon his Translation,

The Duke of *Monmouth*, elected 29 *March*, installed 22 *Apr.* 15 *Car.* II, void in 18, 19, 20, 21 Years.

Earl of *Salisbury*, elected 30 *August*, installed 30 *Sept.* 32 *Car.* II.

Duke of *Richmond*, elected 7th, and installed 20 *Apr.* 33 *Car.* II.

A a a a

Duke



Duke of *Hamilton*, elected 25 *Sept.* installed 21 *Nov.* 34 *Car.* 2.

Duke of *Northumberland*, elected 10 *January* 35 *Car.* II, installed 8 *Apr.* 36 *Car.* II.

Earl of *Rocheſter*, elected 29 *June*, installed 22 *July* 1 *Jac.* II.

Earl of *Feverſham*, elected 30 *July*, installed 25 *Auguſt* 1685.

Earl of *Sunderland*, elected 26 *April*, installed 23 *May* 1687.

Earl of *Devon*, elected 3 *April*, installed 14 *May*, 1st of *William* and *Mary*.

Earl of *Dorſet*, elected *Febr.* 2, installed *Febr.* 24, 1691-2.

Earl of *Shrewsbury*, elected 25 *April*, installed 5 *June* 1694, void in the 7th Year.

Earl of *Portland*, elected *Feb.* 19, 1696, installed 15 *March* following.

Earl of *Albemarl*, elected *May* 14, installed *June* 5, 1700.

Earl of *Marlborough*, elected *March* 14, 1701-2, installed *March* 13, 1702-3.

Duke *Schonburg*, elected *Auguſt* 12, installed 2 *Sept.* 1703.

Lord *Godolphin*, elected *July* 6, installed 13 *Dec.* 1704,

On the 16th of *October*, 1714, the Right Honourable *Charles Montague* Earl of *Halifax* was elected into this moſt Noble Order, and placed in this Stall on the 9th of *December*, he died on the 19th of *May* following, according to the Inſcription on a ſtately Pyramid of vein'd Marble, in *Henry* the Seventh's Chapel at *Weſtminſter*.



<p>H.</p> <p>CAROLUS MOUNTAGUE  Honorabilis Georgii Mountague de Horton  In Agro Northantoniensi filius,  Henrici Comitis de Manchester Nepos,  Qui Scholæ Regiæ apud hanc Ecclesiâ  Alumnus.  Collegii S<sup>æ</sup> Trinitatis apud Cantabrigienses  Socius.  Literas humaniores tam feliciter excoluit  Ut inter nostratum primos  Tum Poetas, tum Oratores,  Dispari licet in Studiorum genere,  Pari tamen cum laude floweret :  Bonarumq; Artium disciplinis instructus  Ex Academiæ Umbraculis  In Publicum prodiret,  Literatorum jam tum Decus,  Mox &amp; Præsidium.</p>	<p>S.</p> <p>Brevi etenim hunc virum  Sua in Senatu sacundia,  In Concilio providentia,  In utroq; solertia, fides, authoritas  Ad gerendam Ærarii curam evexit ;  Ubi laborantibus Fisci rebus  Opportune subseruiens,  Monetam argenteam,  Magno reipublice detrimento imminutam,  Valori pristino restituit ;  Et tantæ molis opus  Cum flagrante jam bello diutino,  Et aggrediretur &amp; absolueret  Ne subsidia Regi Regnoq; necessaria  Desseint interim,  Ne fides aut privata aut publica  Vacillaret uspiam  Sapienter cavuit.</p>	<p>E.</p> <p>His erga Patriam, &amp; Principem meritis,  Utriusq; Benevolentiam complexus,  Ævatum Stirpis suæ splendorem  Novis Titulis auxit :  Baro scilicet, deinde &amp; Comes Halifax  Creatus  Ad tres Montacutiani nominis Procures  Quartus accessit :  Summo deniq; Perisclidis honore  Insignitus  Dum promovendæ saluti &amp; utilitati pblice  Omni mente incumberet  Medios inter conatus,  (Prob lubricam rerum humanarum sortem)  Cum bonorum omnium luctu  Extinctus est  xix die Maii A<sup>d</sup> D<sup>ni</sup> MDCCXV.  Ætatis suæ LIV.</p>
--	---	---

The



The Editor shall not attempt any Essay upon his Character: The Rule which he hath prescribed to himself as inviolable, is to say nothing that may render him suspected either of Partiality or Prejudice. It is much easier to conform to this Rule in speaking of Persons, who have sometime since quitted the Stage of Life, and whose Atchievements have no visible or immediate Relation to any Political Schemes or Interests of Great Men at present: But the Difficulty lies in making such a Report concerning the personal Qualities or Conduct of Great Men, whereby many Persons now living may apprehend themselves more nearly affected, some from Reasons of Affinity, or former Dependencies, of personal Esteem, or the Good, as they term it, of some common Cause; others from Reasons of Distaste, of different Opinions, or opposite Measures. He hath therefore rather chosen to be silent upon Subjects of so great Nicety, than to be guilty of a Temerity, for the Success of which he dared by no means undertake to answer. Few Historians indeed have succeeded well, or without giving, in one Degree or other, Occasion of Offence, who have undertaken to write the Characters and Transactions of their own Times, and immediately to publish them, and therefore some of the most celebrated Names among them have wisely deferred for several Years the Publication of those Works, which related to the Lives of their Contemporaries: But he here proposes them rather as Examples of Caution, than as Models, which he is yet determined in this Respect to follow: He shall think his Pains in the present Specimen abundantly rewarded, if he hath been able to retrieve any valuable Monuments from Dust and Oblivion, relating to the former Knights of this Order, who have been long in their Coffins, leaving to those, who may think fit to proceed in a Work of the like Nature, a large Field of Glory, in reciting the Actions of the more Modern Knights Companions, and not envying them the great Advantages of reaping from latter Histories or Records, which it is hoped greater Care will be taken for the future in preserving than has been hitherto at all Times employed.

The Arms are quarterly, in the first and fourth *Montague*, Argent, 3 Lozenges in Fesse Gules, within a Border Sable; the 2d and 3d *Monthermer*, Or, an Egle Vert, membred and beak'd Gules. <sup>a</sup> *Upton* mentions his special Patron who bore Arms (as he saith) by reason of certain Lands belonging to the Barony of *Montacute*, thus blazoned in *French*, *Il port d'Argent trois fuselez de gewles*. Sir Edw. <sup>b</sup> *Byshe* is at a loss to discover to what Lands those Arms were annexed. Our Historian <sup>c</sup> *Knighton* informs us, that in *July* 1335, the King gave to the Lord *Montague* **Is Crest with Egle**, with a War Horse caparisoned with the Coat Arms of *Montague*, with the Reversion of the Mannors of *Wetton* and *Mershe-wode*; and indeed the Grant is on Record, wherein *Ed. III.* on 12 *July*, in his <sup>d</sup> ninth Year [*A. D.* 1335.] grants for himself and Heirs to *William de Montacute*,

<sup>a</sup> De re milit. p. 249.

<sup>b</sup> Notæ in *Upton*, p. 85.

<sup>c</sup> Dec. Script. col. 2565.

<sup>d</sup> Cart. 9 E. 3. n. 16.



*Tymbriam nostram de Aquila per se & Heredes suos in perpetuum deferendam: Volentes insuper eundem Willimum, ut ipse & Heredes sui statum & honorem bajulationis Tymbriæ prædictæ decentius & honorificentius futuris temporibus manutenere possint, munere prospicere gratiofo, concessimus ei — Maneria de Wodeton, Frome, Whitefeld & Mershwode, &c. post decessum prædictæ Matildæ, &c.* This Person, created Earl of Salisbury, being Godfather to Lionel of Antwerp the King's third Son, assigned this Crest to his Godson, which the King confirms, and makes a new Grant of these Mannors to this Earl, to hold them notwithstanding this Assignment of the Crest. This doth not explain the Terms of *Upton* taken in a strict Sense, but the Collector knows no other Proof of any Arms annexed to the Lands held by this Family.

*Margaret*, Daughter and sole Heir of *Thomas* Son of *Ralph Monthermer* sometime Earl of *Glocester*, was married to *John Montacute* younger Brother to this *William*, and for that Reason their Descendants the Earls of *Salisbury* quartered these Arms, and the Great-Granddaughter of this *John* being married to *Richard Nevil*, (who was by a solemn<sup>f</sup> Determination declared Earl of *Salisbury* by Vertue of this Marriage) he in Allusion probably to these Arms of *Monthermer*, gave the Title<sup>g</sup> *Eglevert* to his Pursevant, who seems to be the same Officer misprinted<sup>b</sup> *Anglebert* in the Historian, who tells us he was in 1429 sent by the Earl of *Salisbury* to the Duke of *Bretagne*.

The Crest is a Griffon's Head couped Or, between two Wings erected in Dorse, beaked and charged on the Neck with a Portcullis Sable. *Simon de Montague*, in the Reign of *Ed. I.*, bore an entire Griffon on his Counterseal, and *William Montagu* Earl of *Salisbury* in 9 R. II, granted to<sup>k</sup> *John de Ypre* during his Life, Parcel of his Helmet, that is, *La teste de Griffon ovesq; le cool la chief d'asure jusques al moitie de cool, & l'autre moitie de cool la chief d'asure jusques al moitie de cool, & l'autre moite de coole desoutz ovesq; la labekyn d'argent, ove un rondet torceles d'asur lentour le cool.*

The Supporters are, on either Side, a Griffon Argent Gutté de Sang, the Wings erected in Dorse Gules, and charged on the Breast with a Portcullis Sable.

Since his Death there have been installed herein,

The Earl of *Berkeley*, elected the 31st of *March*, installed the 30th of *April* 1718.

<sup>e</sup> Pat. Hom. Angl. & Vasc. 13 E. 3. m. 14. Sciatis quod cum nuper attendentes probitatem Strenuam dilecti & fidelis nostri *Willimi* de Monte Acuto Comitis Sarum & Marescalli Angliæ dederimus ei tymbriam Aquilæ quam proprius nos ipsi portavimus, & ut honorem dictæ tymbriæ posset decentius conservare concesserimus, &c. ut maneria de Wodeton Frome, &c. remaneant præfato Comiti & hæredibus suis in perpetuum, ac jam idem Comes ad rogatum nostrum *Leoni* filio nostro carissimo, quem dictus Comes de sacro fonte levavit dictam tymbriam ex affectione multa concesserit per ipsum ad nostri honorem & memoriam deferendam, &c. 16. Sept. and therefore the King

confirms the same Mannors to the Earl, Non obstante quod idem Comes præfato filio nostro tymbriam reddiderit supra dictam.

<sup>f</sup> Cleopatra F. iv. in bibl. Cotton.

<sup>g</sup> Exit. Pell. Pasch. 33 H. 6. *Eglevert* Purfyvant Com. Sarum misso versus partes Boreales cum xxi literis de privato sigillo Regis diversis Dom. & aliis personis ibid. existentibus directis pro certis specialibus causis & materiis in eisdem literis contentis commodum Regis concernentibus expediendis 26 s. 8d.

<sup>h</sup> *Lobineau's Hist. de Bretagne*, p. 538.

<sup>i</sup> *Bissh. Notæ in Upton*, p. 85.

<sup>k</sup> *Madox's Form. Angl.* n. DLxxii.



Duke of *Kingston*, elected the 29th of *April*, installed the 23d of *June* 1719.

Earl of *Sunderland*, elected the 21st of *November* 1719, installed the 24th of *May* 1720, died on the 18th of *April* 1722, in the 12th Stall of this Side.

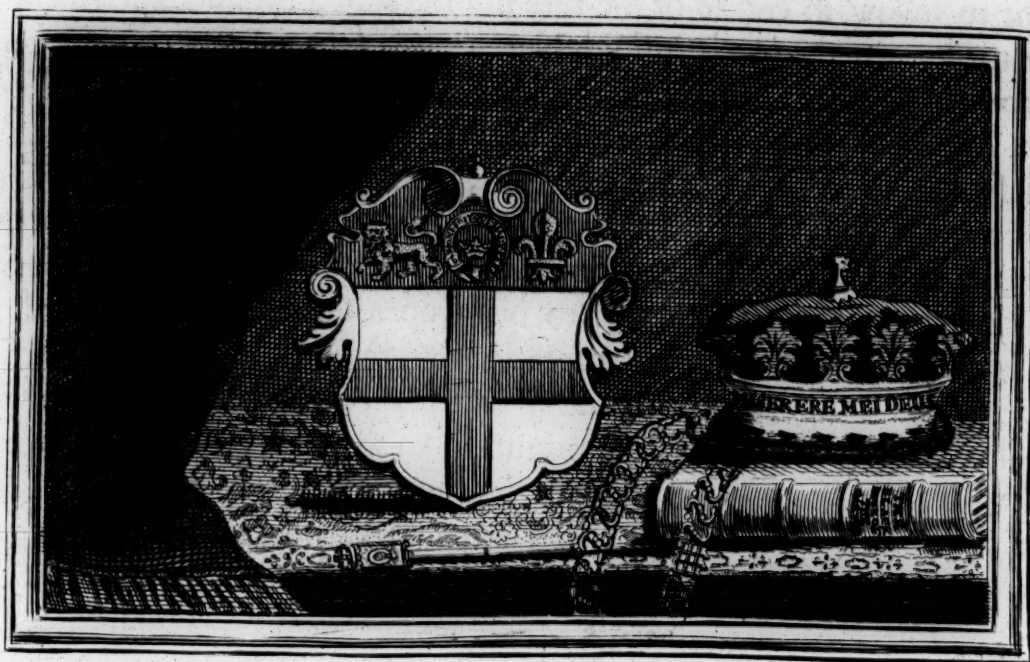
The Earl of *Lincoln*, elected the 27th of *March*, installed the 25th of *April* 1721, and the same is at present [*Sept.* 1723.] possessed by the Duke of *Roxburghe*, elected Oct. 10, 1722, installed the 13th of *November* following.

---

A SUP.

---





A  
**SUPPLEMENT**  
 TO  
 Mr. *ASHMOLE*'s Discourse  
 OF  
**GARTER'S**  
 Institution, Oath, Mantle, Ensign, Badge, Privileges,  
 and Pension.



THE Editor hath thus gone through the Task proposed in the Introduction, which he owns to be done without reflecting sufficiently on the Subject Matters, which hath been occasioned on Account of the Haste he was obliged to write in by Directions of those, whom it was his Duty to obey; and he designed here to have made an End, but finding the *Black-book* and these Collections are too large to be conveniently bound up in one Volume, and that in case they should be divided into

two, this Part will bear no due Proportion in Bigness to the other, and being unwilling to engage in the Expence of Engraving two and twenty  
 Plates



Plates remaining in the opposite Stall on the Sovereign's Side, which ought to follow in course of the ranging the Stalls, till an Experiment had been made, whether such insipid Narrations of bare Facts prove acceptable to any Readers: He hath therefore adventured to make an Essay of some Additions to one Chapter in Mr. *Ashmole's History*, in the manner he designed to consider other Chapters, and he hopes there is no Occasion to make any Apology for selecting that which treats of the *Institution, Oath, Mantle, Ensign, Badge, Privileges and Pension of Garter King of Arms*, considering the Relation thereof to his proper Office; but if it had not any such Relation, he is well protected by the Authority of Persons in their respective Ages very illustrious in the Common-Wealth of Letters, who have not thought it any Diminution to the several Professions wherein they excelled, to publish Dissertations upon *Heralds* in general, whereof some of these Writers were <sup>a</sup> Churchmen of the highest Order and Stations,

<sup>a</sup> Aeneas Sylvius, afterwards Pope Pius the Second, elected in 1458.

Jean de Dormans, Bishop and Cardinal of Beauvais, quoted in le Feton's *Inst. des Roys & Herauds d'Armes*, p. 6. He died in 1373, according to the Inscription on his Tomb in Du Brueil's *Description de Paris*, p. 471. Le Sieur de la Croix du Maine in his *Bibliothèque sainte*, That he never saw this Author, but it is somewhat remarkable, that when this de Dormans was an Advocate, King John in May 1350, nobilitated him, his Lady, and his Posterity, by an Instrument printed in Du Chesne *Hist. des Chancel.* p. 361, which probably might occasion his employing some of his leisure Hours in these Enquiries.

If this Work remain, it may be probable he may mention somewhat of the English *Heralds*, since he was Ambassador hither, Frizon *Gallia Purput.* p. 387, and there remains among our Records a safe Conduct for him to come to Calis, Rymer, vol. 6. p. 705.

The Bishop of Burgos in Spain, mentioned in the same place by le Feton, & in *Bibl. Cotton Faustina E. v.*

The Bishop of Pampelona — Sandoval in the *Life of Ch. V. L. 16. Sect. 26.* hath a long Digression touching these Officers.

Robert Gaguin Doctor of Laws, General of the Order of the Mathurins, or Trinitarians, who died in 1501, Bonfon's *Antiq. de Paris*, p. 168. b. He published *Statutes and Ordinances des Roys d'Armes*, printed at the End of *L'histoire des Gestes Romains*, a Paris pour Anthoine Verard. This Person may be placed under the Classis of Statesmen, having undergone many Embassies from the King of France to the Pope, Notes sur Ph. de Comines, p. 361. to Italy, Germany, and England, and was famous for his Skill in History, Oratory, Poësie, and all Polite Literature. *Miræi Elogia Belgica*, p. 197. As to his Embassy into England, see Rymer's *Fœdera*, vol. xii, p. 432, 454, 498. Polydor Virgil, p. 581. Domitian A. 18. in *Bibl. Cott. Eloquentissimus Orator Gaguinus Ordinis Sanctæ Trinitatis Generalis* — legatus Regis Franciæ.

To these may be added Speneri *Insignium Theoria*, and the Works of C. F. Menestrier the Jesuit, a Person very famous for his Learning, who died at Paris 21 January 1705, *Memoires de Trevoux* fevrier 1705, Marc de Vulson, Sir de la Colombiere, Chevalier de l'Ordre de St. Michel & Gentilhomme Ordinaire de la Maison du Roy, de l'office des Roys d'Armes, des Herauds & des Pourfivans, &c. a Paris 1645, in 4to. This Person was worthily knighted in 1643, *La Science Heroique*, p. 162. And

in the Privilege for Printing his Book, the King gives him the Character of having performed divers Services in the Wars: See his *Theatre d'Honneur*, Vol. 1. p. 532.

Olivier de la Marche, in his *History*, hath many Remarks about these Officers, but more particularly in *l'Estat de la Maison du Duc. Charles de Bourgogne*, in 1574, printed at Brussels at the End of his *Memoirs*, who may be considered either as a Statesman having been Master of the Household to the Dukes of Burgundy, and Ambassador into this Kingdom. Thus Rot. 9 E. IV. m. 5. 6. Feb. Salvus Conductus pro Domino Olivero de la Marche Magistro Hospitii Carissimi fratris Nostri Ducis Burgundiæ: And the like again, 22 Junii Rot. Franc. 10 E. 4. m. 2. He was also, as he acquaints us, Ambassador to France: Or he may be considered as a Soldier, having been Captain of the Guards to Duke Charles, Knighted at the Battle of Montleheri, and taken Prisoner at that of Nanci. He died (as Gramaye in *Antiq. Brabant* informs us) in 1501, of whom see Bayle's *Dictionary* Voce *Marche*, and possibly he is the same who in Privat. Sigill. 7 E. 4. in бага in Off. Pell. is entred, To Sir John Olyver de la Marche a Knight of Bretagne, with a Cup of Silver and Gilt Pr. of xl. iv s. and vi Marc. in Money, Bretagne being possibly here placed for Burgundy.

Henry Howard Earl of Northampton, a Person of excellent Wit, and fluent Eloquence, Master of Arts and Sciences, as Mr. Camden styles him.

But the latest of all, Jean Baptist Chrystin Baron of Meerbecke, Chancellor of Brabant, and Plenipotentiary for the King of Spain at the Treaty of Peace at Nimeguen, in *Jurisprudentia Heroica*, whereof he was the Author: See le *Theatre de la Noblesse du Brabant*, p. 157.

Moreri's *Dictionaire*, augmented by Monsieur le Clerk.

*Belleforest les Grands Annals de France*, l. 4. c. 41. p. 759 b.

St. Julian Doyen de Chalon de l'Antiquite & Origines des Bourgognons. c. xxv. p. 143.

Gollut de la Repub. Sequanoise, p. 817. a very learned Lawyer and Historian.

Charondas le Caron *Pandectes du Droit Francois*.

Johan. le Feron de la Primitive Institution des Roys & Herauds, 1555. Abridged under the Title *Le Herauld de la Guerre* ensemble son election, pre-eminence dignite & Office parmy les Armees a Paris 1610 in 12mo.

Claude Fauchet *origines des Chevaliers, Armoiries, & Heraux*, a Paris 1600. in 8vo.

Andreu



tions, others Laymen of Learning, Souldiers, Politicians, Statesmen, Historians, Civil and Common Lawyers, Antiquaries, and Glossographers.

The Method proposed is first to consider the Original and Import of the Title of King of Arms in general, and next that of Garter in particular, the Time of the Institution thereof, the Succession of these Officers, and the Duties and Rights of this Employment.

For several Ages antecedent to the Creation of *Garter*, there had been in this, as in Foreign Kingdoms, a Society or Fraternity of Officers of Arms, distinguished by the Degrees of *Kings* and *Heralds*; for it seems *Purfevants* were then esteemed only Candidates, Noviciates, or Probationers, who when promoted into the Order of *Heralds* of Arms, became complete real Officers; out of these *Heralds*, a Superior Order was selected, at first known by the Stile of *Kings of the Herald*s, to whom in Process of Time the Title of *Kings of Arms* was attributed, because the Order of an Herald of Arms was comprehended within the Dignity of a King of the Herald's by way of Involution as a Part in the Whole, or as the Inferior is within the Superior; for heretofore as no Herald of Arms could be created, unless he had gone through the Apprentiship of a Purfevant, so no Person was advanced to be a King of Herald's without passing through the Office of an Herald of Arms; but these Gradations have been <sup>b</sup> determined to be unnecessary in *Westminster-Hall*, and that Promotions may be made *per Saltum* in this Office. The Office then of a King of Herald's included that of an Herald of Arms *ex vi Ordinis*, and thence the Term of Arms became at length an Appellation given to those Kings as well as to the Herald's to whom it did originally belong: But it must not be inferred, that such Kings of Herald's were no more than the first or primary Herald's of Arms presiding over the others, for the Support of Regularity and Government, for these Kings were of a separate and higher Order and Character, that is, upon their Creations thereto became invested with some Singularities of Power and Privilege, and were thereby qualified with a Capacity to perform some Functions and Trusts, which they had no Authority or Pretence to execute or claim, while they were only in the Classis of Herald's: Hence it was that the Herald's of Arms, upon their Advancement to be Kings of the Herald's, had a new Method of Creation and Coronation in a Form very much different from that of their former Admission to be Herald's of Arms, and an Oath of a different Tenour was administered to them, which, with several other Particulars that might be named, sufficiently prove a Distinction of Order, if the Publisher is not mistaken in his Notion of that Term. An Instance to illustrate this Matter may be taken from the *Feciales* among the *Romans*, thought to resemble the Herald's, where, as other Qualifications were re-

Andreu Favine le Theatre d'Honneur & Chevalerie, l. 1. c. 4.

Sir John Dodderige.

Hyde Chief Justice.

The Dissertations of the Members of the Voluntary Society are preserved in the Cotton Library, Faustinae E. v.

Weaver's Funeral Monuments.

Tho. de Rouck, Den Nederlandtschen Herald Amst. 1645 fol.

The chief of the Antiquarians are Sir Henry Spelman, Du Fresne, Dr. Watts, Caseneuve, Covarruvias, Martinius, Hoffman, Kilianus, Minshew Dictionaire de l'Academie, de Trevoux, de Rochefort, de Furretiere, &c.

<sup>b</sup> Roll's Abridgement, p. 2. f. 72.



quired for the *c Pater Patratus* than for a simple *Fecial*, so, the former had an Authority to demand an Oath, which the latter could not do: For notwithstanding the Allusion of *d Dr. Wats*, the Collector is diffident, whether he may without giving Offence, compare these Degrees of the Officers of Arms to the Orders in the Church, though by the way several other Resemblances besides these Distinctions of Orders may be found of an Analogy between the Customs of the Clergy and those relating to the Officers of Arms. To specify some of them, none could be admitted into either College without a Purity of Extraction, a Competency of Age, a previous Examination of their Abilities, and a Certificate of their Moralities and Conversations, and then their Admissions were conferred at Solemn Festivals with splendid Ceremonies differing according to their Degrees, and even the Initiation of Pursuivants was known by the Ecclesiastical Term of *e Baptism*; and it was further required that all Officers of Arms should have a particular *Title* as well as the Clergy, and likewise that an Endowment or Subsistence was to be settled upon them for their Lives irrevocably, for none of them were permitted to be temporary; they were forbidden frequenting Taverns, and using Games of Hazard, and when this Character was duly conferred, the same was thought, like that of the Clergy, to be indelible.

The Comparison to the Clergy might the rather be indulged in this Case, if the Observation of a learned *f Jesuit* hath any solid Foundation, that to render the Order of Knighthood more venerable, the several Cere-

*c* Dodwell de Parma Equestri Woodwardiana, p. 75.  
*d* Gloss. ad M. Paris voce Cursor.

*e* All Writers have used this Term for this Purpose, at which Spenser, Theor. Insign. p. 5. takes Offence, as implying, in his Opinion, a Profanation of the Holy Sacrament of Baptism. This Scruple seems to be of an older Date; for the MS. of Anderson in Queen's Coll. Library in Oxford hath these Words, "And yus is he [the Pursuivant] twys cristin, first at the font Stane for the salvation of his saule, and sine be his Fundour, but not in derisione, na lyt lying of ye haly sacrament, bot for agumentation of gude werkis and to keep unite amang Christin pepill als fer as in him it efter his power". May it be allowable for an Officer of Arms to say somewhat to this scrupulous German. Baptize signifies in its Primitive Sense to wash or plunge, or dip in Water, and therefore the Washing of Cups is termed Baptism by the inspired Writers, Mar. 8. 4. Hebr. 9. 10. and at length this Word, like several other Greek and Latin ones, was made by the Christians a technical Term, and as it were consecrated to express one of the Holy Sacraments: However this Term was not only used in the Romish Church for other Rites, but like several other, taken from religious Rites, hath been inoffensively used in Secular Affairs, otherwise the Lawyers must plead guilty in using Baptizer son Appel for specifying the Particulars thereof. Dict. de Trevoux voce Baptiser, Du Fresn Gloss. Upton writes that he had baptized, that is entituled his Book de Militari Officio. It may possibly be too low to mention the usual Practice of the Seamen, who upon their first passing of the Line have Water thrown on their Heads, which is called Baptism; when the Portuguese take on them a new Surname, which is of some illustrious Family in that Kingdom; which latter Point seems indefensible, as being derogatory to the Nobility, for we know

it was thought a Capital Crime in Pomposianus for calling his Bond Slaves by the Names of famous Captains. And thus in the French Language, when any Sobriquet is imposed, the Person is said to be baptized, and in the same Idiom Baptiser son vin is to mingle Water with it; now Wine mixed with Water was, as Upton saith, poured upon the Head of the Pursuivant, who had then the Title or Surname imposed upon him. And thus in some Rites in the Romish Church, not accounted by them Sacraments, this Word hath been used, as in the Dedication of Churches, the naming of Bells, of which Peyrat Antiq. de la Chapelle, p. 533. Ce n'est pas un Baptême, qui soit Sacrement, ce n'est qu'une seule imposition de nom accompagnée de Saintes Ceremonies, & de benediction. The Monks for some Ages called their Entry into Religion a Baptism, Dacherii notæ ad vitam Lanfranci, p. 20. at which Time they usually took a new Name Du Fresn Gloss. v. nomen, and at present the Cardinal Vicar is said to baptize the Relicks of Saints that are supposed to be found in the Catacombs without any Inscription, De cultu ignotorum Sanctorum, p. 10. and 'tis as well known that when the Greeks married any Lady of the Latin Church, they imposed on them new Names which they stiled a Rebaptization, Du Fresn Gloss. voce nomen, a Word much less defensible. This German would have been more startled at the Word Christian used in the Manuscript, though our noble Historian hath used that Expression for giving a Name to a Ship, Lord Clarend. Hist. vol. 3. p. 600. and possibly would be as much scandalized at the Term Creation, though the same hath been used for the Promotion to the Degrees of the Nobility as well as to Heralds; and he had the same Reason to shew the like Aversion to Evangeliser used by the French Lawyers and Historians, to the Words Apostle, Evangelists, Bishops, Abbots, &c. used in a Secular Sence.

*f* Méneftrier de la Chevalerie, p. 83.



monies used in the conferring thereof were taken in Allusion to those of the Church, as the Bath with reference to Baptism, the *Colaphus* in regard to the Blow on the Ear given at Confirmations, the Habit from that of publick Penitents, the Vigils to the Eves, &c.

To prevent any Insinuation, that the Publisher writes with Partiality to the Office of a King of Arms, and disadvantageous to the Pursuivants, he craves Leave, though it may be somewhat foreign, to produce the Proofs of these Assertions by way of Introduction:

It is not worth the while to confute a late <sup>g</sup> Author, who makes no Distinction between a Pursuant, an Herald, and a King of Arms, conceiving them only different Terms of one individnal Office, or to take Notice that it is laid down, there is no Difference at this Time between Kings and Heralds in the <sup>b</sup> *Netherlands*, which must be a great Singularity; but if the particular Province of the *Netherlands* had been mention'd, 'tis not improbable this Collector might have been enabled to have shewn this Practice was a modern Innovation in that Place. Thus *Spener*, <sup>i</sup> who published his Book in 1690, saith there were five Heralds in the Imperial Court, and no King of Arms among them, "*Neq; aliquis inter eos Rex Armorum*". If that was the Fact in his Time, our <sup>ii</sup> Records inform us there anciently were the Degrees of Kings, Heralds, and Pursuivants: The Quotations are in the Margin. But to proceed, <sup>k</sup> *Upton*, and from his Authority other <sup>l</sup> Authors inform us, That there were two Degrees of Officers inferior to Pursuivants, the lowest are by them named *Cursores*, that is Messengers on Foot, who wore the Arms of their Masters painted, enclosed in Boxes hanged to their Belts, and from those *Chimachers* were taken (false Printed doubtless for *Chivauchers*) that is Messengers on Horseback, who had their Master's Arms affixed to their Shoulders, which latter,

<sup>g</sup> René Francois Essays des Marveils de Nature, p. 437.

<sup>b</sup> Jurisprud. Heroica, vol. 2. p. 78.

<sup>i</sup> Theoria insignium, p. 9.

<sup>ii</sup> Comp. Hospitii 6 E. 1. in Turre Lond. Heretelino Regi Heraudorum Alemanniae, vidulatori Regis Alemanniae, & uni heraldorum Armorum Alemanniae de dono Regis xii l.

Comp. Garderob. 12 E. 3. penes Camerar. Scaccar. magistro Conrod Regi heraldorum, & decem aliis Menestralis diversorum aliorum Magnatum Alemanniae existentibus apud Insulam de Werd in presentia Regis & facientibus Menestraliam suam ibidem de dono Dom. Regis Cs. Ludekino Regi Heraldorum Alemanniae & Ludekino Piper Ministrallo Domini Imperatoris venientibus ad Dom. Regem & facientibus Menestraliam suam coram Rege 25 Decemb. xl. Johanni de Stembergh & haraldo Armorum de Alemannia de dono Regis venientibus cum rumoribus xlv s.

Exit Pell. M. 20 E. 3. Custodi Garderobae per manus Johannis de Stayneshall Regis Haraldorum de Alemannia in partem solutionis xxiv l. xvii s. sibi debitis tam de vadiis suis guerrae de tempore quo stetit in obsequio Regis in partibus Franciae & Brabantiae, quam pro restauo duorum equorum in obsequio Dom. Regis in eisdem partibus, & pro Robis suis.

Exit Pell. P. 24 H. 6. Heraldus Imperatoris in denariis sibi liberatis per manus Garterii Regis Armorum in persolutionem x Marcarum, quas

Dom. Rex certis de causis ipsum moventibus dicto Heraldus liberare mandavit.

Priv. Sig. 5 July 27 H. 6. to pay to Stryelande heraulde unto the hygh and mighty Prince the Emperor xl.

Priv. Sig. 17 June 36 H. 6. To pay Barchelour Herault late comyng towards us from the high and mighty Prince the Emperour with certaine Letters and Message xl.

In 1467, Romerick King of Arms of the Holy Roman Emperor and Herald confirmed and constituted by the most illustrious Roman Emperor Frederick being then in the City of London grants a Coat of Arms. The Original is in the Custody of Peter le Neue Esq; Norroy.

Exit Pell. P. 7 E. 4. cuidam heraldo Imperatoris Alemanniae in denariis sibi liberatis per manus proprias in precio xiii virgarum de Velvet nigro viii l. & in pecuniis numeratis x Marcae, probably the same Romerick.

Priv. Sig. Oct, 7 H. 7. To pay unto Stephen Gossellet pursuivant unto our dearest Cousen and brother the King of the Romans 5 Mark.

Lib. Comp. M. 7 H. 7. Philippo Pursuivant nuncio Regis Romanorum huper venienti a dicto Rege de regardo xl s.

37 B. 16. in Bibl. Harley p. 1. x July 1 H. 7. Peris Puyssamis pursuivant of the King of Romans.

<sup>k</sup> De re militari, p. 18.

<sup>l</sup> Gerard Leigh's Accedence of Armory.

after



after three Year's Service, were promoted to be Pursevants, who however were still accounted, as it hath been hinted, under the Degree of proper Officers of Arms. No great Stress should be laid upon Etymologies, though it be remarked that the Word *Pursevant* seems to be of a French Extraction, derived from *pour* for, and *suivre* to follow, and thence latinized *Prosequens* *Prosecutor*, *Prosequutor*, somewhat like as the *Acolythi*, now reputed in the Roman Church to be the lowest of the four *Minor* Orders, had that Appellation from the Greek Language, signifying a Follower: But the main Question is, whom the Pursevants were obliged to follow? *Le<sup>m</sup> Laboureur's* Conjecture is, that they had that Denomination from their Duty to attend on Princes in their Progresses, to observe and record the Memorable Actions in Jufts and splendid Solemnities. But it may be more reasonable to observe that this Denomination of Pursevant or Follower, according to the Opinions of the Authors cited in the Margin, was attributed to them from their Attendance upon the Heralds, whom they served as their Scholars, Clerks, Scribes, Mandataries, Agents, Substitutes and Assistants, and thence called *Les<sup>o</sup> Aides des herauts* from their waiting on them in such a manner, according to the Expression of *P<sup>r</sup> Dr. Wats*, as the Deacons did on the Presbyters, or if that Comparison should be too assuming, as the young *Valets* or Esquires waited upon Knights, before whom they carried the Shield and Lance; this Resemblance is the rather made, not only because *G<sup>r</sup> Garwen Douglas* uses even the Word Pursuivant for such an Esquire, but because these Officers, on whom we now treat, have been termed *Valetti Armarum*, which Title of *r* Valets was retained by young Esquires of the greatest Descents, even the Sons of Princes, till the Time they received the Honour of Knighthood. Upon this Account of their being thus the Actuaries, Amanuenses or Secretaries of the Kings and Heralds, they have been called *f Clercs d'Armes & Serviteurs de l'Office d'Armes*, and in this Sense the Editor conceives the Appellation of *i Apprenticij Heraldorum* in an Ancient Wardrobe Account denotes these Pursuivants, and therefore their Duty is expressed to be *u l'Office des Poursuites ordinaires des Herauds*, and the Heralds are enjoined to perform their Functions either *x* personally or by their Pursevants, and therefore one Pursevant was *y* substituted to each Herald: Hence a *Dutch<sup>z</sup>* Author calls the Pursuivants *Batchelors*, and *Du<sup>a</sup> Rueille* *Feciales Baccalaureos*, a Word used on several Occasions for young Gentlemen, who for want of Experience in Feats of Arms

*m* Origine des Armes, p. 119.

*n* Limn. de jure publico in addit. ad l. 6. c. 5. n. 121. Pursuivanten vocabulo a Gallis petito, quibus Pursuivans d'Armes appellantur Heroldi, qui nondum in officio suo sunt, sed expectant dum locum vacare contingat: See Faucher des Herauts, p. 26. Belleforest les Grands Annals de France, l. 4. c. 21. Diction. de Furetiere, des Arts & Sciences par M. D. C.

*o* Trabouillet l'Estat de France, vol. 1. p. 592.

*p* Gloss. ad M. Paris in voce Curfor.

*q* Gloss. at the End of the Translation of Virgil.

*r* See La Roque de Noblesse, p. 7. Du Fresno Gloss. v. Valetti.

*f* See Sicily Herald hereafter quoted. Menestrier de la Chevalerie, p. 208.

*t* Comp. Garderobæ xi Ed. 3. Peres Rememor. Regis m. 3. Cokerello & Waltero Cardinal *Apprenticij Heraldorum* d'Armes ad robas suas ut patet per breve Dom. Regis sub privato sigillo datum apud Westm. v. die Maii anno xii, xii ulnas de panno radiato: See Mus. Ashm. n. 1111.

*u* Belleforest les Grands Annals, l. 4. c. 21.

*x* Schubartus de Com. Palat. p. 308.

*y* Favyn Theatre d'honneur, l. 1. c. 4.

*z* Rouek Nederl. Herault, p. 222. ende ghedou-den voor Bachelieron der die officieren der Wapenen.

*a* Tab. suprem. honorum Car. iii. Lotharingæ Ducis.



were not advanced to the Degree of Knighthood, as likewise for the lowest Sort of Knights, who having not Estate or Vassals qualifying them to be Bannerets, had that Appellation given them; and again, this Term Batchelour, in the University Language, was attributed to a Noviciate, that being not any real or perfect Degree, as the <sup>b</sup> Canonists tell us. In this State of Tryal, according to the Ancient Treatises, these Pursuivants were to continue for seven Years to learn ' Obedience and Silence, a Rule heretofore so strictly observed, that the Sovereign himself, upon extraordinary Occasions, was permitted only to Dispence ' with the last Year of this Apprentiship.

The Collector intends not to delay the Reader in this Place, by shewing the Ceremonies used in the Baptisms of Pursuivants to be different in several Articles from the Solemnities of the Creations of Heralds, and the Difference of their respective Ensigns, that had a concealed allegorical Meaning in them, which would require a large Dissertation; but he would not omit two Particulars relating to Pursuivants, which he thinks intimate, these were not complete Officers of Arms, that is, their Power of resigning or renouncing that Employment, and their former Method in wearing their Coats.

It hath been hinted, and will be soon proved, that the Character of an Officer of Arms, like that of the Clergy, was esteemed indelible, and it was the Doctrine of former Ages, that if any such Officer had committed a Crime, for which he deserved to be condemned to Death, or to be exposed to publick Shame, that before the inflicting such Punishment, he, in the same Manner as a Clergyman, ought to be degraded, and not suffer in the Quality of an Officer of Arms, but as a desecrate Malefactor; the Creation of a Herald (as it is expressed in an Ancient <sup>d</sup> Manuscript) " Is " na litell thing, for it is ane Ordre of worschep, and He is bunden to " it for all the dayis of his live— Fra he be maid Herald, may his Foun- " dour discharge him or deprive him? Nay yat may He not, without " caus of deprivation, and yat be maid known to the King or to the " Constable of his Realm. And be ye herald worthy and undeservit, " gif ye case his Foundour would be sa unworschepfall, yat he wald failze " him and not fulfill him of his leving, He may call him before his " Soveraine Lord and compell him till it. May a herald gif oure his " Office, and discharge him yerof and he left? Nay yat may he not, " bot gif he wald purches ane dispensation to enter in religione: Sum " haldis opinion, yat to take ye Ordour of Knytheid dischargs him, bot " I cannot understand be quhat reson, for of knights were heralds wer " first made and put yerto for the maire strait Ordour, and it is not " usable to charge fra ye strater to the frear, bot it is oft done". Let us now hear what this same Writer saith upon the Subject of Pursuivants. " Ane Pursuivant standis bot as a *Novis*, ay quhil ye zeirs of his preve- " ing be past, for He may leif it and tak him to ane other officer liffing,

<sup>b</sup> Rebuffus de Beneficiis, p. 279. n. 29. Hop-  
ping de jure insign. c. 2. n. 631.  
<sup>c</sup> Moreau des Armoiries, p. 89.

<sup>c c</sup> Paillet Science des Armoiries, p. 169.  
<sup>d</sup> In Queen's College Library in Oxon, bearing the  
Name of one Anderson.



“ quhenever him leſt, diſchargeand him to his founder. May his foun-  
 “ dour diſcharge him witout his aun conſent or deprive him? That may  
 “ he not, for it is contrary to his Honour, and alſo to ye firſt promis  
 “ at yair creatione, And in yat ye Purſevant is frear yan ye maiſter, for  
 “ ye purſevant may leiſe it as ſaid is”. The Purſevant then was allowed  
 to renounce that Employment at his own pleaſure, which an Herald  
 could not do, becauſe he had received an *Order of Worſhip*, which is com-  
 menſurate with the Term of his Life, unleſs upon his Entry into Reli-  
 gion: for the Writer doth not as ſome other Authors do, allow the va-  
 cating this Office by the Aſſumption of Knighthood. This ſame Doctrin  
 is laid down by *Sicily Herald*, who muſt be admitted to be a com-  
 petent Witneſs, who, in his Treatiſe dedicated to all Officers of Arms,  
 ſpeaking of a Purſevant, hath theſe expreſs Words, “ *Il n’eſt que*  
 “ *Novis que entre en religion, Car il ne faiſt ne doit faire nuls ſerments aux*  
 “ *armes— La raiſon eſt celle, pour ce qu’il poeult renuncier a l’office ſ’il*  
 “ *luy plaiſt: Et cela ne peut faire ung herauld, ſi non pour trois cas apres*  
 “ *declares*”. And when he diſcourſes upon the Nature of the Office of  
 an Herald he thus explains himſelf, “ *Et n’eſt pas poſſible, qu’il puiſt re-*  
 “ *nuncier au dit office de herauld; ſy non per trois cas, le premier eſt pour de*  
 “ *venir Chevalier, le ſecond eſt pour de venir homme de l’Egliſe, le troiſieme*  
 “ *pour commettre Crime de leſe Majeſté, et de deſervir paine capitale, en cas*  
 “ *de criſme de leze Majeſté, de traiſon, meurdre, ou aultre cas digne de mort,*  
 “ *doibt officier eſtre degradé*”: And then he deſcribes the Rites of ſuch a  
 Deprivation. As to the firſt Particular, he propoſes the Caſe, that an  
 Officer of Arms (to whom he there gives the uſual Title of *Voir diſant*)  
 being ſent by his Maſter to the Enemy’s, ſhould be informed by them of  
 their laying an Ambuſcade in ſome Wood, whether this Officer was obliged  
 to keep this Secret from his Maſter: On this Point he plays the Caſuiſt  
 reſolving it in this Form, That for preventing the Effuſion of Chriſtian  
 Blood, this Officer, without Breach of his Duty to Secrecy, might, in  
 his Opinion, pray and beſeech his Maſter not to proceed towards that  
 Place, where he knew the Enemy thus lay in Ambuſcade, and adviſe him  
 to take a different Rout, without diſcovering the Reaſon of that his Re-  
 queſt: But he ſaith the common Expedient to ſolve this Difficulty had  
 been, “ *Que le dit Roy d’Armes ou herauld, qui a trouvé la dite Embuche*  
 “ *des Ennemis de ſon maiſtre, ſ’en doibt retourner per aultre chemin, et venir*  
 “ *a ſon dit maiſtre luy ſupplier, qu’il le fache Chevalier en guerre, & a-*  
 “ *doncqu— Roy d’Armes ou herauld doibt en la main de ſon dit place re-*  
 “ *mercier a l’office d’armes, et mettre l’ung aultre en ſon lieu. Et ce faiſt, le*  
 “ *dit Chevalier nouvellement faiſt doibt dire en la preſence de ſon Prince et de*  
 “ *ſon Conſeil au dit roy d’armes ou herauld quil— au chef des Enemy’s*  
 “ *qui tiennent embuche en tel lieu, et— ycelluy— eſt deſcouverte*”. So  
 that according to the Judgement of former Ages, the Office of a King or  
 Herald, which could not be renounced, might however become extin-  
 guiſhed by receiving the Degree of Knighthood, which hath been longer

<sup>e</sup> There is a Copy of this Book formerly belonging to the *Quarto's E. 1403*, and there is another Copy in the  
 Mr. Selden, now placed in the Royal Library among College of Arms.



insisted upon in this Place, because in all Probability it will set a Passage of *J Upton* in its true Light, who writes, “*Et est sciendum quod tales nuncii*”  
 “*Prosecutores possunt esse milites & militaribus gaudere insigniis, ut deauratis, uti velvet, & aliis pannis aureis indui*, when as to the Heralds he  
 “only saith, *insigniis militaribus utuntur*”. Purservants, who were Novices, and could abdicate their Professions, might enjoy the Honour of Knighthood, which it seems was esteemed wholly inconsistent with the Offices of Heralds or Kings of Arms. It would too much lengthen the Discourse to enquire into the Reason of the Incompatibility of Knighthood, with their Duties, which may be shewn in a more proper Place.

This *Sicily Herald*, probably the same Person whose Dissertations on *Blazon* & were published in *French* at *Lions* and *Paris*, under the Reign of *Ch. VIII*, and afterwards translated into *Italian*, printed at *Venice*, treating upon the Manner of Partition of Fees, writes, “*Que les poursuivans*”  
 “*n'ont nul droit de partage, fors ce que plaist au roy d'armes & heraulds de*”  
 “*leur donner le leur frank volonté: Combien que aucuns ont voutu maintenir,*”  
 “*que deux Poursuivans vailloient ung herauld: Mais la question est decidée &*”  
 “*trouvée que non, Cur lesdits Poursuivans ne sont que Clercs serviteurs aus dits roys d'armes & heraulds.*”

Besides when Noblemen had their Purservants and Heralds, we find this remarkable Difference in the Methods of the Constitution of them by their Masters, that they might institute the first by their own single Authority, and with their own Hands; but for the latter, not only the Consent of the Sovereign was to be obtained, but the Creation it self of the Herald was to be personally by the Prince, or at least some Power derived from him. For (in the Terms of the above quoted Manuscript)  
 “All Princes Dukes Marques Erllis Barons and Captains of weir may  
 “maak Purservants— How fall a Duke or Marques, ane Erll, or a Bar-  
 “ron haif his Purservant maid Herald, sence he may make nane him-  
 “self? He fall present him to his Sovereine Lord and certefy his hienefs  
 “be toung or writ his—— and witness governane, and quhat zeirs he  
 “had *persewit*, and how yat he was borne, and promittit him leving,  
 “and quhen he hes maid him Herald he fall feft him in accomputable  
 “leving, yat he may leif in worschip according to yat Ordour, be-  
 “seeking him of his Grace to do him yat worschip, yat he wald creat  
 “him Herald to his service.” <sup>b</sup> *Upton* saith, Purservants were made *a Domino vel magistro ipsius Creandi*; *Sicily Herald* proposes this Question “*Quel-*”  
 “*ques Gens peullent creer & faire heraulx, ou Officiers d'armes? Nul ne*”  
 “*doibt faire herauld, s'il n'est Roy, Prince, Comte, ou Baron de sy grande*”  
 “*Antiquité, que a grand paine soit il memoire du commencement de la noblesse.*”  
 “*Et que cè soit par le assentement de leur Prince souverain; parceque s'il ad-*”  
 “*venoit, que le dit herauld meffit—— qui portast prejudice ou damage au*”  
 “*prince, ou au país, que le maistre d'icelluy poeult restituer; et a ceste cause*”

f De re milit. p. 20. & p. 22.

g Menestr. Orig. des Armoiries, p. 27, 34, 35.  
 The Collector has inspected Trattato de i Colori nelle  
 arme, nelle livree, & nelle devise di Sicilio Araldo del  
 Re Alphonso d'Aragonia in Venet. 1605. in 8vo. &

1595, appresso Micheli Bonibelli. We may make some  
 guess to the Age of our Writer of our MS. because in  
 p. 27. he saith, Et depuis n'y a pas long temps on  
 a veu en France Dame Jehane la Pucelle, &c.

b De re milit. p. 19.



"*fust al commencement accoustumè de baillier & trouver pleges pour yceulx, quand on les faisoit*". Somewhat more is said of these Officers in the Margin.

But there was a visible Distinction between Heralds and Purservants in the Forms of wearing their *Tabarts*, which might be perceived at a great Distance, and this Variety, in all Likelihood, owed its Original to the Sentiments of these Ages, that the latter were not complete Officers of Arms. *Tabart* was indeed a Term ascribed in general to the Habits of all

*i Thus 'tis Entred by William Fellowe afterwards Notroy. "On Thursday the 2d of October 1522, The hygh and mighty Prince Charles Duc of Suffolke in his place in Sudwark did create me with his own hand to be his Purservant at Armys naming me Merlyan de Aye in presence of Master Gariyr, Suffolk alias Richmond and others, MS. given to the Heralds Office by John Hare Esq; late Richmond". By the Way we learn that the learned Glossographer is short in styling him only Marleon. Spelm. Gloss. v. heraldus. This Title signifies in the French Language a little Hawk in the Nest, which was part of the Crest, and the sinister Supporter of this noble Duke. Sicily Herald in his Time, imputed the lessening the Reputation of this College to the too frequent and unwarrantable practice of Knights and Gentlemen who would have Purservants of their own. MS. in Royal Library E. n. 1403. Mais aujourdhy le Noble Office d'Armes est fort mis en bas & a nyen, a cause q'il n'y a present tant simple Chevalier ou Gentilhomme, qu'il ne veuille avoir son purservant. The French Heralds therefore humbly petitioned their Sovereign to prohibit it.*

*As a Peice of Curiosity, the Constitution of a Purservant, dated in 1422, is here inserted, wherein the Founder doth it by his own Authority, Omnibus ad quos presentes literæ pervenerint Johannes de Lisle miles in regno Angliæ debitam reverentiam & honorem; Notum facimus, quod quia de fidelitate, industria, atq; bona diligentia dilecti familiaris nostri Thomæ de Launey diu continuatam habemus experientiam, nos de eisdem plenarie confidentes, ipsum Thomam creavimus, fecimus, & ordinavimus, creamusq; facimus & ordinamus per presentes Publicum Pursuivandum ad arma, Autorisantes eum ad ubicunq; terrarum in quibuscunq; locis honestis nostra interfligia Armorum palam deferendum, & ad alia quæ prudentes Pursuivandi ad arma facere consueverunt getendum & exercendum; in quo officio imposuimus sibi nomen *Espeir* a modo appellandum; de quo officio fideliter exequendo pluribus nobilibus viris & nobis presentibus solenne præstitit juramentum in manibus Cestre herauldi ad arma ad hæc per nos spetialiter vocati & requisiti, aliis etiam adhibitis solennitatibus in similibus & consuetis. Rogamus propterea Principes quoslibet & viros nobiles, necnon Reges ad arma atq; Heraldos & alios quacunq; fulgeant præcellentia aut autoritate, penes quos prænominatum *Espeir* familiarem nostrum contigerit se transferre, quatenus ipsum pro tali habeant & favorabiliter admittant de honoribus, prærogativis, juribus & emolumentis dicto officio spectantibus & consuetis eum libere uti, & pacifice gaudere permittentes & facientes. In cujus rei testimonium sigillum nostrum presentibus literis duximus apponendum. Datum in Civitate B. vi die Ap. Anno 1412. MS. in Cotton Libr. not yet marked, There is an Instrument much of the same Tenour in 1429, printed in Belleforest les Grands Annals de France, l. 4. c. 41. The Collector doth not remember that he hath seen any Instrument whereby an Herald was constituted*

*by a Nobleman. Our Records indeed furnish us with plentiful Instances of the Employments of such Officers, but there was no Occasion to recite the Forms of their Constitutions. Edmond Earl of March died in 5 R. 2. leaving his Son under Age, and therefore the King, in the next Year, directs his Writ to the Farmers of the Mannor of Wortley Mortimer, reciting, That whereas Edmond late Earl of March, and Ulster, had by an Indenture (which the King had confirmed) for the good Services rendered to him by his beloved Servant John Othelake, "Quem ipse Haraldum ad Arma & nominare Marche fecit", had granted him an Annuity during his Life, as by the Letters of the said Earl and the King's Confirmation more fully appeared, therefore these Farmers are ordered to pay it. Claus. 6 R. 2. m. 25. See Pat. 6 R. 2. p. 1. m. 29.*

*At the Investiture of the Prince of Wales, on All-Saints Day, x H. 7. the King, at the Request of the Marquess Dorset, created an Herald of Arms for him, Julius B. 12. bibl. Cotton p. 96. Claudius A. 8. W. Q. in off. Arm. f. 223 b.*

*In the Life of Sir Richard Wingfield, in this Book, p. 231. there is inserted a Letter, wherein it is intimated, that the King was to be spoke to about the Constituting a Purservant for the Deputy of Calis, but the Occasion of that Letter was doubtless to obtain an Allowance of the usual Salary, which issued out of the Revenues of that Place.*

*From this Instance of March, compared with several other Records, in which he was so styled by this Name, after the Death of his Founder, we find that these Heralds by their Creation became Officers for Life, and as it was not in their own Power to resign, so their Office was not determined by the Death of their Founders. This Chandos Herald is often mentioned by Froissard, under that Title, after the Death of his Master, who was killed 44 E. 3. yet this Officer is named in 1380. Froiss. vol. 2. ch. 54. see p. 85, 196. and in a Record Exit. Pell. 7 R. 2. At present there will be only another Precedent inserted, which shews that Noblemen did, according to the Manuscript above quoted, infeoffe, that is settle an Annuity upon these Officers for their Lives, and that they retained these Titles after the Deaths of their Founders. We have a Privy-Seal, dated 16 March 1 H. 4. to confirm the Grant of xxx Marks out of the Mannor of Fyndon, made by the then late Duke of Norfolk to Reginald Mowbray the Herald, which Reginald had attended on that Duke in his Banishment, Rym. vol. 8. p. 51. and to this same Reginald Mowbray Herald, and to Eliz. his Wife, that King in his 9th Year grants the Custody of the Exchange at Calis. Priv. Sig. 22 Oct. 9 H. 4.*

*If it should be enquired what these Officers of the Nobility did after the Death of their Founders, who died without Heirs Male, it will be found they were at Liberty to retain themselves under the Sovereign, or with some Nobleman, in both which Cases their Titles were allowed. But what is very particular, if their Founders left a Widow or Heiress, these Officers might continue with them, in which Case they were obliged to bear the Arms of these Ladies in a particular manner, to which Custom with-*

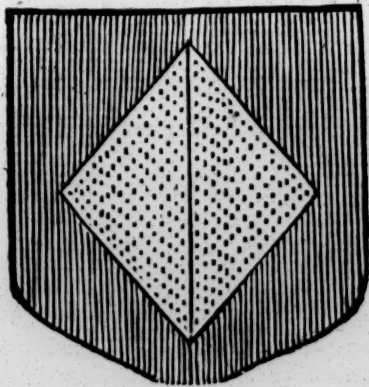


all these Degrees, which with regard to these Classes of Officers had however peculiar Names; the Robes of Pursuivants were called <sup>k</sup> Coats of Arms, *Plaques* were attributed to Heralds, as *Tuniques* did belong to the Kings.

Heralds were complete Officers, and according to *Sicily Herald*, wore their Habit in the same Manner with their Founders or Masters, which *Upton*<sup>l</sup> expresses more fully, to be in the same Form as their Masters used in the Days of Battle, at Turnaments or other Feats of Arms, “*Et isti* “*[Haraldi] debent portare tunicam armorum Dominorum suorum, & eisdem* “*indui eodem modo sicut Domini sui cum in conflictibus fuerint vel torneamen-* “*tis & aliis periculis bellicis, &c.*” But Pursuivants being Novices wore their Coats *transversely* to intimate they had not a full Investiture, and had not the Privilege to appear clothed like their Masters in their Feats of Arms. This Transposition of their Coats could not be ordained at first with a View only to distinguish them from Heralds, for their Coats of Arms were as inferior to *Plaques* in the Materials, Bigness, Shape and Value, as *Plaques* were to *Tuniques*; and as this Difference of *Plaques* from *Tuniques* in these Particulars diversify'd these Kings from Heralds, so the like Diversity in these Coats of Arms from *Plaques* would as well serve to difference Heralds from Pursuivants; besides there were other Ensigns and Symbols that would sensibly distinguish Heralds from Pursuivants, if the latter had not been forced to wear their Coats in a particular Posture; thus even at present Heralds have Collars of S. S. while the Pursuivants have none, &c.

But the Pursuivants in this Kingdom having discontinued this *Transposition* of their Coats, let us inspect what hath been wrote upon this Subject by our Domesticks and also by Foreigners. *Gerard*<sup>m</sup> *Leigh* tells us, the Coat is to be put upon a Pursuivant over his Shoulders *overthwart*, that is, the Manches or Sleeves of it should hang, one over his Breast, the o-

out all doubt are owing the several Entries of the Presence of the Heralds of Ladies in publick Assemblies, who by this apparent Difference in their Arms were immediately to be distinguished. The Words of *Sicily Herald* are, “*Et si elles sont Princesses de Pais, Duchesses, ou Contesses Heritiers, les Officiers d'armes de leurs Peres ou Mary's defuncts, se ils ne changent de Maistres & de Nom, & se vuillent tenir a elles, ils poeulent & doibvent porter les armes de leurs Maistresses Heritiers, soient vefves, ou aultres, en l'esmail de leur poitrine tantseulement en telle maniere, Cestascavoir en lozenge sur*



ung Escu, lequel soit d'autre couleur ou metal, que le Champ des ditz armes, & lozenge, comme il appiert en la figure. Purvieu qu'elles n'ayent nuls fils heritiers, qui leur doibvent succeder & posseder des ditz Ducs ou Contes, &c. apres

leur trespas. Car en ce cas lefditz Officiers doib-

vent porter les Armes de leur dits fils, & non pas de elles.

This Method of Bearing the Arms in a Lozenge within a Shield, by the Officer of a Lady being not commonly known, the Editor could not omit it, since it is a full Proof also of the Position, that Heralds were not Temporary.

This however did not extend to Ladies that were Sovereigns, as the Dutcheesses of Burgundy and Bretagne, &c. and to some Heroines who had commanded Armies, as the Countesse d'Montfort, the Pucelle d'Orleans, &c. who bore their Arms in Shields. These latter marched, Le casque en tete & l'epee a la Main, and fought like Amazons: But though the Queen's Consorts and Dowagers of France, had Right by the Crown to bear their Arms in a Shield, yet they could not have Officers of Arms, because that Kingdom, according to the Salick Law, could not descend to a Lady. These are the Observations of that same Author, whose Book richly deserves to be made publick.

<sup>k</sup> Feron Institut. des Roys & Herauds, p. 2. Diction. de Trevoux v. Heraut. Favin. l. 1. c. 14. H. 3. penes me, p. 1064 b. Thus among the Clergy we find the Tunique was the Habit of Subdeacons, the Dalmatick of Deacons, and the Chasuble of Priests, Dict. de Trevoux v. Dalmatique.

<sup>l</sup> De re mil. p. 20.

<sup>m</sup> Accidence of Armory.

E e e e

th r



ther over his Back, or to exprefs it more full with regard to the prefent Difquisition, that thofe Parts of the Tabart which cover the Breaf and Back of an Herald, and which are the longeft Parts of it, fhould be placed to hang over the Arms of Purfevants as Manches or Sleeves. <sup>n</sup> Upton describes it very explicitly, “ *Tunc accipiet Haraldus tunicam præfati [Pro-  
“ fecutoris] creandi, & ponet fupra caput creandi ex tranfverfo, ita quod illa  
“ pars tunice quæ ordinatur pro brachiis [Haraldi] ponatur ante & retro, ita  
“ quod pars longior præfatæ tunice fuper brachia [Profecutoris] creandi ex  
“ utrâq; parte pendeat; & fic præfatus Profecutor novus uti debet tunicâ ar-  
“ morum, cum eam aliquando induat femper, & non alio modo quamdiu fuerit  
“ Profecutor ”. This was fo ftrictly obferved, that in 1576 <sup>o</sup> Rouge-  
croix Purfevant was cenfured for prefuming to wear his Coat as an He-  
rald. The Reader may confult a <sup>p</sup> Sculpture in 20 Eliz. where this man-  
ner of the wearing thefe Coats is exhibited to publick View, and one  
fhould be apt to guefs this Practice continued to the Time when Mr. <sup>q</sup> We-  
ver published his *Funeral Monuments*. This Custom probably may allude  
to the Practice of Deacons, who, according to the <sup>r</sup> Pontifical, are to  
bring *Dalmaticam fuper brachium finiftrum*, which is the rather hinted becaufe  
Pere <sup>f</sup> Daniel faith, that the Coat of Arms is a Sort of Tunique without  
Sleeves, like to that of Deacons.*

However that may be, this Custom was univerfal, and whoever will  
write to any Purpofe touching the Officers of Arms, will find himfelf  
very much inftructed by confidering Foreign Authors; for though each  
Nation, according to the *Greek* Proverb, is governed by its own particular  
Institutions and Magiftrates, yet there are fome Laws and Customs agreed  
on by common Consent, ufually called the Law of Nations, which re-  
late particularly to the Affairs of War and Peace, and therefore efpecial  
Provisions have been made for the publick Mefengers in tranfacting thefe  
Grand Articles, wherein heretofore the Heralds were concerned, at leaft  
in all the Preparatory Parts; and for that Reason all Officers of Arms  
were then efteemed one Fraternity, joined in a fott of focial fæderal Union,  
and reckoned together as conftituting only one College, fo as they were  
not circumscribed to the Execution of their Offices within any Limits,  
and if it may be allowed to carry on the Similitude to the Spiritual State,  
they were in this Refpect not unlike the Bifhops, who are all Members of  
the fame College, whereby not only the Bifhops of each Province, but all  
of them throughout the Catholick Church are Fellows and Colleagues;  
and though they are bound to the Circuits of their Diocefes in Matters of  
contentious Jurifdiction, yet in Point of Order are univerfal. Thus thefe  
Officers of Arms were in all Kingdoms permitted to execute their Offices  
indifcriminately, and had wherever they went a Participation in the Fees,  
and the leaft Injury fhewn to them was refented by the Prince to whom they  
belonged as an Infraction of the Laws of Nations, which is only hinted in  
this Place to juftify the Collector in making Quotations throughout this  
Discourfe from Writers of Foreign Kingdoms.

<sup>n</sup> De re mil. p. 19.  
<sup>o</sup> 1 Part. Book, p. 342 b.  
<sup>p</sup> Ashm. *Hift. of the Garter*, p. 514.

<sup>q</sup> P. 668.  
<sup>r</sup> F. 12.  
<sup>f</sup> De la milice Francoife, p. 468, &c.



Purfevants indeed were publick Persons, though only Noviciates in the College, and by their Oaths were obliged to be faithful to the King, 'Et cuicumq; Nobili licet hosti; but to return to the Wearing of their Coats. The Romance of *Saintrè* is truly historical, in whose Procession to the Lists, 'tis said, "Tous heraulx & poursuivans portans les cottes d'Armes en sa façons, quilz devoient porter", and in another Place, "Tous les Poursuivans leurs cottes d'Armes vestues de costè"; but to proceed to other Authors, \* *Symphorien Champier*, *Menestrier* from an Antient Ceremonial, and *Rouck* agree in this Particular, which we know was also the Practice in *Burgundy*. But the Words of *Sicily Herald* must not be omitted, because he mentions a farther Particularity touching the Pursuivants of this Kingdom, who as he relates wore their Coats hanging by a Cordon to their Shoulder "Meismet [le Pursuivant] ne doit porter cottes d'Armes de son Maistre ou aultre Seigneur fors vaillans, les ayllerions devant & derriere. Et le heraud les porta vestue comme le Prince de quel est. Et qui plus est en Angleterre les poursuivants les soloient porter pendantes a une aguillette a leur espaule".

But 'tis high Time to return to the Explication of the Title of *Arms* attributed originally to Heralds, and after some Time also to the Kings of Heralds. The Term *Arms* is very equivocal, and had and still obtains different Significations: It is attributed not only to Arms or Weapons offensive and defensive used in War and Turnaments, to the Feats of Arms themselves, to the Military Garment, but also to Armoiries or Armorial Ensigns; the other Senses of this Word are foreign to the present Enquiry. In the first Acceptation we meet with *per Arma jurare, militaribus armis donare*, to confer Knighthood, *Armiger* or *Scutarius* for the Esquire or Armour Bearer to a Knight: As to the Military Expeditions, *Hommes d'Armes*, *Gens d'Armes*, for such as were completely armed, and probably the <sup>2</sup> Sergeants at Arms owe that Appellation to their being thus arrayed, being Originally instituted by *Philip the August* in 1192, while he was in the Holy Land, to defend his Person by Day and Night against any Assassins that might be sent to him by the *Ancient of the Mountains*, that is the then Sovereign of the *Capyci* settled in the Mountains of *Phœnicia* between *Tortosa* and *Tripoli*, who made a Trade of murdering Christian Princes: But the Heralds could not have the Denomination of *Arms* given them in either of those Significations; for though these proclaimed the War, carried Defiances, and attended in the Army to carry all the Messages

† *Upton*, p. 19.

\* *Nero D. 9.* in *Bibl. Cott.* p. 44. 39.

x *A MS. on Velum in the Collector's Custody Q. 21.* entitled, *Le Fondement & Origine des Tiltres de Noblesse*, &c. p. 9 b. Et luy doit mettre une Cotte d'Armes armoyee de ses armes, les manches pendantes devant & derriere, & attacher ung escusone sans couronne de ses Armes sur la poitrine sinistre, & le corps d'icelle sur les espaulles. In *Bibl. du Sieur de la Croix du Maine*, p. 460. *Symphorien Champier* is said to be first Physician of the Duke of Lorraine, and Knight of the Order of St. Georges, and that his *Fondement & Origine des Tiltres de Noblesse* was printed at Paris in 1553.

*Menestrier de la Chevalerie*, p. 212.

*Nederland Her.* p. 222. Wierde gek by de Heralden den weaponrock over divers hanghende de mouwen op de bort ende rugghe, &c.

y *Olivier de la Marche l'Estat de la maison du Duc Charles*, p. 699. Les heraux luy [Pursuivant] vestent la Cote d'Armes du long des bras, & non autrement, & le doit ainsi porter tant qu'il soit Pursuivant en difference des Roys d'Armes & Heralux.

z *Daniel Milice Franc.* vol. 2. p. 93. &c. Je croi que de cette armure, que leur vient leur nom de Sergent d'Armes: comme on appelloit gens d'Armes & hommes d'Armes les Cavaliers, qui avoient l'Armure complete, &c.



of the Generals, wherein they ran no <sup>a</sup> Hazard of their own Lives, summoned Towns, appointed the Times and Places of pitch'd Battles, &c. Yet they retired from the Field before the Armies engaged; for Example, at *Agincourt* the Heralds of both Sides retired and stood together in one Place, as 'tis noted by <sup>b</sup> *John le Fevre* then an Officer of Arms, and afterwards deservedly created the first *Toison d'or*; who farther informs us that after this Battle the Heralds of *France* went where it seemed good to them, that is, were not made Prisoners, but had free Liberty to go where they pleased after they had first performed a Duty incumbent on their Offices, by taking <sup>c</sup> Account of the Number of the Persons of Quality there slain, whom they were best qualified to know from their <sup>d</sup> *Ta-barts*, or Military Garments, that had armorial Ensigns on them. Our King after that Battle judged it Expedient for the Refreshment of his Soldiers greatly fatigued to retire from the Field, whereon the *French* made an Appearance of <sup>e</sup> Rallying again but desisted, whence it was, probably, that he thought fit to consult <sup>f</sup> *Montjoy*, and the other Heralds of his Adversary before their Departure, whether in these Circumstances he had any Right to challenge the Honour of a Victory according to the Law of Arms, who without any Difficulty gave their Opinion in the Affirmative. An Officer of Arms may be permitted in this Place to remember that one of the Reasons taken or given for the Commencement of this War was the <sup>g</sup> Detention of the *English* Herald who had been sent for a safe

<sup>a</sup> For this Reason the Duke of (a) Somerset was censured for sending Dethick Norroy with Orders to the Master of the Ordnance at Müsselburg, whereby his Person was put in eminent Danger. The Expedition into Scotland wrote by W. Paten, was printed by Grafton in 1548, and therein is this Remark, "It is an ancient order in War inviolably observed, that the Heralds and Trumpetours at any time on necessary Messages may freely pass too and froo betwene the Enemies without hurt or stay of ony, as privileged with a certain immunitie and freedom of passage, Lykenise as during the time of ony such message, hostilitie on both sydes should utterly cease. The Scottes notwithstanding, what mooved them I knowe not, but summat besyde the rules of Stans puer ad mensam, shot iii or iiii Shot at us in the midst of this message doing". Hollinghead hath the like Observation under the Year 1547. That these Officers had Power therefore to order a Cessation of Arms hath been observed by (b) Authors, who give us an Instance taken from the History of the Expedition of Lewis ix, wrote by Joinville, That the Souldiers flung down their Arms upon the Command of Marcell Huilher, or as they say, Herald of the King. Father (c) Daniel interprets the Word *Usher* here by that of Herald, wherein probably he wrote not with the Exactness of an Antiquary, for these seem to be distinct Officers: for in this Hist. of (d) Joinville, William le Bron, and John de Gaymaches, are expressly called the King's Heralds at the Battle of Maffouze; and Father Daniel himself in another (e) Treatise explains the Office of these *Ushers* of Arms. Our (f) Records likewise mention them. But we have other Precedents of this Kind: Assaults were ordered to cease at the Summoning of (g) *Aurienne*, at the Assault made at (h) *Villeclope* a la parole des Herauts cesserent les Assailans.

(a) Vinc. MS. n. 92. p. 192. in Off. Arm.

(b) Moreau des Arm. p. 57. Colomb. des Roys & Herauts p. 30

(c) Hist. de Franc.

(d) P. 46.

(e) Milice Franc. vol. 2. p. 93.

(f) Rymer, vol. 7. p. 794. vol. 8. p. 98.

(g) Froiss. l. 3. p. 190.

(h) Ibid. p. 119.

<sup>b</sup> Hist. de Ch. vi. p. 98. Cur durant la bataille d'Agincourt, tous Officiers d'Armes tant d'un party, que d'autre se tindrent ensemble, & apres la bataille, ceux de France s'en allerent ou bon leur sembla, & ceux d'Angleterre demourerent avec leurs maistres, qui avoient gaignie la bataille. Mais quant a Moy, Je demouray avec les Anglois, &c.

<sup>c</sup> Chronicon St. Albani in Off. Arm. n. 7. inter Cod. Norfolc. interempti sunt Duces de Alanfon, &c. ad numerum pene centum, de militibus & Armigeris quatuor millia sexaginta novem feruntur occisa. Numerus vulgi non fuit ab Armorum nunciis computatus. Basslet de Armis & conquestu Francie MS. in Off. Arm. M. 9. Et plusieurs autres Chevaliers jusques au nombre de deux Mille quatre Cens Chevaliers baillier par declaracion par Montjoye Roi A'Armes de France.

<sup>d</sup> Chaucer's *Knights Tale* after the Battle Arcite and Palamon were found

Not fully quik, ne fully dede they were,  
But by their Cote Armourous and by their gere,  
The Heralds knew them best in speciall, &c.

Nothing is more common in Ancient Histories than the sending out Heralds after a Battle to View the Slain.

<sup>e</sup> Tit. Liv. Forojul. Rex Feciales ad Gallorum novum exercitum mittit, ut statim ad pugnam veniant aut retrocedant, scientes, quod si differant, vel ad praelium veniant, mox omnes de suis capti simul & quotcunq; capientur ex ipsis nulla misericordia omnes cadentur, p. 20.

<sup>f</sup> Monstrelet, vol. 1. p. 229.

<sup>g</sup> In the Acts of the Privy-Council, 9 Feb. 1 H. 5. 'tis represented that our Embassadors being at Calis could not obtain a safe Conduet, Mais le Heralld, qui feut alez pur les dit saufconduit detenuz a force en le Royaume de France, &c. upon which the Lords of the Council give their Advice that a Parliament should be called. Cleopatra F. 3. in bibl. Cotton. And it seems not improbable it was for the detaining of this same Herald, that an Expostulation was made with



safe Conduct for our Embassadors to go from *Calais* to *Paris*. Our <sup>b</sup> own Writers take Notice of the placing the Heralds during this Battle with the Priests and Chaplains in a Place out of Danger, and herein there is another Analogy between them; for the Clergy, as <sup>i</sup> *Froissart* observes, bearing no Arms, and being forbidden to fight, had Liberty of Intercourse between the Armies; as for the same Reason the like Indulgence was permitted to Prisoners taken who had given their Oaths to continue <sup>k</sup> unarmed. Now Heralds “ Were unharnessed and unweapon’d according “ to the Laws of Arms, as well in Battels and Fields, as other Places, “ being Persons that never used Feats of Arms “. These are the express Words of an <sup>l</sup> Act of Parliament, and consequently the Adjunct of Arms could not be attributed to them from Arms as that Word signifies Weapons, unless by an Antiphrasis. Among the *Romans* the <sup>m</sup> *Fecials* were without Arms, that no Persons might do any Violence to them, and one of them, as <sup>n</sup> *Livy* relates, was questioned for transgressing this Rule. It is not insinuated that this Custom is derived down from the *Romans*, but we find the Abstinence from Arms to have been a strict Injunction on these Officers of Arms: An Ancient <sup>o</sup> Manuscript delivers that they ought not to wear among the Enemies any Sword or Harness of War, but to be bare Headed, save only to have Silk of Sky Colour tied about it, in Token that in them resides perpetual and firm Truth, and over it a White Circle or Chapelet in Token of Humility and Love, wearing their Coat of Arms and other Habilliments of their Office. <sup>p</sup> *Le Feron* after he hath laid down, That in Battel they are not to wear Dagger, Sword, or other Engine of War, since they are not to give any Assistance to hurt any Person, adds, That however for their own Security, they may have Coats of Maile under their Tabarts.

with the French Ambassadors on 28 Nov. 1417, in very strong Terms, unless it be supposed the French had repeated this Affront by Arresting another Officer; It was represented to them by our Embassadors, Postquam recepimus literas Domini vestri Regis de Salvo conductu, misimus, etiam e converso vobis Dominis per Heraldos nostros literas Domini nostri de salvo conductu. Et quantum ad Heraldos nostros qui literas hujusmodi de salvo conductu vobis apportarunt, nostis (& res est de qua habemus vobis loqui) quod sunt ipsi per Dominum vestrum Regem detenti & arrestati, de qua summe miramur, nec videtur aliquo modo debuisse fieri. Imprimis quia est contra vetustam & honestam consuetudinem Armorum. Secundo quia est contra vim & effectum salvi conductus Domini vestri Regis, in quo concessit nobis certum numerum Servitorum, de quo sunt ipsi comprehensi. Tertio, quia si respiciantur Chronica & veteres Tractatum paginae, non reperietur, quod istis centum annis, aliquis Heraldus veniens pro solempni Ambassata habenda inter duo regna, praesertim pro bono pacis, sic arrestatus extiterit. Quarto, quia contra bonum & utilitatem hujusmodi negotii pacis pro quo venimus, in quo eorundem Heraldorum opera potissime indigemus, si forte aliqua de causa necessaria oportebit nuncium aliquem mittere, qua-propter vobis supplicamus, quatenus dignemini scribere Domino vestro Regi pro liberatione ipsorum Heraldorum nostrorum — Quibus per praetatum *Remensem* Archiepiscopum respondebatur — Et quantum ad materiam detentionis Heraldorum nullam habemus instructionem; novimus tamen indubitanter Do-

minus noster eorum Heraldos, nec contra sui salvi conductus vigorem, nec Armorum honestam consuetudinem, ymmo non sine causa rationabili & honesta detinere. Tiber. B. 6. in Bibl. Cott. f. 104. &c. It would require a very long Chapter to recount the Resentments shewn by Princes for the Refusal of the Assistance of their Heraldos, for the ill Treatment of them, especially for the Imprisoning or Murdering of them.

<sup>b</sup> Tit. Liv. p. 19. Sacerdotibus, capellanisq; rebus in orationibus, supplicationibusq; divinis manere iussis, & Fecialibus Armis depositis ad eorum officium attentissimis, &c. Elmham de Gestis H. v. in bibl. Harley 62 B. 5. Rex Capellanos tamen proprios, & omnes sui exercitus sacerdotes ut orationi vacarent, & Herodibus, ut suis tantum officiis absq; armorum exercitio diligenter insisterent, constanter monuit. See MS. inter Cod. Norfolk. in Off. Arm. n. 15. p. 21 b.

They were ordered to attend their Offices, that is, they withdrew to some eminent Place out of Danger, where they might have a distinct View of all the Feats of War to be performed, in order to make a true Report of the Actions in the Field. *Feron* l'Institution des Roys & Herauds, p. 44 a. Favins. p. 57 &c

<sup>i</sup> Froiss. vol. 1. p. 175. Of the Battle of Poitiers.

<sup>k</sup> Ibid. vol. 1. p. 260.

<sup>l</sup> Stat. 5 H. 8. c. 6. about Surgeons.

<sup>m</sup> Marselaer de Legatis, p. 4.

<sup>n</sup> Lib. 5. Of Quintus Fabius.

<sup>o</sup> Des heraulx & de leur Office. M. 16. in Off. Arm. f. Lxi. MS. penes Ed. Dering Baronett L. 6. 1. MS. penes me H. 3. p. 1085.

<sup>p</sup> Institution des Roys & Herauds, p. 29.

F f f f

A



A *Spanish* <sup>q</sup> Author mentions their being in the Wars without Offensive Weapons, which a late *French* <sup>r</sup> Writer extends to all Places; and to the same Purpose in an *English* MS. Heralds may not in any wise either in "Tyme of Peace or Warre weare any Armes offensive"; but shall by all Princes be permitted securely to pass, to appease all Wars, Battels, and particular Combats between Kings, Princes, Knights, and Gentlemen of Reputation. Thus <sup>t</sup> *Grammond* describes the Herald, who summoned *Rochelle* in his Coat of Arms with a long Rod, *cetera inermis*.

We have a more antient Proof from a Law entred in our old Statute Books, there entituled *Statutum Armorum*, which must be made in or before the Year 1296, when *Edmund* the King's Brother, and Sir *William de Valence* mention'd therein died both of them: The Words relating to our Purpose are thus imprinted by *Rob. Redman* in the Edition of Statutes 1539, "Et que null Roy de Haraz, ne Ministraux ne porte pune" [*privée* for this is the Reading in several old Manuscripts] *armure, n'autre* "forsque lour espées sans points: Et que les Roys des haraz eient lour houces des Armes sans pluis". No King of the Heralds, or *Ministraux* shall use [*privy*] Armour, or other, save their Swords without Points, and the Kings of the Heralds shall have their *Houces* of Arms without any more: Some Observations ought to be made hereon. Sir *Henry* <sup>u</sup> *Spelman* interprets *Ministraux* here to signify Ministers subordinate to these Kings, that is in his Opinion Heralds and Pursuivants. This Expression Kings of Heralds, doth indeed imply the Existence of Heralds, and though the Collector disputes not the Existence of Pursuivants at that Time also, yet 'till the Record of this Act shall be found, and thereby the Orthography of the Word here printed *Ministraux* be settled, the Inference of this most Learned Glossographer may not be supported, for in some <sup>x</sup> Manuscripts 'tis wrote *Menestralx*, and then it imports a Prohibition to the King of the Heralds, and to the King of the Minstrells, an Office of great Antiquity also in this Kingdom, as will be shewn hereafter, and the Collector is induced to suppose this latter may be the true Reading, because these *Ministraux* or *Menestralx*, whoever they are, seem not to be allowed *Houces d'Armes*, which he thinks the Heralds then had. The Minstrells in <sup>y</sup> *Chaucer's* Time were distinguished by Red Hats like those of the Cardinals, but never were, as this Editor believes, habited in the Military *Houces* or *Tabarts* of their Masters; and to countenance this Conjecture, that Minstrells are here designed, it is observable that these are often joined with the Heralds in the Ancient <sup>z</sup> Largeesses or Rewards, for heretofore it was their Employment, on great Solemnities, to celebrate

<sup>q</sup> Moreno de Vargas de la Nobleza d'Espanna, p. 114.

<sup>r</sup> Menestrier de la Chevalerie, p. 224.

<sup>s</sup> Penes me H. 3. p. 1008.

<sup>t</sup> Hist. Gallia, p. 771.

<sup>u</sup> Gloss. voce heraldus.

<sup>x</sup> 61 A. 4. Bibl. Harley, p. 112. E ke nul Rey de Harlauns, ne Menestralx portent prive Arme, ne autre fors luz Espyes fauntz pointz, E ke les Reies de Harautz eient leur houces des Armes faunz plus.

62 B. x. Ibid. p. 46b. E ge null Menestral ne autre port prive armur fors Espe large faunz point,

E que le Roi des Haraus eit lur uses des Armes fauntz plus.

63 A. Ibid. E ge nul Roi des Harands ne Menestralx portent prive arme, ne autre fors lur espies fauntz point, E que les Rois des Harands eient lur houces des Armes lur Signors fauntz plus.

<sup>y</sup> In the Plowman's Tale, v. 2253.

For Christ made no Cathedralls  
Ne with him was no Cardinals  
With a redde Hat as use Minstralls.

<sup>z</sup> See above, p. 50, 56, 108, &c.



with Songs set to Musick the Heroick <sup>z z</sup> Actions of the Ancestors of Princes, to incite and enliven them to an Emulation, and by such Examples to animate them before Battels to tread the same Paths of Glory.

'Tis true however that some of our Kings did on great Festivals give their Robes to the <sup>a</sup> Minstralls, as the Kings of <sup>b</sup> France, till the Reign of Philippe the August, did bestow on the Players their Habits, which they intended to wear no more, but these were Ordinary <sup>c</sup> Vestments used in Civil Ceremonies, and not the Military Tabard or Coat of Arms of the Sovereign, such as the Heralds of Arms wore, which the Collector guesses to be the Meaning of the Word *Houces des Arms* in this Statute, and is inclinable as yet to conjecture, that the Adjunct of Arms was Originally attributed to the Heralds from their being thus apparelled in the Surcoates of Arms, in the same Form that their Founders used them in Battles and Feats of Arms, which Coats were usually known by the Term of Arms only. Herein a <sup>d</sup> French Author concurs, who speaking of a King and an Herald of Arms saith, " *Il se dit ainsi, car il peut porter la cotte d'Armes de son Prince*". He is so called because he may bear the Coat of Arms of his Prince. Let us then examine the Import of the Words *Houces des Arms* here mentioned.

The Names given to Habits in different Ages are very difficult to be explained, for there were new Words coined to express new invented Fashions, whereof the Reader will be convinced by the long *vocabulary de re vestiaria* placed at the End of *Du Fresnes Glossary*, without going back to the *Lunula Batronatum Dextralia*, *Discriminalia* in St. Cyprian's Tract of the Habit of Virgins. The Word in this Statute is variously spelt in the Copies, *Houces*, *Hoezes*, *Houfces*. The <sup>e</sup> Glossographers generally interpret *Houces* to signify Boots worn in War, or rather <sup>f</sup> Buskins, for the Shoes were not affixed to them. Hence *William Rufus*, from a short Boot was surnamed <sup>g</sup> *Court-hose*, and even the Statute of <sup>h</sup> Ed. IV, which prohibits Cordwainers from selling Shooes, *Huseaus*, or *Galoches* upon Sundays, is in the <sup>i</sup> Repeal thereof by Hen. VIII, recited to be against selling Shooes, *Boots*, or *Galeges*. 'Tis certain that Boots were formerly used by the Nobility in <sup>k</sup> War for Ornaments and Distinction as well as Service, and that even <sup>l</sup> Heralds themselves had Boots in War and Buskins in Times of Peace, and thence one of <sup>m</sup> them under Hen. VI, writes, " *Houfes sont faites pour soy garder de la boe & de froidure quand l'un achemine par pays, & pour y garder d l'eau*", which may probably relate to Boots. *Comines* <sup>n</sup> having described the Manner of the Furnishing out the fictitious Herald by Louis the XI, saith, There were secretly brought

<sup>z z</sup> Du Fresn. Gloss. v. Ministrall.

<sup>a</sup> Fleta, l. 2. c. 23. saith, *It is the Duty of the King's Almoner to extend his Charity*, præcipue diebus Sanctorum & rogare, ne robas suas, quæ magni sunt pretii Histrionibus, Blanditoribus, Accusatoribus, seu Menestrallis, sed ad Eleemosynæ suæ incrementum jubeat largiri.

<sup>b</sup> Daniel Hist. de France, vol. 1. p. 1451.

<sup>c</sup> Thus Rigord de gestis Philippi Aug. 1185. Vidimus quondam quosdam Principes, qui vestes diu excogitatas & variis florum picturationibus artificiose elaboratas, pro quibus forsan 20 vel 30 marchas argenti consumperant vix resolutis 7 diebus histrionibus, ministris Diaboli, ad primam vocem dedisse.

<sup>d</sup> Rene Francois Essay des Merveil. c. 42. p. 360.

<sup>e</sup> Du Fresne in voce Osa & sequen.

<sup>f</sup> Diction. de Trevoux v. Housseaux

<sup>g</sup> Order. Vital. p. 644. brevis Ocrea a patre cognominatus. See Caligula A. x. p. 46.

<sup>h</sup> 4 E. 4. c. 7.

<sup>i</sup> 14 & 15 H. 8. c. 9.

<sup>k</sup> Memoires pour l'Hist. de Dauphine, p. 218.

<sup>l</sup> Favyn Theatre d'honneur l. 1. c. 4. Besogn l'Estat de France, p. 128. Trabouillet l'Estat de France, p. 593. Moreri Diction. v. Heraud.

<sup>m</sup> Du Fresn Gloss. v. osa.

<sup>n</sup> Hist. l. 4. c. 7.



to him, *ses houeaux & son habillement*, which *Pontanus* translates into Latin, *occultè ocreæ datæ*; but as the Words *Calceamenta* and *Calceatura*, which originally signified Shoes only, are in our Records frequently applied to the Whole Suit of Apparel, so this Word *Houces*, which in its primary Sense might mean only Boots, hath been attributed to other Habits. But to determine the Sense of this Word in this Statute, 'tis to be remarked, that *des Armes* are added to it. Now <sup>o</sup> *M. Paris* seems to distinguish such *Houces* from the Vestments, where he represents the Pope's Nuntio's in 1247, "*preciosissimis vestibus, calceamentisq; militari-  
ribus, quæ vulgariter Houces dicuntur, seculariter immo potius prodigaliter  
calceati & calcarati*". One of the Copies of this <sup>p</sup> Statute goes farther touching these *Houces des Armes*, that they were *de lur Seigneurs*, and though these latter Words may be an Interpolation, yet this Transcript, being in an ancient Character, explains the Import, in which the Words of this Statute were understood in the Age when that Copy was made. Let us then enquire in what other Acceptations besides Boots, the Great Men were said to have *Houces des Armes*, and we shall soon find not only the Caparisons of the Horses which had the armorial Ensigns wrought or depicted thereon, known by the Name of *Houces*, and thence probably still called *Housings*, but that the Surcoate of the Rider adorned in the like Manner had the same Denomination. In the Wardrobe Accounts of <sup>r</sup> King *John*, *Pro quatuor ulnis & uno quarterio de Bleu ad unam huciam arcicuariam ad unum Equum Domini Regis iii s. xid. ob. Johanni filio Philippi pro Hucia Scuti Domini Regis reparando vi. In duobus scutis Domini Regis reparandis & in gurgiis atachiandis & in huciis illorum reparandis iii s.* In the Inventory of <sup>r</sup> *Piers de Gaveston*, *Une bouche pur palefrei des Armes le Roy.* In the Accounts of the Expences of <sup>s</sup> *Henry* Earl of *Darby*, afterwards *Hen. IV.*, *Pro factura vi Houces albi & blodii pro equis Domini 2 s. pro viii Houces Equorum Domini xxv ulnas & dimidium Canabi.* Heralds when they rode had their Horses thus caparisoned with the Arms of their Masters called *Trappers* in their Ceremonials. *Chaucer* in the Poem of the *Floure* and the *Leaf* exhibits the Knights clothed in White Cloaks going in a Procession to the Justs, preceded by the Trumpeters, whose Horse Harness was also white, and by *Kings at Arms* in Cloaks of White Cloth with Gold, with the like Horse Harness, the Herauds and Pursuivants in Clothes of White Velvet, and the like Horse Harness. It is well known that these Officers of Arms in Tilts, Justs, and Combats of Pleasure, wore the Arms of the Person who sent the Challenge, and that they introduced both the Combatants into the Lists, being likewise invested in the Surcoates of their Armes, and rode before them on Horses trapped in the same Manner, which several Antient Figures preserved in Books and the Rituals shew, and that they were habited in like Surcoates at <sup>t</sup> Duels *al Outrance*, that is in Combats of Extremity for Life and Death. But then this Appellation *Houces* was likewise given to the

<sup>o</sup> Hist. p. 722.  
<sup>p</sup> Vide supra p. Note  
<sup>q</sup> Inter Collect. *Tho. Rymer*.  
<sup>r</sup> *Rymer*, vol. 3. p. 392.

<sup>s</sup> Computus 14 *Rich.* 2. & Comp. 20 *R.* 2. in  
 Offic. Ducatus *Lancast.*  
<sup>t</sup> *Upton de re mil.* p. 76.



Surcoates which had the armorial Ensigns on them. "Lalain is described, paré & housse luy & son Destrier, and x Saintre entred into the Lists housse & son Destrier d'un novel parement tout de Satin verd a fleurs da pencees. Here both the Rider and the Horse are alike apparalled Housse. y Monstrelet mentions a Spaniard, "Qui portoit sur son harnois un heuque de Ver-meil a une Croix blanche". This Houce worn over the Harness or Armour must be the Surcoat, because the Bearing or Arms thereon are blasoned. It will be as unnecessary to produce more Instances of this Usage of this Word, as it would be to prove that Heralds were invested in the Military Surcoates of their Founders; whence the Editor conjectures this Title of Arms was given them, and not taken from Arms as they signify Weapons, which they were prohibited to use. He shall readily retract this Supposition when a more tolerable one shall be produced, and therefore he proceeds to Examine some other Opinions that have been given for this Denomination. But since it was hinted that the Habit of Princes in War, and Feats of Arms, differed from the Apparel worn by them on ordinary Occasions, or upon Days of Ceremony in Times of Peace, He could not omit one Occurrence that happened under that peaceful mild King Hen. VI, who being forced to take the Field upon the Insurrection of Jack Cade, bought the Tabard or Coat of Arms of his Servant z Lancaster King of Arms, which he would not have descended to if either his ordinary Robes had been proper in such an Expedition, or that the Coat of his Officer had not been the Military Habit of the Crown.

It is beyond all Dispute, that the Word Heraldry for some time denoting the Science of armorial Bearings, is taken from Heralds, whose Business it heretofore was (as an Author expresses it) to register the a Blazons of the Combatants or Enterprizers in Justs before they entred the Lists of Combat; but the Collector is not yet enabled to make any Guess when this Term Heraldry was first attributed to this Theory, having not hitherto had the Fortune to meet with any ancient Treatise thus inscribed,

a Hist. de Jaques Lalain, p. 26.

x Nero D. ix. in bibl. Cotton.

y Vol. 2. p. 109 b.

z Privatum Sigillum Henr. &c. To the Treasurer &c. We let you wite that whereas our Welbeloved Servant William Tendale otherwise called Lancaster King of Armes in the 28. yeare of oure Reign by oure Commandment rode from Leycestre unto London, and so to Berkhamstede and from thens to London to Darentre and Aven, and unto other divers and many places during the rysing of the greet Traitor John Cade, calling himself Capitaine of Kent, in so hasty wise that he lost ii horses price of viii l. and more, And over that another hors hired was lost in the same riding, for which he paid xl s. without his Costs and Expenses made in the same riding unto the Somme of Cs. whereof he had xx s. and how also as is liked us to have a Coate of our Armes of oure said Servant, for the which Cote he hath and must paye xx l. and more, as he saith, all the Sommes above specified, due unto our said Servant, amouneth unto the Somme of xxxiv l. which is a great Hurt and importable charge, without our Grace be shewed unto him in the Partie, wherefor We in Consideration of the Premises of our Grace Especial, have granted unto him xl m. to be taken of oure yift by way of Reward. Tenen under our prive Seal at El-

tham 11 Sept. the Yere of oure Reigne 31 (H. 6.)

Exit. Pell. P. 31 H. 6. Eidem Lancastre, qui ex mandato Regis in Anno Regni 28. tempore insurrectionis magni proditoris Johannis Cade seipsum nuncupantis Capitaneum de Kent, festinanter equitavit a Leicestre versus London, Darentre & alia diversa loca, in quibus Equitaturus destruxit duos Equos precii viii l. Et insuper alius Equus Conductus precii xli s. in eisdem Equitaturis perditus fuit, In denariis sibi liberatis xl. m. quas dictus Dom. Rex de Gratia sua spetiali eidem Lancastre liberare mandavit tam in consideratione premissorum ac Custum suorum per idem tempus attingentium ad Cs. quam pro quadam Tunica Armorum Regis precii xx l. eidem Dom. Regi per ipsum liberata xxvi l. 13 s. 4 d.

a Nomen ars Heraldica haud dubie ab Heraldis. Spener Theor. Insign. p. 1. l'une des principales fonctions des Herauts d'Armes estoit de se trouver aux Joustes, &c. ou ils gardoient les Ecus pendans, recevoient les noms & blasons des Chevaliers, en tenoient registre, & en composoient recueils, d'ou vient que l'on a donne le nom d'art Heraldique a l'art du Blason. Menestr. Orig. des Armoires, p. 180.



or any old Author wherein it was used in that Signification. These Officers had several Functions to be performed by them at Jufts, Tilts and Turnaments, which Exercifes were indeed ftiled <sup>b</sup> Feats of Arms, and <sup>c</sup> *Bulenger* afferts, That the Kings of Arms had that Appellation, becaufe they directed and governed the Rites and Ceremonies in thefe Martial Preludes. 'Tis true, the Mafter of the Ceremonies at *Athens* was ftiled a <sup>d</sup> King, and the <sup>e</sup> *Brabeutæ* the Judges in the ancient Games fat in the *Plethrum* robed (as the Heralds were afterwards) in Royal Habits, with Crowns on their Heads and Scepters in their Hands when they gave the Reward or Bravium. That indefatigable Antiquary <sup>f</sup> Mr. *Glover Somerfet* Herald runs into an Error of another Nature, where he alledges that the Sovereigns of this Realm never yet themfelves descended to the blafoning, defcribing, or affigning Arms to any of their own Subjects, but authorized the Provincial Kings to give thefe Tokens of Honour to deferving Perfons, for which Refpect they were at firft honoured with the Title of King of Arms, becaufe in giving and beftowing thefe Significations of Honour they refembled the Kingly Prerogative. This is an Opinion at random, upon which it fhall only be obferved, that it is a Miftake in Fact, that our Sovereigns did not affign Arms to their Subjects, there being feveral on Record, and of ancierter Date, as the Collector believes, than any genuine Grant of Coat Arms that can be produced to have been made by any Provincial King; and this Notion of Mr. *Glover* farther implies, that the Original Titles of thefe Provincial Kings were Kings of Arms, which as yet wants a Proof; for we fhall foon find thefe were at firft ftiled Kings of the Heralds, neither is it fo probable that the Stile of a King fhould be given to thefe Officers becaufe they refembled the Kingly Prerogative by fuch Grants, when other Officers with much fuperiot Powers in Matters of the greateft Confequence had no fuch Appellation. <sup>g</sup> *Fauchet* conceives the Term King was given to thefe Officers becaufe they regulated feveral military Ceremonies: He mentions not the Particulars, and though thefe Kings were certainly Military Officers, yet they were in that Capacity fubject to the General and to their Mafters, and it would be difficult to inftance any peculiar Power in the Army wherewith they were invefted, that could countenance the giving them the Title of Kings: It is by the way probable that the Cognizance of Coat Arms was devolved upon them from their Service in the Wars, fince only military Perfons formerly had Right to fuch Bearings, and therefore Generals and Commanders ufually made Grants of Arms; and to the fame Original may be owing the Jurifdiction of thefe Enfigns of Arms, which continued determinable before the Conftable and Marfhall who were the Judges in the Army.

<sup>b</sup> Thus in the Writs prohibiting thefe Exercifes, the words generally are *Inhibemus ne quis torneare, bordeare, juftas facere, aventuras quærere, feu alia facta armorum exercere prefumat; and alfo in the Writs which permit this Liberty to particular Perfons, the Words are, Quod certa puncta five facta armorum & certa armorum acta peragere poffent.*

<sup>c</sup> *Reges Armorum quia ceremonias & ritus lu-*

*dicatorum certaminum regerent. Buleng. de Offic. regni Gallie.*

<sup>d</sup> *Gataker of Lots, p. 47.*

<sup>e</sup> *Pafchaf. de Coronis l. 6. c. 30.*

<sup>f</sup> *Fauftina E. 1. in bibl. Cotton.*

<sup>g</sup> *Orig. de Cheval. p. 25. Roys pour ce c'estoient eux, qui reglent plusieurs ceremonies guerriers.*



The Learned Glossographer writes, That the Title of Kings of Arms, or of the Heralds, was attributed to the Officers of the <sup>b</sup> Crown, and the Style of Heralds simply to the Officers of the Princes of the Blood and of the Nobility. It must be a Mistake, if it be meant either that the Crown had not *simple* Heralds in all Ages since the Commencement of the Office of Arms, or that the Name of Kings of Heralds was attributed to all the Kings Officers, as the *French* Kings Barber was of course named, <sup>i</sup> *Le Roy des Barbiers*. <sup>k</sup> *Moreau* indeed lays down a Rule to this purpose, That Kings only can have Kings of Arms, and Dukes only Dukes of Arms, but it is evident there were such Kings of Arms in <sup>l</sup> *Brabant, Bretagne, Burgundy, Artois, Haynalt, Gueldres, Limburgh, Luxemburg, Lorrain, Millain*, and other Dutchies and Earldoms, as also in the Principalities of *Sedan, Orleans, Bourbon*: And even our own Kings, when they used no higher Title than Lord of *Ireland*, had a <sup>m</sup> King of Arms by that Stile, as likewise other Kings of Arms by the Titles of <sup>n</sup> *Aquitaine*, <sup>o</sup> *Anjou*, and <sup>p</sup> *Guienne*, though there are some Reasons to believe these three Officers might formerly have Provinces allotted them within this Kingdom. Another <sup>q</sup> Author is somewhat more exact in this particular, who confines Kings of Arms to Sovereign Princes only, to which <sup>r</sup> another Writer adds a Limitation, That none can have Kings of Arms besides Sovereigns save only the Princes of the Blood in *France*. This seems also to be an Error, unless it be understood within that Kingdom only, for the House of <sup>s</sup> *Braganza* in *Portugal* had Kings of Arms before that Family came to the Throne, and the Constable <sup>t</sup> of *Castile*, and the Grandees of *Spain*, enjoyed the like Privilege: And if the Copy of an Instrument might be <sup>u</sup> credited, *Roger Duroit, Autrement dit Lancastre Roy de North d'Angleterre, Herault a Johan. Duc de Lancastre* in 1316 attested the Descent of *West*, which is said to be confirmed by *Leigh Clarenceux* in 23 July 1446, and on March following by *Wrexworth Guyen*.

The Title of King of the North of England is here ascribed to *Roger Duroit*, in or about the 13th Year of *Richard II*. Now that King in his sixth Year confirmed to *John x Othelake March* Herald, the Annuity granted to him by his Master *Edmond* late Earl of *March* deceased, who

<sup>b</sup> Spelman, voce herald.

<sup>i</sup> Fauchet, Orig. des Dign. p. 43 b.

<sup>k</sup> Les Armoiries de France.

<sup>l</sup> It would take too much room to insert the Proofs of all these Particulars in this Place, many of these Kings of Arms are Entred in our Records receiving Largesses and Rewards in this Kingdom, which would require an entire Chapter.

<sup>m</sup> This Officer is mentioned by Froissart in 1382, vol. 2. p. 196. In his Will dated 2 H. 5. he styles himself, Ego Thomas Irland Rex Armorum Hibernie, Registr. Episc. London. f. 29 b. A great deal might be added upon this Title.

<sup>n</sup> The Publisher hath met with this Officer in our Records, from the 40th Year of Ed. 3. till the End of the Reign of Hen. 5.

<sup>o</sup> He is frequently named in our Records in the Beginning of the Reign of Hen. 6.

<sup>p</sup> Sir Paen Roet's Monument was in St. Paul's Cathedral with an Inscription Guyenne Rex Armorum pater Catherinae Ducissae Lancastriae. John Wrex-

worth is named by this Title frequently in the Reign of Hen. 6. and Ed. 4. created such an Officer.

<sup>q</sup> Caseneuve Dict. v. heraud.

<sup>r</sup> Favin Theatre d'honneur, p. 59.

<sup>s</sup> St. Marthe Hist. Geneal. de la maison de France, p. 729.

<sup>t</sup> Mendoza l'origen de las Dignidades seglares de Castilla. Sandoval Hist. de Carlos vol. 11. Sect. 10. & ibid. p. 568. Carillo preeminencias de que gozan los Grandes, p. 12.

<sup>u</sup> Faustina E. 1. f. 6. in bibl. Cotton. G. 7. in offic. Arm. p. 4. 2d. Book of Grants, p. 639.

<sup>x</sup> See above in p. 288 in the Notes.

Exit. Pell. M. 8 R. 2. Johanni March Regi Heraldorum misso ex ordinatione Regis & Concilii sui versus partes Francia, &c. 6 l. 13 s. 4 d.

Pat. 9 R. 2. p. 2. m. 21. dilectus nobis Johannes March unus heraldorum nostrorum ad arma Rex Noreys, &c.

Exit. Pel. M. 17 R. 2. Johanni Lake alias dicto Marche Herald, & similiter. 18 R. 2.



in the 8th Year is stiled *John March* King of Heralds, and in the 9th expressly *John March* one of our Kings of Arms King *Noreys*; who is mentioned in our Records down to the 19th Year inclusive, being in the 16th Year entred *John de la Lake*, otherwise called *Marche*; and he doubtless must be the Person meant by *Froissart* in 1393, by the Name of *Marche le Roy d'Armes d'Angleterre*, and in other places. *John* Duke of *Lancaster* had indeed an Herald in this 13th Year by the Title of <sup>a</sup> that Dutchy, of whom we have several Memorials; but the Difficulty is whether the Officer of this Duke was then also the Provincial King of the *North*: In the Heraldick Language that Province hath for many Ages comprehended that Part of the Kingdom situated on the Northside of the River <sup>a</sup> *Trent*; and we meet with a King of the Heralds stiled <sup>b</sup> *Norreys* and *Norreis*, in the Reign of *Ed. III.* who is expressly said to be *Norreis*, *Roi d'Armes de North*, not *Norroy* as it hath been commonly pronounced, and also wrote in latter Times; for the most usual Method of denominating these Kings heretofore, was not from the Name of the Territory or *Marche*, but from the Persons therein inhabiting, which Practice was continued in the Appellations of the two other Kings still subsisting, *Garther* being stiled *Roy d'Armes des Anglois*, and the other *Roy d'Armes des Clarenceux*; and though these two were of latter Institution, yet these Titles might be given them in conformity to the ancient Practice, and in all Probability may be an Indication that King of Arms might be contemporary with the Centuries, when the Sovereigns themselves took the Titles of Kings over the Persons of their Subjects, not of their Kingdoms, as *Rex Anglorum*, *Rex Francorum*, *Rex Scotorum*, &c. Now *Norreis* signified the <sup>c</sup> People of the North Part of this Kingdom, so then if this Instrument be not supposititious, here was *Lancaster* King of the North of *England*, and Herald of the Duke of *Lancaster* at the same Time, when *John*

<sup>y</sup> Froiss. vol. 4. p. 164. and the same Officer doubtless, who is misprinted Marie, ibid. p. 183.

<sup>z</sup> Priv. Sigill. in alba Turre London. Richard par la Grace de Dieu Roi d'Engleterre & de France & Seigneur d'Irlande, a l'onurable Pere en Dieu l'evesque de Wyncestre nostre Chancellor Saluz. Comme de nostre Grace espetiale eons grantez a noz bien amez *Lancaster* & *Leicester* heraudes de nostre & trescher tresame Uncle le Duc de *Guienne* & de *Lancastre*, & *Bourbon* Heraud au Duc de *Bourbon* licence pour passer la meer ovesques fys Chivalx leur harnois & monoye pour leur expenses resonables sanz desturbance ou empeschement queconque. Vous mandons, que sur ce faces faire lettres souz nostre Grand seal en due fourme. Don souz nostre prive seal a Westm. le x jour de Marz l'an de nostre regne treszisme.

<sup>a</sup> See the Release of Petrus Rex hyraudorum citra aquam de Trent ex parte boreali in Spelm. Gloss. v. herald. This River was also the Boundary between the *Eschaetours*, when there were only two for the Kingdom, and for the Jurisdictions of the Justices in Eyre of the Forests.

<sup>b</sup> Priv. Sigill. Edward par la Grace de Dieu Roi d'Engleterre Seigneur d'Irlande, & Duc d'Aquitaine, as Tresorer & Chamberlains de nostre Eschiquier Saluz. Comme nous soyons renuz a nostre chier Sergeant *Andreu Noreis* Roy d'Armes de North en Lxii Solds & iv deniers, sicome piert par une bille sealee du Seal nostre chier clerc Rich. de Ferby nadgairs Gardein de nostre Garderobe vous

mandons que lui facez paier, &c. Don soubz nostre Prive-Seal a Gippewiz le xx jour de Juin l'an de nostre regne douzisme (12 E. 3.)

Exit. Pell. P. 12 E. 3. Eidem custodi per manus *Andreae Norrois Regis Heraldorum* in perfolutionem Lxii s. & iv d. sibi debitorum per billam dicti Custodis in Hanaperio de hoc termino de vadiis guerræ & robis suis MS. penes Ed. Dering Baronet L. 18. p. 21. & Comp. Garder. P. 12. E. 3. *Andreae de Noreys Regis Heraldorum* pro denariis sibi debitis de vadiis guerræ & robis suis xxxi s. iv d.

Exit. Pell. M. 22 E. 3. magistro *Andreae Roy Norreys*, Lybekino le Piper, & Hanckino filio suo & sex aliis Menestrallis Regis in denariis eis liberatis de dono Regis in subsidium expensarum suarum Lvs. iv d.

<sup>c</sup> M. Paris, Hist. p. 443. ad A. D. 1237. Australes se *Norensibus* opposuerunt, similiter ibidem, p. 846, 919.

In the Translation of the Hist. of Peter de Langtoft, made in 12 E. 3. in the Library of the Inner Temple touching the War against the Scots by Ed. 1.

Norroys and Surreis that service aubt the King With horse and herneis at Carlele made samnyng

And in another place.

Bot Sir Jon de Waleis taken was in a pleyne Throug spryng of Norreis men that were certeyn



*Othelake* was King *Noreis*; 'tis true, there was a King of the North subsisting (as it is supposed) at the same Time with *Noreis*, but that former Title of King of the North belonged then to a <sup>d</sup> Minstral. This Instrument, said to be signed by this *Durroit*, seems to import farther, That a Person might be an Herald to the Duke of *Lancaster*, and at the same Time a Provincial King of Arms under the Crown. 'Tis true that *Froissart*, in the Year 1381, mentions the Herald of this same Duke of *Lancaster*, whom he calls *Herauld du Duc*, and likewise *Herauld d'Engleterre*, but that may be only owing to the Stile of an Historical Narrative, and to design the Country of this Officer only, and no ways to intimate that he was an Officer of Arms belonging at the same Time to this Duke and to the Crown also. It is well known that Persons formerly admitted into Offices in the Household, did upon their Admission take an Oath "Not to be, or stand confederated, or bounden, nor confederate, nor bind themselves, or yet be retained in any cause, or matter to, or with or towards any manner of Person, of what Estate, Condition, or Degree he be of, privily, or openly, neither by promise, nor signe, Indenture, Fee, nor by no other manner of wise —not to weare any Livere, conisaunce, or badge of any mans, be retained to no man but only to the King's Majesty, &c." To give some Instances in the present Subject of Officers of Arms; In the Grant of a Salary to this *Richard Delbrug* already named, is this express Reservation, <sup>f</sup> "*Ita tamen quod idem Richardus cum aliquo alio præterquam nobiscum non retineatur*." Thus in the Injunctions on *Montjoie* King of Arms in *France*, & "*Et sera tenu de james en porter null [esmaillet de Blason] de quelque autre Seigneur, que ce soit*." Indeed Sir *Henry Spelman* conjectures, That when *Henry* the IVth promoted his Herald *Lancaster* to be a King of Arms, he might give him that Dutchy for his Province; but that Conjecture fails, because the Records, in his first Year, expressly stile him *Richard Del Brug Lancastre Roy d'Armes del North*, which Expression was not, as 'tis supposed, confined to that Dutchy solely: But from hence it cannot be inferred, that under *John* Duke of *Lancaster*, the Title of King of the North might be given to his Herauld, who might have his Province within this Dutchy only, during the same Time whilst we find another King *des Norreis* under the Authority of the Crown. The Collector hath great Reason to believe that from the Assumption of the Throne of *H. IV.* and during the Reigns of his Son and Grandson, the Title of *Norreis* was not used, but that the

<sup>d</sup> Rex concessit Willielmo de Morlee dicto Roy de North Ministrallo Regis domos quæ fuerunt Johannis le Boteler dicti Roy Brunaud. Pat. de ter. forisf. 16 E. 2.

<sup>e</sup> Vol. 2. ch. 73. p. 121.

<sup>f</sup> Pat. 1 H. 5. p. 3. m. 36.

<sup>g</sup> Du Fresn. Gloss. v. heraldus. Froiss. vol. 3. p. 125. indeed describes Conimbres Herald having on his Breast the Arms of his Sovereign the King of Portugal, and of other Lords. Probably the latter Words do not mean the Escutcheons of any Lords of that Kingdom, but of some other Sovereigns, which was a Complement heretofore made to intimate the Union and Amity that was between Princes; of this Usage we have some Examples. Thus our Hen. 6. gave a Complement of his Arms to Lisbon Herald of Portugal,

Priv. Sigill. 4 June 30 H. 6. To Lesbone Harold of the King of Portingale x marks. To oure Kings of Armes, bareolds and Purcevaunts v marks. To thambassatours of iberle of Douglas and his purcevaunte xliiil. vis. viii d. and for a Scuchon of oure Armes to be delivered to the said Lesbon xxxiii s. iiis d. The like to an herald of Arragon. Exit Pell. Mich. 31 H. 6. cuidam heraldo Regis Aragon in denariis sibi liberatis in persolutionem xls. quos Dominus Rex eidem Heraldio liberare mandavit, habend. de dono suo pro quodam Scuto Armorum fuorum inde faciendo. Thus the Duke of Bretagne gave in 1406, to Charolois Herald of Burgundy, permission to bear the Scutcheon of his Arms, Lobineau Hist. de Bretagne, p. 701. And Haunes pursevant had in 1461 the like privilege. Ibid. en preuves, p. 1266.



whole Province on the North of *Trent*, formerly enjoyed by *Norreis*, was then held in as full an Extent by *Lancaster*; and 'tis observable, that in Patent 1 H. IV. to this *Richard del Brugge*, Robes are granted "*Comme Johan Marche Heraud Roy Norreis avoit*". However this may be, *Henry Duke of Lancaster* in 28 *Edward III*, had certainly a 22 King of Arms that waited upon him when he went beyond Sea to Combat the Duke of *Brumswick*; but the Title being omitted, it would be a forward Attempt to guess whether he was of the King's or Duke's Coat. The Contents of this Instrument would furnish us with several other Arguments against the Genuineness hereof, if this was a proper Place to examine them.

'Tis high Time to attempt to give the true Reason of the Denomination of *Rex*, *Roy*, or *King*, as the same is attributed to the highest Order of Persons in the Office of Arms; and though the Word *Rex* is in the Classical Authors used in a Sense somewhat equivalent, as *Rex Sacrificus*, *Rex Sacrorum* among the *Athenians*, as well as *Romans*, *Rex Aetarii*, *Rex convivii*, *Rex Vini*, *Rex Pueritiae*, &c. yet it is probable the Word *Rex* in the present Case was used in the lower Ages for Latinizing the French Term *Roy*, according to the Customs of these Times when that was ascribed to the Chief and Principal, who presided in several Offices. And here it is to be repeated, that those Kings were antiently stiled in <sup>b</sup> this as well as <sup>i</sup> Forreign Kingdoms *Reges Heraldorum*, and not *Reges Armorum*, which Adjunct *Arms* was first given to the Heralds, as appears fully from our Records, but in Tract of Time the Words *Heraldorum* and *Armorum* became indiscriminately referred to these Kings. If the Instrument printed by <sup>k</sup> *Bishe* on *Upton* be genuine, there is an Instance of the Title King of Arms in the 6th of *Ed. III*. 'tis certain that Term was used in the <sup>l</sup> 12th of that Reign. *Chaucer* uses the same Expression in his <sup>m</sup> Poem, and under the Reign of *Rich. II*. Records frequently give this Appellation;

<sup>g g</sup> Exit. Pell. m. 28 E. 3. Hermann Regi Heraldorum moranti cum Duce Lancastriae de dono Regis xlv.

<sup>b</sup> The Release of Petrus Rex Hyraudorum citra aquam de Trent. ex parte Boreali in 4 E. 1. is printed by Splem. Gloss. v. Heraldus. Comp. Hospitii 18 E. 1. in Turre London. Roberto Parvo Regi Heraldorum pro reba sua hyemali, &c. Nicholao Morell Regi Haraldorum Roi dez Haraz in the Statute of Arms. To mention some Instances under E. 3. Exit Pell. m. 28 E. 3. Will. Volant Regi Heraldorum. Exit. Pell. 30 E. 3. Joh. Mushou Regi Heraldorum eunti versus partes Vasconiae, &c. Comp. Garder. 31 E. 3. in Off. Rememor. Regis, Roberto Regi Haraldorum Protocolli de Ter. p. 35 E. 3. Falconi de Thane Regi Haraldorum, &c. the Instances are numberless of such Kings of Heralds as have their Titles added to them.

<sup>i</sup> Thus the French mention'd in our Records. Comp. Hosp. 6 E. 1. in Turre London. Equus datus Regi Hunel. qui est Rex Haraldorum in partibus Franciae. Galba E. xii. in bibl. Cott. 30 E. 3. Hanekeno de Oteley Regi Haraldorum Franciae venienti usq; Hertford. The Learned Mr. Claiembault hath communicated Copies of some Originals to the same Purpose. Bois Robert Roy des herauts de France in 1318 gives a Receipt, remaining under his Seal, which hath the Impression of three Ducal Crowns, another Receipt, dated in 1337, by Rampanz Roy de

Herautz; another by Guiot Roy des herauts de Champagne, for his Wages of War bearing Date in 1355, sealed with a Shield in Bannner Parti, in the first, 3 Crowns in pale, and in the 2d, a Lion; but in Tract of Time, these Kings of Heralds became stiled Kings of Arms. Thus Exit. Pell. M. 18 R. 2. Jeylotte de Merlotte Regi Armorum de Champagne Herald Regis Francorum in perfolucionem v. marcarum de dono Regis. And in the Composition touching the Church of St. Anthony made in 1406, several are therein named Kings of Arms. MS. in bibl. Regia E. n. 1403. p. 77. There have been some Instances given above, p. 283, note, ii. of the Appellation of Kings of Heralds in Germany: Indeed Goldast. Const. Imper. vol. 1. p. 24. recites a Statute about Turnaments, said to be made A. D. 938, wherein Kings of Arms are mentioned, but 'tis easy to shew that Instrument cannot be genuine; these afterwards indeed had that Appellation of Kings of Arms there: See Modii Pandect. Triumph p. 150, 145, &c.

<sup>k</sup> Notæ, p. 34.

<sup>l</sup> Above, p. 283, note ii.

<sup>m</sup> In the Poem of the Floure and the Leaf.

Camin Kingis at Armis and no mo,  
In clokis of white cloth with gold richly,  
Chaplets of grene on their beds on bye,  
The Crownis that they on their Scotchons bere,  
Were set with perl, and ruby, and saphere, &c.

but



but the former Title of *Reges Heraldorum* was not thereon discontinued, for we meet with these Terms throughout the Book of *Francis de Foveis*, who Dedicated it to *Anne* Queen of *Rich. II.* and in *Upton* in several places, who wrote in the Reign of *Hen. VI.* as also very frequently in Records.

Among our Neighbours the \* *French*, the Word *Roy* or *King*, and from them in their and our Histories and Records the *Latin* Word *Rex* hath been frequently referred to the Principal, the Governor, the Judge, the Visitor, the Supreme, the President or Chief of many Professions, Arts, or Communities, as well on a serious as jocular Account.

Here we may justly reflect on the Emptiness of the Grandour of the Titles in this World, where ° Kings themselves cannot secure their own Titles, and prevent a Communication of them to their Subjects of low Degree.

Thus the Chief of these poor Officers of Arms participates in the Stile of King, and *Garter King of Arms*, by the Terms of his Institution, is appointed to be even the *Sovereign* in the College of Arms.

In the same Manner among the *French*, the Person, to whom the Chamberlain of *France* heretofore committed the Authority of viewing the Merchandizes, Weights and Measures of the *Mercers*, was denominated *le p Roy des Merciers, Rex Merceriorum*, which Title being afterwards conceived to be somewhat a Reproach to the Majesty of the Sovereign, was by an Edict in 1597 altered into that of *Visitor Merceriorum*.

The President or Governour of the *Minstrels* had the like Denomination of *Roy* in ° *France* and *Burgundy*, and in *England* ° *John of Gaunt* constituted such an Officer by a Patent, and long before his Time, Payments were made by the Crown to this King of *Minstrells* by *Ed. I.* *Regi Roberto Ministrallo scutifero ad arma commoranti ad vadia Regis Anno Quinto*, as likewise ° *Menestrallis in die Nuptiarum Comitissæ Holland filie Regis, Regi Pago, Johanni Vidulatori, &c. Morello Regi, &c. Druetto Monthaut, and Jaketto de Scot Regibus cuilibet eorum xl s. Regi Pagio de Hollandia, &c. under Ed. II.* We likewise find other Entries, ° *Regi Roberto & aliis Ministrallis facientibus Menistrallias suas Coram Rege.* That King granted, ° *Willielmo de Morlee dicto Roy de North Ministrallo Regis domos que fuerunt Johannis le Boteler dicti Roy Brunaud*, and a safe Conduct is granted by *Richard the Second*, ° *Johanni Cumins Regi Ministrallorum Regis*

° Le Mot de Roy estoit applique au Superieur ou Juge. Du Tillet recueil de Rois de France, p. 435. —Le Roy signifie Chef, & Visiteur, Fauchet des Heraux, p. 22b. Origines de Dignitez, p. 43b. 45b. Du Fresne Gloss. v. Rex.

Furetiere Dictionnaire Universell, v. Roy. Laboureur l'Origine des Armes, p. 118.

° Voyez comme Dieu se moque de nos Grands, Ce Roy qui par son Excellence & Prerogative de Dignite est par ses subjects appelle Sire, na peu empescher que ce mesme titre n'ait ete baille aux Simples Marchands. Pasquier, p. 690.

p Ragneau en Indice des Droits Royaux, p. 637. Fauchet Origines des Dignitez. p. 38b.

q Du Fresne Gloss. v. Minstrell.

° Donnants & Granttants au dit Roy des Minstrells plein poer & Mandement de les faire resonablement justifier & Constrener de faire leur services & Ministralloies en manere come apent Mon. Angl. 1. p. 255b. Blount's Glossography, v. King of the Minstrells, Blount's Tenures, p. 167.

f Bibl. Cotton. Vespas. c. 16. f. 3.

t Liber. Garder. 25 E. 1. penes Rem. Regis.

u Bibl. Cotton. Nero c. 8. p. 84b. Comp. Garder.

x Pat. de terr. forisfact. 16 E. 2.

y Franc. 10 R. 2. m. 7. Rymer Fœdera. Vol. 7. 555.



*versus partes transmarinas profecturo.* It being an ancient Custom for Minstrells and Heralds to repair to Forreign Courts on great Festivals and solemn Occasions, whereof there are many Proofs interspersed throughout this Discourse, which Title of King of the Minstralls, in after Ages, was in this Kingdom altered to that of *Marshal*. Of the like Nature, relating to Musick, was the King of the *Violins*, and also the King of the *Juglers, Rex Juglatorum*.

Mr. <sup>b</sup> Selden presents his Friend Ben. Johnson with *Rex versuum*, and Mr. <sup>c</sup> Borell acquaints us with *le Roy des Poetes* (*Poetarum facile Princeps*). There are many Dissertations on the <sup>d</sup> *Roy des Ribauds Rex Ribaldorum*; we likewise meet with <sup>e</sup> *Roy d'Arbalestriers*, *Roy des Arpenters*, *Roy de Messiers*, attributed to the Person who had a Superintendancy over these Professions, to which a Learned <sup>f</sup> Author hath added *Rex Alutariorum, Arcariorum & Spineti*, and <sup>g</sup> another informs us of *Le Roy des Porteurs a Sac a Valenciennes*; in the same manner we find <sup>h</sup> *Rex Armigerorum*, <sup>i</sup> *Roy de Clercs*, and among the Germans with <sup>k</sup> *Reges Ludorum*, and *Reges Circulorum* for Judges in Turnaments; of which latter Sort was *Le Roy d'Epinette*, or *Le Roy des Brandons*, at the Turnaments annually held in

<sup>z</sup> Il y a encore maintenant un Roy des Violons, qui est le Chef de la Maistrise, Furetiere Dict. Univ.

Lettres Patents de Confirmation des Statuts Ordonnances & Reglem. faits par les Rois sur l'Exercise de la Charge du Roy des Violons, Maitres a danser & Joueurs des Instrumens tant haut que bas. Boniface 10. 3 livre 4. lit. 13. c. 2.

<sup>a</sup> Super quod Johannes dictus Charmillens Juglator, cui Dominus Rex per Literas suas tanquam *Regem Juglatorum* in Civitate Trecenti Magisterium Juglatorum, quemadmodum suæ placeret voluntati 1296 Reg. mag. dierum Trecentium. Probably it signifies Jongleurs, such as plaid on the Cymbal, an Instrument formerly in great Esteem, Des Jongleurs jouoient de la vielle, cestoit dans ces premiers temps l'instrument le plus estime. Le Gendre Moeurs des Francois, p. 24.

And thus in Chaucer's Translation of the Romaunt of the Rose, p. 112b.

There mightest thou see these Flutours  
Minstrals, and eke Joglours, &c.

Mezeray (*Hist.* p. 416, 417.) treating of the Crusades to the Holy Land, derives the Original of the French Poetry and Romances from that Expedition, Les Grands avoient des Trouvers, Chanterres & Jugleors; Les Trouvers estoient des Poetes & faiseurs de Romans, & les Chanterres qui par la Museque debitoient apres le repas ce que les poetes avoient invente, & les Juglors des faiseurs de Passe passe & tours de souplesse, d'ou s'est encore conserve le mot de Jongleur. In a Translation of the History of Pierre de Langtoft, made in the Beginning of the Reign of Edward 3. treating of King Arthurs Coronation, and now in the Library of the Inner Temple.

Jogleurs wer there inoub  
That were qu'tise for the dronb  
Minstrals many with dyvers glew  
Sonns of bemes that men blew  
Harpes, Pipes and Taboures  
Fichols, Citolles Sautreours, &c.

In Domesdei Book in Glowcercestre, Berdic Jocalor Regis habet ibi 3 Villas. Chaucer in his House of Fame, v. 168.

There saw I playing Jogelours  
Magiciens and Tragelours.

Notredame Vies des Poetes Provençaux en proeme, p. 14. Violars pour sonneurs de Violons: quelquefois Juglars pour sonneurs de Flutes. Bibl. Croix du Maine, p. 179. Jonglet ancien Poete Francois & tres excellent jouer d'instrument de Musique en l'an 1260, &c.

<sup>b</sup> Selden's Tules of Honour, p. 336.

<sup>c</sup> Recherches d'Antiquites, p. 605. Aux jeux floraux on appelloit le Roy des Poetes celui qui avoit emporte le prix, & qui l'annee suivante jugeoit des Poesies des autres. Furetiere Dict. Univ. voce Roy.

<sup>d</sup> Du Fresne Gloss. v. Ribald. Pasquier l. 8. c. 44. Tillet recueil, &c. p. 345. Limnæi Notitia Franciæ, p. 805. Fauchet, p. 43. Bullenger de Officiis regni Galliar. du Haillan, p. 231, &c.

<sup>e</sup> Ragneau Indice des droicts Royaux, p. 637, 638.

<sup>f</sup> Du Fresne Gloss. v. Rex.

<sup>g</sup> Menestrier de la Chevalerie, p. 243.

<sup>h</sup> Preuves de l'Hist. de Bretagne par Lobineau p. 142. Oliverius de Dinnano Oliverii filius concedit Monachis St. Martini majoris Monasterii terras in Anglia, Nothoellam scilicet & Helperfort, &c. Testibus Alano filio Brient — Gaufrido Rege Armigerorum, xiv. Kal. Junii tempore dissentionis Regis Angliæ Henrici & filii sui Henrici (1179.)

<sup>i</sup> Ibidem, p. 1184. Henn. Fils Jehannin Trillet Roy des Clercs a Nantes.

<sup>k</sup> Goldast. Const. Imper. vol. 1. p. 211. Judices seu Reges Torneamentorum. Limn. de jure Publ. l. 6c. § n. 11 6.

<sup>l</sup> Du Fresne Dissert. vii. ad Joinvillam, p. 182. des Turnois, behourds, &c. cest a ce Usage qu'il faut rapporter les jeux d'EpINETTE, qui ont ete si frequens dans la ville de l'Isle en Flandres, Quelques uns en rapportent l'origine & institution au Roy St. Louis.

May



May at Lisle in Flanders, whereof <sup>m</sup> Haynault Herald hath wrote a large Treatise; this Title was taken from his Ensign, being so constituted by the Delivery of the <sup>n</sup> Espine or Spinula, and he was clothed with Royal Robes, and had also, which is not wholly forreign to the present Purpose, an Herald appropriated to him by that Title for the Regulating the Ceremonies, who was under the Obligation of an Oath to the City for that Purpose, and when there was an Occasion, performed the Services of an Herald likewise to the Prince, that is (as the Editor supposes) to the Earl of Flanders, by whose Grant he wore on a Tabart Gules a Lilly Argent, the Arms of that City; which was reputed an Instance of great Favour, because such Officers belonged only to powerful Princes and Provinces; and though Philip the Second forbad the Exercise of these Turnaments, yet the Herald subsisted to the Time this Author wrote, who proceeded before the Senate and Council of Lisle invested with his Coat, bearing the Rod of Office. Though the Publisher knows not the Antiquity of this Institution, yet <sup>o</sup> Espinette Pursevant was present at Arras in 1435.

Of the same Original are the Titles Roy de <sup>p</sup> l'Arquebuse at Sezanne and Beauvais, le Roy de <sup>q</sup> Papegay (of the Parrot) at Lagny, a Sport also used formerly in this Kingdom, and called Shooting at the <sup>r</sup> Poppingay, and something of the same Nature, as all the other <sup>j</sup> Gargouilles, as the Paire at Amiens, the Gargouille at Rouen, the Merefolie at Dijon, the Taras-

<sup>m</sup> Menestrier l'origine des Armoiries, p. 64. Guillaume Rucher Heraut d'Armes du titre de Haynaut a fait un gros Volume des Rois de l'Espinette a Lisle en Flanders, c'est une Ceremonie, ou une feste dont il a decrit les Jouffes, Tournois, noms, armoiries, livrees & Equipages de divers Seigneurs, qui se rendoient de divers endroits, avec les Catalogues de Rois de cette feste.

<sup>n</sup> Buzelinus Gallo Flandriae l. 3. c. 23. fol. 537. De Festo ludisque Spineticis olim magno Insulae apparatu Celebratis.

A. D. 1338. floruisse hanc ludorum Celebritatem Philippi Francorum Regis diploma fides facit, quo facultatem Insulensibus tribuit iis se decursionibus oblectandi, quamvis per Francia Regnum Certamina & ludos equestres prohibuisset.

—Quotannis mense Maio, habitu viridi conspicui decursiones equestres Insulae adversus omnes aliunde convenientes inirent, & qui victor esset renunciatus ad Aedem Templemartii Constructam deducerent in Sacello S. Georgii Arma de tholo in signum victoriae suspensurum.

Ex Insulensi Nobilitate deligi quenquam qui tunc regis ornamentis ac titulo decoratus per totum anni tempus Regis personam sustineret.

In ea funebri oratione quam Insulensis quispiam Anno Circiter 1557, in laudem Gulielmi Hangovartii Artesiae Praefidis latine conscripsit haec leguntur.

“ Porro Spineti festo dignatio magna speciali  
“ Gratia Principis accessit cujus praefati Reges  
“ Spinulae dicti ornabantur, privilegiis, Immunitatibus & honoribus Concessis & Confirmatis  
“ per eosdem supremos Flandriae Principes. Ad-  
“ jectus erat Feialis Sacramento peculiari obligatus eidem Urbi titulo Spinulae in hanc usque  
“ diem, Nomen & Officium Caduceatoris retinens,  
“ qui solennes ludorum obiret Ceremonias, & si  
“ usus deposceret etiam Principi in Bellicis aliisq;  
“ Negotiis operam impenderet, quod frequenter  
“ olim & in hunc usque diem usu venit; eiq; pri-  
“ vata Principis Gratia sagum militare gestare per-

“ miserat exornatum lilio argenteo in area punicea,  
“ quae urbis Insulanae sunt insignia. Est id vero  
“ Nobile & Magnae Majestatis beneficium; cum  
“ id genus Magistratus in potentiorum Principum  
“ & illustrium Provinciarum usus duntaxat creari  
“ permiserint.

Ludorum Rex in Die Dominico, qui Cineralibus est proximus coenam opiparam praebet, proximo die Martis prandium, ubi Regnum alteri decretum est, qui in prato Suburbano feialis aut Caduceator Senatus Urbisq; nomine spinulam ei tradebat quem Magistri Regem nuncupaverant, unde Nomen Regis spineti quem olim Gallice Roy des Brandons sive luminarium quod eo die Celebraretur festum, quo facibus accensis hortos plateasq; lustrabant, vocatum Constat.

Post plausum Victoribus datum eorumque Principe accipit, &c. deinde recitat Author quae de iisdem ludis varii Principes statuerint & dicit quod tandem Philippus 2. Hispan. Rex eos prorsus interdixit.

Igitur hoc tempore unicus tantum ejus veteris pompae aliquid retinet Caduceator, qui Senatui Insulano publice prodeunti praegreditur, Sago Insignis & Caduceum gestans ut is quem antea memoravi de laudibus Gulielmi Hangovartii dissertasse verbis a Nobis relatis expresse notavit.

Editus est hic liber Duaci in fol. 1625.

<sup>o</sup> Chartier Hist. de Ch. vii. p. 82.

<sup>p</sup> Memorial Alphabetique v. Roy d'Arquibuse n. 3.

<sup>q</sup> Celuy qui abbat l'aile droite du Papegay est Chevalier, celuy qui abbat l'autre aile est le Baron, celuy qui abbat le Papegay est Roy: les trois jouissent de l'exemption de la Taille en la ville de Lagny. Plaidoyers de Corbin. c. 39. Du Fail. l. 3. c. 338. l. 2. c. 352. Monac. l. 7. Cod. de vestigalibus.

<sup>r</sup> Hall's Chronicle of Hen. 8. p. 60 a.

<sup>j</sup> Menestrier Recherches du Blason, p. 149. Origine des Ornaments d'Armoiries, p. 363. vide Dictionnaire de Trevoux. v. Fierce. Gargouille.



que at Tarascon, and the Duke d'Urbain or Prince d'Amour at Aix in Provence, as also the Roy de la <sup>t</sup> Bravade. The „ Prince de Jeunesse at Soissons, the Roy de Perroquet at <sup>x</sup> Montpelier and <sup>y</sup> Caen.

And in this Kingdom the ludicrous <sup>z</sup> Custom within the City of London, of choosing yearly a King or Lord of Misrule on the Fourth of January, within the Holy Days of Christmas (a Season formerly of Pastime, Indulgence, and Libertinism, who (as also another belonging to the <sup>a</sup> Sheriffs of the same City, and likewise a Third belonging to the Treasurer) went in splendid Procession theatrically acting the Pageantry of Majesty, which was practised as low as the Reign of Queen Elizabeth, which calls to this Collector's Remembrance a Custom observed heretofore at <sup>b</sup> Lofwithiell in Cornwall, where, as Norden describes it, the Freeholder's Tenants of the Dutchy yearly, upon little Easter-Sunday (as they called it) chose one of themselves, who being solemnly attired, well mounted, having a Crown on his Head, a Scepter in his Hand, a Sword born before him, rode to the Church, where he was met with great Ceremony, and thence accompanied to Dinner where he was Entertained with a Sewer, Taster, and other Princelike Attendants, served with Kneeling at delivering the Cup, and such like.

Sturdy Beggars have also had their King, whom they have stiled in their Jargon *le Roy <sup>c</sup> Thafur, le Grand Cofroe, le Roy de Thunes*, and in a Sence not much different, *Geffry Mortimer* called his Father the <sup>d</sup> King of Folly; and learned and rich Societies have likewise concurred in this Buffoonry, for not only Forreign <sup>e</sup> Universities elected such a fictitious King, but some of our own <sup>f</sup> Colleges in Oxford have done the same from the Time of their first Foundation, who in their Registers is styled *Rex Fabarum*, and *Rex Regni Fabarum*, an Appellation probably attributed to him because he might be elected by Lots, wherein Beans were used, as the <sup>g</sup> Roy de la Febvre in France on Twelfth Day or the Feast of the three Kings (said to be buried at Cologne) and possibly in Remembrance of them, was the Person, who by Chance received that Part of the Cake, wherein the <sup>h</sup> Bean was placed, a Custom observed upon that Day in this Kingdom, under the Reign of <sup>i</sup> Edward the Third. And in Forreign Colleges

<sup>t</sup> Ranchin. p. 378, Moreri Diction. in v. Bravade.

<sup>u</sup> Bouchel. Bibl. du droit Franc. tom. 2. p. 1126.

<sup>x</sup> Moreri Diction. v. Feste du Perroquet.

<sup>y</sup> Origines de Caen. p. 169.

<sup>z</sup> See Vitellius F. 5. in Bibl. Cotton. 5 E. 6. 6 E. 6. 3 Phil. & M.

<sup>a</sup> Ibid. See also Vespas. F. 13. f. iii. in bibl. Cott. where is a Letter to the Cardinal to know his Pleasure whether any Lord of Misrule should be appointed for the Prince's Household at Christmas.

<sup>b</sup> Norden's Survey of the Dutchy of Cornwall. MS. in that Office.

<sup>c</sup> Furetiere Diction. voce Truand, l'Abbe Guibert en son Histoire de Jerusalem represente la vie & les gestes des Gueux & Truands, qui suivent l'armee croisee qu'il nomme Trudents: Leur Capitaine fut un Chevalier, qui se fit nommer le Roy Thafur, & il remarque que ces gens firent grand peur aux Sarrafins. Cette Royaute a toujours continue depuis: Et a present les Gueux de France nomment leur Roy, le Grand Cofroe, & le Roy de Thunes, comme on voit dans le jargon d'Argot.

<sup>d</sup> Lelandi Collect. edit. per Hearn. vol. 2. p. 476.

<sup>e</sup> Hist. Strenarum per Lipenium apud Grævii Antiq. Rom. vol. 12. p. 539. a Studiosis Academicis missa forte eligitur Archimarescallus, Archicamerarius, Consilarii, Præfetti, Ministri deniq; ac Moriones vel Histriones, qui singuli suo funguntur Officio, ministrantes illi Putativo Regi ad mensam, ita tamen ut finito Convivio omnes ita vino inebriati, vix quis Rex, quisq; morio fuerit, dignoscere liceat, atq; sanus jures omnes insanire — sed hæc jam sublata sunt in nostris Academiis.

<sup>f</sup> Wood's Athen. Oxon. Part 2. p. 154.

<sup>g</sup> Borell recherches d'Antiquitez, p. 400.

<sup>h</sup> Limnæi Notitia Franciæ, p. 325. cui pars libri, in qua faba reperitur, forte obtingit. Erasmi Adag. Chil. 6. Cent. 4. 37. Etiam hodie in Epiphaniis Rex convivii fabis deligitur.

<sup>i</sup> Nero C. 8. in Bibl. Cotton. p. 175. Comp. Garderob. 8 E. 3. Rogero Trumpour & sociis suis Menestrallis Regis de dono Regis nomine Regis de Faba die Epiphaniæ Lxs.



the Title of <sup>k</sup> Emperours of the East and West have been attributed to the First of their Classis.

This Comical Bean King is called also in France <sup>l</sup> *Roi-boit*, and is thought to be a Relique of Paganism; rich Fraternities diverted themselves heretofore with this same Pageantry; for the Practisers of the Parliaments or Courts of Justice in France had annually their Roy <sup>m</sup> de Basoche, i. e. *Discours, Goguenard, ou plance*, and the Prince des Sots. Thus our <sup>n</sup> Inns of Court had a King stiled by some fancied Kingdom, chosen on *Christmas-Day*, who had Officers of State, and the Appearance of Majesty, as may be seen in the Authors quoted in the Margin, who was allowed an <sup>o</sup> Herald as part of the Ornament and Equipage of his State.

According to this Dialect an Humourist, or rather a Captain of the Blacks, under the Reign of Edward III, took upon himself the Stile of <sup>p</sup> *Roy de la Route des Raveners*, which was solemnly adjudged contrary to the Prerogative of the Crown. This Enquiry touching the Title of Kings, calls to Remembrance the Plays forbidden the Clergy, denominated <sup>q</sup> *Ludos de Rege & Regina*, which might be *Cards, Chess*, or the Game since used even to this Age at *Christmas*, called *Questions and Commands*, and also that Ed. I. plaid *ad r quatuor Reges*, which the Collector guesses might be the Game of Cards, wherein are Kings of the four Suits; for he conceives this Play of some Antiquity, because the Term *Knave*, representing a Youth, is given to the next Card in Consequence to the King and Queen, and is as it were the Son of them, for in this Sense this Word *Knave* was heretofore used; thus <sup>j</sup> *Chaucer* saith, That *Alla* King of Northumberland begot a Knave Child, and useth the Word

<sup>k</sup> Diction. de Trevoux v. Empereur.

<sup>l</sup> Baillet en vies des Saints vi Janvier, conceives the *Roi-boit* or de la Feve, to be a Remain of Paganism, when in the End of December, or Beginning of January, the Heathens did in Honour of Saturn (in whose Golden Age all Persons are imagined to have been equal on a Level) choose an Imaginary King by Lot, so that if it chanced to fall on a Slave, his Master obeyed him during the Continuance of that Feast. If the Reader is curious to know the Manner of that Election, he may consult *Arrian upon Epictetus* l. i. c. 25. *Pollux* l. 9. c. 7. *Tacit Ann.* l. 13. *Lucian.* *Mr. Bochart*, in his *Phaleg*, runs up this Custom to the Time of Noah: This is not unlike the choosing a Servant to be Sorgan or King at Babylon at the Feast of the Goddes Dercetha, who during his Regency was Habited in Royal Apparel.

<sup>m</sup> *Rocheffavin des Parlemens*, p. 170. *Ragneau Indice des Droits Royaux* 637, 638. *Miraulmont Memoirs des Juridictions.* *Bouchel Bibliotheq;* du droit françois voce *Basoche*, ou est un Playdoye au Parlement de Paris en 1469. *Mr. Menage Diction.* voce *Basoche*. Il y a un recueil des Statuts, &c. du Royaume de la *Basoche* imprime a Paris 1654, 8vo. Of this King see also *Moren's Diction.* 1718. v. *Basoche*.

<sup>n</sup> *Dugd. Origines Juridicales*, p. 247, 151. *Gesta Grayorum* in 4to.

<sup>o</sup> *Leigh's Accidence of Armory*, p. 217, 223.

<sup>p</sup> *Placita coram Rege apud Nottingham de Termino Sancti Michaelis* 10 E. 3. *Eborum* 27.

<sup>j</sup> *Lionel Roy de la route de Raveners* a notre faux & desloyaux *Richard de Snaweshill* salut sans amour. Nous vous mandons sur peyne de quant

que vous poez forfaire contre nous & noz leyes, que vous veues cestes noz lettres vous ostes nettement de celluy que vous maintenez en la Vicairie de Burton Anneys; Et souffrez que la Abbe de nostre Dame de Bouthon peust avoir la Franchise & sa election poet esteer & tenir a celluy qil ad donc la dite vicairie & quest plus hable d'avoir un bon advancement qe vous ou nul de votre linage: Et si vous ne le facetz, nous fesonns notre avou premier au Roy de Ciel & puis au Roy d'Angleterre & a notre Coronne qe vous averez & resceyverez par nous au tieux ordres come eust l'Evesque de Excestre en Cheep ou que vous foyez trovez mesque joietz en Corningstret & monstres ceste letre a votre souverain & dites luy qil lesser faux compassements & confederacies, & quil soeffre qe droit soit face a celuy, a qui le dit Abbe ad presente, ou par les a vous avant ditz il aura mille Livres de damage par nous & lesnoz. Et si vous ne veuillez avoir regard a nos mandements nous manderons a notre Viscount de North, qil face sur vous la grande distresse comme devaut est dit. Donnez au notre Chastiel de Byse en la tour de Vert en l'en de notre Regne premier.

<sup>q</sup> In Synodo Worcester. 1240.

<sup>r</sup> *Comp. Hospitii* 6 E. 1. in Turre. *Waltero Storton* ad opus Regis ad ludendum ad quatuor Reges viii s. v d.

<sup>s</sup> *Man of Law's Tale* v. 716. See the *Merchants Tale* v. 818, 185 b. *Sompnour's Tale* v. 514. *Wife of Bath* v. 1190. *Clerk of Oxford* v. 1474, 1476. *Pardoner* v. 2183. *Shipman* v. 2816. *Prologue to the Monk's Tale* v. 9. *Nones Priest's Tale* v. 1063 See *Spelman of Deeds*, p. 243, &c.

frequently,



frequently; and in *France* this Card is known by the Term Varlet, a Word given to the ' Sons of Kings.

Whoever hath the Patience to read over this tedious Catalogue of Kings, the Geography of whose Realms cannot easily be found out, will not be surprized that answerable to this Custom the Principals or Chiefs of the Heralds should be denominated by this " Epithet, especially when they recollect that their Creation is by pompous Ceremonies somewhat allusive to Coronations of Sovereign Princes, receiving at that Time Crowns, and the Chief of them a Scepter, being anointed (if it may be said) by pouring Wine on their Heads, and Robed with the Royal Military Habit or Surcoat of Arms of the King, and the Titles of their Kingdoms, Provinces, or Marches given them, or rather of the Persons living within them, being (as a Learned \* Author observes) the Statue of the King, or in the Words of ' another, the Shadow of Royalty, and Representative of Majesty, or, as was said in Derision of *Charles VII of France*, *Roy en peinture*, which Title of King, according to <sup>z</sup> *Olivier de le Marche*, is the highest in the Cosmography of Heraldry, tho' he must be mistaken in that Assertion, if the Emperor's Chief Herald was then called, as some " Writers have since stiled him, *Arch Roy*, or *Roy des Roys*, a <sup>b</sup> Title given to our *Garter* in the Journal of the House of Lords, in Respect probably to his Superiority over the other Kings of the Obedience of this Realm. But these Officers of Arms should not be elated with Pride upon this August Title, and the uncommon Marks and Ensigns of Royalty attributed to them, but thereby remember to Reverence themselves by not doing any Thing beneath the Trust reposed in them by the Person whom they represent, and not forget that they are frequently and truly also stiled <sup>c</sup> Servants of Arms and *Cientes Armorum*.

This Title of King got footing also in Ecclesiastical Societies, *Rex<sup>d</sup> Stultorum*, was prohibited to the College of *Beverly* in 1391, who bore Rule there on the Festivals of the Holy Innocents, and of the Circumcision. This King was of the same Nature with the *Barn Bishop*, *Barn Abbot*, &c. in other Places, <sup>e</sup> Forreign and <sup>f</sup> Domestick, a Ceremony justly called

<sup>t</sup> See De la Roque de la Noblesse, p. 7. Du Fresne Gloss. voce Valeri.

<sup>u</sup> Columbiere des Roys d'Armes, p. 12. Roy d'Armes est titre plus propre au Chef des Heraux, qui exerceans un Office tout Royal, ont toujours eu cette advantage de marcher devant le Roys leurs Maistres en royal appareil. Ils sont aussi ditz Roy, a Cause de la Beaute & de Authorite de leurs charges & pour la dignite du Maistre qu'ils servent & qu'ils representent. Autrefois on donnoit le nom de Roi a plusieurs principaux Officiers, mais il y a une raison particuliere pour le Roi d'Armes qui est qu'on luy mettoit une Couronne sur la tete le jour de sa reception & qu'il la portoit dans plusieurs ceremonies, ou il representoit la personne du Roi: cest pourquoy il estoit toujours Chevalier. Moreri Diction 1718. in voce Heraut.

<sup>x</sup> Splem. Gloss. voce Herald.

<sup>y</sup> Menestrier le blason justifie c. 5. p. 119. L'ombre de la Royaute & qui represente la Majeste.

<sup>z</sup> Si hault, si noble & si grand, que jamais ne peut avoir plus hault nom en l'Office d'Armes.

<sup>a</sup> Columbiere des Roys d'Armes, p. 40. Le Roy d'Armes de l'Empereur nomme Archeroy porte

la Couronne & les Habits Imperiaux. Rouck der Nederlandtschen Heraud, p. 224. Den Roy des Roys werdt ghekent by den naem van Marckgraeft des Heyligh Rijer ende g hecreet by den Keyser, is een van ne principaelste Roy d'Armes van Christenriick.

<sup>b</sup> 15 Febr. 6 H. 8.

<sup>c</sup> Thus Garter is in his Institution stiled, Ung Servant d'Armes, and in some Records, Serviens Communis ad Ordinem Garter.

<sup>d</sup> Mon. Angl. vol. 3. de Eccl. Colleg. p. 7.

<sup>e</sup> See Du Fresne Gloss. v. Episcopus Puerorum. Moreri Feste des Innocens Festes des Fous. Durandus, who died in 1296, in his rationale, p. 282. describes this Custom at large. Lobineau Hist. de Bretagne, p. 586. Com. Garderob. 12 E. 3. penes Camerar. Scacc. Episcopo puerorum Ecclesie de Andewerp cantanti coram. Dom. Rege in Camera sua in festo sanctorum Innocentium de dono ipsius Dom. Regis xiii. s. vid.

<sup>f</sup> See the Processionale secundum usum Sarum Rothom. 1555. In the Mon. Angl. vol. 3. p. 313, 314, 177, 279, 169. As to our Kings, Lib. Garderob. 25 E. 1. penes Rem. Regis Episcopo puerorum fado



called the Feast of *g* Fools, and this Bishop *b* *Nihilensis*; for as in the State the Title of King was attributed to Persons, who presided in some jocular Ceremonies, so that of Bishop, the Highest Order in the Church, was taken by a Child who personated the Bishop, being clothed with all the *i* Pontifical Ensigns, and which was intolerable, executed the *k* Functi-

on

facto in Ecclesia parochiali de la Neylonde de Eleemosyna Regis pro seipso & Clericis suis xl s. Eodem die Episcopo puerorum in Ecclesia Abbatiae Colcestriae de Eleemosyna Regis & Clericis suis xl s. and it is docketed in the Margin, in festo Sancti Nicholai. There is an usual annual Entry in the Pelle Rolles Puero Episcopo libera capellae Sancti Stephani infra palatium Regis Westmonast. in denariis sibi liberatis de Eleemosyna Dom. Regis in vigilia Sancti Nicholai, prout consimili Episcopo de anno in annum ab antiquo liberari consuevit xx s. The Lord Scrope in his Will 1415, devises to the Church of York, Capa, Casula, Tunica & Dalmatia cum omni apparatu quas habeo pro Episcopo puerorum. Rym. vol. 9. p. 273.

*g* Durand. Moreri, Lobineau, as above: See Notes to the Works of Peter Blesensis Paris. fol. 1667.

*b* Consuetudin. Scholae Etonensis MS. in Colleg. C. C. In die Sancti Hugonis solebat Etonae fieri Electio Episcopi Nihilensis, sed consuetudo obsolevit. Olim ille Episcopus puerorum habebatur nobilis, in cujus electione & literata & laudatissima exercitatio ad ingeniorum vires & motus excitandos Etonae celebris erat.

*i* Gregory's Posthumous Works.

A Roll or Parchment, belonging to the Church of Canterbury, gives an Inventory of his Habits, whence we may judge of the Apparel of Bishops. Contenta de Ornamentis Episcopi puerorum penes Ed. Dering Baronet.

Imprimis *i* Myter well garnished with perle and precious Stones with nowches of Silver and gilt before and behind.

Item *ii* rynges of Silver and gilt with *ii* redde precious Stones in them.

Item *i* Pontifical with Selver and gilt with a blew Stone in hytt.

Item *i* Owche broken Silver and gilt with *iii* precious stones and a perle in the myds.

Item *a* Croose with a Staff of Coper and gilt with the ymages of Seint Nicholas in the Mydds.

Item *i* vesture redde with Lyons whitt Selver with brydds of Gold in the Orfres of the same.

Item *i* Albe to the same with Sterrs in the pa ----

Item *i* whitt cope stayned with trestells and orferes redd silk with doos of Gold and whitt napkins about their necks.

Item *ii* copes blew silk with red orferes trayled with whitt braunchis and flowres.

Item *i* stayned cloth of the ymage of Seint Nicholas.

Item *i* Tabard of Skarlet and a hode thereto lyned with whitt Silk.

Item *a* hode of Skarlet lyned with blew silk.

In a Will in the Registry of Norwich 1506 the Testator devises a summe to be laid out for a Robe of worsted lined with purple Satin to be made in the honor of St. Nicholas for the Bishop to wear his day and night in the Parish of St. Martin at the Paley's Gate, and in the old Rolls of the Accounts of the Almoners of that Church. Item. Pro victualibus emptis cum aliis expensis pro Episcopo puerorum in festo Sancti Nicholai. Probably Chaucer in the Prioresse tale v. 3023 refers

Saint Nicholas Stont aye in my presence  
For be so yonge to Christ did reverence.

*k* To the above mentioned Quotations may be added one from the Register of the Almoner of Pauls in bibl. Coll. Sancti Joh. Cantab. f. 4. Memorandum quod Anno Domini MCCCXLIII tempore G. de Ferynge Decani ordinatum fuit de Officio Puerorum die Sanctorum Innocentium prout sequitur Provida fuit ab antiquis Patribus Prædecessoribus nostris deliberatione statutum, ut in solemnitate Sanctorum Innocentium qui pro innocente Christo sanguinem suum fuderunt, Innocens Puer Præfatus officio fungeretur, ut sic puer pueris præficeret & innocens innocentibus imperaret, Illius typum tenens in Ecclesia quem secuntur innocentes quocunque ierit. Cum igitur quod ad laudem lactentium fuit adinventum conversum sit in dedecus & derisum decoris domus Dei propter insolentiam effrenatæ multitudinis consequentis eundem & affluentis improborum turbæ pacem Præfatus exturbantis statuendum duximus, ut prædicti Pueri tam in eligendo suo Pontifice & Personis dignitatum Decani, Archidecanorum, & aliorum, necnon & Stationariorum antiquum suum ritum observent: Tabulam suam faciant & legant in Capitulo, hoc tamen adhibito moderamine, ut nullum cætero de Canonicis majoribus vel minoribus ad candelabras vel turribula vel ad aliqua obsequia Ecclesiæ vel ejusdem Pontificis deputent in futurum, sed suos eligant ministeriales de illis qui sunt in secunda forma vel tertia; Processionem suam habeant honestam, tam in incessu quam habitu & cantu competentem. Ita vero se gerant in omnibus in Ecclesia, quod Clerus & populus illos habeat recomendatos. Cum autem declinaverit Episcopus ad cœnandum post vespas Sancti Johannis ad cujus voluerit Canonici residentis domum hac solum contentus sit familia, duos secum habeat quos sibi elegit Capellanos, duos quos sibi elegit Cereferarios, quinque pueros alios vice Clericorum suorum, duos etiam de servientibus Ecclesiæ, qui cum virgis Præfulem precedent; Caveat autem sibi ne capellanos vel Cereferarios vel Clericos suos alios ut prædictum est de illis eligat qui gerunt personas Stationariorum sive sint dignitates absentes sive alia nisi personæ quorum vicem gerunt sint absentes. Illustri autem persona qui vicem tenet Decani adjunctis sibi quatuor Sociis de aliis personis Stationariorum nisi fuerint absentes ut dictum est ad domum declinet Decani. Cæteri vero qui personas optinent dignitatum ad Domos Dominorum suorum descendant, quilibet contentus tribus sociis. Et is ordo & numerus observetur tam in prima Cœna quam in mensa diei quam cœna posteriori, nec cum eo cœnabit ultima die vel prandebit cum quo cœnavit die prima. Ex præmissis manifeste colligitur quod si descenderit Episcopus ad Domum Decani erit ibi cum xv clericis, si ad domum alicujus optinentis dignitatem cum xiiii clericis, si ad alterius privati Stationarii cum xiii die vero solemnitate post prandium ad mandatum personæ Decani convenient in atrio Ecclesiæ ibidem equos ascendant ituri ad populum benedicendum, Tenetur autem Decanus Præfule præstare Equum & quilibet Stationarius sive personæ in Equis providere. In transgressores autem hujus Constitutionis, &c.

K k k k

W:



on of a Bishop, which though it was prohibited by an Epistle of Pope *Immoent* III to the Bishop of *London*, continued however in that Cathedral, and several other Churches, till 33 *H. VIII*, when it was Abolished by a <sup>1</sup> Proclamation, which the Writers of the History of our Reformation probably had not seen, or thought it below their Notice. There might be a great deal more said of this *Boy Bishop*, and that in like manner other Ecclesiastical Terms, as Apostles, Cardinals, Abbots, Deans, &c. in the middle and latter Ages have been attributed to Persons of much inferior Degrees in the Church, and very frequently to the Laity.

Having thus endeavoured to explain the Term *King*, wherein the Provincials participate with *Garter*, it may not be improper to shew wherein the latter is distinguished from them in his Title: There have been some Variations in the wording of the Patents to these Provincial Kings, as well as to *Garter*; *Clarenceux* by his present Patent is created “*In Regem Armorum, ac principalem Heraldum partium Australium, Orientalium, & Occidentalium regni nostri Angliæ*”, which Words *Orientalium & Occidentalium* were first inserted in the Patent of *Thomas Benoilt* in 2 *H. VIII*, and *Norroy* is created, “*In Regem Armorum ac principalem Heraldum partium Borealium regni nostri Angliæ*”: Here is a Copulative in both their Styles, yet only one Office is granted to each, with the respective Names or Titles of *Clarenceux*, and *Norroy*; *Garter* hath the like Conjunction at present in his Patent, being constituted “*In Principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum & præcipuum Officarium Armorum inclyti Ordinis Garterii*”, with the Name, Stile and Title of *Garter*, but the same is throughout the Patent designed as one Office. By the first Patent on Record he was erected, *In Regem Armorum de Gartera*, without any other Words. It hath been alledged by a former *Clarenceux*, that the Word *Anglicorum* herein must be an <sup>11</sup> Adjective agreeing with *Armorum*, and imports that this Officer was Principal King of *English* Arms, and not as 'tis usually Translated of *Englishmen*: The Collector is not apprized of any distinct Consequences that will follow from this Difference of Translations; but that the latter is true, appears from an Authentick Instrument, under the Hands and Seals of Twelve Knights of the Order, and of the Prelate, who recite the Erection of this Officer, in the following Words, according to a verbal Translation. “*m Hen. V, by good and demure deliberation willing to the Contemplation of the said noble Order, as Sovereign of the same, in full Chapter of the said Fellowship and Confraternity, by the Advice and Consent of all the Brethren, and there being present the Reverend Father in God Henry Bishop of Winchester*

*We have the Will of Tholeshunte, Almoner of this Church, dated 20 Januarii MCCCXXVIII. Item lego Hugoton meam meliorem & Priscianum majorem & minorem in uno volumine ligatum & Ysodorum. Ethemologiarum & omnes libros meos gramaticales præterquam illos quos habet Radulphus Clericus meus & omnes Quaternos sermonum de Festo Sanctorum Innocentium quos tempore meo solebant Episcopi Puerorum pronunciare ad remiandum in Eleemosynaria prædicta in*

*perpetuum ad usumfructum puerorum in eadem degentium, &c. Probatur in Hustengo London*

*4 E. 3.*

*1 Titus B. 1. bibl. Cotton, p. 208.*

*11 Controversy between Garter and Benoilt Clarenceux, begun in 22 H. 8. whereof there are Copies in several Libraries. Faustina E. 1. in bibl. Cotton. l. 6. 15. penes Ed. Dering Baronet. A. 10. penes me, &c.*

*m Ashm. App. n. v.*

“ Prelate



“ Prelate of the said most noble Order willed ordeyned and Constituted  
 “ in encreasing the Name of the said Order, and to be attendant on  
 “ the service of the said fellowship, the brethren of the same, and of all  
 “ Gentry a Servant of Arms, the which for the Dignity of the said Order,  
 “ He would that he should be *Sovereign* within the Office of Arms, over  
 “ all other Servants of Arms of the most noble Kingdome of England,  
 “ and in confirming the said Order was named *Garter King of Arms of*  
 “ *Englishmen*”. [*Jartier Roy d'Armes des Angloys*].

It is no ways singular that a King of Arms, instituted by the Title of a Military Order, should be also thereby created the Principal King of Arms, and invested with Powers to execute all other Articles of Heraldick Functions throughout the whole Territories of the Grand Master. There were anciently several Kings of Arms for distinct <sup>n</sup> Provinces under the Dominion of the Duke of *Burgundy*, yet upon the Erection of the Order of the *Golden Fleece* there was a King of Arms created by that Title [*Toison d'or*] sworn in a <sup>o</sup> Chapter, who had Robes of that <sup>p</sup> Order, and executed the Duties belonging thereto: However he was not limited to that Order solely, for as *Toyson d'or* he was employed in all the <sup>q</sup> Branches of the Heraldick Capacities. In the Declaration made in a Chapter of that Order held in 1545, of the Rights of Officers of Arms, he is acknowledged to be “ <sup>r</sup> the first and principal King of Arms, and  
 “ it is decreed that to him appertained generally the correction of Arms, Crests, and Helmets unlawfully born in all Kingdoms, Counties, and Lordships obeissant and subject to the Sovereign, and that such an authority belonged to the other Kings of Arms within their respective Provinces only”, and therefore this Officer in the Ceremonies not relating to the Order is invested in a <sup>s</sup> Tabart; and he is the <sup>t</sup> Chief or First in the Office of Arms, which corresponds in every Particular with *Garter*, who by his Institution was erected for the Service of all the Gentry

<sup>n</sup> The Order of *Toison d'or* was instituted 9 January 1429-30. Now before that Time we find in our own Records Artois King of Arms, Rym. vol. 9. p. 631. who is mention'd before this Time by Monstrelet, vol. 1. p. 192 b. 194. who likewise names Flanders King of Arms, vol. 1. p. 125, 188, 193 b. &c. The Officers of Arms belonging to the Duke of Burgundy were distinguished into Rugers and Poitiers, the former being for his Territories within the Empire, near the Rhine or Rura speaking the German Language, the latter for his Dominions within the Fee of France, situated round the Castle of Poix, which are not at present insisted upon, because the Collector hath not hitherto found this Distinction in Authors who wrote before the Erection of this Order.

<sup>o</sup> In the 19th Ch. of the Original Statutes Jean le Fevre (as he writes himself) was Instituted to this Office of *Toison d'or*, and took a solemn Oath for the Execution of that Office, and also of that of Chancelour to the Duke of Burgundy by the Hands of the Chancelour of the Order in Presence of that Duke. Prologue au l'Hist. de Ch. vi.

<sup>p</sup> His Robes are settled by the Statutes, and Olivier de la Marche, p. 257. describes him habited therein at a Feast of the Order.

<sup>q</sup> Olivier de la Marche mentions his Functions at several Justs; but he himself acquaints us, That he had served his redoubted Lord according to his duty as well in the warrs as in great and notable Embassies to

the Popes Eugene and Nicholas, to divers Princes in Italy, to the King of Arragon, to the Kingdoms of Naples and Sicily, into Spaine to the Kings of Castile, Portugal, Navarre and Granade, and had made divers voyages into Germany, England, Scotland, and other places. Prologue au l'Hist. de Ch. vi.

Having mentioned his Messages into this Kingdom, it may not be amiss to refer briefly to some of our Records. In 13 H. 6. he had a Reward from our King. Cleopatra F. 4. in bibl. Cotton. Exit. Pell. P. 13. H. 6. *Toyson Regi Armorum Ducis Burgundiae XI. de dono habendo.* Exit. Pell. M. 27 H. 6. *Tosoun d'ore heraldo Burgundiae nuper venienti versus Dom. Regem cum literis & nunciis XI. &c.*

<sup>r</sup> Jurisprud. Heroria, vol. 2. p. 70, 71.

<sup>s</sup> La vie de Jaques Lalain par Geo. Chastellain en avis. Le Sieur de St. Remy est peint vestu de sa cote de Armes assis & escrivant sur un poulpitre. Mons. Clairembault acquainted the Collector with Desein de l'Habit du Roy d'Armes de l'ordre de la *Toison hors des Assemblies capitulaires*, tire de l'original manuscrit en velin de l'Hist. de messire Jaques de Lalain.

<sup>t</sup> Regios inter muneris sui ministros primus. Chiflet Brev. Hist. ordinis aurei Velleris c. 9. Upon the Tomb of Thomas Isaac, who died in 1539, is inscribed, Le premier Roy d'Armes de la Majeste de l'Empereur dit *Toison d'or*. Menestrier de la Chevalerie, p. 227. Jurispr. Her. vol. 2. p. 167.

through



through the whole Extent of the Heraldick Systems, as well as the Service of the Order: And by the way, this Article of the Declaration made in this Chapter of the *Golden Fleece* agrees with the antient Tract entituled, *Les Droits, &c. aux Roys d'Armes & Heraulx selon l'usage d'Angleterre*, whereof there are old Copies in several Libraries, wherein *Garter* is enjoyned to make Inquiries generally, and the Provincial Kings within their respective Marches only, and that no Provincial shall intrude in the Province of another. And also with the Constitutions made in a Chapter of the *Garter* in 14 H. VIII, where the Correction of Arms is asserted to be the Right of *Garter* King of Arms. Thus also when *Charles* Duke of *Savoy* had added to his Order of the *Collar* the Image of the *Annunciade*, (from whence the Order afterward became so styled) we find a King of Arms denominated *Bonnes Nouvelles*, alluding to the good Tidings or *Annunciade*, which the Angel *Gabriel* brought to the Blessed Virgin of the Mistry of the Incarnation, which Officer had beside the " Robe of the Order a Tabart, to be worn according to the Nature of the Functions he executed. It would be very easy to run through the Instances of the Officers of Arms erected by the Titles of other Military Orders.

But though this Appellation of *Farretier Roy d'Armes d'Anglois* was in pursuance of this Institution used by <sup>x</sup> *Bruges*, on whom this Office was first conferred and given him by the Officers of Arms themselves assembled in Chapter at <sup>y</sup> *Roan*, and also by the Decree of the Duke of <sup>z</sup> *Clarence* made for the Government of them, and though all the Patents which have conveyed the Office have expressed the same as one single Office, *Cum præeminentiis hujusmodi Officio spectantibus —officium illud —eidem officio —dicto Officio —ratione ejusdem Officii, &c.* yet a new Doctrine hath been started by distinguishing him from all other Officers, which was that *Garter* had two distinct Offices inseparably united in his Person, one the Office of a King of Arms of the Order, the other of a King of Arms in the College. If no more was meant by this Position than that *Garter* had several Functions and Duties incumbent on him by Vertue of his Institution, 'tis as certainly true with Regard to him, as it is with Reference to all other Officers of Arms, who execute several distinct Branches or Articles belonging to their Professions, whereof some relate to the Order of the *Garter*, but still each of them is only one individual Officer, and acts in these several Capacities by Vertue of one Title, one Patent, and one Creation only, to which these several Duties are incident, and not as having different Offices in the Legal Acceptation of that Word. This Nice Notion was invented with a View to a Controversy, wherein *Garter* was no Party, and wherein the opposite Side instead of demanding the Proofs closed in with the Proposition, and laying hold on the Concession, that these two supposed distinct legal

<sup>u</sup> This Officer wrote the Ceremonial of the Creation of the Count de Pontdevour, wherein himself, the King of Arms of Savoy, Chablais, and Geneva Herald proceeded devant le Seigneur richement ornes, reserve moy, qui ne portois point la mienne, d'autant que cette Creation ne concerne en rien les Ceremonies de l'ordre. Guichenon Hist. Geneal. de Sa-

voy en preuves, p. 651.

<sup>x</sup> In his Petition to H. 5. hereafter recited.

<sup>y</sup> There are several antient Copies in different Libraries, which will be hereafter considered.

<sup>z</sup> There are many ancient Copies in distinct places, which will be Examined hereafter.



Offices being allowed to be inseparably annexed, desired only to be informed which of them was in their Opinion the Principal, and which the Accessary, and then left them to apply the Maxim of Law, that the Accessary must be of the Nature of the Principal.

But to return to the remaining Part of the Title of *Garter*: He is in his Patent styled Principal King of Arms of *Englisbmen*, and the Chief or Principal Officer of Arms of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*, which latter Terms seem strongly to imply that there are other subordinate Officers of Arms belonging to the Order. In the warm Dispute above-mention'd, in the Reign of *Hen. VIII*, carried on in Writing between *Garter* and *Clarenceux*, the latter treating of Marshalls or Deputies, hath these Words, that "*Garter* because he was an Officer of Arms to the said Noble Order, hath appointed to be under hym in the said Office an Herald and two Pursuivants for his more ease to be ready to do such things as He shall commande them touching their Office". He doth not specify the Titles of this Herald and those Pursuivants, but in another Place he alledges, that *Windsor* Herald, *Rougecroix*, and *Bleumantle* Pursuivants, were erected by *Hen. V*, belonging to the Office of *Garter*: He is mistaken in the *Aera* of the Institution of the former, as will be soon shewn; *Windsor*, is indeed the Place wherein the Order was fixed, *Rougecroix*, the Arms of the Tutelar Saint of it, and the Robe thereof is a Blue Mantell, and in two Entries as low as the Years 1513 and 1520. Sir *William Dethick* then *Garter*, styles *Rougecroisse* to be *Garter's* Pursuivant. But the Collector doth not suppose the subordinate Officers of Arms belonging to this Order are confined to such only who were particularly appropriated, or attendant upon *Garter* King of Arms, but that the whole Fraternity of Officers of Arms are hereby intended, for all such are obliged to do their Duties at Installations and Feasts of this Order, for which they have Rewards, and were formerly allowed <sup>b</sup> Diet on *St. George's* Eve and Feast at *Windsor*, and in 1672 had Lodgings assigned to them within the Castle. As the Emperor *Charles V*, in the above-mention'd <sup>c</sup> Chapter of the *Golden Fleece*, declared the Rights of all Officers of Arms therein said to be *Toison d'or*, and the Kings, Heralds and Pursuivants, which Declaration had not been proper for that Place if all the latter had not been subordinate Officers, or had some relative Duties to that Order; so we find that the Knight's Companions of the *Garter*, assembled in 3 *Ed. VI*, "<sup>d</sup> Agreed and <sup>e</sup> condescended, that the Officers of Arms should be freed from payment of taxes forever by the said Chapter". But this Conjecture seems undeniable, in that before the Institution of *Garter* King of Arms, the Officers of Arms then in being received <sup>e</sup> Fees for executing their Duties at the Feasts of this Order, as they have done since that Time, and it hath been constantly allowed even to Officers of Arms of <sup>f</sup> forreign Kingdoms, who have chanced to be pre-

<sup>a</sup> *H. 3.* penes me. p. 1198.

<sup>b</sup> *Ashm.* p. 546, 591.

<sup>c</sup> *Jurispr. Heroica.* vol. 2. p. 68.

<sup>d</sup> See Notes to the Black-book in that Year.

<sup>e</sup> See that in 32 *E. 2.* to William Volant King of the Heralds. Notes to the Black-book, p. 50. and

to divers Heralds in 21 *R. 2.* Ibid. p. 56.

<sup>f</sup> See Note *r.* p. 93. to the Black-book. Note *r.*

p. 138. Of *Toison d'or*, see *Ashm.* p. 348. Of Lion

King of Arms of Scotland, 35 *H. 8.* *Parli. Book.*

p. 92. Again at the Installation of Prince Henry.

*Ashm.* p. 345, &c.



sent at *Windsor*, not only to officiate in the Solemnities of the Order, but to participate also in a Share or Dividend of the Fees.

Nothing remains unexplained in the Title save the Terms *Principalis* and *Præcipuus*, for which other Words have been sometimes used, such as *Capitalis Rex Armorum*, *fecialium*<sup>b</sup> Princeps, *Premier Roy d'Armes*, &c. The true Import of these Expressions will be discovered from the Terms of the Institution, by which, "For the Dignity of the Order, *Garter* is made *Sovereign* within the Office of Arms of the most Noble Kingdom of *England*", and very soon after his Erection, he is thus termed *Sovereign* in the above named Decrees of the Duke of *Clarence*, who in Consequence thereof, Orders, That "all other Kings of Arms, Herald's and Pursuivants shall honour and reverence him, as the Chief and Principal of the said Office, according to the Tenour of his Creation". And the Constitutions made by the Officers of Arms themselves, assembled in a Chapter at *Roan*, within a short Time after the Institution of *Garter*, furnish us with the most unexceptionable Proof of the Nature and Extent of this Sovereignty, for it was agreed by their unanimous Consent, "That all Officers of Arms shall promise him Obedience within the Office of Arms, and take an Oath for that Purpose". Something will be hereafter said touching the Authority of these Decrees, and of these Constitutions.

In the before recited Controversy, Sir *Thomas Wriothesley Garter* having alledged, That he and all his Predecessors in that Office had been reputed, and at all Times taken as Sovereigns, and Principals of the Office of Arms, *Benoilt* then *Clarenceux* makes this Remark on it, "That he marvels that the said *Garter* shames not to presume to take upon him, that any of the Kings Servants, or any of the Kings Subjects should call him as their Souverain, which name of Souverain only appertaineth and is incident to the Kings Royal Majesty, and to none other Person within this Realme". Whoever is possessed of any Right, that gives him a Preference before others, may doubtless justify his asserting it, without incurring the Charge of Presumption, Ambition, or Insolence, while it is done without vain Ostentation and Contempt of others; and 'tis the Duty of all Persons invested with any Authority to execute the same with Prudence, Resolution and Moderation; to this Charge therefore Sir *Thomas* made the following Reply, "That he, and all other his predecessors hath alwayes ben taken, and named, as souveraigne in th'office of Armes, as may appere by diverse precedents, as well remayning with the said *Garter*, as with other of the said Office, and also by certayne bookes apperteyning to the Office of Arms remayning in the keeping of the said *Clarenceux*; and that it may appear from *Froissart* that Sir *John Chandos* at the battayl of *Aulroy*

<sup>g</sup> Fin. 1 R. 3. m. 10. Vide *Rymer*, vol. 12. p. 210.

<sup>b</sup> *Ashm. App. n. Lx.*

<sup>i</sup> *Ibid. n. Lxix.*

<sup>k</sup> He might have added several other Instances from *Froissart*, *Souverain Maistre de la Salle*, vol. 3. p. 39. *Souverain Patron de la navire*, *Ibid. p. 102.* *Sou-*

*verain en garnison*, vol. 1. p. 36. *Cheif & Souverain del'arriere garde*, vol. 1. p. 263. *Souverains des gens d'Armes*, vol. 2. p. 223, 224. *Souverain Captain de tous le Secours de France au Royaume de Castile*, vol. 3. p. 151. Sir *Richard Burley* estoit l'un de plus renommez de tout son l'ost apres le *Conestable*, car il estoit *Souverain maistre de tout son*



“ *Aulroy* in *Brittayne* was namyd *Souverayn* Captayn, and *Sir Hugh Cal-*  
 “ *verly* was named *Souveraign* of the *Rereward*, notwithstanding *John*  
 “ *Erle Mountford* Duke of *Brittayne* was cheif; also the Terme of *Sove-*  
 “ *raign* Immediate is expounded in the Booke of Justice of the Pax, and  
 “ also in the Book of Exposition of Terms, and of certain Acts of Par-  
 “ liament, and further that *Mountjoy* Principal King of Arms in *France*  
 “ is written *Souveraign Roy d'Armes de France*, as may appear by divers  
 “ Books: Also at the first Institution of the Office of *Garter* the King  
 “ ordained him to be *Souveraigne*, and *Garter* hath greate Marvaile that  
 “ *Clarenceux* denieth him to be *Souveraign* in the Office of Arms, consider-  
 “ ing that the said *Clarenceux* and the more part of the Office of Arms  
 “ under their own hands have granted and signed to the said Name of  
 “ *Souveraigne* in the Office of Arms, as by their Writings thereof made  
 “ more at large doth appear; where by this and by the other it appear-  
 “ eth well, that *Clarenceux* is ignorant, and doth not understand the  
 “ Term of *Souveraigne* Immediate, nor never did read the Book of  
 “ Exposition of Terms; for their be many that beare the Name of *Sove-*  
 “ *veraign* with certain Additions, for the Husband is *Souveraign* Imme-  
 “ diate of his Wife, an Abbot is ' *Sovereign* Lord of the House of Re-  
 “ ligion, with many other, &c. But the Term of *Souveraign* Lord ap-  
 “ pertaineth only to the Kings Person.

The Editor thought it not improper to add Proofs of these Assertions in the Margin, and to give other <sup>m</sup> Examples, where the Term *Sovereign* hath been communicated to those, who had the Command and Superintendency in particular Offices, without the least Thought of diminishing from the Supremacy of the Crown. Every individual Officer of Arms hath certainly an Interest in the College, but each of them is not to preside at the Helm. In pursuance of the Institution, and the other Particulars above-mention'd, we find one Article of the *Latin* Constitutions made in the Chapter of the Order, held in 14 H. VIII, touching  
 “ *Garter*, ordaining, *Quem Supremus & Commilitones ob dignitatem Ordinis*  
 “ — *cæteris Armorum Officialibus qui Coronæ Angliæ subjecti sunt* *superiorem esse volunt*”, which in the *French* Copy is expressed by the Word *Souveraign*, before which Time, in the Journal of the House of Lords, *Garter* was

son Ost. vol. 3. p. 208. Son maistre Escuyer & son souveraine Conseillor, vol. 1. c. 15. Six Chevaliers Souverains estoient de cette Embusche, vol. 1. c. 140. Sir John Chandos, maistre & Souverain de tous les Chevaliers & Escuyers de son hostel. vol. 1. c. 261. Pierre de Villars Souverain maistre d'hostel du Roy, vol. 4. p. 94, &c.

1 See Splem. Gloss. voce Abbas. The St. 9 R. 2. c. 4. Whether a Prior be perpetual or removeable at the Will of his Abbot the Sovereign, see Stat. 30 H. 6. c. 5. The Act 7 H. 7. c. 5. enumerates Abbots, Priors, Gardiens, Keepers, Masters, Rulers, or Sovereigns of Spiritual places: See 12 H. 7. c. 7. and the Stat. 18 H. 7. c. 7. is against such as wilfully commit Murder in slaying their Master, or their immediate Sovereign, under whom he or they be, or owe Obedience, and Stat. 26 H. 8. c. 3. sect. 8. instances in Priors removeable at the only Pleasure of their Masters, and Sovereigns of the Monasteries, whereunto the Cells belong.

As to law Cases, see 21 H. 4. 5b. Co. Littlet.

p. 132b. and in Fitzh. Juris Utrum n. 3. this Title of Sovereign to the Chief of a Collegiate Church.

m In France Souverain maistre d'hostel during the Reigns of King John and Charles VI, as also Souverain maistre des Eaux, & Forets, Souverain de Tresor. Diction. de Trevoux v. President and Souverain. The Masters of Accounts are prohibited from absenting themselves without the Licence of the Souverain. Ibidem. Pasquier recherches, l. 8. c. 12. who farther saith, that Stewards, with reference to Prevots and Chateilains, are their Sovereigns. The Earl Rivers in his Diælis and Sayings of Philosophers saith, Galens Grauntfader was a Sovereigne master Carpenter. The Irish Act of Parliament names the Chief Officer of several Burroughs the Sovereign 13 H. 7. m. 26, 27. Mr. Selden in his 4to Edit. of the Titles of Honour, mentions the Dedication of a Poem by a Dominican Fryer in the Reign of Henry 7. To my Sovereign Lady benigne and honorable, discrete, full of Wisdome, of Gloucestre Dutchesse, &c.

stiled



stiled "Rex Regum Heraldorum. But those who challenge an Authority Superiour to this Sovereign in the Office of Arms, or a Power coordinate with him therein, may explain this latter Expression in the jocular Manner that the Emperor *Maximilian* said of himself, That whereas other Princes were *Reges Hominum*, he was truly *Rex Regum*, because his Subjects would do only what they listed.

Thus an Attempt hath been made to explain all the Appellations attributed to *Garter*, and before an Enquiry be made into the certain Time of his Institution, it may not be amiss, according to the Series of Chronology, to Examine Mr. *Ashmole's* Assertion (who was himself *Windsor Herald*) "That the Services of this Order in Time preceding [this Erection of *Garter*] were performed by *Windsor Herald* at Arms, "an Officer created with that Title by King *Edward the Third*, much "about the Time of his instituting the Order". He refers us to the Collections of Sir *William le Neve Clarenceux* for Proof thereof, without inserting his Words. Sir *Henry p Spelman*, with his accustomed Modesty, proposes barely a Conjecture, that *Ed. III* having instituted *Windsor Herald* *A. D.* 1368, upon bringing the News of the Victory obtained at *Auroy* in *Bretagne*, adds, "*Fortè ut Garteriæ ordini (cujus Windesoriæ capitolium) inserviret: Nam inchoatus est ordo iste anno superiori tertio decimo: & Garterius Rex Armorum annos ultra 50 postea non comparuit*". Here is some Mistake in the Numerical Figures, for that Battel was gained on <sup>1</sup> *Michaelmas-day* 1364, but this *Windsor* being created above 20 Years after the Commencement of this Order (if it was Erected before *St. George's Day* in the 18th. of *E. III.*) and this Person being, as it is likewise supposed, a Forreigner then sent over upon this Occasion, it is left to the Reader's Judgement, whether it be probable in these Circumstances, that a bare Herald (for at that Time this *Windsor* is supposed to be no more) should be constituted the Chief Officer of Arms for the Services of this Order, who must be in Degree inferior to several <sup>r</sup> Kings of Arms then subsisting in this Kingdom, more especially since we know that before the Creation of this Herald, *Volant King* of Heralds executed Services at the Feast of *St. George* in the 32d Year, who might probably be Living at the very Time of the <sup>1</sup> Erection of this *Windsor Herald*, and that a <sup>t</sup> Payment in 21 *R. II.* was made to all the Heralds in general, and nothing in particular allotted to *Windsor Herald* for his Attendance at

<sup>n</sup> 15 Febr. 6 H. 8.

<sup>o</sup> *Ashm. Hist.* p. 252.

<sup>p</sup> *Gloss. v. Herald.*

<sup>q</sup> See the *Historians*, and from the obtaining this Victory on *Michaelmas-day*, it is probable that in Memory thereof *John de Montford* bore the Image of *St. Michael* on his Counterseal.

<sup>r</sup> In this very Year *Froiss.* vol. 1. p. 248. *Le Roy Faucon* estoit Heraut au Roy d'Angleterre, who in the preceding Year received x Marks, *Rymer* vol. 6. p. 417. See the next Note.

<sup>s</sup> This *Volant* is frequently mentioned in our Records. *Exit. Pell. M.* 28 *E.* 3. *Willimo* Volant Regi Heraldorum de dono Regis *C.* received a Reward for *St. George's Feast* 32 *E.* 3. See Notes to the Black-book, p. 50. *Exit. Pell. p.* 33 *E.* 3. *Willimo*

*Volant Regi Heraldorum & Ministrallis existentibus apud Smethfeld in ultimo hastiludio de dono Regis XI.* And probably is the same Person, who by Title of *Vaillant Herald* received Winter Robes with *Faucon* there filed an Herald only, who we know from the preceding Note was a King of Arms. *Compot. Hen. Smith Custodis Mag. Garder.* 37 *E.* 3. *Vaillant & Faucon Heraldis Dom. Regis* ad robas, &c. faciendas & furrurandas, videlicet utriq; eorum quatuor ulnas panni radiati & duas furruras cum uno capucio boggetti albi per literam de privato sigillo dat. 25 Dec. Anno eodem. m. 4. which was in the Year preceding this Institution of *Windsor*. *Vaillant*, sometime wrote *Vailland*, was long the Title of a King of Arms, but it would be forreign here to give the Proofs thereof. <sup>t</sup> Notes to the Black-book, p. 56.



that Festival. 'Tis likewise somewhat remarkable, that *Thomas Irland*, King of Arms of *Irland*, in his "Will proved in July 1412, makes this Divise to the Church of *St. Michael Basynghall* London, "*Quod statim post obitum meum de meis mantell surcote & Kyrtell albi panni de Cerico fiat unum integrum vestimentum prout decet, si fieri poterit, poudre cum Garters-blod, cum toto apparatu consimili vestimento pertinente.*"

Mr. *Joshua Barnes* indeed writes, that in 13 E. III, the Bishop of *Lincoln* carried the Defiance to the French King, being attended by the Herald *Windsor*, referring in his Margin to *Froissart* and *Knighton*, who both are silent in this Particular, the former expressly assures us, that the Pursuivant who brought the News of the Victory gained at *Auroy*, was immediately made an Herald by that King, and had given him, "Mult grand profit & revenue pour soy entretenir". And a later Historian of *Bretagne* is positive this Person thus advanced was a Pursuivant of that Dutchy. Whatever his Country might be, our Records inform us, there was an Herald by the Title of *Windsor*, in 40 Ed. III, and if the Revenue here mentioned imports an yearly Salary, such Annuity was given to this Officer on 12<sup>th</sup> June, in the 41<sup>st</sup> Year, for the good Service (as 'tis there expressed) that he had done, as well in bringing good News lately from the Prince, as otherwise; but the News from the Prince can no ways relate to the Victory of *Auroy*. This Patent was confirmed to this same Officer by *Rich. II.* But notwithstanding this Confirmation to *Windsor* as an Herald only, yet there are some Instruments in this Interval, which upon the first Sight would induce a Belief, that *Windsor* might have been a King of Heralds at that Time. There are two distinct Payments entred in *Michaelmas* Term, 41 E. III, according to the following Abbreviations, the first is, *Ducendo Wyndes. Reg. Heraldorum*", the second is "*ducendo R. Herald. Wyndesore.* These Summs were both given upon the same Occasion, but it must be remembered that such Payments were made in pursuance of a Privy-Seal, and 'tis probable, that the Clerk of the Pells meant nothing more by

<sup>a</sup> Regist. Episc. Lond. f. 29b.

<sup>x</sup> *Hist. of E. 3. p. 135. It is very probable he meant Guelldres Herald, who was in this Year sent to the King of France to demand a Day of Battle. Froiss. vol. 1. p. 45. which Herald was employed by our King in the foregoing Year, Comp. Garder. 12 E. 3. penes Camerari. Scacc. Willimo Herald Ducis Gelriæ missio ad diversas partes Alemanniæ in negotiis Regis, &c.*

<sup>y</sup> *Froissart, vol. 1. p. 265.*

<sup>z</sup> *Bertr. d'Argentre Hist. de Bretagne, p. 457.*

<sup>a</sup> *Priv. Sig. 20 Dec. 40 E. 3. En amesnant Windesfor un heraut de Melcombe tanque au St. Malo.*

<sup>b</sup> *Priv. Sigill. in Turre Lond. Edward par la Grace de Dieu Roy d'Engleterre, Seigneur d'Irlande & d'Aquitaine a l'onourable Pierre en Dieu l'Ercevesque de Cantebirs Primat de toute Engleterre nostre Chancellor saluz; Comme de nostre Grace Especiale & pur le bon service, que nostre bien ame Wyndesfore nostre Herald, nous ad fait, si bien en nous apportant ore tarde bones nouvelles de nostre trescher fitz le Prince comme autrement, & ferra en temps a venir, eons grantéz a nostre dit He-*

*raud vint marcz a prendre chescun ana nostre Eschequer as termés de seint Michel & de Pasque par ouels portions a toute sa vie, ou tanque nous eons autrement ordenez pur son Estat; vous mandons que sur ce facez faire Lettres souz nostre grant Seal en due forme Don souz nostre Prive Seal a Cantebirs le xii jour de Juyn l'an de nostre regne quarante premier. See Pat. Enrolled 41 E. 3. m. 15. 12 Junii.*

*This Annuity is entred paid to Windsor Herald in Exit. Pell. M. 43 E. 3. P. 46 E. 3. P. 47 E. 3. M. 51 E. 3. P. 51 E. 3.*

<sup>c</sup> *Pat. 3 R. 2. m. 10. and the Payment thereon in Exit. Pell. P. 3. R. 2.*

<sup>d</sup> *Exit. Pell. M. 41 E. 3. Larentio Janyn de Melcombe in partem solutionis xx Marcarum, quas Dom. Rex sibi liberare mandavit de dono suo in persolutionem expensarum suarum ducendo Wyndes. Reg. Heraldorum a portu de Melcombe usq; portum de Seint Malou in Britannia & redeundo 6. 13. 4. In the same Roll is another Entry of the farther Payment of the like Summ, in ducendo R. Herald Wyndesore.*



these Entries than *Regis Heraldum*, and that the Privy-Seal for this Purpose is that <sup>c</sup> above-mention'd in the 40th Year; however the Collector knows there is a Protection in the 49th Year, wrote at Length, *Pro<sup>f</sup> Stephano de Wyndesore Herald Regis Armorum dicto*, who was then attending on *Edmond* Earl of *Cambridge*, and *John* Duke of *Bretagne* into Foreign Parts, which may be owing to the Unaccuracy of the Transcriber, since within five Years afterwards another Protection was granted <sup>g</sup> *Stephano de Wyndesore Heraud*. It would be tiresome in this Place to dilate farther on this Subject of *Windsor* Officer of Arms, to which a great deal might be added: Some Entries subsequent to this Time which name him a King of Arms, seem to admit of an Explanation, in that these Instruments order Payments of Rewards to a Person then probably promoted to the Order of a King of Arms, for Services performed by him while he was *Windsor* Herald before such his Advancement, and this Editor is induced to believe it was not unusual formerly for Heralds after their Promotion to Kingships to retain frequently their first Titles of Heralds also.

But to come to the Erection of this Office of *Garter*, if the same had been at first granted by Patent to this *Bruges*, the exact Period of the Institution might have been easily discovered in the Records; but this Person was promoted hereto by a Creation only, as he himself alledged in a <sup>b</sup> Petition. That Act was then esteemed to confer any Office of Arms in as effectual a Manner as the Accollade conveyed the Honour of Knighthood, which subsisted during Life, or till Degradation for some Crime, and by this Sort of Investiture only, the Officers of Arms of all Degrees were formerly constituted without the Aid of any Letters Patents from the Crown. The first Instance in the Cases of the subsisting Titles of our Kings of Arms, that the Collector hath hitherto seen, wherein the Patent insinuates any Creation by it, is in 28 H. VI, to <sup>i</sup> *Smert* the Second *Garter*, in which is this Clause, "*Ipsum in Regem Armorum de Gartera creximus, creavimus, ac fecimus, erigimusq; creamus, & facimus per presentes*"; yet it seems (as will be shewn hereafter) that he had this Office by an actual Creation thereto, with proper Ceremonies antecedent to the Date of this Patent, and it was towards the End of the Reign of *Ed. IV*, when Patents of this Tenour were first given to the present Provincial Kings, and even after the Time that such Patents past under the Great Seal to Officers of Arms, it was the received Doctrine, that these express Terms of Creation inserted in these Patents did not constitute them perfect complete Officers, without a distinct real Creation, and therefore such Officer mentioned in his Patent to be thus created, while he remained uncreated by actual Ceremonies, was not admitted to any <sup>k</sup> Participation in Largeesses, or occasional Droits belonging to the

<sup>c</sup> See the foregoing Page Note a.

<sup>f</sup> The Privy-Seal for it bears Date 3 Martii 49 E. 3. and is in the White Tower, and it is recorded, Rot. Fran. 49 E. 3. m. 25.

<sup>g</sup> In the White Tower is this Privy-Seal 4 R. 2. Fiat protectio cum clausula *Volumus* pro Stephano de Wyndesore Heraud, qui in obsequium nostrum in comitiva dilecti & fidelis nostri Willimi Domini

de Latymer ad partes transmarinas profecturus est per unum annum duratura. Dat. sub privato Sigillo nostro apud Westm. quarto die Julii Anno Regni nostri quarto.

<sup>b</sup> Inserted in his Life.

<sup>i</sup> See his Life.

<sup>k</sup> The Instances are numerous.



Society, but this Point hath been altered by some later <sup>l</sup> Determinations in *Westminster Hall*, where it hath been adjudged that the Patent it self is sufficient: And it was also customary to create these Officers first with Ceremony, before they obtained Patents from the Crown for their Salaries, which sometimes had <sup>m</sup> retrospect to the Time when they were thus created, or as it is expressed in the Patents to the Day from which they had executed these Offices. But though the Crown did not antiently grant the Character of an Officer of Arms by Patent, yet the King frequently gave daily <sup>n</sup> Wages or Annuities to such Persons as had been formerly created to these Offices for the Merit of their Services performed in them, which will be found to be the Tenour of the ancient Instruments passed under the Great Seal to these Officers: Indeed there is <sup>o</sup> one in 37 H. VI, of a different Style without any Salary, but upon Inspection it will be found not to create the Officer, but to contain only a Certificate of a previous Creation, which is thereby publickly notified by way, or as a Letter of Credence, Passepport, and Safe Conduct for him.

This cannot be lookt on as a Digression, since it shews this first Erection of *Garter* by a Creation only, without any Patent, was conformable to the Ancient Precedents, and even with latter ones, for this Method of Advancement to Offices in the College of Arms, by the Solemnity of a Creation only without any Patent, was observed as low as the Reign

<sup>l</sup> Adjudged in the Case of *Garter*, Leon. 1 Rep. CCCxxvii: in the Case of an *Herald* Noys Rep. p. 150. *Rolls Abridgment*, p. 154, &c. The like was adjudged in case of the Patents of the Nobility. *Annales Jacobi* 1. per *Camdenum* ad 29 Junii 1615.

<sup>m</sup> See some Instances in *Partit. Book*, p. 265, though there are Mistakes in some of them, but there are several Patents of this Tenour: See J. 25. in *Off. Arm.* p. 39.

<sup>n</sup> There is a Grant of 7d. ob. by the Day to *Marche*, in 10 R. 2. which hath this Clause, Non obstante quod aliquis *Heraldus* ante hæc tempora aliqua vadia in Hospitio nostro seu Progenitorum percipere non consuevisset, *Rymer* vol. 7. p. 547. which is not to be understood that no Officer of Arms had daily Wages prior to that Time, but only with Reference to the Doctrine touching Non obstante's to be recited in the King's Grants; for in *Comp. Hosp.* 18 E. 1. *Nicholao Morell Regi Heraldorum* per diem vid. pro vadiis suis. Thus in the former Section we find *Windfor Herald* had a Salary granted to him before this Time, &c.

<sup>o</sup> Pat. 37 H. 6. p. 2. m. 19. Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem: Sciatis quod non solum ex relatione plurimorum nostrorum fidelium, quibus in ea parte fidem plenariam adhibemus, sed etiam per rerum gestarum experientiam, quam nos ipsi habemus de fidelitate, industria, atq; bona diligentia *Richardi Benwell*, Nos de eisdem suis fidelitate & industria plenarie confidentes, ipsum *Richardum* die data præsentium creavimus, fecimus, & ordinavimus, creamus, facimus, & ordinamus per præfentes *Pursuivandum nostrum ad Arma*, in qua creatione imposuimus sibi nomen *Coler*, *Dantes* & *Concedentes eidem Coler* licentiam, & auctoritatem, ac mandatum speciale publice deferendi, in quibuscunque locis honestis, *Arma nostra*, & illud Officium *Pursuivandi ad Arma* debite gerendi, & fideliter exercendi; Qui *Coler* ad statim nobis presentibus solenne prestitit juramentum, in manibus *Gartier Regis ad Arma dilecti Familiaris nostri*

spetialiter per nos ad hoc vocati, adhibitis solennitatibus requisitis, Rogamus propterea & instanter requirimus omnes & singulos Reges Catholicos, Duces, Marchiones, ceterosq; Principes tam Ecclesiasticos quam Seculares, Comites, Vice Comites, Barones, Milites, Capitaneos Armatarum, Gubernatoresque, Custodes Civitatum, Villarum, Fortalliciorum, Portuum, atq; Passagiorum, aut eorum loca tenentes, & alios Egregios viros cujuscunque dignitatis aut conditionis existentes, Reges etiam, & *Heraldos ad Arma*, & alios quoscunque nobis non solum subditos, penes quos ipsum *Coler* se quando-cunque transferre contigerit, quatenus eundem in suis viaggiis tam eundo, quam redeundo, atque morando totiens quotiens sibi necesse fuerit in & per regna, Dominia, loca, & territoria, & potestates suas cum familiaribus, rebus, ac bonis suis, literis patentibus, & clausulis, aliisque scripturis quibuscunque pacifice & quiete intrare, transire, morari, redire, reverti, atq; exire faciant & permittant, singula sibi necessaria pro pretio competentis expensis suis ministrando, atq; ministrari faciendo, prout vellent suis in casu consimili vel majori nos facturos, in quo nobis complacentiam atq; Amicitiam exhibebunt singularem. Subditis vero nostris, & eorum cuilibet, prout ad eum pertinuerit districte præcipiendo mandamus per easdem patentes, quatenus etiam prænominatum *Coler* tanquam *Pursuivandum ad Arma* servitorem nostrum pro tali habeant, & admittant, & in omnibus favorabiliter tractent, ac de honoribus, juribus, prærogativis, & emolumentis ad hujusmodi Officium spectantibus & consuetis libere, pacifice, & quiete uti permittant, & gaudere. In cujus, &c. Teste Rege apud *Westm.* vii die Junii. Per breve de privato Sigillo & de data prædicta, &c.

The Certificate of *Sir John Lisle* to the same Purpose, signifying the Creation of his *Pursuivant Espoir* in 1442, hath been inserted in p. 288 in the Notes, and there is another to the same Effect in *Belleforest les Grands Annals*, l. 4. c. 41.



of Queen <sup>p</sup> Elizabeth, when some of all the Degrees in this Fraternity executed their Offices in the College several Years, before they obtained any Letters Patents for the same.

It is on all Hands agreed, that this Officer was Instituted under the Reign of that great Restorer of this Order the most Heroick King *Hen. V.*, a Prince so averse from Luxury, that he <sup>q</sup> prohibited the Use of Featherbeds, and to prevent the *English* Courage from degenerating, designed to follow the Method of *Lycurgus*, being determined when he should ascend the Throne of *France*, to Plough up all the Vineyards, which the Collector could not omit to observe, since he thinks our *English* Historians are silent in these Particulars.

But *Garter* King of Arms being mention'd in the Romance of *Saintre*, it is necessary in the first place to settle the Time when that Book was wrote; 'tis a Masterpiece in its Kind for the Rules of Tilting and the Warlike and Generous Customs of its Age; the <sup>r</sup> Learned *Peter de Marca*, and some other Authors, conceive it was compiled under the Reign of *Charles V.*, who died in the Year 1380, 4 *Rich. II.* *John de Saintre* indeed was a renowned Knight, and taken <sup>s</sup> Prisoner by the *English* at *Poitiers* in 1356, and the Epitaph which is inserted for him in this Romance, places his Death on 25 Oct. 1368. Now among other his Adventures, this Knight Errant is introduced as holding a Pass or Tilt against the *English* between *Graveling* and *Calais*, wherein 'tis said, ' *Il donna a Jarretiere sa premiere housure de son destrier, qui estoit de Satin cramoisy chargee d'orfeverie a grands bors de martres Sebellines, & 11 C. frans a Cheval, & aux autres heraulx donna leur dit logeis, leur bourt & cent frans.* The Editor hath not had the Fortune to meet with any of the Printed Editions of this Book, and therefore makes use of the Manuscript in the *Cotton* Library, from which the Sequel of the Narrative of this Pass hath been long since cut out, as is evident by the Paging in an ancient Character. <sup>u</sup> *Menestrier* in some Measure supplies this Defect, for he saith that *Campagne* & *Garter* King of Arms were appointed Judges of this Pass, which two Officers being accompanied with all their Heralds, were placed on a Scaffold for this Purpose.

If therefore this Romance be really of this Antiquity, this Writer seems to have had a Spirit of Prediction in naming *Garter*, but the above-mention'd Authors are mistaken in the Age thereof, for this Romance was wrote by <sup>x</sup> *Anthony de la Sale* a *Burgundian*, Author of a Book of Ceremonies

<sup>p</sup> Mr. Camden and Mr. Segar are Entred as Clarenceux and Norroy in the Part. Book, 23 Oct. 1597, yet the former had no Patent till 6 June 1599, 41 Eliz. and the latter not till 2 July 1602, 44 Eliz. Raven Richmond, Treswell Somerset, Lant Windfor, Smith Rougedragon, Thompson Portcullis, and Paten Blewmantell were created at the same Time with Mr. Camden and Mr. Segar, that is on 22 Oct. 1597, 39 Eliz. yet Raven's Patent is dated 13 Aug. 1 Jac. I. Treswell's 20 March 45 Eliz. Lants on 19 Nov. 43 Eliz. Smiths 20 March 45 Eliz. Tomfon's 15 May 44 Eliz. and Patens on 8 May 2 Jac. I.

<sup>q</sup> See a Quotation from Gobelinus in Du Fresne Gloss. voce Plumacium.

<sup>r</sup> Byshei Notæ in Upton de mil. Offic. p. 56.

*Menestrier* Origine des Armoiries, p. 23.

<sup>s</sup> Froiss. vol. 1. p. 178. This Romance calls him, in the Inscription on his Tomb, Senescallus Andegavenfis & Senomanensis. Now Rot. Fran. 35 E. 3. m. 17. there is a Safe Conduet, Pro Johanne de Saintre Senescallo Andegaven. & Cenomanen. See of him, Rymer, vol. 6. p. 460.

<sup>t</sup> Nero D. 2. p. 108.

<sup>u</sup> *Menestrier* de la Chevalerie, p. 216.

<sup>x</sup> Du Chesne preuves de l'Hist. de Montmorency, p. 2. Du Fresnoy methode pour etudier l'Hist. vol. 2. p. 132. Antoine de la Salle Hist. & plaifante Chronique du Petit Saintre a Paris en 40. 1571. Bibl. du Sieur de la Croix-du-Maine, p. 21. Antoine de



Ceremonies, from his Name stiled *La Sallade*, which is quoted frequently by *Mr. Selden* as an ancient Book, without any farther Indication of its Age. This may in some Measure be discovered in that this *Anthony de la Sale* came into this Kingdom to see the Solemnity of the Queen's Coronation, 23 *Hen. VI.* 1445. so that there can be no Doubt but that he composed this Book after the Institution of *Garter King of Arms*. In this Romance the Compiler confounds all Chronology, and ascribes to his Heroe the Knight Errant divers Pieces of true History.

Sir Henry *a Spelman*, with his wonted Modesty, leaves a Blank for that Year of the Reign of *Hen. V.* wherein this Office was erected, though in the Quotation about *Windsor* above-mentioned he seems to be of Opinion that there is no Remembrance of *Garter* till about 50 Years after 1368, that is, till in or after the Sixth of *Hen. V.*, wherein the Publisher presumes this most Learned Knight might be mistaken. If the Wardrobe Accounts of the several Years of this Reign remain in the Custody of the King's Remembrancer, it is probable these will settle or give Light in this Matter. Mr. *b Sandford* assigns his Institution at the Siege of *Monstreau*, which in the Margin of his Book is placed in *A. D.* 1422; but as he produces no Voucher for the first Assertion, so he is mistaken in the Time of that Siege: And it will be soon manifest, that the *c Manuscripts* are in an Error, which place his Institution, and those of *Windsor Herald*, *Rougecroix*, and *Blewman* Purservants in a Chapter of the *Garter* held at *Windsor* in the last Year of *Hen. V.*; for the Erection of *d Windsor* was long before, though possibly these two Purservants might be coeval with *Garter*, but it is evident that he and *e Rougecroix* had been created prior to this Chapter. The Editor hath not hitherto found any Record before the Reign of *Hen. VI.* which mentions *f Blewman*.

The Collector knows no other Writers that have pretended to give the certain Period of this Erection, so that an Attempt will be made to determine this Matter.

*William Bruges* was without doubt the first *Garter*, now a Record assures us he was *ff Guyenne King of Arms* on the 22d of *May 5 Hen. V.* *A. D.* 1417.

la Salle Secretaire du Duc de Calabre & de Lorraine, & de Rene Roy de Sicille; Il est auteur de Roman du petit Jean de Saintre. Il florissoit l'an 1422 & 1459. Le Long Bibl. Hist. n. 13824, saith this Book was wrote by this Author at Genepe in Brabant *A. D.* 1459.

*y Titles of Honour*, p. 413, &c.

*z Priv. Sig.* 21 Juin 23 *H. 6.* —Que a Antoine de la Saale Escuyer & Johan. de la Panetreye nagairs venantz en ceste nostre royaume du Roy de Cecile en la compagnie de nostre tresentierement bien ame. la Roigne nostre compaignie pour veoir l'estat & solemnitee de la Coronation, a Janet Godart Secretaire de nostre chier & tresame Cousin le Duc de Bretagne, & a Ermine son herault venantz divers nous avec certaines matieres de par le dit Duc & aussi pour veoir la solemnitee de la Coronation de nostre dite compaignie, Vous payez a dit Antoine Cent marcz —a dit Ermine cinq marcs.

*a Gloss. v. Herald.*

*b Geneal. Hist.* p. 285.

*c H. 3.* penes me, p. 1411. *H. 5.* penes me, p. 310b.

*d See above*, p. 316, &c.

*e 6 Hen. v.* Rymer, vol. 9. p. 620. He is frequently mentioned afterwards. Thomas Rougecroysse, alias dictus Thomas Holme de Walden in Comitatu Essex Yoman, alias dictus Thomas Rougecroysse Purservant ad Arma had a Protection, Pat. 37 *H. 6.* p. 2. m. 6.

*f It is said he was erected by Hen. v. Cerem. vol. 3.* in off. Arm. p. 16. Exit. Pell. p. 26 *H. 6.* Blewman tyll pursuant ad presens proficiscenti cum certis nunciis Episcopo Ciestrensi & aliis Ambassiatoribus Regis in Regno Francie directis.

*ff Privat. Sigill. in Turre.* Fiat Protectio cum clausula Volumus pro Willimo Brugges alias dicto Guyen Rege Armorum, qui nobiscum versus partes transmarinas, profecturus est, ibidem in obsequio nostro moraturus, per unum annum duratura. Datum sub sigillo nostro apud Westm. xxii die Maii Anno Regni nostri quinto.

N n n n

And



And hence it appears, there must be some Anachronism or Anticipation of Time in the several <sup>g</sup> MSS. which relate, that this *William Bruges Garter*, at his own House at *Kentishtown*, feasted the Emperor *Sigismund*, and attended on his Installation at *Windsor*; the Records hereafter cited will shew us that he had an House at that Place, and 'tis no ways improbable that he might entertain this Emperor there, but it must be antecedent to his Promotion to the Place of *Garter*, for the Emperor returned from hence to *Germany* before that Time.

His Advancement then to be *Garter* was subsequent to this 22d of *May* 1417, and he was created in a full Chapter of the Order, if we believe not only the <sup>b</sup> Instrument, whereby the Knights of the Order settle Provisional Pensions upon him, but his own Allegation in his Petition for a Declaration of the Rights of that his Office, which will be inserted hereafter.

Mr. *Ashmole* hath observed, that in the Instrument which recites his Promotion, the Year 1422 is placed instead of 1423, in which Year we shall find these twelve Companions thus consenting to this Provisional Maintenance for him on *St. George's Day* mentioned in the <sup>i</sup> *Black-book* to be present at that Feast at *Windsor*, and no others.

There is a Decree made by the Duke of <sup>k</sup> *Clarence*, touching Fees to be paid to Heralds for the displaying of Banners, wherein there is express Mention of *Garter* King of Arms of *Englishmen*, which bears Date at the Royal Siege before *Caen* on 3 *Sept.* that City was surrendred on the 5th, and the Castle <sup>l</sup> capitulated on the 23d of *Sept.* 1417. 5 *H. V.* If therefore this Instrument be genuine, this *Bruges* being *Guienne* on 22 *May* 5 *H. V.* must have been advanced to be *Garter* on the Festival of *St. George*, which was held after 22 *May*, and before 3 *Sept.* 1417. This King remained in *England* <sup>m</sup> till vi *Kal. sextilis*, that is 27 *July* this Year, and it hath been observed, that the Feast solemnized in this 5th Year is omitted out of the <sup>n</sup> *Black-book*, for that therein placed as held at that Time apparently belongs to the sixth Year.

<sup>g</sup> MS. penes Ducem de Montagu, p. 79b. &c.

<sup>b</sup> Ashm. Appen. n. V.

<sup>i</sup> See the *Black-book*, p. 85, 86.

<sup>k</sup> Being short it may not be amiss to insert it.

Nous Thomas de Lancastre, fitz & frere aux tresnobles Roys Dangleterre & de France, Duc de Clarence, Conte Daumarle, grant Seneschal de Angleterre, & Conestable en l'host du Roy mon Seigneur, Considerans comme d'anciennete par les tresnobles & victorieux princes des les fondacions de l'office d'armes aux Officiers serviteurs exerçans le dit Office leur furent attribuez plusieurs privileges en droit d'armes de l'abondance de chevalerie: & de fait exercez avant ces heures, tant ez nobles voyages de mon dit seigneur le Roy, comme du temps de ses nobles predecesseurs: nous sont sur ce venuz tres humblement supplier Garretier Roy d'armes des Anglois accompagnie de tous les aultres Roys d'armes & heraulx de l'obeissance du Roy mon dit Seigneur, pour les tesmoigner par noz lettres scellees, & par icelles signifier a tous estatz ses droitz, que au dit office appartiennent, pour les faitz des bannieres, & ce que lesditz officiers doibvent demander des Princes, Contes, Barons, Chavaliers Banneretz, pour leurs bannieres, & comme de perpetuelle memoire a

este accoustume: si signifions a touz ceulx, qui ces presentes verront, que lesditz Officiers d'armes doibvent de droit demander des Princes, Contes, & Banneretz, de fait exploiter: Cestassavoir, de ung Duc qui levera sa banniere doibt aux ditz Officiers d'armes & Serveiteurs pour sa banniere vingt Livres estrelings, Et ung Conte dix livres estrelings, Et pareillement le baron doibt cinq livres Estrelings, Et pareillement le Baron doibt cinq; livres Estrelings, Et le Chevalier qui met sus sa banniere doibt cinq Marcs Estrelings: Et pource que les estatz dessusditz saichent veritablement, que doibvent aux Roys d'armes & heraulx pour leur honneur exaulcer comme dessus est dit, que les ditz de l'office ne demandent tant de leur droit, que leur en appartiennent, tesmoignons a cause de ce comme dessus est faicte mencion. Et pour ce dessus plus veritablement approuver avons fait mettre nostre seal a ces presentes Donnez au Siege Royal de mon Seigneur le Roy devant la Ville de *Caen* en sa Duchie de *Normandie* le troisieme Jour de Septembre.

<sup>l</sup> Rot. Norman. 5 *H. 5.* n. 101.

<sup>m</sup> Livii Hist. Hen. V.

<sup>n</sup> See that Register 5 *H. 5.* p. 65.



This Decree doth not respect *Garter* more in Point of his own private Interest, than it doth the other Officers of Arms, and therefore there can be no Grounds of suspecting that either *Bruges*, or any of his Successors in that Office should forge it with a View to their own Advantage, besides there are several antient Copies of it in Parchment, and the Language seems of that Age, and the domestick and forreign Practice of that and succeeding Times in paying Fees for displaying Banners agrees with the Contents of that Instrument, and we know that this Duke of *Clarence* was very active at this Siege, and was constituted Captain both of the City and Castle when it was surrendred: But though the Collector hath never met with any Objection against the Authenticalness of this Decree, yet there being an Exception made against another Decree of this same Duke, touching the Regulation of the whole Office of Arms, wherein the Privileges of *Garter* are expressed, and the same Arguments (if they are of any Weight) equally affecting this other Decree about the Banners, it may not be improper to consider them.

Sir *John Borough Garter* having cited these Orders of *Thomas of Lancaster* Constable, the Provincial Kings answered, There was never any Constable of *England* so called, and that there was no Copy of these Regulations antienter than the Time of *Hen. VII.* and would thence infer, that these Orders were supposititious; to which Sir *John* replied, "That he never alledged that this Duke was more than Great Steward of *England*, and Constable of the Host; that these Orders were recorded in a Book of the then *Norroy* (with whom he disputed) which was <sup>p</sup> wrote in 1477: 14 Ed. IV, at the Request of *Waltier Bellingier Ireland*, who is there said to have then been an Officer of 55 Years standing, and therefore (as he urges) might in Probability remember the Making of these Orders, that Sir *Thomas Wriothesly*, who was an Officer of Arms above 120 Years before the Time of his writing this Reply, saith; These Orders were made by the King's Command, and that the Authority of them was antiently allowed, in so much as the Officers of Arms at their first Entrance were sworn to observe them, which was even owned by *Benoilt Clarenceux*, in the Reign of *Hen. VIII.* in several Parts of his Answer in his Contest with the then *Garter*.

It will not be denied that this *Thomas of Lancaster* Duke of *Clarence*, was at that Time <sup>q</sup> Constable of the Host, that there are several ancient Copies of this Decree, many of them fairly wrote on Velome, and that

<sup>o</sup> Walsingham, p. 445. See Titus Livius, & M. 8. penes me.

<sup>p</sup> See L. 14. in Off. Arm. p. 211 b. L'An Mil. CCCCLXXVII. & le xviii Jour du Moys de Decembre fut fait escript ces livres en la Cite de *Londres* a la Requette de honorable & Saige homme *Water Bellengier*, Natif de *Dyeppe*, Roy d'Armes d'*Irlande* de tres victorieux tres hault & tres puissant Prince le Roy *Edoart d'Angleterre* Quart de ce Nom lequel livre a este escript par *Jehan Pelbisser*, Escollier de l'universite de *Paris* & serviteur du dit Roy d'Armes d'*Irlande* qui a este Officier d'Armes par l'espace de Cinquante cinq ans & plus a content de la date dessus mise.

<sup>q</sup> See Rymer, vol. 9. p. 462, 551, 696. Inter Collect Rymeri, p. 72. factus Constabularius exer-

citus apud Conque Rot. Norm. 5 H. 5. 1 Aug. la Roque preuves de l'Hist. de Harcourt, p. 417. e chronici Becc. Abb. A. D. 1418. Thomas Dux Clarentiæ frater prædicti Regis Anglorum, & Constabularius ejus obtinuit castrum Haricuriæ. See Tiber in Bibl. Cotton B. 6. f. 41. Thomas Dux Clarentiæ Comes Albemarl, magnus Senescallus Angliæ, Capitaneus ulterioris Gardiæ, & Constabularius exercitus Dom. nostri Regis 17 Maii 7 H. 5. See Norman. 5 H. 5. m. 38 Radulfus Cromwell miles locumtenens Thomæ Ducis Clarentii Constabularii Exercitus Regis. Norman. 6 H. 5. p. 2. m. 14. Castra de Graund & Petit Goulet reddita Thomæ Duci Clarentiæ, Comiti Albemarlæ, Senescallo Angliæ, ac Constabulario Exercitus Regis 26 Febr. 1418.



at the Bottom of some latter ones there is the <sup>r</sup> Subscription of three Kings and three Heralds, dated the 23d of *May*, in 15 *H. VIII*, promising the Observance of every Article of them, and upon Examination this Decree will be found to contain little more than is strongly implied in the Institution of *Garter*, and allowed by the Constitutions made by the Officers of Arms themselves in their Chapter held at *Roan*, and in several other antient Treatises, and that these Orders too agree entirely with the concurring Practice of the Officers of Arms in Forreign Kingdoms, but this is no proper Place to examine into the Detail of these Particulars.

These Orders of the Duke of *Clarence* for the Regulation of the Office have no Date affixed to them, but this Duke, to the great Loss of this Kingdom, was slain on *Easter Eve* 9 *Hen. V.* By reason of this Omission of a Date, we know not certainly, whether these Orders were prior to the Chapter, which the Heralds thus held at *Roan*, which was on *Friday* in the Year 1420, that is, as we should now write it 1419-20, 7 *H. V.*, for in that Year the Dominical Letter for the two first Months being *G.* consequently the 5th of *January* was then upon a *Friday*. The Authority of these Constitutions at *Roan* cannot well be doubted, because these were entred likewise by this same *Walter Bellinger Ireland*, who according to his own Narrative, became an Officer of Arms two Years after the Time of holding this Chapter, and as the Title of *Ireland* was of a more ancient Date than that of *Garter*, and as it is supposed that this *Ireland* had then a Province within this Kingdom annexed to that his Office, it cannot be reasonably imagined, that either he could be imposed upon so early, or should design to impose on any other Officers, by allowing to *Garter* such superior Powers over himself, as well as over them.

The Collector hath hitherto had only the Opportunity of inspecting one Wardrobe Account under the Reign of *Hen. V.* wherein Habits are entred to be delivered to *Garter* against the <sup>s</sup> Coronation of the Queen, which was solemnized on the Third *Sunday* in <sup>t</sup> *Lent* in the Eighth Year.

It would be a Trespas on the Reader to give any Detail of the Lives of this *Bruges*, or any of his Successors, if <sup>u</sup> Sir *William Dugdale* late *Garter* had any solid Foundation for his Remark to Dr. *Smith*; for when the Doctor, like a Person of Litterature, had in Conversation with him expressed his Regret and Wonder, with some Sort of Indignation, that the Heralds, who retrieved the Remembrance of Families buried almost in Oblivion through the Injury of Time, should neglect the History of their own College, and the Lives of the Officers who flourished therein from the Original of it; Sir *William* with an Air of Seriousness answered, That

<sup>r</sup> L. 6. 1. p. 161 b. penes *Fd. Dering Baronet.*

<sup>s</sup> Comp. Rob. Rolleston 9 *Hen. 5.* penes Remem. Regis. *Garter*, *Irlande*, *Exeter*, *Notyngam*, *Leopard*, & *Richemond* Heraldis Regis cuilibet eorum iv uln. panni *Scarlet* ad consimilem vesturam suam erga distam Coronationem [Reginæ].

<sup>t</sup> Rymer, vol. 10. p. 63.

<sup>u</sup> *Camdeni vita*, p. 27. —cui cum in familiari, quod de re Antiquaria & Historica pro more habuimus, colloquio dixissem, me non potuisse satis mirari, ne dicam indignari, neminem e *Fecialibus* historiam Collegii celebriumq; virorum, qui a primis *Fundationis* temporibus illic floruerant, vitas

describendas in se suscipere velle, & sic, dum aliorum famam, multa nocte adopteram, quia novo egent Illustratore, in seram posteritatem propagando, suam immortalem reddere: quod & flagrantissimis votis millies optaverim, nec efflagitare adhuc desistam; ille sine mora acriter, ac serio quidem, respondit, se in istoc prægrandi numero duos tantum pro vere magnis habere. *Gloverum* & *Camdenum*; cujus sententiam hac molli interpretatione explicare placuit, cæteros *Feciales*, ut ut illustres, ipso cense, duobus illis præstantissimis, quos admirari solitus erat, longe inferiores esse.



there had been in his Opinion only two, *Glover* and *Camden*, who ought to be esteemed *truly Great*: The Doctor indeed thinks fit to explain and soften this hasty and harsh Judgement, and in Truth it wants it, though it should be only limited to the Time subsequent to the Charter of Incorporation, but it is more defenceless, if it should be extended back to the Institution of the Office of Arms.

This *Duumvirate* without doubt did Honour to their Professions, and if such an Address may be inoffensively used, let their Successors yearly visit their Tombs, and celebrating their Memories with all Marks of Esteem, admire and endeavour to imitate them. Let no Comparisons or Competitions be made, and let them enjoy the Merits of being the chiefest Oracles in their Faculties. However it cannot be any Abatement or Diminution to them to allow that there had been several in this Fraternity, before they were born, endowed with Talents answerable to the Dignities of their Offices, and also with extraordinary Personal Abilities.

The Officers of Arms in this Kingdom had heretofore the Character of <sup>x</sup> surpassing all Forreign Ones in the Knowledge and Practice of their Faculties; <sup>y</sup> *Hector Boethius* cannot be suspected of Partiality in this Matter, who owns that this Superiority was universally given them. Now if no more than two Officers in this Kingdom were *truly Great* from the Foundation of this Society, what Credit is to be given to the Forreign Historians, who give their Heralds, confessedly inferior to the *English* ones, the ample Characters of bringing Splendour to, and (if it may be so said) even Adorning their Professions. The higher Degrees of these Offices of Arms were then bestowed on Persons whose Genius had long bent them to this Study, and whose Education had duly qualified them for the Exercise of it, and not as meer Kindnesses, upon bare Recommendations, or any Sort of Civil Simony, and then they fully answered the Expectations of the Publick. It would be no Difficulty to nominate Officers of this Kingdom throughout almost all the various Titles, who have excelled in their Sciences, but the present Enquiry must be confined to the former *Garters*, whom we shall find transacting the most important Matters of State during the Succession of many Years, and filling their Places with that Sufficiency, as they seem to deserve the Character of being *truly Great* in their Professions. This Assertion is supported in the Case of the first *Garter* by a <sup>z</sup> Record, wherein the King attributes to him the honourable Testimony of being an *excellent Herald*, which must be esteemed an Attestation due to his Abilities and Merits, because it was given to him in his Grave, when Complements were useless. He <sup>a</sup> doubtless, and his Suc-

<sup>x</sup> Faustina E. 1. in Bibl. Cotton. *Where the officers of Armes of this noble realme of England as for this tyme have ben had in great estimation and reputed the most experte and most approved persons in Knowledge of all things appertynnyng to Nobilitie, above all other officers of strange realmes, and so have continued, &c.*

<sup>y</sup> L. 16. f. cccxlviii. treating of the Tilt between the Lord Wells and Earl of Crawford. Nam Fecialibus Anglorum, qui rei militaris prudentia reliquos omnium judicio antecellunt, &c.

<sup>z</sup> See Rymer, vol. xi. p. 263. dato pridem per egregium Heraldum Garterum Armorum Regem naturæ tributo, &c.

<sup>a</sup> We have several Memorials remaining of the two first Kings of Arms of the Golden Fleece, and in Bibl. Harley 35 C. 19. p. 40. 'tis said that Garter wrote in French the Narrative of the Jests held at the Marriage of Charles Duke of Burgundy, with the Sister of Ed. IV.



cessors, wrote Memoirs of their several Employments in the Publick Services, which being perished by the Distance of Time, we are reduced to the Necessity of collecting Fragments scattered up and down; but even those will furnish us with an Authentick Register of their frequent Embassies and Messages into Forreign Countries, one of the most principal Articles of the Duties of Heralds in former Ages: For the Notion that hath lately obtained, which circumscribes the Knowledge of Heralds to that which for some Time hath been termed Heraldry, that is, the Science of Blasoning of Coat Arms, is narrow and derogatory <sup>aa</sup> to them; that hath been indeed one, and the most easy and mechanical Branch of their Duties; but the bare System of Blazonry will no more constitute an <sup>b</sup> able Herald, than the mere knowing the Inscriptions on the Gally-pots in an Apothecary's Shop is an adequate Qualification for a Physitian. The Preambles of the present Patents to Kings of Arms intimate the Extent of their Professions in Times of War as well as of Peace, and if this was a proper Place to specify the Copiousness and Variety of the <sup>bb</sup> Branches of Heraldick Learning, it would shew the Prejudice which that narrow Heterodox Opinion hath brought on this Fraternity.

To descend then to *Bruges* this first *Garter*, His Parentage, we find in his Petition to *Hen. V.* wherein he desires such *Bouche* at Court, as was formerly enjoyed by *° Vaillant March Son Pere Lancaster & Faucon Rois d'Armes*; there being no Comma's, it may be questioned, whether *March* or *Lancaster* was his Father, the Collector supposes the latter, and that

<sup>aa</sup> *Gore* præfatio ad Catalog. Herald. Somniant quidam totum Heraldriæ corpus sub unica ipsius parte (Armorum scilicet explicatione quam Blazoniam vocant) contineri, quam adeo facilem judicant, ut vir mediocris ingenii, unius mensis spatiolo totam devorare queat, dummodo vel mediocre tempus collocet in Studiis, sed eos multum hallucinari arbitrantur, quibus est plena nobilis illius artis cognitio incoëta, &c.

<sup>b</sup> *Fuller's Holy State*, p. 132.

<sup>bb</sup> *Sir Henry Spelm.* v. Herald. Quicquid denique ad Nobilitatem spectat & rem Honorariam [Heraldorum] curæ, tanquam Sacris Custodibus & Templi Honoris Adituis demandatur.

*Jurispr. Her.* vol. 2. p. 81. Nobilitatis Politicæ Alumni, Æquitatis Arbitri, Veritatis vindices, Legati Principum, rerumque egregie gestarum Scriptores.

*Lalanus* de congressu *Freder. III.* & *Car. Burgundiae*. Vulgus Gallorum Heraldos vocat, genus hominum Galliae Germanique & reliquis ad occidentem nationibus usitatum, Italis non perinde cognitum: Genus, Nobilitatem, decus Principum, insigniaque per gentes familiarum nosse ipsorum muneris habetur. Quibus majoribus nobilissima quæque domus propagata, quid in quoque honeste, egregie fœde, turpiter factum patratumque ipsi præcipue vel norunt vel novisse creduntur. Tuti ac velut sacrosancti, in pace honorati, in bellis quoque quamvis sævis intacti. Libertas & licentia scelerata facta Principum reprehendendi: Minor nunc quidem olim maxima. Ausi adire mensas Regum, & resupinatum (summæ id ignominie loco habebatur) panem apponere, & linteum quo mensa insternitur medium perfcindere, &c. See *Freher Script. German.* t. 2. p. 156. *Hoping.* de Jure insign. 446, 447. *Becan. Francic.* l. 4. p. 93. Heraldum si juxta veram vocis originem interpreteris, eum significat

Senatorem, qui publice ab omnibus in magna est veneratione habendus. Atqui quis talis revera, nisi is qui cana rerum omnium cognitione tum privatarum tum publicarum cæteris antestare scitur? — De vetustis Francorum Monumentis scimus, in tanto quondam Heraldos honore fuisse, ut Regum mensis accumberent, controversiarum inter summos Principes ortarum Arbitri essent, soli denique honorum & dedecorum pro rebus vel bene vel male gestis justè haberentur diribitores. Manet hætenus nomen ipsum quidem, sed quam digni eo sint, quamque bene munere suo fungi possint, qui Heraldici nuncupantur, malo de re ipsa quam de meo judicio cognosci: Quemadmodum Regum Majestas apud Romanos ad quasdam exigui momenti ceremonias tota fuit dejecta, ita hac ætate tota Heraldorum dignitas ex altissimo suo fastigio ad sua cuique insignium discrimina in armis gerendorum præscribenda descendit, &c.

*The Preamble of the Patent to Ulster, in 6 E. 6. recites*, Quod cum inter reliquos, qui ad nostræ Regiæ Majestatis splendorem ornatumque spectant, officarios, non infimum ab antiquo inter primæ Classis viros vendicant sibi locum Heraldici, qui a veteribus vocari Heroes soliti sunt, quorum scilicet est Regum lateribus pro eorum magnificentia & gloria assistere, Reipublicæ consulere, virtutes egregiaque Principum facinora, & amplissimos triumphos celebrare, fortia virorum facta extollere, vitia reprehendere, & armorum curam suscipere, denique domi & militiæ bonis omnibus usui esse. Nos muneri huic tam amplo, officioque splendido virum aliquem industrium præficere cupientes, &c. *Rymer, vol. 15. p. 305.*

*It would be endless to transcribe what Authors have wrote on this Subject.*

*c In his Petition hereafter inserted.*



he was Son of *Richard del Brug Lancaster* King of Arms, who is often in Records called <sup>d</sup> *Brugge*; and sometimes <sup>e</sup> *Brugges*, for tho' no mention is made of this *William the Garter* in the Will of this *Del f Brugge Lancaster*, yet by this his Allegation, it may well be supposed, he was his lawful Son (and not his Disciple or Pupil only, as <sup>g</sup> *Olivier de la Marche* styles *St. George Chastellain the Second Toison King of Arms Mon Pere en Doctrine*) for no Argument to the contrary can be drawn from the Silence in the Will of his Father, who, 'tis probable, might be a Citizen of *London* (because the same was proved not only before the Archbishop, but also before the Bishop of <sup>h</sup> *London*;) and then a certain Part was by Custom due to this his Son, for which Reason Children of Citizens are frequently omitted in such Wills; but the Legacy of <sup>i</sup> *Katherine Lancaster* [<sup>k</sup> Widow doubtless of this *Del Brug*] to *Katherine* Daughter of *William Garter* seems to confirm this Descent. No Memorial hath yet come to the Collector's Knowledge, that he was a Pursevant, tho' 'tis probable, from his Father's Employment, he might be bred up in the Office of Arms, and promoted gradually according to the Custom of that Age, and might be taken into the Service of the Crown, while his Father was an Officer to the Duke of *Lancaster*. 'Tis certain when *Richard II.* in his 21<sup>st</sup> Year, raised the Earldom of *Chester* into a <sup>l</sup> Principality by Act of Parliament, he by Patent, dated 7 *June*, under the New Seal of that Principality, created this <sup>m</sup> *Bruges* to be *Chester* Herald, and when by the Repeal of the Laws of that Parliament by <sup>n</sup> *Hen. IV.* *Chester* returned again to its pristine State, this Person however continued (as 'tis supposed) an Herald to *Hen. V.* while <sup>o</sup> Prince of *Wales*, to whom that Palatinate belonged, who afterwards promoted him to the Place of *Garter*. And he was doubtless that *Chester* who after his Return from *France* was sent by *Hen. IV.* from *Doncaster* <sup>p</sup> to the Lord Chancellor about safe Conducts, and who,

in

<sup>d</sup> Many Records mention him, which are too long to be inserted here, some are printed: See Rymer, vol. 8. p. 281, &c.

<sup>e</sup> A Privy-Seal in the Tower, dated 13 May 1 H. 4.

<sup>f</sup> Registr. Chichele, p. 331.

<sup>g</sup> Hist. p. iii.

<sup>h</sup> In libro testam. ab anno 1438 ad 1438. p. xxv b.

<sup>i</sup> In Curia Prerog. Luffenam, p. 184. Ego Katherine Lancaster — Corpus meum sepeliendum coram summo altari sub lapide viri mei Richardi Lancaster in Ecclesia Sancti Bartholomæi. — Ut habeat Katherine filia Willimi Garter unam Crateram deauratam. Proved 15 Febr. 1436.

<sup>k</sup> This Richard, in his Will, having ordered himself to be buried in *St. Bartholomews* in *West-Smithfield*, mentions *Katherine* his Wife, and the same Places and Persons are named in both these Wills; hence it may be guessed that the Titles of the Officers of Arms became so far their Surnames, that they belonged to their Relicks, of which more will be said in the Life of *Sir Christopher Barker Garter*.

<sup>l</sup> Stat. 21 R. 2. c. 9.

<sup>m</sup> MS. in Curia Wardorum. Abstractus Comitatus Comitatus Palatini *Cestrie* a perquisitione ejusdem per *Hugonem Lupum*. — Et inde Comitatus *Cestriensis* predictus tempore Regis *Richard* II. in

Parlamento apud Westm. regni sui xxi<sup>o</sup> tento initium Principalitatis suæ accepit. Quo quidem tempore idem Rex *Richardus* ejusdem provincie heraldum *Gulielmum Bruges* creavit, eiq; *Chesteri* nomen induit, Et hoc per literas suas patentes sub sigillo Principalitatis suæ predictæ dat. *Cestrie* 7<sup>o</sup> Junii anno regni sui xxi<sup>o</sup>. Christi vero 1397, a Conquestu 237. See Vincent on Brook, p. 107. Wever's Fun. Mon. p. 674. Vinc. MS. in Off. Arm. n. 218. p. 94. n Stat. 1 H. 4. c. 3.

<sup>o</sup> Cerem. vol. 3. in Off. Arm. p. xi. Several Writers inform us, that *Chester* was the Title of the Prince's Herald. Mills de Nob. Pol. & Civ. p. 166. Spelman Gloss. voce herald MS. Ant. a Wood in Mus. Ashm. n. 33. p. 22. W. C. in Off. Arm. p. 15. Wever's Fun. Mon. p. 683. the respective Times are not specified, but a Signet as late as 7 Dec. 11 H. 7. recites, "That whereas our trusty and beloved *Chestre* herald unto our derest son the Prince must needs hastily goo and yene his attendance this Christmas next comyng upon our said Son, and he hath shewed unto us, that he is behind unpaid of such fee as he hath of our grante by our letters patents by the space of half a yere, &c. that ye pay the same, &c."

<sup>p</sup> De par le Roy — Tres reverent Pere en Dieu & nostre Treschier & trefame Cousin, Nous vous saluons



in the 9th of that King, carried into <sup>9</sup> *Aquitaine* the Prorogation of the Truce between that Prince and the *French*, and in the next Year was sent into *France*, being then described by his Christian Name, and Title <sup>r</sup> *William Chester Herald*.

He was afterwards certainly <sup>s</sup> *Guyenne* King of Arms, as is above-mention'd, and probably might be promoted thereto before the Coronation of *Hen. V*, when this Officer received <sup>r</sup> Robes, and in his third Year attended upon that King in his Expedition into *France*, whence he was instituted *Garter*, and it may be presumed was mostly in foreign Parts during the Remainder of the Reign of this King, because the Collector hath not met with any Entries about him during that Time, save these above-mentioned, and in a MS. that he was <sup>"</sup> employed by that King in divers honourable Messages, and that he also attended on the Coronation of Queen *Katherine*, and at that King's solemn Funeral, to whom he had been of the Secret Council, if some <sup>x</sup> MSS. may be credited herein, which may probably mean a Member of the Council of War, as *Toison d'Or* was of Course in <sup>r</sup> *Burgundy*.

After his Advancement to this new erected Post of *Garter*, he petitioned *Henry V* to have it confirmed to him by Letter's Patent, together with a Declaration of the Rights and Duties thereof, in Analogy to those of *Montjoy* in *France*; but tho' it doth not appear, that any Patent passed

saluons souvent, & savoir vous faisons, que y ce present jour nous avons receues unes lettres, a nous envoiees hors du parties de *France* par nostre trefchier & foial Chevalier *Thomas de Erpyngham*, & les autres nos Messages, nagairs par nous y envoieez, faisantes mention en partie de la Maniere de leur gouvernance celles parties, sicomme par le Copie de mesmes les lettres, quelle nous vous envoions close dedeins cestes, Il vous pourra plus pleinement apparoir, & entendu a vous avecques ore par rapport de *Chestre* le herault porteur des dictes Lettres, que le Duc de *Berry*, & les autres Seigneurs de par de la ont fait a noz ditz Messages par Continuance de Jour en autre, aussi grandz honneur chere & desport, come onques avoient Messages de leurs Estat en mesmes les parties cy devant, si que par tant on suppose que bonne Conclusion se prendra de leur dit Message au plaisir de Dieu. Tres reverent Pere en Dieu, nous vous envoions avecques ces presentes la forme d'un saufconduet a nous envoie par noz ditz Messages, en la forme que les Ambassatours de la Partie de *France*, qui sont ordonnez avenir pardeca par les Causes specifiees en les dictes Lettres le desirent: si volons & Vous mandons, que Vous facez faire soubz nostre Grand Seal quatre saufconduetz, soubz mesme la forme, par ainsi que chascun des dit Ambassatours puisse avoir un devers lui, sicome nos ditz Messages devers chacun de eulx, & yceulx Saufconduits ainsi faitz, facez dilivrer au dit *Herault* pour les hastivement porter a nostre Ville de *Calais*: Et regardez trefcher Cousin, que le Nom de nostre adversaire de *France* ne soit escript soubz la forme recitee en la Copie du dit saufconduet, mais en maniere accoustume, & selon ce que vostre trefage Discretion le sciet considerer. Tres reverent Pere en Dieu & nostre trefchier & trefame Cousin, nostre Seigneur vous ait en sa garde. Donne soubz nostre signet a *Danastre* le xxvii Jour de Septembre—A trefreverent Pere en Dieu nostre trefchier Cousin l'archevesque de *Canterbirs* nostre Chancellor. Ex Originali in Turre.

*Sir Thomas Erpingham, as appears by the Register of the Garter, died before 7 H. 6. now no Archbishop of Canterbury was Chancellor after the Demise of H. 4. the Death of Erpingham, and we are assured that Hen. 4. went into the North in his 8th Year, Walsingham's Hist. p. 419. and was at Nottingham 30 Sep. Rymer, Vol. 8. p. 500.*

<sup>q</sup> Ex Pell. f. q. H. 4. *Chestre Herald* misso de Ordinatione & mandato Regis versus partes Ducatus Aquitaniae cum certis Literis factis super prorogatione treugarum inter Dominum Regem & illos de Francia usque ultimum diem Septembris proximum futurum in partibus illis ex parte dicti Domini Regis proclamandarum xx Marc.

<sup>r</sup> Ex Pell. m. x. H. 4. *Willimo Chestre Herald* Domini Principis misso versus partes Francia in Nuncio Ipsius Domini Regis cum Certis brevibus sub privato Sigillo certis Dominis ac aliis diversis personis Adversarii sui Regis Francia 6l. 13s. 4d. <sup>f</sup> See above, Page 321. Note ff.

<sup>t</sup> Liberaturae Dom. nostri Regis *Henrici Quinti* factae diversis Dominis, Dominabus, Militibus, Clericis, Scutiferis, Valettis, & aliis diversis personis contra Coronationem suam Anno Regni sui primo, de mandato suo, &c. *Guien Regi* Armorum, *Lancastre Heraude*, *Lycestre Heraude*, *Derby Heraude*, *Hierford Heraude*, *Notynham Heraude*, *Cornewell Heraude*, *Liberd Heraude*, cuilibet eorum vi uln. pann. rub. long.

<sup>u</sup> MS. penes *Nich. Jekyl* de *Castle Hedingham* p. 104 b.

<sup>x</sup> B. 3. penes me, p. 41. in membran. Memorand. que le Roy *Henry* cinquieme donnoit a *Sire William Bruges*, qui en son temps estoit Jarretiere, quant il l'envoyoit en ambassade hors du royaume vingt solz par jour pour mieulx maintenir son estat. Et aussi luy donnoit huyt solz pour ses gaiges de guerre: Et si estoit icelluy Jarretiere de son secret conseil, &c.

<sup>y</sup> *Olivier* de le Marche l'Estat de la Maison du Duc *Charles* 1474.

thereon,



thereon, which might be occasioned by the untimely Death of that Prince, therefore the Knights of the Order made a <sup>z</sup> Provisional Settlement for his Subsistence, 'till such Time as *Henry* the Sixth should come of Age, yet this Petition is here <sup>a</sup> inserted at large, because it contains many memorable Particulars of the Practice in that Age relating to the Office of Arms.

During

<sup>z</sup> Ashm. App. n. 2.

<sup>a</sup> Plaise a vostre treshaute Excellence, Souverain Seigneur, Considérez, que il vous a plu de vostre Majeste Roial en vostre treschevaleureux Chappitre de Saint George a *Windsore* creer ung Roy d'Armes des Anglois de vostre noble Royaulme, en luy donnant de vostre tres benigne grace l'onnourable Nom d'excellent Ordre de la *Farretiere*, & a Icelluy mesme Jour de la Creacion, quand il vous plaist luy donner la Gouvernment & Correxion dedens l'office d'armes, & de vostre obeissance, comme premier, & Chef en dict office d'Armes vostre ordonnance & fondacion d'icelles Roialte d'Armes a vostre magnificence, supplie le plus tres humblement vostre tres humble Subyeft & serviteur *Farretier*, que pour vous tres excellent Roy, voz Nobles Heirs & Successeurs vous plaise Confirmer & ratifier par vos gracieuses lettres Patentes tant a vostre Roy d'Armes des Anglois, qui pour le present est, comme a Iceulx que par voz Nobles Ordonnances, & par voz Nobles heirs & Successeurs succederont en dit Office de *Farriere* Roialte d'Armes autre le ----- gouvernement & Correxion du dict Office en Icelluy Office. Et par ce, Souverain Seigneur, Reposera & demourra vostre noble fondacion d'icelle Roialte d'Armes en perpetuel Memoire. Et aussi plaist a vostre tresgracieuse Seigneurie, tres excellent & Souverain Seigneur, avecques la dessusdict Roialte d'Armes attribuer a *Farrier* Roy d'Armes des Anglois Vosdicts gracieuses Lettres Patentes ainsi dict a vostre Roy d'Armes des Anglois les libertez & preveilleiges, selon les Articles, qui ensuivent, ou partie d'icelles comme plaira a vostre tres haute Majeste, qu'il en use & exerce, dedens & par l'Office dessusdict.

(1.) Premièrement plaist Vous de vostre benigne & thabondant grace, octroier & approprier a Vostre dict Serviteur & Roy d'Armes des Anglois dedans vostre Chastel de *Windsore* mansion propre pour y demourer, ou luy retraire, quant mestier luy sera, ayant consideration, tres excellent Prince, qu'il porte le moult Noble Nom du tres excellent Ordre de la *Farretiere*, & luy par Vous tres redoubte Sire & pour Icelluy tres noble Ordre fondees.

(2.) Item plaist a vostre haultesse, tresredoubte Sire, de Vostre Grace octroier audit Roy d'Armes des Anglois dedens vostre noble Court sa livree de pain, vin, Cervoise, Chandelle, feuill pour le temps qu'il y soit, & comme eurent avant ces heurs *Vaillant Marche* son Pere *Lancastre & Faucon* Rois d'Armes, pour le temps qu'ils excerssoient es hostels de leurs Princes & Maistres: Combien qu'ilz ne fussent exaulce en l'Office selon leur Merite, comme il vous a plu de vostre grace exaulcer vostre Serviteur sans son deserte.

(3.) Item depuis qu'il vous a plu, Souverain Seigneur, de vostre Grace donner au Roy d'Armes des Anglois Gouvernment & Correxion dedans l'Office d'Armes, & pour Iceulx de l'Office & de vostre obeissance Reformer & Corriger, quant le Cas le Requiert, en ce qui peult toucher ou gouvernement dedens l'office, Plaise a vostre Majeste Royal octroier & Expresser en vosdictes lettres de Confirmation, que generalmente tous de l'office d'armes, tant Heralx Rois d'armes, heraulx, que

Pursuivans de vostre Obeissance, que apres qu'ilz seront Creez, faiz & exaulce en l'office d'armes, que ung Chacun d'eulx soit tenu de luy Representer devant le Roy d'armes des Anglois, & en parolle de luy Reconnoistre, & tenir par tout pour leur premier & Souverain Roy d'armes, en luy promettant de bien, & loiaument obeir, garder, & observer ses ordonnances, & Correxion, quant au gouvernement dedens l'office d'armes.

(4.) Item plaist a vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, que toutes & quantefois que Aucuns Princes, Ducz, Marquis, ou Contes soient Nouvellement faiz par Vous, vos Nobles heirs & Successeurs, & attribuez a qui que soit Roy d'armes des Anglois, mais qu'il y soit present ou absent, leur premier habitz, & en quoy Ilz recevront leur premiers dignitez, & Estaz, & ainsi est, tresredoubte Roy, attribue en *France* a *Monjoie* Roy d'armes des *Francois*.

(5.) Item plaist a Vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, & de Vostre Grace attribuer au Roy d'armes des Anglois ensemble avecques toute l'office d'armes lesdicts de l'office, vestuz des tunicles & Cottes d'armes des Princes, Seigneurs, & de la Chevalerie, puissent aller en Vostre Noble presence, devant au plus pres de l'espee, & comme ill a este de memoire accoustume pour l'onheur & Noblesse des Cottes d'armes.

(6.) Item plaist a Vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, & de Vostre Grace attribuer au Roy d'armes des Anglois, que son *Mareschal* d'armes des Anglois peult pour luy, & pour toute l'office demander, & avoir en vostre noble Court, en vostre Salle, tant aux festes Solempnelles, que aux autres Jours, table a part pour l'office d'armes, comme de memoire a este accoustume en Vostre Noble Roialme, & encore est es autres Roiaumes.

(7.) Item de vostre benigne Grace, que Vostre Roy d'Armes des Anglois en vostre Salle en sa table puisse estre servy de ses trenchemens & de son Sel, avec le seurplus du service a ce appartenant, & comme de Memoire Jusques a Noble temps ont este les Roys d'armes de *Vaillant, Marche, Lancastre & Faucon*, pource qu'ilz estoient premieres & Chiefz de l'office en Icelluy temps, & en vostre Noble Roiaume.

(8.) Item plaist a vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, octroier & attribuer de vostre Grace au Roy d'armes des Anglois, que en vostre Court, & en vostre salle, les Pursuivans d'armes puissent avoir leur assiete au commencement de table de voz varles, & comme il fut de temps de Grant Memoire.

(9.) Item plaist a vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, & de vostre Grace, octroier & attribuer au Roy d'armes des Anglois, qu'il puisse a chacun feste de Cry d'armes tenir en vostre Noble Court, Requérir & demander, ou son *Mareschal* d'armes des Anglois pour luy, de mon honnour Seigneur vostre grant maistre d'ostel, ou de mes Seigneurs vostre Tresorier, ou Controleur, eschauf fault sur les Rancs, ou les Joustes se feront, afinque lesdicts de l'office puissent mieulx exercer le service de leur office pour le temps de la Joust.

(10.) Item plaist a vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, & de vostre Grace attribuer & confirmer au Roy d'armes des Anglois, preueilleige, que au Jours solempnelz, quant vous tiendrez Estate en

P p p p

vog



During the Reign of *Hen. VI*, this Officer is mentioned frequently in the Issues of the *Pelles*, as receiving Rewards for executing his Function in Forreign Embassies, Messages and Employments; some of these Payments are for Services past, so that the exact Time when they were performed is not discoverable. The Collector must own his Obligations for the Liberty of taking Extracts from these valuable Rolls, to the great Civility of his worthy Friend Mr. *Sadler*, in whose Custody they remain.

Our *Garter* then, in *1 H. VI*, was sent to <sup>b</sup> *Rome* with the Bishop of

voz Regalibus, que ledict Roy d'armes puisse porter Couronne sur teste, & colier au Col armoye de blasons de la trefnoble Compaigne de la *Jarretier*, le creste ou tunicle d'armes Vestuz sur le doz, & en sa main une blanche Verge & longue, sur le bout de la Verge une petite baniere, ou penonceau, Jcelle verge en signiffiance que vous luy avez commis de Vostre Grace la Souveraniete & Gouvernement dedens l'office d'armes, & de vostre obeissance, quant au Gouvernement dedans icelle.

(11.) Item aux autres Roys d'armes de vostre Obeissance vous plaife, Souverain Seigneur, pareillement atribuer ausdicts jours solempnelz, eulx de porter Couronnes sur testes, armoires des Blasons, Et comme Il a este acoustume du temps de grant memoire, mais de vostre Grace tous ditz reserver la Verge comme dessus a celluy, qui est ou fera Roy d'armes des Anglois, en la signiffiance & Memoire, comme dessus de Souverainite en l'office d'armes.

(12.) Item plaife a vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, & de vostre Grace octroier & atribuer au Roy d'armes des Anglois, que singulierement a l'office d'armes sont appropriez d'en donner de la louenge, par quoy de largesse a la Chevalerie a toutes les foiz, que l'observance de leur office le Requiert, & que aux Menestrielz soit Restrained lesdicts Crys, ueu qu'ilz ne donnent nulle observance a la Chevalerie, sinon de leur franche Volonte.

(13.) Item plaife a vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, que nul ne soit Receu en l'office d'armes, soubz vostre obeissance, sinon personne honneste, & de bonnes meurs, & Conversation Vertueuse.

(14.) Item plaife a Vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, octroier de vostre Grace au Roy d'armes des Anglois, que dorenavant autre que homme lige ne soit Receu en l'office d'armes, pour servir a la Chevalerie de vostre Roialme, aiant Regard a Nature.

(15.) Item plaife a vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, octroier de vostre Grace, que personne d'icy enavant, qui aura une foiz a l'office d'armes Renonce & relinque, ne soit derechief Receu dedens ledict office.

(16.) Item plaife a vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, octroier de vostre Grace, que nulle Maniere de personne diffamee, ne soit Receu en dict office d'armes soubz vostre obeissance.

(17.) Item plaife a vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, octroier au Roy d'armes des Anglois, que des Poursuivans soubz vostre obeissance, nul ne soit Receu a estre fair & cree herault, sans vostre Noble Conge & licence, & que le Roy d'armes des Anglois, si l'y soit present, avec les autres de l'office d'armes soient appelez pour donner l'information de l'abilite. Et s'il est digne d'estre Receu, Car souvent frequenter & conuerfer donne parfaite Congnoissance.

(18.) Item plaife a vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, de vostre Grace octroier au Roy d'armes des

Anglois, que nul Roy D'armes, Herault, Poursuivant ne soit receu en l'office des Armes, sans faire le serment solempnel, comme y appartient & comme a este - - - de grant Memoire.

(19.) Item plaife a vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, octroier de vostre Grace au Roy d'armes des Anglois la franche eslection de son *Mareschal* d'armes des Anglois, & sur ce luy doit faire Representation a vostre Excellence de la personne, qu'il aura esleu Et vous de vostre benigne Grace - - - *Mareschal* de donner la Verge.

(20.) Item plaife a vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, & de vostre tres benigne Grace octroier & atribuer de Reigle a l'office d'armes, vostre tres noble & tres abundant largesse aux iiii festes solempnelles, comme Pasques, Penthecouste, la Toussains, & Noel, & pareillement, s'il vous plaift, la Noble feste de Saint George & soubz ceste Droicte Reigle de Franchise sont gardees les dessusdictes iiii festes solempnelles en la Court de France, audict office d'armes en quelque Estat ou Disposicion que le Roy soit & a este fait de grant memoire.

(21.) Item plaife a vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, & de vostre Grace, que en vos lettres Patentees de Ratiffement, & Confirmation telles, comme il plaira a vostre Majeste Roial commander pour vostre tres humble serviteur *Jarretier* Roy d'armes des Anglois, que toutes les Articles dessus Recitees puissent en vosdictes gracieuses Lettres patentees estre expressees, affin que par aucunes d'icelles Articles, lesdicts de l'office puissent avoir plus vray entendement du plaisir, & Vouloir de vostre tres-haute & tres excellente seigneurie, Et quant au fait du gouvernement de l'office.

(22.) Item plaife a vostre haultesse, Souverain Seigneur, de vostre Grace in vosdicts Lettres Patentees expressement commander, audict Roy d'armes des Anglois, que tous Iceulx excersans endict office D'armes et de vostre Obeissance, qui ne voudroit obeir ne observer aux ordonnances & Correxions par vostre Roy d'armes des Anglois dedens ledict office, que luy a toutes les foiz, que necessite le Requiert, Il en face la Reputacion d'icelluy, ou ceulx, au treshault & trespuissant Prince, vostre Conneftable.

*Taken from an ancient Copy J. 9. penes me, p. 144. there is a Transcript in Cerem. Vol. 3. in Offic. Arm.*

<sup>b</sup> Privat. Sigill. in Turre. Fiat protectio cum Claufula volumus pro *Willmo Brugges* alias dicto *Gartier* Rege Armorum, qui in Obsequium nostrum in Comitiva Carissimi Confanguinei nostri Episcopi *Wintoniensis* ad Curiam Romanam profecturus est, ibidem in eodem obsequio moraturus, per unum annum duratura. Dat. sub privato Sigillo nostro apud Westmonast. xxvi die Febr. Anno Regni nostri primo.

See Rot. Franciæ *1 H. 6. m. 17.* apud *Rymer*, vol. x. p. 268.

*Winchester*



Winchester, and in 2 H. VI, he carried <sup>c</sup> Messages to the Dukes of Bedford, Bretagne and Burgundy.

3 H. VI, he was sent by the Advice of the King's Council to the <sup>d</sup> Duke of Gloucester then in his Dominion of Hainault, and had been with the Duke of <sup>e</sup> Burgundy in Flanders, and with the Dukes of <sup>f</sup> Bedford and Bretagne.

4 H. VI, he is mentioned as having attended on the <sup>g</sup> Duke of Bedford in France, and in that Year, by Order of the Privy-Council, received the <sup>h</sup> Ambassadors of the Duke of Burgundy, introduced them into the King's Presence, and waited on them during their Itay here, and in 5 H. VI he was sent to the <sup>i</sup> King of Scots for expediting certain Affairs.

In 6 H. VI, he received 20 l. for his Attendance on the King's Embassadors into <sup>k</sup> Flanders and Holland, and on other Ambassadors into France and Flanders, and for his Return to the Duke of Bedford in France,

as

<sup>c</sup> Exit. Pell. P. 2. H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum in denariis sibi liberatis per manus proprias, in persolutionem xx l. quas Dominus Rex. nunc de avifamento & assensu Consilii sui eidem Garter liberare mandavit, habendis de Rege pro Custubus & Expensis per ipsum faciendis eundo in Nuncio Regis versus Duces Bedfordie, Britannie, & Burgundie per breve de privato Sigillo xl.

<sup>d</sup> Exit. Pell. M. 3 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum misso de avifamento & assensu Consilii Regis de Regno Anglie versus Ducem Gloucestrie existentem in Dominio suo Hannonia, pro certis Causis & Materiis spetialibus eidem Duci ex parte dicti Consilii declarando pro custubus & expensis 13 l. 6 s. 8 d.

<sup>e</sup> Exit. Pell. 3 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum nuper misso de avifamento & Assensu magni Consilii sui de London versus Ducem Burgundie in Flandria, cum quadam litera Domini Regis eidem Duci directa, pro certis secretis & specialibus materiis in eadem contentis dictum Consilium ad hoc Moventibus.

<sup>f</sup> Ex. Pell. P. 3. H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum, qui per mandatum ipsius Domini Regis, de Assensu Consilii sui, nuper erat cum Johanne Duce Bedfordie Regente Regni Francie, ac cum Duce Britannie, pro certis arduis materiis dictum Dominum Regem & consilium suum moventibus 20 Marcas.

<sup>g</sup> Ex. Pell. m. 4 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum misso de avifamento & assensu Consilii Regis de London versus Ducem Bedfordie in Regno Francia existentem, pro certis Causis arduis & Materiis specialibus eidem duci ex parte dicti Consilii declarandis Cs.

<sup>h</sup> Henri, &c. as Tresorier, &c. Pource que nostre Amie Serviteur Garter Roy d'armes par l'ordonaunce de notre Conseil douziesme jour de May darrein passez, feust comandez de soy transporter vers les portz de Dovorr ou de Sandayz, pour y recevoir les Ambassadeurs de nostre treschier uncle le Duc de Bourgoyne, & les conduire a nostre presence, & pour attendre ovesques eulx durant le temps de leur demeure en nostre Royaume d'Engleterre, a quel commandement il ad obeiez, demorez, & continuellement attenduz ovesques mesmes les Ambassadeurs, jusques a le vynt & cynkiesme jour de ceste present moys de Juyl, deinz quel temps il ad despenduz pur ses coustages sept livres & sept foulds a ce quil dit: Volons de l'avis & assent de nostre Conseil, & vous mandons, q'en regard de les despenes & coustages soufditz, facez payer au dit Garter la somme de sept lives & oyt fouldz,

a avoir pour voie de regard: Donnez souz nostre prive Seal a Westminster le xxvii jour de Juill lan de nostre regne quatriesme.

Ex. Pell. P. 4. H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum ordinato & Assignato — per consensum Regis 12<sup>o</sup> Maii ultimo preterito ad proficiscendum versus portus Dover & Sandewic, ad ibi recipiendum Ambassiatore Ducis Burgundie, & eos conducendum ad presentiam dicti Regis, & attendendum cum Ambassiatoribus durante mora sua infra Regnum Anglie 7 l. 8 l.

<sup>i</sup> Cleopatra F. 4. Bibl. Cotton. 13 Martii An. 5 (H. 6.) apud Cantuariam Concordatum fuit quod fiat Warrantum Thesaurario & Camerariis de Solvendo Gartero Regi Armorum, qui in negotiis Regis penes Regem Scottorum profecturus est xl.

In Off. Pell. Henri, &c. A bon Amie Garter Roy des Armes liquel nous envoions presentment pour certaines nos besoignes affaires vers nostre trescher Cousin le Roy d'Escoce, &c. dys livres 13 Mars 5 H. 6. Ex Pell. m. 5 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum misso versus Regem Scottorum pro certis negotiis Domini nostri Regis Expediend. xl.

<sup>k</sup> Henri, &c. as Tresorier, &c. comme nous considerantz, coment nostre cher & bien ame Garter Roy d'armes ad este en nostre service per commandement de nostre trescher & tresame Uncle le Duc de Bedford naidgairs Protectour & defensor de nostre Roiaume d'Engleterre oue nos chers & foialx William Oldeball, Richard Wydevill, & mestre Johan. Estcourt nadgairs nos Ambassiatours pour nous envoiez en Fiandres & Holland, & coment il aussi par comandement de nostre tres cher & tresame Uncle le Duc de Gloucestre protectour & defensor de nostre Roiaume d'Engleterre ad este semblablement en nostre service avec li reverend pere en Dieu Levesque de Norwic, & nostre trescher & foial le Sire de Tiptoft Seneschal de nostre houstiel nadgairs noz Ambassiatours pour nous envoiez en nostre Roiaume de France & Flanders, saunz gages ou regard pur les service dessusditz, avons par celles causes de l'avis & assent de nostre conseil, & en recompensation de ce que le dit Garter soy transporter a comandement de nous & de nostre Conseil en nostre message vers nostre dit Uncle de Bedford, grauntez a mesme Cellui Garter vynt livres de nostre Tresor, &c. donne souz nostre prive Seal 25 Nov. 6 [H. 6.]

Exit. Pell. m. 6 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum, qui nuper erat in servitio Regis per mandatum Ducis Bedfordie nuper Protectoris & Defensoris Regni Anglie in comitiva Willimi Oldeballe chevalier



as the King's Messenger, and was sent by the Council to the <sup>1</sup> Cardinal of St. Eusebius, (that is to Henry Beaufort Bishop of Winchester) into France, and was ordered by the King with the Assent of the Council, to go to <sup>m</sup> Calice for dispatch of divers necessary Affairs, and afterward to <sup>n</sup> Fo-way for discharging a Ship taken from our Allies.

In 7 H. VI, he had for his good Services performed to the King's Father, and to himself, an <sup>o</sup> Annuity of 20 l. yearly out of the Fee-Farm of the City of Winchester, during Pleasure, and 16 Nov. was going into <sup>p</sup> Normandy to the Duke of Warwick Lieutenant General of France, and of that Dutchy, and on the 20th Nov. <sup>q</sup> Credence by the King was given him, to be declared unto his Uncle the Duke of Bedford, for which he <sup>r</sup> was paid 13 l. 8 s. 8 d. and afterwards a <sup>s</sup> farther Summ; and in 16 July following, had large <sup>t</sup> Instructions given him by the King and his Council then at Paris, to deliver to his Council in England, and for that Service he was <sup>u</sup> rewarded, and in Easter Term following was going again a

valier Rich. Wydevill & magistri Johan. Escourt nuper Ambaffiatorum dicti Regis & per ipsum Regem missio in Flandria & Holandia, & etiam missio alia vice de mandato Ducis Gloucestrie Protectoris & defensoris dicti Regni Anglie in servitio ipsius Domini Regis in comitiva Reverendi in Christo patris Episcopi Norwiche, Domini de Tiptoft nuper Ambaffiatorum dicti Regis in Regnum suum Francie, & in Flandria, absque vadiis & regardis pro servitiis supradictis xx l. pro Custubus per ipsum factis & faciendis in transmeando de mandato Regis & Consilii sui in Nuncio ipsius Domini Regis versus Ducem Bedfordie in Francia.

<sup>l</sup> Cleopatra F. 4. Bibl. Cott. ultimo Apr. Ann. (6 H. 6.) Concordatum fuit, quod fiat Warrantum de solvendo Gartero Regi Armorum, qui missus est cum literis Regiis Domino Cardinali titulo Sancti Eusebii, in Francia de Mandato Dominorum de Concilio decem Marcas.

<sup>m</sup> In Officio Pellium 6 H. 6. Henri, &c. as Tresorier, &c. Comme nous le 26 d'Avril darrein passez de l'avis & Assent de nostre Conseil ----- a nostre bon Ame Garter Roy des Armes, pur passer en nostre Message a Caley pur le bon de nous & de nostre Roiaume ----- dys ----- There are likewise his Petition, and the Signet for this Summ, Signed by the Lords of the Council.

Exit. Pell. P. 6 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum ordinato & Assignato per Dominum Regem de Assensu Consilii sui ad proficiscendum versus Cales, pro diversis Materiis necessariis ibidem ex parte ejusdem Domini Regis & Consilii sui predicti ibidem Expediendis 6 l. 13 s. 4 d.

<sup>n</sup> Exit. Pell.

<sup>o</sup> Privat. Sigill. in Turre.

Henri par la Grace de Dieu Roy d'Engleterre, & de France, & Seigneur d'Irlande, a l'onorable Pere en Dieu l'archevesque d'Everwyke Primat d'Engleterre nostre Chaunceller salut. Come nous Considerantes les bons & agreables services, queux nostre bon ame Guillaume Brugges autrement dit Garter Roy d'armes ad fait, si bien a nostre treschier Seigneur & Pere le Roy, qui Dieux assoile, come a nous, & a nous ferra en temps avenir, de l'avis & Assent de nostre Counsaill, lui eons grauntez vynt livres apprendre annuellement, tancome nous plerra, as termes de Saint Michel & de Pasque par ouelles portions de la ferme de nostre Citee de Wynchestre, par les mains des Citeins de mesme la Citee pour le temps esleantz: vous mandons, que sur ce facez

faire lettres desouz nostre grant Seal en due forme: Donne souz nostre prive Seal a Westminster le 26 Jour d'avril l'an de nostre Regne septiesme.

Constat de rasura, viz. ubi superius Continetur de la Fee Farm, &c. Extrahitur Fee per mandatum Domini Cancellarii presentibus ad tunc Custode Rotulorum, aliisque Magistris Cancellariæ, & multis aliis, &c. Frank. See Pat. 7 H. 6. p. 1. m. 18. 16 Apr. Printed by Rymer, vol. x. p. 415.

<sup>p</sup> In Officio Pellium 16 Nov. (7 H. 6.) Henri, &c. as Tresorier, &c. Que a nostre bien Ame Garter Roy d'Armes lequel nous envoions en nostre Duchie de Normandie vers nostre trescher & foial Cousin le Counte de Warwic nostre Lieutenant General & Gouverneur en nostre Roiaume de France & Duchie de Normandie vous paiey vynt Marcs.

<sup>q</sup> Caligula D. 5. in Bibl. Cotton. 20 Nov. Credence committed by the Kyng our Soverain Lord, unto Garter King of Armes, to be declared unto my Lord of Bedford his Uncle, 7 H. 6. 20 Nov. the Instrument is very long.

<sup>r</sup> Priv. Sig. 1 Juyl 7 H. 6. a nostre bien ame Garter Roy d'armes en alant de nostre comandeement en nostre message oue certains noz letres devers nostre trescher & trefame le Duc de Bedford Regent Roiaume de France vynt marcs.

Exit. Pell. m. 7 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum nuper missio versus Ducem Bedfordie avunculum Regis Regentem regnum suum Francie pro Certis negotiis ipsum Regem moventibus 13 l. 6 s. 8 d.

<sup>s</sup> Exit. Pell. m. 7 H. 6. Eidem Gartero, cui idem Dominus Rex nunc de avisamento & assensu Consilii sui nuper mandavit in Nuncio suo versus carissimum Avunculum suum Ducem Bedfordie in regnum dicti Domini Regis Francie, causa Cujus nuncii dictus Dominus Rex nuper concessit certum Regardum pro Expensis & laboribus, ultra quod quidem regardum Garterus expendit de bonis suis propriis vii l. quas Dominus Rex de avisamento & Consensu Consilii liberare mandavit.

<sup>t</sup> Cleopatra F. 4. in Bibl. Cott. 16 July: See Rymer, vol. 2. p. 432.

<sup>u</sup> Exit. Pell. m. 7 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum, qui mandato Regis profecturus est, pro Certis Necessitatibus ejusdem Domini Regis de Francia ad dictum Dominum Regentem de ibidem reportandis ex parte Clarissimi Avunculi sui Johannis Ducis Bedfordie Regentis dictum Regnum suum Francie de Certis responsionibus 13 l. 6 s. 8 d.



Messenger to the <sup>x</sup> Duke of Bedford, Regent of France, with the King's Letters.

In 8 H. 6. he received 50 Marks, by Consent of the Council, for his great Expences, in going twice as the Kings's Messenger, to his Uncles the Dukes of Bedford and Burgundy, and to his Council in France, and returning with the Answers thereto; and for the Costs he was then to sustain in another <sup>z</sup> Journey to be made into France, and received the Summ of xx Marks, and a short Time afterwards was returning from thence into England to the above-mention'd <sup>a</sup> Cardinal of St. Eusebius upon some necessary Occasions, and was again remitted by the King's Council in England to the King and his <sup>b</sup> Council in France, about special Matters relating to the Welfare of both Kingdoms.

In the 9th Year he was sent into <sup>c</sup> England, by the King's Council in France, and about this Time it is probable he was sent likewise to the King <sup>d</sup> of Scots, and in January 1431 had been sent from Rouen to the

<sup>x</sup> Priv. Sigill. in Officio Pellium Henri, &c. As Tresorier, &c. que a nostre bien ame Gartier Roy d'armes, en alant de nostre comandement par avis & assent de nostre Conseil en nostre message avec certaines nos lettres devers nostre trescher & tresame Uncle le Duc de Bedford Regent de France vynt marcs 1 July 7 H. 6.

Exit. Pell. P. 7 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum eunti de mandato Regis per avifamentum Consilii sui in Nuncio ipsius Domini Regis cum certis literis dicti Regis Avunculo suo Duci Bedfordie Regenti regnum Francia 13 l. 6 s. 8 d.

<sup>y</sup> In Officio Pellium Henri, &c. As Tresorier, &c. A nostre bien ame Gartier Roy d'armes facez paier, pur les grands labours, Coustages, & Expences, queux il ad euz & sustenuz, en alant jattard par deux foitz par Comandement de nous & de nostre Counsail en Message vers nos treschers & tresames Uncles de Bedford, & de Burgoigne, & aussi nostre Counsail de France, & d'illoques avec leur responses devers nous retournant & - - - - luy coviendra de present avoir & sustenir en alant par Comandement de nous & de nostre Counsail devers nos ditz Uncles & Counsail, & d'illoques en retournant - - - - 40 marcs darrein de Sept. 8 H. 6.

Exit. Pell. m. 8 H. 6. Johanne Throkmaron ex parte Richardi Comitiss Warwick Camerario Existente, 4to Oct. Gartero Regi Armorum in denariis sibi liberatis per manus proprias in perfolutionem L. marcarum, quas Dominus Rex nunc de Assensu Consilii sui eidem Gartero liberare mandavit habendas de Dono suo per modum Regardi pro grandibus Custubus, & Expensis per ipsum habitis & sustentis eundo tam tarde ad duas Vices de Mandato Domini Regis & Consilii sui predicti in Nuncio Ipsius Domini Regis ad Avunculos suos Bedfordie & Burgundie, & etiam ad Consilium suum Francia & de ibidem cum eorum responsionibus versus ipsum Dominum Regem & Consilium suum predictum retornando & etiam pro Custubus & Expensis suis, quas ad presens sustinere oportebit eundo de mandato Eiusdem Domini Regis & Consilii sui predicti versus Avunculos suos predictos, & Consilium predictum & de ibidem cum eorum responsionibus ad Consilium predictum reportando.

<sup>z</sup> 22 Oct. (8 H. 6.) in Officio Pellium, Henri, &c. as Tresorier, &c. que a nostre bien ame Gartier Roy d'Armes, liquel avec Certains nos lettres et Messages nous envoions presentement es parties de dela vous facez paier xx marcs.

<sup>a</sup> Henri, &c. As Tresorier, &c. que a nostre bien ame Gartier Roy, qui divers nostre trescher Cofin le Cardinal, &c. sur certaines nos besoignes en nostre Royaume de France est presentement a aler, facez payer dys livres, &c. 7. Feverer 8 H. 6. in Officio Pellium.

Exit. Pell. M. 8 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum qui versus Carissimum Consanguineum Regis Cardinalem de titulo Sancti Eusebii in Regnum Anglia ad presens est iturus pro certis Causis opportunis x l.

<sup>b</sup> Exit. Pell. P. 8 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum nuper misso per Consilium Regis in Regno suo Anglia versus ipsum Dominum Regem & Consilium suum cum ipso Domino Rege in Regno suo Francia pro Certis materiis spetialibus tangentibus bona ac utilitatem Regis et regnorum suorum predictorum 6 l. 13 s. 4 d

<sup>c</sup> Henri, &c. As Tresorier, &c. que a nostre bien ame Gartier Roy des Armes nadgairs envoie par nostre Conseil en nostre Royaume d'Engleterre devers nous & nostre Counsail avec nous en nostre Royaume de France pour certains matiers touchantes le bien de nous & de nos ditz Royaumes, vous paie dys marcs, &c. 20 d'Octobre lan noefisme (9 H. 6.)

<sup>20 Dec.</sup> 9 H. 6. In Officio Pellium. Henri, &c. As Tresorier, &c. qu'a nostre bien ame Gartier Roy des Armes nadgairs par nostre Counsail envoie en nostre Royaume d'Engleterre devers nous & nostre Counsail avec nous en nostre Royaume de France pur Certains Matiers touchants le bien de nous, & de nos ditz Royaumes paies dys marcs.

<sup>d</sup> Faustina F. 7. in Bibl. Cotton, p. 56. April (8 H. 6.) Rymer, vol. 10. p. 455, and in July (14 H. 6.) Rymer, vol. 10. p. 650. Instrucion yeven by the K. by thadvys of his Counsail to Garter King of Armes sent unto his Cofin the King of Scots at Canterbury 12 day.

Signed Johan h: Cantuar. J. Eborum Cancell

J. huntein.

hungerford, tiptoft Pr. on.

The Date being not legible in this Instrument, the same is placed about this Time, because the King was at Canterbury in Apr. 8 H. 6. Rymer foedera, vol. 10. p. 455. and in July 14 H. 6. Rymer, ibidem, p. 650.



Duke of *Burgundy* into *Flanders*, for which he had 60 *Tournois* by the Day, as appears from an <sup>e</sup> Original Receipt under his Signet, which hath the Impression of a Crown within the *Garter*, taken from the Records of *France*, and communicated to the Collector by Monsieur *Clairembault*.

In the 11th *H. VI*, the King Commanded <sup>f</sup> the Citizens of *Winchester* to pay him the Arrearages of his Annuity, and what should become hereafter yearly due, during the King's Pleasure, and on 18 *Febr.* <sup>g</sup> Instructions were given to him to declare on the King's Behalf to his Uncle the Duke of *Bretagne*, and we find in a Credence or <sup>h</sup> Memorial delivered by the Chamberlain of *Bretagne*, answered 5 *Sept.* 1441, that (the Dukes of) *Orleans*, *Dallenson*, and others, had continued some Time in *Bretagne* in Expectation of the Return of *Garter*.

In 1435 he attended on the Embassadors at the Treaty of <sup>i</sup> *Arras*: In <sup>k</sup> the 14th (which Mr. <sup>l</sup> *Ashmole*, as also the *Black-book* of the *Garter* misplaces in the 13th of *Hen. VI*) he carried the Livery of the *Garter* to the King of *Portugal*, in which Kingdom he continued <sup>m</sup> ten Months.

In 16 *H. VI*, he was sent into the <sup>n</sup> Dutchy of *Normandy* to the Earl

<sup>e</sup> Scachent tuit que Je Guillaume Brugge dit Jartiere Roy d'armes du Roy nostre Sire, confesse avoir eu et receu de Pierre Surreau Receveur General de Normandie la Somme de 60<sup>l.</sup> tournois pour mon payement de vint jours du voiage que j'entends promptement, & a moy ordonne faire par le Roy nostre Sire de cete Ville de *Rouen* par devers monseigneur de *Bourgoigne* en *Flandres* ou ailleurs, ou il ferra, pour certains affaires secretz touchans le bien du Roy nostre dit Seigneur a moy chargez un pris pour chachun jour de 60 tournois a moy taxez par le Roy nostre dit Seigneur, de la quelle somme de 60 tournois Je suis content & bien paie et enquite par ces presentes le Roy nostre dit Seigneur, le dit Receveur general, et tous autres. En tesmoing de ce J'ay signe ces presentes de mon saing Manuel, & seallees de mon signet a *Roien* le tiers jour de Janvier lan. 1431.

<sup>f</sup> Claus. 11 *H. 6.* m. 22. Rex Civibus Civitatis nostræ *Wynton*, qui nunc sunt, vel qui pro tempore fuerint Salutem. Cum vicesimo sexto die Aprilis Anno Regni nostri Septimo per literas nostras Patentes de avifamento & Assensu Consilii nostri concesserimus dilecto Nobis *Willielmo Brugges* alias dicto *Gartier* Regi Armorum Viginti libras, percipiendas annuatim, quamdiu nobis placuerit, ad terminos Sancti *Michaelis* & *Paschæ*, per æquales Portiones, de feodi firma Civitatis nostræ prædictæ, per manus Civium ejusdem Civitatis pro tempore Existentium, prout in Literis Nostris prædictis plenius Continetur; Vobis mandamus, quod eidem *Willielmo* id quod ei a retro est de prædictis Viginti libris Annuis, a festo *Paschæ* ultimo præterito, & easdem Viginti libras annuas ex nunc singulis annis, quamdiu nobis placuerit, de feodi firma Civitatis prædictæ solvatis juxta tenorem Literarum Nostarum prædictarum, Recipientes a præfato *Willielmo* de tempore in tempus literas suas Acquietanciæ, quæ pro Vobis sufficientes fuerint in hac parte, per quas & præsens Mandatum Nostrium vobis inde in Compoto vestro ad Scaccarium nostrum de tempore in tempus debitam allocationem habere faciemus, Teste Rege apud *Westmoflantierum* 30 die Octobris.

<sup>g</sup> 34 B. 18. Bibl. Harley, p. 62. b. Instructions given to *Garter King of Arms*, to declare on the King's Behalf unto his Uncle the Duke of *Britaine*, 18 *Feb.* (11 *H. 6.*)

The Original is in Bibl. Cotton. Julius B. 6. Instruction given to *Garter King of Arms*, to declare on the Kings behalve unto his Uncle the Duc of *Bretagne* (11 *H. 6.*)

<sup>h</sup> A Letter 11 *H. 6.* 18 *Feb.* to the Duke of *Bretagne*, signed by the Council— Trescher & tresame Oncle, nous envoyons presentement par devers vous nostre bien ame Roy d'armes & herault *Jartiere*, pour vous exposer depar nous Certains choses, Auquel & a tout ce qu'il vous diroit de par nous prions, que adjoustez foi & Creance, &c. Julius B. 6.

<sup>i</sup> Lobineau preuves de l'Hist. de *Bretagne*, p. 1075.

<sup>j</sup> Chartier Hist. ch. 7. p. 82. A *Arras* 1435. Pour le Roy d'Angleterre *Jartiere* Roy d'Armes, *Suffolk* Heraut, *Kembre* Poursuivant, *Eudelei* Poursuivant, lesquels s'en allerent des le Comencement avec leur Maistres.

<sup>k</sup> Fauchet de l'origine des Heraux, p. 29— At the Treaty of *Arras* were divers *Heralds*, whose Names or Titles are mentioned, and among others, "Pour les Anglois *Jartier* Roy d'Armes Suboltier Heraut, Henlic Poursuivant, lesquels allerent des le Comencement avec leurs Maistres.

<sup>l</sup> See above, p. 185.

<sup>m</sup> *Ash. History*, p. 392. See the *Black-book*, p. 141.

<sup>n</sup> See above, p. 185.

<sup>o</sup> Priv. Sig. 16 Nov. 16 *H. 6.* A nostre bien ame *Garter* Roy d'armes, liquel nous envoions en nos Messages en nostre Duchee de *Normandie* vers nostre trescher et foial Cousin le Comte de *Warwic* nostre Lieutenant general et gouverneur en noz Royaume de *France*, et Duchee de *Normandie* vynt marcs.

<sup>p</sup> Exit. Pell. 16 *H. 6.* *Gartero* Regi Armorum nuper misso in Nuncium Regis versus partes Exteras ad Comitum *Warwic*; in quo quidem Nuncio idem *Garterus* erat occupatus in servicio ipsius Domini Regis per spatium 26 septimanarum et etiam in eodem Nuncio Ipse erat Captus per Inimicos Regis, et bona sua per ipsos ab eo Capta et rata ad grave dampnum ipsius *Garteri*, pro qua quidem Causa idem *Garterus* accomodavit ad faciendum Custus suos in servicio Regis de xxxl. 13 s. 4 d.



of *Warwick*, then Lieutenant of *France*, in which Service he was employ'd fix and twenty Weeks, and was taken by the King's Enemies, and lost his Goods.

In 17 *H. VI*, the King, at the Instant Desire of the <sup>o</sup> Knights of the Order of the *Garter*, granted him 40 *l.* yearly for Life, to be paid out of the Issues of the Hanaper, and he was sent then <sup>p</sup> beyond Sea, and in the next <sup>9</sup> Year, a Writ was sent to the Keeper of the Hannaper to pay him his Salary, in which Year he was sent <sup>r</sup> beyond Sea, and by

<sup>o</sup> In Offic. Pell. To the Right Chrysten King our Sovereign Lord.

[At the Top is wrote, Le Roy ad grante.]

Befechith moost humbely to your right high Excellence youre moost humble Liegeman and Kyng of Armes *Garter*, commune Servaunt in thoffice of Armes to the Noble Ordre of the *Garter* to Consider, that of your habundant, hit hath liked to youre highnesse for the Reverence and honeur of the said Ordre, and for the long service of your saide servant, at the beseching of al his Lords of the said Noble and Worthy Ordre, to have graunted and giffen him terme of his lyf a Fee and pension of xl. Plesing to youre high Excellence to graunte unto your saide servaunte by youre Letters Patentes the said xl. to take yeerly for terme of his said lyf, of the Issues and Profits coumyng of the Hannaper of your Chancerie by the honds of the Gardayn of the said Hannaper that for nowe is, or for the tyme shall be, atte the fests of Mighelmasse and Estir by evyn portions. Notwithstanding that the said *Garter* hath of your noble Grant by your Letters Patentes duryng your pleasure xxl. by Yere to be taken of the Ferme of youre Citee of *Wynechester* by the hondes of the Citezens of the same Citee for the tyme beyng, for the love of God and in Weye of Charite.

Letre eust feust faite a Westminstre le v Jour de May l'an, &c. xvii.

K. Chambellan d'Engleterre.

Privat. Sigill. in Turre. *Henri* par la Grace de Dieu, Roy d'Engleterre et de France, et Seigneur d'Irlande, a l'onorable Piere en Dieu levesque de Bath nostre Chaunceller Saluz Comme nous par Consideration du bon et agreable Service, que nostre bien ame Serviteur *Gartier* Roy d'Armes, commun Serviteur a lordre du *Jartir*, ad fait de long temps, tant a nostre trefchier Seigneur & Pere le Roy, qui Dieux assoille, comme a nous, et a nous ferra en temps avenir, eons de nostre Grace espeziale, et a les priers des Seigneurs du dit Ordre, Grauntez au dit *Garter* quarante livres par Ann, aprendres pour terme de sa vie, des issues et proufitez provenantz del Hannapier en nostre Chancelarie, par les Mains du Gardein du dit Hannapier pour le temps esteant, as termes le Sainct Michel et de Pasque, par ouelles portions; Ce que le dit *Gartier* ad de nostre Graunte par noz Lettres Patentes, durans nostre Plaisir vynt Livres par Ann, aprendres de la ferme de nostre Citee de *Wyneestre* par les Mains des Citeens dicelle Citee pour le temps esteantz non obstant, vous mandons que sur ce vous facez faire Lettres de soubz nostre Grand Seal en due forme Donne soubz nostre Prive Seal a Westmonstier le v Jour de May l'an de Nostre Regne dys septisme.

Ex. Orig. in Turre.

Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem, sciatis quod nos bonum & acceptabile servitium, quod dilectus

servitor noster *Gartier* Rex Armorum, serviens communis ad ordinem *Garter*, tam clarissimo Domino et Patri nostro Regi defuncto, quam nobis per tempus non modicum impendit, et nobis impendet in futurum considerantes, de gratia nostra speciali, et ad instantiam et rogatum Dominorum dicti Ordinis de *Gartera* concessimus dicto *Garter* quadraginta libras per annum percipiendas pro termino vite sue de exitibus et proficuis de Hanaperio Cancellarie nostre provenientibus, per manus Custodis ejusdem Hanaperii pro tempore existentis, ad terminos Sancti Michaelis et Pasche per aequales portiones: Eo quod dictus *Gartier* viginti libras percipiendas annuatim de firma Civitatis nostre *Wynton* per manus Civium ejusdem Civitatis pro tempore existentium per literas nostras Patentes, quamdiu nobis placuerit ex concessione nostra optinet, non obstante. In cujus, &c. *Sec Rymer, vol. 10. p. 737.*

p 7 Maii (17 *H. 6.*) In Officio Pellium. *Henri*, &c. As Tresorier, &c. que a nostre bien Ame *Gartier* Roy d'armes liquel en Certaines noz Messages nous Envoions presentement vers les parties de dela vous facez deliverer vynt Marcs:

q *Rymer, vol. 10. p. 737.* Rex Custodi Hanaperii Cancellarie sue, qui nunc est, vel qui pro tempore fuerit Salutem. Cum quinto die Maii Anno Regni nostri decimo Septimo, bonum & acceptabile servitium, quod dilectus servitor Noster *Gartier* Rex Armorum serviens Communis ad Ordinem *Gartera*, tam Clarissimo Domino et patri nostro Regi defuncto, quam Nobis per tempus non modicum impendit, et nobis impendet in futurum considerantes, de gratia nostra speciali, & ad Instantiam et rogatum Dominorum dicti Ordinis de *Gartera* Concesserimus dicto *Gartier* quadraginta libras per annum percipiendas pro termino vite sue de Exitibus et proficuis dicti Hanaperii provenientibus, per manus Custodiis ejusdem Hanaperii pro tempore Existentis, ad terminos Sancti Michaelis et Pasche per aequales Portiones, prout in Literis nostris Patentibus inde Confectis plenius Continetur. Vobis mandamus quod eidem *Gartier*, id quod ei a retro est de predictis quadraginta libris annuis pro termino Sancti Michaelis ultimo preterito, et easdem quadraginta libras annuas extunc singulis annis pro termino vite sue de exitibus et proficuis predicti Hanaperii, ad terminos predictos solvatis, juxta tenorem literarum nostrarum predictarum, Recipientes a prefato *Gartier* de tempore in tempus Literas suas Aquietancie, que pro vobis sufficientes fuerint, in hac parte, per quas et prefens Mandatum nostrum vobis inde in Compoto vestro ad scaccarium nostrum de tempore in tempus debitam allocationem habere faciemus. Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium vicesimo primo die Octobris. Ex. Rot. Claus. Ann. 18 *H. 6. m. 35.*

r Priv. Sig. 22 Oct. 18 *H. 6.* a nostre bien ame *Gartier* Roy d'armes liquel avec certainz noz letres et messages nous envoions presentement es parties de dela vous facez paier viint marcs.

Advice



Advice of the King's Council into *Somersetshire* to commune with the <sup>f</sup> Duke of *Orleans* about special Matters, and was afterwards sent as a Messenger to the <sup>t</sup> Dutcheſs of *Burgundy*, and in this Year he received his Winter <sup>u</sup> Robes, and on the 10th of *March* he granted Arms to the Corporation of <sup>x</sup> Drapers, whereto the Attestation of a Publick Notary is subscribed.

In 19 *H. VI.* he attended on the <sup>y</sup> Ambassadors of *Coloign*, and by Order of the King's Council on the <sup>z</sup> Duke of *Orleans*, who was a Prisoner here; then going, by Leave of the King, into his own Country, and had 20 *l.* by way of Reward for that Purpose, and having expended beyond that Summ, was <sup>a</sup> reimbursed, and forthwith sent again into <sup>b</sup> France, having <sup>c</sup> *Purchesse* Purſevant attending on him, and was present at his Marriage <sup>d</sup> with the Duke of *Burgundy's* Niece, in which Year he received

<sup>f</sup> Exit. Pell. m. 18 *H. 6.* *Gartero* Regi Armorum miſſo de aviſamento et aſſenſu Conſilii Regis verſus Comitatum *Somerset* ad communicandum cum Duce *Orliense* in Cuſtodia Johan. Stouton Militis ibidem exiſtenti pro Certis ſpetialibus Materiis Dominum Regem & Concilium ſuum moventibus xl *l.*

<sup>t</sup> 12 Maii 18 *H. 6.* *Henri*, &c. As Treſorier, &c. que a noſtre chier & bon ame *Gartier* Roy d'armes, lequel en Certaines noz Meſſages eſt en alant vers la Duchefſe de *Burgoigne*, vous facez paier xx marcs Priv. Sig. in Officio Pellium.

Exit. Pell. P. 18 *H. 6.* *Gartero* Regi Armorum nuper miſſo in Nuncio Regis verſus Ducifſam *Burgundia*, 13 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

<sup>u</sup> Particulæ compoti *Rob. Rolleſton* Cuſtodis magnæ Garderobæ a vigilia Sancti *Michaelis* anno 17 *Hen. 7.* pro uno anno revoluto. *Garter* & *Clarenceux* herolds Armorum ad veſturam ſuam yemalem faciendam de pann. murr. & radiat. de dono dicti Domini Regis, viz. utrique eorum ii ulna coloris long. & iii uln. dim. panni radiati. *Lancastre* Harold ad veſturam ſuam yemalem faciendam de pann. murr. & radiat. per breve 14 Aprilis hoc 17mo anno ii uln. pann. coloris long. iii uln. dim. pann. radiati.

<sup>x</sup> In Cod. membran. penes Petr. le Neve Arm. Norroy.

<sup>y</sup> Priv. Sig. 3 Oct. 19 *H. 6.* Pource que noſtre ame ſerviteur *Gartier* Roy d'armes ad eſte continuellement entendant en noſtre ſervice ſur les Ambaxiatoiers de l'erceveſque de *Coleyn*, par l'eſpace de dys ſemaignes a ſes propres couſtages & expenſes, leſquelles amontent a la ſomme de dys livres, &c.

<sup>z</sup> 19 *H. 6.* (in Officio Pellium) le 5 Jour de Novembre, l'an xix a Weſtminſtre, eſtoit accordez par les Seigneurs du Roy, eſteant en la Chambre des Eſtoilles, qui ſufficeant garant ſoit fait deſoubz le Prive Seal du Roy, direct as Treſorier & Chamberlains de l'eſchequier, de paier xx livres au *Gartier* Roy d'Armes, envoie par Comandement du Roy avec le Duc *Dorleans* pour ſon honeur, & en alant par Congie du Roy ſouz Certain appointment a ſes parties propres, et ceo par voie de regards; Preſents Monſieur le Cardinal, Monſieur le Chancelier et autres. Adam Moleyns.

<sup>5</sup> Nov. 19 *H. 6.* (in officio Pellium) *Henri*, &c. as Treſorier, &c. Pource que de preſentement nous envoions noſtre bon ame ſerviteur *Gartier* Roy d'Armes avec noſtre treſcher Couſin le Duc d'*Orleans* pour ſon honneur en allant de preſentment

par noſtre agreement et ſoubz Certaine appointment en ſon pais, vous facez paier xx *l.* See Rymer, vol. 10. p. 828.

<sup>a</sup> R. H. [*The King's ſign Manual*]. To the King our Sovereign Lord.

Befecheſh mekely youre humble ſervant *Garter* King of Armes, that for as muche, as he by youre Comandement, paſſed the See in youre Service with the Duc of *Orleans*, in whiche Viage your ſeide ſervant over the Somme, that ye comanded him, hath ſpended 28 *l.* of the whiche Somme he ſtandeth endaungerd to certain perſones beyond the See, as of borwyng the Somme of xiiii *l.* and ye oyer xiiii *l.* he hath laid out of his own Goods: In Conſideration whereof, hit pleas unto your moſt ample and habundante Grace, for to directe your Letters of prive Seel unto your Treſorer of *England*, charging him for to do, paie, and content your ſaid ſervant of the ſaid Somme of xiiii *l.* in redy money without Delay, as by Wey of Reward, and that the ſaid Letters of Prive Seel, be unto youre ſaid Treſorer ſufficient Warrant, and your ſaid ſervant ſhall pray God for you.

(Endorſed) 10 die April Anno xix. (*Hen. 6.*)

Rex apud Caſtrum ſuum de *Wyndſore* Conceſſit preſentem Billam ut petitur, & ultra Conceſſit infra Supplicanti xx *l.* pro Viagio quod ipſe jam faſturus eſt in partes *Francia*, et mandavit Cuſtodi privati Sigilli ſui deſuper fieri facere litteras ſub eodem Sigillo in hac parte requiſitas, et quod 20 *l.* prædictas habeat ſupplicans per viam Regardi, preſentæ Domino Cancellario.

Adam Moleyns.

10 April 19 *H. 6.* (in Officio Pellium) *Henri*, &c. as Treſorier, &c. Pource que nadgairs envoiaſmes en noſtre Service noſtre bien ame ſerviteur *Garter* Roy d'Armes as parties de par de la, avec noſtre Couſin le Duc d'*Orleans*, a quel noſtre Service luy ad convient dexpendre de ſes propres, et par apprompte vynt et oyt livres, comme il nous ad donez a entendre, &c.

<sup>b</sup> Priv. Sigill. 6 Apr. 19 *H. 6.* vous mandons, que au *Purchesse* le Purſevant, liquel eſt enalant en noſtre Royaume de *France* en la compaignie de noſtre ſerviteur *Gartier* Roy d'armes, vous paiey dys warcs.

<sup>c</sup> See the preceding Notes.

<sup>d</sup> Monſtrelet *Hiſt.* vol. 2. p. 178.

his



his <sup>e</sup> Winter Habit from the Wardrobe, and attended on the <sup>f</sup> Ambassadors of the Archbishop of Cologne.

On 29 August, 20 H. VI, he had allowed him for the Costs of his last being abroad in the King's Service, and for the Service that he should do in this his present Journey 100 Marks, and received also one Hundred Marks for his Charges in his last <sup>g</sup> Journey into Forreign Parts, and his Return to the King, and his going again by the King's Command in certain <sup>h</sup> Messages to the Duke of Bretagne and the Duke of Orleans.

In 21 Hen. VI, he sets forth, by <sup>i</sup> Petition to the King, that he had been Employed constantly in his Service for one and twenty Months touching Matters about Peace, during which Time he had borrowed 60 l. 6 s. 8 d. which was repaid him, and had xx l. more, being then sent with Letters of Credence and Instructions to the <sup>k</sup> Duke of York Lieutenant of France; and he had an Article inserted in his Credence, about the Grant formerly made by the King of the County of <sup>l</sup> Maine to the Lord Dorset, and he had then a <sup>m</sup> Reward of 20 l. and in the same Year had

<sup>e</sup> Liberationes de magna Garderoba H. 6. fol. 33. a. transcribed in MS. n. iiii. in Mus. Alimol. Oxon. Gartero et Clarencieux Regibus Armorum vocatis Herolds, ad vesturam suam yemalem faciendam contra festum natalis Domini, utrique eorum iiii uln. panni must. de dono Regis per literam dormantem de privato Sigillo, Dat. 14 Dec. Anno 19. Wyndesore Heroldo ad Vesturam suam Yemalem faciendam contra festum natalis Domini per literam de privato Sigillo 3 Junii, Anno 22.

<sup>f</sup> 13 October (19 H. 6.) in Officio Pellium, Henri, &c. As Tresorier, &c. Pource que par nostre Comandement Especialle nostre Ame Serviteur Gartier Roy d'armes ad este Continuellement entendant en nostre service sur les Ambaxiatours de l'evesque de Coleyn par l'espace de dys semaines a ses propres Coustages, lesquelles amountent a la Somme de dys livres, que vous facez paier.

<sup>g</sup> Acta Concilii 20 H. 6. Cleopatra in Bibl. Cotton f. 5. p. 36. Item, to Garter King of Arms for the Service and Costs, &c. that he hath done in last beyng in the Kings Service, and for the Services that he shall do all in this his goyng over in the Kings Service C. Marks (29 Aug.) The same is transcribed in 35. C. 19. p. 40. Acta Concilii 20 H. 6. (29 Aug.) in Bibl. Harley.

<sup>h</sup> 28 d' Aoust Ann. Vintisme H. VI. (in Officio Pellium) Henri, &c. nous volons de l'advis de nostre Conseil, que a nostre cher & bon ame Serviteur Gartier Roy d'Armes, liquel nadgairs feust par nous envoiez es Parties de dela & lequel de present soy est retourné devers nous, & par nostre Comandement en Certains noz Messages est en allant devers noz trefchers & trefames Cousin & Oncle le Duc d'Orleanse, & le Duc de Bretagne, Vous facez paier de nostre Tresore Cent Marks.

Exit. Pell. m. 20 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum, qui nuper per ipsum Dominum Regem versus partes exteras erat missus, & qui ad præsens versus eundem Regem rediit, & per mandatum ipsius Domini Regis in Certis Nunciis suis versus Carissimum Avunculum suum Ducem Britannia & dilectissimum Consanguineum suum Ducem Orlensem iturus est 66 l. 13 s. 4 d.

<sup>i</sup> 7 Feb. 21 H. 6. (in Officio Pellium) Henri, &c. As Tresorier, &c. nostre ame Serviteur Gartier Roy d'Armes par la supplication nous ad suppliez de Considerer, comment il ad este occupiez continuellement en nostre service entour la matiere de

la paix, par l'espace de vynt et un moys incessamment, deins la quelle temps pur Necessitee lui ad constraintz de chevillier la Somme de Cessant livres, dys soulds, et oyt deniers, outre ce que nous lui eussions assignes pur la dite viage, pur la quelle somme nostre dit serviteur est endangeres as divers personnes, a ce qu'il dit, donc nous il ad humblement suppliez, que nous voulons commander lui contenter, que vous facez paier, &c.

Exit. Pell. m. 21 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum, qui per Billam suam Domino Regi supplicavit, ut dignaretur, qualiter ipse Garterus nuper in servitio ipsius Domini Regis continue circa materias Pacis, per spacium xxi mensium incessanter occupatus existit, infra quod tempus dictum Garterum ad Summam 60 l. 6 s. 8 d. mutuandam ----- necessitatis constringebat, pro qua summa diversis ut dicitur est deterioratus, in denariis 60 l. 6 s. 8 d.

<sup>k</sup> Acta Concilii 21 H. 6. Cleopatra f. 5. p. 66 b. —To Garter, the which goeth with Letters and Credences to my Lord of York Lieutenant of France xx l.

Acta Concilii, 21 H. 6. Cleopatra, f. 5. p. 75. Instructions geven by the King to his Welbeloved Servant Garter King of Arms for to say on his behalf, unto his right Trusty and right welbeloved Cousyn the Duc of York, Lieutenant General and Governor of France and Normandie.

Instructions given by the Kyng our Sovereigne Lorde to his Welbeloved Garter Kyng of Armes, for to say on his behalf, unto his Right trustie and right welbeloved Cousyn the Duke of York Lieutenant General and Governour of his Realme of France and Duchie of Normandie, 5 Apr. 34 B. 21. Bibl. Harley.

<sup>l</sup> 21 H. 6. Cleopatra f. 5. p. 71 b. Also that seth my Lord of Dorset, may not have his Letters of the Kyngs Grantie to him made of the Countee of Mayne seled in France, &c. and touching this Matter the Kyng wol that Garter have an Article in his Credens in the forme desired by my Lord of Somerset.

<sup>m</sup> Cleopatra f. 5. p. 72. (21 H. 6.) Acta Concilii—Garter shall have 20 l. Henri, &c. As Tresorier, &c. —que a nostre Chier et bien ame Gartier Roy d'Armes, lyquel nous envoions presentement en nostre Message avec noz lettres & Instruction a nostre trefcher et trefame Cousin le Duc de York lieutenant General et Gouverneur de noz Royaume de France et Duchee de Normandie, vous facez paier vyngt livres. Privat. Sigill. in Officio Pellium 2 March 21 H. 6.



had 40*l.* being sent with the Bishop of *Salisbury* and Earl of *Suffolk*, the King's <sup>n</sup> Ambassadors, about Matters of Peace, and received a Reward for going to the <sup>o</sup> Duke of *Bretagne* into that Dutchy, and in *July*, was sent with the Livery of the *Garter* to the <sup>p</sup> King of *Arragon*, and to the King of *Portugal*'s Uncle, on whom *Balante* Pursuivant of *Portugal* attended in that Journey, and was rewarded for it, and having continued ten Months in this Service, he had in 22 *Hen. VI.* an <sup>q</sup> Addition of 22*l.* to his former Reward; in which Year he was sent to conduct the Pope's <sup>r</sup> Embassadour, and was sent with <sup>s</sup> Commissioners appointed to go into *France*, and had an Addition of xx*l.* more for that Service upon his <sup>t</sup> Petition, and was again sent by the King to his <sup>u</sup> Queen in Company

Exit. Pell. m. 21 *H. 6.* *Gartero Regi Armorum*, quem Dominus Rex ad presens misit in Nuncio suo cum certis Literis et Instructionibus Duci *Eborum* locumtenenti Regis Generali ac Gubernatori in Regno suo *Francie* et Ducatu *Normandia* directis pro certis Materiis in eisdem literis et Instructionibus dictum Regem et Consilium suum moventibus 20*l.*

<sup>n</sup> (25 d'augst) 21 *H. 6.* *Henri, &c.* As Tresorier— a nostre Chier et bien amye serviteur *Gartier* Roy d'Armes, lequel nous envoions presentement en nostre Service, avec ly reverend Pier in Dieu l'evesque de *Saresbirs* et nostre trescher et foial Cousin le Counte de *Suffolk*, et autres Seigneurs, en nostre Ambassade pour la matier de la Pays— quarante livres.

Exit. Pell. P. 21 *H. 6.* *Gartero Regi Armorum* per dominum Regem ad presens misso in servicio suo, cum venerabili in Christo patre Episcopo *Sarum* ac Comite *Suffolcia*, quos dictus Dominus Rex mittit in Ambassata sua pro Materiis Pacis, &c. 40*l.*

<sup>o</sup> *Cleopatra*, f. 3. p. 110 b. 21 *H. 6.* To paye to *Garter Kyng of Armes*, whom the King with his Letters and Instructions sendeth unto the Duke of *Bretaigne* 20*l.* for his labour and Coustages.

*Acta Concilii* 21 *H. 6.* *Bibl. Harley* 34 B. 21— Be there made a Letter to the Tresorer and Chamberlain to delyvere to *Garter Kyng of Armes*, whom the Kyng with his Letters and Instruction sendeth nowe, unto the Duke of *Brittaigne* 20*l.* for his labour and Coustages.

In Officio Pell. 19. Juyl. 21 *H. 6.* *Henri, &c.* As Tresorier, &c. a nostre chere et bien ame *Gartier* Roy d'armes, lyquel nous Envoyons presentement avec nos letres et Instruccion a nostre treschere & trefame le Duc de *Bretagne* en *Bretagne* vynt livres.

<sup>p</sup> 34 B. 21. in *Bibl. Harley*— July 21 *H. 6.* Be there made a Letter to the Wardrobe, commanding him in all goodlie haste to do make two Mantles of Velvet lyned with Sattin with the *Garter* of *St. George*, and also that he ordains ii Gowne Clothes and ii hoodes and the furrurs of *Ermine* for them, and delivere hem to *Garter King of Armes* he to bere and deliver one Robe with a *Garter* for the Lege of the Kyng of *Aragon*, and the other to *Lynfanc* de *Henryche* of *Portugal* Unkle to the King of *Portugal*.

E. Priv. Sigill. in Officio Pellium 22 October 22 *H. 6.* *Henri, &c.* As Tresorier, &c. que au *Balance* pursuant a nostre trescher & trefame Frere le Roy de *Portyngale*, liquel est en allant devers nostre dit Frere, et avec liquel nous envoions presentement a mesme nostre frere le *Jartier* & nostre Liveree de la *Jartier* de l'Ordre de *St. George* vous facez paier dys livres.

Ex. Pell. m. 22 *H. 6.* *Balannte* pursuant Regis *Portugal* qui de Regno *Angliae* versus dictum Regem profecturus est, et cum quo Dominus noster Rex misit ad presens *Garter* necnon liberatam Or-

dinis *Sancti Georgii* versus Regem *Portugal* prædictum x*l.*

<sup>q</sup> Exit. Pell. P. 22 *H. 6.* *Gartero Regi Armorum* nuper misso in nuncio Regis versus Regem *Portugal* 22*l.* quas Dominus Rex eidem pro tantis denariis per ipsum solutis in dicto Nuncio, quo erat occupatus per Spatium decem Mensium de denariis suis propriis ultra quandam summam eidem *Gartero* alias liberatam.

<sup>r</sup> Exit. Pell.

<sup>s</sup> To the right Christien Kyng oure soverain Lord, Besechith most humbly to youre highnesse youre servant *Garter* kyng of Armes to confidre, it plesyd to youre said highnesse to comaunde hym to gyf his entendance in his service to my Lordes your Ambassadors at this tyme apoynted into *France*, for the which usage yee comaunded his rewarde, the whiche the grettest portion thereof he hathe spende in the last viage, yee sent him in to my Lord of *Orleans*, of your benynge grace to have consideracon, that your besecher shall contenne his seid entendance, and of your habundance to commande as by way of rewarde for your said servant, as most shall plesse to youre high noblesse, and this in the waye of Charitee.

[Endorsed.] Quarto die Mensis Februarii, Anno, &c. xxii<sup>o</sup> Rex apud Westmonasterium in camera Stellata per advisamentum Concilii sui concessit supplicanti in presenti billa, quod haberet per viam regardi xx*l.* et mandavit Custodi privati Sigilli sui literas fieri debere sub eodem Sigillo pro guaranto.

T. Kent.

In Officio Pellium 4 Feverer (22 *H. 6.*) *Henri, &c.* As Tresorier, &c. Pour ceo que nous avons ordenez nostre bien ame Serviteur *Gartier* Roy d'armes pour aler en nostre Service avec certains noz Commissaires par nous Ordenez, pour aler vers nostre Royaume de *France*, &c. vous facez peiier vint livre.

Exit. Pell. m. 22 *H. 6.* *Gartero Regi Armorum* ordinato ad proficiscendum in Servizio Regis cum Certis Commissionariis per ipsum Dominum Regem appunctuatis versus Regnum *Francie*, xx*l.*

<sup>t</sup> *Rymcr*, vol. 11. p. 52.

<sup>u</sup> E. privato Sigillo in Officio Pellium, 12 Aug. Anno 22 *H. 6.* *Henri, &c.* to the Tresorer, &c. —We wol by th'advys of our Counsaill that unto our Trusty and Welbeloved Knights *Rob. Roos* and *Tho. Hoo*, and to *Garter King of Armes*, whome we send nowe into our Reaume of *France*, unto our best beloved wif the Queen, ye deliver in hande for their shipping toward our said Reaume, 26*l.* 13 s. 4 d.

Priv.



pany of Sir Robert Roos and Sir Thomas Hoo, and in the <sup>x</sup> following Year, was sent to Calice to attend the Ambassadors from France, and received 29 l. which he had laid out in his <sup>y</sup> Journeys to the King of France and the King of Sicily, the King's Father in Law, and was again sent into France <sup>z</sup> with Adam de Moleyns Keeper of the Privy-Seal.

In 24 Hen. VI, he had the Annuity of xx l. from the Fee-Farm of the City of Winchester, granted to him and Agnes his Wife for the Term of their Lives, and the <sup>a</sup> longest Liver of them, and having an House at  
Kentish

Priv. Sig. Henri, &c. Forasmuche as for diverses causes mooving us we send unto our moost deere and besteloved wyf the Quene our trusty and welbeloved Garter Kyng of Heralds in the Compaignie of our right trusty and welbeloved Knyghts Robert Roos oon of our kervers and Thomas Hoo, we wol and charge you that ye deliver unto the said Garter xx l. &c.

14 Aug. (22 H. 6.) the same Day there is another Privy-Seal to pay the said Knights for their Embassy into France.

In Officio Pellium 14 Aug. (22 H. 6.) another privy Seal there to pay Garter 20 l. by Way of Reward for the Causes abovesaid.

Exit. Pell. P. 22 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum, quem Dominus Rex certis de Causis misit ad presens versus Carissimam uxorem suam in comitiva Roberti Roos militis 20 l.

Exit. Pell. 22 H. 6. Rob. Roos, Tho. Hoo Militibus et Gartero Regi Armorum, quos Dominus Rex misit ad presens versus Regnum Francie Carissimae Consortae suae Reginae pro Eshippamentis suis 40 Marcas.

<sup>x</sup> In Officio Pell. 14 Juin 23 H. 6. Henri, &c. As Tresorier, &c. vous mandons, que pour les grans labours & dispenfes, queux nostre bien Ame Jarretier Roy d'Armes ad eu en fa entendence entour les Ambassadeurs de nostre trescher et tresame Pere le Roy de Cecille, nadgairs Envoies devers nous, et Coviendra avoir en alant vers nostre ville de Calais, pour la attendre la venue des Ambassadeurs de nostre Oncle de France, qui prochainement comme fumes enfourmez se transporteront devers nous et daltres Choses faire pur nous a lui comis, vous facez paier vint marcs.

Exit. Pell. P. 23 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum nuper misso per Dominum Regem versus Cales ad ibidem attendendum super Ambassiatores nuper venientes de partibus Francie ac Ambassiatores Regis Cecillie venientes de partibus exteris versus Regnum Anglie 13 l. 6 s. 8 d.

<sup>y</sup> 6 Apr. (23 H. 6.) Henri, &c. To the Tresorer, &c. Forasmuche as we in Consideration of the Greet Costes and Charges, that our Trusty and Welbeloved servant, Garter King of Armes hath been and susteigned in going in our Messaiges by our special Comandement unto our Oncle of France, and to our Fader the King of Cecyle into the parties of Loraine by ii Voyages, the whiche hath caused him to spende in our said service of his own Good, as he faith, we have given unto him 29 l. Priv. Sigill. in Officio Pellium.

<sup>z</sup> In Officio Pellium, 9 Aug. (23 H. 6.) To the Tresorer, &c. Forasmuche as We at this tyme by th'avis and Assent of Oure Counsaill, for Certaine Causes, that moeve us sende in our Message unto our Oncle of France our Welbeloved Garter King of Armes in the Compaignie of our Right Trusty and Welbeloved Clerc Maister Adam Moleyns Oure Ambassiatour, and Keeper of our Prive Seal, ye pay 40 marcs.

Exit. Pell. P. 23 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum misso versus partes Francie in Nuncio Regis in Comitativa Magistri Adami de Moleyn Custodis privati Sigilli Regis 26 l. 13 s. 4 d.

<sup>a</sup> Ex Originali in Turre, Memorandi. quod 12 die Novembris Istud breve liberatum fuit Cancellario Anglie exequendum.

Henri by the Grace of God King of England and of Fraunce, and Lord of Irland.

To the most Reverend Fadre in God John Archbishop of Canterbury Primat of all Englande and of the Apostolique See Legat, oure Chauncellor Greting, forasmuch as William Brugges otherwise called Garter King of Arms - - - - - oure Graunte by our Letters Patentes beryng Date at Westminster the xxvi day of April in the viith yere of oure Reigne xx l. to be taken yerely as long as it plesid - - - - - termes of Saint Michael and Pasche by even Portions of the Ferme of our Citee of Wynchestre by the Handes of the Citezens of the same Citee for the tyme - - - - - in oure said Letters more plainly it appiereth, is in wille to restore the same Letters into our Chauncellerie, there to be Cancelled to th'intent that it myght like us - - - - - unto him and to Agnes his Wyf, the said xx l. for terme of their lyves, We therefore havying Consideration unto the long and continuell Services that - - - - - William Brugges otherwise called Garter Kyng of Arms hath doon unto the Kyng my Lord and Fadre, whom God pardonne, and unto us, and desirith in the tyme to come, have of oure Grace Especiale graunted unto him, and to Agnes his Wyf xx l. to be taken hereby from the Fest of Saint Michel last passed, during their lyves and the lyfe - - - - - either of them longer lyvyng, at the termes of Estre and Michilmasse by even Portions, of the Ferme of our Citee of Wynchestre by the hands of - - - - - Citizens of the same Citee for the tyme being, that noo mention is here made of other gifts and Graunts by us or our progenitours made unto the said William Brugges, otherwise called Garter Kyng of Armes, after the fourme of the Statutes in that Behalf made and ordeyned, or any Statute, Act, Ordenance, or restraint made into the contrarie notwithstanding: Woll therefore and Charge you that receyved towards you the said Letters Patentes, and them with theyr enrollement in oure said Chauncerie Cancelled, and adnulled, ye doo make upon this oure Graunt unto the said William Brugges and Agnes his Wyf other oure Letters Patentes undre oure Grete Seal in due fourme. Yiven undre oure Prive Seal at Westminster the xi day of November the Yere of our Regne xxiiii.

Frank.

Constat de interlatione istorum verborum, from the fest of St. Michil last passed, per me

Th. Beaumont.

Pat.



*Kentish* Town, the King for the better Accommodation thereof, i grants him 20 Foot, to be taken out of the High-Way, in Order to make a Ditch or Pool for Defence of the said House, and that without any Fine for the same: At this Place he is said to have entertained the

Pat. 24 H. 6. p. 1. m. 11. Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem, Sciatis pro eo quod *Willielmus Brugges* alias dictus *Garter Rex Armorum* habens ex Concessione nostra per literas nostras Patentes Datam portantes apud Westmonasterium, Vicesimo Sexto die Aprilis Anno Regni nostri Septimo, Viginti libras percipiendas Annuatim, quamdiu nobis placuerit, ad terminos Sancti Michaelis & Pasche, per equales portiones de ferma Civitatis nostre *Wyntonie*, per manus Civium ejusdem Civitatis pro tempore Existentium. prout in Literis nostris predictis plenius apparet, in Voluntate existit eisdem Literas in Cancellariam nostram restituere, cancellandas, ad effectum, quod nos predictas Viginti libras eidem *Willielmo* et *Agneti* Uxori ejus pro termino Vitæ eorundem concedere dignaremur; Nos proinde quod predictus *Willielmus Brugges*, alias dictus *Garter Rex Armorum* dictas literas de Concessione predicta Nobis in Cancellariam nostram restituit Cancellandas, Considerantesque diutina & Continua Servicia, quæ præfatus *Willielmus Brugges* alias dictus *Garter Rex Armorum*, tam carissimo Domino & Patri nostro Regi Defuncto, quam nobis impendit, & imposterum impendere desiderat, de Gratia nostra speciali Concessimus præfato *Willielmo* & *Agneti* uxori ejus Viginti libras, percipiendas annuatim a festo Sancti Michaelis ultimo præterito, durante vita eorum, & alterius eorum diutius viventis, ad terminos Pasche & Sancti Michaelis, per æquales portiones, de ferma Civitatis nostre *Wyntonie* per manus Civium Ejusdem Civitatis pro tempore Existentium, eo quod expressa mentio de aliis donis & Concessionibus eidem *Willielmo Brugges* alias dicto *Garter Regi Armorum* per Nos aut Progenitores nostros juxta formam Statutorum in hac parte factorum, sive Ordinatorum, aut aliquo statuto, actu, ordinatione, sive Restrictione in Contrario factum non existente, non obstante. In cujus, &c. Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium 12 die Novembris. Per breve de privato Sigillo, et de Data predicta, &c.

b Memorandum quod istud breve liberatum fuit Cancellario Angliæ apud Westmonasterium vii die Januarii Anno subscripto Exequendum.

Ex Originali in Turri— Henry by the Grace of God, King of Engelande and Fraunce, and Lorde of Irelande, to the moost worshipful fader in God *John* Archebishop of Canterbury Primat of all Engelande, and of th'appostolique See legat, oure Chaunceller griting. Forasmuche as we have understande by a supplication presented unto Us by oure welbeloved Servant *William Brugges* otherwise called *Garter King of Arms*, howe he hath bilded a place for his habitation in *Kentishtown* within the Countee of *Middlesex*, the which place had a Close of the same *Williams* thereto longing lyeth and joineth to oure high Wey betwix *London* and *Haryngey* parc, to whiche place and Close so joyning to oure said Wey Excedeth not in lengthe xxvi Roddes, Every Rodd conteigning xvi foot and an half, and oure said high way before the said place, being of the Brede of fourscore fote and more, we have of oure habundante Grace Graunted unto oure said servant Parcell of oure said high Wey, that is to saye xx foot in brede, and next adjoyning to his said place, and Close, as far and after the lengthe, as the said place and Close lyeth and Joineth to oure said high

Wey, To have and to hold the said Parcell of oure high way to oure said Servant, his heires, and Assignees for ever. And that if it be laful to oure said Servant, his heires and Assignees to Enclose, and sever the said parcell from oure said high Wey afore specified, and thereof to make a dyche, or a Mote in defence and strengthening of the said place, and Close without any Empechement, fine or Amercement, or any thing yelding to us, or oure heirs for the same parcell, howbeit that Expreffe mention is not made herein of other yiftes, and Graunts maad by us unto oure said Servant, or that the verray yerely value of the said Parcell is not Expressed herein, or any Statut, Aet, or ordonnance in suche behalfe heretofore, maad, ordeigned, or provided notwithstanding. Wherefore we woll and Charge you that hereupon yee do make oure Letters patentes undre oure Greet Seel in due fourme: yeven under our prive Seal at oure Castell of *Wyndesore* the xxvii day of *December* the Yere of oure Reigne xxiiii.

Pat. 24 H. 6. p. 2. m. 34. Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem: Sciatis quod nos per supplicationem nobis ex parte dilecti servitoris nostri *Willielmi Brugges* alias dicti *Garteri Regis Armorum* nobis exhibitam intelleximus, qualiter ipse quandam mansionem pro habitatione sua in *Kentishtown* in Comitatu *Middlesexie* ædificavit, quæ quidem mansio, et Clausum predicti *Willielmi* eidem Mansioni pertinens, jacent & abuttant altæ viæ nostræ inter Civitatem *Londonensem* & parcum de *Haryngey*, quæ Mansio et Clausum viginti et sex Virgas in Longitudine, qualibet Virga sexdecim pedes et dimidium continente, minime excedunt, viâ nostræ prædictæ latitudinem quater viginti pedum, et ultra continente, de habundanti Gratia nostra concessimus eidem Servitori nostro parcellam dictam Viæ nostræ, videlicet viginti pedes in latitudine proximos mansioni et Clauso prædictis adjacentes, tam procul in longitudine prout Mansio & Clausum prædicta viæ nostræ prædictæ jacent et Abuttant, Habendum et Tenendum prædictam viam nostram prædictam separare, et in defensionem et fortitudinem Mansionis & Clausi prædictorum fossatum sive stagnum inde facere, absque Impetitione, Fine, Amerciamento, aut aliquo alio Nobis vel Hæredibus nostris pro eadem Parcella reddendis, eo quod Expressa mentio de vero valore parcellæ prædictæ, aut de aliis Donis & Concessionibus per nos eidem Servitori Nostro ante hæc tempora factis in præsentibus minime facta existit, aut aliquo Statuto, Actu, vel ordinatione in contrarium factum ordinatum, seu provisum non obstantibus, in cujus, &c. Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium vii die Januarii— Per breve de privato Sigillo & de data prædicta auctoritate Parliamenti.

c Priv. Sigil. in Turri London. Henri, by the Grace of God Kyng of Engelande and of Fraunce and Lorde of Irelande, To the most Reverend Fader in God *John* Archiebishop of Caunterbury, Primat of alle Engelande oure Chaunceller Gretyng. We wol and charge you, that unto oure welbeloved servant *William Brugges* otherwise called *Garter King of Armes* ye make to be delivered oure letters patentes, remanyng in oure hanaper, withoute fyn, or fee to oure use, takyng, Eny restreint or Comandement made to the contrary notwithstanding, by the which oure



the Emperor Sigismund, <sup>d</sup> which if true, must be done before he was Garter.

And 19 July, was sent with the Bishop of Chichester, and the Lord Duddely the King's <sup>e</sup> Ambassadors, when the Ratification of the Treaty, between the Kings of England and France, was delivered to the Maister of Requests of the King of France by <sup>f</sup> Garter King of Armes. In this Year he received 29 l. for his Costs in going with <sup>g</sup> Messages to the King of France, and the King of Sicily in Lorain, as in <sup>h</sup> Michaelmas Term 13 l. 6 s. 8 d. for going to the King of France with certain Letters and Instructions, and in Easter Term, first 40 Marks being sent with the <sup>i</sup> Ambassadors, and then 13 l. 6 s. 8 d. being sent with <sup>k</sup> Lettres to the King of France.

In 25 Hen. VI, he was paid with Coler Pursevant 40 l. for his Attendance on the King's <sup>l</sup> Embassadors into France, at which Time he was present at the Duels between <sup>m</sup> John Chalons an Englishman, and Louis du Beul a Frenchman, before the Kings of France and Sicily, the Dukes of Orleans, Bretagne, and several others; and when the latter insisted to know if the Englishman had any Right to the Arms he displayed, and though the Duke of Orleans verified the same, yet the King would not be satisfied till Garter had certified more at large the Nobility and Gentry of this Chalons, who at length killed the Frenchman at the sixth Course: On 25 July <sup>n</sup> following he received 25 l. expended by him in his being

oure Letters we graunted unto him, and his Heires, a parcel of oure high way before his place in Kenistown in the Counte of Middlesex betwixt London and Haryngey parc. Yeven under oure prive Seal at oure Castell of Wyndesore the xx day of April the Yere of oure Reigne xxiii.

<sup>d</sup> See above, p. 322.

<sup>e</sup> Acta Concilii 19 Julie 24 H. 6. 34 B. 31. Bishop of Chichester, and Lord Duddely the King's Ambassadors, Garter to go with them, and a Pursevant; Garter shall have for his going as he had for his last, and Coler shall have as he had before. Bibl. Harley.

Priv. Sig. xx of Juyl 24 H. 6. to the Clerk of the Hanper to pay the Bishop of Chichester and Lord Duddely, whome we now send in our Ambassage to oure Uncle in France— And to Gatter Kyng of Herauldes, the which goeth with oure said Ambassadeurs in the said viage xl. marcs of oure rewarde, and also to Coler Pursevant that goeth with hem v. marcs, and also to Leon d'or a pursevant that goeth with hem in the said viage Cs. of reward.

By the Way, the Arms of this Lord were Or, a Lion rampant Vert, and this Leon d'or Pursevant is expressly said to be his Officer, and to have been present at the Duel al oultrance between Chalons and Du Bueil, before the King of France in 1446. F. 3. penes me, p. 35. See 24 B. 9. p. 9. in Bibl. Harley.

<sup>f</sup> L'Histoire Chronologique du Charles VII, bound up with Chartier, p. 428.

1445 Le Roy de France renvoya devers le Roy de Angleterre son neveu, Maistre Guillaume Cousin et Conseiller & Maistre des Requestes de son hostel, & Jean Hauart son Vailer trenchant, lesquels confirmerent les dites Trefues jusques au Mois d'Avril. Et apres le retour d'iceux le Roy d'Angleterre, renvoya Farretiere son Roy d'Armes devers le Roy de France, lequel apporta lettres Patents du Roy d'Angleterre, coment il promittoit en parole de Roy d'estre & venir deca la mer, pour

traiter du bien de la Paix & de Convenir & Conclure avec le Roy de France dedans le premier Jour de Novembre prochainement venant. Vide Rymer, vol. 11. p. 123. Monstrelet, vol. 3. p. 3.

<sup>g</sup> Exit. Pell. m. 24 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum pro Custubus in eundo in Nuncio Regis versus Avunculum suum de France. & etiam versus Regem Cecilia in partibus de Loreyn 29 l.

<sup>h</sup> Exit. Pell. m. 24 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum misso ad presens versus Avunculum Regem de Francia cum certis Literis & Instructionibus dicto avunculo suo directis 13 l. 6 s. 8 d.

<sup>i</sup> 22 Dec. 24 H. 6. (in officio Pellium) Henri, &c. To the Tresorer, &c. Forasmuche as we send at this tyme our truste and Welbeloved Garter King of Armes with certain Letters and Instructions unto our Oncle of France, ye pay xl. marcs.

Exit. Pell. P. 24 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum misso cum Ambassiatoribus Regis versus Avunculum suum de Francia in persolutionem xl. marcarum.

<sup>k</sup> Exit. Pell. P. 24 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum nuper misso per Dominum Regem cum certis Literis & Instructionibus ipsius Domini Regis Avunculo suo de Francia directis 13 l. 6 s. 8 d.

<sup>l</sup> Exit. Pell. m. 25 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum & Coler Pursevant, quos Dominus Rex misit ad presens cum Ambassiatoribus suis supradictis versus Avunculum suum Francia xl marc. i. e. cum Johanne Domino de Dudley & Episcopo Cicestræ.

<sup>m</sup> 34 B. 9. in Bibl. Harley, p. 9. In F. 3. penes me, p. 35. is not only the Narrative in a Contemporary Hand, but all the Feats of Arms are painted.

<sup>n</sup> Exit. Pell. P. 25 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum xlv l. viz. 25 l. pro tantis denariis de Bonis propriis per ipsum expenditis nuper missum cum Ambassiatoribus Regis versus partes Franciæ, & 20 l. pro eo quod ad presens versus partes Exteras cum Ambassiatoribus Regis profecturus est.

S f f f

lately



lately with the King's Ambassadors in *France*, and 20 *l.* more being going thither again with the King's Ambassadors, by whom he was sent to the ° *Dauphin*, in which Journey he was Employed for six Months.

In *Michaelmas* Term, 26 *Hen. VI.* he had 8 *l.* more than his *p* former Reward for that Attendance, and 26 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* for his *q* Expences for his present Message, with Letters to the King of *France*, having *Blew-mantle* then to wait on him, and in *Easter* Term following was sent with *r* Instructions to the King's Ambassadors, then in *Forreign* Parts, and with Letters to the King of *France*; in which Year *William Godyng* grants to him *s* an yearly Rent; and in 27 *H. VI.* had brought over *t* Articles from the Duke of *Somerset* Lieutenant General of *France*, to which Answers were given; he was again sent in *u* *November* with Letters to the King of *France*, in which he expended more Money than had been advanced to him, which was *x* reimbursed to him, and returned the same Year

o 24 July 25 *H. 6.* (in officio Pellium) *Henri, &c.* To the Tresorer, &c. We have understande by the Supplication of our Trusty and Welbeloved *Gartier* King of Armes, how by oure Comandement he hath entended in Oure Service upon our Ambassatours last sent from us unto oure Oncle of *France*, during their abiding there, and after their Expedition he was sent by them unto oure Cousin the *Dauphin* unto his Lordship of the *Dauphiny*, with suche our Letters and Charge, as our said Ambassatours had from us unto the same oure Cousin, if he had ben with oure Oncle his fadre. In which Viage the said *Gartier* hath been occupied vi Moneths, and hath spende over the Rewarde to him by us assigned for the saide Voiage xxv *l.* of his owne, &c.

Priv. Sig. 30. Juyl. 25 *H. 6.* Ye delivere unto our trusty and welbeloved *Garter* King of Armes, which we — — — late in *France* with oure Ambassatours, yat we send yedre, and spend of his owne goods xxv *l.* over yat yat we hadde rewarded him for his saide going xxv *l.* of oure yift— And also to *Chester* the Heralde for his entendance to the Ambassatours of *France* nowe being in this our Reaume xx *l.* of oure yift, and also to the abovesaid *Garter* xx *l.* for his going over with the saide Ambassatours: And also to *Chester* the Heralde xx marc. for his going and entending nowe over see with our Ambassatours, &c.

p 14 Nov. 26 *H. 6.* (in officio Pellium) *Henri, &c.* To the Tresorer, &c.— We late you wite that we having in Consideration, how that by our Comandement our Trusty and welbeloved Servant *Garter* King of Armes hath attended upon our Ambassadeurs, that we last sent to oure Oncle of *France*, where over the Rewards assigned to him he hath spent viii *l.* &c.

Ex. Pell. m. 26 *H. 6.* *Gartero* Regi Armorum, qui ex Mandato Regis attendebat circa Ambassiatores ultimos missos versus Avunculum Regis de *Francia* viii *l.* pro tantis denariis per ipsum de bonis propriis expenditis, ultra Regardum sibi per Dominum Regem pro eadem causa factum.

q 27 Janrui 26 *H. 6.* (in Officio Pellium) *Henri, &c.* To the Tresorer, &c. Forasmuch as at this tyme We send our Trusty and Welbeloved *Gartier* King of Armes in Oure Message with certeine oure letters unto our Oncle of *France*, ye do pay xl marcs, and also unto *Blew-mantell* oure Pursevant going and awayting upon the said *Garter* in the said Vyage ye pay x marc.

Exit. Pell. m. 26 *H. 6.* *Gartero* Regi Armorum, quem Dominus Rex misit ad presens in Nunciis suis cum Certis Literis versus Avunculum suum de *Francia* 26 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*

Exit. Pell. m. 26 *H. 6.* *Blew-mantell* Pursevant proficicenti & attendenti cum predicto *Gartero* in Viagio predicto 6 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*

r 17 Aug. 26 *H. 6.* (in Officio Pellium) *Henri, &c.* To the Tresorer, &c.— Forasmuch as we send at this time our Welbeloved Servant *Garter* King of Armes with certain Instructions and Lettres unto our Ambassatours over the See, and also with Letters unto our Oncle of *France* and other places ye pay l. marc.

Exit. Pell. P. 26 *H. 6.* *Gartero* Regi Armorum misso cum certis Instructionibus & literis Ambassiatoribus ipsius Domini Regis in partibus exteris existentibus, et etiam cum literis Avunculo Regi in *Francia*, & aliis directis 33 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

s Claus. 26 *H. 6.* m. 29. *Willielmus Godyng* concessit *Willielmo* Brigges alias dicto *Garter* Regi Armorum, &c.

t Ox. Orig. in Officio Pellium— Here followen Th'answers unto Th'articles which *Gartier* King of Armes declared by way of Credence unto the King our Sovereign Lord, and my Lords of his Counsaile, on the Behalfe of the High and Mighty Prince my Lord the Duke of *Somerset*, the Kings Lieutenant General of his Reaume of *France*, and Duches of *Normandy* and *Guyenne*, and other my Lordes the Kings Ambassatours now being in thoo parties, &c. 30 Oct. 27 *H. 6.*

u 19 Nov. 27 *H. 6.* (in Officio Pellium) *Henri, &c.* To the Tresorer, &c.— unto our Welbeloved Servant *Garter* King of Armes, whom we send at this time with certain Letters and Credence unto oure Oncle of *France*, ye do pay for his Costs 20 *l.*

Exit. Pell. m. 27 *H. 6.* *Gartero* Regi Armorum misso ad presens cum literis, & aliis Credentiis Regi avunculo ipsius Domini Regis in *Francia* 20 *l.*

Exit. Pell. m. 27 *H. 6.* *Gartero* Regi Armorum nuper misso cum certis Literis Regis versus avunculum suum de *Francia* in perfolucionem 16 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*

x In Officio Pellium— To the Right Cristen Kyng our Souverain Lorde.

Tour Highnesse most humble Servant *Garter* King of Armes to Consider, that from your seid Highness, he was comanded but late with your Letters and Message— *France*, for the which Message Servinge, to him was Comanded your Reward, over



Year from thence with *Columbers* Pursuivant, with Letters from the King of France.

And on the 12th of Febr. 28 H. VI. (1449) he made his <sup>2</sup> Will, inserted in the Margin, desiring he might be buried in the Midst of the Choir

over the whiche Reward, in the Viage your seid Servant hath dispended of his owne — — — your benigne Grace please it to your right high Excellence to Command, that Letters of Prive Sell and guarant direct to your Tresorer of Ingland He to recompence — — — your seid Servant of the seid Some, and this in wey of Charitee 20 Martii Anno 27 (H. 6.)

20 March, 27 H. 6. (in officio Pellium) Henri, &c. To the Tresorer, &c. — Forasmuche as late ago we sent oure welbeloved Servant Garter King of Armes, with certain oure Lerters unto oure Oncle of France; in which Journee, he hath spended of his own Good (as he saith) over such rewardes, as was assigned unto him for that Cause 16l. 13s. 4d. and we willing his Contentement in this behalf, &c.

29 July 27 H. 6. (in Officio Pellium) Henri, &c. To the Tresorer, &c. Forasmuche as late ago oure welbeloved Servant Garter King of Armes payed on our behalf unto oon *Columbier* Purservant comyng towards us with Messlage from our Oncle of France the Some of v marcs, ye paye him.

Exit. Pell. P. 27 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum 5 marc. propter Domini Regis *Columbers* Pursuant venientem versus dictum Dominum Regem cum certis Nunciis ab Avunculo suo de Francia, in denariis sibi liberatis, quas idem Rex dicto Gartero liberare mandavit pro tantis denariis per ipsum solutis dicto *Columbers* 66 s. 8d.

2. E. Registro Stafford Archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, p. 187. — In the name of the Fader, Son, and holy Gost iii persons in the — — — Trinite, and on sole God. Y *William Bruges* otherwise Cleped Garter Kyng of Armes, in my right and in my fresh Mynde, thugh the inspiration of the holy gost, the Thursday the xxvi day of Fevver the Yere of our Lord God MCCCCXIX, and the Yere of the Reigne of the Kyng Henry the sexte the xxviii, I make this my present Testament and last Will, as for first and formost Y bequethe my Soule to the gret Mercy of oure Lord God *Jesu*, that suffred peyne and passion of his gret mercy to bring my wretched Soule from the Carnal peyne and dampnacion to the eternal blysse, and redemption, and to that gret mercy Y to be brought Y besече our blessed Lady Mayden and Wyf, that she of her gret grace and Goodness like and please to be mean and Immediatrice. And also I besече al the Glorious Seyntes and Seyntesses in heven, that they for thayre glorious Martyrdoms and Goodnesses pray to Almighty God, that so Y may find, and have also yf it be possible my body to be brought and buried in the Chirch of Seynt George within Staunford, there to be buried in the myddes of the Quere of the said Chirch; To the which said Church Y bequeath a gret halywater Scoppe of Sylver with a Staffe benature, the said benature and Staf weyng twenty Nobles in plate and more. Item, to the said Chirch Y bequethe a peyre of Censours of sylver, with a Ship of Sylver for Frankincense, and one Spone in the same Ship of Sylver. Item, I bequethe to the said Chirch a little hand bell of sylver of the gretnesse of a sacryng bell. Item, I bequethe to the same Chirch a little round Cofyn of Sylver closed in syngyng bred, and not the hoste. Item, Y bequethe to the said Chirch for their solempne

fest dayes, to stande upon the high awter two grete basyns of sylver, and two high Candlestyckes of sylver. Item y bequethe to the said Chirche One Coupe of Sylver, in the which is one litel box of yvory to put in the blessed Sacrament, and to hang over the high awter when the said Chauncell and redy closed and — — — round about. Item y bequethe to the said Chirche a gret Chalice overgilt of the Wight of Cs. to serve for their solempne festes. Item y bequethe to the said Church one hole sute of Vestmyntes of Russet Velvet, one Coope, Chesible, Diacones for Diacones with the awbes and parures, and two case corporasses of the same sute of Vestmyntes. Item I bequethe another hole sute to the said Chirch of Seynt George of black Velvet, one Chesible diacones for decones or Frees of white Clothe of Gold powdered with Garters, and two Casse Corporasses. Item Y bequethe and ordeyne, that the gret frame, that Y have lying in the gret berne in my place at *Kentishtown*, that it be sold to the most value, and the money rising therof to be bestowed upon the Compleshyng and ending of the said Chirch of Staunford, that is to be understand, in Coveryng with lede, glasyng, and makyng of pleyn desques, and of a pleyn Radeleft, and in puyng of the said Chirch nowzt Curiously, but pleynly, and in paving of as the hole Chirch body and quere with brode Holand Tyle, Item Y bequethe to the said Church of Seynt George a Solempnite of Array for the Fest of Corpus Christi, oon partie wrought in the plate of sylver and over gilt, and that other in tymbre, to be born between the Decon and Subdecon, the Tymbre is peynted and overgilt with fyne Gold, and for every signe of the passion an Aungell beryng the Signe of the Crosse, and of the Crowne of thorn, another Aungell beryng the pillour and the scourges, another Aungell beryng the Spere, and the Sponges, another Aungell beryng the remnaunt of the signes of the passion; and in the Middell of the feratorye a gret round black Corver, and one peynted with gold and asure, and paynted with Sterres of Gold, In the myddell of that round blok for a gret Coupe of Sylver and overgilt to stand one upon a Pynne of tre, And in the said Coupe a little box of sylver and overgilt to put in the Sacrament. This gret Coupe, and the litle togedir first to be set upon the gret blok of tre, a gret Crown of sylver and overgilt garnysht with Stones, Clepyd Dubletts redde, blue, grene, and yelow, and the said Crown garnysht with Counterfete Perles made of sylver, The Crown of the Weight of Cs. This Crown first to be set upon the gret round blok of tre, and tharine upon the pynne standyng in the said blok to be set the said grete Coupe of Sylver and overgilt, the said Coupe to be Crowned withoute with a small Crowne ordeyned redy therefore. Item I bequethe to the said feratorye a tabernacle wele y wrought of sylver, and overgilt of the Weight of v marcs, or thereabouts, goyng with a byll to be set on high upon the Coupe, and above upon the Poynt of the said Tabernacle a little Crosse of Sylver, and overgilt going also by a Vice, all this Plate that longeth to the Fest, that is to say of Corpus Christi, yf myn Executors semyn, that it should be in more sure Garde



Choir of the Church of St. George in *Stanford*, to which he gives many Legacies, and among others, a Suite of Black Velvet of St. George powdered with *Garters*, mentions his Chapel at *Kentish-town*, and gives some Vestments to a Chapel in the Church at *Sandwich*. In the Windows of this St. George's Church at *Stanford*, were formerly the Effigies of the first Founders of the *Gar*ter, and of the Knights Companions in the Time of this *Bruges*, whereof that of the Sovereign and three others now remain.

In an old Manuscript (after the List of the Fees paid *Bruges Garter*) he is there said to have "Festyd the <sup>a</sup> Imperour *Sigismond* at his owne " howse at *Kentish-town* and bylded the Church of St. George in *Stan-* " *ford* for the more part, and gave thereto also many oder gret yestys " and anorements, and to lodir Churches he gave gret yestys as Copys " and Westimentz and lyeth buried at *Stanford*.

He died, as appears by the Probate, before the 20th of *March* 1449, and his Son in Law *John Smert* succeeded him in this Office on the 28th, as appears from a Privy-Seal hereafter mention'd.

Thus died this excellent Herald, (which honourable <sup>b</sup> Testimony is given him by the King in a Record after his Death, in Reference doubt-

Garde of the Paryshors of the Chirche of oure Lady of *Staunford*, Y wold it should rest, and abide in the Garde of hem, and within theire Tresour, And atte the day of the Fest of *Corpus Christi*, hit to followe the Sacrament of the said Chirche of our Lady, if it plesse the Paryshors of the said Chirch, onlesse thanne they will have it serve for both. Item Y ordeyne and bequethe, that the two Chapells of our Ladye and Seynt George within the said Chirch of Seynt George be closed with Estrich Corde, and Clere storyed after such quantite as the Clofure of pleyn borde there now Containeth, and to the said Chappell of our Lady I bequethe two Images of our Lady, and Seynt George, being in peynted Stone, and in my Chapell at *Kentish-ton*. And to the same Chapell of our Lady of *Staunford* y bequethe my grete Candlestykes of *Laton*, that standen in my Chapell at *Kentish-ton*. Item I bequethe to the said Chirch of St. George of *Staunford* the Ymage of the Trinite of Stoon standyng in my Chapell of *Kentish-ton*, with the braunche of *Laton* for three Lights accordyng thereto, it to be sett upon a foot of Stone higher thanne the hedes of the ymages of oure Lady and Seynt George. Item I bequethe the faide finall Candlestikkas standyng in my Chapell at *Kentish-ton* to the new Chapell of oure Lady now in makyng in the same Towne. And as for the seyde three Ymages of Stone, that is to say, the ymages of the Trinite, oure Ladie, and Seynt George y wol have made for eiche of them a gret Coffin of Elmyne borde, the seid ymages to be nayled in fast, stuffed with hey, and so carried at my Cost unto *Staunford* and set up in the seid Chirch of St. George. Item the two less Candlestikkas to be set upon the awter of oure Lady in the said Towne of *Staunford*, and there to serve brennyng from the begynnyng of the Gospell unto the tyme that the Prest have used upon my Cost as my good Will suffice to Continue it every taper of half a pound wight. And every day a Masse to be saied of oure Lady. Item y ordeyne and wol, that the two greter Candlestikkas beyng in my said Chapell at *Staunford*, that they serve in the Chapell of oure Lady of *Staunford*, that on to stand upon the Ground afore the ymage of oure Lady, and that other afore the ymage of Seynt George in the same Chapell, and for eiche of these Candlestikkas to be ordeyned a taper of Wex

of one pound weight, and so served to be lighted atte dyvnye Service atte pryncipal Fest Dayes, and at other solempne fest, as at Matyns, pryme, Masse, and the two Even Songs. Item I bequethe and Ordeyne to the faide Chirch of Seynt George of *Staunford* a little Coffre standyng bounden with plate of yren full of Vestyments, except on Vestymment yf it be therein, and that is of black Satyn ground figured with rede Velvet, the Orfreyes wrought with the Needle with ymages, the which said Vestymment y wold it serve for oure Lady Chapell in *Staunford* only. Item y Ordeyne and bequethe to the Chapell of our Lady in Seynt *Mary* Chirch at *Sandwich* an half long gown of purpell Velvet furred with martrons, of that to be made a Cheffible with the parures, and with the furre to be bouzt and ordeyned the Orfreyes lyke to the Orfreyes of the single vestymment of black Satyn lyned with rede Velvet. And yf the said furre of Martrons wol not suffice to ordeyne the said Orfreyes, myn Executors to put to such money, as they may have of myn to the percomplishing of the seide Orfreyes, and so ended to be delivered to the said Chirch. Item y bequethe to the said Chapell of oure Lady in Seynt *Mary* Chirch of *Sandwich* the Chalice of Sylver, and overgilt, that my Wyf hath and myn Executors to make for the same Chalice two small Netts of Sylver, and overgilt of the price of xx s. and thanne my wyf to send it to the said Chirche. The Residue of my Goodes after my Dettes payed, I geve and bequethe to *Anneys* my Wyf. And this my testament Y make and Ordeyne the same *Anneys* my wyf principal Executrice, *Tho. Haddon* her Brother coexecutour to her, and Maister *Clement Denston* Clerk Overseer of the same my Testament, that they ordeyne and dispose for my Soule, as they shall seme best to the plesire of God, and to the profite of my Soule. Yeven at *London* the day and Yere abovefaid.

Probatum coram Domino apud *Lamehith* xiimo die Mensis Martii A. D. MCCCCXLIX. Commissaque fuit Administratio Executoribus in dicto Testamento nominatis.

<sup>a</sup> E. Manuscripto Vetusto penes Ducem de *Montague*, p. 79 b.

<sup>b</sup> See the Patent to his Successor in this Office.

less



less to his Personal Abilities and Talents in Business, beyond the common Standard of other Heralds, and not in Respect of the Office only, full of Years, having been *Garter* above 30 Years, and an Officer of Arms about 52 Years, from the Time he was made *Chester*; and if he served, according to the Usage of that Age, seven Years before as a Pursuant, he must be very old at his Death, and from his constant Employments in the Service of the Publick, even to the last Period of his Life, it appears he enjoyed great Health and Vigour.

The Pictures of him and his Lady kneeling, with the Pourtraictures of three Daughters behind them, were heretofore in a Window of the Chapel founded by him at *Stamford*, whereof there was a Draught taken before the Glass was broken, and he is the Person represented (as 'tis supposed) in the Posture of Devotion to *St. George*, by the Type in Mr. *Ashmole's* History.

His Lady survived him, and doubtless enjoyed the Pension for her Life, to whom *Thomas Iwe* and others entred into a Recognizance in 31 H. VI, and having in the 33d Year made over her Goods to *John Smert* her Son in Law the succeeding *Garter*, there happened divers Suits in Chancery between them after the Death of her Daughter *Katherine* whom he had married, till at Length he reconveys them back to her again: The Proceedings are abridged in the Margin, because he is stiled only *John Garter* without

c D. 3. penes me, p. 53.

d *Ashmole's History of the Garter between*, p. 642, and 643.

e Claus. 31 H. 6. m. 20. dorso—*Tho. Iwe*, & alii tenentur *Agneti*, quæ fuit uxor *Willi. Brugges* alias dicti *Gartier* nuper Regis Armorum.

f *Billa in Cancellaria in Turre London.*

To the Right Noble and Gracious Lord the Erle of *Salisbury* Chaunceller of *England*, Besechith mekely your Contynnuell Oratour *Agnes Brugges* late the Wyfe of *William Brugges* otherwise called *William Garter* sometyne Kyng of *Armes*, that whereas your said besechir was taken with a Grete Infirmittee, of the which your said besecher wened to have died, at the which tyme she was in purpose to make her Testament, &c. Thereupon oon *John Smert* now called *John Garter* Kyng of *Armes*, which at that time hadde wedded oon *Katherine* doghter of your said besechir now ded, came to your besecher sayiug by words of plesaunce, Moder, yf ye make your Testament yn manner and forme as ye are purposed to doo, it shall never take Effecte ne be Execute, &c. for your brother *Thomas Haddon*, which is Coexecutor with you of your said husbondes Testament will take and occupie as well your propre goodes, as the goodes of your said husbond your Testator, wherfor, Moder, I counsell you to make a Deed of Gyft of your Good, which she did to *William Venor* Wardein of the Fleet, and to the seid *John Smert* whereon the said *John Smert* divers Goods mentioned in the Schedule claymes and keeps as his own propre Goods, &c.

Schedule. Theys been the Goodes, which wer *William Brugges* otherwyse called *William Garter* Kyng of *Armes*.

Fyrste two Cotes of the Kyng's *Armes* price xiii l. vii s. viii d. &c.

In *Turre London*. This is the Replication of *Agnes* late wife of *William Brugges* otherwise called *William Garter* late Kyng of *Armes* to the Answer of *John Garter* King of *Armes*.

As to the first Article of the Answer of the said *John*, wherein as he confesseth that he Counselled the said *Agnes* to make a Gyfte of her goodes to suche persons as she trust unto, the which—*Agnes* by the same Councell made a Gyft of all her goodes to *William Venour* Warden of the Fleet, and to the said *John Garter*—to the use of the said *Agnes*, and to thentent, to fulfill as wele the Wyll of the said *Agnes*, as the Wille of the forsaide *William Brugges* late her husband, wherfore the said *Agnes* prayeth, that the said *John Garter* may be Coarted to make a Gifte ageyn of all the Goods and Chattels to the said *Agnes*: And furthermore, whereas the said *John Garter* surmiserh in his said Answer, that after the Death of the said *William Brugges*, and before the said Gyfte, that she should gyf to the said *John Garter* 2 Cotes of the Kings *Armes*—the said *Agnes* saith, that after the dethe of the said *William Brugges*, He came to the said *Agnes*, and desired to borrowe of her two Coates of *Armes*, at such tyme, as he was new elyte to the same Office of King of *Armes*, that the said *William Brugges* had, and was not proveyd of such Cotes of *Armes*, as longeth to the said Office, And for Consideration that he had wedde her doghter, she sent them only, but did not give them, &c.

She saith, that after the deth of the said *William Brugges*, late her husband, at such time as *Kateryn* her doghter late wyf to the said *John* lay seke, she lent a fedyrbed and a Pelaw, &c.

g Claus. 33 H. 6. m. 9.—Omnibus, &c. *Johannes Smert* alias dictus *Johannes Gartier* Rex Armorum Salutem. Cum *Agnet* nuper uxor *Willielmi Brugges* alias dicti *Willielmi Gartier* Regis Armorum per quoddam Scriptum dederit mihi omnia

T t t

nia



without his Surname: This *Agnes* was, (as appears in her Husband's Will) Sister to *William Haddon*.

His Arms were Ermine, a Cross Ermines Square pierced of the Field, which still remain in one of the Windows in *St. George's Church* in *Stamford*, Empaling Sable, a Cheveron between three Wolve's Heads *Coupé* Argent, Collar'd Or. In the Top of the same Window were his Arms, formerly surrounded with a Towell, wherein was a Word or Motto, that *Mr. Thinne Lancaster* Herald could not read in his Time.

As this Person filled this Post with Sufficiency, so this Employment was at that Time a Place of considerable Revenue: The Royal Founder indeed died without making any Settlement upon him, but his Successor by two Patents granted Sixty Pounds yearly, and though it might be interpreted a Breach of Decency to compare these Annuities with the Salaries then given to Officers in high Stations, yet to make an Estimate of the Value of Money in that Age, it can be no Offence to refer to the Stat. 2 H. 5. c. 2. where the Summ of Nine Marks is the utmost that is allowed for a *competent* Portion to a Parish Priest or Vicar. The annual Pensions first settled upon him by the Companions were intended to be only temporary, and to cease when a sufficient Provision should be made by the Crown for his Support; but from the Continuance of the Payment of these annual Pensions to him after these two Grants from the Crown, we may collect that the Companions esteemed these two Annuities not adequate for his Maintenance answerable to the Dignity of his Office. He had Robes annually delivered to him, and received his Diet in the Household in the honorary Degree of Baron Service, and was allowed there a limited Number of Servants and Horses. These were certain Incomes and Allowances, but the contingent occasional Profits and Largeesses might surpass them besides the Fees for Installations, and other Transactions in the Order; for we find him frequently in Embassies, and carrying Messages to Forreign Princes, and attending on our Embassadors abroad, or upon Forreign Embassadors sent hither; and in all those Cases he was not only paid by the Crown, according to the Number of Dayes he was thus employed, but according to the generous Customs of that Age was also rewarded by the Forreign Princes, to whom he was thus sent: It was the Magnificence of those Times to make ample Gifts to the Officers of Arms, and even to those who brought Defiances or challenged a Time and Place of Battel. There were occasional Fees due to these Officers, as well in Times of War as Peace, in some of them *Garter* had a separate Fee to himself, and in others participated in a Dividend with the Whole Fraternity: In Forreign Wars they all had stated Liveries and daily Wages according to their Degrees, and in Civil Commotions or Rebellions had large Perquisites; they received Droicts for the first displaying of Banners, and were rewarded by the Generals of the adverse Party, to whom they carried Messages, and frequently by the Towns which they summoned.

nia & Singula bona sua Mobilia, &c. Noveritis  
me præfatum *Johannem Smert* alias dictum *Johan-*  
*nem Garter* Regem Armorum per præsentis dedisse

præfatæ *Agnetæ Brugges* omnia bona prædicta 13 Feb.  
33 H. 6.  
b D. 3. penes me, p. 33.

In



In Times of Peace they not only were paid for their Attendance on all Solemn Ceremonies and Festivals at Home, but were often sent abroad upon such Occasions, where they received large Gratifications. They had Fees from the Sovereign for his and the Queen's Coronation, upon his Marriage, and of all the Royal Family, for their Christnings, the Churching of the Queen, for the Knighthood of the Sovereign, and of all the Sons of the Royal Family, for their Attendances at the great Festivals of the Year, and whenever the King kept his Estate Royal, or wore his Crown; for the King's Entry into Towns in his Progresses, for Solemn Cavalcades and Triumphs, for the Interviews and Congresses of Princes, as also for the Funerals of their Sovereigns, and the Obsequies which were formerly observed for Foreign Princes; and they received Fees also from the Nobility upon their Creations, as well from the Crown; for the Introductions of Lords into Parliament, even when the Title came to them by Descent; on their Marriages, the Christnings of their Children, and Churchings of their Ladies; for all the several Degrees of Knighthood, when the highest Nobility at that Time esteemed it their greatest Honour to have Knighthood conferred on them; for the performing of Homages, and upon all Justs, Tilts, and Tournaments, as well from the Crown as the Tilters, for the Funerals of the Nobility and Gentry, for Grants of Arms, which three latter Articles were formerly very beneficial.

II. *John Smert* the Second *Garter* was a *Norman* by Birth, tho' *Hall* saith otherwise; but he is certainly mistaken, for *Philip de Comines*, a contemporary Witness and well acquainted with him, ought to be fully credited in this Particular: He was *Guyenne* [Herald] and Son [in Law] to *Bruges-Garter*, at whose Death, being beyond Sea by the King's Command with the Dutcheſs of *Burgundy*, upon his Return, he <sup>m</sup> petitions the King for the Place of *Garter*, which was granted him by the Title of *Rex Armorum de Gartera*,

i *Stow's Annals*, ad 14 E. 4.

k *Hall's Life of E. 4.* p. 38.

l *Comines l. 4. c. 5. p. 214.*

m 28 March (28 H. 6.) In Offic. Pell.

To the Kyng oure Souverain Lorde.

Besechith mekly to your Highnesse, your most humble Servant *John Smert* otherwise called *Guyen* your Heraude, that whereas now late he beyng in your Service beyonde the See, by the Commandement of your Highnesse, charged with your Letters unto the Noble Princeſſe your Cosyn the Duchesse of *Burgoyne*, his Fader *Garter* youre Servaunt the Kyng of Armes, whos Soule God assoile, died, the which was to the right grete hinderyng and hurt of your said besechir, because of his Absence, withoute your more special Grace, wherfore please hit your high and Noble Grace Consideryng the long and Contynull Service, that his said Fadir *Garter* hath doon unto your Highnesse, and to your Noble Progenitours, Kinges of Noble mynde, and for the Service, that your said Bisecher hath, and shall doo to You Souverain Lorde with Goddes Grace in tyme comyng, to Cree and to graunte to your said bisecher the Name and Office of his said Fader of the *Garter* with suche Fee, as shall seme unto your Highnesse Convenyent by th'advice of the Lordes of

youre Counsaile, after the Merites and desertes of your said bisecher, At the Reverence of God, and in Way of Charite. And your said Bisecher shall pray to God for You.

(Endorsed.) Cum Dominus Noster Rex creverit, & Creaverit infraſcriptum Supplicantem in Regem Armorum de *Gartera* ut inferius ſpecificatur, reſervando taxationem feodi dicti Officii diſcretionibus Dominorum de Conſilio ſuo xxviii Marci Anno, &c. xxxviii. in Palatio Weſtmonaſterii, Idem Dominus Rex per avifaſamentum Concilii ſui taxavit dictum feodum ad xx libras, percipiendas annuatim per dictum ſupplicantem pro termino Vitæ ſuæ, apud Receptam Scaccarii ejuſdem Domini noſtri Regis apud Weſtmonaſterium, per Manus Theſaurarii & Camerariorum ibidem pro tempore Exiſtentium ad Feſta Paſchæ & Sancti Michaelis, per æquales portiones, præſentibus Dominis Cancellario, Cantuarienſi, Wintoniæ, Elien. Cromwell, Duddeley. & aliis.

T. Kent,

n *Rymer, Vol. 11. p. 263.* — Pat. 28 H. 6. p. 2. m. 25. Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem. Sciatis quod cum non novum eſſe conſtet, ſet jam inde



tera, with the Salary of 20*l.* yearly by reason of that Office, to be paid at the Receipt of the Exchequer. In a Manuscript he is said to have been a most sufficient <sup>o</sup> Lawyer in *Westminster-Hall*, and thence made *Gar*ter, being no Officer of Arms before, but the latter is certainly a Mistake.

This *Smert* was probably the Person, who the Year before, by the Title of *Guyen Herald*, was sent the King's <sup>p</sup> Ambassador into Forreign Parts, and afterwards into <sup>q</sup> *Scotland*, and in the Beginning of the 28th Year of *Hen. VI.* went with the King's <sup>r</sup> Letters into the North, and attended there on some Ambassadors, and then sent to the <sup>s</sup> Dutcheſs of *Burgundy*, who likewise paid a Reward given by the King to *Columber's* <sup>t</sup> Purſevant.

Being thus constituted *Gar*ter, on the 3d of *April* 28 *H. 6.* he was on the 16th of that Month sent to the <sup>u</sup> King of *Scots*, in which Year he granted <sup>x</sup> Arms to one *Mille*, and in 29 *H. VI.* was twice sent to the Sea Coast to expect the <sup>y</sup> Arrival of *Earl Douglas* of *Scotland*, in his Return

de ab antiquis uſitarum, ut inter cæteros, quos lateribus Principum pro eorum Gloria & Magnificentia Officiales & Seruitores adhærere decet, non minoris quam prudentiſſimæ æſtimationis eorum eſſe conditio debeat, quibus Armorum in Officiis cura atque labor committi ſolet: Cogitantibus itaque nobis dato pridem per egregium *Haraldum Gar*terum Armorum Regem naturæ Tributo, de Perſona quæ Officium illud merito gauderet, in Medium illico proſilierunt fidelia illa, & non minus obſequioſa ſervitia per dilectum nobis *Johannem Smert Guyenne* vulgariter nuncupatum *Haraldum* Armorum, illo Officio plurimum Nobis impenſa, & illum adeo apud Nos magnificerunt, ut cui dictum Officium Vacans conferamus habiliorem ejus Ordinis comperimus eo Neminem: Hiis igitur & aliis Conſiderationibus moti eundem *Johannem Smert* (modo *Guyenne Haraldum* nuncupatum) in Regem Armorum de *Gar*tera Erexiſimus, Creaviſimus ac Feciſimus, Erigiſimusque, Creamus, & Facimus per præſentes. Habendum cum Nomine, Titulo, cæterisque Juriſus, & Proſicuis illi Officio ab antiquo debitis & Conſuetis. Etiam præterea de Gratia noſtra ſpeciali, & matura Deliberatione Dominorum de Conſilio noſtro Conceſſimus, atque Tenore Præſentium Concedimus præſato *Johanni Smert*, ſic ut præferatur in Regem Armorum de *Gar*tera erecto, ratione Officii illius Viginti libras, habendas et percipiendas annuatim pro termino Vitæ ſuæ ad Receptionem ſcaccarii noſtri *Angliæ* per Manus Theſaurarii & Camerariorum Noſtrorum ibidem pro tempore Exiſtentium ad Feſta Paſchæ & Sancti Michaelis per æquales Portiones: In Cujus, &c. Teſte Rege apud *Westmonaſterium* tertio die Aprilis.

<sup>o</sup> G. 10. penes me, p. 25. Lants Observaciones in Officio Armorum, p. 8.

<sup>p</sup> 14 July 27 *H. 6.* (in Officio Pellium) *Henri, &c.* To the Treſorer, &c. Forasmuch as we ſend oure Trusty and welbeloved *Guyen Herald* of Armes in Oure Ambaſſiate into divers Countrees out of this our Reaume, ye pay him xx marcs.

Exit. Pell. P. 27 *H. 6.* *Guyen Herald*o Armorum miſſo in Ambaſſiatore Regis ad diverſas partes Extraneas x*l.*

<sup>q</sup> 30 Aug. 27 *H. 6.* (in Officio Pellium) *Henri, &c.* To the Treſorer, &c. unto oure welbeloved Servant *Guyenne Herald* of Armes, whom we ſende at this tyme unto the Marches of *Scottelande* to Entende upon oure Ambaſſatours, ſuch as we have Ordeigned to Continue and entrete with thambatours of *Scotteland* in ſuch Matiers as we have Comanded tham, ye pay 10*l.*

Exit. Pell. P. 27 *H. 6.* *Guyen Herald*o miſſo verſus partes *Scotia* in Nuncio Regis C*s.*

<sup>r</sup> (In Officio Pellium) *Henri, &c.* To the Treſorer, &c. Unto Oure Trusty and Welbeloved Servant *Guyenne* oure Herauld whom we have Comanded to bere divers Letters into the North Countre, and to Entende upon air Ambaſſatours, that we ſende at this tyme towards the Marches of *Scotteland* for ſuche Matiers as we have charged tham with, ye do pay x marcs, &c. 27 Oct. The Year, &c. (28 *H. 6.*)

Langport.

De mandato Regis per Avifaſentum fui Conſilii præſentibus Dominis Cardinale Cancellario, Cuſtode privati Sigilli, *Karlill, Roſſenſ. Cromwell, Abbate Glouceſtriæ, Stourton.*

Exit. Pell. m. 28 *H. 6.* *Guyen Herald*o, cui Dominus Rex dedit in Mandatis ad dirigendum diverſas literas ſuas verſus partes boreales, & ad ibidem attendendum circa Ambaſſiatores ipſius Domini Regis miſſos, &c.

<sup>s</sup> Exit. Pell. m. 28 *H. 6.* *Guyen Herald*o miſſo verſus Duciffam *Burgundia* in Nuncio Regis 4*l.* 13 s. 8*d.*

<sup>t</sup> Exit. Pell. P. 28 *H. 6.* *Columbers Purſevant* per manus *Guyen heraldi* in perſolutionem 100*s.* &c. which *Purſevant* was the Officer of the Duke of Orleans, Priv. Sigill. 14 March, 25 *H. 6.* to deliver to *Columber's Purſevant* unto our Couſin the Duc of Orleans 100*s.*

<sup>u</sup> 26 Apr. 28 *H. 6.* (in Officio Pellium) *Henri, &c.* To the Treſorer, &c. Forasmuche as we ſend at this tyme oure welbeloved Servaunt *Gartier* King of Armes unto the High and Myghty Prince oure Couſin the King of *Scots* for ſuche Matiers as we have charged him with, Ye pay x marcs.

Exit. Pell. P. 28 *H. 6.* *Gar*tero Regi Armorum miſſo ad Regem *Scotorum* pro certis materiis noſtrum Dominum Regem moventibus x marc.

<sup>x</sup> *Faustina E. 1.* Grant from *John Smert* autrement dit *Gartier* Roy d'Armes en Royaume d'*Angleterre* to *Edmond Mille*, 12 Aug. 28 *H. 6.*

<sup>y</sup> Priv. Sigill. 13 March, 29 *H. 6.* Forasmoch as we have yeve in Comandement unto oure welbeloved *Gartier* King of Armes, to goo unto the See Side to wayte upon the comyng of th'erle of *Doglas* of *Scotland*, the whiche is now hiderwarde from the Court of *Rome*, and to bring and conveye him unto oure preſence, and to intende upon him during his abode here, ye pay v marcs, &c.

Exit.



turn from the Court of *Rome*, in order to bring him to the King's Presence, and to attend on him during his Stay in *England*, and in that Year was sent to <sup>2</sup> *Scotland*, when Money was ordered him for his Journies to the Dutcheſs of *Burgundy* and the King of *Scots*, which <sup>4</sup> was paid.

He was preſent at the <sup>b</sup> Marriage of the Duke of *Orleans* with *Mary* of *Cleves*, on *Saturday* before *Saint Andrew's Day* 1450.

In 30 *H. VI.*, on the Third Day of *June* he had brought from the Earl of *Douglas* ſome <sup>c</sup> Articles touching his Intention of paying Homage to our King.

In the which Year he had a Reward for 78 Days in <sup>d</sup> attending on Sir *James Douglas*, and carrying Letters to the King of *Scotland*, and afterwards was ſent thither to <sup>e</sup> attend upon our Ambaſſadors, at which Time he was alſo paid his <sup>f</sup> Salary granted to him by reaſon of this Office for Term of his Life.

About this Time he was ſent to the <sup>g</sup> Duke of *Exeter*, who had aſſembled People contrary to Law, with the King's Letters, who inſtead of receiving them as he ought with Reverence, ill treated the Bearer.

In

Exit. Pell. m. 29 *H. 6.* *Gartero Regi Armorum* ex Mandato Regis ad latus Maris ad ibidem expectandum de adventu Comitis de *Dogelas de Scotia*, qui in partes Angliæ eſt Venturus a Curia Romana, & ad ipſum Comitem ad præſentiam Regis conducendum, & ad intendendum circa dictum Comitem durante Mora ſua in Anglia 66 s. 8 d.

2 Exit. Pell. P. 29 *H. 6.* *Gartero Regi Armorum* miſſo verſus partes *Scotiæ C. s.*

a In Officio Pellium—*Henri, &c.* To the Treſorer, &c. Forasmuche as Oure welbeloved Servant *Gartier King of Armes* hath hadde by oure Comandement ſith Feverer laſt paſſed hiderto divers labours and Journes, as well unto oure Couſine the Duchefſe of *Burgoigne*, as to the King of *Scots*, and otherwiſe, about thintendaunce of whiche oure Service he hath Continued by the Space of Cxlvii dayes, in whiche labours and Journes, as we ben Credibly enſourmed, the ſaid *Gartier* hath over ſuche Sommes as was limited to him by Us for that Cauſe ſpended greet Money of his own Goodes, we wol therefore and Charge you, that in Recompence of his ſaid laboure and Coſtes, ye do pay him 13 l. 13 s. 4 d. To have of Oure Yiſte by way of Rewards for the Cauſe aboveſaid. Yeven under our prive Seal at *Westmiſter*, 19 *Novemb.* the Yere of our Regne (29 *H. 6.*)

Ex. Pell. m. 30 *H. 6.* *Garterio Regi Armorum* miſſo ex Mandato Regis, diverſis vicibus tam Ducisſæ *Burgundia*, quam Regi *Scotorum* in quibus Nunciis attendebat, & continuavit per ſpatium Cxlvii Dierum, ultra Monetam per dictum Dominum Regem ſibi limitatam, habendum de dono ſuo per viam Regardi 13 l. 3 s. 4 d.

b Monſtrelet, vol. 2. p. 178.

c Rymer, vol. 11. p. 310, 311.

d In Officio Pellium—*Henri, &c.* To the Treſorer, &c. —We have underſtande by the Supplication of oure Welbeloved Servant *Gartier King of Armes*, howe that he not long ago by oure Comandement was ſent to mete with Sir *James Douglas* Knight, Comyng towards Us, and to bring him to oure Preſence to *Wyncheſtre*, to *Salisbury*, and other place, and alſo to Conveye him home into *Scottelande*, and to preſente Certayne oure Letters unto oure Couſin the King of *Scottes*, in the whiche oure Service he hath contynued, as he hath made feith, by the Space of Lxxviii dayes,

Wherefore we Wol and Charge you that unto him ye doo paye daily Wages of iii s. iiii d. for Everiche of the Lxxviii days aboveſaid to have of oure yeſt by Wey of Reward for his Coſtes and Expences in that partie, Yeven undre our prive Seal at *Westmiſter* the 19th day of *Octobre* the Yere of oure Regne xxx (*H. 6.*)

Exit. Pell. m. 30 *H. 6.* Eidem *Garterio* nuper miſſo ex Mandato Regis ad obviandum cum *Jacobo Douglas* veniente verſus Dominum Regem, & ad ducendum dictum Jacobum verſus præſentiam Regis apud *Wincheſtre*, *Salisbury*, vel alibi, & etiam ad Conducendum ipſum in *Scotia*, & ad præſentandas literas Regis Regi *Scotorum*, in quo tempore Continuavit moram ſuam 78 dies pro Vadiis ad xl d. per diem 13 l.

e 5 *Jun.* 30 *H. 6.* In Officio Pellium—*Henri, &c.* To the Treſorer, &c. Ye deliver and paye unto our Servant and Squier *Gartier King of Armes x l.* which we wol that He have for his going at this tyme by way of Reward in oure Meſſage into *Scottelande* to entende upon oure Ambaſſiate there.

f Exit. Pell. m. 30 *H. 6.* *Johanni Smert Regi Armorum* de *Garteria* erecto, cui Dominus Rex nunc 3 *April.* Anno Regni ſui 28 de Gratia ſua ſpeciali, &c. Conceſſit 20 l. habendas ratione Officii ſui pro termino vitæ, &c.

g By the King to the Duke of *Exceſtre*. Right truſty and right wellbeloved Couſin, we underſtande to our grete diſpleſour, the haynous ungodly diſpoſition, and gouvernaunce, that ye be of right ful unfittynge to your Eſtate, and birthe, youre ſelfe can remember your demeanyng withinn our Cite of *York* not long ago with preſumption, ye toke upon you there, as it is ſaid, uſurping other power than was yeven to You by Us, what langage ye had there, what cries ye have doo make in ſondry places, what people ye have aſſembled ayenſt oure lawes, and pees, in what wiſe ye rode with Standards diſplaied ful outrageouſly and indiſcretely, what ſedicious Letters ye have writen, as well to oure right truſty and welbeloved the Barone of *Grayſtoke*, as the Comunes of oure ſhires of *Lancaſter*, and *Cheſter*, howe alſo ye have entreted oure welbeloved ſervant *Gartier*, that came to you with oure Letters, the whiche it hadde be your part to have received with reverence, rather than to have doo pulled therein from the berer weyeth in your Conſideration

U u u u



In 31 H. VI, he received x*l*. for his <sup>b</sup> Journey into *Scotland*, as the King's Messenger to attend on his Embassadors there, and carried the Confirmation of the <sup>i</sup> Truce thither, for which he was paid 3 s. 4 d. by the Day, and then also received his <sup>k</sup> Salary.

In the following Year he had a Reward <sup>l</sup> for his being lately sent into the *Marches* of *Scotland*, about an Appointment with Earl *Douglas*, and for attending the Lord *Hamilton* at *London*, and other Places, for above five Weeks, and for waiting six Weeks upon the King from *Sherborne* to *Kenilworth*, for his Majesties Answers to the Commissioners and to the Earl of *Douglas*, and in *May* carried a Letter to the King of <sup>m</sup> *Scotland*, wherein H. VI writes, that *Gar*ter King of Arms the Bearer thereof, will more largely inform his Excellency, and he was then paid his <sup>n</sup> Salary.

In 33 H. VI, he met and <sup>o</sup> conducted the Archbishop of *Ravenna*, sent hither by the Pope, and was sent by the King and the Council to the Earl of <sup>p</sup> *Northumberland*, and other Lords in the North, about the Siege of *Berwike*, in which Year he surrenders to *Agnes* Widow of *William Brugges*, late *Gar*ter King of Arms (who was his Mother in Law) all her Moveables which she had formerly given him, whereof an Account hath been already <sup>q</sup> given.

In the next Year he was sent by the King and the Council to *Plymouth*,

fideration wheyr this fitteth to your Estate and birth faith and ligeance, that ye owe unto us, or noo, notwithstanding sith ye be disposed in such wise, we must provide to set apart your wilfulness, as we shall do with God's Grace, and in such wise, as it shall be example to other, for so moche we Wol and Charge you upon the feith and ligeaunce, that ye do owe unto us, that ye surcease of your said behavyng, and attempte noothing that may fowne or be to the breche of oure pees, or lawes, and over that that ye come, and be with us, and oure Counsaill at our Paloys of *Westminster* the xxv day of this moneth there to answer to such things as shall be declared unto you at your comyng.

At the same time Letters in different Formes were directed to the Lord *Egremond*, to *Richard Percy*, to the Earle of *Devonshire*, to appear and answer on the same day, 3 July 32 H. 6.

<sup>b</sup> Ex. Pell. P. 31 H. 6. *Gar*tero Regi Armorum in denariis sibi liberatis in persolutionem x*l*. quas Dominus Rex eidem *Gar*tero liberare mandavit habendas per viam Regardi pro Itinere suo in Nuncio ipsius Domini Regis versus *Scotiam* ad intendendum circa Ambassiatores Regis ibidem x*l*.

<sup>i</sup> 14 June 21 H. 6. (in Officio Pellium) *Henri*, &c. To the Tresorer, &c. — Forasmoch as we send at this tyme oure welbeloved Servant *Gar*tier King of Armes into the parties of *Scotland*, with the Confirmation of the trewes late taken bytwix thambassadour of oure Cousin the King of *Scottes*, and oure Commissioners, and also what other Messages suche as we have Committed unto him; ye pay the Wages of iii s. iiiii d. by the day for the Space of 40 Days.

<sup>k</sup> Exit. Pell. P. 31 H. 6. *Johanni* Smert Regi Armorum de *Gar*tera erecto, Cui Dominus Rex nunc 3 Aprilis Anno xxviii. &c. 20*l*.

<sup>l</sup> Priv. Sigill. xi. Sept. 31 H. 6. We in Consideration of the gret Charges and labours of oure welbeloved servant *Gar*tier King of Armes hath had at dyvers tymes by oure Comandement, as well in going into the *Marches* of *Scotland* ther to take certaine ap-

pointments of therle *Douglas*, as in attendyng upon the Lord *Hamylton* at *London*, and in other places by the Space of v Weeks and more, and also in awaiting upon us from *Sherborne* in the Counte of *Dorset* to *Kenelworth* the Space of vi Weeks for an Answer to be had to oure Commissioners in the said *Marches* and to therle *Douglas* ye pay 25 Marcs.

Exit. Pell. m. 32 H. 6. Eodem *Gar*tero Regi Armorum qui nuper ex Mandato Regis erat missus versus Marchias *Scotie*, ad ibidem Capiendum Certa Appunctuamenta cum Comite *Douglas*, ac etiam attendendum circa Dominum de *Hamilton* apud *London*, & alia loca per spatium 5 Septimanarum & amplius, necnon attendendum circa Dominum nostrum Regem a *Sherborne* in Comitatu *Dorset* usque *Kenelworth* per spatium 6 Septimanarum pro responsione de Domino Rege habenda Commissionariis & dicto Comite *Douglas* in eisdem partibus existente 16*l*. 13 s. 4 d.

<sup>m</sup> Rymer, vol. xi. p. 349.

<sup>n</sup> Exit. Pell. Mich. 32 H. 6. *Johanni* Smert Regi Armorum de *Gar*tera erecto, cui Dominus Rex 3 Apr. Anno 28 Concessit xx*l*. annatim, &c. o 22 Nov. 33 H. 6. (in Officio Pellium) — *Henri*, &c. To the Tresorer, &c. Forasmoch as we send *Gar*ter King of Armes at this time to the parties beyond the See, to mere and Conduct the right reverent Fader in God the Archiebishop of *Raven* sent by our holy Fader the Pope, into this londe, ye pay him v marcs.

Exit. Pell. m. 33 H. 6. *Gar*tero Regi missio Versus partes Exteras ad obviandum & Conducendum Archiepiscopum de *Ravenna* nuper venientem a Domino Papa in Regnum Angliæ 66 s. 8 d.

<sup>p</sup> Ex. Pell. 33 H. 6. *Gar*tero Regi Armorum missio per Dominum Regem & Consilium suum in certis Nunciis ipsius Domini Regis versus Comitem *Northumbria* & alios Dominos in partibus Borealibus existentes pro recussu Obsidii Villæ *Berewici* x*l*.

<sup>q</sup> See above, p. 345. note g.



mouth and Forwey for Delivery of some Ships and Vessels, and again to Forwey on the same Errand.

In 35 H. VI he was sent to Calis to the Earl of Warwick Captain of that Place, and thither again in the King's Affairs, and was sent with Toison d'Or to demand the Performance of Articles by the French King, and in Failure thereof he had Orders to defy him, but that King would not permit them to come into his Dominions, in which Year he received his Salary, and also Robes.

In 36 Henry VI, he was sent with the King's Privy-Seal towards Scotland, and received a Reward for going to the King of Scotland.

In 37 H. 6. he gave, as hath been before-mention'd, the Oath to Colar Pursevant, being then stiled of the King's Household, for that is the Import of the Word *Familiaris noster*.

In 38 Hen. VI, the Duke of York, and the Earls of Warwick and Salisbury, certify their Truth and Duty by Garter King of Arms, and on the first of March He granted Arms to John Alfry and his Heirs.

The next succeeding Year the Custody of an House in Fleetstreet was granted him, when he had his Share of Largesses, with other Officers of Arms for divers Services, from the 28th to the 34th Year of that King.

Edward

<sup>r</sup> Ex. Pell. m. 34 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum misso ex Mandato Domini Regis de avisamento consilii sui versus Villas de Plymouthe & Fowey pro deliberatione diversarum Navium de amicis ipsius Domini Regis ibidem Captarum iiii l.

<sup>f</sup> Exit. Pell. P. 34 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum misso versus Villam de Fowey cum literis ipsius Domini Regis pro deliberatione Cujusdam Navis de Amicis Regis per subditos ipsius Domini Regis ibidem Captæ 53 s.

<sup>t</sup> Exit. Pell. P. 35 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum misso versus Villam Cales cum literis Domini Regis Comiti Warwic capitaneo Villæ Cales ibidem existenti directis pro certis specialibus Causis & Materiis in eisdem literis contentis ipsum Dominum Regem & consilium suum moventibus iiii l.

<sup>u</sup> Exit. Pell. P. 35 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum misso ex Mandato Regis versus Cales, in certis Negotiis ipsius Domini Regis 6 l.

<sup>x</sup> Hollingh. Cron. p. 960. a. n. 60.

<sup>y</sup> Exit. Pell. m. 35 H. 6. Johanni Smert, cui Dominus Rex 3 Apr. Anno 28. in Regem Armorum de Gartera erecto, ratione Officii illius xx l. ad vitam.

<sup>z</sup> Particulæ compoti Henr. Fylongly Armigeri Custodis magnæ Garderobæ a Vigilia Sancti Michaelis 35 Hen. vi. pro uno Anno.

Garter, Lancaster, & Guienne Regibus Armorum vocatis Herands ad vesturam suam yeralem faciendam erga festum natalis Domini de dono dicti Domini Regis, viz. cuilibet eorum iiii pann. color. long. per literam dormantem de privato Sigillo suo datam 7 Dec. Anno 30. Et prout Consimilis vestura allocata pro Hertford, Lancaster, Leicester, & Guyenn Regibus armorum in compoto Johannis Spencer Custodis magnæ Garderobæ Domini Henrici nuper Regis Angliæ Quinti a primo die Octobris anno primo ipsius nuper Regis usque eundem diem revoluta.

<sup>a</sup> Exit. Pell. m. 36 H. 6. Gartero Regi Armorum misso cum literis de privato Sigillo ipsius Domini Regis diversis personis ibidem [i. e. in Scotia] existentibus directis, &c.

<sup>b</sup> Henri, &c. To the Tresorer, &c. We wol and charge You that unto our Right trusty and Wel-beloved Cosyn John Earl of Shrewsbury late our Tresorer of England ye do pay and content the Some of xiii l. vi s. viii l. the which he paid unto Garter Kinge of Armes sent to the King of Scotts by way of Reward for his Costs and Expenses Yeven under our prive Seal at Westminster the first day of August the Yere of oure Reyne xxxvith.

<sup>c</sup> See above, p. 319. note o.

<sup>d</sup> Stow's Annals, p. 405.

<sup>e</sup> H. 3. penes me, p. 1191.

<sup>f</sup> Fin. 39 H. 6. m. 4.

<sup>g</sup> Rymer, vol. 11. p. 497. Pat. 39 H. 6. m. 13. — Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem, Sciatis, quod cum Summa Ducentarum Quadraginta trium Librarum, sex Solidorum & Octo denariorum, per nos debeatur dilectis nobis Johanni Smert alias dicto Garter, Willielmo Tendale alias dicto Lancastre, & Johanni Wrixworth alias dicto Guyenne Regibus Armorum pro eorum Largeys coram nobis proclamatis diebus Festivalibus per septem Annos proximos post Annum Viceesimum Septimum Regni nostri elapsos, de qua quidem Summa ipsi aliquam Solutionem, sive contentationem hucusque minime adepti sunt seu habuerunt: Unde nobis supplicaverunt, ut sibi solutionem & Contentationem ejusdem summæ in forma sequente concedere dignaremur. Nos Præmissa Considerantes, & præfatis Johanni, Willielmo, & Johanni hujusmodi Solutionem & Contentationem fieri cupientes, ut tenemur, de Gratia nostra speciali, & pro plenaria Solutione, & Contentatione dictæ Summæ Ducentarum Quadraginta trium librarum, sex Solidorum, & Octo Denariorum sic faciendæ, concessimus eis, quod ipsi habeant & percipiant eandem summam Ducentarum Quadraginta trium Librarum, sex Solidorum, & Octo Denariorum de Custumis & Subsidiis Lanarum & Pellium lanutarum in Portu Civitatis nostræ Londoniæ, per manus Collectorum sive Custumariarum earundem Custumarum, & subsidiorum pro tempore Existentium, per Indenturas inter ipsos Collectores sive



Edward the IVth came to the Crown 4th of March, and on 10th of August following, he grants him a <sup>b</sup> Privy-Seal for this Office, which passed under the Great <sup>i</sup> Seal on the 4th of September, wherein he takes no Notice of the Patent formerly granted him by Hen. VI, but calls him indeed *Garter*, and augments the Salary to 40*l.* yearly, the first Payment whereof was to commence from the Feast of *Easter* preceeding, which was occasioned doubtless because he had been in this Office before, and had, as it is said in the Preamble of this very Patent, well executed the same; for the regular Payment wherof a <sup>k</sup> Writ was granted on the First of March following. In which first Year, as appears by an Entry in the <sup>l</sup> third, he was present at St. George's Feast, which he attended also in the <sup>m</sup> following Year, and in this first Year, was sent into the <sup>n</sup> North, and thither again with other <sup>o</sup> Heralds in the 2d Year, and on 15th of Feb. 2 E. IV, attended on the <sup>p</sup> Funeral of the Earl of Salisbury.

In

five Custumarios & præfatos *Johannem, Willielmum* & *Johannem* conficiendas, solutionem five contentationem summæ prædictæ & cujuslibet ejusdem Parcellæ testificantes, per quas Volumas & Tenore præsentium concedimus, quod prædicti Collectores five custumarii in compoto suo, ad Scaccarium Nostrum, debite inde habeant Allocationem, Aliquibus Statutis, five Ordinationibus (in contrarium editis, factis five Ordinatis) non obstantibus. In cujus, &c. Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium septimo die Decembris— Per breve de privato sigillo & de Data prædicta, &c.

<sup>b</sup> Ex. Orig. in Turre. Memorandum quod istud breve liberatum fuit Domino Cancellario Angliæ apud Bristol quarto die Septembris Anno subscripto Exequendum.

Edwardus Dei gratia Rex Angliæ, & Franciæ, & Dominus Hiberniæ Reverendo in Christo patri dilecto & fideli consanguineo nostro *Geor. Exoniæ* Episcopo Cancellario nostro Salutem, vobis mandamus, quod sub magno sigillo nostro literas nostras patentes fieri faciatis in forma sequente; Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem. Cum non novum esse constar, sed jam inde ab antiquis usitatum inter cæteros Officiales & Ministros, quos principum lateribus pro eorum magnificentia, atque gloria adherere decet, non minoris quam prudentissimæ estimationis eorum debeat esse conditio, quibus Armorum in Officiis cura atque labor Committi solet. Nostræ igitur considerationis aciem in laudabilia Servicia, quæ dilectus Nobis *Johannes Smer*, alias dictus *Garterus Armorum* Rex, in hiis quæ Officium illud concernere intelliguntur exercuit, dirigentes, eundem propterea, & non minus ob solertiam & Sagacitatem, quas in eo satis habemus exploratas in principalem Heraldum Nostrum Armorumque Regem de *Gartera* ex Gratia nostra speciali Ereximus, Creavimus, & fecimus, tenoreque præsentium Erigimus, Creamus, & facimus, Habendum cum nomine, titulo, Juribus, & proficiis omnibus illo Officio consuetis & debitis. Etenim præterea de gratia nostra uberiori concessimus et tenore Præsentium concedimus præfato *Johanni Smer* in Regem Armorum, ut præfertur erecto quadraginta libras, ratione & causa officii illius percipiendas annuatim a Festo Paschæ ultime præterito, pro termino Vitæ suæ de firma Comitatum *London & Middlesexia* & de Exitibus proficiis, firmis, & reventionibus de eisdem comitatibus provenientibus, per manus Vicecomitum eorundem pro tempore existentium ad Festum Sancti Michaelis & Paschæ, per æquales portiones. In cujus rei, &c. Datum sub privato sigillo apud castrum nostrum de Wyndesore xmo die Augusti Anno Regni nostri primo.

<sup>i</sup> Rymer, vol. 11. p. 488.

<sup>k</sup> Claus. 1 E. 4. m. 9. Rex Vicecomitibus comitatum nostrorum *Londonia & Middlesexia*, qui nunc sunt, & qui pro tempore erunt Salutem. Cum Nos quarto die Septembris ultimo præterito, ob certas Notabiles Considerationes tunc nos Moventes, Dilectum Nobis *Johannem Smer* in Principalem Heraldum Nostrum Armorumque Regem de *Gartera* ex Gratia nostra speciali erexerimus, creaverimus & fecerimus. Habendum cum Nomine, Titulo, Juribus, & Proficiis Omnibus illi Officio consuetis & debitis, & concesserimus præfato *Johanni Smer* in Regem Armorum, ut præfertur Erecto, Quadraginta Libras ratione & causa Officii illius, percipiendas annuatim a Festo Paschæ tunc ultimo præterito, pro termino Vitæ suæ de Firma Comitatum *Londonia & Meddlesexia*, & de Exitibus, Proficiis, Firmis, & Reventionibus de eisdem comitatibus provenientibus, per Manus Vicecomitum eorundem pro tempore existentium ad Festum Sancti Michaelis & Paschæ, per æquales Portiones, prout in Literis nostris Patentibus inde confectis plenius continetur. Vobis præcipimus, quod eidem *Johanni* id, quod ei a retro est de prædictis quadraginta libris annuis, a prædicto festo Paschæ ultimo præterito, & easdem quadraginta libras annuas eidem *Johanni*, & nunc singulis annis durante vita sua de Firma, Exitibus, Proficiis, Firmis, & Reventionibus prædictis ad Festum prædictum, de tempore in tempus, solvatis juxta Tenorem Literarum nostrarum prædictarum: Recipientes a præfato *Johanne* de tempore in tempus Literas suas Acquiescentiæ, quæ pro vobis sufficientes fuerint in hac parte, per quas & præsens Mandatum nostrum vobis inde, in compoto vestro, ad scaccarium nostrum, de tempore in tempus, debitam allocationem habere faciemus. Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium primo die Martii.

Et erat Patens.

<sup>l</sup> See Notes to the Black book, p. 175.

<sup>m</sup> See Notes to the Black book, p. 179.

<sup>n</sup> Exit. Pell. 1 E. 4. *Gartero* Regi Armorum missio in Negotiis Regis versus partes Boreales, in denariis sibi liberatis pro Custubus & Expensis suis eundo & redeundo ex causa prædicta per breve generale currens 53 s. 4 d.

<sup>o</sup> Exit. Pell. m. 2 E. 4. *Gartero* Regi Armorum & Sociis suis Heraldis missis Domino Regi versus partes Boreales pro certis specialibus Causis, & Materiis dictum Dominum Regem & Concilium suum Moventibus, in denariis eis liberatis pro Custubus & Expensis suis eundo, & redeundo per breve generale x l.

<sup>p</sup> E. 11. penes me, p. 181.



In 5 E. IV, he entertained some <sup>9</sup> *Polanders* and Strangers of <sup>r</sup> *Naples*, who probably were then Ambassadors, since Collars and Plate were presented them, and they had a Herald attending.

In the Act of Resumption made (as the Law Book reports it) 2 E. 4: There was a general Proviso or Reservation for Annuities and Pensions; now this Office being granted to *Smert* without any Term in the *Habendum*, and with xl. during Life, *Ratione & Causa Officii*, a Question arose in the Common Pleas, whether the same was an Annuity, or otherwise a Fee in consideration, and appertaining to the Office, and determinable with it. In the subsequent Resumptions, 3d and 4th of E. IV, and in the 7th Year, there were especial Proviso's inserted, That these Acts should not extend to Prejudice *John Smert*, otherwise called *Garter King of Arms*, in, or of xl. by Year for Term of his Life, to him granted by reason of that Office of the Farm of the Shires of *London* and *Middlesex*, in which 7th Year he performed the Duty of his Office at the ' *Justs* between the Bastard of *Burgundy* and the Lord *Scales*.

In 8 *Edw. IV*, he was sent to the Lord " *Manypenny* about Matters of Secrecy (who was Embassador from *France*) and was at *Bruges*, at the Marriage of *Charles Duke of Burgundy*, with *Margaret Sister of Edward the IVth*, and wrote an <sup>x</sup> Account of the Justing at that Time.

10 *January* (1469) 9 *Edw. IV*, he was sent with the <sup>y</sup> *Garter* to *Charles Duke of Burgundy*, who owns the <sup>z</sup> Receipt of it from him.

In 10 of E. IV, he was sent to the <sup>a</sup> Duke of *Clarence*, and to the Earl of *Warwick*, with their Accusations under the Privy-Seal, with Orders to Charge them to come to his Highness the King, which however they refused. He was present 12 E. IV, at the <sup>b</sup> Creation of *Lewes Gruthuse* to be Earl of *Winchester*, and having then an Impediment in his Tongue, *Norroy* proclaimed Large's.

On 23d of *Apr.* 12 E. IV, he carried the <sup>c</sup> Letters of Sir *John Aschely* to the Chapter of the Order of the *Garter* to excuse his Attendance.

<sup>9</sup> In Baga (in officio Pellium) 5 E. 4. Garthero Regi Armorum pro Custubus & Expensis Certorum extraneorum de *Pologn* infra Regnum Angliæ Termino Michaelis Anno 4. Existentium 18 l. 13 s. 4 d.

<sup>r</sup> 5 E. 4. (in Officio Pellium) Garthero Regi Armorum super Expensis Certorum Extraneorum de *Naples*, infra Regnum Angliæ existentium L l.

Dictis extraneis pro tribus Colaribus Auri de liberata Regis, &c. *Heraldo* eorundem extraneorum in precio unius pecii de Skarlet pro toga per Dominum Regem sibi data C s.

<sup>f</sup> Hill. 5 E. 4. f. 8. & Mich. 7 E. 4. f. 22. abridged in Fitzh. *Annuities* 12. *Pro. Office* 50. *Patents* 60. *Estates* 44. *Plowd.* 382 b.

<sup>t</sup> F. 3. penes me.

<sup>u</sup> Exit. Pell. P. 8. E. 4. Gartero Regi Armorum misso ex Mandato Regis versus Dominum *Manypenny* cum certis Secretis Materiis xx s.

<sup>x</sup> Bibl. Harley 35. c. 12. p. 40. —Transportation and Marriage of *Margaret Sister* to E. IV. to *Charles Duke of Burgundy*— At her Wedding in her Entry into *Bruges* next before her, Kinges of Armes and Herolds of divers Relmes— Afterwards Justis for 9 days in the Market place of *Bruges*, which *Gartere* the King of Armes hath put in French, and for that Cause I leave to write it.

<sup>y</sup> *Asbmole's Hist. of the Garter*, App. n. Cxiv. <sup>z</sup> *Rymer*, vol. 12. p. 251.

<sup>a</sup> Claus. 10 E. 4. m. 7. *Dorso de Proclamationibus faciendis*.

How be it, that the King our Soveraine Lord granted unto *Georg Duke of Clarence* and *Richard Erle of Warwyc* his pardon, &c. yet the said Duc, and Erle unnaturally, unkindly, and untruly intending his destruction, &c. and to make the said Duc King of this his said Realme, &c. whereupon his said Highness sent unto the said Duc and Earle by *Garter King of Armes* summonition, and Warning of their said Accusations under his prive Seal, straitly charging theym to come unto his said Highness, and which they presumptuously refused, &c. wherefore our said Soveraigne Lord woll, and in the most straitef wyse, chargeth the said Duc and Erle, that they in their persones come, and in humble and obeyfant Wyse, and appier before his Highnesse the 28th day of this present Month of *March*.

The Account of *Garter's* carrying this Message is in Vinc. MS. in Off. Arm. No 435.

<sup>b</sup> B. 2. penes me, p. 289. There are Copies of it in several Libraries.

<sup>c</sup> See Black-book, p. 186.



In 14th Ed. IV, he defied the *French King*, by a <sup>d</sup> Letter, which for the Stile, and the penning excellently endited, the *Frenchmen* would not believe to be framed by an *Englishman*, and had given him 300 Crowns, and 30 Yards of Crimson Velvet, and there was a Promise to him of 1000 Crowns more, if a Peace should be made, which the Herald (as our Author saith) being more covetous of the Crowns than Secret, according to the Duty of his Office, promised to perform.

He was paid in 15 Ed. IV his Wages, after the <sup>f</sup> Rate of 4 s. per Diem, for attending on the King in his Entry into *Normandy*.

In 18 Edw. IV, he was sent by the <sup>g</sup> Council to the King at *Nottingham*, with the Lord *Saint Pere* Embassador from *France*, and the 18th of *February* received Reward for the King's <sup>b</sup> Largeſſe, which two latter Instances belong either to him or to his Successor, for he died before 6 *July* in this Year, when this Office was granted to *Writhe*: He made a Will, which the Collector hath not found, and with great Worth and Reputation filled this chief Seat among the Officers of Arms for 28 Years, to which he was first promoted, because no Person (as the Patent expresses it) had greater Abilities for it.

He first married (as hath been already said) *Katherine* Daughter of *William Brugges Garter* by *Agnes* his Wife, by whom he had one Daughter and Heir named *Agnes*, married to *Richard Bourne*, by whom she had a Son *John*, stiled in a Bill in Chancery Coſin and Heir to *William Brugges Garter*, and Grandson of this *John Smert Garter*; he married again with *Agnes* Widow of *William Haldenby*, who survived him.

His

<sup>d</sup> Hall's Chron. f. 38. which was taken from *Comines*, l. 4. c. 5. p. 211.

<sup>e</sup> Stow's Annals, ad 14 Ed. 4.

<sup>f</sup> B. 5. penes me, p. 378 b.

<sup>g</sup> Exit. Pell. P. 18 E. 4. *Gartero Regi Armorum misſo per avifamentum Conſilii Regis ipſo Domino Regi apud Nottingham exiſtenti in Comitiva Domini ſeint Pere de partibus Francia nuper venientis de partibus illis ad dictum Dominum Regem, in denariis ſibi liberatis per manus proprias pro Cuſtibus & Expensis ſuis ſic miſſo per breve generale currens 13 s. 4 d.*

<sup>b</sup> Privy Seal 14 Feb. 18 E. 4. to allow to *John Fuzherbert* one of the Tellers, for rewards to be gyven to *Garter kyng of Armes* and other haraulds and mynſtrells for the kyngs Largeſſe in the ſolemnitee of the Feſts of *Chriſtmas*, *Newyers day* and *xiiib day 50 l.*

<sup>i</sup> E Billa Cancellarii in Turre— To the right reverend Fader in God the Biſhop of *Durham* Chaunceller of England,

Mekely beſeecheth your pouer Oratours *John Smart* otherwyſe called *Garter King of Armes*, and *Agnes* his Wyf, late the Wyf of oon *William Haldenby*, that where *William Catesby* and others were ſeized of the Mannor of *Haldenby*, and other londs in *Northampton*, to the uſe of the ſaid *William Haldenby* to perſorme his Will, and in his Will he ordered his feoffees to grant an annuell rent of 10 l. unto the ſaid *Agnes*, &c.

E Billa in Cancellaria in Turre— To the Right reverend Fader in God the Biſhop of *Dureham* Chauncelier of England,

Mekely beſeecheth your pouer Oratours *John*

*Smert* otherwyſe called *Garter Kyng of Armes*, and *Agnes* his Wyf, late the Wyf of oon *William Haldenby* that where *William Catesby* Knight and others were ſeafed of the Mannor of *Haldenby*, &c. in the Counte of *Northampton*, in ther demeane as of fee, to the uſe of the ſaid *William Haldenby*, and to perſorme his Will, &c. And afterwards the ſaid *William* declared by his laſt Will, that his Feoffees ſhould immediately after his deceſſe make a Sufficent Grant of an Annuel Rent of 10 l. by year out of all the ſaide londes unto the ſeid *Agnes* oon of your Suppliant and late wyf of the ſaid *William*, &c. for term of her lyf, and moreover declared by the ſaid Will that his ſaid feffees ſhulde ſuffer Sir *William Lucy* now dede, and the ſaid *Agnes* to reſceyve and take the reſidue of all the ſaid Lands and tenements above the Yerly rent of x l. foreſeid for the terme of 24 Yeres after his deceſſe, to thentent the profits thereof ſo taken ſhuld by the ſaid *Agnes* be employed to the uſe, profite, ſuſtentacion, and Marriage of 3 of his doughters, that is to ſay *Elizabeth*, *Morgaret* and *Agnes*, &c.

In Turre Londonia. To the Right Reverend Fadre in God the Biſhop of *Lincoln* Chaunceler of England.

Mekely beſechyth your gode and gracious Lordſhypp your pour Oratrice *Agnes* late the Wyffe of *John Smert* otherwyſe called *Garter King of Armes*, where the ſame *Garter* being ſole ſeafed by his lyfe in his demeasnes as of fee of 20 Tenements with thappurtenances in *Fanchurch Strete* of *London* and of vii meſez and xl. Acres of Medowe with their Appurtenance in *Mucheldene* within the foreſt of *Deane*, And ſo ſeafed of grete Truſt enſeoffed in the ſame *John Morkok*, and *William Biſhop* with



His Arms were Argent a <sup>k</sup> Cheveron between three Pheons Sable, wherewith he quarter'd the Arms of *Brugges Garter*, of which Practice there are some <sup>l</sup> Instances about that Age, though contrary to the present Rules: His <sup>m</sup> Badge was a Brod Arowe Heed blake Armined.

III. The Third Garter *John Wrythe*, is said by some Writers to have been <sup>n</sup> *Antelope*, then *Rougecrosse* Pursuivant; but he certainly was <sup>o</sup> *Faucon* Herald, from whence (and not as *Wever* saith, from *Leopard*) he was made *Norroy*, on 25 January 16 Ed. IV, and created on <sup>p</sup> *Candlemas-day* following: He did his Duty at the <sup>q</sup> Justs held on the Marriage of *Richard Duke* of

with othre now ded, to have to them and theyre heyres in fee for ever, to thuse, and behofe of the feyd *Garter*, and to perfourme the last Wyll of the feyd *Garter*, which *Garter* in his Deth bed ordeyned and devysed by his last Wyll, that his feyd feoffees ymedietely astur his deces shulde make Astate of all the feyde tenements and Medowe to your feid Oratrice, and suche as she wolde Name to have to her for terme of her lyfe, and after her deces the same tenements and Medowe, to remeyn to *John Bourne*, Son and heire to *Richard Bourne* and *Agnes* his Wife daughter and heir of the feyd *Garter*, as in the same Wille redy to be shewed more plainly doth appere. And how be it, your feyd Oratrice divers tyme sith the deth of the feyd *Garter* her husband, hath required the feyd *John Morkok* and *William* to make her Astate of the feyde Tenements and Medewe wyth thappurtenance accordyng to thentent of the feyd feoffement, and last Wyll of the feyde *John Smeri*, yet that to do the feyd *John Morkok* and *William* at all tymes have refused, and yet refuse contrarie to the feyd entent, and last Wyll of the feyd *Garter*, and ayenst all reason and gode Conscience, onlesse your Gode Lordshipp to hyr be shewed in this behalf. Plese it your feyd Lordship the premis Considered, and that your Oratrice hath no remedy hereof by the Comyn lawe of this land, to graunte several Writez sub pena direlle to the feyd *John Morkok* and *William Bishop* to appere afore the King in his Chancery, at a Certeyn day to answer to the premises, and to doo and receyve as this Courte shall award, And this for the love of God and in the way of Charity.

Pleg. de proseq; { *Johan Thomlyns de London* Bruer.  
*Williel. Couley de eadem* Taillour.

<sup>k</sup> *Vincent's MS.* in Officio Armorum n. 88. p. 47.  
<sup>l</sup> *Upton de Officio Militari*, p. 223. Anne *Queen* of R. 2. Sir *John Oldcastel* 11 H. 4. quarters his own Arms with those of *Joan Lady Cobham*. *Glover's Collections among Philpot's MS.* in Officio Armorum, p. 107 b.

<sup>m</sup> B. 5 penes me, p. 378 b.

<sup>n</sup> *Weaver's Funeral Monuments*, p. 667. *Lant's Catalogue* in Off. Arm.

<sup>o</sup> *Priv. Sig.* in Turr. Memorandum quod 25 die Januarii, Anno Regni Regis subscripto istud breve liberatum, &c.

*Edwardus Dei Gratia Rex Angliæ, & Franciæ & Dominus Hiberniæ* Reverendo in Christo Patri *Tho. Lincoln.* Episcopo Cancellario nostro Salutem. Vobis mandamus, quod literas nostras Patentes sub magno Sigillo nostro in forma sequente fieri faciatis, &c. Dat. sub nostro privato Sigillo apud manerium nostrum de *Grenemich* 23 die Januarii Anno Regni nostri sexto decimo.

<sup>p</sup> Pat. 16 Ed. 4. p. 2. m. 6. Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem, Sciatis quod cum Officium He-

raldi nostri Regis Armorum partium borealium Regni nostri *Angliæ*, per dimissionem & Resignationem *Thome Holme* alias dicti *Clarence* idem officium nuperime occupantis & Exercentis, ac per restitutionem in Cancellariam nostram Literarum nostrarum Patentium de Vadiis & feodis Officii predicti eidem *Thome* factarum vacaverit. Ac Nos officium illud per unum de Expertissimis, Scientissimisque Heraldis Regni Nostri predicti, prout decet, occupari & exerceri volentes: Hinc est, quod nos bonum & laudabile obsequium Nobis per dilectum & fidelem nostrum *Johannem Wryth* alias dictum *Faucon* unum Heraldorum nostrorum, in Scientia & Exercitio hujusmodi Officii, & Occupationis probatissimum virum multipliciter & Effectuose impensum merito Contemplantes, ac de fidelitate, Circumspectione, & Industria Ejusdem plenarie Confidentes, necnon de Gratia nostra speciali, ipsum *Johannem* in Capitalem Heraldum nostrum. Regemque Armorum partium borealium Regni nostri *Angliæ* ereximus, fecimus, Constituimus, Ordinavimus, Creavimus & Coronavimus, ac per presentes Erigimus, facimus, Constituimus, Ordinamus, Creamus, & Coronamus, ac ei officium illud, necnon Nomen, Stylum, Titulum, libertates, & præ-eminencias hujusmodi Officio Convenientes & Concordantes & ab antiquo Consuetas Damus & Concedimus, ac ipsum realiter in eisdem investimus. Habendum, Occupandum, & Exerendum Officium illud, ac Nomen, Stylum, titulum, & præ-eminencias predictas Eidem *Johanni* pro termino Vitæ suæ, cum omnibus Juribus, proficiis, Commoditatibus, & Emolumentis eidem officio qualitercunque debitis, pertinentibus, sive spectantibus. Et ulterius Concedimus Eidem *Johanni* Viginti libras per Annum percipiendas Eidem *Johanni* singulis annis, durante Vita sua, pro Vadiis & feodis Officii predicti de feodi firma, ac aliis Exiribus, proficiis, firmis, & reventionibus de Comitatu nostro Eborac. provenientibus sive Crescentibus per manus Vicecomitis ejusdem Comitatus pro tempore Existentis, una cum tali liberatura Vesturæ, qualem, & eisdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius Rex Armorum, sive Heraldus tempore Domini Regis *Edwardi* nuper Regis *Angliæ* tertii Progenitoris nostri habuit, & percepit, Habendum & percipiendum annuatim liberaturam hujusmodi Eidem *Johanni* singulis annis ad terminum Vitæ suæ ad Magnam Garderobam nostram per manus Custodis Ejusdem Garderobæ pro tempore Existentis, Eo quod Expressa mentio de vero Valore annuo præmissorum, aut de aliis donis, sive Concessionibus per Nos eidem *Johanni* perantea factis, Editis, sive provisus aut aliqua alia re, causa, vel materia quacunque non obstante. In cujus, &c. Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium 25 die Januarii.

Per breve de privato Sigillo.

<sup>p</sup> B. 2 penes me, p. 293.

<sup>q</sup> MS. in Mus. Ashm. n. 856. p. 94.



of York with the Lady Anne Mowbray; and from this Province, on the 6th of July 18 E. IV, was constituted Principal Herald and Officer of the Noble Order of the Garter, and King of Arms of Englishmen, with 40 l. yearly during Life, by reason of this Office, payable out of the Petit Customs in the Port of London, on which same Day a Writ issued to the Customers to pay it, and four Days afterwards, a Command to the Wardrobe to give him Livery yearly, as any such King of Arms, or Principal Herald received during the Reign of Edward III.

Pat. 18 E. 4. p. 2. m. 28. Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem, Sciatis, quod cum non sit novum, sed jamdiu ab antiquis temporibus usitatum, quod inter ceteros officiales & ministros, quos Principum lateribus pro eorum Magnificencia atque gloria adherere decet, eorum quibus Officii Armorum Cura committitur, Copiam habere debeat, ut nec tempus Bellorum, neque pacis, sine convenientibus & aptis Ministris debeat præeriri. Nos igitur considerationis Acie in laudabilia Servicia, quæ dilectus Nobis Johannes Wrythe, alias nuper dictus Norroy Rex Armorum partium Borealium Regni nostri Angliæ, in hiis quæ ad officium illud spectare intelliguntur exercuit, dirigentes, eundem propterea, & non minus ob solertiam & Sagacitatem, quas in eo satis habemus exploratas, in Principalem Heraldum & Officiarium incliti nostri Ordinis Garterii Armorumque Regem Anglicorum, ex gratia nostra speciali, ereximus, fecimus, Constituimus, Ordinavimus, Creavimus, & Coronavimus, ac per præsentem erigimus, facimus, Constituimus, Ordinamus, Creamus & Coronamus, ac ei officium illud nec-non Nomen le Garter, Stylum, Titulum, Libertates, & præeminentias hujusmodi Officio convenientia, & concordantia, ac ab antiquo consueta Damus, & Concedimus, ac ipsum in eisdem realiter investimus; Habendum occupandum, & Exercendum Officium illud, ac Nomen, Stylum, Titulum, & præeminentias prædictas eidem Johanni pro termino vitæ suæ, cum omnibus Juribus, Proficiis, Commoditatibus, & Emolumentis eidem Officio qualitercumque debitis, pertinentibus sive spectantibus; Et ulterius Concessimus & per præsentem Concedimus præfato Johanni in Regem Armorum Anglicorum ut præfertur erecto Quadraginta libras per Annum, Ratione & Causa Officii illius, percipiendas eidem Johanni singulis annis durante Vita sua pro Vadiis & feodis Officii prædicti de parva Custuma nostra in portu Civitatis nostræ Londoniæ, per manus Custumariorum sive Collectorum Custumæ prædictæ in portu prædicto pro tempore Existentium, ad terminos Sancti Michaelis & Paschæ per æquales Portiones, prout in Literis nostris prædictis plenius continetur. Vobis præcipimus, quod eidem Johanni id, quod ei a retro est, de prædictis Quadraginta Libris annuis, & easdem Quadraginta libras annuas ex-nunc singulis annis, durante Vita sua prædicta, de parva Custuma Civitatis nostræ prædictæ de tempore in tempus ad terminos prædictos solvatis, juxta tenorem literarum nostrarum prædictarum; Recipientes a præfato Johanne de tempore in tempus literas suas Acquietanciæ, quæ pro Vobis sufficientes fuerint in hac parte, per quas & præsens mandatum nostrum Vobis inde in Compoto vestro ad Scaccarium nostrum de tempore in tempus debitam allocationem habere faciemus, Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium sexto die Julii.

¶ Claus. 18 E. 4. m. 22. Rex Custumariis, sive

Collectoribus parvæ Custumæ nostræ in portu Civitatis Nostræ Londoniæ, qui nunc, & qui pro tempore erunt, Salutem. Cum Nos per literas nostras Patentes de Gratia nostra speciali erexerimus, fecerimus, constituerimus, Ordinaverimus, Creaverimus, & Coronaverimus dilectum Nobis Johannem Wrythe alias nuper dictum Norroy Regem Armorum partium Borealium Regni nostri Angliæ, Principalem Heraldum & Officiarium incliti nostri Ordinis Garterii Armorumque Regem Anglicorum ac ei officium illud, necnon Nomen le Garter, stylum, titulum, libertates, & præeminentias hujusmodi Officio convenientia & Concordantia, ac ab antiquo Consueta, dederimus, & Concesserimus, ac ipsum in eisdem realiter Investiverimus. Habendum occupandum, & Exercendum officium illud, ac Nomen, Stylum, titulum, & præeminentias prædictas eidem Johanni pro termino Vitæ suæ, cum omnibus Juribus, proficiis, Commoditatibus, & Emolumentis eidem Officio qualitercumque debitis, pertinentibus, sive spectantibus, & ulterius Concesserimus præfato Johanni in Regem Armorum Anglicorum, ut præfertur erecto Quadraginta libras per annum, Ratione & Causa Officii illius percipiendas eidem Johanni singulis Annis durante Vita sua, pro Vadiis & Feodis Officii prædicti de parva Custuma Nostra in portu Civitatis nostræ Londoniæ, per manus Custumariorum, sive Collectorum Custumæ prædictæ in portu prædicto, pro tempore Existentium, ad terminos Sancti Michaelis & Paschæ per æquales Portiones, prout in Literis nostris prædictis plenius continetur. Vobis præcipimus, quod eidem Johanni id, quod ei a retro est, de prædictis Quadraginta Libris annuis, & easdem Quadraginta libras annuas ex-nunc singulis annis, durante Vita sua prædicta, de parva Custuma Civitatis nostræ prædictæ de tempore in tempus ad terminos prædictos solvatis, juxta tenorem literarum nostrarum prædictarum; Recipientes a præfato Johanne de tempore in tempus literas suas Acquietanciæ, quæ pro Vobis sufficientes fuerint in hac parte, per quas & præsens mandatum nostrum Vobis inde in Compoto vestro ad Scaccarium nostrum de tempore in tempus debitam allocationem habere faciemus, Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium sexto die Julii.

¶ Claus. 18 E. 4. m. 27. Rex Custodi Garderobæ nostræ, qui nunc est, &c. Cum, &c. Johannem Wrythe, &c. & insuper concesserimus præfato Johanni xl libras per annum, &c. unacum tali liberata vesturæ, qualem, & eisdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius hujusmodi Rex Armorum sive principalis Heraldus tempore Domini Eduardi nuper Regis Angliæ tertii progenitoris nostri habuit, & percepit; Habendum & percipiendum annuatim liberatam hujusmodi eidem Johanni singulis annis ad terminum vitæ suæ ad magnam Garderobam nostram per manus Custodis ejusdem pro tempore existentis, prout in literis prædictis plenius continetur. Tibi præcipimus, quod eidem Johanni hujusmodi talem liberatam vesturæ, &c. liberetis; Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium x<sup>o</sup> Julii.



It may be supposed that the *Faucon* Herald, who gave his "Opinion touching the Method of bearing the Arms of the Crown descended to a Nobleman by an Heirefs, and who was sent to the " Duke of *Burgundy* 14 *Edw.* IV, and present likewise at the ' Translation of the Body of the Duke of *York* on 24 *July* 16 *Edw.* IV, might be this *Writhe*, for the Historians and MSS. which place this Translation in 1446, 6 *Edw.* IV, are in apparent Mistakes.

In 19th of *Edw.* IV, he was present at the Feast of *St. George*, and was sent to the " King of *Scotland* for divers Special Matters, highly concerning the Peace of *England*, for which he had 10 *l.* given him by Privy-Seal, dated 26 *June*; from this Time we shall find very few Materials of the Officers of Arms in the Issues of the *Pell-Office*, because the King was pleased to allot a certain yearly Summ to be paid for defraying the Total Charges of Embassies and Messages (wherein he was followed by his immediate Successors) which Summ is only entred in *Gross* in these Rolls, without specifying to what particular Embassadors and Messengers any Part thereof was paid, whereby the Employments of the Officers of Arms to Forreign Princes must remain in the Dark, till such time as the Accounts of the Disposition of this Money, if any remain, shall be found.

However we now and then find some Fragments scattered up and down in other Records, and in Histories and MSS. from whence it appears that the Heralds continued in the Enjoyment of this great Branch of their Office; thus in 20 *Edw.* IV, he is said to have made the Proclamation of War at " *Edimburgh*, and Installed the Duke of " *Ferrara* Knight of the *Garter*, and " *Holinghead* acquaints us, that in 1482 (misplaced by " *Weaver* to 23 *E.* IV.) the King sent *Garter* his Principal

<sup>u</sup> See Sandf. *Geneal. Hist.* p. 234. L. 1. penes me p. 14 b. G. 13. penes me, p. 135.

<sup>x</sup> Exit. Pell. 14 E. 4. *Faucon* Herald missio per Regem Duci *Burgundie* in certis Negotiis Regis 6 l. 13 s. 4 d.

Exit. Pell. 14 E. 4. *Faucon* Herald missio Duci *Burgundie* cum Magistro *Johanne Morton* Clerico Custode Rotulorum Cancellariæ & *Thoma Montgomeri* 13 l. 6 s. 8 d.

<sup>y</sup> 34 A. 9. p. 139. in bibl. *Harley*: See F. 3. in *Of. Arm.* p. 8. Mr. Sandf. *Gen. Hist.* p. 391. and several MSS. place it in *July* 1466. But the *Hist. of Crowland*, *Otbo B.* 13 in bibl. *Cotton*. p. 178 b. translat. Ed. quartus *Ossa patris, quam fratris sui*, &c. mense *Julii* anno ejusdem Regis *xvi*º qui fuit annus 1476, which is confirmed by a Privy Seal 14 *June*, in that Year that recites the Appointment of the Translation of his Father's Body, and orders the Tresorer to provide for his Herse Black Woollen Cloth, and also for the Robes and Habits of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Gowns for others, and Torches, Lights of Wax, and other Things convenient for it according to his Estate: See *Rymer*, vol. 12. p. 28. 'Tis true, there had been Obsequies before performed for him in *Pauls* and the *Kings-Chapel*, and probably in other places, where some of the Heralds might according to Custom have attended. Thus Exit. Pell. 2 E. 4. *Johanni Talbot* Waxchaundler, pro factura unius hercie in Ecclesia Sancti Pauli London pro obsequiis Ducis *Eborum* ibidem tenendis 74 l. 17 s. 2 d. and Priv. Sig. 2 *Jun.* anno tertio to the Prests and Clerks of our Chapell, for thobsequies of the right noble

and famous Prynce of worthy memorie oure fadre whom God rest, &c.

<sup>z</sup> In Officio Pellium (E. 4.)

By the King.

Right Reverend Fadre in God, right trusty and welbeloved, we wol and Charge you, that under our prive Seele being in your warde, ye do make our Letters in forme following, *Edward*, &c. To the Tresorer and Chamberlains of our Exchequier Greting. Forasmuche, as We at this time send in our Messaige our Trusty and welbeloved Servant *Garter* King of Armes unto our dearest brother and Cousin the King of *Scotts*, we woll and Charge you for his Costs in that party, that ye deliver unto him of oure yifte and reward 10 *l.* in redy Money incontinent upon the Sight herof, &c. Yeven under our Signet at our Manoir of *Ditton* the 26 *Juyn* the xix yer of our Regn— To the Right Reverend, &c. the Bishop of *Roucheſter*. Keper of our Prive Sele.

Exit. Pell. P. 19 E. 4. *Gartero* Regi Armorum, missio per Dominum Regem Regi *Scottorum* pro diversis specialibus Causis & Materiis ipsum Dominum nostrum Regem & consilium suum moventibus, tranquillitatem & pacem hujus Regni maxime concernentibus 10 *l.*

<sup>a</sup> MS. Ant. a Wood in Mus. Ashm. Oxon. n. 33. p. 29.

<sup>b</sup> MS. Nichol. Jekyll Arm. p. 104 b.

<sup>c</sup> Hollingshead, p. 707.

<sup>d</sup> Funeral Monuments.

Y y y y

King



King at Arms, and *Northumberland* Herald, to refuse the Marriage [of his Daughter *Cecily*, with the Son of the King of *Scots*]. The true State of that Fact is, That in 14 *Edw.* IV, a Treaty was concluded for a Marriage to be had between them (being both very young) and the King of *England* Covenanted to give with his Daughter 20000 Marks (that is 2000 within three Months next following, and the like Summ every Year for two Years following, and then 1000 Marks yearly, till that whole Summ should be paid) with a particular Reservacion, that in Case the Marriage should be refused by *Edward* the Fourth, that then the King of *Scotland* should repay the same, for Security whereof not only that King gave his Letters Patents, but the Provost and City of *Edinburg* bound themselves for Performance, and some of this Money being paid according to this Contract, *Garter* King of Arms, and *Northumberland* Herald, were at length sent to re-demand the same from the King of *Scotland*, and from these Securities, to whom <sup>e</sup> *Gartier* King of Arms declared the

<sup>e</sup> *Rymer*, vol. 12. p. 165, 166— *Edward* by the Grace of God King of *England*, and of *Fraunce*, and Lorde of *Irelande*, to all to whom this present Wryting schall com, Greeting. We have seyne certayne Lettres made and passed under the Comene Seale of the Towne of *Edinburgh* in *Scotland*, by the Provost, Burgeses, Marchantes, and Cominalte of the same Towne, beryng Date the fourth day of *Auguste* thys present yere of our Lorde Mil. CCCC.LXXXII. conteyning in Effecte, that where-as it was some tyme communed and agreed betwene Us of the oon partye, and the Hygh and Mighty Prince *James* Kyng of *Scottys* our Cousine of the other Partye, that Mariage and Matrimonye shulde have bene solemnized and had betwixe *James* the fyrste begoten Son of our seyde Cousine, and our Right entirely beloved Daughter *Cicile*, and that by Us for the seid Mariage to have been performed, Certain and diverse grete Sommes of money ben payde and Contented, *Walter Bartrame* Provost of the Town of *Edinburgh* in *Scotland*, and the hole Fellowship of Marchantes, Burgeiszez, and Communitie of the seide Towne, have Bounde theymselve, their Heires, and Successours, That if it were our Pleasur, that the seid Mariage shuld be performed according to the saide Communication and Wryting therupon passed, that then it shuld be wele and truly kepte and accomplished on the Partye of our said Cousin the King of *Scottes*: And if it were not our Pleasir to have the seide Mariage perfourmed and accomplished, that then the seide *Walter* Provost, Burgeiszez, Marchantes, and Communitie of the seid Town, or eny of them shuld pay and Content unto Us all the seid Sommes of Money, that was payde for the seid Mariage, at lyke Termes and Dayes immediatly ensuyng the Refusaile of the seide Mariage, and in such lyke maner and fourme as the seid Sommes were afore delivered contented and payed: Provided alwey, that we shuld give Notice of our Pleasir and Election in the Premises, in takyng or refusyng the seid Mariage, or of the Repayment of the seid Sommes of Money to our seid Cousin the Kyng of *Scottes*, or Lordes of his Councile, or to the seide Provost and Marchantes, or any of them wythin the Royme of *Scotland* beyng for the tyme, afore the Feste of *Hallowis* then nexte to com, as in the seide Lettres it is Conteyned more at large. Wherefore we the seide *Edward* Kyng of *England* and of *Fraunce* willing to declare our Mynde, Pleaser, and Election touch-

ing the Premysse, within the tyme in the saide Lettres Expressed, for dyverse grete Causes and Considerations us movyng, have Chosen the Partye to have the Repayment of all suche Money, as we have payde in Contemplation of the seide Mariage, Refusyng and Refuse for the said Causes and Considerations the perfourmyng and Accomplishment of the saide Mariage, and therefore we lett you wytte, that trustyng upon the Feith, Trough and Diligence of our Trusty and Welbeloved Sarvante *Gartier* Kyng of Armes, and of *Northumberland* Herault, we have made Ordeigned and Constitute Jointly, and severally, the same *Gartier* and *Northumberland* our Ambassadors, Orators, Procurators, Fastours and Messeagers, Charging and Commaunding them, and over that gyving to theyme, and either of theyme, by these Presentes, full Power, Licence, and Auētorite to go and Adresse theymselve unto the Royme of *Scotland*, there to Notifys unto such Persones as, by Vertue of the seide Lettres, Notification or Knowledge oughte to be made unto, Namely and principally to the Provost, Burgeiszez, Marchantes, and Communalte of the seide Towne of *Edinburgh*, or any of them, within the seide Royaulme of *Scotland* for the tyme being afore the Feste of *All-Hallowys* next to com, our Pleaser and Election in the Premises. And that we have utterly refusyd the seid Mariage, and Takyn us to have the Repayment of all such Sommes of Money, as for Occasion of the seide betrusted Mariage we have payde and Contented afore this tyme: Promittyn in the Word of a Kyng, that by all suche Notification, Declaration, and Knowledge of our seid Pleasir and Election, as the saide *Gartier* and Herault or the on of theym shall, in fourme above expressed, make and publishe in thys Partye, We shall abyde and the same holde ferme, and stable to thintent in the said Lettres conteigned, under obligation and Plege of all oure Goodes. In witnesse whereof we have doon thies Lettres to be made Patentes. Yeven under our Greate Seale at oure Palois of *Westminster* the xii day of *October*, in the xxiii yere of our Reigne.

Ive.

*Per ipsum Regem*

*Sub magno sigillo de Cera glauci  
Coloris pendente a Cauda Pergamene*

Sovereign's



Sovereign's Refusal of the said Marriage, whose *f* Speech thereon is exemplified at large.

In

*f Rymer, vol. 12. p. 167. In Dei Nomine Amen.*—Per præfens publicum Instrumentum Cunctis appareat evidenter, quod Anno Domini Millesimo, Quadringentesimo, Octuagesimo secundo, Indictione prima, Pontificatus Sanctissimi in Christo patris & Domini nostri Domini Sixti divina Providentia Papæ quarti anno duodecimo, Mensis vero Octobris die Vicefimo Septimo, in Vestibulo Ecclesiæ Parochialis Sancti *Egidii* Villæ de *Edinburgh* Diæcesis Sancti *Andrie* in *Scotia* situatæ, coram Venerabilibus, discretis, & honestis Viris *Patricio Baron* Præposito, *David Crawford* Ballivo, ac *Waltero Bartrem*, *Roberto of Bonkyll*, *Georgio Bartrem*, *Bartholomeo Carnis*, *Georgio Barker*, *Roberto Vassyr*, *Willielmo Farley*, Mercatoribus & Burgensibus dictæ Villæ de *Edinburgh*, ac nonnullis aliis ejusdem Villæ Mercatoribus, Burgensibus, & Communitatibus, in mei *Johannis Richardson* Notarii publici subscripti & Testium infranominatorum præsentia Constitutus personaliter Discretus Vir, *Gartier* Rex Armorum, Nuncius, Serviens, Procurator, Orator, Factor & Ambasiator, ut asseruit, Christianissimi Principis & Domini *Edwardi* Dei Gratia, Regis *Angliæ & Franciæ* ac Domini *Hiberniæ*, tenens & habens in Manibus suis quendam Pergamini Scedulam, & inter Cætera tunc ibidem communicata, idem *Gartier* eandem Scedulam & Contenta in eadem publice alta & intelligibili voce legit, sub isto qui sequitur Tenore Verborum.

I *Gartier* King of Armys, Servaunt, Proctour, and Messager unto the most High and Myghty Prince my moost Drad Souverain Lord *Edward* by the Grace of God, King of *England*, and of *France*, and Lord of *Ireland*, by Vertue of Certaine Lettres of Procuracye here redy to be shewed by me by my seid Souverain Lord made and yeven, make notice, and yeve Knowlich, unto you Provost, Burgeyses, Marchantes, and Communitie of the Towne of *Edinburgh* in *Scotland*, that whereas it was sometime comowned and agreed, betwix my seid Souverain Lord on the oon Partye and the Right High and Myghty Prince *James* King of *Scots*, on the other Partye, that Mariage and matrimonye shulde have ben solemnized and had betwix *James* the First begoten Son of the seid King of *Scots*, and *Cicile* doughter to my seid Souverain Lord the King of *England*, and for the seid Marriage ben performed, Certain and diverse grete Sommes of Money ben paid and Contentid by my said Souverain Lord, which Sommes of Money, in Caas of Refusal of the said Mariage, by my said Souverain Lord to be made and declared, ye the said Provost, Burgeses, Marchantes, and Commynaulte, and every of You be bound, and obliged by your Lettres under the Comown Seal of the Town of *Edinb.* to Repaye unto his Highnesse undre like Forme, and at such Termes, as thei wer first paid, so that the King my Souverain Lord, wold make Notice and Knowleche of his Pleasire and Election in Taking or Refusing of the said Mariage, or of the Repayment of the seid Sommes of Money before the Fest of *Albalows* next to come, like as in your seid Lettres bering date at *Edinburgh* the fourth day of *August* last passed, it was Contaigned all at large: The Pleasire and Election of my said Souverain Lord for diverse Causes and Considerations hym moving is to refuse th'accomplishing of the said Mariage, and to have the Repayment of all such Sommes of Money, as by Occasion of the same betruisted Mariage his Highnesse hath paid, the seid Repayment to be had of you

Provost, Burgeyses, Marchants and Communitie, and every of you, your Heirs, and Successours, according to your Bond and Obligation afor rehersed; and ther of, I yeve you Notice and Knowlich, by this Wryting, which I delyver unto you, within the Terme in your seid Lettres lymitted and expressed, to all Ententes and Effectes, which therof may ensue.

Post cujus quidem scedulæ lectionem, supradictus *Gartier* quoddam Procuratorium, Mandatum, five Litteras Procuratorii magno Sigillo ipsius Christianissimi Principis *Edwardi* Regis memorati, ut apparuit, in Cera glauci Coloris Sigillatas: In Cujus sigilli medio ex parte una insculpta erat Imago Regis coronati in Throno sedentis in manuq; sua dextra sceptrum habentis, & in manu sua sinistra quoddam pomum five Pilam Rotundam tenentis, & in ipsius sigilli Circumferentia scripta erant ista verba viz. *Edwardus* Dei Gratia Rex *Angliæ & Franciæ*, & Dominus *Hiberniæ*, in altera vero parte illius Sigilli, Sculpta erat Figura Regis, five Hominis Armati sedentis super Equum, tenentis in manu sua dextra Gladium, & ante Pectus quendam Clipeum gerentis, & in ejusdem sigilli Rotunditate ex illa parte scripta fuerunt verba sequentia, scilicet, *Edwardus* Dei Gratia Rex *Angliæ*, & *Franciæ*, & Dominus *Hiberniæ*. Cujus quidem Procuratorii Tenor talis est.

*Edward by the Grace of God King of England, &c.*

Tunc ibidem coram ipsis Venerabilibus Viris exhibuit, & monstravit, ac idem procuratorium, five easdem litteras Procuratorii, una cum schedula prædicta eis tradidit & liberavit; qui quidem *Patricius* Præpositus memoratus ipsa Procuratorium & Schedulam a Manibus dicti *Gartier* gratanter, ut apparuit, recepit, & penes se custodivit, & consequenter vicefimo Nono die dicti Mensis Octobris, Anno Domini, Indictione, Pontificatu, & loco in principio præsentis Instrumenti designatis coram eisdem venerabilibus Viris *Patricio* præposito & *David* Ballivo prædictis, ac *Archibaldo* of *Totrick* & *Patricio* Bawbrynny Ballivis, *Thoma Zare* & *Willielmo* of *Rynde* Burgensibus, & Mercatoribus, ut asserbatur, dictæ Villæ de *Edinburgh*, & Nonnullis aliis dictæ Villæ Mercatoribus, & Burgensibus, in mei *Johannis* Notarii supradicti, & Testium infranominatorum præsentia Constitutus personaliter quidam *Richardus Larson* dictæ villæ Communis Clericus, five Recordator, supra dicto *Gartier* tunc ibidem præsentem ista Verba subsequentia, five alia eis in effectu Consimilia, publice, alta, & intelligibili voce dixit, protulit, & emisit, viz.

We understand by your Kyngs Writting, and by You, the Pleasure and Election of your King according to his Writting; and we trust to God, that at the Day of Payment of the Money, your Kings Grace, shall be so Contented, that he shall hold hym pleased, and your Kings Writting is right Welcome unto Us; and we pray you of your good Report to your King, and that you will recommend us to him.

Super quibus præmissis ipse *Gartier* me Notarium publicum subscriptum sibi unum, vel plura, Publicum, seu Publica Instrumentum, five Instrumenta conficere requisivit.

Acta sunt hæc prout supra scribuntur, & recitantur, sub anno Domini, Indictione, Pontificatu, mense, Diebus & loco prædictis, Præsentibus tunc ibidem in supradictæ scedulæ Lectione ipsiusq; Procuratorii



In 22 *Edw.* IV, he was sent into *France*, upon certain Messages, and was one of the Officers, who attended on the *b* Funeral of *Edward* the Fourth.

He attended on the *i* Coronation of *R. III.*, who on 30 *Novemb.* in his first Year confirmed his former *k* Patent, with Writs to the Collectors of the [Petit] Customs in *London*, to pay his Salary, and likewise to the Keeper of the Wardrobe for his annual Livery, and he is the First or Chief to whom the *l* Charter of Incorporation of the Heralds was grant-

Procuratorii Exhibitione, Offenſione, Liberatione, & Receptione eorundem, *Willielmo Wra* alias *Cok of Wra & Petro Geander, Dunelmensis & Lantigarenſis* Diaceſium; Præſentibus etiam in dictorum verborum, ſic ut præfertur per ipſum *Ricardum Lawſon* prolatorum, Emiſſione & prolatione diſtis *Willielmo Wra* alias *Cok of Wra & Petro Geander*, ac *Northumberland Haraldo* Armorum, *Nicholao Hawley & Roberto Lawnder*, *Ciceſtrenſis, Coventrenſis & Liſchfeldenſis*, ac *Eborum* Diaceſium, Teſtibus ad præmiſſa Vocatis ſpecialiter & rogatis. Et ego *Johannes Richardson* Clericus *Carlolenſis* Diaceſis, Publicus auctoritate Apoſtolica Notarius, præmiſſæ Scedulæ Lectioni, ac dicti Procuratorii Exhibitioni, Offenſioni, Liberationi, & Receptioni; Cæteriſq; Præmiſſis omnibus & ſingulis, dum ſic, ut præmittitur, ſub Anno Domini, Indiſtione, Pontificatu, Menſe, Diebus, & Loco prædictis agebantur & fiebant, unacum prænominatis Teſtibus Præſens perſonaliter interfui, eaque omnia & ſingula ſic fieri Vidi, & Audivi, præſens quoque publicum Inſtrumentum, Manu mea propria ſcriptum, exinde confeci, publicavi, & in hanc publicam formam redegi, ſignoque & Nomine meis ſolitis, & Conſuetis ſignavi rogatus & requiſitus in Fidem & Teſtimonium omnium & ſingulorum Præmiſſorum.

Et Conſtat michi Notario antediſto de interlineatione harum Diſtionum, *Lord, right, witt takin*, quas approbo Ego Notarius memoratus

Ad imum Signi

*Johannes Richardson*

Teſtimonium fidele perhibeo.

*g* 24 Feb. 22 E. 4. (in Officio Pellium) *Edward, &c.* To the Treſorer, &c. Where as we ſend at this tyme Oure truſty and welbeloved Servant *Gartier* King of Armes into the parties of *France* on Certain our Meſſags to be done there and have yeven unto him towards his Coſts and Charges which he ſhall ſuſteyne in that behalfe 20 l.

*b* J. 3. in Off. Arm. p. 7. J. xi. p. 83, 84. MS. of *Macado Richmond among D. of Norfolk's MS.* in Off. Arm.

*i* MS. Ant. a Wood in Muſ. Aſhm. Oxon. n. 33. f. 21.

*k* Pat. 1 R. 3. p. 1. m. 2. Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem. Sciatis, quod cum Dominus E. nuper Rex *Angliæ*, frater noſter Conſiderationis aciem in laudabilia ſervicia, quæ Dilectus ſibi *Johannes Wrythe* alias nuper dictus *Norrey* Rex Armorum partium borealium Regni *Angliæ*, in hiis quæ ad Officium illud ſpectare intelligebantur, exercuit, dirigens, eundem propterea & non minus ob ſolertiam & Sagacitatem, quas idem frater noſter in eo Satis habuit exploratas, in Principalem Heraldum & Officiarium incliti Ordinis *Garterii*, Armorumque Regem Anglicorum ex Gratia ſua ſpeciali erexerit, fecerit, Conſtituerit, ordinaverit, Creaverit, & Coronaverit, ac ei Officium illud, necnon Nomen le *Garter* ſtilum, titulum, libertates & præminentias

huiusmodi Officio convenientia & concordantia, ac ab antiquo Conſueta, dederit & Conceſſerit, ac ipſum in eiſdem realiter inveſtiverit; Habendum, occupandum, & Exercendum Officium illud, ac nomen, ſtilum, titulum, & præminentias prædictas eidem *Johanni* pro termino vitæ ſuæ, cum omnibus Juribus, proficiis, Commoditatibus, & Emolumentis eidem Officio qualitercunque debitis, pertinentibus ſive ſpectantibus; Et ulterius Conceſſerit idem frater noſter præfato *Johanni* in Regem Armorum Anglicorum, ut præfertur, erecto quadraginta libras per Annum, ratione & Cauſa Officii illius, percipiendas eidem *Johanni* ſingulis Annis durante vita ſua, pro Vadiis & feodis Officii prædicti de parva Cuſtuma in portu Civitatis *Londoniæ*, per manus Cuſtumariorum ſive Collectorum Cuſtumæ prædictæ in portu prædicto pro tempore exiſtentium, ad terminos Sancti *Michaelis & Paſchæ* per æquales portiones una cum tali liberatione veſturæ, qualem & eiſdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius huiusmodi Rex Armorum, ſive Principalis Heraudus tempore Domini E. nuper Regis *Angliæ* tertii Progenitoris noſtri, habuit & percepit, habendum & percipiendum annuatim liberatam huiusmodi eidem *Johanni* ſingulis Annis pro termino vitæ ſuæ, ad magnam Garderobam ipſius fratris noſtri, per manus Cuſtodis ejusdem pro tempore Exiſtentis, prout in Literis Patentibus dicti fratris noſtri, quarum datum eſt apud Weſtmonaſterium ſexto die *Julii*, Anno Regni ſui decimo Octavo inde Conſectis plenius Continetur. Nos autem literas prædictas & omnia & ſingula in eiſdem Contentis ratas habentes, & gratas, eas pro Nobis & Hæredibus Noſtris, quantum in Nobis eſt, acceptamus, ratificamus, & approbamus, ac eidem *Johanni* Concedimus, & Conſirmamus per præſentes, aliquo Statuto, Actu, vel Ordinatione in Contrarium factis vel habitis non obſtantibus— In Cujus, &c. Teſte Rege apud Weſtmonaſterium xxx<sup>o</sup> die Novembris. Per breve de privato Sigillo & de data, &c. & pro quatuor Marcis ſolutis in Hanaperio.

Et Mandatum eſt Cuſtumariis, ſive Collectoribus parvæ Cuſtumæ in portu Civitatis Regis *Londoniæ*, qui nunc ſunt, & qui pro tempore erunt, quod eidem *Johanni* id, quod ei a retro eſt, de prædictis quadraginta libris Annuis, a prædicto Sexto die *Julii*, et eaſdem quadraginta libras annuas extunc ſingulis annis eidem *Johanni* pro termino vitæ ſuæ de parva Cuſtuma Civitatis prædictæ, ad terminos prædictos, de tempore in tempus ſolvant, juxta tenorem literarum & Conſirmationis prædictarum.—Teſte ut ſupra.

Et Mandatum eſt Cuſtodi Magnæ Garderobæ Regis, qui nunc eſt, & qui pro tempore erit, quod eidem *Johanni* id, quod ei a retro eſt, de prædicta liberata Veſturæ annuæ a prædicto ſexto die *Julii* & eandem liberatam Veſturæ annuam ex tunc ſingulis Annis eidem *Johanni* pro termino Vitæ ſuæ de Magna Garderoba Regis, de reimpore in tempus liberet, juxta tenorem Literarum & Conſirmationis prædictarum. Teſte ut ſupra.

*l* See Rymer, vol. 12. p. 225.



ed with the Messuage called *Coleharbert*, so that Mr. *Philpot* is in an Error touching this House.

And on the Fourth of *January*, he was one of the " Sureties for *Gloucester* King of Arms, for the Payment of a Rent reserved to the Crown.

After *Hen. VII* came to the Throne, he had his Robe ordered him before the Coronation. which was on the 30th of *Oct.* and obtained on the 13th of *February* a Confirmation of the Patent granted him by  
*Edward*

*m Villare Cantianum*, p. 164. " *Jack Cade* burnt down the Office of Arms then kept at *Coleharbour*, and destroyed their Rolles, Registers, and " books of Armory ". His Insurrection was in the 28th of *Hen. vi.* *Rymer*, vol. xi. p. 275. and six Years before this Time this House had been granted to *John Holland* Duke of *Exeter*, Pat. 22 *H. 6.* p. 1. m. 13. Mr. *Lambard* in his *Perambulation of Kent*, p. 340. writes, That *Jack Straw* and *Jack Cade* foully defaced the Records and Monuments both of the Law and Armoury, and *Gerard Leigh*, in his *Accidence*, p. 134. saith, That in *Rich.* the Second's Days, *Jack Straw*, *William Waver*, and their Companions, in the Time of *Hen. vi.* *Jack Cade*, in the Reign of *Ed. iv.* the Bastard of *Fauconberge* and *Geffery Gate*, in the Time of *Henry vii.* his Days *Perkin Warbeck* and the Blacksmith, all which, with their Accomplices, have defaced Law and Arms.

" *Fin. 1 R. 3.* m. 10. Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem, Sciatis quod per manucaptionem *Joh. Garter* Capitalis Regis Armorum & *Th. Clarenceux* Regis Armorum in Australensibus Commisimus *Ricardo Champeney* alias dicto *Gloucester* Regi Armorum Custodiam Manerii de *Huntingfeld* in Comitatu *Kantie*, habendum a festo Sancti Michaelis ultimo præterito usque ad finem viginti Annorum ex tunc proxime Sequentium & plenarie Completorum, Reddendo inde Nobis per Annum pro Custodia prædicta decem Libras & duodecim Denarios, prout Nobis responsum est, & duodecim denarios ultra de Incremento prædicto annuo ad Festa *Pasche* & Sancti Michaelis per æquales portiones, ac sustentando Domos, Clausuras & Edificia, necnon Supportando omnia alia Onera dictæ Custodiæ pertinentia sive aliquo modo incumbencia quamdiu Custodiam habere voluerit supradictam, Proviso semper, quod si aliquis alius plus dare Voluerit de Incremento per annum sine fraude vel malo Ingenio, quod tunc dictus *Ricardus* tantum pro eodem solvere teneatur, si Custodiam habere voluerit supradictam. In Cujus, &c. Teste Rege apud *Westmonasterium* quarto die *Januarii*— Per *Billam* Theaurararæ. Vide *Rymer*, vol. 12. p. 210.

" *Penes Rem. Regis, Provisions for the Coronation of Hen. vii.* f. 207. *Robes for the Officers of Arms* Garter, Richmond, Norrey Kings of Armes, to each v yards of Cloib, Pursuivants Rougecrosse, Bleumantle, Calys, Guifnes, Hammes, Risebank, Berwick, Montorgell, Kyldare 3 yards and a half, Somerset herald 5 yards.

p 1 *H. 7.* (in Officio Pellium) —Per Regem. Reverende in Christo Pater Nobis quamplurimum dilecte Salutem, vobis Mandamus, quod sub privato Sigillo nostro in Custodia vestra existente, literas nostras Cancellario nostro *Anglia* dirigendas fieri faciatis, mandantes eidem, quod sub magno Sigillo nostro in Custodia sua existente literas nostras patentes fieri faciat in forma sequente.

Rex omnibus ad Quos, &c. Salutem. Sciatis, quod cum Dominus *Edwardus* nuper Rex *Anglia* quartus per litteras suas patentes, quarum datum est apud *Westmonasterium* sexto die *Julii* Anno Regni sui 18<sup>o</sup> erexerit, fecerit, Constituerit, Creaverit, & Coronaverit *Johannem Wrythe* in principalem Heraldum & Officiarium incliti Ordinis *Garterii*,

Armorumq; Regem Anglicorum, &c. Dat. sub Sig. neto 20 *Febr.* Anno Regni nostri primo.

Reverendo in Christo Patri nobis quamplurimum dilecto Episcopo *Exoniæ* Custodi privati Sigilli nostri.

Pat. 1 *H. 7.* p. 2. m. 12. —Rex omnibus ad Quos, &c. Salutem. Sciatis, quod cum Dominus *Edm.* nuper Rex *Anglia* Quartus per litteras suas Patentes, quarum datum est apud *Westmonasterium* sexto die *Julii* Anno Regni sui decimo octavo erexerit, fecerit, Constituerit, Ordinaverit, Creaverit, & coronaverit *Joh. Wrythe* in principalem Heraldum & Officiarium incliti ordinis *Garterii*, Armorumque Regem *Anglicorum*, ac ei officium illud, Necnon Nomen le *Garterier*, stilum, titulum, libertates, & præminencias hujusmodi Officio Convenientes & Concordantes, ac ab antiquo Consuetas dederit, & per litteras illas concesserit, Nec non ipsum in eisdem realiter Investiverit, Habendum, occupandum, & Exercendum Officium illud, ac Nomen, Stilum, titulum, libertates, & præminencias prædictas eidem *Johanni* pro termino vitæ suæ cum Omnibus, Juribus, Proficiis, Commoditatibus, & Emolumentis eidem Officio qualitercumque debitis, pertinentibus, sive spectantibus, prout in eisdem litteris plenius Continentur; nos autem de Gratia nostra speciali, ac intuitu obsequii prædicti *Johannis Wrythe* literas prædictas, quæ ad officium prædictum, ac ad omnia & singula præmissa officium illud tangencia in dictis litteris Patentibus Contentis rata habentes & grata, ea pro Nobis Hæredibus nostris, quantum in Nobis est, acceptamus, approbamus, ratificamus & Confirmamus: Et insuper de uberiori Gratia nostra Concessimus, & per præsentem Concedimus præfato *Johanni* in Regem Armorum Anglicorum, ut præfertur, Erecto quadraginta libras per Annum, Ratione & Causa Officii illius, habendum & percipiendum eidem *Johanni* singulis Annis durante vita sua, pro vadiis & feodis Officii prædicti, de Exitibus Proficiis, firmis, & reventionibus de Comitatu *Londoniæ* & *Middlesexia* provenientibus, sive Crescentibus, Necnon de quibuscunque debitis, & denariorum summis in Comitatibus prædictis per Vicecomites Comitatum prædictorum pro tempore Existentes, ad opus nostrum, vel hæredum Nostorum levandis per manus Vicecomitum eorundem Comitatum pro tempore Existentium, ad festa *Pasche* & Sancti Michaelis, per æquales portiones, una cum tali liberata Vestura, & eisdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius hujusmodi Rex Armorum, sive Principalis Heraldus tempore Domini *Edwardi* nuper Regis *Anglia* tertii Progenitoris nostri habuit & percepit, Habendum & Percipiendum annuatim liberatam hujusmodi eidem *Johanni* singulis annis pro termino Vitæ suæ ad Magnam Garderobam Nostram per Manus Custodis ejusdem pro tempore existentis: Et quia Certitudinaliter Nobis Constat, quod dictus *Johannes* officium prædictum a vicesimo secundo die *Augusti* ultimo præterito hucusque exercuit & occupavit, nulla Vadia feoda, seu regarda de Nobis proinde habens aut percipiens, de gratia nostra prædicta Concessimus & per præsentem Concedimus præfato *Johanni* tot & tantas denariorum summas ad quot & quantas quadraginta libras per annum a dicto Vicesimo Secundo



Edward the Fourth, with 40 *l.* yearly from the Revenues of *London* and *Middlesex*, with a Writ to the Sheriffs to pay it, and on the 10th of *July* following, he had 40 *l.* more, by reason of the said Office, granted from the Petit Customs, notwithstanding any former Gifts, and the next Day a Writ issued to the Customers to pay it: And in the Act of Resumption then made, there is an Exception for the Salary of *Garter*; but notwithstanding these Favours, we are informed that *Coleharbert*, granted

cundo die *Augusti* ultimo præterito hucusque se attingunt, Habendum & percipiendum eidem *Johanni* de Nobis, Nomine Regardi, de Exitibus, Proficuis, firmis, & Reventionibus dictorum Comitatum *Londonie* & *Middlesexie* provenientius, five emergentibus per manus Vicecomitum dictorum Comitatum pro tempore existentium, Eo quod expressa Mentio de vero Valore annuo præmissorum, seu alicujus eorum, aut de aliis donis, five Concessionibus eidem *Johanni* per nos ante hæc tempora factis in præsentibus minime factis existentibus, aut aliquo Statuto, Actu, Ordinatione, provisione seu restrictione in Contrarium factis, editis, ordinatis, five provisis aut aliqua alia re, Causa, vel materia quacunque non obstante. In cujus, &c. Teste Rege apud *Westmonasterium* xiii die *Februarii*— Per breve de privato Sigillo, & de data, &c. & pro sex solidis & octo denariis solutis in Hanaperio.

Et mandatum est Vicecomitibus Comitatum *Londonie* & *Middlesexie*, qui nunc sunt, & qui pro tempore erunt, quod eidem *Johanni* id, quod ei arecto est de prædictis quadraginta libris nomine Regardi, a prædicto vicesimo secundo die *Augusti* & dictas quadraginta libras annuas eidem *Johanni* ex nunc singulis annis, durante vita sua prædicta, ad terminos prædictos, de Exitibus, proficuis & reventionibus prædictorum Comitatum *Londonie* & *Middlesexie*, de tempore in tempus solvant juxta tenorem literarum nostrarum prædictarum, Recipientes a præfato *Johanne* de tempore in tempus literas suas Acquietancie, tam pro eo, quod ei arecto est de prædictis quadraginta libris, nomine Regardi, a prædicto vicesimo secundo die *Augusti*, quam de dictis quadraginta libris annuis de tempore in tempus, quæ pro Vobis sufficientes fuerint in hac parte; per quas, & præfens Mandatum Nostrum Nos vobis inde in Computo Vestro ad scaccarium Nostrum de tempore in tempus debitam allocationem haberi faciemus— Teste Rege apud *Westmonasterium* xiii die *Februarii*.

9 Pat. 1 H. 7. p. 1. m. 19. Rex Omnibus ad Quos, &c. Salutem, sciatis quod Nos de Gratia nostra speciali, ac ex certa Scientia, & mero motu nostris, Certis notabilibus de Causis nos specialiter Moventibus, Dedimus, & Concessimus ac per præfentes Damus, & Concedimus dilecto Nobis *Johanni Wrythe* alias dicto *Garter* Regi Armorum Anglicorum quadraginta libras Sterlingorum per annum, ratione & Causa Officii illius, Habendum & percipiendum eidem *Johanni* singulis annis, durante vita sua, pro vadiis & feodis officii prædicti, de parva Custuma nostra in portu Civitatis nostræ *Londonie*, per manus Custumariorum five Collectorum Custumæ prædictæ in portu prædicto pro tempore existentium, ad terminos Sancti *Michaelis* & *Pasche*, per æquales portiones, una cum tali liberatura vesturæ, qualem & eisdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius hujusmodi Rex Armorum, five Principalis Heraldus tempore Domini *Edwardi* nuper Regis *Anglæ* tertii Progenitoris nostri habuit & percepit; Habendam & percipiendam annuatim liberatam hujusmodi eidem *Johanni* singulis Annis, ad terminum vitæ suæ ad magnam Garderobam nostram, per Manus Custodis Ejus-

dem pro tempore Existentis, Et quia Certitudinaliter Nobis Constat quod dictus *Johannes* Officium prædictum a vicesimo Secundo die *Augusti* ultimo præterito sumptibus suis propriis hucusque Exercuit, & Occupavit, nulla vadia, feoda, seu regarda de Nobis proinde habens, aut percipiens, de Gratia nostra speciali Concessimus, & per præfentes Concedimus præfato *Johanni* tot & tantas Denariorum summas, ad quot & quantas quadraginta libræ per annum a dicto vicesimo secundo die *Augusti* ultimo præterito hucusque se attingunt, Habendum & percipiendum eidem *Johanni* de nobis, Nomine Regardi, de parva Custuma nostra prædicta in portu Civitatis Nostræ *Londonie* prædictæ, per manus Custumariorum five Collectorum Custumæ prædictæ in portu prædicto pro tempore existentium, Eo quod expressa Mentio de vero Valore annuo Præmissorum, seu alicujus eorum, aut aliis donis five Concessionibus eidem *Johanni* per Nos ante hæc tempora factis, in præsentibus minime facta existit, aut aliquo Statuto, Actu, Ordinatione, provisione seu restrictione in Contrarium factis, editis, Ordinatis, seu provisis; aut aliqua alia re, Causa, vel materia quacunque non obstante —In cujus, &c. Teste Rege apud *Westmonasterium* 10 die *Julii*.

Per breve de privato Sigillo & de data, &c.

1 Claus. 1 H. 7. N. 11. —Rex Custumariis, five Collectoribus parvæ Custumæ Nostræ in portu Civitatis nostræ *Londonie*, qui nunc sunt, & qui pro tempore erunt, Salutem. Cum nos decimo die *Julii*, Anno Regni Nostri primo per literas nostras patentes, de Gratia nostra speciali dedimus, & Concesserimus dilecto Nobis *Johanni Wrythe* alias dicto *Garter* Regi Armorum Anglicorum, quadraginta libras Sterlingorum per annum, ratione & Causa Officii illius, Habendum & percipiendum eidem *Johanni* singulis Annis, durante Vita sua, pro vadiis & feodis Officii prædicti, de parva Custuma nostra in portu Civitatis Nostræ prædictæ, per manus Custumariorum five Collectorum Custumæ prædictæ in portu prædicto pro tempore existentium, ad terminos Sancti *Michaelis* & *Pasche* per æquales Portiones, prout in Literis nostris prædictis plenius Continetur. Vobis præcipimus, quod eidem *Johanni* id, quod ei a retro est, de prædictis quadraginta libris annuis, & eisdem quadraginta libras annuas ex nunc singulis annis de parva Custuma nostra prædicta, ad terminos prædictos, de tempore in tempus, solvatis, juxta tenorem Literarum Nostrarum prædictarum, Recipientes a præfato *Johanne* de tempore in tempus literas suas Acquietancie, quæ pro Vobis sufficientes fuerint in hac parte, per quas & præfens Mandatum Nostrum, Nos vobis inde in Computo Vestro ad scaccarium Nostrum de tempore in tempus debitam Allocationem haberi faciemus. —Teste Rege apud *Westmonasterium* xi<sup>o</sup> die *Julii*.

1 Parl. 1 H. 7. Provision for our welbeloved John Wryth, otherwise called Garter, touching his Creation to the Office of King of Arms by Ed. vi, or his Annuity by us granted.



granted by the Charter of Rich. III, was seized into the King's Hands, because it was supposed to belong personally to Him, and not to the Officers of Arms in their Corporate Capacity; and in this first Year he had 80*l.* Reward, in the next was sent to the "King of the Romans, whose Instructions for that Purpose taken from the Original are Tran-

*Industrious Mr. Stow, in his Survey of London, could not find how the Heralds became displaced from this House: See also Wever's Fun. Mon. p. 686. Sir George Buc saith only in general, That they were removed to Rounceval by those who did not approve the Doings of Rich. 3. Universities at the End of Stow, p. 1086. But the Heralds in their Petition in the Reign of Hen. 8. that the King would be pleased to grant them some Place to keep their Assemblies, Chapters, and Library, insert these Words, "As they had of late dayes the House of Coldharborow, the which to them appertained by guift under the Kings broad Seal, as may appear, the which house was taken from the said Office of Arms at the coming into the realme of King Hen. the vii of most noble memory, and that for be- cause, that it was presupposed, and taken for the very house of John Writb then being Garter King of Arms dwelling in it, and so when the house was taken from the said John Writb, all the bookes which longed to the whole Office remained in his keepinge". MS. of Char. Lees, given to the Office by Mr. Hare Richmond, p. 211, 212, &c. and in another MS. given by him, which was Dethick's, p. 221 b. &c. It would be too foreign here, to shew that Buc was mistaken as to Rounceval, as also to give an Account of these Books, which were afterwards in 1504 delivered to Machado Clarenceux, and then came into the Possession of Benoilt, who gave them by Will to Hawley then Carlisle, at which Time a Catalogue was made of all the Books so devised, now in the Custody of this Collector.*

*11 Offic. Pell.*

*" 24 Oct. 2 H. 7. (in Officio Pellium) Henri, &c. To the Tresorer, &c. Forasmuch as we at this tyme send unto our Cousyn the King of Romayns our Trusty and wellbeloved Herauld Garter King of Armes, to open and shew unto our said Cousin Certain things Concerning our pleasure, for whose Costs we have assigned him 20 Marks, &c.*

*Priv. Sigill. in Officio Pellium m. 2 H. 7. Garter Herauld pro Expensis suis usq; Regem Romanorum xx Marcas, Magistro Olivero misso usque Regem Francia pro expensis suis, Lancaster and York Heraldis missis in Comitiva usque eundem Regem pro Expensis x Marcas.*

*Lib. Comput. m. 2 H. 7. Garter Herald Regi Armorum misso in Negotiis Regis versus Regem Romanorum pro Custubus & Expensis suis, 13*l.* 6*s.* 8*d.**

H. [The King's Monogram].

*" Instruction baillee par le Roy d'Angleterre, & de France, Seigneur d'Irlande, a Son Roy d'Armes Garter, & a Thomas Wynnam Marchant de l'estaple, lesquels Il envoie devers treshault & puissant Prince le Roy des Roumains son Cousin, au quel Ilz diront de bouche les Choses qui s'ensuivent.*

*Premierement Remonstreront audit Cousin plusieurs de ses subgetz faingnans, & eulx disans estre dautre Nation comme Danois ou autrement, ont longuement estes sur la mer & encore yront, lesquels ont prins & prenent chacun Jour les subgetz du dit Seigneur & Jculx avec leurs Navires biens & Marchandises ont mene & maynent vendre*

*& distribuer & en faire leur bon plaisir es pays & soubz loyeyssance du dict Cousin en les mettant a finance & Raeson, comme fil y avoit guerre ouverte entre eulx.*

*Item que lesdits & autres mailfacteurs & pirates de mer font es pays du dit Cousin soustenus Receptez Vitaille & maintenus, & desira par es devant le dict Seigneur a par ses lettres missives adverty & ledict Cousin.*

*Item en Continuant Iceulx excez & Oultrages lesdits mailfacteurs & autres pirates de mer ont naguairs mesmement en ce moy d'octobre, prins ung Marchant nome Arnoult de Londres, lequel avec sa merchandize a par eulx este mene a - - - - - & avec ce Ilz ont prins plusieurs autres des Subjects du dict Seigneur Dont ample declaration est faicte en ung billet delivre ausdict Garter & Wynnam pour le dire & declarer audict Cousin.*

*Item diront Iceulx Garter & Wynnam, que cest chose bien congnu que aucuns subgetz dudit Cousin ont prins naguieres fait habiller & aprestier a leur propres Coustz & depens certains Navires esquippez en guerre. Dont des aucuns ung escossois Nomme le Seigneur de Criketon est Cappitaine, qui se donnent accompagner avec les autres dessus mencionnez ainsi que eulx mesmes le dyent: Car aucuns de leur Compaignie sont venus devers le dict Souveraign aportans leur congnoissance Cest assavoir la blanche Rose, le ours, & le baston noilleux, & plainement ont donne a coignoistre toute leur entreprize qui nest pas pour prendre seulement les subgetz dudit Seigneur mais pour lui cuider faire grief & Nuyssance tant a sa personne, comme a son Royaume, en ayant quelque entendement secret avec aucuns ses ennemys & Rebelles, Dont il se donne merveillex que le dict Cousin le Veuille Consentir ne parmettre, Remembrant les trefues & entrecours de Marchandise prins entre eulx & les promesses sur ce faictes & Sellees, Car telles Choses ne se peuvent faire es pays du dict Cousin sans son sceit ou Consentement au moins quil nen ait aucune congnoissance car tout le monde le scait ainsi que de chose bien publique.*

*Surquoy les dictz Garter, & Wynnam diront quilz font la venus pour entendre & scavoir ouvertement & plainement lintention du dict Cousin, & de ce que faire vouldra tant pour la Reformation & Reparation diceulx excez & atemptatz comme pour eviter Ceulx qui pour le temps advenir se pouvoient Commettre & ensuir Afinque le dit Seigneur puisse certainement congnoistre sur quoy Il se pourra assurer & fier, Et sil a intention dentretenir seurement & Justement les dictz trefues & entrecours de merchandize ou non Aussi lesdicts Garter & Wynnam desyreront savoir le dict Cousin enverra ses deputez a Calais aladyeste accordee Yestre tenue avec ceulx dudit Seigneur En la conclusion prins avec Maistre Pierres puissant son Ambaxateur quant dernièrement estoit pardeca, Et savoir le Jour que ses Deputez se trouveront audict lieu de Calais.*

*Fait & expedit au Manoir de Grenemich le dernier Jour doctobre Mil. CCCC. lxxx. & six.*

H. [The Kings Monogram.] in the Collector's Custody.  
scribed



scribed into the Margin, and in the third Year was in <sup>x</sup> Ireland; in the fourth was in <sup>y</sup> Bretagne, in the sixth was sent to the King of the <sup>z</sup> Romans with the Garter, which <sup>a</sup> Ashmole, by a Mistake, ascribes to his Son and Successor Sir Thomas.

In this Year he attended, by the King's Command, on the <sup>b</sup> Embassador of the King of the Romans at Dover, and conducted him to London, and was then sent <sup>c</sup> Embassador with Francis Dupo into Bretagne, whose Business there was to take <sup>d</sup> Obligations from Anne the Dutches, and the three Estates, for such Money as had, or should be laid out by the King for the Defence of that Country, and by a late Historian he is remembered to have been in that Dutchy in 1491, with <sup>e</sup> Wallingford Pursivant to the Prince of Wales, that is his Son Thomas, afterwards his Successor in this Office.

In the Seventh of Henry VII, he was sent first to the <sup>f</sup> Duke of

<sup>x</sup> In Officio Pellium—Henri, &c. To the Tresorer, &c. that ye paie unto our trusty and welbelov'd Garter King of Arms 20 Marc. by Way of Reward for his Costs and Expences to be born into and from our Land of Irland 1 June 3 H. 7. on the same day CCC l. Sterling Ordered to Sir R. Eggecombe for the same purpose.

Priv. Sig. in Officio Pellium. P. 3 H. 7. Garter Regi Armorum pro Expensis suis habitis usque a partibus Hibernie xx marc.

<sup>y</sup> 4 June 4 H. 7. (In Officio Pellium) Henri, &c. To the Tresorer, &c. Whereas We at this tyme send our Trusty and Welbelov'd Servant Garter King of Armes, for and upon Certain our Messages into the parties of Bretagne, Ye pay him 20 Marcs, &c.

Priv. Sigill. P. 4 H. 7. Garter Regi Armorum pro expensis suis in Britannia 20 Marc.

<sup>z</sup> Franc. 6 H. 7. m. 22. Rex omnibus ad Quos, &c. Salutem. Sciatis, quod cum Sacratissimum Principem Maximilianum Romanorum Regem semper Augustum Consanguineum nostrum Carissimum, in Confratrem Nobilis Ordinis Garterii una cum aliis ipsius Ordinis Militibus, elegerimus, ipsumque cum quodam Gartero insigniri decrevimus, Cum etiam quædam Intelligentiæ, Pactiones, Conventiones, Amicitia, Alliganciæ, & Confederationes inter eundem Consanguineum & Confratrem Nostrum & Nos, per nos Nostrosque Commissarios, Procuratores, & Deputatos superinde sufficienter & legitime Auctorizatos, novissime sub certis modo & forma captæ sint, factæ, initæ, & Conclusæ, Quas quidem Intelligentias, Pactiones, Conventiones, Amicitias, Alligancias, & Confederationes pro Parte nostra firmiter teneri & inviolabiliter observari volentes, per Literas nostras Patentes, manuali subscriptione, ac magno sigillo nostris munitas, pro Nobis & in nomine nostro, innovavimus: Nos de Fidelitatibus, Industriis, & providis circumspeditionibus, dilectorum & fidelium servientum Nostrorum Caroli Somerset Militis pro Corpore nostro, & Garteri Herald Regi Armorum plenius Confidentes, Ipsos nostros veros, & indubitatos Oratores, Commissarios, Legatos, Deputatos, & Nuncios facimus, Ordinamus, & Constituiamus per præsentem, Dantes & Concedentes eisdem plenam potestatem, & auctoritatem, ac Mandatum generale & speciale, tam idem Garterium, quam Literas nostras prædictas eidem Consanguineo & Confratri nostro pro nobis & Nomine nostro deliberandi; Consimilesque literas Patentes ab eodem Consanguineo

& Confratre nostro petendi, exigendi, & recipiendi, Cæteraque omnia & singula, quæ in Præmissis seu circa ea necessaria fuerint, seu quomodolibet oportuna faciendi, exercendi, & expediendi, eodem modo prout Nos ipsi faceremus & facere possemus, si præsentem interessemus. In cujus, &c. Teste Rege apud Okyng duodecimo die Septembris— Per ipsum Regem. Rymer, vol. 12. p. 403.

Exit. Pell. P. 5 H. 7. Gartero Regi Armorum missio per mandatum Domini Regis usque Regem Romanorum pro Custubus & expensis 33 l. 6 s. 8 d.

<sup>a</sup> Ashm. Hist. of the Garter, p. 404.

<sup>b</sup> Pascha 6 H. 7. Gartero Regi Armorum missio Mandato Domini Regis usque Dover in Comitiva Ambassiatorum Regis Romanorum pro Custubus suis recipienti denarios per manus Willielmi Wardelane servientis sui 27 s. 4 d.

Lib. Comput. P. 6 H. 7. Gartero Regi Armorum missio usque Dover ad attendendum super Ambassiatores Regis Romanorum ipsos Conducendum usque London pro Expensis suis xxxvi s.

Lib. Comp. P. 6 H. 7. Willimo Tesry pro denariis solutis cuidam Nuncio missio a Domino Theaurario usque Garterum Regem Armorum existentem cum Ambassiatoribus Regis Romanorum in Comitatu Kancia 3 s. 4 d.

<sup>c</sup> Lib. Comp. P. 6 H. 7. Gartero Regi Armorum, ac Francisco Dupo missis in Negotio Regis usque partes Britannie pro Expensis 20 l.

<sup>d</sup> Rymer, vol. 12. p. 439.

<sup>e</sup> Lobineau l'Hist. de Bretagne, p. 813. Jartiere Herault du Roy d'Angleterre & Wallingford Pursuivant du Prince de Galles estoient pour lors aupres de la Duchesse 1491.

<sup>f</sup> 3<sup>o</sup> Januarii 7 H. 7. (in Officio Pellium)

Signed

By the King

Right Trusty, &c. And forasmuche as we sende at this tyme our full trusty Servant Garter King of Armes in our Especial Message unto our right dere Cousin the Duc of Burgoigne, and have appointed unto him the Somme of xx marks sterling for his Costs, &c.

Priv. Sig. m. 7 H. 7. Gartero Regi Armorum missio usque Ducem Burgonie xx marcas.

Lib. Comput. m. 7 H. 7. Gartero Regi Armorum missio Duci Burgonie pro Expensis 13 l. 6 s. 8 d. Magistro Johanni Curteville nuper venienti in negotio ab Archiduce de Aufrice & Duce Burgondie de regardo per literam per manus Garteri Regis Armorum xx l.

Burgundy



Burgundy, then to <sup>g</sup> *Cales*, <sup>b</sup> *Guifnes*, and other Places, about Matters of Secrecy.

In <sup>9</sup> *Hen. VII*, he was sent into <sup>i</sup> *France* on the King's Affairs, and then to the <sup>k</sup> King of the *Romans*, with the Allowance of <sup>5</sup> *s.* <sup>8</sup> *d.* daily, having a Pursevant with him.

These Entries will be observed to be very imperfect, being taken from the short Notes of the Tellers, there being no Pelle Rolls, that the Collector knows, of the Issues of these Years.

Mr. *Asbmole* mentions the carrying the *Garter* to <sup>l</sup> *Guido Ubaldus*, <sup>22</sup> *H. VII*, by him, whereas he died before that Time, which is a Mistake for his Son and Successor.

He made his <sup>m</sup> Will <sup>25</sup> *March* 1504, proved the last Day of *April* following, wherein he mentions three Daughters, *Catherine* married to *John*

<sup>g</sup> Priv. Sigill. m. 7 *H. 7.* *Gartero Regi Armorum pro Expensis suis usque Cales, & aliis locis Cs.*

<sup>b</sup> 22 *d.* *Fevrier* 7 *H. 7.* (in *Officio Pellium*)

Signed By the King

Right Trusty—And forasmuche as we now sende our full Trusty Servant *Gartier* King of Armes in our Especial and hasty Messsage unto *Calais*, *Guifnes*, and other places beyond the See, and have appointed unto him 100 *s.* &c.

*Mich.* 7 *H. 7.* *Gartero Regi Armorum misso Mandato Domini Regis usque Villam Cales, Guifnia & ad alia loca in partibus illis pro certis Secretis Negotiis Regis tanquam pro Expensis 100 s.*

<sup>i</sup> Priv. Sigill. P. 9 *H. 7.* *Franc Marezon xx l. & cuidam Presbitero xl. pro Custubus suis missis versus partes ultra mare, ac Gartero Regi ad Arma xx l.*

7 *Jan.* 9 *H. 7.* (in *Officio Pellium*).

Signed By the King.

Right Trusty, &c. Forasmuche as we send at this time in oure especial Messsage into the parties of *France* oure Trusty and welbeloved Servant *Garter* King at Armes, and for his Costs have assigned him 20 Marks Sterling, &c. 7 *Janrii*.

Priv. Sig. M. 9 *H. 7.* *Gartero Regi Armorum misso in partes Francie 20 marcas.*

*Mich.* 9 *H. 7.* *Garter Roy d'Armes misso in Francia super negotiis Domini Regis pro Expensis suis 13 l. 6 s. 8 d.*

<sup>k</sup> 5 *July* 9 *H. 7.* In *Officio Pellium*.

Signed By the King.

Right Trusty—Forasmuche as we send at this time our full Trusty Servant *Garter* King of Arms, in our Especial Messsages unto our Brother and Cousin the King of *Romayns*, and have appointed him for his Costs and Expences from the time of his departing unto his Retorne 6 *s.* 8 *d.* daily, and for the Charges going in his Company 5 Marks, &c.

Priv. Sig. P. 9 *H. 7.* *Gartero Regi Armorum misso in negotiis Regis ad Regem Romanorum capienti per diem 6 s. 8 d. itinerando, & Cuidam Pursevant in Comitiva sua de Rege v marks.*

Lib. Comput. P. 9 *H. 7.* *Gartero Regi Armorum misso mandato Regis versus Regem Romanorum super expensis suis juxta ratam 6 s. 8 d. per diem dum erit in servitio versus eundem Regem*

sibi per Dominum Regem causa illa appunctuatis 20 marcas.

Eidem *Gartero* pro Expensis unius Pursevant in Comitiva sua ad eundem Regem 5 Marcas.

<sup>l</sup> *Asbm.* *Hist. of the Garter*, p. 392.

<sup>m</sup> *Liber Holgrave in Officio Prerog. Cantuar. Qu. 9.*

In the Name of God Amen, the 25 day of *March* theyere of our Lord God mcccciiii. I *John Writhe*, otherwise called *Gartir* King of Armes, &c. hole of minde, nevertheless febull of Body, first I bequeth my Soule to Almighty God, our blessed Lady, and all the holy Company of hevin, my body to be buried in the Quer of *St. Gilis* without *Crepulgat* in the same place, wher my wyfe *Elinor* is buried. Also I bequeath to the hie Aulter of *Seint Gilis* for forgotten tithes xl *s.* Item to everich Prest of *Seint Gilis* Church, that shall be at my burial, Dirige, and masse xx *d.* Item to the Clerks after the rate. Item to iiii poor Men to holde iiii tapers. Item to vi pore men to holde vi new Torchis, every man iiii *d.* Item I will that my wife have my howse in *Greklad*, in the which *Richard Horton* now dwellyth in, with the ii thoppis during her life natural, the reversion to my Sonn *Thomas*, with all the Londis that ever was my fathers in *Salisbury*, *Greklad*, *Cbelmoorthe*, *Bibery*. Item I bequeth my Sonne *Thomas*, and after him to his Sonne *John* a standing Cup gilt, the which the King of *Romayns* gave me. Item I bequeth to my Sonne *Thomas* a gilt flat pees, that was my fathers. Item I will and Ordenne, that my Sonne *William* have all my landis in *Harow the Hill* or within *Middlesex* that I bowgth of *March* King of Arms, And if he die without Issue of his body lawfully begoten, I will the reversion be unto my Sonne *Thomas*, and to his Issue lawfully begoten. Item I bequeth my Sonne *William*, also my bookes of *Petegres*. Item I bequeth my Sonne *Thomas* all my *french* boks, Item I bequeth to my Sonne *John Mymme*, and to my dowghter *Kateryne* his Wife that Land that I bowgth in *Warich* called *Dumus*, so that thei annex hit to ther owne mannor, Item I bequeth to my Sonne *John Mymme* and to my dowghter *Kateryne* his wife a Standing Covered, which I had of *Nicholas Coke*, and is in the Keping of my Sonne *Thomas*. Item I bequeth to *John Mymme* a boke of Statutes which I bowgth of *Punock*. Item I bequeth to *Agnes Writhe* a Salt with a Cover, which was her Godfathers, Item I bequeth to *Barbara* the felow of hit the other Salt without Covering. Item I bequeth my two yonge dowghters my ii Swagid gilt Salts. Item as the Law will, all the Londis and tenements in

A a a a

*Cicestur*



John Minne, Agnes and Barbara, and William his Son, and John his Grand-son, Son of Thomas.

He died, and was buried at St. Giles Cripplegate, where was his Effigies, and an Inscription on a large Marble Stone, but neither remained in "Weaver's Time.

To him <sup>o</sup> Sir Henry Spelman (and thence the <sup>p</sup> Author of *Jurisprud. Heroica*) attributes the Invention of placing the Differences or Marks of Cadency, in the Chief of the Shield, but whether before or after his Promotion to be Garter cannot be collected from the nominating him only *Fecialis*, neither doth the Collector know, what Authority Sir Henry had for it, tho' doubtless he had a sufficient one.

In the Ordinary of Arms made by <sup>q</sup> Thomas Wall Wyndesor in 1530 (who was afterwards himself Garter) "*Wryth Garter beryth Asur thre*" doves silver membry geules in a double tressoir florette contre-florette "Gold—*Wryothesly* beryth Gold a Bend ingrayed Geuls; but at length "his Descendants bore a plain Cross Or betwixt four Doves closed Argent". If these were Doves (wherein several <sup>r</sup> MSS. agree) the same might be originally taken in Correspondence to the Practice of former Herald's, who upon their Creations frequently took <sup>s</sup> Doves; but Sir William <sup>t</sup> Dugdale Blasons them *Faucons*, (as many others have done) and conjectures they might be taken in Allusion to his Title of *Faucon* Herald: *Ballard March* <sup>u</sup> King of Arms his Contemporary, calls them only Birds, without describing the Species; there hath been also another <sup>x</sup> Coat of Arms ascribed to him, and a Variety also of Crests, <sup>y</sup> whereof one is particularly said to belong to him as Garter. A late Author writes, That the College of Arms it self borrowed its Coat from a <sup>z</sup> Gentleman of the most signal

Cicester and Mynty to be devided between my dowghters Agnes and Barbara. Item I will that Agnes have hir gret pot that is at Warik. Item I will that Agnes and Barbara have such Stuff of howshold, as my Mother has ordeined for them. Item I will that all such writings as Concerne my Cofin Stone be delivered to him. Item I trust to John Minne that he will forbear every Yer <sup>v</sup>l. upon my Stok unto the tyme that L<sup>l</sup>. be paid unto my Godson John Stone. And so doing I bequeth him the hole Stoke. And I make and ordein my Sonnis Thomas Writhe. and John Mymme my Exccutors, And wull that the Residue of all my Goodis to be devided in iii partis, the first part to my Wife and such Stuff as she brought unto me, the second part to pay such Debtes as I owe, and to be distord for the Welth of my Sowle by the discretion of my Executors, the iii. part to be devided between my Children.

Probat ultimo Aprilis 1504.

<sup>n</sup> Weaver's Funeral Monuments, p. 661.

<sup>o</sup> Aspilogia, p. 29.

<sup>p</sup> Jurispr. Heroica, p. 140.

<sup>q</sup> B. 1. penes me, p. 220.

<sup>r</sup> Julius E. 2. in Bibl. Cott.—Names of Nobles and other Gentlemen of Wiltshire, H. 7.

John Wrythe alias Garter Roy de Armes des Anglois, a Cross Or between 4 Columbes Az, membred g, to his Crest, a Bugles hedds goutty and Crowned Or, on a Wreath Or b. mantelled b. doubled Ermine His Word Humble and Servisable D. 1. penes me, p. 299.

<sup>s</sup> Joh. de Bado aureo, p. 20. Et columbam in Armis habere bene pertinere solet ad Haraldos Armorum, qui dimissa arte sua sibi & suis arma assument. By the way, this Author's Name was de Vado aureo, i. e. Guilford.

<sup>t</sup> Upton de mil. Off. p. 178. Solent insuper Veterani, qui dimissa milicia nostris temporibus Haraldi sunt, columbas in suis armis assumere & portare, prioribus eorundem armis, nominibusq; propriis dimissis & penitus derelictis, pro eo quod Columbe de patria ad patriam diversa nova nunciantes avolant, & reveniunt indies, He saith, p. 179. Their Heires may bear either their ancient Arms, or those collated on them at their Creations, and that the Veteran himself may justly and laudably bear his ancient Arms, and add somewhat new to them, if he please, p. 180.

<sup>u</sup> Baron, vol. 2. 384. Thus also Brook in his Catalogue of Nobility in the Title Southampton.

<sup>v</sup> M. 3. in Off. Arm. p. 71.

<sup>x</sup> B. 1. penes me, p. 220. L. 1. in Officio Armorum.

<sup>y</sup> B. 1. penes me, p. 16. a Dove Close Silver membred G. Crowned Gold standing in a Writhe Or, which is said to be in reference to this Office, the Crest of the Family being a Buffalo's Head erased Sable, attired and crowned with a Ducal Coronet and Gutte d'Or. Sometimes a Buffalo Sable passant, attired, and unguled, and crowned with a Ducal Coronet, ringed through the Nose, having a Chain reflexed over the Back all Or.

<sup>z</sup> Buc in his Universities of England at the End of Stow's Survey.

Name



Name and Family that had ever been of it, by which he doubtless means this *Wrythe*; but it is more probable that those Officers might discontinue their <sup>a</sup> old Seal, and assume Doves in Conformity to the Practice mentioned by *Upton*, wherein by chance they have likewise followed the Directions of <sup>b</sup> a Learned Father of the Primitive Church.

He first married <sup>c</sup> *Barbara* Daughter and sole Heir of *Januarius de Castlecomb*, alias *Dunstanvil*, by whom he had Issue *Katherine* married to *Mynes William York Herald*; *Katherine* married first to *Horton*, then to *Treherne*, and *Thomas* his Successor in this Office: He was secondly married to <sup>d</sup> *Eleanor*, Sister and sole Heir of *Thomas Arnold*, by whom he had *Barbara* married to *Anthony Hungerford*, *Agnes* a Nun at *Syon*, *John* who died young, and *Margaret*: His third Wife was *Anne* daughter of *Myme*, by whom he had *Margaret* married to *Vaghan*, and *Isabel* first married to *Gough*, then to *Davers*.

His Son and Successor *Sir Thomas*, in his <sup>e</sup> Controversy with *Benoilt Clarenceux*, styles him *Sir John Wrythe*.

After the Death of *John Wrythe*, *Henry VII* intended to give this Office to *Roger Machado Clarenceux*, who (the <sup>f</sup> Book saith) came into this Realm

<sup>a</sup> This Society had a Seal before the Chapter held at Roan, when a new one was ordered to be made, and it was decreed that the Impression should never afterwards be altered, which may imply that there was some Alteration then made. If the Books may be credited those Officers used on their publick Seal Argent a Cross Or, on a Chief quarterly, in the first and fourth Az. a Flower de Lys Or, in the second and third Or a Lion [or Leopard] Gules. L. 6. in Off. Arm. p. 131. That MS. is silent as to the particular Time, but the Blazoning in the Time of Ballard March King of Arms may be found in M. 3. in Off. Arm. p. 74. and when Wall was Windsor Herald, in B. 1. penes me, p. 149 b. and the Motto was Diligent and Secret, which is doubtless signified by one Wing of those Doves being open to fly, and the other close to the Body.

<sup>b</sup> Clemens Alexandrin. apud Hertn. de Sigill. p. 62.

<sup>c</sup> A. 5. penes me, p. 66, 67.—B. 21. penes me, p. 4.

<sup>d</sup> She was buried in the Quire of St. Giles Cripplegate—Stow's Survey, p. 541. See A. 17. in Officio Armorum, buried in St. Giles without Cripplegate in the Quire.

<sup>e</sup> Alienor Wyff of John Wrythe Esquier daughter of Thomas Arnold Esquier.

In the walking before the Chappell,

First *Margaret* daughter of *John Wrythe*, Esquier.  
*John Wrythe* Son of *John Wrythe* Esquier.

<sup>f</sup> H. 3. penes me, p. 1059.

<sup>f</sup> A. 10 penes me, p. 44. *Clarenceux Benoilt* alledges, that *Machado Clarenceux* was a very old Man, and might not ryde nor well goo, and that was after the death of *John Wryth* that tyme being *Garter* and so dyed *Garter*, after whose death that pleased the Kings grace to geve the saide roome and office of *Garter* to the said *Machado Clarenceux*, and the said *Machado* considering his great age and also his weaknes refused the saide roome of *Garter* and so the said *Machado Clarenceux* remembring the greates loue that was between the said *John Wryth* alias *Garter* and him, made sute to the Kings Grace for *Thomas Wryth* son of the said *John Wryth* to have

the Office of *Garter*, and so by the greates labour and swete of the sayd *Machado* the sayd *Thomas Wryth* was made *Garter* in manner and fourme following, that is to say that the said *Thomas Wryth* should occupy and have the place of *Garter* and *Machado Clarenceux* to have the fee and profits of the same, then that was providyd that the said *Thomas Wryth* then otherwise called *Garter*, that he during the lyfe of the saide *Machado* to have a certeyn pencion out of the said Office of *Garter*, which *Machado* had as is above written. and after the death of the said *Machado* the said *Thomas Wryth* that now is *Garter* to have the hole Fee to the said Office belonging, And moreover the said *Clarenceux* considering his greates age and feebleness, as ys above written, thought most necessary and profitable for hymselfe to have a payre of indentures made between him and the said *Thomas Wryth*, bycause that the said *Thomas* was yong and lusty and that he shuld take the pain and travayll to visite and to go within his Marches and give Arms and Confirmations of Arms, and all interrements, And the sayd *Thomas Wryth* to have half the profit for his pain and labour, and *Machado Clarenceux* the other halfe.

To this allegation this *Garter* answered it was untruly said. But that upon the motion of the most famous prince of noble memory King *Hen. VII.* he giving him the said roome of *Garter*, considering the age and ancience of *Machado Clarenceux*, and that he came into this realme with him, willed the said *Garter* to give unto *Machado Clarenceux* out of his Fee xx marks by the yere in pencyon during his lyfe, whose pleasure and commandement the sayd *Garter* obeyed and condyscendid unto. And the rather for because, that the said *Machado* for his age could not conveniently exercise the sayd roome, which xx marks was not half the Fee of the said *Garter* as the sayd *Clarenceux* untroly saith; The which pencion was never given by any other his Predecessors, having the roome of *Garter* before that tyme, but only by *Garter* that is now present. And after by the space neere of iiij yeres, that the sayd *Garter* had enjoyed his sayd office, the sayd *Machado Clarenceux*, perceiving and considering the resort and the profit that *Garter* had

for



Realm with that King; but by reason of his advanced Age, he chose rather to accept of a Pension of 20 Marks yearly during his Life, so that in pursuance of a <sup>g</sup> Petition made by *Thomas Wrythe*, a Patent passed, dated 26 January 20 Hen. VII, granting this <sup>b</sup> Office to him, then *Wal-lingford* Son of *John Wrythe* late Garter during Pleasure, according to the Tenour of his Father's Patent in all Respects, saving the Clause, That during *Machado's* Life, he should only receive 40 Marks yearly Salary, after whose Death it was to be increased to forty Pounds annually.

for the gifts of the patents of Armes, and also for interments, desired and prayed the sayd Garter, that he wold be contented to graunte unto him, that he might be Copartner with him of the graunts of the sayd patents of Armes and funerals within his province, seying that he should bere no losse by him, and that by his meanes he trusted to advantage him, wheruppon the seyd Garter, considering the good mynde, that the sayd *Machado* did beare both unto Sir *John Wriothesley* alias *Wrythe* Garter, father unto the sayd Garter that now is, And also that the seyd *Machado* *Clarenceux* gretly favoured him in his suite for the obteyning of his sayd office of Garter, the sayd Garter was contented with the same desire and request, and thus covenanted with him and passed by Indenture betwene them, which was the first Indenture that ever was made between any Garter and *Clarenceux* for that cause, And the sayd Garter saith that *Clarenceux*, nor non other cannot fynde any thing in this party to the contrary, but sayth that upon the sayd president of covenants, the sayd *Benoilt Clarenceux*, *John Yonge* being *Norrey*, *Thomas Wall* being *Norrey* desired the sayd Garter, that they might be in like manner joyned with the sayd Garter in their Provinces for the profits of both the parties. H. 3. penes me, p. 1158 b.

*Hawley Norroy* soon afterwards on 2d Aug. 26 Hen. 8. entred into the like Indenture with this *Wriothesley* Garter. L. 6. 15. p. 85. penes Ed. Der-ving Baronett.

But though 'tis here said that this *Machado* came into this Kingdom with Hen. VII, yet 'tis probable he was before that Time *Leicester* Heraldt, for we find a Protection dated 15 Dec. 1 R. 3. Ruy *Machados* alias *dictus* *Leycestre* herault alias *dictus* *Rogerus Machado* alias *dictus* *Leycestre* herault, qui in obsequio Regis in comitiva *dicti* & *fidelis* nostri *Willimi Rosse* *Vitellarii* *Calis* *profecturus*, &c. Rot. Franc. 1 R. 3. & privat. Sigill. in Turre, in which Title of *Leicester* there was a Succession in the Reign of Hen. vii.

<sup>g</sup> E. Bundell. Signet. 20 H. 7. In Cap. Rotul. directed to the King our Sovereign Lord, then inserted. Memorand. quod 26 die Januarii A<sup>o</sup>. K. K. H. VII, xxmo. ista billa liberata fuit Domino Cancellario *Anglia* apud *Westmonasterium* exequendum. Pleas it your Highnesse of your most noble and habundant Grace to graunte your Gracieu Letters Patents in forme following, and that this Bill signed with your most gracious hand and signe *Manuell* may be sufficient warrant to your Chancellor of *England* for making owt of your said lettres without any further warrant or writing in this behalf. H. R. the King's Monogram. Then follows the Tenour of the Patent, as on Record.

<sup>b</sup> Pat. 20 H. 7. p. 1. m. 21. Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem. Sciatis quod cum non sit novum, sed jamdiu ab antiquis temporibus usitatum quod inter ceteros Officiales & Ministros, quos Principum lateribus, pro eorum Magnificentia, atque Gloria, adhærere decet, eorum, quibus officii *Armorum* cura committitur copiam habere debeat,

ut nec tempus Bellorum, neque Pacis sine convenientibus & aptis Ministris debeat præteriri: Nos igitur considerantes ac aciam in laudabilia servitia quæ dilectus Nobis *Thomas Wrythe* alias *dictus* *Walynghford*, filius *Johannis Wrythe* nuper *dicti* *Garter* defuncti, in hiis quæ ad Officium illud spectare intelliguntur, exercuit, dirigentes, eundem propterea & non minus ob solertiam & Sagacitatem, quas in eo satis habemus exploratas, in Principalem Heraldum & Officiarium incliti nostri ordinis *Garterii* *Armorumque* *Regem* *Anglicorum* ex gratia nostra speciali ereximus, fecimus, constituimus, & ordinavimus, & creavimus, & coronavimus ac perpræfentes, erigimus, facimus, constituimus, ordinamus, creamus & coronamus, ac ei Officium illud, nec non nomen *Garter* stylum, titulum, libertates, & Præminentias hujusmodi Officio Convenientia & Concordantia, ac ab antiquo consueta *Damus* & concedimus, ac ipsum in eisdem realiter Investimus, Habendum, occupandum, & exercendum officium illud, ac nomen, Stylum, Titulum & Præminentias prædictas eidem *Thoma*, durante Beneplacito nostro, cum omnibus juribus, proficiis, commoditatibus & emolumentis eidem officio qualitercumque debitis pertinentibus sive spectantibus. Et ulterius concessimus & per præfentes concedimus præfato *Thoma* in *Regem* *Armorum* *Anglicorum*, ut præfertur, erecto, ratione & Causa Officii illius (videlicet) durante vita *Rogeri Machado* alias *dicti* *Clarence* *Regis* *Armorum* partium australium quadraginta marcas per Annum, & post decessum ipsius *Rogeri* quadraginta libras per Annum, pro vadiis, & feodis officii prædicti de parva *Custuma* nostra in portu civitatis nostræ *Londoniæ*, per manus *Custumariorum* sive *Collectorum* *Custumæ* prædictæ in portu prædicto pro tempore Existentium ad terminos *Pasche* & *Sancti Michaelis* *Archangeli* per æquales portiones, una cum tali liberata vestura, qualem & eisdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius hujusmodi *Rex* *Atmorum*, sive *Principalis Heraldus* tempore Domini E. nuper *Regis Angliæ* tertii *Progenitoris* *Nostri* habuit, & percepit, Habendam & percipiendam annuatim Liberatam hujusmodi eidem *Thoma* singulis annis durante beneplacito nostro ad magnam *Garderobam* nostram per manus *Custodis* sive *Clerici* ejusdem pro tempore existentis. Eo quod expressa mentio de vero valore annuo præmissorum, seu alicujus eorum aut de aliis donis sive concessionibus eidem *Thoma* per nos ante hæc tempora factis in præsentibus minime facta existit aut aliquo Statuto, Actu, Ordinatione, seu Provisione, in contrarium facto, edito, ordinato, seu proviso, aut aliqua alia re causa, vel materia quacumque non obstantibus. Proviso semper quod *dictus* *Thomas*, durante Vita præfati *Rogeri*, habeat Allocationem Annuam dictarum quadraginta marcarum & non ultra, & post decessum ipsius *Rogeri*, habeat plenam Allocationem dictarum quadraginta librarum annuarum absque interruptione seu contradictione aliqua. In Cujus, &c.— Teste Rege apud *Westmonasterium* Vicesimo sexto die Januarii— per ipsum Regem. Sc: Rymer, vol. 13. p. 113.



Dugdale stiles him an<sup>k</sup> Herald, referring to this Patent for his Voucher, which however only mentions *Wallingford*, without determining whether this was the Title of an Herald or Purservant, therefore the<sup>l</sup> MSS. being confirmed by his own<sup>m</sup> Averment, ought rather to be credited which name him expressly to have been only a Purservant, and by that Appellation an Officer to the Prince of *Wales*, to whom that Castle then belonged, as Part of the Dutchy of *Cornwal*, from which it was severed by a<sup>n</sup> subsequent Act of Parliament.

He was<sup>o</sup> Godson of *Thomas Holme Clarenceux*, from whom possibly he had his Christian Name, and was doubtless the same Person whom *Hen. VII.* at the<sup>p</sup> Investiture of *Arthur* Prince of *Wales* in 1489, had created a Purservant for that Prince by the Name of *Walynford*, who by this Stile, and in such Capacity, attended upon *John Writhe Garter* [his Father] into the<sup>q</sup> Dutchy of *Bretagne*. In the College of Arms, there remains a Manuscript in Parchment, where, in the last Leaf, was first wrote, *r* *Thomas Wrythe* aultrement *Walynfort*, importing him to be the Proprietor of it, and afterwards, to the End of that Surname were added in a different Ink, *St.* with a Dash from the last Letter, which filled up the Space left originally between the Words at the first Writing; for though this Officer was advanced to this Employment by the Monosyllable Surname that his Father used, yet he disliked the Shortness of it, either with regard to the Explication of the Ancient Proverb, *Omnis herus servo Monosyllabus*, or some other whimsical Humour, and therefore augmented it with the high Sound of three Syllables, which added nothing to the Smoothness in Pronunciation, and after some Variations in the Spelling, he at last settled upon *Wriothesley*, wherein his Brother *William York* Herald concurred, and their Descendants followed this Precedent; and, which is somewhat particular, in order to countenance this Affectation, he attributed this new coined Appellation to all his paternal<sup>j</sup> Ancestors in the Draughts he made of his own Pedigree; and therein he deduces himself by his Mother from the *Walters*<sup>i</sup> of *Dunstarvil*, ancient Lords of *Castlecomb* in *Wiltshire*: He was so very fond of this new Surname thus devised by him, that when the Salary granted by *Hen. VII.* was determined by his Demise, he took a new one from his Successor, wherein he procured his Father to be stiled<sup>n</sup> *John Wriothesley*

<sup>k</sup> Dugd. Baron. vol. 2. p. 333.

<sup>l</sup> Ceremonies, vol. 3. p. 11, 15. Lant's Observations—MS. Ant. a Wood in Mus. Ash. n. 33. p. 21, 23.

<sup>m</sup> H. 3. penes me, p. 1158.—“I never had any roome of an Herald and therefore took not any Oath of an Herald, but only that of a Purservant—and was only *Wallingford* Pursuyvant with the Prince, that is to say Prince *Arthur* and also with Prince *Henry*, now being the King our Sovereigne Lord, out of whose Service I was preferred to the Roome of *Garter*, &c.

<sup>n</sup> Stat. 20 Apr. 31 H. 8.

<sup>o</sup> His Will made 8 H. 7. I bequeth to *John Garter* King of Armes my booke of *Policronicon*. Item I bequeth to *Thomas Gartier* my welbeloved Godsonne my booke called *Arbor bellorum*. Lib. Vox. in Cur. Prærog. qu. ix.

<sup>p</sup> Julius B. 12. p. 56. in Bibl. Cotton.

<sup>q</sup> Lobineau l'Hist. de Bretagne, p. 813. —*Jartiere*

Herault du Roy d'Angleterre & *Walynford* Pursuivant du Prince de Galles estoient pour lors aupres de la Duchesse 1491.

<sup>r</sup> Among the Duke of Norfolk's MSS.

<sup>s</sup> A. xi. penes me.

<sup>t</sup> Camden's Britan. in Wiltshire. Sandf. Geneal. Hist. p. 51.

<sup>u</sup> Pat. 1 H. 8. p. 2. m. 19—Rex, Omnibus ad quos præsentis literæ pervenerint Salutem. Sciatis quod cum non sit novum, sed jamdiu ab antiquis temporibus usitatum, quod, inter ceteros Officiales & Ministros quos Principum lateribus pro eorum Magnificentia atque Gloria adharere decet, eorum quibus Officii Armorum cura committitur, copiam habere debeant nec tempus Bellorum neque Pacis sine Convenientibus & expertis Ministris debeat præteriri. Nos igitur Considerantes ac Aciem in laudabilia Servitia quæ dilectus Nobis *Thomas Wriothesley* alias *Wrythe* nuper dictus *Wallingford*, filius

B b b b b

lius



*Wriothesley* alias *Writhe* late *Garver*, at which Time the Reflection that Judge *Catalin* once made upon an *Alias* might probably be out of his Memory.

'Tis certain the *Roman* Civil Law by a Rescript of *Diocletian* and *Maximian* permitted the Freedom of altering Names, when innocently done without Intention of Fraud, and in the last Century *Antonio Maria Conti* endeavoured to justify his own Practice, in assuming that of *Majoragius*, by an Oration on that Subject, which is a Piece of polite Eloquence: But since Surnames, like Coat Arms, have become Hereditary Properties, and have long been the Indications of the Diversity of Families, it may be questioned, whether the voluntary Mutation of either of them be not a Transgression against the Maxim of all well constituted Governments, tending to confound the Order and Dignity of Families, which should be inviolably preserved: But to omit the Consideration thereof on this political Account, we find our own Municipal Laws have been so strict in the Exactness of Surnames, that a Writ was quashed for the small Variation in denominating the Defendant "*Stephen Cobham* for *Stephen de Cobham*, which sort of Pleading in Abatement, for giving the Defendant a wrong Surname, is (as it is supposed) still Legal. 'Tis true, that Adoptions by the last of a Family into the Surname and Arms thereof, either by Wills or Grants, have been allowed by the Customs of this Land; for whoever hath the whole Right of any Thing in him, hath the Power of Transferring it to whomsoever he pleases, though sometimes the Consent of the Crown hath been obtained to give the greater Sanction; but the Arbitrary Assumption of the Surname of a Family *subsisting*, by any Suranger in Blood to it, may create Confusions in Precedencies, and

lius *Johannis Wriothesley* alias *Writhe* nuper dicti *Gartier* defuncti in hiis quæ ad officium illud spectare intelliguntur exercuit, dirigentes, eundem propterea & non minus ob solertiam & sagacitatem, quas in eo satis habemus exploratas, in Principalem Heraldum & officiarium incliti nostri Ordinis *Garterii*, Armorumque Regem Anglicorum ex Gratia nostra speciali Ereximus, fecimus, Constituimus, Ordinavimus, Creavimus & Coronavimus, ac per presentes Erigimus, facimus, Constituimus, Ordinamus, Creamus & Coronamus, ac ei Officium illud, nec non Nomen le *Gartier*, Stilum, Titulum, Libertates, Præminentias hujusmodi Officio Convenientia & Concordantia ac ab antiquo Consueta Damus & Concedimus, ac ipsum in eisdem realiter investimus, Habendum, occupandum & exercendum Officium illud ac Nomen Stilum Titulum & Præminentias prædicta eidem *Thomæ* a Festo Paschæ ultimo præterito durante bene placito nostro cum omnimodis Juribus, Proficuis, Commoditatibus, & Emolumentis eidem Officio qualitercumque; debitis, sive spectantibus. Et ulterius Concessimus, ac per Præsentes Concedimus præfato *Thomæ* in Regem Armorum Anglicorum ut præfertur erecto, Ratione & Causa Officii illius (videlicet durante Vita *Rogeri Macado*, alias dicti *Clarenceux* Regis Armorum partium Australium) Quadraginæ Marcas per Annum, & post decessum ipsius *Rogeri* Quadraginta Libras per Annum pro Vadiis & Feodis Officii prædicti, de parva Custuma nostra in Portu Civitatis nostræ Londoniæ, a Festo Paschæ ultimo Præterito (a quo quidem

Festo idem *Thomas* officium prædictum per mandatum nostrum exercuit) durante bene placito nostro prædicto, per manus Custumariorum sive Collectorum Custumæ prædictæ in portu prædicto pro tempore Existentium ad terminos Sancti *Michaelis* Archangeli & Paschæ per æquales Portiones unum cum tali liberata Vesturæ, qualem & eisdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius hujusmodi Rex Armorum sive Principalis Heraldus tempore Domini E. nuper Regis *Angliæ* tertii Progenitoris nostri, habuit & percepit Habendum & percipiendum annuatim liberatam hujusmodi eidem *Thomæ* singulis annis durante beneplacito nostro, ad magnam Garderobam nostram per manus Custodis sive Clerici ejusdem pro tempore Existentis. Eo quod expressa Mentio de vero valore annuo Præmissorum seu alicujus eorum, aut de aliis donis sive Concessionibus eidem *Thomæ* per nos ante hæc tempora factis in præsentibus minime facta existit, aut aliquo Statuto, Actu, Ordinatione seu Provisione in Contrarium facto, edito, sive proviso, aut aliqua alia re Causa vel materia quacumque non obstantibus. Proviso semper quod dictus *Thomas*, durante Vita præfati *Rogeri* habeat Allocationem annuam dictarum quadraginta Marcarum, & non ultra. Et post decessum ipsius *Rogeri*, habeat plenam Allocationem dictarum quadraginta Librarum absque Interruptione seu Contradietione aliquali. In Cujus, &c. Teste Rege apud *Westmonasterium* nono die *Octobris*— Per breve de privato Sigillo. *Rymer*, vol 13. p. 266.

Plac. coram Rege Trin. 12 E. 3. vol. 7.

several



several other Disorders, some of which may even endanger the private Right of Succession in Tract of Time, and may immediately also subject the Antient Proprietor to Inconveniencies whereby his Property may chance to be affected without his Knowledge by an Outlawry; for which Reasons probably our Common Law hath provided a Remedy in Case the Owner of a Surname should suspect such Consequences, which is by permitting him the Liberty of intervening in the Action, and suggesting that he is not really the Defendant notwithstanding he hath the same Surname, though sometimes he must be inevitably driven to the Expence and Trouble of suing out a Writ *de identitate nominis*, which is some presumptive Implication that it is not consistent with the Intention of this Law, that either Surnames should be altered according to Humour, Levity, and Fancy, or that Strangers should be at Liberty to usurp the Surname whereto another Family hath an Antecedent Right by Prescription; but such Matters seem more properly cognisable in the Court Military, or Court of Chevalerie before the Constable and Marshal, which Court is as much the Law<sup>a</sup> of the Land, as any Chapter in *Littleton's Tenures*; for the Law, as a Learned Judge observed, doth not *recipere magis & minus*: But admit this was a disputable Point in the Judgement of either of these Courts, yet it will be granted, the Change of a Surname by amplifying, contracting, or any other Method of Alteration, either out of Ambition, Affectation, or any other Motive, by Officers of Arms is less tolerable, because it is one considerable Article and Duty of their Employments to record faithfully the Genealogies of Families, which will be deducible with little Certainty where such Liberty of Corruptions of Surnames is permitted, and

<sup>a</sup> It was expressly determined in the Common Pleas, that the Law whereby the Constable and Marshal proceed is the Law of the Land and the Law of the King, and that the King's Justices are bound to take Notice thereof, 37 H. 6. f. 3. 20b. which was again asserted by a Learned Judge, M. 10 H. 7. f. 7. This Court of Chevalerie, in Matters within its Jurisdiction, proceeds *secundum legem & consuetudinem Curia militaris*, Cl. 21 R. 2. pt. 1. m. 5. Pat. 6 H. 4. p. 1. m. 30. *secundum juris exigentiam ac leges & consuetudines Curia Militaris*, Pat. 22 R. 2. p. 2. m. 32 d. *secundum legem & consuetudinem armorum*, Pat. 48 E. 3. p. 2. m. 20 d. These Customs grounded, as Mr. Selden saith, mostly on the Civil Law and Law of Lombardy, *Vind. existim. f. 4. p. 21, 22.* obtained their formal Authoritative Force by a voluntary Reception of them by an immemorial Usage in this Kingdom, being such (to use the Words of an Act of Parliament in a parallel Case, St. 25 H. 8. c. 21.) which by Sufferance of the King and his Progenitors, the People of this Realm have taken at their free Liberty by their own Consent to be used among them, and have bound themselves by long Usage & Custom to the Observance of the same, &c. It may not be amiss in this place to insert two Interrogatories exhibited to the Witnesses examined in the great Case of Grey and Hastings, touching the Right of Coat Arms in the Reign of Hen. iv. *Si a la Court de Chevalerie d'Angleterre appartient d'avoir conissance & determiner les ples d'armes, ou leur incidents, dependez, & connexes, s'il dist qu'oile, ne soit il plus demande, s'il dist que non, soit demande quelle Court donques ad tiele poair a determiner les causes des armes.*

*Si la Court de Chevalerie d'Angleterre soit mesnie & gouverne tantseulement par les loyes civiles, & par customes d'armes devant uses.* Among several Witnesses on these Points, two Apprentices of the Law were examined, who must be allowed competent Evidences, that is John Harvyr, who answered on his Oath, *Que la Court de Chevalerie d'Angleterre ad conissance a determiner ples d'armes, mais dist cette jurre, q'il ne sceit certainement la rule & gouvernance du dite Court de Chevalerie.* And Robert Baa deposed, *Q'il suppose que la Court de Chevalerie d'Angleterre ad poair de terminer ples d'armes, & est gouverne par la ley civile & customes d'armes devant uses.* It would be too forreign in this place to cite Acts of Parliament, Records, and Law Books touching this Subject: But since this court cannot intermeddle with any Matter determinable at Common Law, and may be controuled by it whenever it exceeds its limited Bounds, the Proposal made to the Parliament, 2 Rich. 2. at the Opening the Session is submitted to the Consideration of the Professors of the Common Law, "Que les loys de la terre & les loys d'armes devient estre comme Relatives, l'une loy tout dys aidant a l'autre en touz cas bufoignables, que en chescun cas ou la ley de la terre ne purroit justicer un malfait, la ley & poair des Armes la doit aider & maintenir: Et semblablement arrieremaine en chescun cas, ou le loy des Armes ne sauroit ou ne purroit faire ce que a lui appertiendroit a faire, la ley de la terre y doit socourir & aider; issint que l'une loy sanz l'autre ne purroit longuement estreer n'endurer, &c. Parl. 2<sup>e</sup> R. 2. n. 8.

therefore



therefore they should be more cautious to avoid giving Occasion for falling under the Censures heretofore justly cast by *Lucian* on *Simo* the Cobler, and by the Poet *Martial* on *Cinnamus* the Barber.

We have some scattered Memorials of the Employments of this Officer, as of his Attendance on the Proctor or Ambassador of *Guido* & *Ubaldo*, and his waiting on the 2<sup>d</sup> Installation of the King of *Spain*, which were Duties incumbent on his Office. In 5 H. 8. he received a <sup>a</sup> Reward from the Crown, but the particular Service for which it was given is not recorded. In that Year he waited on the King in the <sup>b</sup> Expedition to *Tournay*, and summoned that Town to surrender: In the Sixth Year he attended on the <sup>c</sup> Marriage of the Lady *Mary* with the *French* King, and proclaimed <sup>d</sup> Jufts at *Canterbury*. In *August*, in the 15<sup>th</sup> Year, he was sent to <sup>e</sup> *Ferdinand* Archduke of *Austria* (Brother to the Emperor *Charles* V.) to invest him with the Order of the *Garter*, who conferred the Honour of <sup>f</sup> Knighthood upon him at *Nuremberg*, and did not return till after *New-Years-Day* <sup>g</sup> following. In *November*, 19 H. VIII, he was in <sup>h</sup> *France*, having carried the Ensigns of the Order to the <sup>i</sup> *French* King, being then attended by *Blewmantle* Pursevant.

In the Process of the Divorce between *Hen. VIII* and Queen *Katherine*, as abstracted by the <sup>k</sup> Lord *Herbert*, the Cardinals *Wolsey* and *Campegius* proceeded to require the Sight of the Archives, and Records touching that Business, for which Purpose *Thomas Wriothesley* and *Thomas Tong* King of Arms had been employed; these Men certified, that Prince *Arthur* died in the Castle at *Ludlow*, the 2<sup>d</sup> of *April* 1502, that his Brother *Henry* was born 28 *June* 1491, and that the Marriage betwixt Prince *Arthur* and the Lady *Katherine* was the 14<sup>th</sup> of *November* 1501. In the Original Entry <sup>l</sup> *Clarenceux* is also mentioned, and these three Kings are there stiled *Magnifici Viri*.

It would be an easy, if it were a pertinent Task, in the Lives of this and the following *Garters*, to enumerate their carrying the Ensigns of the Order to foreign Princes, their Attendances at Installations, the Performance of their Duties at Coronations, Interviews of Princes, Creations of the Nobility, &c. But these Instances being Articles of their Function,

<sup>y</sup> See Notes to the Black-Book, p. 257, note h.

<sup>z</sup> *Ashm. Hist. of the Garter*, p. 348.

<sup>a</sup> *Priv. Sigill. P. 5 H. 8.* — *Thomas Wrothesley* alias *Garter Regi* Armorum de Regardo de denariis sibi solvendis per manus *Willimi Compton* & *Johannis Warnett* nuper Collectorum parvæ Custumæ in portu *Londoniæ* xx l. ix s. ix d.

<sup>b</sup> *Hollingshead's History*, p. 348.

<sup>c</sup> *G. 11. penes me*, p. 197 b. 201. *Gartier* principal King of Arms at 13 b. by the day for his Ordinaire 4 Servants 2 horses with Carriage, one with apparel anoder with Stuff for a bodde vii horses. in which book is the allowance made to him and to *Richmond* Herald out of the Pantry, Wine Celler, Kitchin, Fruiterie and Apothecary while they attended in *France*.

<sup>d</sup> *Colombiere Theatre d'Honneur*, vol. 1. p. 189.

<sup>e</sup> *Ash. Append. n. Cxv. n. xiii.*

<sup>f</sup> *Claudius C. 3. in bibl. Cotton.* p. 107.

<sup>g</sup> *E. xii. penes me*, p. 187.

<sup>h</sup> 1 Part. book in off. Arm. p. 16. *E. xii. penes me*, p. 288.

<sup>i</sup> *Rymer*, vol. 14. p. 232. *Hall's Chronicle*, p. 165 b. k P. 273.

<sup>l</sup> *July 19, 1529.* Quibus sic factis Comparuerunt personaliter magnifici viri Dominus *Thomas Wriothesley* *Garter miles* ac primarius *Rex* Armorum Anglicorum *Thomas Benolds* alias *Clarentius* in partibus australibus, ac *Thomas Tong* alias *Norrey* in partibus Borealibus Angliæ respective Reges Armorum, ac tunc ibidem tactis per eos sacris Dei Evangeliiis jurarunt, quod contenta & conscripta in dicto processu per dictum Dominum Abbatem *Westmonast.* Commissarium prædictum exhibita fuerunt ex libris suis exscripta, transcripta, & exemplificata, quæ crediderunt esse vera, Et quod ad eosdem ratione officiorum suorum spectat hujusmodi transcripta, & similia in libros suos redigere, & ad perpetuam rei gestæ memoriam fideliter registrare.

These Extracts chiefly concerned the Times of the Birth, Marriage, and Death of Prince *Arthur*, and were first exhibited before the Abbot of *Westminster* deputed to search the publick Offices.

which



which of Course must be executed, by such as enjoyed this Office, and containing nothing particular to the Persons, it hath been thought fit to omit the greatest Part of them.

He was born at <sup>m</sup> Colatford near Castlecomb in *Wiltshire*, and lived sometime at *Cricklade* in that County, for which Reason we find him frequently writing himself <sup>n</sup> *Tho. Wr. Grek.* that is of *Greklade*.

The *Black-Book* of the Order takes Notice, That at <sup>o</sup> St. George's Feast, held 27 May 26 Hen. VIII, the Duke of *Norfolk* administred the Oath to the Register, which Garter by his Office should have performed, who was absent by reason of his Age and Sicknefs.

He <sup>p</sup> dyed 24 Nov. 1534, (26 Hen. VIII.) having been twice married; his first Wife was *Jane*, <sup>q</sup> Daughter and Coheir to *William Hall* of *Sarum* Esq; by whom he had several Sons, two named *John*, *Edmond*, and *Charles*, which latter died young: Another *Charles* born the 8th of May 1508, who was *Windsor* Herald, *Michael*, *Thomas* and three Daughters; *Barbara* born 5 July 1507, *Dorothy* born 31 Dec. 1506, and *Susanna* born 17 Dec. 1509. His second Wife was <sup>r</sup> *Anne* Daughter of *William Ingleby* of *Yorkshire*, (the Relict of *Richard Goldesborough*, and also of *Robert Warcop*) by whom he had a Daughter *Joan*; which *Anne*, as it appears by an <sup>s</sup> Award, died before the 10th of July, 17 H. VIII.

He bore the Arms of his Father, with the same Motto *Humble and Serviceable*.

He built a great <sup>t</sup> House, called *Garter's Place*, next adjoyning to *Barbican*, and in the Top of it a Chapel dedicated by the Name of *Sancta Trinitatis in alto*, and he built another House at *Cripplegate*.

Among the <sup>u</sup> MSS. of *Trinity College Dublin* are *Epistolæ Tho. Wriothesley*, alias *Garteri Regis Armorum*, & *Tho. Benoilt* alias *Clarenceux*, possibly the same may contain only Grants of Arms made by each of them respectively, or some Narrative of the Disputes between them.

As to his Character, the Lord *Stafford* in his Allegations in Parliament for preceeding the Lord *Talbot*, mentions the Record of the Parliament of *Lincoln*, when the Pope's Authority was disannulled, shewn him by <sup>x</sup> *Wriothesley* then *Garter*, who he saith, was the best Herald, that ever was since, or many Years before.

There are still preserved many MSS. of his Collections, which shew him to have been an Officer of great Industry.

V. *The Fifth Garter* was Sir *Thomas Wall*, Son of *Thomas Wall* of *Cryche* in *Derbyshire*, who in his Time was *Norroy King of Arms*, and if the

<sup>m</sup> A. 5. penes me, p. 66. *Agnes de Lusthill* uxor *Nicholai Castelcomb* tempore *Richardi 2.* ædificavit *Colatford*, in qua domo *Henricus* eorum filius, *Januarius* Nepos & *Barbara* filia *Januarii*, & *Thomas Wriothesley* & ejus filia *Barbara* nati fuerunt, & dicta domus est modo in tenura dicti *Thome Wriothesley* alias *Garter* Jure hæreditario Antecessorum suorum.

<sup>n</sup> B. 3. penes me, and in divers other MSS.

<sup>o</sup> See the *Black-Book*, p. 393.

<sup>p</sup> 1 Partit. Book in *Officio Armorum*, p. 57 b. MS. Ant. a Wood in Mus. Alhm. n. 33. p. 22.

<sup>q</sup> See *Wever's Fun. Monum.* p. 686. *Stow's Survey* in 4to. p. 541. A. xi. penes me.

<sup>r</sup> Vinc. MS. in *Officio Arm.* in pergam. p. 71. B. 21. penes me. p. 4.

<sup>s</sup> Between the Earl of *Cumberland* and this Garter, in Custody of *Peter le Neue Esq;* *Norroy*.

<sup>t</sup> *Wever's Funeral Monuments*, p. 554.

<sup>u</sup> Catalog. Manuscript. Angliæ & Hiberniæ, p. 47.

<sup>x</sup> MS. *Nicholai Jekyll* de *Castle Hedingham* Arm. p. 110 b. L. 7. penes me, p. 283 b.



Catalogue may be credited, he was first *Berwick*, then created <sup>y</sup> *Rouge-croix* on the 4th of *May* 1521, (13 H. VIII.) or as another <sup>z</sup> Manuscript hath it, on the 5th of *May*, by Sir *Charles Somerset* Earl of *Worcester* Lord Chamberlain: His <sup>a</sup> Patent for this Pursuivantship is dated 11 *May*, with xl. yearly Salary, and on 12 *Oct.* 1523, he summoned the <sup>b</sup> Town of *Orleans* to surrender to the Duke of *Suffolk* Lieutenant General for *Hen.* VIII, hence he was promoted to be <sup>c</sup> *Windsor* Herald, with 20 Marks yearly, 24 *Oct.* 17 H. VIII. being <sup>d</sup> created at *Greenwich*, and in the Book of the Partition of Fees between the Heralds, he is mentioned to have been in <sup>e</sup> *Flanders*, and again in *Febr.* 19 *Hen.* VIII, in which Year he is said to have carried the King's Letters to the Dutchess of *Savoy* in *Flanders*, and was again sent about the 20th of *Febr.* 1527, to the Lady <sup>f</sup> *Margaret*: The People in the *Low Countries* suspected, and said, That he came to defy the Emperor; but he brought Letters from our King to know, whether if War should fall out between *England* and the Emperor, the Treaty of Intercourse for the Term of six Weeks should be observed in these Parties, as by the King and Emperors is accorded: *Windsor* protested in the King's Name, that his Majesty desired not War, unless he be thereto constrained, the like the Lady *Margaret* saith in the Emperor's Behalf. He was in <sup>g</sup> *Italy* on *Allhalloes-Day*, 21 *Hen.* VIII, and at that Feast, in 26 *Hen.* VIII, at <sup>b</sup> *Dover*, waiting on the Admiral of *France* Ambassadour hither, and soon after was by <sup>i</sup> Patent, dated 9 *Dec.* (26 H. VIII.) promoted to be *Garter* Principal

<sup>y</sup> MS. Ant. a Wood, in Mus. Ashm. n. 33. p. 27.  
<sup>z</sup> 40. C. 16. Bibl. Harley 50 b. in the Hand of John Stow.

Be it remembred that in Anno 1521, (the 13th H. 8) and 4th daye of *Maye* *Thomas Walle* (Son to *Thomas Walle* Kyng of Arms called *Norroy* and afore that *Lancaster*, and afore that *Gwisnes* Pursuivant) was made and Create by Sir *Charles Somerset* Earl of *Worcester* and Chamberlayne to the Kynge at *Greenwyche* in the Lord Chamberleines dynning Chamber and named *Rougecroys* Pursuivaunte after the decease of one *Lawrence de la Yate*.

3. Cerem. in Officio Armorum, p. 53. *Tho. Wall* Lanc. pere de *Tho. Wall* alias *Rougecroisse* 1513.

<sup>a</sup> Liber Privat. Sigill. penes *Thomam Rawlinson*. Arm. Pat. 13 H. 8. p. 11. xi<sup>o</sup> *Mais* ad Vitam.

<sup>b</sup> MS. Ashm. n. 1116. P. 46. penes me, p. 17.—

La Sumation D'orleans le 12 d'Octobre l'an 1523, faite par *Tho. Wall* *Rougecroix*, Monsieur de *Rumeney* estant Capitain pour le Roy Francois de France en icelle ville.

Seigneur Capitain, & vous toutz Gardens, Gouverneurs de Guerre manantz & habitantz en ceste ville, & Chasteau de d'Orleans. Monsieur le Duc de *Suffolke* Capitain & Lieutenant General de l'armie de treshault, tresexcellent, & tres puissant Prince *Henry* le viii de ce Nom par la grace de Dieu, Roy de Fraunce & d'Angleterre, defensor, &c. vous mande & commande luy rendre & delivrer ceste dicte Ville, & Chasteau, que vous gardes pour, & en nomme du dict Seigneur Roy, comme au Vostre Souveraigne Seigneur, & naturall Prince, en quoy faisant feres comme a bons, & feaulx sub-jetz appertient. Et en faisant serment de fidelite audiect Seigneur Roy a estre receu par ledict Seigneur Duc ou son Commis, vous ne ferez pas seulement prins, & acceptes come bons & feaulx subjects audiect, Seigneur Roy, mais aussi feres mis en tout li-

berte. & franchises a toujours, mais & hors de Grandes Miseres, Captivites & Tyrannes en quoy aves de long temps vescu soubz les usurpateurs de cestuy son royaume. Et si vous estes refusans de le faire, & bailler entre les Mains du dict Seigneur Duc Cestedict Ville & Chasteau de d'Orleans, comme dit est, & que faits residence quelconque, par laquelle le moindre de ceste Arme soit bleffe ou en daungier de sa vie, & qu'attendes seulement ung Coup de Cannon, Vouz ne perdres pas seulement les Graces dessus declaires, mais aussi vous Corps & biens sans aulcune grace ou misericorde. Et si d'Adventure aulcune soit icy dedans, qui ne trouveroit pas honeste de faire le dict serment sans premierement eux acquiter de leur foy bailler aultre parte, ilz auront liberte departir hors de ladiet Ville & Chasteau, leurs Corps Saulves seulement: pourquoy advisez ce qui estes delibere de faire, & me donnes responce sur les premisses. Fait l'an & jour dessusdict.

<sup>c</sup> Liber Priv. Sigill. (17 H. 8.) 24 *Oct.*

<sup>d</sup> MS. Ant. a Wood, in Mus. Ashm. n. 33. p. 23.

<sup>e</sup> Collect. Master in Coll. Jesu Oxon.

<sup>f</sup> 1. Partition Book, p. 19. 3d Cerem. in Officio Arm. p. 43.

<sup>g</sup> Ibid. p. 27.

<sup>h</sup> Ibid. p. 57 b.

<sup>i</sup> Pat. 26 H. 8. p. 2. m. 25. Rex omnibus, &c. Salutem. Sciatis, quod cum non sit novum, sed jamdiu ab antiquis temporibus usitatum, quod inter ceteros officarios & Ministros, quos Principum lateribus pro eorum Magnificencia & Gloria ad-hærere decet, Eorum, quibus Officii Armorum Cura committitur, copiam haberi debeant, ut nec tempus Bellorum neq; Pacis, sine convenientibus & aptis Ministris debeat præteriri. Nos igitur considerantes ac aciem in laudabilia servitia quæ dilectus nobis *Thomas Wall*, alias dictas *Wyndesore*, in hiis, quæ



cipal Herald and Officer of the Noble Order of the *Garter*, and King of Arms of *Englishmen* during Life, with 40 *l.* yearly Salary, out of the Petit Customs of *London*, to which Place he was created on <sup>k</sup> *Christmas-day* following, who is said to have had a subsequent <sup>l</sup> Patent, which this Collector could not find, enrolled upon Record.

In *January* following he was sent in Embassy and Commission to the King of <sup>m</sup> *Scotts*, to carry him the *Garter*, from whom "He received  
" a Gowne of Purple Velvet lyned with blacke boche, and a C Crownes  
" of the Sunn, and *Hawley Norroy*, who went with him, likewise a  
" Gowne of black Satten, lyned with black budge, all the Sleeves tyed  
" with Aglettes of goulde to the Number of xxiii and C Crowns of  
" the Sun."

He is usually stiled a Knight; but if he had that Honour, it must be after the 6th of *Apr.* (27 *H. VIII*) at which Time he is called an Esquire, in a <sup>n</sup> Grant of an Annuity to him; and he died in <sup>o</sup> *June* following, 28 *Hen. VIII*, when he had held this Office about one Year and half.

This Collector hath not found, whether he was married, or whether he was descended from that *Roger Wall*, who is said by <sup>p</sup> *Hollingshead*, *Stow*, and others, to have been an Herald, and to have wrote the Life of *Hen. V.* but these Authors might probably mistake the Owner or Proprietor of the Book for the Writer of it; for though there remains in the Office <sup>q</sup> of Arms the Life of that King, beginning *Lucerna*, which hath in the Front the coarse Device or *Rebus* of a *Roe Buck*, with the Syllable *Ger* on the Body, placed upon an Hill, encompassed with a *Wall* turreted, and at the End of it, *Claudatur Muro constat liber iste Rogero*, alluding to the Name *Roger Wall*, yet the *Proeme* assures us, that the Compiler of it was a Foreigner.

quæ ad officium illud spectare intelliguntur, ex-  
cuit, dirigentes. Eundem propterea, & non minus  
ob solertiam & Sagacitatem, quas in eo satis habemus  
exploratas, in Principalem Heraldum & Offi-  
ciarum incliti nostri Ordinis *Garterii*, Armorumq;  
Regem Anglicorum, ex Gratia nostra speciali,  
Ereximus, fecimus, Constituimus, Ordinavimus,  
Creavimus, & Coronavimus, ac per præsentem Eri-  
gimus, facimus, Constituimus, Ordinamus, Creamus,  
& Coronamus, ac ei officium illud, nec non  
Nomen le *Garter*, Stilum, Titulum, Libertates, &  
Præminentias hujusmodi Officio Convenientia,  
& Concordantia, ac ab antiquo Consueti, Damus  
& Concedimus, ac ipsum in eisdem realiter Inve-  
stimus, Habendum, occupandum, & Exercendum  
Officium illud, ac Nomen, Stilum, Titulum, &  
Præminentias prædictas eidem *Thome* durante vi-  
ta sua, cum omnibus Juribus, Proficiis, Commo-  
ditatibus, & Emolumentis eidem Officio qualiter-  
cunque debitis pertinentibus, sive spectantibus. Et  
ulterius Concessimus, & per præsentem Concedimus  
præfato *Thome* in Regem Armorum Anglicorum  
(ut præfertur) erecto, pro exercitio Officii prædicti,  
quadraginta libras per Annum, pro Vadiis & feodis  
Officii prædicti, de parva Custuma nostra in portu  
Civitatis nostræ Londoniæ, per manus Custuma-  
riorum sive Collectorum Custumæ prædictæ, in  
portu prædicto a Festo Sancti Michaelis Archangeli  
ultimo præterito, ante datam præsentium, &  
sic deinceps, pro tempore existentium ad terminos  
Paschæ & Michaelis Archangeli per æquales Por-  
tiones, una cum tali liberata & Vestura, qualem

& eisdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius hu-  
jusmodi Rex Armorum, sive principalis Heraldus  
tempore Domini *Edwardi* nuper Regis Angliæ  
tertii Progenitoris nostri habuit, & percepit, Ha-  
bendum, & Percipiendum annuatim Liberatam hu-  
jusmodi eidem *Thome* singulis annis durante Vita  
ipsius *Thome* ad Magnam Garderobam nostram  
per manus Custodis sive Clerici pro tempore exi-  
stentis, Eo quod Expressa mentio de vero valore  
annuo præmissorum, &c. In cujus, &c. Teste Rege  
apud Westmonasterium 19<sup>o</sup> die Decembris.

Per breve de privato Sigillo.

<sup>k</sup> MS. Ant. a Wood in Mus. Ashm. n. 33. f. 23.  
<sup>l</sup> D. 4. p. 211. reciting the former, with some ad-  
ditional Clauses.

<sup>m</sup> E. 10. penes me. p. 243 b. — H. 1. penes  
me, p. 58, &c. — MS. penes *Edward Dering*  
Baronet L. 5. 3.

Lib. Nig. *Garterii*, p. 267, in 20 Jan. 26 H. 8.  
gives an Account of this Election, and sending Notice  
thereof by the Lord William Howard, Quem & Gar-  
terus Rex Armorum ob illud ipsum cum debitis in-  
strumentis est illico secutus.

<sup>n</sup> G. 13. penes me, p. 100 b. Faustina E. 1. in  
Bibl. Cotton.

<sup>o</sup> MS. Ant. a Wood in Mus. Ashm. n. 33. p. 22 b.  
<sup>p</sup> Hollingshead, p. 1591. *Stow's Annals*, MS.  
in Bibl. Cotton.

<sup>q</sup> MS. in Officio Armorum donat. per Ducem  
Norfolciæ.

There



There remain two Volumes of the Collections of this Officer in the Collector's Custody, in one of which is the Entry of his Father's Arms, wherein were some Words blotted out, where the Blank is left in the Margin; those now ascribed to him, are Azure, a Chevron Ermine on a Chief Crenelle Or, three Ogresses Sable; his Crest an Eagle's Head *coupé* Argent and Azure between two Wings counterchanged, on each three Doupes counterchanged on a Wreath.

VI. *The Sixth Garter, Christopher Barker*, had been (as 'tis said) *Callis*, and *Rougedragon* Pursivant; then *Suffolk*, and thence *Richmond* Herald, afterwards *Norroy*; wherein are many Mistakes, which appear by an Entry, that seems to be in his own Hand Writing.

He was the Son of *William Barker* of *Stokesly* in *Yorkshire*, by *Joan* his Wife the Daughter (according to some MSS.) of *William Carlisle Norroy*, tho' 'tis more probable that she was his Sister, since this *William* had no Issue by *Alice Malory* his Wife, and the Collector hath not met with any Memorial of the second Marriage of this *Norroy*.

He was first *Lysley* Pursivant to *Sir Charles Brandon*, who had been made Viscount *Lisley* [that is *Lisle*] 15 May 5 H. VIII, and as his Officer he attended on the 8th of April, 6 H. VIII, at the French King's taking his Oath for the Observation of the Peace: He was created *Suffolk* Herald to the Duke of *Suffolk* (that is to the same *Sir Charles Brandon*) by

<sup>r</sup> B. 1. & E. 1. penes me.

<sup>f</sup> B. 1. penes me, p. 222 b. Wall of Cryche in Derbyshire alias Norroy King of Armes beryth quarterly the furst quarter asur a cheveron Ermyns — — — on a chief enbatele gold three pellets.

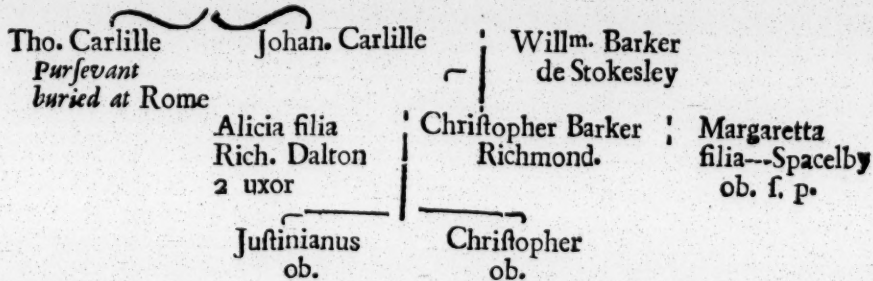
<sup>t</sup> Catalogue of Officers— In D. 1. penes me, p. 284. Wall of Derbyshire, Az. on a Cheveron Er. 3 Ogresses, as many Egletes display'd Argent.

<sup>u</sup> B. 1. penes me, p. 14.

<sup>x</sup> Weaver's Funeral Monuments, p. 660, 680, and therein the Catalogue agrees.

<sup>y</sup> M. 9. in Officio Armorum, p. 118 b.— At the Swearing to the Observation of the peace made the 8th day of April 1515, by Francis King of France were present West then Bishop Elect of Ely— and with him Christopher Barker alias Lysley pourcevant to Duke of Suffolk, after Suffolke herauld, after Richemonde harould, after that Norroy Kyng of Armes, after that Gartier principall King of Armes. See H. 5. penes me, p. 144.

<sup>z</sup> From a Book in the Office of Arms given by Sir William Dugdale, &c.



<sup>a</sup> 65 B. 8. p. 45, 46, 47 in bibl. Harley Robert Carlille

John Carlille

Sir William Carlille

Christopher Carlille — Alicia filia  
alias Norroy — — — Malory  
ob. f. p.

the



the <sup>b</sup> King at *Eltham*, the 1st of *Febr.* 1516 (8 H. VIII.) But if his Nomination was not till that Year, he must have had a Predecessor, by the same Title in this Office, who attended on that Duke (called his Master) at the <sup>c</sup> Turnament in *Paris* 1514. He had afterwards a new Title given him, being made by Patent <sup>d</sup> *Richmond*, with 20 Marks Wages, in 14 H. VIII, and was created on <sup>e</sup> *Alhalowyn* Day, 14 H. VIII, at *Hereford*.

In 15 H. VIII, He received two <sup>f</sup> Coats of the Kings's Arms painted, one of Damask, the other of Sarfenet.

In 17 H. VIII, He continued in <sup>g</sup> *Spain*, being sent thither in 15 H. VIII, to attend upon *Cuthbert Tunstall* Bishop of *London*, Sir *Richard Wingfield* Knight of the *Garter*, and Doctor *Sampson* Dean of the Chapel, which Sir *Richard* dying there, he <sup>h</sup> solemnized his Funeral, and in 22 H. VIII, was in <sup>i</sup> *France*; in *June*, 21 H. VIII, was made *Norroy*, and the 15th of *July* following, *Christopher Barker* Esq; alias *Norroy*, was advanced to be Principal King of Arms of *Englishmen*, and Chief Officer of Arms of the Noble Order of the *Garter*, having been solemnly created to it before the Date of this Patent, on *Sunday* the 9th of that Month on the same Day that the Lord *Fitzwaren* was invested Earl of *Bath*.

There is no Privy-Seal or Signet in the Chapel of the Rolls in the Bundle of 27, 28 and 29 H. VIII, for passing this Patent to *Barker*, neither is there any Record of it on the Patent Roll, which is somewhat strange, since in a Docquet Book kept in the Petty Bag Office there is the following Entry, *Priv. Sigill.* 28 H. VIII, xv. die *Julii* creavit & coronavit *Christopherum Barker Armigerum alias Norrey in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum & præcipuum Officiarium Armorum incliti sui ordinis Garterii, & Officium illud, necnon nomen le Gartier stilum, &c. cum vadiis xl. per Annum ad vitam*, and the <sup>l</sup> Original under Seal was in the Custody of Sir *Will. Le Neue Clarencieux*.

He was sent with *Toison d'Or*, to <sup>m</sup> demand from the *French* King the Performance of some Articles, in 35 H. VIII, and in case of <sup>n</sup> Denial had a Commission to defy him, which could not be executed, because that King refused to admit these Officers to come into his Presence.

In

<sup>b</sup> MS. Ant. a Wood, in Mus. Ashm. n. 33. p. 23— MS. Ed. Dering Baronetti l. 6. i. p. 172.

<sup>c</sup> Colombiere Theatre d'honneur, vol. 1. p. 181.

<sup>d</sup> Rex creavit *Christopherum Barker* alias *Suffolk* cum novo titulo vocato *Richmund*, cum vadiis xx marcarum pat. 14 H. 8.

<sup>e</sup> A. 10. penes me, p. 245. MS. Ant. a Wood, n. 33. p. 23.

<sup>f</sup> B. 7. penes me, p. 31 b.

<sup>g</sup> 1st *Partition Book*, p. 28 b.

<sup>h</sup> J. 11. in *Officio Armorum*, p. 75.

<sup>i</sup> 1st *Partition Book*, p. 31 b.

<sup>k</sup> *Partition Book*, p. 265. H. 5. penes me, p. 132. H. 10. penes me, p. 379 b.

<sup>l</sup> H. 5. penes me, p. 82.

<sup>m</sup> *Hollingshead's Hist.* p. 960.

<sup>n</sup> H. 5. penes me, p. 319. *Henricus Octavus Dei Gratia, Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Rex, Fidei Defensor, ac in terris immediate sub Christo Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ, & Hibernicæ supremum Caput, Omnibus ad quos præsentis literæ pervenerint,*

*Salutem.* Notum facimus, quod nos de fide, probitate, & industria dilecti nobis *Christophori Barker* alias *Garter* Regis Armorum, & Ordinis *Garterii* Herald nostri Principalis, plurimum confidentes, Eidem mandavimus, & commisimus Illustrissimum Principem *Franciscum* Regem Christianissimum adire, & nomine nostro unacum Rege Armorum aut alio Heraldo Inviertissimi Principis *Caroli* quinti divina Clementia Romanorum Imperatoris, &c. fratris nostri charissimi, quædam mandata & Commissionem aperire, proponere, & declarare, Et super eisdem sic per illum propositis, apertis, & declaratis a dicto Rege responsum petere secundum Instructiones quasdam manu nostra signatas, ac eidem *Garterio* in hac parte traditas & deliberatas; Et quo casu responsum tale præfato Heraldo nostro intra decem dies a præfato Rege datum non fuerit, quale nos per dictas Instructiones nostras dicto Heraldo nostro præscripsimus accipiendum, ad Belli denunciationem, & intimationem

D d d d d

Hostiliæ



In 36 H. VIII, he had his <sup>o</sup> Livery and Conduct Money, in order to attend on the Duke of *Suffolk*, then Commander of the Middle Ward for the Expedition into *France*, in the <sup>p</sup> Diary whereof he is remembered.

At the Coronation of *Edward VI*, he was one of the 9 Knights of the *Bath* then made, which was by a Promotion without Ceremony, by reason of the <sup>r</sup> Shortness of Time, and he is the first named in the <sup>s</sup> Charter of Exemption to the Heralds.

He made <sup>t</sup> his Will 31 Dec. 1549, proved the 6th of *April* following, wherein he orders himself to be buried in the Vault he had prepared in the long Chapel next St. *Fayth's* Church in *Pauls*, and gives the Reversion of some Tenements to the Company of Vintners and their Successors.

He is said to <sup>u</sup> die on the 4th of *January*, 3 E. VI, but the Inquisition <sup>x</sup> fixes it to the 2d, leaving a very considerable Estate behind him, as appears from his Will, and that Inquisition.

He married *Margaret*, Daughter of *Speckley* of *Worcestershire*, who, (as he writes himself) dying 15 *March* 1520 (12 H. VIII) without Issue—He afterwards married *Alianor* <sup>y</sup> *Dalton*, Widow of *Rigby*, by whom he had two Sons, in 14 H. VIII, *Justinian*, who died *Rougecrosse* in *Spain*, and *Christopher*, who died likewise before his Father, so as *Edward Barker*,

Hospitalitatis procedere juxta formam in ea re, de concilio & assensu Consiliariorum nostrorum in dictis Instructionibus scriptam, & comprobata. Promittentes bona fide, & in verbo Regio nos ratum, gratum, & firmum habituros, quicquid Heraldus noster fecerit in præmissis, & aliquo præmissorum. In Cujus rei testimonium hiis Literis manu nostra signatis Sigillum nostrum apponi fecimus. Datum in Honorio nostro de *Hampton-Courte* die xxviii<sup>o</sup>. Mensis Maii, Anno Domini Milimo quingentesimo quadragesimo tertio, & Regni nostri trigesimo quinto.

God-Saive

<sup>o</sup> M. 16. in Off. Arm. p. 100b.

<sup>p</sup> Rymer, vol. 15. p. 52, 53.

<sup>q</sup> Wever's Fun. Mon. p. 660, 680.

<sup>r</sup> E. xi. Penes me, p. 217b.

<sup>s</sup> Rymer, vol. 15. p. 186.

<sup>t</sup> In Curia Prerogat. Cantuar. Coode Qu. 10. In the Name of God the father, the Sonne, and the Holy Ghoste &c. Amen. the 31 day of Dec. in the Yere of our Lorde God 1549 &c. in the 3d yere of the reign of our Sovereign and most excellent Prince *Edwarde* the Syxte &c. I *Christopher Barker* alias *Garret* Knt. principall Kyng at Armes of *Englyshemen*, resydent in the paryshe of Seynte *Faythe* called *Pater noster Rowe* &c. I wyll that my wretched Corps and Carcase shall be buried in the Vawlte, which I have allredye provyded, beyng in the long Chappell next St. *Faythes* Church in *Poules* &c. He then devises lands to the cleere yearly value of xl l. therein particularly named to his Cosyn *William Hunnings* Esq. and his heirs &c. to Dame *Edith* his wife all the other free lands for her life, &c. whereof many are named, and after her decease to the Company of Vyneteners in *London*, and their Successors for ever, his Tenements stondinge in *Lyme Street* *London*. To his brother *Edward Boyce* Citezin, and Draper of *London*, after the decease of his said wyf, his house in *Pater Noster Rowe*, and to his heirs for ever; to his Cosine *Alexander Carlyll* and *Christofer* his Son after his wives decease his Lease of his Mansyon house in *London*, his *Londes*, &c. in Saynt

*Nicholas* and *Ive lane* in *London* to *John Colwell*, *Richard Colwell*, and *Edward Colwell* his wyves Children, to be equally devyded among them, to them and their heires &c. After his wyves decease to *Edward Barker*, and the heirs of his body lands in *Wansted*, and for default of such yfsewe to *Tho. Barker* his Brother, and his heirs of his body, and for default of suche yfsewe to *William Barker* their Brother, and to the heirs of his Body, and for lack of soche yfsewe to his Godsonne *Christofer Carlyll*, and to his heirs for ever. And after some legacies to pious uses, Then He gives to *Eli. Colwell* and *Katherine Colwell* his wives daughters xl marks between them towards the preferment of their marriage and makes *Edith* his wife Executrix, &c. To which a Codicil is annexed.

<sup>u</sup> 1st Partition Book, in Officio Armorum, p. 135b. MS. Ant. a Wood, in Mus. Ash. n. 33. p. 22b.

<sup>x</sup> E libro in Curia Wardorum de Anno Quarto *Edwardi Sexti*. The Extent and cleere yerely value of all the mannors Lands and hereditaments late of Sir *Christopher Barker* Knt. deceased iud *January* anno tercio Ed. 6. and *Edward Barker* is his Cosyn and next heir xviii yeres old at the finding of the Office in *London* the viii of *June* Anno Quarto Regis prædicti. Civitas *Londonie*. One Melluage in *Ive lane* given to the Lady - - - - - *Barker* late wife of the said Sir *Christopher* terme of her lyff, and after her decease to *John Colwell* *Richard Colwell* and *Edward Colwell* Children to the said Lady and to their heyres for ever, which said Lady died in Sept. an<sup>o</sup> 4to E. vi, &c. one Mesuage in *Lymstreet*, &c. given to the Lady for terme of her lyff and after her deathe to the Company of the Vyneteners in *London* for the mayntenance of ther company and to ther successors for ever &c. Vide Lib. Liberationum in dicta Curia de anno primo *Marie*, f. 125b.

<sup>y</sup> M. 4. in Officio Armorum, p. 34. It appears by a MS. formerly Mr. Camden's, given to the Herald's Office by Dugdale, that this *Elienor Dalton* was the Widow of - - - *Rigby*.



Son of his Brother *John*, became his Heir at Law; for he had no Issue by his third Lady *Edith* Daughter of *John Boys* of *Godweston* in *Kent*, Relict of *Robert Colwell* and *Robert Legge*, who in the Index in the Prerogative Office to her Will, dated 1 *July* 1450, is stiled Dame *Edith Barker* alias *Garter* Widow; she therein orders herself to be <sup>z</sup> buried within the Vault in the Chapel next adjoining to the Parish Church of *St. Faith* in *Parwles* in *London*, where the Body of Sir *Christopher Barker* alias *Garter* Knight her late Husband lyeth buried, and names therein divers Sons and Daughters by her Husband *Colwell*, and also her Brother *Edward Boyse*, which Will was proved on the 14th of *Sept.* following. His Arms were Argent three Bear's Heads erased Gules, muled Or, in Chief three Torteauxes.

The Titles of Officers of Arms were used as their Surnames, according to the Tenour of their Patents, which expressly impose them, *Nomen tibi "imponimus Garter, &c."* The Rule of Law is, that when any Person is created to the Stile of a Baron, or higher Nobility, he shall from that Time be named by his <sup>a</sup> Christian Name, and that of his Title, State, and Degree, which stands in lieu of his Surname; in this Privilege Ladies also participate, who retain their Husbands Titles during their Widowhood, though their Husbands had been advanced thereto for Term of their Lives only; thus *Jaquet* the Relict of *John* Duke of *Bedford*, and Earl of *Kendal*, enjoyed the Stile of *Duchess*, and this Practice is more evident in the Widows of Knights, who retain the Title of Ladies though the Knighthood expires with their Husbands. <sup>b</sup> *Upton* goes farther in the Case of Heralds, who, he saith lost their former Names upon Creations, and then took new ones and Arms also; at the Time of his Writing, Heralds were taken out of the Pursuivants, so that this Expression may here only mean, that they lost the Titles which they enjoyed while they were Pursuivants. In the Case of *Garter* it hath been judicially determined <sup>c</sup> that Title must be used in Pleadings, and the Reason is given, because it is not only a Name of Office but a Name of Dignity also, which appears from the Term *Coronamus* in the Patent, to which might have been added, that the other Word <sup>d</sup> *Creamus* likewise therein, always imports a Dignity: This extends to all other Officers of Arms whose Patents are in the same Tenour, and hence probably it might be that these Titles were not only used by them, but by their Wives, and also by their Relicts. Before the Instances of this Custom are given, 'tis necessary to examine an Assertion of <sup>e</sup> *Gerard Leigh*, who being sensible doubtless of an Illegitimacy in his own Line, by way of Recrimination on these Officers, boldly averred, "That the Marriage of Heralds was contrary to their Profession, and that though they are so anciently wived, as the six Clerks, yet they are not so lawfully". Whereas 'tis evident from this History of the *Garters*, that *Bruges* was the Son of a King of Arms

<sup>z</sup> Coode in Cur. Prærog. Qu. 21.

<sup>a</sup> Co. 2 Inst. p. 666.

<sup>b</sup> De re milit. p. 178. Haraldi—columbas in suis Armis assumere & portare, prioribus eorundem armis, nominibusq; propriis dimissis & penitus derelictis, &c.

<sup>c</sup> Leon. 1 Rep. n. CCCxxxvii. Cro. Eliz. p. 224.

<sup>d</sup> Co. in the End of his Preface to the xth Rep.

<sup>e</sup> Accedence of Armory, 143.



and was himself married, his Successor was twice married: Sir *John Wrythe* had three Wives, and his Son Sir *Thomas* had several Children: *Wall* was the Son of a King of Arms, and the first Wife of this *Barker* died before these six Clerks were permitted to marry by a Law in general, which was enacted in 14 and 15 *Hen. VIII*, though our Records shew us, they might marry before that Time, if they obtained a Licence from the Crown for that Purpose. 'Tis strange this false Doctrine hath never met with any Censure, for it is contradicted not only by the *Wills* of ancient Officers, who mention their Wives and their Children, but also by several of our *Records*, and this Liberty of Marriage corresponds with the

*f To omit the Daughters of Sir Paen Roet, said to have been Guienne King of Arms in the Reign of Ed. iii. married to John Duke of Lancaster, and to Chaucer.*

Richard Northampton Herald, in his Will made in 1377, mentions his first Wife Katherine, and devises Lands to Johan. his then Wife. Registr. Episc. London.

John Derby, Herald of the King, in his Will made 1413, constitutes his Wife Isabel, and Thomas his Son, his principal Legatees. Registr. Episc. Lond.

Thomas Irland, King of Arms, in his Will 2 Hen. v. gives Legacies to his Wife Johan. then big with Child. Registr. Episc. Lond.

Thomas Gryffyn, ooberwife called Richemond, in 1473, gives the Residue of his Goods to Katherine his Wife, and Richard his Son, and Richard Wryght his Son in Law. Wattys in Cur. Prærog. p. 147.

John More Norroy in 1491, gives to his Wife Alianor all his Goods, Milles in Cur. Prærog.

Thomas Holme Clarenceux made his Will in 1493, and therein orders, that the Will of Christian sometime Wife and Executrix of John Garland, and afterwards his Wife, should be fully performed, and constitutes his then Wife Eliz. one of his Executors. Vox in Curia Prærog. qu. ix. The Will of this Christian Holme, made in 1476, by Licence of her said Husband, is in the Registr. Episc. Lond.

Richard Wyndesore Herald of Arms, in his Will 1502, makes Katerine his Wife his residuary Legatee, Blamyr. in Cur. Prærog. Qu. 8.

John Joyner Norroy, in his Will proved 28 July 1523, mentions his Daughter Margaret. Bodfeeld in Cur. Prærog.

Francis Dees likewise Windfor, made his Will in 1524, whereof his Wife, and Margaret his Daughter, then married to Peter Cave, were Executrices. Reg. Tunstall Episc. Lond. f. 54. So that he must have been married before the Act for the six Clerks.

g Claus. 13 R. 2 p. 1. Richardus Northampton Heraud, & Katherina uxor ejus tenuerunt terras in Theydon, &c.

Priv. Sigill. 4 H. 6. Henri, &c. As tresreverent Pere en Dieu nostre trescher cousin l'erevesque de Canterbris Primat de toute Engleterre nostre Chancellor saluz. Comme de nostre grace speciale eons grantez a noz bien amez Reignault Moubay herault d'armes & a Elizabeth sa femme la garde de nostre Chaunge deinz nostre ville de Caleys pur terme de lour deux vies, &c. 22 Oct.

Pat. 10 H. 4. p. 1. m. 12. Rex, &c. Sciatis quod nos considerantes diuturnum servitium, quod dilectus nobis Henricus Green vocatus Leicester Rex Armorum nobis ante hæc tempora impendit, concessimus eidem Henrico, quod ipse, & Elizabetha uxor ejus de cætero habeant & teneant: durante vita eorum quoddam hospitium in villa nostra de Hertford, &c.

Fines in Com. Bucks, 6 H. 5. n. 30. inter Wilhelmum Boys alias dictum Exetere heraud & Matil.

dam uxorem ejus querentes, & Thomam Wulston & Emmam uxorem ejus deforciantes de terris in Burnham & Dorneye, unde prædicti Thomas & Emma concefferunt dictis Willimo & Matildæ pro vitis, remanere Willimo Boys juniore alias dicto Blanchhyverer Pursivant, & hæredibus masculis de corpore, remanere Thomæ Boys alias dicto Antelop Pursivant & hæredibus masculis de corpore, &c.

In the Chamberlain's Office London 16 Hen. vi. Richardus Arundel filius Johannis Clarenceux Regis Armorum venit hic coram Camerario, & cognovit se esse Apprenticium Rob. Ashely Civis & aurifabri, &c.

Claus. 20 H. 6. m. 3d. Robert Ashwell alias dictus Lancaster filius Johannis Ashwell nuper Regis Armorum concessit Oweyno ap Meredith ap Tudur Armigero, &c. And at Little-Chart in Kent was an Inscription on a Tomb: Hic jacet Johannes filius ----- Lancastri Heraudi Regis Armorum, qui obiit 10 die Junii 1441. Wev. Fun. Mon. f. 283.

The Relict of Roger Lygh Clarenceux is mentioned in Notes to the Black-book, p. 138. note 1.

Pat. 30 H. 6. p. 2. m. 9. Rex, &c. Sciatis quod de gratia nostra speciali concessimus & licentiam dedimus dilecto servitori nostro Willimo Maylard alias dicto Suffolk Heraudo Officiario Armorum, quod ipse a regno nostro Angliæ in regnum nostrum Franciæ ad uxorem, & liberos suos qui in diris carceribus a diu ibidem detenti extiterunt, &c. 30 Julii.

Will. Hawkeslow Clarenceux, who was drowned in the Spanish Seas in 1476, was married. Priv. Sig. 26 Feb. 17 E. 4. Edward, &c. Forasmuch as We be remembred that our servant Clarenceux King of Arms lately deceased in oure service served us truly by the space of xviii yeeres, by the which season He ne perceyved any fee or reward from us over the common profits and rewards apperteynyng to the said Office, And that we be verily ascertaigned, that He died in gret dette and povertie, by the which his wif and children ben now in misery. We remembryng the said service, and the long continuance thereof, And the said misery of his wif and children, of our verry pitee be moeved to emparte our almes to his said wif and children for their releif and succour, &c. His wife present at the obsequies for him, Titus in bibl. Cotton, c. 1. p. 456. Signet. 1 H. 7. 20 May, "To the Bishop of Exeter to make a privy Seal "to the Tresorer and Chamberlains of the Exchequer to paye and delivere in redy mony to our trusty servant Wyndesore oon of our Herauds the somme of twenty marcs sterlings, which we have appointed hym freely to have of our yift and reward towards his arrayment and apparailing ayenst his marriage, &c.

After these records may be inserted, that in M. 3. in Off. Arm. is this Entry. This booke was bought of the Widow of March King of Arms, 6 Hen. 7. Of this Marriage, see Glover's Visit of Chester, p. 310.

Practice



Practice in Foreign <sup>b</sup> Parts, where the *Romish* Religion is still professed. Mr. Leigh assigns no Article of their Professions which interferes with Marriage, and certainly there is no more Prohibition on them in this Particular than there was on the *Roman* Heralds, the *Fecials*, whose Chief the *Pater Patratus* (as 'tis usually said) was not qualified for that Post unless he had a Son as well as a Father living, so as he might know how to obey as well as to command. Among them likewise the Wife of the *Rex Sacrorum* was stiled <sup>i</sup> *Regina Sacrorum*, and she actually performed some <sup>k</sup> Sacred Rites.

But to return to the Titles used by the Wives of Heralds. *Burdeaux* the King's Herald in his <sup>l</sup> Will made 1398, calls his Wife *Elianor Burdeaux*; the Widow of <sup>m</sup> *Richard Del Brugg Lancaster* hath been already hinted. There was formerly this Inscription in the *Gray Friars London*; <sup>n</sup> *Facet Alicia Carlille alias Norre secunda filia Thomæ Malore de Com. Cantuarii*. She was the Wife of <sup>o</sup> *Christopher Carlille Norroy*, who survived her, and died <sup>p</sup> himself in 1510; the Wife of *Benoilt* is, during his Life, stiled by the Heralds in their Books <sup>q</sup> of Partition of Fees *Mistris Clarenceux*, and we have several Grants on <sup>r</sup> Record to *Susan Tonge* alias *Clarenceux* Widow, who is likewise mentioned by that Title in several of our Writers.

VII. *The Seventh Garter* Sir *Gibert Dethick* <sup>l</sup> is said to have continued an Officer of Arms 65 Years, and to have died at the Age of 81 in 1584, according to which Computation he should have been first admitted

<sup>b</sup> Chron. Martiniene 1475. Montjoie & un sien fils, &c. Chron. Scandaleuse, p. 235.

Charondas le Caron, who wrote the *Pandects of the French Laws*, saith, That he himself was Son of the Sieur de Canley an Herald of Arms, p. 383.

John Hervart Toyson d'or dying in 1635, was succeeded by his Son Messire Joseph Anthony Hervart, upon whose Death in 1663, the Son of this latter Messire Jean Hervart succeeded.

Johannes Tyrol presented to Hen. VIII. three books of Arms which he saith that his Father an Herald to the Emperor had with great Care collected.

Nicaise L'Adam Grenade King of Arms died in 1547, on whose Tomb, Deux femmes epoufa, &c. Menestrier Recherches du Blason, p. 145.

Jean Baptiste Anthoine de Getz was Haynalt King of Arms in 1687, and his second Son was Namur King of Arms in 1703.

Michael Mauriffens was King of Arms, whose Son was Guelderland King of Arms in 1651, and was succeeded by his Brother in 1673.

The Bieberghe's Father, Son and Grandson, have been successively Kings of Arms.

Marthurin Marteneau succeeded to his Father Bernard in the Order of the Holy Ghost, &c.

<sup>i</sup> Gruter Inscript. p. 1087.

<sup>k</sup> Macrobi. l. i. c. 15. Panvin. de Civ. Rom. c. 36.

<sup>l</sup> Registr. Episc. London.

<sup>m</sup> Above, p. 327. note i.

<sup>n</sup> Vitell. F. 7. in bibl. Cott.

<sup>o</sup> 65 B. 8. p. 45, 46, 47. in bibl. Harley.

<sup>p</sup> Wever's Fun. Mon. p. 526.

<sup>q</sup> Part. Book, p. 21.

<sup>r</sup> She was early in the Service of the Princess Mary, Daughter of Hen. 8. who in a letter to her Father's

Secretary touching her Desire about her Servants, writes,

"That of such, whome she thought worthy to be accepted for their faithfull Service done to the King's Majesty and to herself, sithens they came into her company, she promises him on her faith, that Margery Bainton and Susan Clarenceux have in every condition used themselves as faithfully, painfully, and diligently as ever did women in such a case." Syllog. Epist. ad finem Hist. Hen. 5. edit. per Hearne, p. 145. Her Husband Tho. Tonge Clarenceux died in 28 H. 8. Stow Survey of London in St. Mary Overy. Ed 6. granted to Susan Tonge, alias Clarenceux Widow, the Mannour of Thindersley, Priv. Sig. 7 E. 6. 22 Junii. In 1 and 2 Ph. and M. Robes were delivered, pro Susanna Clarenceux generosa de privata Camera Reginae. Compt. Ed. Waldegrave penes Rem. Regis; and in 4 and 5 Ph. and M. p. 3. m. 28. Licence for alienating and settling some Mannors is granted Susannæ Tonge alias Clarenceux viduæ primæ Generosæ privatae camerae nostrum præfatæ Reginae. Pat. 4 & 5 Ph. & M. m. 28. in which Year a Lease of the Mannor of Wighel in York was granted to Susan Tonge alias Clarenceux Widow. Cur. Ward. ultimo Febr. She presented to some Churches by this Name, Newcourt Regist. Paroch. vol. 2. p. 586, 587. and is so stiled in the Will of her Brother Rob. White of Hutton-Hall in Essex Esq; dated in 1549. Lib. Horn. in Reg. Lond. and she is called Clarenceux by Fox in his Martyrology, and Hollingsh. p. 1158, 1160. and the Collector believes she is the Clarentia Anicula who fled into Spain for her Religion mentioned in Camd. Eliz. sub A. D. 1560.

<sup>s</sup> Ash. Hist. of the Garter p. 302, which, as may be supposed, he took from W. N. in Officio Armorum, p. 27 b. or from Weaver's Fun. Monuments, p. 660.



mitted in 1519, about the 11th Year of *Hen. VIII*, when he could not be above Sixteen; but if he had been in the Office so early, 'tis strange there should be no Remembrance of him in the Books of the Partition of Fees between the Officers, which are still preserved from the 19th Year of that King, and intimate their Names and Surnames by the initial Letters thereof prefixed to their Titles; as therefore here is an evident Mistake in his Age at the Time of his Death, for by the Inscription in *Paul's Church*, he was then 84, so it is reasonable to believe that the Entry in this Partition Book is right, wherein 'tis noted that he was advanced to be *Hampnes Pursuivant* on *Corpus Christi Day*, the 16th of *June* in 28 *H. VIII*, and two Days afterwards had a Salary granted him by a " Patent, from whence he was in *Dec. 32 H. VIII*, made *x Rougecroix*, and forthwith on *y Christmas-Day* promoted to the Place of *Richmond Herald*, for which he had a *z* Patent bearing Date the 8th of *March* following, and in this Qualification he attended in the Camp at *a Monstrel*, and received the *b* Wages of 4*s.* daily for himself, and 6*d.* for each of his two Servants, and in the next Year was employed in *c Denmark*, whose Negotiations in that Kingdom may be consulted in the *Cotton Library*. On *Easter Day*, 37 *H. VIII*, the *d* Partition Book takes notice of his Absence occasioned by his being then employed in the King's Affairs, when, as it is supposed, he was in *Scotland* demanding the *Scotch* Prisoners to return according to their Articles; for Instructions of that Nature signed by the King were given to *Richmond Herald*, which are inserted in the *e* Margin, because the Maxims of the Laws of Arms in such Cases

In *H. 3. penes me*, p. 1096 and 1110. *Sir William his Son and Successor*, in a petition to her justly alledges, that his late father Garter after 62 years paynfull and dangerous services, &c. Now *Sir Gilbert* being 84 years old at his death, must have been born in 1500, and by this Account was an Officer of Arms from the Year 1522 (14 *H. 8.*)

*t* 1st Partition Book, in Officio Arm, p. 265.

*tt* MS. Ant. a Wood in Mus. Ashm. n. 33.

P. 24.

*u* Pat. 28 *H. 8. Part 2.* — Rex, &c. quod dilectus subditus noster Gilbertus Dethyke, quem Hammes unum Pursevandorum nostrorum nominavimus, eique nomen illud imposuimus, nobis ante hæc tempora impendit, Dedimus, &c. eidem Gilberto pro feodo Officii prædicti vadia & feoda octo denariorum sterling per diem pro Exercitio ejusdem Officii prædicti, Habendum, &c. durante vita sua a sexto die Aprilis ultimo præterito, &c. de Thesauo nostro ad receptam Scaccarii nostri Callis, &c. 18 Julii.

*x* Weaver's Funeral Monuments, p. 680.

*y* 1st Partition Book, in officio Armorum, p. 81 b. on *Christmas-Day* 32 *H. 8.*

*z* Pat. 32 *H. 8. p. 8 Martii Priv. Sigill. 8 Martii* Rex erexit Gilbertum Dythick alias Rougecrosse unum Heraldorum suorum & nomen Richmond imposuit, &c. & concessit XX marcas per annum, &c.

*a* See Rymer, vol. xv. p. 54.

*b* *H. 4. penes me*, p. 650.

*c* Nero B. 3. p. 123, &c.

*d* In Offic. Arm.

*e* Instructions given by the King's Majesty to his trusty Servant *Richemonde* one of his Highness herauds at Armes, whom his Majesty sendeth

at this present to the Lords of the Parliament in *Scotland*, or if the Parliament sit not, to the Lords of the Counsaill assembled at his cuming thither for the doing of certain his Majesties Affaires there.

Henry R.

Furst the saide *Richemonde* taking with him these Instructions with such other Writings as be prepared for his proceedings with the saide Lords shall ymedyatlye with all diligence possible take his Journey from hence to my Lord of *Suff.* and there receyving of him such further information, as he shall gyve him, touching his Charge and directing himself thereafter shall passe into *Scotland* strait unto *Edinborough* or such other place where the saide Lords shall reside taking in his Company for his better Conduct by my saide Lord of *Suff.* appointment *Henry Raye* one of his Majesties Officers at Arms, whose advis he shall use for his passage in his Waye, and for the Knowledge and Intelligence of things in *Scotland*, and also for his behaviour there concerning his Safegard and Suertye willing both the saide *Richemonde*, and the saide *Henry Raye* to weare on their Backs alwayes their Cotes of Armes; and at their Cuming to the place where the saide Lords shal be, making sute to the same for Audience, the saide *Richemonde*, shall after they be admitted unto them, saye the Message on his Majesties behalfe hereafter expressed, which whenne he hath saide, if they desire a Copie of the same, he shall deliver it subscribed with his hand.

Right Honorable my Lords and others assembled here at this present, wheras by the auncient Lawes, and laudable use of Armes, it hath bene alwayes



Cases are recited therein. *William Felloe Norroy* dying before *Cristmas*  
Day

always hitherto observed and inviolably kept betwene Princes and Princes, and also all other Men of honour for thadvoyding extreme Cruaulty and Slaughtre, which elz woold ensue in the Warres, that yelding themselves, and being taken to mercy they shuld not be kylled and destroyed but be reserved and kept at the mercy of their taker, the same to be always, until they were redemed and raunsomed at the Wil disposition and Ordre of the sayd taker, and in the mean Season to be none otherwise subject to any lawe or personne, but that they might be at all tymes redy to cum into their takers whensoever they were Commanded, and Called for, which honourable usage and Lawe of Armes being by any Colour or devise violated or broken, all humanitye Mercy and pytye for the Saufgarde of mans lief should be utterly among men abolished and extinct. The Kings Majesty my moost drad Soverain Lord *Henry* theight by the Grace of God Kinge of *Englande Fraunce and Irelande* the Supreme hed, having by Victory in Just and lawful Warre against this Realme taken certain Noblemen and Gentlemen Prisoners, (whose Names I shall repete anone unto you) did sone after their taking upon their own humble Sute and request to return into this their Country for the doing of certain thinges tending to thuniversal benefit, as they affirmed of this Realme gve them leave to repayre unto this their sayde Countrey upon their Othe and promesse made unto his Highnesse, on their Honours and Fidelities, to returne at all tymes, notwithstanding their Hostages, whenne he woold appoynte them. And being now determined to have them returne unto him according to their said promesse, and youe in respect of your honours will not only suffre them, but also constreyn them, if they woold not acquite themselves therein honorably as apperteyneth to true Nobilitye and Gentle blood, and represent themselves unto his Majesty according to their sayd bonds, hath Comaunded me to repayre unto you the Lords and others of the parliament or Counsaile here assembled and to requyer you in his Majesty's name to delivre unto me out of hande to be conveyed unto his Majesty his lawful and sworn Prisoners Therle of *Cassels* Therle of *Glencarn*, the Lord *Somerville*, the Lord *Maxwel*, the Lord *Graye*, the Lord *Olyvant*, the Lord *Fleming*, *Oliver St. Cler*, *George Hume* Lord of *Hayton*, *Rob. Erskin*, Sonne and heire to the Lord *Erskyn*, *William Seton*, *Patrick Heyborn*, *James Pringle*, *James St. Cler*, *Alexander St. Cler*, *John Matland* Lord of *Alvencastell*, *Henry Maxwell*, Brother to the Lord *Maxwell*, *John Rosse* Lord of *Cragy*, the Lord *Mounkreith*, *William Mounteth* Lord of *Carsey*, *John Lisle* younger Sonne to therle of *Rothers*, *John Caringbell* eldest Sonne to the Capitayne of *Craiford*, signifying further unto you that in Case by any pretence or allegation to be deuised by you or them to the Contrary the same be not accomplished according to my request, his Majesty entendeth to revenge it, not onely upon such their pledges remayning for their apparence in *England* as far as to his Majesty shall seeme good and agreeable to the Lawes of Armes, but also upon all the personnes of this Realme, which shall hereafter happen to cum into his hands, and in such sorte denounce this rupture of this aunyent Lawe of Armes to all the Woorld, as the same shall turne to your and their perpetual ignominy and reproache, Requiring you to gve me aunswer hereof within these three Dayes.

And when the said *Richemond* hath declared the saide Messaige, in Case therle of *Arreyn*, the Catdinal or other shall aunswer that the said prisonners shall either cum in, or paye their Raunsoms, according to the rates of the value of their Lands and Goods, he shall thereto replye and saye.

The Lawe of Armes touching the taxation of the Raunsoms of prisonners, is and hath bene alwayes used, that the takers shall sett at their liberty such raunsoms upon their prisoners, as shall seeme meete unto their discretion, for in respect of that liberty the takers have many times, upon hope of making their own advantaige and profit upon their prisonners, saved many a Mans lief, whom else they woold have slayn without taking the same to Mercy. And yet those Prisonners whom I now demaunde in the Kings Majesty my Soverains name wer not let home upon Condition eyther to paye theyr raunsoms, or elz to return, but to stand bounden, by their Faythes and honours simply and without Condition to return at such tyme as his Majesty woold call for them, thobsevation of which promesse, I cum now to require.

And therewithal, in Case of any of the sayd Prisonners fortune to be present at the doing of this Messaige knowing by and by of *Bernyk* their Names and which they be, he shall turne his tale unto them and saye.

My Lords (calling every one by his Name) the Kings Majesty my Soverain Lord requyrethe you by vertue of your faithes and honours, which remayne with his Majesty in Obligation for your Returne, to performe and accomlishe your promesses in that behalf, and furthwith to repayre unto him being your Lord and Master by the Comun Lawe of Reason and Armes, and you likewise being his prisonners and Captives until by his Consent and manumission you shall be put to Libertye.

And furthermore if it shall fortune any of the said Lordes tobjecte that the Kings Majesty hath already accorded and agreed by certain his Commissioners upon certain Sommes to be payd for the raunson of every of the said prisonners the said *Richemond* shall make this aunswer.

It was indede agreed, that at such tyme as thostaiges which wer promised to be layd in, according to the Treaty for the performauce of the marriage and delivery of the yong Princeesse shuld be layd into the King's Majesty at the same tyme the Prisonners of *Scotlande* gyving in bonde by Obligation for the payment of their Raunson at Convenyent days with their owne promesse to yelde themselves prisonners, if they brak their sayde days of payment with the Writing also of the Governour of *Scotlande* conteyning his promesses to upholde and mainteyn the said bands and promesses that these things done the prisoners shuld be ransomed upon certayn Sommes, whereunto his Majesty did agree both in respect of the sayd Conditions, and to thintent also that all the rest of the Treaty which was concluded betwene the Commissioners shuld on your partes have bene fulfilled and observed, whereof because ye have kept never a one, not only that poynt touching the saide raunsoms, which you now alledge is voyde, but also you have gotten your selfs thereby perpetuel Ignominye and shame throughout all Christendom.

And what Aunswer the sayde *Richemond* shall receyve of the sayde Lords to the premisses he shall marke it diligently, and also all other things that shall



Day 38 Hen. VIII, *Dethick*<sup>f</sup> succeeded him in that Place, for which he obtained a <sup>g</sup> Patent from *Edw. VI* on the 16th of *August* following, and in that Year waited on the Protector in the <sup>b</sup> Expedition against the *Scots*, who, as it hath been observed, sent him in a <sup>i</sup> Message that hazarded his Person: He is named in the Charter of Exemption granted to the *Heralds*, and was sent into <sup>k</sup> *Kent* and other Places to pacify the Rebels; and upon a Vacancy in the Office of *Garther*, though there were <sup>l</sup> divers Officers of Arms his Seniors, yet he was constituted thereto by a <sup>m</sup> Creation, as it is said, on *Sunday* before *St. Georges-Day* 1550, and afterwards on the 29th of *Apr.* obtained a <sup>n</sup> Patent with the ancient Salary, payable from *Michaelmas* preceeding, and received the Honour of *Knight-hood* on *Easter Tuesday* following, 5 *Ed. VI.*

His Son and Successor *William*, some Years before the Death of his Father, gives a summary <sup>o</sup> Narrative of his Employments in Publick Affairs, "That first being *Rougecrosse*, and *Richmond Herald* he was sent in sundry

shall cum to his Knowledge to thintent he may make reaport of the same at his return to his Majesty accordingly. H. 4. penes me, p. 491. being the Original.

Here is no Date affixed to this Instrument, which however must be after July 35 H. 8. when those Prisoners were released upon their promise of returning back: See Rymer, vol. 14. p. 797.

f MS. Ant. a Wood, in Mus. Ashm. n. 33. p. 24. H. 5. penes me, p. 313.

g Rymer, vol. 15. p. 153.

b 16 Sept. the Lord of *Brimston* a *Skottish* Gentleman, who cam to my Lordes Grace from their Counsell for Cause of Communication bilyke returned again to them having with him *Norrey* an Herald and King of Armes of ours. Expedition into *Scotland* by D. of *Somerset*, printed by *Grafton* 1548.

i See above, p. 292. Note a.

k Acta Concilii privati— 11<sup>o</sup> Aug. 1549. War-rant for xlii. to *Norroy King of Armes* for divers Voyages by him made into *Kent*, *Essex*, *Suffolk* and *Norfolk*, about the pacifying of the Rebels.

l 3 Cerem. in Off. Arm. p. 11.

m P. 10. penes me, p. 64.

n Pat. 4 E. 6. p. 2. — Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem. Sciatis, quod cum non sit novum, sed jamdiu ab antiquis temporibus usitatum, quod inter Ceteros officarios & Ministros, quos Principum lateribus pro eorum magnificentia atque Gloria adhærere decet, eorum, quibus Officii Armorum cura committitur, Copiam habere deceat, ut nec tempus Bellorum, neque Pacis, sine convenientibus & aptis Ministris debeat preteriri: Nos igitur considerantes & aciem in fidelia, & etiam laudabilia Servitia, quæ dilectus *Gilbertus Dethicke* Armiger alias dictus *Norrey* in hiis quæ ad officium illud spectare intelliguntur, exercuit, dirigentes, eundem propterea, & non minus ob solertiam & Sagacitatem, quas in eo satis habemus exploratas, in Principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum, & præcipuum officiarium Armorum incliti nostri ordinis *Gartherii*, ex Gratia nostra speciali, ac de avifamento Concilii nostri & Consensu eorundem, ereximus, fecimus, Constituimus, Ordinavimus, Creavimus, & Coronavimus, ac per præfentes, erigimus, facimus, Constituimus, Ordinamus, Cre-

amus, & Coronamus ad Officium illud, nec non Nomen le *Gartier*, Stilum, Titulum, Libertates, Præminentias, Commoditates hujusmodi Officio pertinentia: Habendum, occupandum, & exercendum Officium illud, ac Nomen, Stilum, Titulum, Commoditates, & Præherentias prædictas eidem *Gilberto Dethyk* durante vita sua, cum omnibus Juribus, Proficuis, Commoditatibus, & Emolumentis eidem Officio qualitercumque debitis, pertinentibus, sive spectantibus, in tam amplis modo & forma, prout *Chrijsferus Barker* Miles nuper *Garther*, aut aliquis alius nuper habens seu occupans officium prædictum habuit, usus, vel gavifus fuit, exercuit, seu exercere potuit in eodem officio ratione ejusdem Officii: Et ulterius Concessimus, ac de avifamento & Consensu prædictis per Præfentes concedimus præfato *Gilberto* in Principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum (ut præfertur) erecto, pro exercitio Officii prædicti quadraginta libras per Annum, pro vadio & feodo Officii prædicti, percipiendas de exitibus & proficuis Parvæ Custumæ nostræ in portu Civitatis nostræ *Londoniæ*, per manus Custumariorum, Collectorum, sive Receptorum Custumæ prædictæ in Portu prædicto, a festo Sancti Michaelis Archangeli ultimo præterito, ante datam Præsentium, & sic deinceps pro tempore existentium ad terminos Paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per æquales Portiones; nec non talem Liberaturam & Vesturam, qualem aliquis Principalis Rex Armorum Anglicorum aliquo tempore antehac habuit, aut percepit in vel pro eodem officio, deliberandam eidem *Gilberto* per manus Custodis, sive Clerici Magnæ Garderobæ nostræ, Habendum & annuatim percipiendum eidem *Gilberto* durante vita sua dictas quadraginta Libras annuatim de exitibus & Proficuis provenientibus de parva Custuma nostra in portu Civitatis nostræ *Londoniæ* per manus Collectorum sive Receptorum ibidem pro tempore existentium, ad Festa Paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per æquales Portiones, ac etiam dictas Liberaturam & Vesturam ad Garderobam nostram durante vita sua prædicta, per manus Custodis, sive Clerici ejusdem pro tempore similiter Existentis ad terminos consuetos; Eo quod expressa mencio, &c. In cujus Rei, &c. Teste rege apud *Westmonasterium* vicesimo nono die Aprilis. Per breve de privato Sigillo. Rymer, vol. 15. p. 229.

o H. 3. penes me, p. 1096, 1110.

“ Messages



“ Messages of honour and urgent causes to the King of Denmark for the  
 “ trafick of Merchant shippes, and royall intelligences, also to the town  
 “ of *Lubeck*, to the Dyet at *Ratisbone*, where *Stephen Gardiner* afterwards  
 “ Bishop of *Winchester* was present, likewise sundry times to the Duke  
 “ of *Cleves*, and concerning that marriage in the time of *Hen. 8*, also  
 “ into *Scotland* in the time of *Edw. 6* for speech of marriage there com-  
 “ menced, Besides employed in his Office for matters of the warrs, or  
 “ in his Office now of the *Garter*, To *Henry* the late *French* King, to  
 “ the Christning of *Henry* now *French* King then named *Edwarde Alex-*  
 “ *ander*, to the Duc of *Monmorency* Constable of *France*, to *Charles ix*  
 “ late *French* King at *Lions*, To the Duke of *Savoy*, To the Duke of  
 “ *Holstein*, To the Earl of *Warwick* at *Newhawn*, to the late Emperor.

*Edw. VI* was Godfather to this *French* King, and by his Command the Name of *Edward Alexander* was given him, which his Mother afterwards procured him to alter for that of his Father.

He published Jufts at *Canterbury* in 1564, and was sent with the *Garter* to *Frederic* the Second King of *Denmark*.

When he had enjoyed this Office 34 Years and some Months, and not, as Mr. *Ashmole* misreckoned, 38 Years, he died *J* on the 3d of *Oct.* 1584, 26 *Eliz.* and was buried at *St. Bennets Pauls-Wharf* on the 10th of that *Month*, for whom there was an Inscription in *St. Pauls Cathedral* on the Tomb of his Son and Successor Sir *William*, published by *Dugdale*, *u* who by Mistake transpos'd the numeral Figures 48 for 84.

He was twice married, his first Wife was *Alice* Daughter of one *Leonard* a *Dutchman*, whose Surname, according to some Pedigrees, was *Peter-son*, by whom he had three Sons, whereof *Nicholas* the Eldest was *Windfor* Herald; Sir *William* succeeded him as *Garter*, and *Harry*. This Lady by the Title of *Ales Peterson* Wife of Sir *Gilbert Dethick* principal King of Arms, is said to bear for her Arms *Lozenge Ermins* on a *Cheveron* ingrailed: He had another Son *Robert*, to whom *Queen Elizabeth* was Godmother, but the Collector knows not whether he was by his first, or by his second Wife *Jane* the Widow and Administratrix of *William Naylor* one of the six Clerks in Chancery, the Daughter of *Rich. Duncomb*.

*Smith Rouge-dragon* gives this *Garter* in plain Terms the *Character* of illiterate, either in writing or speaking true *Latin*, true *French*, or true

*p* K. *Edw. Journal* Printed by Burnet, p. 43.

*q* L. 1. in Off. Arm.

*r* *Ashm. App.* n. 91. n. 121. *Vinc. MS.* in Officio Armorum, n. 92. p. 332. & ibidem n. 151. p. 95, 96. *Hollingshead's Hist.* p. 1348.

*s* *Hist. of Garter*, p. 302.

*t* *MS. Anton. a Wood*, in *Mus. Ashm.* n. 33. p. 24.

*u* *Hist. of St. Pauls*, p. 51. That the Figures are transposed, see *Ecclesia Sancti Pauli illustrata* per H. H. London 1633, and *Stow's Survey of London*, p. 647 b.

*x* 23 H. xi. penes me, p. 559 b.

*y* *Vitell. F. 5.* in *Bibl. Cotton.* 3 *Eliz.* the xvi day of July was Christened *Robard Dethyke* the Sune of Sir *Gylbart Dethyke* Garter in the paryche of Sant

*Gylls* without *Crepulgate*, and the Chyrche hangyd with Clothes of Arrys, and the Cloth of State and strod with grene ryffes, and Sir *William Huet* depute for my Lord of *Shrovsber*, and Mr. *Care* Depute for my Lord *Honsdon*, and my Lade *Sakesfeld* the Queen Depute, and after wafurs and Epacrafe grett plente and myche peping ther, and my Lade *Yorke* bare my Lady Deputes trayne, and so hem to here plasse and had a banket.

In Rot. Strenarum 4 *Eliz.* in pergam. Signed by the Queen. Gyven by the Queen Her Majesty, 15 Julii Anno 3<sup>o</sup> to the Christenyng of Sir - - - *Dethyke* alias Garter King at Arms his Child oone gilt Cup with a Cover poz. xix.oz. qrt. di.

*z* P. 37. penes me, p. 102 a b.



*English*; but not being his Contemporary in the College, he might take this disadvantageous Report by Hearsay; and as Tradition sometimes magnifies the Truth, so it frequently also diminishes from real Worth; but though 'tis almost impossible at this Distance of Time to determine whether there were any just Grounds for this coarse Censure, 'tis certain however several Collections of this Officer are still remaining, relating mostly to Arms and Pedigrees, which are Evidences of his Industry.

He bore Argent a Fesse vary Or and Gules between three Waterbudsgets S. with a Muller Or on a Crescent Az. for difference, which he used in that his Grandfather (according to some Pedigrees) was the second Son of the sixth Son of Sir *William Dethick* of *Dethick Hall* in *Derbyshire*: But when *Ralph Brook York* Herald engaged in avowed Enmities with the Son of this *Garther* and his Successor also in this Office, they mutually charged each other not only with changing their true Surnames, but with endeavouring to engraft themselves into Families from which they were no ways descended, and neither of them made any Justification of himself in this Particular, that this Editor ever saw. *Brook*, in an Action in *Star-chamber*, styles him *Dethike alias Derike*, and according to his <sup>a</sup> Narrative *Robert Derike a Dutchman* came into *England* with *Erasmus Crukenor* Yeoman Armorer to *H. VIII.* and forged Armory for that King at the Wages of 10 *d.* by the Day, who by *Agatha*, Daughter of *Matthias Leyendecker* a Dutch Barber dwelling at *Acon* in *Germany* (who likewise made Armour for the King) had three Sons, *Derick*, *Matthew*, and *Gilbert*; which latter in 33 [it should be 34] *H. VIII.* procured for his Brothers and himself a Denization by Act of Parliament, and that he, by the Daughter of one *Leonard* a Dutch Shoemaker at the Sign of the red Cock in *St. Martin's-Lane*, was Father of Sir *William*. This Paper being in a publick Library is inserted here in an Historical way only, though there are some collateral Circumstances that seem to support it; for Sir *Gilbert* is in other Books said to be the <sup>b</sup> Son of an Armorer, and even in those Pedigrees wherein his Genealogy is derived from the Family seated at *Dethick-Hall*, his Father is there named to be Steward to *Edmond* Earl of *Suffolk*, and Yeoman of the Armory to *Hen. VIII.* and <sup>c</sup> *Matthew Derike* is in another place mentioned as one of the King's Majesty's Armors.

VIII. On the Day that Sir *Gilbert* died, some Knights of the *Garther* were installed at *Windfor*, where *Cook Clarenceux* executed the Functions of this Place, and from that Time during the Interregnum (if that Word may be inoffensively used with reference to this Kingship of Arms which continued empty near eighteen Months;) this *Clarenceux* was permitted to act, till this Office was conferred by <sup>d</sup> Patent, dated 21 April 28 Eliz.

1586,

<sup>a</sup> Julius E. 2. in Bibl. Cotton.

<sup>b</sup> MS in Mus. Ashm. n. 1133.

<sup>c</sup> 34 L. 10 penes me, p. 186.

<sup>d</sup> Regina omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem. Scia-  
tis quod cum non sit novum, sed jamdiu ab an-  
tiquis temporibus usitatum, quod inter ceteros

officiarios & Ministros, quos principum lateri-  
bus, & pro eorum magnificentia atq; gloria adhæ-  
rere decet, eorum, quibus Officii Armorum cura  
committitur, copiam habere deceat, ut nec tem-  
pus bellorum, neque pacis sine convenientibus &  
aptis Ministris debeat præteriri: Nos igitur con-  
siderantes



1586, on *William Dethick*, second Son of the preceeding *Garter*; then about 44 Years of Age; he was first admitted into the College by the Title of *Rougecroix* Pursivant in 9 *Eliz.* and in that Capacity attended upon his Father to *Vienna*, from whence he travelled into *Italy*, and afterwards was sent into *France*, *Flanders* and *Germany*, and was advanced to the Place of *Tork* Herald in 18 *Eliz.* wherein he misbehaved himself in an unprecedented Manner, by giving and exemplifying Arms by *Patents* under his Seal, which being detected after he was thus settled in the highest Preferment in the Office of Arms, was, however justly, made a criminal Article against him, as being an evident Invasion of the Province of *Norroy*, and of the Rights also of the *Garter* for the Time being. The granting him this Title of *Garter* might expose him to the Envy of *Clarenceux*, *Norroy*, and *Lancaster* his *Seniors* in this Fraternity, who upon the Disappointments in their Pretensions, or out of Envy, might be induced to take all Opportunities of opposing him, and accordingly they immediately raised a great Outcry against the Clause inserted in his Pa-

fiderantes fidelia & laudabilia servicia, quæ dilectus servus noster *Willielmus Dethicke* Armiger alias *Tork* unus Heraldorum nostrorum nobis impendit & impendere intendit, ac ejus experientiam, diversarum regionum perlustrationem, variarum linguarum Scientiam, & in hiis quæ ab hujusmodi officario requiruntur, notitiam, ipsum *Willielmum Dethicke* in principalem regem Armorum Anglicorum & præcipuum officarium Armorum incliti nostri ordinis *Garterii* de Gratia nostra speciali ac certa scientia & mero motu nostris ereximus, fecimus, constituimus, ordinavimus, creavimus, & coronavimus, ac per præsentem pro nobis, heredibus, & successoribus nostris erigimus, facimus, constituimus, ordinamus, creamus, & coronamus, ac officium illud, necnon nomen imposuimus, & per præsentem imponimus *Garter*: Quod cum stilo, titulo, libertatibus, privilegiis, præeminentiis, & commoditatibus, hujusmodi officio convenientibus, concordantibus, & pertinentibus ab antiquo consuetis damus & concedimus, & ipsum in eisdem realiter investimus & coronamus per præsentem, Habendum, occupandum, & exercendum officium illud, ac nomen, stilum, titulum, libertates, privilegia, præeminencias, commoditates prædicto eidem *Willielmo Dethicke* *Garter* durante vita sua, cum omnibus juribus, proficiis, commoditatibus, emolumentis quibuscumque; necnon visitandi & insignia Armorum claris viris concedendi, ac cætera omnia & singula, quæ dicto incumbunt Officio principalis regis Armorum Anglicorum, & præcipui Officarii Armorum incliti nostri ordinis *Garterii* seu inesse debent de jure, vel consuetudine qualitercumque spectantia, debita seu pertinentia faciendum exercendum & exequendum, in tam amplis modo & forma, prout *Gilbertus Dethicke* miles nuper *Garter* pater prædicti *Willielmi*, aut aliquis alius antehac occupans Officium prædictum habuit, & percepit, habuerunt & ceperunt, Et ulterius concessimus & per præsentem concedimus præfato *Willielmo Dethicke* *Garter* in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum & præcipuum officarium Armorum incliti nostri ordinis *Garterii* (ut præfertur) erecto, pro exercitio Officii prædicti quadraginta libras per Annum pro vadiis & feodis Officii prædicti, percipiendas de exitibus & proficiis parvæ Custumæ prædictæ in portu prædicto a festo Sancti Michaelis Archangeli ultimo præterito ab Anno Millesimo quingentesimo octogesimo quarto ante

datam præsentium & sic deinceps pro tempore existen. ad terminos Paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per æquales portiones, necnon talem liberaturam & vesturam annualem, qualem aliquis principalis Rex Armorum. *Anglia* aliquo tempore antehac habuit & percepit, in vel pro eodem Officio, deliberandam annuatim eidem *Willielmo* per manus Custodis sive Clerici magnæ Garderobæ nostræ, habendum & annuatim percipiendum eidem *Willielmo Dethicke* dictas quadraginta libras de exitibus & proficiis provenientibus de parva Custumâ nostrâ in portu Civitatis nostræ *Londoniæ* per manus Custumariorum, Collectorum, sive Receptorum ibidem pro tempore existentium ad Festa Paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per æquales portiones, ac etiam dictam liberaturam — — — & vesturam annualem ad magnam Garderobam nostram heredum & successorum nostrorum per manus Custodis sive Clerici ejusdem pro tempore similiter existentis, ad terminos prædictos consuetos; Eo quod expressa mentio. In cuius rei, &c. Teste Regina apud *Westmonasterium* xxi<sup>o</sup> die Aprilis Anno Regni Regine *Elizabethæ* vicesimo octavo.

Per breve de privato Sigillo.

*E. Bruce*, Sir *William Dethick*.

Vacat istud Irrotulamentum istarum literarum patentium, pro eo quod decimo die *Decembris* Anno Regni Domini Regis *Jacobi* quarto, infra nominatus *Willielmus Dethick* venit coram eodem dicto Rege in Cancellaria sua personaliter, & istas literas patentes, ac omnia & singula in eisdem contenta in manus ejusdem Domini Regis pure, sponte, & absolute sursum reddidit, & restituit Cancellandas: ideo istæ literæ patentes unacum Irrotulamento earundem vacuantur, Cancellantur, & omnino dampnantur.

*e* Pat. 9 *Eliz.* p. 6. xi. Febr.

*f* *Albm.* p. 394.

*g* MS. penes Nich. Jekyll de Castle Hedingham, p. 105. *Wever's Fun. Mon.* p. 676.

*b* Pat. 12 *Eliz.* p. 5. m. 13. 24 Martii, Rymer, vol. 15. p. 679.

*i* H. 5. penes me, p. 424. *Causes why he was put from his Office: There are several Copies in different Libraries.*

*k* *Cerem.* vol. 3. in Off. Arm. p. 3.

Patent



tent, "*Necnon visitandi & Armorum insignia claris viris donandi*," as if he had unduly obtained that Addition by Surprise, Management, or some Artifice put upon *Yetzworth* one of the Clerks of the Signet; in this Accusation several other Officers of the College joined, and particularly Mr. *Glover Somerset*, who was his Senior in the Office of an Herald though Junior to him as a Pursuivant, concurred with a distinguishing Eagerness and Animosity, by those Applications his Admission by the usual Oath into the Chapter of the Order then soon held was deferred, which compelled him to justify this Clause, and himself in the Method of procuring it by a <sup>m</sup> Representation to *Walsingham* Secretary of State, and Chancellor of the Order, wherein he insists on these Rights as inherent in this Office in pursuance of the Signets of *Hen. VII* and *VIII*, the Constitutions declared in the Chapter of the *Garter*, and by ancient Precedents, and then he expresses his Wonder, that *Clarenceux* and *Norroy* should take the Liberty to offer such an Objection against the Insertion of these Words, when Clauses of the same Import had been so lately added in the Patents of these respective Officers, "*Literas Patentes Armorum Claris viris, insignia, arma & Cristas, cæteraq; alia Nobilitatis monumenta, quam visitandi & corrigendi arma*," and having taken notice of the concurrent, or rather reverfionary Patent of *Norroy*, not long before given to *Glover*, he avers that *Segar* then *Portcullis* engrossed the Bill whereon his Patent passed, which though probably might be no otherwise mentioned by him than as it tended to the Vindication of *Yetzworth*, yet ought not to be omitted here, since this same Person afterwards opposed him, as will be shewn, with the greatest Activity and Violence. Some Books acquaint us, that this Memorial exhibited against him was so far countenanced, that the Original Patent was taken from him. If that was the Fact, 'tis however certain that at the next succeeding Feast of the Order, the <sup>n</sup> Sovereign expressly ordered the usual Oath to be administered to him; and we find the Salary contained in this Patent was paid him during the Queen's Reign according to the Tenour of it; but whenever he afterwards fell under Difficulties, the Addition of this Clause, and the Want of a formal Creation were repeated as grand Objections to him; notwithstanding this his Admission in Chapter had been <sup>o</sup> solemnly determined by a Judgment in the *King's-Bench* to be a full Legal Investiture.

He was a Gentleman of an haughty warm Spirit, which without being quickened by this early Opposition, was too apt to be suddenly enflamed; he retained so keen a Memory and Resentment of this Usage, that (if the Representations of his Contemporaries in the Fraternity may be credited) he treated them frequently with intemperate vehement Language, accompanied sometimes with Blows, a Behaviour which must be owned to be contrary to the very Nature of this Profession. It may not be possible at this distance to determine with Certainty, whether this

<sup>l</sup> H. 5. penes me, p. 419.

<sup>m</sup> H. 3. penes me, p. 1204, in his own Writing.

<sup>n</sup> Lib. Cærul. Ordinis Garterii 29 Eliz. Tandem de Garteri Regis Armorum juramento anno superiori omisso nunc demum faciendo, Suprema

munificentissime concessit, &c. Garterus ibidem intravocatus, & juramento per decanum exhibito de more admissus est.

<sup>o</sup> Leonard 1 Rep. p. 248, &c.



Confederacy against him, and the constant Oppositions he met with did not render him too magisterial and imperious in his Conduct within the College, or whether the Provocations and personal Affronts which his Adversaries studiously gave him would have been tolerable by a Person of much more Phlegm.

Within few Years after his Promotion to this Place, Mr. *Brooke* was admitted into the Society, who not only joined with his Opponents, but delighted himself by declaring a profest Enmity to him. This Person was of a fierce, impetuous Temper, unwearied and implacable in Malice, who to gratify his Appetite of Revenge stuck at no Design or Practice, how vile soever, though by the compassing thereof, he brought himself into the Danger of Punishment, of which his insidious black Contrivance to surprize and entrap *Segar* the succeeding *Garter* will be a lasting Evidence. Hence there arose perpetual Animosities and Discords in this Fraternity, which broke out into Actions and Law Suits in most Courts; and stopp'd not there, for Memorials and Remonstrances in Writing were handed about of each others Infirmities and Defects in Life, which were drawn with great Acrimony, and their mutual Hatred became so mortal, that the Breaches could never be made up; for they rejoiced constantly to combate each other at the same Weapons, and by all Methods to meditate each others Ruin. The Event of these Contests on both Sides ought to be an Example of Caution to succeeding Officers, for though *Brooke* first saw *Dethick* deprived of his Freehold by a summary Proceeding which will be soon related, yet he had little Reason to triumph upon it, for within a short Time this Precedent was turned upon himself in as large an Extent, wherein he deserved little Pity, if any be due to a Member of a College who bends all his Wit and Skill to set up new Schemes and Systems contrary to the antient beaten Paths, with new Models of Amendments and Abatements of old Orders and Discipline; for it will scarce be lamented if premeditated Designs to crush others recoil upon the Head of the projecting Boutefeu to his Disgrace and Confusion. *Brooke* was ousted likewise of the Freehold of his Office by the same Power to which he had appealed against *Dethick*, and the Cause assigned for it was his Insufficiency of Knowledge requisite for an Officer of Arms, which Charge in Truth is somewhat surprizing, after the Books published by him, which shew at least that he laboured with Industry according to the Measure of his Literature. The Experience of latter Times hath shewn us other Examples of such Retaliations, when Innovations have been set on foot, where the Contrivers have suffered at length by their own Inventions; Favour hath and will be found fluctuating, which these two fierce Contendants found so sensibly, that both of them were at different times driven to recur to the Protection of the Common Law for Writs of Assize, upon which *Dethick* had beneficial Terms granted him, and *Brooke* was re-instated in his Office, and died in Possession of it.

But to proceed: This Office of *Garter* had not been long conferred upon *Dethick*, till the Violence of his Passion prevailed so far over his Reason, that to wreak his Spleen upon Mr. *Glover Somerset*, and to bring him into Disfavour, he with the greatest Indiscretion signed and exhibited



an Information against him for declaring his Opinion in a private Conversation, and possibly in Confidence of Friendship too, that after the Queen's Demise the Right of Succession to the Crown of this Realm was in the Issue of *Hen. VII.* which at that Juncture for Reasons of State was a nice and critical Point to be asserted: This hasty imprudent Action in his Conduct was doubtless the Recourse of all the Troubles brought on him in the succeeding Reign; for though King *James* conferred upon him the Honour of Knighthood on the 13th of *May*, just before his Coronation in the first Hurry and Rapture of universal Joy, yet the original Information which he had given against *Glover* was very soon laid before the King by his Adversaries, with the aggravating Inference, that he was no *p* Well Willer (as 'tis expressed) to his Majesty's succeeding Right; so that in the Month of *January* following a *q* Bill passed under the Signet for advancing *Segar Somerset* to this Office of *Garter*, upon which Foundation, without the Authority of the Great Seal (which it may be reasonably believed was stopt by some Caveat) this Person under the Appellation of *r* *Rex Armorum Ordinis*, adventured to carry the Ensigns of the *Garter* to the King of *Denmark* on the 23d of *June* that Year; but Sir *William* soon after this Disseizin became reinstated; for on the 8th of *September* he was joined in a *s* Commission by his proper Stile to invest the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, though in the Execution thereof he fell under a Load of new Censures, which Investiture was performed upon the 6th of *Novemb.* 1603. Upon his return home, a Warrant passed the Signet Office in *May* 1604, to pay yearly to *William Segar*, therein named *Garter*, the Charges of the Escutcheons for the Knight's Companions, and *Dethick* was forbidden to wear his Coat on *t* *Christmas-Day* 1604, and in a Court *u* *Marshall* (as 'tis termed) held on the 26th of *January* following, the Lords Commissioners without any Summons, Libel, Answer, Evidence, or other judiciary Form whatever, declared his Majesty's Pleasure, That Sir *William Dethick* upon some approved Misdemeanors (for these are the Words without descending to any special Matter) committed in the Execution of his Office of *Garter* should be put from it, and that *William Segar Norroy* should be created thereto, a very summary Method to oust a Person of his Freehold without Process, Articles, or Proof, for the Power of that Court how extensive soever, is tied up to the Direction of Law: There is an *x* Instrument entituled, *Causes why Sir William Dethick* was put from his Office, drawn with a Strain of much Bitterness by some private Person, because it frequently speaks in the singular Number, containing several Articles of a very mixed Nature, whereof a great Number no ways relate to or affect the Execution of his Patent, and consequently could not extend to the Forfeiture of it.

It contains a strict Inquisition into all the casual Actions in the different Periods of his Life, that could admit of ill Constructions, and are

*p* The Proofs of these Points may be seen in the above-mentioned Paper, stiled, *Causes why he was removed from his Office.*

*q* Signet Book kept in the Office at Whitehall, January 1603, The Office of *Garter* to Will. Seagar late *Norroy*, and on 7th Febr. following a Warrant to

Will. Seagar *Garter* for publication of the degradation of the late Lord Cobham.

*r* Ashm. App. n. 70.

*s* Ashm. App. n. 71.

*t* Faustina E. 1. in bibl. Cotton.

*u* J. 25 in Off. Arm. p. 12.

*x* H. 5. penes me, p. 424.



lumped together in an accumulative manner; such are, the Charge of his Undutifulness in some Instances to his Father, his Unkindness to his elder Brother, who had been both long dead, his Disposition to Fighting, and among several other Accusations of the like Stamp, the Information exhibited by him against *Glover Somerset*, who had been then also long laid in his Grave in Peace, was urged in strong Terms, and after this long List 'tis alledged several other Matters were omitted by reason of the King's Pardon, which, as 'tis there expressed, intended to exempt him from corporal Punishment only, and not to take away the Faults or the Remembrance of them, and then this Paper concludes with a Narrative of his Behaviour in carrying the Order to the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, which was subsequent to this Pardon.

Sir *William* was a Person of Courage and Firmness, and could not be frightened into tame Submissions, and therefore drew a Petition directed to the King's Majesty and Lords in Parliament assembled in *Febr.* 1605, setting forth his Deprivation from all Profits without Cause known, or Offence proved by Law, praying Justice in the Name of the Almighty, the Honour of the King's Majesty, Preservation of the Laws of the Realm, and the Power of the great Seal, and annexed thereto the 29th and 14th Chapters of *Magna Charta*, and the Statutes of 13 R. 2. c. 2. 5 E. III. c. 9. 25 E. III. c. 4. 38 E. III. 42 E. III. 2 E. III. 18 E. III. c. 3. It doth not indeed appear whether this Instrument was presented, but 'tis certain he had the Resolution in the following *October* to bring an *Assize* for this Office in the Court of Common Pleas, upon which Legal Application for Justice advantageous Offers of Pensions were made him on Condition he would submit and surrender, with severe Threatnings if he stood out, all which Expedients he rejected, till at last upon the Request of the King himself (as 'tis fully set forth on <sup>a</sup> Record) he complied, and instead

<sup>y</sup> Ibid. p. 429, 431.

<sup>z</sup> *Plea Roll*, Mich. 3 Jac. n. 104.

<sup>a</sup> Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem. Cum Domina *Elizabeth* nuper Regina Angliæ per literas suas Patentes sub magno Sigillo suo Angliæ confectas gerentes datam apud Westm. vicesimo primo die Aprilis Anno Regni sui vicesimo octavo, pro Consideratione in eisdem literis patentibus expressa & specificata erexerit, fecerit, constituerit, ordinaverit, creaverit, & coronaverit Dilectum Servientem suum *Willielmum Detbick* Armigerum alias *Torke* tunc unum Heraldorum dictæ Reginæ (modo Militem) in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum & præcipuum Officiarium Armorum incliti Ordinis *Garterii*, ac Officium illud, necnon nomen imposuerit, *Garter*, quod cum stilo, titulo, libertatibus, privilegiis, præhementiis, & commoditatibus, hujusmodi officio convenientibus concordantibus, pertinentibus, & ab antiquo consuetis dederit, & concesserit, & ipsum in eisdem realiter investiverit, & coronaverit, per easdem literas patentes Habendum & exercendum officium illud, ac nomen, stylum, titulum, libertates, privilegia, præhementias, commoditates prædictas eidem *Willielmo Detbick Garter* durante vita sua, cum omnibus juribus, proficiis, commoditatibus, emolumentis quibuscunq; necnon visitandi & insignia armorum claris viris concedendi, ac cætera omnia & singula quæ dicto incumbunt officio principalis Regis Ar-

morum Anglicorum & præcipui officarii Armorum incliti sui Ordinis *Garter*, seu inesse debeant de jure, vel consuetudine, qualitercunque spectantia, debita, seu pertinentia faciendum exercendum & exequendum in tam amplis modo & forma, prout *Gilbertus Detbick* Miles nuper *Garter* pater prædicti *Willielmi*, aut aliquis alius antehac occupans officium prædictum habuit & percepit, habuerunt & perceperunt: Et ulterius per easdem literas suas patentes concesserit præfato *Willielmo Detbicke Garter* in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum & præcipuum Officiarium Armorum incliti sui Ordinis *Garterii* (ut præfertur) erecto pro exercitio officii prædicti quadraginta libras per Annum pro vadiis & feodis officii prædicti percipiendas de exitibus & proficiis parvæ Custumæ suæ in portu Civitatis suæ *London* per manus Custumariorum Collectorum sive Receptorum Custumæ prædictæ in portu prædicto, a Festo Sancti Michaelis Archangeli tunc ultimo præterito ab anno Millesimo quingentesimo octogesimo quarto ante datam prædictarum literarum patentium, & sic deinceps pro tempore existentium ad Terminos Paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per equales portiones Necnon talem liberaturam & vesturam annualem, qualem aliquis principalis Rex Armorum Anglicorum aliquo tempore antehac habuit aut percepit in vel pro eodem officio deliberandam annuatim eidem *Willielmo* per manus Custodis sive Clerici magnæ



stead of Fourty Pounds yearly Salary, having that Annuity increased to Two Hundred Pounds during his Life, together with an Exemption from all Taxes, he resigned his Office, and surviving it in a private Station about 8 Years died in 1612 aged Seventy, and was buried in St. Pauls with an <sup>b</sup> Inscription on his Monument. After this Retirement from the College, the natural Warmth of his Temper did not wholly abate, for it subjected him to a Prosecution in the Ecclesiastical Court for giving opprobrious Terms and Blows to a <sup>c</sup> Clergyman.

It doth not appear what Answer or Defence was made by *Dethick* to this long Impeachment, but whatever real Faults he might have, yet out of a Principle of common Honesty and Love to Justice, the Editor thinks himself obliged to observe, that this *Garter* was very active and diligent in his Employment, and in spite of all Calumny and Detraction, must be allowed a Person of a good Capacity, Abilities and Industry; he had travelled into foreign Countries, and was well skilled in their Languages, and deserved the Character early given him by Mr. *Camden*, of being a Gentleman very <sup>d</sup> studious in every Thing relating to Honour and Nobility, a Testimony continued in the Edition of *Britannia* published after the Time of this his Resignation; which Attestation of this Learned Author is unexceptionable, because he was a competent Judge of the Merits of a Person with whom he had long conversed in the Society of An-

na Garderobæ suæ. Habendum & annuatim percipiendum eidem *Willielmo Dethick* dictas quadraginta libras de exitibus & proficuis provenientius de parva Custuma sua in portu Civitatis suæ London per manus Custumariorum Collectorum sive Receptorum ibidem pro tempore existentium ad Festa Paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per equales portiones, ac etiam dictam liberaturam & vesturam annualem ad magnam Garderobam suam, heredum, & successorum suorum per manus Custodis sive Clerici ejusdem pro tempore similiter existentis ad terminos predictos consuetos prout in eisdem literis patentibus plenius continetur: *Quas quidem literas patentes, ac Officium prædictum, ac omnia in eisdem literis patentibus contenta & specificata eidem Willielmus Dethick Miles ad Rogatum & Requisitionem nostram nobis in Cancellaria nostra sponte sursum reddidit, & gratis dedit cancellandas & ibidem Cancellatæ existunt, ut certam inde habemus notitiam.* Sciatis igitur, quod nos tam in Consideratione sursum redditionis dictarum literarum patentium, quam pro diversis aliis causis & considerationibus nos ad presens moventibus, de gratia nostra speciali, ac ex certa Scientia, & mero motu nostris dedimus, & concessimus ac per præsentis pro nobis, heredibus, & successoribus nostris, damus & concedimus eidem *Willmo Dethicke* Militi quandam Annuitatem sive annualem pensionem ducentarum librarum legalis monetæ Angliæ, Habendam, gaudendam & annuatim percipiendam eandem annuitatem, sive pensionem ducentarum librarum per Annum eidem *Willmo Dethicke* Militi, & Assignatis suis a festo Natalis Domini ultimo ante datam præsentium præterito ad terminum & pro termino vitæ naturalis ipsius *Willmi Dethicke* Militis de Thesauo nostro, heredum & successorum nostrorum ad Receptam Scaccarii nostri Westm. heredum, & successorum nostrorum per manus Thesaurarii & Camerariorum nostrorum, heredum & successorum nostrorum ibidem pro tempore existentium ad quatuor anni terminos usuales videlt. ad Festa Annunciationis beatæ

*Mariæ Virginis, Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, Sancti Michaelis Archangeli & Natalis Domini per equales portiones solvend. Et ulterius de uberiori gratia nostra ac ex certa scientia & mero motu nostris pro consideratione prædicta concessimus, ac per præsentis pro nobis, heredibus & successoribus nostris concedimus præfato Willmo Dethicke Militi, quod ipse idem Willmus durante vita sua naturali, sit exemptus, quietus, & exoneratus de et ab omnibus subsidiiis, decimis, quinto-decimis, releviis, contributionibus, taxationibus, donationibus, concessionibus, & benevolentiiis, ac de & ab omni solutione eorundem, ac generaliter ab omnibus aliis oneribus tam tempore belli quam pacis, ac etiam, ab omnibus tolneris, finibus, Inquisitionibus ac demandis in omnibus mercatis, & aliis locis quibuscunq; in tam amplis modo & forma prout præantea exemptus, quietus, & exoneratus fuit, virtute officii sui prædicti, quocumq; Statuto, Actu, Provisione, proclamatione, usu aut aliqua alia re, causa, vel materia quacunq; in contrarium inde in aliquo non obstantibus. Eo quod expressa mencio, &c. In cujus rei, &c. Teste Rege apud Westm. xi<sup>o</sup> die Decembr. Anno Regni Regis Jacobi Angliæ, &c. quarto.*

Per breve de privato Sigillo.

<sup>b</sup> Dugd. *Hist. of St. Pauls*, p. 53. Hic requiescit in Domino *Willielmus Dethick*, eques Auratus, filius & hæres *Gilberti Dethick* equitis aurati: Qui ambo fuerunt *Garterii* principales Reges Armorum Angliæ. Hic Anno 1584. ætatis suæ 48. Ille Anno 1612. ætatis suæ 70. in Domino obdormierunt, expectantes resurrectionem per *Jesum Christum* Salvatorem nostrum.

<sup>c</sup> Godbolt's Case, 208.

<sup>d</sup> *Britan.* p. 208. *Gulielmus Dethicus* principalis Armorum rex *Garterii* nomine notus, omnium quæ ad honorem & Nobilitatis rationem spectant Studiosissimus.

triquaries,



tiquaries, of which Sir *William* was a Member, and accommodated them with the Freedom of his House for their Place of Meeting, and with whom he had been also a <sup>e</sup> Collegue many Years in the Office of Arms, during which Time we do not find this Mr. *Camden Clarenceux* joining with the other Officers in any of their Representations against him, though when his Removal was first attempted, this Place of *Garter* was <sup>j</sup> offered to Mr. *Camden*, which would have been some seeming Compensation for the unusual Severities of these Proceedings; but he either disliking the Force and Violence of them against a Gentleman whom he knew to be worthy of that Trust, or out of Love to the Repose and Calmness of his Life, which he would not have disturbed by any Controversies, or some other Motive, refused the Acceptance of it with much Aversion according to the Innocency of his Manners, which however blameless could not secure this peaceable learned *Clarenceux* from having a Petition exhibited against him, as he words it, <sup>g</sup> “*Sine die, sine consule, sine nomine,*” such hath been the epidemical Fatality and Phrenzy of Contentions in that College, which like some other Societies hath suffered most by the Divisions between its own Members, by the Compliances of some, the Designs and fallacious Expedients of others; and thereto is owing the Dilapidation, if that Term may be used, of several Rights of that Fraternity.

The Charge which brought him into fresh Difficulties after this Pardon is thus stated by <sup>b</sup> *Segar*, “That being joined with the Lord *Spencer* in the Commission for carrying the *Garter* to the Duke of *Wirtemberg* as a Thing incident to his Office, he took so much Advantage of the Word *Legatos*, as to assume the Title of an Ambassador, setting up his Arms and Stile over his Lodgings in that Journey.”

The Publisher doth not know what Answer he made to this Accusation, and though the Title and Scutcheons here mentioned were Matters of Shew and Appearance only, yet it will be allowed he was inexcusably mad as well as vain, if he rashly presumed to run into any Novelty which could not be justified by the Authority of former Precedents; since he could not be ignorant how obnoxious he was, which ought to have put him upon his Guard, and having several times attended on his Father in the like Messages with the Ensigns of the Order, he could not pretend Ignorance of the former Practices in such Cases. This Insolence, if it was one, is however so obscurely worded, that it is some Difficulty to fix the Point upon which this Excess here charged upon him is certainly grounded; for it could not be hereby intended that it was a Crime in him being only *Garter* to assume the Style of an Ambassador, because a Baron was deputed in the same Commission of Legation with him; since his Predecessors, and even Heralds of Arms have been frequently joined in Embassies with the highest Spiritual and Temporal Peers in Matters of the greatest Consequence, and in their proper Ranks signed Leagues and Treaties in the Capacities of Ambassadors, of which the Examples are without Number: Neither can it mean or import that the subject Matter of this Message rendered it im-

<sup>e</sup> *Smith* vita Rob. Cotton, p. 7.  
<sup>f</sup> *Faustina* in bibl. Cotton.

<sup>g</sup> *Camdeni* Epist. n. 288, 289.  
<sup>b</sup> *Faustina* E. 1. bibl. Cotton.



proper for him to have the Character of an Ambassador in that respect, for 'tis expressly the Right of this Officer to be joined with any <sup>i</sup> Ambassador that is sent to deliver the Ensigns of the Order, and this very Title of Ambassador hath been expressly given in <sup>k</sup> Commissions to several former *Garters* employed in carrying the Order to foreign Princes, who in their Certificates of the Reception of these Ensigns own their <sup>l</sup> Acceptance of them from these *Garters* in the Quality of Ambassadors, and in the Absence of *Garter*, an Herald and others have been constituted <sup>m</sup> *Commissarios*, *Oratores*, *Procuratores*, *Legatos* & *Nuncios speciales* for this Purpose; and indeed it is a Matter of some Astonishment that *Segar* should make this Accusation, who (which is memorable) some Months before this time, while he invaded this same Office, being constituted an <sup>n</sup> Ambassador with the Earl of *Rutland* to the King of *Denmark* in the like Message, acted so far in that Character as to proceed in <sup>o</sup> Breast with that Earl to the first Audience: But since *Dethick* is said to take Advantage of the Word *Legatos* in the Commission, 'tis necessary to insert it at large in the <sup>p</sup> Margin, on which he grounded this Claim to the Title of an Ambassador. Since the Custom of instituting Resident, Ordinary, or Leidger Ambassadors, (which is not of greater <sup>q</sup> Antiquity than about the Year 1500,) a new Doctrine hath prevailed as to the Form of Words, which constitute an Ambassador, who being to represent the Person of the Sovereign, which Agents are not thought to do, it is now judged necessary that some particular technical Words allowed to import that Signification are absolutely required in the Commission or Letters of Credence to convey this Quality and Power of an Ambassador; which Title in the present

<sup>i</sup> See Ashmole's *Hist.* p. 305, 392. 393.

<sup>k</sup> Ashm. *Append.* n. 72, 73, 74, 75, &c.

<sup>l</sup> Ibid. n. 114, 115, 116, 117. *Rymer*, vol. 12. p. 528.

<sup>m</sup> See above, p. 40, note i. &c.

<sup>n</sup> Ashm. *App.* n. 70.

<sup>o</sup> Ashm. *Hist.* p. 399.

<sup>p</sup> Jacobus Dei Gratia, Angliæ, Scotiæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Rex, fidei Defensor, &c. Universis & singulis præsentibus has literas nostras visuris, inspecturis, vel auditoris, salutem. Cum illustrissimus Princeps, ac Dominus, Dominus Fredericus Dux Wirtembergensis, & Tekenfis, Comes Montis belegardi, Dominus in Haydenheim, Consanguineus, & affinis noster charissimus, plurimarum, heroicarum virtutum splendore, & gratia Nobilitatus, Orbem Christianum fama nominis sui impleverit, eaq; jam ante aliquot annos animum nostrum accenderit, ut eam amicitiam in persona ejus, melioribus quibus potuimus Officiis, cultiorem redderemus, quam hæreditario quodam jure sanctissimæ memoriæ Nobilissimi majores & antecessores nostri nobis commendarunt, nullis autem Officiis erga tam charum Principem satisfaciētes nobis, cum nuper elegerimus (conspirantibus omnibus omnium suffragiis) in illustrissimi Ordinis nostri Garterii nobilissimam Societatem quo arctiori benevolentiz vinculo (si fieri posset) eum in dies singulos nobis magis magisque conjungeremus, utpote Principem vere Christianum, in cujus amicitia vel maxime cupimus conquirere, summoque desiderio aventes, ut quod non nisi auspiciatissime incepimus ad optatum finem perducatur, Sciatis, quod nos de fidelitate, prudentia & diligentia præ-

nobilis viri, plurimum nobis chari, Domini Roberti Spencer de Wormleiton, & spectabilis viri Gulielmi Dethick equitis, Garterii, Regis Armorum Ordinis, plurimum confidentes, ipsos nostros veros & indubitatos Legatos, Procuratores, & Oratores speciales assignavimus, fecimus, & constituimus, assignamus, facimus, & constituimus per præsentibus, dantes eis potestatem, auctoritatem, & mandatum speciale, ad præfatum consanguineum nostrum charissimum proficiscendi, eiq; deferendi, & donandi, nostro nomine & pro nobis, subligaculum & Trabeam, & reliqua vestimenta, insigniaque illustrissimi Ordinis nostri Garterii, per nos ad præfens ad illum transmissa, ceteraque peragendi quam officiosissime religiosissimeque poterunt, quæ ad honoratissimi illius Ordinis decus, & ornamentum quoquo modo putabunt pertinere, haud aliter ac si ipsi faceremus, si præsentibus essemus. In cujus rei testimonium has literas nostras, manu nostra subscriptas, Sigillo dicti Ordinis nostri Garterii communiri fecimus. Datæ manerio nostro de Woodstock, decimo octavo die mensis Septembris, Anno Regni nostri Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ primo, & Scotiæ 37. 1603.

<sup>q</sup> *Grotius* de jure Belli & pacis l. 2. c. 18. §. 3. n. 2. calls it a new Custom. Chifflet ad vindic. Hispan. p. 421. ab annis duntaxat centum & quinquaginta Reges & Principes in Romana curia aliisq; Principum & Rerum publicarum aulis legatos ordinarios habuisse: primosque hujus consuetudinis Francos fuisse auctores. Daniel in his *Dedication of his Hist. of England* observes that Leidger Ambassadors were first employed abroad for Intelligence in the Reign of Hen. VII.



Case is allowed to be conferred on the Lord *Spencer* by this Term *Legatus*, though it is insinuated that Word ought not to have the same Effect as to *Dethick*, because, as 'tis darkly objected, he was so named in this Commission as *a Thing incident to his Office of Garter*; 'tis not very apparent how that Incident should disqualify him from the Usage of this Title, for it will not be asserted that it was so inseparably incident to him that he could have acted in this Investiture purely by Vertue of his Office without being impowered by a particular Commission, yet when such a Commission was thus granted, constituting this noble Lord and him *Legatos*, (which as to him was in pursuance of an inherent Right of his Office) *Dethick* however was censured for using the special Title of an Ambassador, and for setting up Lodging Scutcheons, which is an honorary Privilege belonging to all Ambassadors, both which, as 'tis suggested, this Lord was sufficiently authorized to do by this same joint Commission: Let us suppose then this *Garter* had been at that Time employed in other Services of the Crown, and instead of him any other Person or Persons of a superior or inferior Rank to this Lord *Spencer* had been substituted in this Commission, (for the Sovereign is not limited to a definite Number) it would have admitted probably no Controversy, whether such other Persons so nominated were not thereby complete Ambassadors, in as full an Extent as this Lord *Spencer*, and since *Garter* hath sometimes singly carried the Ensigns of this Order (as other individual Persons have done at different times) we may suppose for Argument sake, that *Dethick* had been sent alone to this Duke of *Wirtemberg* by such a Commission as was now granted, with the only Variation of placing the Singular instead of the Plural Number, in which Case in all probability his Right to the Character of an Ambassador would not have been called in question; but indeed this was a joint Commission without any several separate Powers, and to wave the Enquiry whether in the Absence of one of these *Legates*, the other could have strictly executed the Authority, 'tis certain that if the Accident of the Death of either of them had happened, this Commission would either have ceased of course, or the Powers might have been executed by the Survivor: If it should be imagined that it became vacated by this Contingency, it must be because each of them was joint in the Legation, and consequently participated equally in the Title of *Legates*; but if it subsisted, then it might have chanced to have devolved upon *Dethick*, who then would have been as perfect an Ambassador, as if the same had accrewed to this Lord by his Survivorship, unless it should be thought some sort of Difference, that *Dethick*, as incident to his Office, was to perform some particular Functions in the Investiture, and that such Operations so far derogated from the Dignity of an Ambassador, as even to cancel that Title given him before in the Commission; but that Conjecture seems unsatisfactory, because this Commission gives no Power to *Dethick* to act exclusive of this Lord, but the Tenour of it is Authorizing them jointly to

14 H. 6. To the King of Portugal. 21 H. 6. of Portugal 24 H. 6. Berthelot de Rivers to King  
to the King of Arragon. 22 H. 6. to Portugal, &c. of Naples 3 E. 4.  
J Gloucester Herald 5 H. 6. Fettiplace to King



deliver the Ensigns, and to do such other Things in this Investiture, which are specified to be of that Nature as the Sovereign would have done himself in Person, if he had been really present; and therefore the performing these Ceremonies is so far from degrading the Person who actually performs them from the Title of an Ambassador, that he is truly in that respect representing the Sovereign in the adequate Notion of an Ambassador, by doing what the Sovereign would have done himself in case he had been there: Besides if this Lord had been sent single, or if he could have acted either in the Absence, or upon the Death of *Dethick*, or if another Person or Persons had been joined in this Commission with this Lord instead of *Dethick*, then the Performance of these Ceremonies, which are supposed to be incident to the Office of *Garter*, and which according to the Notion here implied would have extinguished *Dethick's* Character of an Ambassador, must of course in either of these Circumstances have been finished by this Lord himself, or some of the Persons joined with him, which Actions are not pretended to operate by way of Abatement to this Lord or to any other Person, much less the defacing their Character of Ambassadors, so that a Person acting by Vertue of a proper Commission in a subject Matter incident to his Office loses the Essence of an Ambassador by Actions, which if any other Person had transacted in his stead, by Vertue of a Commission in the same Terms, he would have retained entire.

In these Solemnities of Investiture, when *Garter* is joined by Vertue of a Commission, that Instrument is first read, and the Ensigns being brought by him, he delivers them in Order to the first named in that Commission, and actually assists in putting them on the Knight Elect, and reads the proper *Admonitions*; these latter were heretofore thought more proper for the Province of an " Ecclesiastick, and for that Purpose, and to administer the Oath, a Clergyman was frequently constituted one of the Ambassadors, which Character was not thought to be in the least impaired in the Clergyman by these Administrations, much less by this means render'd a Nullity.

But then as to *Dethick's* Usage of Lodging Scutcheons in this Journey: Though the Ceremonials of most of the ancient Investitures are probably lost, yet we know that when, in 6 H. VII, Sir *Charles Somerset* and *John Writhe* then *Garter* were commissioned by the \* Words, *Veros & indubitatos Oratores, Commissarios, Legatos, Deputatos, & Nuncios,* to invest the Emperor *Maximilian*, this *Garter* in consequence thereof sat at Dinner with the Emperor at his Table, with his Scutcheon of Arms placed over his Head in the same manner as Sir *Charles Somerset* had, which was even after the Investiture had been finished, as appears from this Emperor's sitting in the whole Habit of the Order, and consequently in Strictness of Words that Embassy might be esteemed to be compleated.

\* Ashm. Hist. ch. 15. §. 3.

u Ibid. p. 392. to which may be added Christopher Urswick sent to the Duke of Calabria, see above, p. 40. note i. Mr. West to the Emperor 18 H. 7. Rymer, vol. 13. p. 35. Dr. Savage to the

King of Portugal, Rymer, vol. 12. p. 351, &c.

x Rymer, vol. 12. p. 403.

y See the Draught of it in Sculpture in Ashm. Hist. betw. p. 404 and 405.



Indeed this Charge against *Dethick* is laid in stronger Terms in the above-mentioned <sup>z</sup> Paper, though it is not therein intimated, whether he claimed any other ceremonious Respects than were shewn to the Lord *Spencer* in the Quality of an Ambassador, if he did, it was certainly an high pitch of Arrogancy, unless that Lord suffered any Diminution of the Rights: But if this *Dethick* imparted any Secrets to the King of *France* (which Charge is difficult to believe) he could not meet with too severe a Punishment. It must not be concealed, that there is something unusual in the Preliminaries to this Embassy; for though *Dethick* is joined in this Commission under the Great Seal of the *Garter*, yet in the Letter of <sup>a</sup> Credence his Name is omitted, to which Letter no Seal is mentioned to be affixed, and therefore it might only be under the Sign Manual: But whether he was wrong, and took this Title without any solid Foundation, or was too aspiring in using Lodging Scutcheons, or otherwise, the Publick hath reaped one Advantage from this his Journey; for upon his Instance, and from his Instructions, <sup>b</sup> *Cellius* Professor of Poetry and History at *Tubing*, published in *Latin* the Narrative of this Investiture, upon which Occasion this Sir *William* had a Copy of Verses in Print addressed to him; whereof the Collector hath seen no other Exemplar than that in his own Custody, annexed to that Book.

These reciprocal invective Accusations exhibited by these Officers are not published, since on a Principle of Charity it may be imagined that the Facts on which these mutual Charges of Immoralities were grounded might be wrested and exaggerated on all Hands, so that in Decency a Veil may be cast over them. There was a Bill exhibited in the *Star Chamber* against *Rotheram* and this *Dethick* in 1584, wherein it was suggested that this *Garter* had signed a Pedigree, in which Sir *Thomas Rotheram* the great Grandfather was entred Husband of *Catherine* Daughter of *Anthony Grey* eldest Son of *Edmond* Earl of *Kent*; whereas it was alledged (as it seems truly) that he married *Catherine* Daughter of *John* Lord *Grey* of

<sup>z</sup> In the late Ambassage unto the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, wherein he was joined in Commission with the Lord *Spencer*, for investing of the said Duke with the Order of the *Garter*, his Behaviour and Carriage was such and so insolent as there is no President of the like to be found; for besides that he tooke upon him to be an Ambassador (which he yet maintaineth) and set up his *Armes* and *Stile* wheresoever he came, he compared with the Lord Ambassador for Gentry and Quarrelled with the Knights and Gentlemen his followers for Precedency, to their Great Disturbance, he forcibly kept the Commission from the Lord Ambassador, and sent him a Copy in paper, saying it concerned him more than the Lord.

And when the day of solemnizing the Feast came, he challenged to sit alone at Table, as the Ambassador did, and was served on the Knee with Taster, Carver, and Assay as a Great Prince.

The Lord Ambassador being ashamed to see him take so much upon him, sent him word (at the Table where he sate) that he forgot himself greatly, and that he should rise and do his Office, that was to proclaim the King's *Stile* and the Dukes; he most arrogantly sent him word again, that he knew better what belonged to his Office then he could tell him, and that if hee did any thing that

he did mistake, he bad him put it into his Writing Tables, and he would answer it, when he came home.

To be brief in their Retorne homewards, he forooke the L. Ambassador, and pretending to go thro' *France*, because he would sell his Horse at *Paris*, he directed his Course unto the *French* Court, and there communicated unto the King his Legation to the Duke *Wirtemberg*, with all the Circumstances thereof. The King brought him to the Queen, whose hands he kist, with many other Complements and Jestes, which passed between him and the King, as since he hath vainly boasted.

How high a Fault this was for an Officer of *Armes* joined in Commission with a Lord Ambassador first to abuse him, and then to forsake him in the Journey, and without Warrant to visit a foraine King, and to enforme him of that which perhaps was not requisite to be knowne, I leave to the Judgment of your Lordships being in my self fully perswaded that Times have been, that a greater Man for a lesser fault, might very easily have lost his Head.

<sup>a</sup> *Albm.* App. n. 59.

<sup>b</sup> *Eques Auratus Anglo-Wirtembergicus, &c.* *Tubing.* 1605 in 4<sup>to</sup>.



Wilton by Anne Daughter of that Earl of Kent. The Collector hath not found what Determination that Court made thereon, but no Imputation in this Affair being laid to his Charge among the long Detail of Causes for which it is said he was deprived of his Office, it may be reasonably inferred he was acquitted from any ill Designs in that Matter.

IX. After this Resignation, *William Segar* succeeded, who being conscious of the Invalidity of the Signet he formerly obtained, procured <sup>c</sup> a new one in *January* 1606, and a <sup>d</sup> Patent under the Great Seal bearing Date on the 17th of that Month. He was Son of *Francis Segar*, who, as it is said, was a <sup>e</sup> Dutchman; He was bred up a <sup>f</sup> Scrivener, and was admitted into some Service under <sup>g</sup> Sir *Thomas Heneage* the Vicechamberlain, and constituted <sup>h</sup> *Portcullis Pursuivant* by Patent 4 *June* 27 *Eliz.* and created to it with <sup>i</sup> Ceremony six Days afterwards, and in this Capacity waited on the Earl of *Leicester* into the <sup>k</sup> *Low Countries*; from hence he was promoted to be *Somerſet* <sup>l</sup> Herald on the 4th of *January* 1588, and soon afterwards published a <sup>m</sup> Treatise of Honour and Arms without affix-

<sup>c</sup> In Libro Signet in Whitehall, January 1603. The office of Garter granted to William Segar late Norroy, procured ut supra. [i. e. by Sir Thomas Lake.]

<sup>d</sup> Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem. Sciat is quod cum non sit novum, sed jamdiu ab antiquis temporibus usitatum, quod inter ceteros officarios & ministros, quos principum lateribus & pro eorum magnificentia atque gloria adherere decet, eorum, quibus officii Armorum cura committitur, copiam habere debeat, ut nec tempus Bellorum neq; Pacis sine convenientibus, & aptis Ministris debeat præteriri: Nos igitur considerantes fidelia & laudabilia servicia, quæ dilectus serviens noster *Willimus Segar* Armiger alias dictus *Norrey* unus Regum nostrorum ad Arma nobis impendit & impendere intendit ipsum *Willimum Segar* in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum & præcipuum Officiarium Armorum incliti nostri ordinis *Garterii* de gratia nostra speciali, certa scientia, & mero motu nostris ereximus, fecimus, constituimus, ordinavimus, creavimus, & coronavimus, ac per presentes pro nobis, heredibus & successoribus nostris erigimus, facimus, constituimus, ordinamus, creamus, & coronamus, ac officium illud, nec non nomen imposuimus & per presentes imponimus *Garter*, quod cum stilo, titulo, libertatibus, privilegiis præheminentiis & commoditatibus hujusmodi Officio convenientibus, concordantibus, & pertinentibus ab antiquo consuetis damus & concedimus, & ipsum in eisdem realiter investimus, & coronamus per presentes: Habendum, occupandum, & exercendum officium illud & nomen, stilum, titulum, libertates, privilegia, præheminentias, commoditates prædictas eidem *Willimo Segar Garter* durante vita sua, cum omnibus juribus, proficiis, commoditatibus, emolumentis quibuscunque, ac cetera omnia & singula quæ dicto incumbunt officio principalis Regis Armorum Anglicorum & præcipui officarii armorum incliti nostri ordinis *Garterii* seu inesse debent de jure, vel consuetudine qualitercunque spectantibus, debitis, seu pertinentibus, faciendum, exercendum, & exequendum, in tam amplis modo & forma prout *Willimus Dethick* nuper *Garter*, aut *Gilbertus* miles pater prædicti *Willimi Dethicke*, aut aliquis alius antehac occupans officium prædictum habuit, & percepit, habuerunt, & perceperunt: Et ulterius concessimus, & per

presentes concedimus prefato *Willimo Segar Garter* in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum & præcipuum Officiarium Armorum incliti nostri ordinis *Garterii* (ut prefertur) erecto, pro exercitio Officii prædicti quadraginta libras per annum pro vadiis & feodis Officii prædicti percipiendum de exitibus & proficiis parvæ custumæ nostræ in Portu Civitatis nostræ *Londoniæ* per manus custumariorum, collectorum, sive Receptorum custumæ prædictæ, in Portu prædicto a Festo Sancti Michaelis Archangeli ultimo ante datum præsentium præterito, pro tempore existentium, ad Terminos Paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per equales portiones, necnon talem liberaturam ac vesturam annualem, qualem aliquis principalis Rex Armorum Angliæ aliquo tempore antehac habuit, & percepit, in, vel pro eodem Officio deliberandam annuatim eidem *Willimo Segar* per manus Custodis, sive Clerici magnæ Garderobæ nostræ: Habendum & annuatim percipiendum eidem *Willimo Segar* dictas quadraginta libras de exitibus, & proficiis provenientibus de parva Custuma nostra in Portu Civitatis nostræ *Londoniæ* per manus Custumariorum, Collectorum, sive Receptorum ibidem pro tempore existentium ad Festa Paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per equales portiones, Ac etiam dictam liberaturam, & vesturam annualem ad magnam Garderobam nostram heredum & Successorum nostrorum per manus Custodis, sive Clerici ejusdem pro tempore existentis similiter ad Terminos prædictos consuetos, Eo quod expressa mentio, &c. In cujus rei, &c. Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium decimo septimo die Januarii Anno Regni Jacobi quarto.

Per breve de privato Sigillo, &c.

<sup>e</sup> In a Pedigree drawn by his Grandson Simon, 'tis said he was Son of Fran. Segar a Prothonotary in Holland, ut fertur, by Ann Daughter of Richard Sherard.

<sup>f</sup> MS. in Mus. Ashm. n. 1133.

<sup>g</sup> Lant's Observations MS. in Off. Arm. p. 34b.

<sup>h</sup> Pat. 27 Eliz. p. 2.

<sup>i</sup> H. 5. penes me, p. 317.

<sup>k</sup> Ashm. Hist. p. 618. Wever's Fun. Mon. p. 682.

<sup>l</sup> Pat. 31 Eliz. p. 10. 8 January.

<sup>m</sup> In 4to Printed by Richard Jhones 1590.

ing



ing his Name to it, and <sup>n</sup> attended on an Embassy into France, and having a Patent to be Norroy on 2 July 44 Eliz. he <sup>o</sup> reprinted the former Treatise altering the Title, and making considerable Additions to it. Being made Garter, he received the Honour of <sup>p</sup> Knighthood 9 Novemb 1616, and in the <sup>q</sup> Month following he was imposed upon by Brooke Yorke Herald, who by Artifice in sending a suborned Person, procured him to attest and confirm Arms to Gregory Brandon, who was found to be the common Hangman of London, whereof there is a short Narrative given in the Printed <sup>r</sup> Life of Mr. Camden; on 5 Apr. 15 Jac. I. he had ten Pounds yearly <sup>s</sup> added to his Salary. In May 1633 he was declining in <sup>t</sup> his Health, and therefore Mr. Philpot Somerset was sent in his stead with the Garter to the Elector Palatin, and he died some Months afterwards, and was buried in Richmond Chancel in Surrey, 11 Dec. 1633, as appears from the Register Book of that Parish.

Sir William Dethick sharpened with the ill Treatment he received, gives him the coarse <sup>u</sup> Character of a poor base beggarly Painter, and stiles him an ignorant base Peasant, which may reasonably be thought to bear the Tinctures <sup>x</sup> of Prejudice and Resentment.

He married twice, first Hellen or Elenor Daughter of Somers in Kent, by whom he had six Children, two of his Sons are mentioned in <sup>y</sup> Ashmole to be attending on him, when he 1627 carried the Garter to the Prince of Orange; but their Names being omitted, it is difficult to know whether they were by this or his second Lady Mary Daughter to Robert Bourne of Ervington in Hereford Gent. by whom he had also five Sons, the youngest Thomas being created Blewman in the Reign of Charles II, and two Daughters. He was a Benefactor to the Church of St. Giles in the Fields, by giving the Kings Arms thereto, and glazing the East High Window before the Chancel.

X. The Tenth Garter Sir John Borough a Learned <sup>z</sup> Knight, was (if we believe the Information which <sup>a</sup> Mr. Wood received in the Herald's-Office) the Son of a Dutchman a Brewer in Sandwich; several indeed of that Country were settled in that Place, but no such Name occurs in the Registers of their Colloquies, as they termed their Congregations. There are <sup>b</sup> Pedigrees which assert that William Borough of Sandwich by the Daughter of Basil Godscall of Newchurch in Brabant was Father of John, to whom (if Credit may be given to the Copy of an <sup>c</sup> Instrument without any Date affixed) Segar Garter gave a Certificate in the following Words "Quod Johannes Burrough filius Willimi Burrough nu-

<sup>n</sup> H. 8. penes me. p. 280. where (as he certifies under his Hand) he wore the Queen's Coat of Arms France and England quarter'd H. 4. penes me, p. 906.

<sup>o</sup> Honour Military and Civil, &c. 1602, in Fol.

<sup>p</sup> Camd. Annales, Jac. 1.

<sup>q</sup> Ibid. 27 Dec. 1616.

<sup>r</sup> See the Life of Camden in Latin by Dr. Smith, and that in English prefixed to the Britannia: A fuller Account thereof in H. 4. penes me, p. 793.

<sup>s</sup> Pat. 15 Jac. 1. p. 20.

<sup>t</sup> Ashm. Hist. of the Garter in App. n. Lxxiv.

<sup>u</sup> Faustina E. 1. in bibl. Cotton.

<sup>x</sup> This same Dethick in the State of the Office Oct. 1597, when he might not foresee this Controversy with him, only writes, that Segar was then 12 Years standing, could write, and paint, and had some Languages.

<sup>y</sup> Hist. p. 418.

<sup>z</sup> Heylin's Cosmography, p. 298.

<sup>a</sup> Athen. Oxon. p. 720.

<sup>b</sup> Philpot's MS. in Off. Arm. n. 54. f. 18b. &c.

<sup>c</sup> W. Z. in off. Arm. p. 250.



“ *per de Sandwich in Comitatu Cantii Armiger natus est ex antiqua & in-*  
 “ *signi familia ejusdem nominis in Anglia, &c.* ” This *John*, by the  
 Daughter of *Robert Denne* of *Dennehil* in *Kent*, was Father of our Knight:  
 It may therefore be conjectured that *Mr. Wood* either mistook his Infor-  
 mant, or that his Informant misled him by ascribing this *Dutch Ex-*  
*traction* to this *Garter*, which belonged to *Segar*, or the *Dethicks* his Pre-  
 decessors. However his Descent might be, the industrious *Oxford Anti-*  
*quary* gives the following Extract of his Life, to which some Additions  
 are made, which for sake of Distinction are included within Crotchets,  
 to which the Proofs are annexed. “ He was Educated a Scholar, and  
 “ in the Common Law at *Greys-Inn*, Keeper of the Records in the  
 “ *Tower*; 1623 he by the Favour of the Earl Marshall, to whom he  
 “ was then or lately Secretary, was sworn Herald extraordinary by the  
 “ Title of *Mowbray*, because no Person (as this Author writes) can be  
 “ a King of Arms before he is Herald, [He was made *Norroy* by Pa-  
 tent on 18 December, being therein called *John Borough* Esquire, the War-  
 rant to create him bearing Date 21 December] ” and on the 23d of that  
 “ Month he was created at *Arundel-House* in the *Strand* in the Place of  
 “ *Richard St. George* advanced to be *Clarenceux*, on 17th July 1624 he  
 “ received the Honour of Knighthood, [and attended on the King's Coro-  
 nation in *Scotland* in 1633] “ and in 1634, was made <sup>d</sup> *Garter King* of  
 “ Arms

<sup>d</sup> Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem. Sciatis, quod cum non sit novum, sed jam diu ab antiquis temporibus usitatum, quod inter ceteros Officiarios & Ministros, quos principum lateribus pro eorum magnificentia atq; gloria insistere decet, eorum, quibus Officii Armorum cura committitur, copiam habere deceat, ut nec tempus bellorum neq; pacis sine convenientibus, & aptis ministris debeat preteriri: Nos igitur considerationis aciem in fidelia & etiam laudabilia servicia, quæ dilectus serviens noster *Johannes Burroughs* miles, alias nuper dictus *Norrey* Rex Armorum partium borealium Regni nostri Angliæ in his, quæ ad Officium illud spectare intelliguntur, exercuit, dirigentes, eundem propterea, & non minus ob solertiam & sagacitatem quas in eo satis habemus exploratas in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum & præcipuum Officiarium Armorum incliti nostri Ordinis *Garterii* ex Gratia nostra speciali ereximus, fecimus, constituimus, ordinavimus, creavimus, & coronavimus, ac pet præsentem pro nobis, heredibus, & successoribus nostris erigimus, facimus, constituimus, ordinamus, creamus, & coronamus, ac ei Officium illud quod communiter *Garter* nuncupatur, nec non nomen *Garter*, stylum, titulum, libertates, præminentias, & commoditates hujusmodi officio convenientia, concordantia, & pertinentia ac ab antiquo consueta eidem *Johanni* damus & concedimus; ac ipsum in eisdem realiter investimus per præsentem, Habendum, gaudendum, occupandum, & exercendum Officium illud, ac nomen, stylum, titulum, libertates, præminentias, & commoditates prædictas eidem *Johanni Burrough* *Garter* pro termino vitæ suæ, cum omnibus Juribus, proficuis, & emolumentis quibuscunque eidem officio quali tercumque spectantibus & pertinentibus: Dantes ulterius & per tenorem præsentium concedentes eidem *Johanni Burrough* *Garter* cetera omnia, & singula, quæ dicto incumbunt Officio principalis Regis Armorum Anglicorum & præcipui Officiarii

Armorum incliti nostri ordinis *Garterii* five inesse dignoscuntur in Jure, vel ex consuetudine temporis retroacti longævi: Faciendum, exercendum, & exequendum in tam amplis modo & forma, prout *Willimus Segar* Miles nuper *Garter*, *Willimus Dethick* Miles, *Gilbertus Dethick* Miles pater prædicti *Willimi Dethick*, aut aliquis alius antehac habens vel occupans officium prædictum habuit, & percepit, usus, & gavissus fuit, exercuit, seu exercere potuit in eodem Officio vel ratione ejusdem Officii: dedimus insuper, & concessimus per præsentem pro nobis, Heredibus, & Successoribus nostris damus, & concedimus eidem *Johanni Burrough* *Garter* a nobis in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum (ut præfertur) erecto quinquaginta libras *Sterling* per Annum, ratione, & causa ejusdem Officii, & pro exercitio ejusdem, percipiendas eidem *Johanni Burrough* *Garter* de exitibus & proficuis parvæ Custumæ nostræ, heredum, & Successorum nostrorum in portu Civitatis nostræ *Londoniæ* per manus firmariorum, customariorum, collectorum, five receptorum custumæ prædictæ in portu prædicto pro tempore existentium, a festo Sancti Michaelis Archangeli ultimo preterito annuatim & singulis annis durante vita sua, ad festa paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per equales portiones solvendas, unacum talibus liberatura & vestura, quales, & in eisdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius Rex Armorum, seu Heraldus tempore Edwardi tertii nuper Regis Angliæ progenitoris nostri existens in Regno nostro prædicto, vel postea, habuit, & percepit, habendas & percipiendas annuatim eidem *Johanni Burrough* *Garter* durante vita sua dictas quinquaginta libras *Sterling* de exitibus & proficuis provenientibus de parva Custuma nostra in portu Civitatis nostræ *Londoniæ* per manus firmariorum, customariorum, collectorum, five Receptorum ibidem pro tempore existentium ad festa paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per equales portiones, ac etiam liberaturam & vesturam



“ Arms in the Place of Sir *William Segar* deceased [and in *Apr. 1636* being employed beyond Sea in his Majesty's Service, he obtained a Warrant for enjoying his Fees and Rights of his Office as well at Home as abroad, as if he were personally present, with a <sup>e</sup> Prohibition to all other Officers to make any Visitations during his Absence, in which Journey he was Secretary to the <sup>f</sup> Embassy. The <sup>g</sup> Register of the Garter contains a Memorial that this Earl, *Longa virorum nobilium caterva perrexit Aprili medio, inter quos Legato à Secretis Supremi jussu aderat meritissimus Eques auratus D. Joannes Burroughs Rex Armorum, vir ad optima quæq; natus*— And in 1640 he <sup>h</sup> attended on this same Noble Earl then General of the Army against the *Scots*, receiving ten Yards of Crimson Velvet for his <sup>i</sup> Livery, and Warrants for Post Horses, and other Conveniencies, and <sup>k</sup> such other Droits and Fees as had been usually paid on such Occasions; in which Expedition he was sole Clerk of the <sup>l</sup> Council] “ this “ learned and polite Person who writes his Surname in *Latin Burrhus* [probably alluding therein to *Nero's Tutor the Colleague of Seneca*] “ hath “ published *Impetus Juveniles & quædam sedationis aliquantulum animi Epistolæ Oxon 1643*, [printed at the End of *Busbequius's Epistles*, Oxon 1660 in 12mo. among which is a Grant of Arms, *Regenti Musei Minervæ, & Professoribus liberalium Artium in eodem*, wherein he styles himself *Joannes Burrhus Fecialium Anglorum Primas*] “ The Sovereignty of the *British Seas*, *Lond. 1651*. [which <sup>m</sup> Bishop *Nicholson* supposes might be suppressed by the Author upon the Appearance of *Selden's Mare Clausum*, but his Friends almost ten Years after his Death did him so much Right as to send it abroad]. “ He was made Doctor of Law in *Oxford August 1643*, “ where he had retired to serve his Majesty according to the Duty of “ his Office, and died there on 21 Oct. 1643, and was buried the next “ Day at the upper End of the Divinity Chapel joining on the North “ Side to the Choir of the Cathedral of *Christ-Church* in that University. [Edward Byshe usurped this Office during the Rebellion and Civil War, as will be shewn hereafter].

“ He married the Daughter of —*Cassy*, and had two Sons, *John* “ bred also in *Greys-Inn*, Knighted by *Charles II*, who had a considerable Practice in

ram hujusmodi eidem *Johanni* annuatim pro termino vite sue ad magnam Garderobam nostram, heredum, & successorum nostrorum, per manus Custodis, five Clerici ejusdem Garderobæ nostræ, heredum, & successorum nostrorum, pro tempore existentium liberandam, ac firmariis Custumariis Collectoribus & Receptoribus dictæ Custumæ nostræ, & dictis Custodibus & Clericis & singulis eorum mandamus, quod de tempore in tempus annuitatem prædictam eidem *Johanni* persolvant, & liberaturam & vesturam prædictam ei liberent & liberari faciant, & Thesaurario & Baronibus Scaccarii nostri, heredum & successorum nostrorum, & aliis quorum interest mandamus, quod de eisdem denariis, liberatura & vestura eidem *Johanni* solutis vel liberatis, literis ejus acquietantiæ solutionem denariorum prædictorum, ac prædictæ liberaturæ, seu vesturæ, testificantibus ostensis, eisdem firmariis, custumariis, collectoribus, & receptoribus ac prædictis custodibus & clericis debitam allocationem super eorum computis fieri faciant, aliquo statuto, actu, ordinatione, provisione, proclamatione, seu restrictione in contrarium inde antehac

habitis, factis, editis, ordinatis, five provis, aut aliqua alia re, causa, vel materia quacumque in aliquo non obstantibus, Eo quod expressa mencio, &c. In cujus rei, &c. Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium vicesimo septimo die Decembris Anno Regni Regis Caroli nono.

Per breve de privato Sigillo.

<sup>e</sup> Original Remains in his Majesty's Paper Office.

<sup>f</sup> Liber Signet. Apr. 1636. A Warrant to pay 40s. per diem unto Sir John Borough Knight Garter and King of Herald, for his Employment as Secretary of the Ambassage to the Emperor, &c.

<sup>g</sup> Registr. Ordinis, f. 116.

<sup>h</sup> Sir Edward Walker's *Historical Discourses*, p. 264.

<sup>i</sup> H. 4. penes me, p. 898.

<sup>k</sup> Liber Signet. Sept. 1640.

<sup>l</sup> H. 4. penes me, p. 897 b.

<sup>m</sup> *Hist. Library*, p. 220.

<sup>n</sup> In his *Epistles*, p. 25. he places his eldest Son with Mr. Farnaby the famous Rhetorician, and he sent him to Sir Hen. Spelman, p. 33, &c.

K k k k k

Chancery



“ Chancery till the passing the Test Act; and *Cassy* killed in a Duel, and  
 “ two Daughters.

[His Paternal Arms, as exemplified by *Segar*, were Or, on a Cross Gules, five Mullets pierced of the first: The Crest upon a Torce of his Colours, a Dove sitting on a Serpent proper.]

XI. King *Charles I.* had been pleased to promise *Edward Walker*, without any Suit from him, that he should succeed in this Office upon the first Vacancy; but when it happened, upon his humble Request, and free Release of his Majesty (as 'tis o worded) this Place of *Garter* was bestowed upon Sir *Henry St. George*, who was eldest Son of Sir *Richard St. George Clarenceux*, extracted from an ancient Family seated at *Hatley St. George* in *Cambridgeshire*: He had been first *Rougerose* Purservant extraordinary (and not as Mr. *Wood* mistook it for *p Rougecroix*) thence made *Bleumantle* <sup>q</sup> in ordinary by Patent <sup>9</sup> *Jac I.* and in the 13<sup>th</sup> Year was advanced to be <sup>r</sup> *Richmond* Herald; and during his Continuance in this Station, Sir *James Spencer*, *Peter Young*, and himself were in 1627 constituted Legates or Embassadors to invest the King of *Sweden* with the Ensigns of the *Garter*, who conferred the Honour of Knighthood upon him in the View of his Army, and gave him a <sup>t</sup> Diploma thereof, wherein also after the Recital of his personal Qualifications, an Augmentation was granted to be born by him and his Descendants, being in a Canton an Escutcheon of the Royal Arms of *Sweden*. He attended upon the Queen from *France* at her first Entry into this Kingdom in 1 *Car. I.* with *York* Herald, to whom a <sup>u</sup> Reward was given of one Thousand *French* Crowns. In 1635 he was created <sup>x</sup> *Norroy*, and within few Years was justly deprived thereof by a Sentence for an high Misdemeanor in the Matter of Coat Arms, from which Censure he obtained the great Favour of a <sup>y</sup> Pardon under the Great Seal which remains upon Record; he made amends for this Transgression, so far as his waiting upon the King during the Civil War and Rebellion at *Oxford* could atone for it, where in 1643 he was created <sup>z</sup> Doctor of Physick, and had at length the good Fortune to be made <sup>a</sup> *Garter* by a Patent dated in *Apr.* 1644, in which after the

*Grant*

<sup>o</sup> H. 4. penes me, p. 392b. in the Hand Writing of Sir Edward Walker.

<sup>p</sup> Wood's Athen. Oxon. p. 722.

<sup>q</sup> Pat. 9. Jac. 1. p. 17, 18 Dec.

<sup>r</sup> Pat. 13 Jac. 1. p. 21. xi Martii.

<sup>s</sup> Ashm. Hist. of the Garter, Append. n. 73.

<sup>t</sup> Printed at large in Seld. Titles of Hon. p. 381.

<sup>u</sup> Wever's Fun. Mon. p. 678.

<sup>x</sup> Pat. xi Car. 1. p. 18. 24 Junii.

<sup>y</sup> Pat. 16 Car. 1. p. 5. 6 Apr.

<sup>z</sup> Athen. Oxon. p. 722.

<sup>a</sup> Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem. Sciatis, quod cum non sit novum, sed jam diu ab antiquis temporibus usitatum, quod inter ceteros Officiarios & Ministros, quos principum lateribus pro eorum magnificentia atq; gloria insistere decet, eorum, quibus Officii Armorum cura committitur, copiam habere deceat, ut nec tempus bellorum neq; pacis sine convenientibus, & aptis ministris debeat preteriri: Nos igitur considerationis aciem in fidelia & laudabilia servicia, quæ dilectus serviens noster *Henricus St. George* miles, alias nuper

dictus *Norrey* Rex Armorum partium borealium Regni nostri Angliæ in hiis, quæ ad Officium illud spectare intelliguntur, exercuit, dirigentes, eundem propterea, & non minus ob solertiam & sagacitatem quas in eo satis habemus exploratas, in Principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum & præcipuum Officiarium incliti nostri Ordinis *Garterii* ex Gratia nostra speciali ereximus, fecimus, constituimus, ordinavimus, creavimus, & coronavimus, ac per præsentis pro nobis, heredibus, & successoribus nostris erigimus, facimus, constituimus, ordinamus, creamus, & coronamus, ac ei Officium illud quod communiter *Garter* nuncupatur, nec non nomen *Garter*, stylum, titulum, libertates, præheminencias, & commoditates hujusmodi officio convenientes, concordantes, & pertinentes, ac ab antiquo consuetas eidem *Henrico* damus, & concedimus; ac ipsum in eisdem realiter investimus per præsentis. Habendum, gaudendum, occupandum, & exercendum Officium illud, ac nomen, stylum, titulum, libertates, præheminencias, & commoditates prædictas eidem *Henrico St. George Garter*, quam diu



*Grant* and *Habendum* of this Office with all its antient Rights, a Clause was inserted that had never been in the Patent of any former *Garter*, which was introduced as a new Concession of the Crown, giving him Authority, Power, and Licence to grant Arms to famous Persons according to the Ordinance lately prescribed by the Earls Marshalls, and with their Consent, whereof a fuller Narrative will be hereafter given in the Life of Sir *William Dugdale*.

He enjoyed this Place a very little Time, for he <sup>b</sup> died on the 5th of *November* following in *Brazenmose* College, and was buried the next Day in the Cathedral of *Christ-Church* in the North-East Corner of the North Isle or Transcept joining to the Body of the Church; Mr. *Wood* <sup>c</sup> saith in the West Isle of that Church.

He married *Mary* Daughter of Sir *Thomas Dayrell* of *Lillingston-Dayrell* in *Bucks*, by whom he had several Children, among others Sir *Thomas* his eldest, and Sir *Henry* both of them afterwards *Garters*, *Richard* sometime *Ulster* King of Arms of *Ireland*: This Lady was buried at *St. Dunstons* in the West *London*.

His Arms a Chief Azure, over all a Lion Rampant G. crowned Or, with the Augmentation.

diu se bene gesserit in eodem Officio, cum omnibus Juribus, proficiis, & emolumentis quibuscunque eidem officio qualitercunque spectantibus, & pertinentibus: Dantes ulterius & per tenorem presentium concedentes eidem *Henrico St. George Garter* cetera omnia, & singula, quæ dicto incumbunt Officio principalis Regis Armorum Anglicorum & præcipuo Officiario Armorum incliti nostri ordinis *Garterii* sive inesse dignoscuntur in Jure, vel ex consuetudine temporis retroacti longinqui, faciendum, exercendum, & exequendum in tam amplis modo & forma, prout *Johannes Burrough* Miles nuper *Garter*, *Gulielmus Segar* Miles, *Gulielmus Dethick* Miles, *Gilbertus Dethick* Miles pater prædicti *Gulielmi Dethick*, aut aliquis alius antehac habens seu occupans officium prædictum habuit, & percepit, usus, vel gavissus fuit, exercuit, seu exercere potuit in eodem Officio, vel ratione ejusdem Officii: Dantes ulterius & per tenorem presentium concedentes eidem *Garter* auctoritatem, potestatem, & licentiam Literas Patentes Armorum claris viris donandi, secundum Ordinationem per Comites Mariscallos nuper præscriptam, & cum eorum consensu. Dedimus insuper & concessimus ac per præstes pro nobis, heredibus, & successoribus nostris damus & concedimus eidem *Henrico St. George Garter* a nobis in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum (ut præfertur) erecto quinquaginta libras *Sterling* per Annum, ratione, & causa ejusdem Officii, & pro exercitio ejusdem, percipiendas eidem *Henrico St. George Garter* de exitibus & proficiis parvæ Custumæ nostræ, heredum, & Successorum nostrorum in portu Civitatis nostræ *Londoniæ* per manus firmariorum, Custumariorum, Collectorum, sive Receptorum custumæ prædictæ in portu prædicto pro tempore existentium, a festo Sancti Michaelis Archangeli ultimo præterito annuatim & singulis annis, quam diu se bene gesserit, ad festum paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per equales portiones solvendas, una cum talibus liberaturis & vesturis, quales, & in eisdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius Rex Armorum, seu Heraldus tempore Ed-

wardi tertii nuper Regis Angliæ Progenitoris nostri existens in Regno nostro prædicto, vel postea, habuit, & percepit. Habendum & percipiendum annuatim eidem *Henrico St. George Garter* durante vita sua dictas quinquaginta libras *Sterling* de exitibus & proficiis provenientibus de parva Custumæ nostræ in portu Civitatis nostræ *Londoniæ* per manus Firmariorum, Custumariorum, Collectorum, sive Receptorum ibidem pro tempore existentium ad festa paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per equales portiones, ac etiam liberaturas & vesturas hujusmodi eidem *Henrico* annuatim, quam diu se bene gesserit ad magnam Garderobam nostram, heredum, & successorum nostrorum, per manus Custodis sive Clerici ejusdem Garderobæ nostræ, heredum, & Successorum nostrorum, pro tempore existentis liberandas, ac Firmariis, Custumariis, Collectoribus, & Receptoribus dictæ custumæ nostræ, & dicto Custodi, & Clericis, & singulis eorum mandamus, quod de tempore in tempus annuatim prædicto eidem *Henrico* persolvant, & liberaturas & vesturas prædictas ei liberent, & liberari faciant, & Thesaurario & Baronibus Scaccarii nostri, heredum, & successorum nostrorum, & aliis quorum interest, mandamus, quod de eisdem denariis, liberaturis & vesturis eidem *Henrico* solatis & liberatis, literis ejus acquierenciæ solutionem denariorum prædictorum ac prædictarum liberaturarum seu vesturarum testificantibus ostensis, eisdem Firmariis, Custumariis, Collectoribus, & Receptoribus ac prædictis Custodi, & Clericis debitam allocationem super eorum, computis fieri faciant, aliquo Statuto, Actu, Ordinatione, Provisione, Proclamatione, seu Restrictione in contrarium inde antehac habitis, factis, editis, ordinatis, seu provisus, aut aliqua alia re, causa vel materia quacunque in aliquo non obstante; eo quod expressa mentio, &c. In cujus rei, &c. Teste, &c.

Expedit. apud Oxon sexto die Aprilis  
Anno Regni Regis Caroli vicesimo.

<sup>b</sup> MS. Ant. a Wood in Mus. Ashm. n. 4. p. 61.

<sup>c</sup> Athen. Oxon. p. 722.



XII. *The Twelfth Legal Garter* was Sir *Edward Walker*; it is said *Legal*, because in deducing the History of the Execution of this Office, it would be an Omission contrary to the Rules of Sincerity to conceal the Usurpations made upon it, for several Years during the Rebellion and Civil Wars; an Officer of Arms is not at liberty to suppress any Thing, in him it would be even a criminal Silence to forbear calling Injustice and Iniquity by their proper Names in whatever Shape, Time, or Place they appear, so that the Editor cannot be charged with Breach of Christian Charity, good Nature, or good Manners, by exposing to publick View such Intruders, who by Force or Fraud have at any Time invaded this Office in defiance of Legal Patents.

*Anthony Wood*<sup>d</sup> acquaints us, that on the 20th of Oct. 1646, Votes passed in the House of Commons, that *Byshe* should be *Garter King* of Arms and *Clarenceux*; but there must necessarily be some Mistake in these Numerals; for though he had indeed usurped on the former Office more early, yet that of *Clarenceux* was then illegally invaded by another Person, for in the Funeral of the Earl of *Essex* General of the Forces raised by the Parliament, solemnized on the 22d of Oct. 1646, and published by that Authority, *Edw. Byshe* Esq; is named *Garter*, *Arthur Squibb* Esq; *Clarenceux*, *William Ryley* Esq; *Norroy*, *George Owen* Esq; *Tork Herald*, *John Beauchamp Portcullis*, *William Crowne Rouge dragon*, and *John Watson Blew-mantle*. This *Squibb* was promoted by the assumed Authority of this Parliament, upon the Endeavours of his Son in Law *John Glyn* a noted and leading Member, while Sir *William Le Neve Clarenceux* waited according to the Duty of his Allegiance on the King at *Oxford*: This *Squibb* died within few Years, whereupon the Commissioners according to the Power given them (as they stile themselves) by Ordinance of Parliament, did on the 12th of June 1650 appoint *Edward Byshe* Esq; *Garter* to execute also the Office, and bear the Name of *Clarenceux*, with all Fees, Stipends, Privileges, Powers, and Immunities belonging thereto; who continued in Possession (if that Word may be given to an Intruder) till the Year 1658, when upon scandalous Terms with the above-mentioned<sup>g</sup> *Ryley* he permitted him to take a Grant of the Office of *Clarenceux* from *Oliver*.

*Edward Byshe* of the Parish of *Burstone* in *Surrey* was a Bencher in *Lincolns-Inn*, and a great Practicer in the Court of *Wards* by which he got an<sup>h</sup> Estate, and erected a fair Freestone House at *Smalsfield* in that Parish, which he often justingly said was built with *Woodcock's Heads*: To him Mr. *Camden Clarenceux*, on 1 Oct. 1617, exemplified, confirmed, and allowed a Coat of Arms *partie per Fesse* embattelled Argent and Ermin, in Chief three *Leopard's Heads* Gules; and in the Visitation of *Surrey* 1623, an Entry was made of his Descent, which in the next Visitation in 1634, was carried up higher by three Paternal Ancestors, and several

<sup>d</sup> Athen. Oxon. p. 483. See *Whitlock's Mem.*  
p. 229.  
<sup>e</sup> Ash. Oxon. Ibid.  
<sup>f</sup> H. 2. penes me, p. 426.

<sup>g</sup> Ibid. p. 463. L. 18. penes me, p. 3.  
<sup>h</sup> Aubrey's *nat. Hist. and Antiq. of Surrey*,  
vol. 3. p. 71, 72.



Marriages inferted therein. He by *Mary* Daughter of *John Turner* of *Ham* in *Blechingley* Esq; was Father of this *Edward*, who at 18 Years of Age was entered a <sup>i</sup> Commoner in *Trinity College* in *Oxford* 1633, and thence went to *Lincolns-Inn*, where he was called to the Barr, and was chosen Member of Parliament for *Blechingly* in 1640, in which Parliament, on *November* 23 in that Year he was <sup>k</sup> appointed one of the Committees to consider the Proceedings and Power of the Court of High Constable and Earl Marshall, and the Fees of Heralds, which Committee on the 19th of *February* following reported their Resolution, that the Court of the Earl Marshal was illegal: In 1643, he took the Covenant, and about this Time he invaded the Office of *Garter*, if <sup>l</sup> Mr. *Wood* be not deceived in his Computation, that he usurped it in the Lifetime of Sir *John Burrough*, who died on 21 *Oct.* in this Year: Notwithstanding this Vote of the House of Commons of the Illegality of the Earl Marshall's Court; 'tis somewhat remarkable, that during these prodigious Confusions the House of Lords, on 19 *March* 1645, being sensible (as 'tis worded) that many Persons had assumed the bearing Arms of the Nobility and Gentry, ordained some Lords and Commons with Power not only to settle and regulate the Office and Officers of Arms, but likewise to supply the Offices of Constable and Marshal of *England*. But 'tis no ways to be wondred that our *Byshe* was appointed one of the select Commoners for executing these Powers which he had formerly voted illegal in a Committee, while the same were derived by lawful Grants from the Crown; for he did not rest contented by acting contrary only to his former solemn Determination, but went larger Steps, and took the Courage, while he was thus sitting as a Judge, to transgress in the very Articles of Abuses, which this Ordinance designed to prevent, and that in the largest Extent of Facts, not only by assuming several Arms in <sup>m</sup> Quarterings which belonged to the Nobility, but discontinuing his Paternal Coat took the Arms of *De la Bisse*, whose Original Name (as he writes) was *de Clare*, bearing the Arms of the antient Earls of *Glocester* of that Surname, with the Distinction of a Labell with five Points Sable, till the Reign of *Richard* II, when one of them (as he saith) altered it to Or a Cheveron between three Roses Gules. These two Coats are engraven on a Plate in the *" Monasticon Anglicanum*, where the Descent of the illustrious House of *Clare* is deduced in *English* and *Latin* Verses, with this Inscription "*M. cognatae familiae*" "*Edwardus Bissaus Ar. P.*" and in the <sup>o</sup> History of *Warwickshire* are these same Arms of *De la Bisse* quartering *Clare*, *Zouch*, and *Boys* inscribed "*P. M. Majorum P. Edoard. Byslh.*" There is an Instance of his Vanity beyond Measure (not to give it a worse Term;) for there being in the South Window of the Chancel of *Burston* the Arms of <sup>p</sup> *Henry Chichele* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, Or, a Cheveron between 3 Cinquefoils Gules: He took down that Escutcheon, and made the Cinquefoils to resemble the

<sup>i</sup> Athen. Oxon. p. 483.

<sup>k</sup> H. 2. penes me, p. 433b.

<sup>l</sup> Ath. Oxon. Ibid.

<sup>m</sup> See his Notes on Upton de re mil. p. 52b.

53. 67. See H. 2. penes me, p. 463b.

<sup>n</sup> Vol. 1. p. 535.

<sup>o</sup> Dugd. Hist. of Warw. fol. 40.

<sup>p</sup> Aubrey's Hist. of Surrey, vol. 4. p. 245.



Roses of *De la Bisse*, which Fraud is not only well attested, but the Traces of it were discoverable by Inspection; and he was so silly, as well as base, (as a late <sup>9</sup> Author writes) to put Abundance of Scutcheons of his pretended Ancestors in his House at *Smalsfield*, though his Descent and Arms were well known by the Inhabitants in the Neighbourhood, who call it a new raised upstart Family of Yesterday's Growth, and that the Bencher's Father or Grandfather was a Miller. While he was a Member of Parliament he had the Meanness to accept a Pension of <sup>r</sup> Six Hundred Pounds yearly from the Sequestrators, and was in 1654 elected Burges for *Rygate* in *Surrey*, in which Year he published *Upton de re Militari*, wherein he thought proper to add to the Coat of *De la Bisse* which he had formerly bore plain, a Labell with one Point in the Middle; and to this Book he wrote Notes in *English*, which were <sup>s</sup> translated into *Latin* by *Dan. Whitford*. In 1658 he was chosen Representative in Parliament for *Gatton*, and as soon as the Monarchy was wonderfully restored, he became obliged of Course to quit this Office of *Garter* to the Right Owner whom he had long disseised; but notwithstanding the Eminent Parts he had acted in all the Guilt and Schemes of the late Times, he had the good Luck to be promoted within less than a Year's Time to the Office of *Clarenceux*, by a Grant which recited the Vacancy to be through <sup>t</sup> the Lunacy of Sir *William le Neve*. This worthy Person in his younger Years had the Testimony of being a Gentleman <sup>u</sup> of singular Industry and Ability, given him by Mr. *Selden* a proper Judge of Men and their Merits, and being deservedly promoted to that Office of *Clarenceux*, he steadily adhered in his Duty to the King, and for his Loyalty and the Reverence of his Conscience lost his Liberty with his Estate: Hardships which might probably make too deep an Impression on the Spirits of a Person advanced in Age, and which depressed him even to the Loss of his Memory and Understanding, for he was indeed found a Lunatick by an Inquisition taken 22 Oct. 1658: This his Lunacy was it seems esteemed the Loss of his Freehold in this Office of *Clarenceux*, which had been granted him by Pat. 22 June 11. Car. I. during the Term of his good Behaviour, which is equivalent to an Estate of Life, when used in Relation to Offices.

It hath been asserted by several Authors already quoted, that the Character of an Officer of Arms is indelible; but however that may be, the particular Labours and Sufferings of this worthy Person in the Vineyard all the Heat of the Day, might, if not merit, yet raise so much Compassion, that some Officer of Arms might have been allowed to be his Guardian, Assistant, or Marshal, during this his unavoidable Condition laid on him by the Hand of Providence, with some Allotment of Maintenance for him out of the Profits, without leaving him entirely upon the Charity of his Friends, which might have been done in such Manner as Coadjutors were formerly given to Clergymen in like Circumstances. A Life of Loyalty and Zeal might have made some Claim to it, since if

<sup>9</sup> Ibid. vol. 3. p. 71, 72.

<sup>r</sup> Ibid.

<sup>s</sup> Athen. Oxon. Ibid.

<sup>t</sup> Signet March 1660. Clarenceux to Edward

*Bish Esq*; now void by the Lunacy of Sir William le Neve.

<sup>u</sup> Titles of Honour, p. 23.



by the Blessing of Heaven he had chanced to have been restored to his perfect Senses, it must have raised Melancholy and afflictive Thoughts in him, sufficient to have caused a Relapse into a new Distraction, when; instead of any Recompense for his Sufferings, he should see the Usurper of his Office during the Distresses of the Crown settled therein after its Restoration by an absolute Patent. This *Bysse* in the Conduct of this Office, to which he was thus undeservedly raised, made no Reparation for his former Invasions, or attempted to ballance his former Errors by an Atonement in his future Management, which was suitable to the first Part of his Life and Character, but the Particulars of his Misbehaviours in this his Administration are foreign to the present Enquiry.

Thus Sir *Edward Walker* upon the Restoration became seized of his Office after an Usurpation upon it for sixteen Years. \* *Anthony a Wood* hath given an Abstract of his Life, which is here transcribed with the Addition of the Proofs, and with some Augmentations which are included within Crotchets.

" He was second Son of *Edward Walker* of *Roobers* in the Parish of *Ne-*  
*therstowey* in *Somerset* Gentleman, by *Barbara* Daughter of *Edward Sal-*  
*keld* of *Corby Castle* in *Cumberland* Esq; [which *Edward* the Father was  
 Son of *John* Son of *Edward* second Son of *Humphry Walker* of *Kestern* in  
*Stafford* Esq;] " He was born at *Roobers*" [and whoever loves the Specu-  
 lations in *Astrology* (if it be not a Dotage) may consult some <sup>z</sup> Cal-  
 culations made of his Nativity. The Tradition is, that his Father ha-  
 ving several Children, and being of the *Romish* Religion, a Gentleman of  
 his Acquaintance took this his Son, and placed him in the then Office  
 of Purveyance, from whence he was, as *Mr. Wood* words it] " bred a  
 " Servant in the Family of *Thomas* Earl of *Arundel* Earl Marshal of Eng-  
 " land," [to which Noble Earl he was first made <sup>a</sup> known in 1633, when  
 he was about the Age of twenty two, and on the 24th May 1635 ob-  
 tained his Majesty's Warrant to be created <sup>b</sup> *Blanchlion* Pursevant Extra-  
 ordinary, which Earl being sent <sup>c</sup> Ambassador in Apr. 1636 to *Ratisbon*,  
 touching the Election of a King of the *Romans*, and also to negotiate the  
 Restitution of the Prince *Palatine*, in which Journey his Lordship (as 'tis  
 reported) taking a View of Pictures in some Church, *Mr. Walker* more  
 particularly recommended one which stood at some Distance, which his  
 Lordship, who was a critical Judge in Painting, Sculpture, Statues, &c.  
 having examined upon a nearer Approach, was thenceforth pleased to take  
 him into great Confidences, and as he modestly expresses it <sup>d</sup> himself, in  
 a nearer Relation than he was either worthy of or expected; for upon the  
 Death of his Secretary, he was preferred thereto] " and his Lordship gave  
 " him the Pursevant's Place called *Rougecroix* in the College of Arms;"  
 [Mr. Wood means *Rougedragon*, which passed the Signet in May 1637,

\* Athen. Oxon. p. 701, 702.

† B. 5. penes me, p. 340.

z Mus. Alhmol. n. 185. p. 317. Ibid. p. 423, &c.

a His Historical Discourses in Print, p. 214.

b H. 5. penes me, p. 347.

c The true Relation of all the Remarkable Passages in the Travels of the Earl of Arundel Ambassador to the Emperor by William Crowne Gent. in 4to 1637, which Crowne was afterwards Rougedragon Pursevant by Pat. 12 Sept. 14 Car. 1.

d Historical Discourses, p. 214, 223, 270.

and



and the Great Seal 19 May 12 Car. I. to which he was created with Ceremony on Monday the 5th of June 1637, and in January following had a Signet to be *Chester Herald*, which passed the Great Seal the 31st of that Month, being solemnly created on Thursday the 8th of February ensuing at *Arundell-House*, and in the next Year in the Expedition against the *Scotts*, this Earl of *Arundell* then General made him his Secretary at War, in which Post he served him and the Publick with the best of his Faculties, which Mr. *Wood* places in the Year 1639; in the Year following he again attended on that General into the North, and in April was appointed Paymaster of his Majesty's Garrison in *Carlisle* after-wards when his Majesty and the Royal Family were by the Endeavours of that unhappy Parliament, begun the 3d of November 1640, forced from London in January 1641, Mr. *Walker* followed him into the North Parts of England, and was with him at *Edghil* Fight, and afterwards at *Oxford*, where he was actually created Master of Arts, being then *Chester Herald*. In the later End of 1643 he was made *Norroy King of Arms*, in Place of Sir *Henry St. George* promoted to the Office of *Garter*, but his Patent for this Office did not pass the Signet till Apr. 1644, and the Great Seal till 24 June, in which Month he was sworn Clerk Extraordinary of the Privy-Council; and in the Year following he was upon the Death of the said Sir *Henry* made *Gar-ter*;" [by Signet in Febr. 1644, and Patent dated 26 Febr. 20 Car. I. and

<sup>e</sup> Ibid. p. 217, 264.

<sup>f</sup> H. 4. penes me. p. 897.

<sup>g</sup> Lib. Signet Apr. 1640.

<sup>h</sup> Origin. penes me.

<sup>i</sup> Pat. 11 Car. 1. p. 18. 24 Junii.

<sup>k</sup> H. 2. penes me, p. 549. the Original Book.

<sup>l</sup> Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem, Sciatis, quod cum non sit novum, sed jam diu ab antiquis temporibus usitatum, quod inter ceteros Officiarios & Ministros, quos principum lateribus pro eorum magnificentia atq; gloria insistere decet, eorum præsertim, quibus Officii Armorum cura committitur, copiam habere deceat, ut nec tempus bellorum neq; pacis sine convenientibus, & aptis ministris debeat præteriri: Nos igitur considerationis aciem in fidelia & laudabilia servicia, quæ dilectus serviens noster *Edwardus Walker* miles, alias nuper dictus *Norroy* Rex Armorum partium borealium Regni nostri Angliæ in hiis, quæ ad Officium illud spectare intelliguntur, exercuit, dirigentes, eundem propterea, & non minus ob solertiam & sagacitatem, quas in eo satis habemus exploratas, in Principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum & præcipuum Officiarium Armorum incliti nostri Ordinis *Garterii* ex Gratia nostra speciali ereximus, fecimus, constituimus, ordinavimus, creavimus, & coronavimus, ac per præsentem pro nobis, heredibus, & successoribus nostris erigimus, facimus, constituimus, ordinamus, creamus, & coronamus, ac ei Officium illud quod communiter *Garter* nuncupatur, necnon nomen *Garter*, stylum, titulum, libertates, præheminencias, & commoditates hujusmodi officio convenientes, concordantes, & pertinentes, ac ab antiquo consuetas eidem *Eduardo* damus, & concedimus; ac ipsum in eisdem realiter investimus per præsentem. Habendum, gaudendum, occupandum, & exercendum Officium illud, ac nomen, stylum, titulum, libertates, præheminencias, & commoditates prædictas eidem *Eduardo Walker Garter*, quam diu se bene gesserit in eodem Officio, cum omni-

bus Juribus, proficiis, & emolumentis quibuscunque eidem officio qualitercunque spectantibus, & pertinentibus: Dantes ulterius & per tenorem præsentium concedimus eidem *Eduardo Walker Garter* cætera omnia, & singula, quæ dicto incumbunt Officio principalis Regis Armorum Anglicorum & præcipui Officiarii Armorum incliti nostri Ordinis *Garterii* sive inesse dignoscuntur in Jure, vel ex consuetudine temporis retroacti longinqui, faciendum, exercendum, & exequendum in tam amplis modo & forma, prout *Henricus St. George* Miles, nuper *Garter*, *Johan. Burrough* Miles, *Guliel. Segar* Miles, *Guliel. Dethick* Miles, *Gilbertus Dethick* Miles pater prædicti *Gulielmi Dethick*, aut aliquis alius antehac habens seu occupans officium prædictum habuit, & percepit, usus, vel gavisus fuit, exercuit, seu exercere potuit in eodem Officio, vel ratione ejusdem Officii: Dantes ulterius & per tenorem præsentium concedentes eidem *Garter* auctoritatem, potestatem, & licentiam Literas Patentes Armorum claris viris donandi, secundum Ordinationem per Comitum Marescallum nuper præscriptam, & cum ejus consensu. Dedimus insuper & concessimus ac per præsentem pro nobis, heredibus, & successoribus nostris damus & concedimus eidem *Eduardo Walker Garter* a nobis in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum (ut præfertur) erecto quinquaginta libras *Sterling* per Annum, ratione, & causa ejusdem Officii, & pro exercitio ejusdem, percipiendas eidem *Eduardo Walker Garter* de exitibus & proficiis parvæ Custumæ nostræ, heredum, & Successorum nostrorum in portu Civitatis nostræ *Londoniæ* per manus Firmariorum, Custumariorum, Collectorum, sive Receptorum custumæ prædictæ in portu prædicto pro tempore existentium, a festo Sancti Michaelis Archangeli ultimo præterito annuatim & singulis annis, quam diu se bene gesserit, ad festum paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per equales portiones solvendas, una



and <sup>1</sup> sworn in a Chapter of the Order held at *Oxford* the 2d of *March* following, being at that Time only 33 Years old] “ having on the 2d of “ *February* in that Year received the Honour of Knighthood and being “ thus *Garter* King of Arms, and (as the Noble <sup>m</sup> Historian acquaints us) “ also Secretary to the Council of War, was pitched upon to carry a “ Message of Grace and Favour to the Rebels at *Cropey-Bridge* on the “ 29th of *June* 1644; but he knowing the notorious insolent Barbarities “ of those who neither regarded the Laws of Arms or of Nations, or ac- “ knowledged any Master or Discipline, desired the Wise Precaution that “ a Trumpet might be first sent for a Pass or safe Conduct to deliver that “ Message, to which Sir *William Waller* returned an Answer, that he had “ no Power to receive any Message of Grace and Favour from his Ma- “ jesty without the Consent of the two Houses of Parliament at *Westmin-* “ *ster*; after the Surrender of *Oxford*, in the Beginning of 1646, he was “ sent by the <sup>n</sup> Duke of *York* and the Council with an Account thereof to “ his Majesty then with the *Scots* at *Newcastle*, whom his Majesty de- “ fired to stay with and attend him, and notwithstanding his Distress gave “ him 100 *l.* for to get himself an Equipage; but he was soon removed “ from thence by a particular Ordinance of the Lords in Parliament, sti- “ ling him one *Edward Walker* a dangerous Malignant, and a Person ill “ affected to the Parliament, without giving him the Addition of Knight, “ Esq; or Gentleman: In 1649, he finished the <sup>o</sup> Narrative of the Pro- “ gress of the King’s Arms in the preceeding Year, which he wrote by “ his Majesty’s especial Command, who was pleased to correct it with “ his own Hand, which is since published. In *August* 1655, he was “ sent from *Cardiff* to <sup>p</sup> the Prince of *Wales*, and in 1646 obtained “ from the Lords of the Council an ample <sup>q</sup> Certificate of his Loy- “ alty, with a Licence to travel into any foreign Country with his “ Wife, Children, and Servants. He soon returned again and lay hid “ for some <sup>r</sup> Time in and about *London*, and on the Second of *Sep-*

una cum talibus liberaturis & vesturis, quales, & in eisdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius Rex Armorum, seu Heraldus tempore *Edwardi* tertii nuper Regis Angliæ Progenitoris nostri existens in Regno nostro predicto, vel postea, habuit, & percepit. Habendum & percipiendum annuatim eidem *Eduardo Walker Garter* durante vita sua dictas quinquaginta libras *Sterling* de exitibus & proficuis provenientibus de parva Custuma nostra in portu Civitatis nostræ Londoniæ per manus Firmariorum, Custumariorum, Collectorum, sive Receptorum ibidem pro tempore existentium ad festa paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per equales portiones, ac etiam liberaturam & vesturam huiusmodi eidem *Eduardo* annuatim, quam diu se bene gesserit ad magnam Garderobam nostram, heredum, & successorum nostrorum, per manus Custodis sive Clerici ejusdem Garderobæ nostræ, heredum, & successorum nostrorum, pro tempore existentium liberandas, ac Firmariis, Custumariis, Collectoribus, & Receptoribus dictæ custumæ nostræ, & dictis Custodi, & Clericis, & singulis eorum mandamus, quod de tempore in tempus denarios prædictos annuatim eidem *Eduardo* persolvant, & liberaturam & vesturam prædictam ei liberent, & liberari faciant, & Thesaurario & Baronibus Scaccarii nostri, heredum, & successorum nostrorum,

ac aliis quorum interest, mandamus, quod de eisdem denariis, liberatura & vestura eidem *Eduardo* solutis vel liberatis, literis ejus acquietantiæ solutionem denariorum predictorum ac predictam liberaturam seu vesturam testificantibus ostensis, eisdem Firmariis, Custumariis, Collectoribus, & Receptoribus ac predicto Custodi, & Clericis debitam allocationem super eorum computis fieri faciant, aliquo Statuto, Actu, Ordinatione, Provisione, Proclamatione, seu Restrictione in contrarium inde antehac habitis, factis, editis, ordinatis, seu provisus, aut aliqua alia re, causa vel materia quacunq; in aliquo non obstante; eo quod expressa mentio, &c. In cujus rei, &c. Teste, &c.

Expedit. apud Oxon quarto die Februarii Anno Regni Regis Caroli vicesimo.

<sup>1</sup> Lib. Carolin. p. 3.

<sup>m</sup> Lord Clarendon’s *Hist.* vol. 2. p. 387. See *Hist. Disc.* p. 34.

<sup>n</sup> *Hist. Disc.* p. 241, 242.

<sup>o</sup> Ibid. p. 228.

<sup>p</sup> H. 2. penes me, p. 551, 553.

<sup>q</sup> Ibid. p. 555.

<sup>r</sup> *His Register of the Garter*, MS. p. 6.

M m m m m

tember



“ *tember 1648*, there was a <sup>f</sup> Vote of the House of Commons, That  
 “ *Edward Walker* Esq; now called by the Name of *Sir Edward Walker*,  
 “ might go to the King in the Isle of *Wight*, being nominated by the  
 “ King, and approved of the House, to be at the Treaty there, in which  
 “ he was imployed as the Chief or ‘ first Clark, and at that Place his  
 “ Majesty was pleased to give him a large and honourable “ Testimony  
 “ of his great Merits in the Execution of the Offices of *Garter* and of Se-  
 “ cretary of War, and in consideration thereof gave an Addition to his  
 “ Arms with a new Crest: After the Murder of his Majesty, which soon  
 “ followed, he got privately unto his Sovereign into “ *Holland*, where he  
 “ then resided with the Prince of *Orange*, by whom he was employed as  
 “ Clerk of the Council, and otherwise in Payment of Money: In 1649  
 “ he carried the Ensigns of the Order of the *Garter* to the Elector ‘ *Pala-*  
 “ *time*: He then waited upon his Majesty in *Fersey*, where a new Coat  
 “ of Arms was granted him on the 8th of *Febr.* 1649, to be born in  
 “ the first place, or quarterly by way of Augmentation Argent on the  
 “ Cross of *England* Gules five Leopard’s Heads Or, in which “ Instru-  
 “ ment it is recited, That in the Beginning of the wicked Rebellion he  
 “ had espoused the Royal Cause of *Charles* the First, to whom he had been  
 “ for many Years Secretary of War, and served him in arduous Affairs  
 “ to the Loss of his Fortune and the Hazard of his Life, being constant-  
 “ ly present in all his Councils of War, Battles and Sieges; that he  
 “ was sent with an Account of the Surrender of *Oxford* to that King then in

<sup>f</sup> *Hist. Disc. f. 8.*

<sup>i</sup> Title Page to his *Hist. Disc. and to his Narrative*  
 of that Treaty.

<sup>u</sup> Ex. Orig. penes me.

Carolus Rex.

Carolus Dei Gratia Magnae Britanniae Franciae & Hiberniae Rex Fidei defensor, &c. Omnibus & singulis has literas nostras inspecturis salutem. Cum nunquam plus effulgeat Majestas Regia, nec solum Principis magis enitescat, quam cum debita virtutis praemia illico Regia dispensatione bene merentibus conferantur. Cumque Progenitorum nostrorum Regum Angliae atque exterorum Imperatorum, Principum & Dynastarum institutis primitus usitatis consonum sit, non solum viros Castrenses & militari gloria florentes, verum etiam alios bonarum artium & literarum studiis egregie decoratos, quasi Castrenses, Insignibus & Armis investire. Quae quidem Insignia Regio favore sic donata, & in scutis, Clypeis, Cristis & Galeis infixae, ut perpetua rerum praeclare gestarum symbola & Monumenta, Honoris ergo, ad posteros etiam gestanda remaneant. Cumque etiam dilectus & perquam fidelis servus noster *Edwardus Walker* Eques auratus Summus noster Facialis & Garterus Principalis Armorum Anglicorum Rex, flagrantibus nuper hic undique intestinis dissidiis, eximium nobis & Coronae nostrae fidelitatis & obsequii Testimonium praestiterit, mandatisque nostris sedulo indies incubuerit. Ac non solum in Officii Istius munere, verum etiam in Consiliis nostris Tacticis & in epistolis Chartis & diplomatibus singulis militaria tangentibus (quae ipsius fidei & curae commisimus) periti in ea parte Amanuensis, & assidui ministri navavit operam. Sciatis igitur quod nos Regii favoris nostri Tesseram praefato *Edwardo Walker* & posteris suis tradituram Volentes, ex Gratia nostra speciali, certa Scientia & mero motu nostris Dedimus & Concessimus, & per praesentes pro

Nobis, Haeredibus & successoribus nostris Damus & Concedimus praefato *Edwardo Walker* & haeredibus suis, Quod in posterum bene liceat eidem *Edwardo* & haeredibus suis, atque etiam omnibus aliis de stirpe sua oriundis, debito discrimine cum insignibus familiae suae quaternatim gestare. In Scuto Argenteo unam Roseam Crucem (vulgo dictam Sancti Georgii) In medioq; Crucis unam Canem Leporarium (Angice a Greyhound) Coloris argentei, cum Colari aureo decoratum. Inq; Christa etiam Canem Leporarium ejusdem Coloris cum Collari rubeo tribus Coronulis aureis insignito. Quae quidem Insignia prout vivis Coloribus hic depinguntur praefato *Edwardo Walker* (ut glyphica fidelitatis suae symbola) per praesentes damus & Concedimus, ac praefatum *Edwardum Walker* iisdem insignibus ornatus & investimus per praesentes, habend. tenend. & gestand. eidem *Edwardo Walker* haeredibus & posteris ejus de stirpe sua oriundis sic ut praefertur in perpetuum. Volentes insuper & per praesentes firmiter mandantes omnibus & singulis Archiepiscopis, Episcopis, Ducibus, Marchionibus, Comitibus, Vice Comitibus, Baronibus, Proceribus, Magnatibus, Armorum Regibus, Officiariis & aliis Ministris & subditis nostris quibuscunq; quod praefatum *Edwardum Walker* haeredes & posteros suos, Insignia praedicta in Scutis, Cristis & Paludamentis, sic ut praefertur delineata absq; impedimento vel Inhibitione in perpetuum gestare permittant. In Cujus rei testimonium Annulo nostro signatorio has praesentes sigillari fecimus. Datum apud Newport in insula Vectis primo die Novembris Anno Regni Nostri Vicefimo Quarto, Annoq; Dom. 1648.

<sup>x</sup> *His Register of the Garter, MS. p. 6.*

<sup>y</sup> *Ibid. p. 9. Ashm. Append. n. III.*

<sup>z</sup> Account of Additions or Augmentations of Arms granted under the Great Seal of England from 1 Jan. 1644, to last of Sept. 1664, collected by Sir Edw. Walker Garter, MS. in Off. Arm. & A. 30, penes me. The Patent will be Printed at the End of his Life in the next Sheet.

“ Custody



" Custody of the Scots at Newcastle, to whom he was most acceptable, but  
 " was within few Days removed by an Order of the Rebels, and then sent  
 " by that King to his Queen in France with the greatest Trust, &c. These  
 " Letters Patent passed under the Great Seal, and which is Memorable,  
 " K. Charles II. is thereon exhibited armed on Horseback riding with his  
 " Face in the same Posture that Charles I. is represented on his Great Seal,  
 " which was altered afterwards to the reverse Position. Probably this first  
 " Seal was lost in the " Defeat at Worcester, and the new Seal might be  
 " prepared in this latter Form when it was engraven to be given to  
 " Sir Edward Herbert: There is no Enrollment on Record of any Pa-  
 " tents passed in this Island. In this Place he was on 30 Sept. 1649,  
 " constituted <sup>b</sup> Receiver General of all Money that should from Time  
 " to Time be paid or delivered to the King, or to his Use upon any  
 " Occasion whatsoever, with the yearly Salary of two hundred Pounds,  
 " and the Editor hath several Accompts of his Payments signed by his  
 " Majesty; and in 1650 went with the King into Scotland, and was by  
 " the Committee there Voted to be <sup>c</sup> banished out of that Kingdom,  
 " and after his Majesty's Escape had Notice sent him by Sir James Bal-  
 " four Lord Lyon to depart thence, and we find him Resident at the  
 " Hague <sup>d</sup> in December that Year; at <sup>e</sup> Iffelfteyn in June 1651, at  
 " the <sup>f</sup> Hague again in May 1652, and in Febr. 1653, at which Time  
 " he delivered the Ensigns of the Order to the Duke of <sup>g</sup> Gloucester, to  
 " the Prince of <sup>h</sup> Orange, to the Elector of <sup>i</sup> Brandenburg, from whom  
 " he <sup>k</sup> received 150 Pieces of Gold, each 5 Ducats, in all 250 l. In  
 " 1655 was at <sup>l</sup> Amsterdam, and in 1658 at Bruges: On the first of  
 " January was <sup>m</sup> constituted Secretary of War, and in July 1658 had a  
 " Pass to travel to and fro in the <sup>n</sup> Netherlands, and in that Year deli-  
 " vered the Garter to Count <sup>o</sup> Marcin: He waited on his Majesty in his  
 " Restoration, and was by <sup>p</sup> Signet made Clerk of the Council: To him  
 " his Successors must gatefully own the <sup>q</sup> Enlargement of their Yearly  
 " Salaries."

<sup>a</sup> Lord Clarendon's *Hist.* p. 401.

<sup>b</sup> Origin. penes me.

<sup>c</sup> Ibid. vol. 3. p. 286. *Hist. Disc.* 161, 201.

<sup>d</sup> *Hist. Disc.* p. 205.

<sup>e</sup> Ibid. p. 225.

<sup>f</sup> Ibid. p. 287, 314.

<sup>g</sup> Garter's Book, p. 20.

<sup>h</sup> Ashm. p. 427. App. Cvi.

<sup>i</sup> Ashm. p. 428. App. Lxi. Cvii. Cviii.

<sup>k</sup> Garter's Book, p. 25 b.

<sup>l</sup> *Hist. Disc.* p. 369.

<sup>m</sup> Orig. penes me.

<sup>n</sup> Orig. penes me.

<sup>o</sup> Ashm. App. n. Cvi.

<sup>p</sup> In libro Signetorum.

<sup>q</sup> E. libro Signet. apud Whitehall, Oct. 1662. the Office of Garter King at Arms to Sir Edward Walker upon Surrender of former Letters Patents with 50 l. to hold quam diu se bene gesserit, and in respect of his faithful Services, his Majesty is pleased to Establish an Additional Fee of 50 l. per Annum more, to be annexed to the said Office, not only to be paid to him during his Life, but at his Request to be continued to his Successors in the said Office for ever, payable out of the Customs of London, with Liveries out of the Wardrobe yearly, and all other Profus, &c. thereto belonging, subscribed by Warrant under his Majesty's Sign Manual, procured by Mr. Secretary Nicholas.

Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem. Cum præcharissimus nuper Pater Noster Rex Carolus (beatissimæ memoriæ) per Literas suas Patentes magno sigillo nostro Angliæ Sigillatas gerentes datum apud Oxon. vicesimo sexto die Februarii Anno Regni sui vicesimo, erexerit, fecerit, constituerit, ordinaverit, creaverit, & coronaverit Edwardum Walker militem in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum, & præcipuum Officiarium Armorum incliti sui Ordinis Garterii, ac ei Officium illud quod communiter Garter nuncupatur, necnon nomen Garter, Stilum, Titulum, Libertates, Præheminentias, & Commoditates hujusmodi Officio convenientes, concordantes, & pertinentes, ac ab antiquo consuetas eidem Edwardo dederit & concesserit, ac ipsum in eisdem realiter investiverit: Habendum, gaudendum, occupandum, & exercendum officium illud, ac nomen, stilum, titulum, libertates, præheminentias, & commoditates prædictas eidem Edwardo Walker Garter, quamdiu se bene geerret in eodem Officio, cum omnibus Juribus, proficiis, & emolumentis quibuscunque eidem Officium qualitercunque spectantibus, & pertinentibus: Dantes ulterius & per tenorem prædictarum literarum patentium concedentes eidem Edwardo Walker Garter, cætera omnia & singula, quæ dicto incumbent Officio Principalis Regis Armorum Anglicorum, & præcipui Officiarii Ar-

morum



“Salaries.” He was a Gentleman of Spirit as well as of great Abilities in his Profession, and having filled this Place about 32 Years to great  
“Commen-

morum incliti sui Ordinis *Garterii* sive inesse dignoscerentur in Jure, vel ex consuetudine temporis retroacti longinqui, faciendum, exercendum, & exequendum, in tam amplis modo & forma, prout *Henricus St. George* miles nuper *Garter*, *Johannes Burrough* miles, *Gulielmus Seagar* miles, *Gulielmus Deibick* miles, *Gilbertus Deibick* miles, pater prædicti *Gulielmi Deibick*, aut aliquis ante tunc habens, seu occupans officium prædictum, habuit, & percepit, usus, vel gavisus fuit, exercuit, seu exercere potuerit in eodem Officio vel ratione ejusdem Officii: Dantes ulterius & per tenorem prædictarum Literarum patentium concedentes eidem *Garter* Autoritatem, Potestatem, & Licentiam Literas Patentes Armorum claris viris donandi, secundum ordinationem per Comites Mariscallos nuper præscriptam, & cum eorum consensu, dederit insuper & concesserit eidem *Edwardo Walker Garter* in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum (ut prefertur) erecto quinquaginta Libras Sterlingorum per Annum ratione & causa ejusdem Officii, & pro exercitio ejusdem percipiendas eidem *Edwardo Walker Garter* de exitibus & proficuis parvæ Custumæ suæ, hæredum & successorum suorum in Portu Civitatis suæ Londoniæ per manus Firmariorum, Custumariorum, Collectorum, sive Receptorum Custumæ prædictæ in portu prædicto pro tempore existentium a Festo Sancti Michaelis Archangeli ultimo præterito ante datum prædictarum Literarum patentium annuatim, & singulis annis, quamdiu bene se gereret, ad Festa Paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per æquales portiones solvendas, una cum tali liberatura & vestura, quales, & in eisdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius Rex Armorum, seu Heraldorum tempore *Eduardi* tertii nuper Regis Angliæ Progenitoris sui existens in regno suo prædicto, vel postea, habuit, & percepit: Habendum & percipiendum annuatim eidem *Edwardo Walker Garter* durante vita sua dictas quinquaginta Libras Sterlingorum de exitibus & proficuis provenientibus de parva Custumâ sua in Portu Civitatis suæ Londoniæ, per manus Firmariorum, Custumariorum, Collectorum, sive Receptorum ibidem pro tempore existentium ad Festa Paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per æquales portiones. Ac etiam liberaturam & vesturam hujusmodi eidem *Edwardo Walker Garter* annuatim, quamdiu se bene gereret ad Magnam Garderobam suam, hæredum, & successorum suorum, per manus Custodis sive Clerici ejusdem Garderobæ suæ, hæredum, & successorum suorum, pro tempore existentis, liberandam, ac Firmariis, Custumariis, Collectoribus, & Receptoribus dictæ Custumæ suæ, & dicto Custodi & Clericis & singulis eorum mandavit, quod de tempore in tempus denarios prædictos annuatim eidem *Edwardo* persolverent & liberaturam & vesturam prædictam ei liberarent, & liberari facerent, prout per easdem Literas Patentes plenius liquet & apparet. Cumque prædictus *Edwardus Walker Garter* prædictas Literas Patentes in Curiam Cancellariæ nostræ nobis sursum reddiderit Cancellandas, ea tamen intentione, quod nos alias Literas nostras Patentes eidem *Edwardo Walker Garter* cum Augmentatione ulterioris feodi quinquaginta librarum præter & ultra antiquum feodum (sic ut prefertur) per præfatum præcharissimum Patrem nostrum concessum eidem *Edwardo Walker* concedere dignaremur, quam quidem sursum redditionem acceptavimus, ac per præsentem acceptamus. Scitis igitur, quod cum non sit novum, sed jamdiu ab antiquis temporibus usitatum, quod inter cæteros Officiarios & Ministros, quos

Principum lateribus pro eorum Magnificentia atque Gloria insistere decet, eorum præsertim, quibus Officii Armorum cura committitur, copiam habere deceat, ut nec tempus bellorum, neque pacis sine convenientibus & aptis Ministris debeat præteriri: Nos igitur considerationis aciem in fidelia & laudabilia servicia, quæ dilectus serviens noster *Edwardus Walker* Miles alias nuper dictus *Norrey* Rex Armorum parcium borealium Regni nostri Angliæ, in his quæ ad Officium illud spectare intelliguntur, exercuit, dirigentes, eundem propterea, & non minus ob solertiam & sagacitatem, quas in eo satis habemus exploratas in Principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum, & præcipuum Officiarium Armorum incliti nostri Ordinis *Garterii* ex Gratia nostra speciali ereximus, fecimus, constituimus, ordinavimus, creavimus, & coronavimus, ac per præsentem pro nobis, hæredibus, & successoribus nostris erigimus, facimus, constituimus, ordinamus, creamus, & coronamus ac ei Officium illud quod communiter *Garter* nuncupatur, necnon nomen *Garter*, Stilum, Titulum, Libertates, Præheminencias, & Commoditates hujusmodi Officio convenientes, concordantes, & pertinentes, ac ab antiquo consuetas eidem *Edwardo* damus & concedimus ac ipsum in eisdem realiter investimus per præsentem: Habendum, gaudendum, occupandum, & exercendum Officium illud, ac Nomen, Stilum, Titulum, Libertates, Præheminencias, & commoditates eidem *Edwardo Walker Garter*, quamdiu se bene gesserit in eodem Officio, cum omnibus juribus, proficuis, & emolumentis quibuscunque, eidem Officio qualitercunque spectantibus & pertinentibus: Dantes ulterius, & per tenorem præsentium concedentes eidem *Edwardo Walker Garter* cætera omnia & singula, quæ dicto incumbunt Officio Principalis Regis Armorum Anglicorum & præcipui Officiarii Armorum incliti nostri Ordinis *Garterii* sive inesse dignoscuntur in Jure vel ex consuetudine temporis retroacti longinqui faciendum, exercendum, & exequendum in tam amplis modo & forma, prout *Henricus St. George* Miles nuper *Garter*, *Johan. Burrough* Miles, *Williel. Segar* Miles, *Williel. Deibick* Miles, *Gilb. Deibick* Miles, pater prædicti *Williel. Deibick*, aut aliquis alius antehac habens, seu occupans Officium prædictum habuit, & percepit, usus, vel gavisus fuit, exercuit, seu exercere potuit in eodem Officio vel ratione ejusdem Officii: Dantes ulterius & per tenorem præsentium concedentes eidem *Gartero* Autoritatem, Potestatem, & Licenciam Literas Patentes Armorum claris viris donandi secundum ordinationem per Comites Mariscallos nuper præscriptam & cum eorum Consensu. Cumque Regali nostro animo ruminavimus, prædictum annuale feodum quinquaginta librarum ad sustentandum decus & Honorem Officiarii nostri prædicti nimis esse exiguum, ideoque & meritis prædicti *Edwardi Walker*, nos ad hoc præsertim instigantibus, ulterius annuale feodum quinquaginta librarum eidem Officio adjicere statuimus, non solum ipsi durante vita sua, verum etiam ad ejus requisitionem successoribus suis in prædicto Officio imposterum in perpetuum solvendum: Ulterius igitur scitis, quod nos voluntatem nostram Regiam per præsentem declaramus, quod prædictum ulterius annuale feodum (præter antiquum) quinquaginta librarum prædicto Officio Principalis Regis Armorum Anglicorum & præcipui Officiarii Armorum incliti nostri Ordinis *Garterii* in perpetuum fuerit ac per præsentem pro nobis, hæredibus & successoribus nostris prædictum annuale feodum quinquaginta librarum (præter antiquum)



Commendation, including therein several Years during the Usurpation: He died suddenly on the 20th of *February* 1676-7, having left 7 Notes for his Will, whereby he devised some Books to his Successors, and several good Manuscripts to the College of Arms, notwithstanding the ill Usage he received from several designing Members of it.

His Body being conveyed to *Stratford* upon *Avon* in *Warwickshire*, was buried in that Church among the Graves of the *Clopton's* of *Clopton*, where there is a Monument fixed to the Wall, with an *I*n-scription to his Memory, whereon are his Arms with the *abovemen-*

antiquum) prædicto Officio annectimus & superaddi volumus in perpetuum. Dedimus igitur & concessimus, ac per præsentis pro nobis, heredibus, & successoribus nostris damus & concedimus eidem *Eduardo Walker Garter* a nobis in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum (ut præfertur) erecto, centum libras Sterlingorum per Annum ratione & causa ejusdem Officii, & pro exercitio ejusdem, Percipiendas eidem *Eduardo Walker Garter*, de exitibus & proficuis parvæ Custumæ nostræ, hæredum, & successorum nostrorum in portu Civitatis nostræ Londoniæ per manus Firmariorum, Custumariorum, Collectorum, sive Receptorum Custumæ prædictæ in portu prædicto, pro tempore existentium, a Festo Sancti Michaelis Archangeli ultimo preterito ante datum præsentium annuatim & singulis annis, pro & durante termino vitæ suæ, ad Festum Paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per æquales portiones solvendas, una-cum tali liberatura & vestura, quales, & in eisdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius Rex Armorum seu Heraldorum tempore *Eduardi tertii* nuper Regis Angliæ Progenitoris nostri existens in Regno nostro prædicto, vel postea habuit, & percepit: Habendum & percipiendum annuatim eidem *Eduardo Walker Garter* durante vita sua, dictas Centum Libras Sterlingorum de exitibus & proficuis provenientes de parva Custuma nostra in portu Civitatis nostræ Londoniæ per manus Firmariorum, Custumariorum, Collectorum, sive Receptorum ibidem pro tempore existentium, ad Festum Paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli, per æquales portiones, ac etiam liberaturam & vesturam hujusmodi eidem *Eduardo* annuatim durante vita sua ad magnam Garderobam nostram, Heredum, & Successorum nostrorum per manus Custodis sive Clerici ejusdem Garderobæ nostræ, Heredum, & Successorum nostrorum pro tempore existentium liberandas; ac Firmariis, Custumariis, Collectoribus, & Receptoribus dictæ Custumæ nostræ, & dicto Custodi & Clericis, & singulis eorum mandamus, quod de tempore in tempus denarios prædictos annuatim eidem *Eduardo* persolvant, & liberaturam & vesturam prædictam eidem liberent, & liberari faciant, & Thesaurario & Baronibus Scaccarii nostri, hæredum, & successorum nostrorum, ac aliis quorum interest, mandamus, quod de eisdem denariis, liberatura & vestura eidem *Eduardo* solutis vel liberatis, Literis ejus acquietancie solutionem denariorum prædictorum, ac prædictæ liberaturæ seu vesturæ testificationibus ostensis, eisdem Firmariis, Custumariis, Collectoribus, & Receptoribus, ac prædicto Custodi & Clericis debitam allocationem super eorum Computis fieri faciant, aliquo Statuto, Actu, Ordinatione, Provisione, Proclamatione, seu Restrictione, in contrarium inde antehac habitis, factis, editis, ordinatis, sive provisus, aut aliqua alia re, Causa, vel materia quacunque in aliquo non obstantibus, eo quod expressa mentio, &c. In cujus rei, &c. Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium vicesimo die Octobris.

Per breve de privato Sigillo.

r Lib. Hale in Cur. Prærog. 36.

J M S.  
*Edwardi Walker* Equitis Aurati  
ex antiqua ejusdem nominis stirpe  
(de Casterne in agro *Staffordie*)  
Oriundi;

Qui per omnes  
Curæ Heraldicæ gradus ascendens,  
in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum  
titulo *Garter*

Merito tandem evehctus est,  
Seviente nuper Civili incendio  
a secretis Belli

Regi *Carolo* primo,  
*Carolo* deinde II ab interioribus Consiliis  
Clericus fideliter inservijt:

Uxorem *Agnetem Job. Reeve de Bookham*, S. Th. D.  
in Comitatu *Surrie* filiam  
(juxta heic tumultatam)

duxit,  
e qua filiam unicam suscepit *Barbaram*,  
quam *Johanni Clopton* Equiti aurato  
nuptui dedit.

Obiit xx. Feb. A. Dom. MDCLXXVI.  
Ætatis LXV.

t *Carolus R.*

*Carolus* Dei Gratia Angliæ, Scotiæ, Franciæ & Hiberniæ Rex, Fidei Defensor, &c. Omnibus ad quos præsentis Literæ pervenerint Salutem: Cum Regio intersit muneri virtuti publicæ testimonium perhibere, ut memoria bene merentium in æternum conservetur ad eorum laudem, & aliorum ad similia peragenda emulationem; Cumq; sit summæ fortitudinis in publico Principis & Patriæ discrimine Rebellionum conatibus se opponere, & in communi defectione fidem integram & illibatam conservare, Cumq; dilectus & fidelis servus noster *Edwardus Walker* Eques auratus vulgo dictus *Garterus* principalis Rex Armorum Anglicorum Filius secundo genitus *Edwardi Walker* nuper de *Netherstoney* in Comitatu *Somersetiæ* nepos *Johannis Walker* pronepos *Edwardi Walker* filii secundo geniti *Johannis Walker* de *Castborne* in Comitatu *Staffordie* Armigeri, e generosa & antiqua ejusdem Cognominis familia inter *Coritanos* oriundus sit, in exordio nefariæ in Angliâ Rebellionis ad partes serenissimi Patris nostri beatissimæ memoriæ convolverit, & per plures Annos ei fuerit a secretis Bellicis, & in rebus arduis cum fortunæ jactura, & vitæ discrimine ei deservierit, omnibusq; Consiliis bellicis, præliis, & obsidiis cum serenissimo Patre nostro perpetue interfuit: Rebellionem prævalente patre nostro se inter *Scotos* refugiente & *Oxonia* reddita, selectus fuit ad reddendum rationem redditionis patri nostro tunc sub custodia *Scotorum* apud *Newcastle*, eiq; gratissimus erat, & paucis post diebus speciali Rebellionum ordinatione amotus fuit, & per Patrem nostrum summa cum fiducia ad charissimam matrem nostram Reginam in *Galliam* legatus fuit: Et cum præcharissimus pater noster sub Rebellionum Custodia in Insula *Vectis* conclusus fuerit durante translatione

N n n n n

statione



tioned Augmentaion, impaling those granted by himself to his Lady Agnes, who was the Daughter of Dr. John Reeve of Bookham in Surrey.

He used, for a Badge or Crest, a Wheat-sheaf supported by a white Lion and red Dragon issuing out of the Crown of a King of Arms, relative to his Offices of *Blanch Lion*, *Rougedragon*, and *Chester*, before he was promoted higher, which are painted in the Glass-windows at *Clopton*, the Seat of Sir John Clopton who married his Daughter and Heiress, and for his Motto *Loyaulte mon Honneur*, which he made good in all Instances, having served throughout the War, and waited afterwards on King Charles II during his Exile, with unblemished Integrity.

XIII. Some Memorials of the Life of Mr. Ashmole, and also of Sir William Dugdale, written by themselves, have been lately published, in which are contained several imperfect Hints of a Dispute, which arose about the Filling the Place of *Garter* upon this Vacancy; which Transaction might be easily set in its true Light by the Addition of some original Papers, if such a Supplement was not foreign to this Place.

Mr. Dugdale Norroy, being then aged seventy-one Years and seven Months, had this Office conferred on him by "Patent, bearing Date 26 April, 29 Car. II. 1677.

Statione pacis partes habuit, & ad præsens nobis in officio Clerici interioris nostri Consilii deservierit. Cumq; non solum dictus Edwardus, sed omnes fratres ejus arma sumplerant contra Rebelles, & nominatim Philippus & Thomas per omnes gradus militares Tribuni Militum sive Colonelli merito evaserunt: Sciatis igitur, quod nos prædictum Edwardum & fratres suos aliquo Charactere meritorum eorum & nostræ in eos benevolentiae insigniri volentes, ex gratia nostra speciali, certa scientia, & mero motu nostris dedimus & concessimus, & per præsentem Literas nostras Patentes damus, & concedimus prædicto Edwardo Walker, Fratribusq; suis hæredibus & descendentes eorum respective, quod ipsi in posterum in Augmentatione Armorum, ut honoris tesseras gestare possint & valeant, In clypeo Argenteo Crucem Angliæ Rubram quinque capitibus Leopardorum deauratis decoratam, Anglicano idiomate, Argent, on a Cross Gules, five Leopards Heads Or, prout ea margine præsentium vivis coloribus depinguntur: Volentes quod ipsi, hæredes, & descendentes eorum respective cum Familiæ eorum propriis, quæ sunt in clypeo Argenteo Tignum inter tres Lunulas crescentes nigratas, Anglice, Argent, a Chevron between three Crescents Sable, Insignia prædicta in primo loco, vel quaternatim gestare possint, & valeant, Habendum, tenendum, ferendum, & gestandum Insignia prædicta præfato Edwardo Walker, Fratribusq; suis, hæredibus, & descendentes eorum in perpetuum: Mandamus etiam tenore præsentium omnibus & singulis Armorum Regibus, Feodalibus, & aliis Officiariis, & subditis nostris quibuscunque, quod præfatum Edwardum Walker, Fratres suos, hæredes, & descendentes eorum respective Insignia prædicta superius descripta, & explicata, in Scutis, Parmis, Clypeis, Sigillis, alijsq; Figuris debito more depicta, vel insculpta, in posterum semper gestare permittant, absq; ullo impedimento vel molestia in ea parte fienda vel exhibenda; volumus deniq; quod hæc Literæ nostræ Patentes vel irrotulamenta earundem firmæ, bonæ, & validæ in lege existant, secundum veram earundem intentionem, & effectum, aliquo Statuto, Actu, Ordinatione, vel aliqua Lege, re vel materia quacunque in contrarium non obstante: In cujus rei testimonium has Literas no-

stras fieri fecimus Patentes; Teste meipso apud Castrum Elizabethæ in Insula nostra de Jersey Octavo die Februarii Anno Regni nostri secundo Annoq; Domini 1649.

" Pars pat. de Anno 29 Car. 2. n. 3.

Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem, Sciatis, quod cum non sit novum, sed jam diu ab antiquis temporibus usitatum, quod inter cæteros Officiarios & Ministros, quos principum lateribus pro eorum magnificentia atq; gloria insistere decet, eorum præfatum, quibus Officii Armorum cura committitur, copiam habere deceat, ut nec tempus bellorum neq; pacis sine convenientibus & aptis ministris debeat preteriri: Nos igitur considerationis aciem in fidelia & laudabilia servicia, quæ dilectus serviens noster Willielmus Dugdale armiger, alias nuper dictus Norroy Rex Armorum partium borealium Regni nostri Angliæ, in hiis, quæ ad Officium illud spectare intelliguntur, exercuit, dirigentes, Eundem propterea, & non minus ob solertiam & sagacitatem, quas in eo satis habemus exploratas, in Principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum & præcipuum Officiarium Armorum Incliti nostri Ordinis Garterii ex Gratia nostra speciali ereximus, fecimus, constituimus, ordinavimus, creavimus, & coronavimus, ac per præsentem pro nobis, hæredibus, & successoribus nostris erigimus, facimus, constituimus, ordinamus, creamus, & coronamus, ac ei Officium illud quod communiter Garter nuncupatur, necnon nomen Garter, stylum, titulum, libertates, præheminentias, & commoditates hujusmodi officio convenientes, concordantes, & pertinentes, ac ab antiquo consuetas eidem Willielmo damus, & concedimus; ac ipsum in eisdem realiter investimus per præsentem: Habendum, gaudendum, occupandum, & exercendum Officium illud, ac nomen, stylum, titulum, libertates, præheminentias, & commoditates prædictas eidem Willielmo Dugdale Garter, quamdiu se bene gesserit in eodem Officio, cum omnibus Juribus, proficiis, & emolumentis quibuscunque eidem officio qualitercunque spectantibus, & pertinentibus: Dantes ulterius & per tenorem præsentium concedentes eidem Willielmo Dugdale Garter cætera omnia, & singula, quæ dicto incumbunt Officio principalis Regis Armorum Anglicorum



The Crown, by the *Grant* in this Patent, created *Dugdale* to be *Garter*, with the Liberties and Commodities thereto belonging, and antiently accustomed; and the *Habendum* limited this Estate to him during his good Behaviour, with all Rights, Profits, and Emoluments any ways appertaining, in as large Manner and Form, as any Person (whereof his Predecessors to Sir *Gilbert Dethick* inclusive are specified by their Names) did enjoy, or any other whatever had formerly enjoyed the same. The Terms *Grant* and *Habendum* are here used in their technical Senses, because in the Eye of the Law they have their proper Operations; so that if *after them*, any Powers be inserted in Letters Patents, such an Insertion could be of no validity, unless such Power had been incident, or Parcel of the Office before granted. The *Grant* then and *Habendum* contain a Reference to the antient Rights of *Garter* in as strong comprehensive Language, as Grammar can express; and here it would be an unpardonable Omission to pass over the judicial<sup>a</sup> Determination in the very Case of *Garter*, that such a general Reference to a former Patent or Grant was fully effectual in Law. Then there follows in this Patent, a new independent Clause solemnly ushered in by the Sovereign's Averment of a *farther Grace* to this Patentee, which is

rum & præcipui Officiarii Armorum incliti nostri ordinis *Garterii* sive inesse dignoscuntur in Jure, vel ex consuetudine temporibus retroactis, faciendum, exercendum, & exequendum in tam amplis modo & forma, prout *Edwardus Walker* Miles nuper *Garter* defunctus, *Henricus St. George* Miles, *Johannes Burrough* Miles, *Gulielmus Segar* Miles, *Gulielmus Dethick* Miles, *Gilbertus Dethick* Miles pater prædicti *Gulielmi Dethick*, aut aliquis alius antehac habens seu occupans officium prædictum habuit & percepit, usus vel gavisus fuit, exercuit, seu exercere potuit in eodem Officio, vel ratione ejusdem Officii. Et ulterius de Uberiori Gratia nostra *Damus & Tenore præsentium concedimus eidem Garter auctoritatem, potestatem, & Licentiam cum consensu Comitis Marefcalli Angliæ, vel ejus Deputati pro tempore existentis sub manibus & sigillis suis propriis inscriptis de Tempore in Tempus prius dato vel significato Literas Patentes armorum & Cristarum simul & conjunctim cum Clarencieux & Norroy Regibus Armorum, vel eorum uno, aut solummodo per se ab eis separatim ad libitum & voluntatem Comitis Marefcalli sive ejus Deputati pro tempore existentis secundum eorum ordinationes vel statuta de tempore in tempus in ea parte respective emanata & emananda, claris viris concedendi & assignandi, & non aliter, nec quovis alio modo; Ita etiam quod si Idem Garter in aliquo præmissorum in contrarium fecerit, hæc præsens concessio nostra, & omnia in ea contenta cessent & penitus & omnino vacua ac nullius effectus vel vigoris cujuscunque sint & forent. Dedimus insuper & concessimus, ac per præsentem pro nobis, heredibus, & successoribus nostris damus & concedimus eidem *Willmo Dugdale* *Garter* a nobis in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum (ut præfertur) erecto centum libras *Sterling* per Annum, ratione, & causa ejusdem Officii, & pro exercitio ejusdem, percipiendas eidem *Willmo Dugdale Garter* de exitibus & proficiis parvæ Custumæ nostræ, heredum, & Successorum nostrorum in portu Civitatis nostræ *London* per manus Firmariorum, Custumariorum, Collectorum, sive Receptorum custumæ prædictæ in portu prædicto pro tempore existentium, a festo Annunciationis beatæ *Mariæ Virginis* ultimo præterito annuatim & singulis annis, quamdiu se bene gesserit, ad festa paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per equales portiones solvendas,*

una cum tali liberatura & vestura, quales, & in eisdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius Rex Armorum, vel Heraldus Armorum tempore *Edwardi* tertii nuper Regis Angliæ Progenitoris nostri existens in Regno nostro prædicto, vel postea, habuit, & percepit; Habendum & percipiendum annuatim eidem *Willmo Dugdale Garter* quamdiu se bene gesserit in prædicto officio dictas centum libras *Sterling* de exitibus & proficiis provenientibus de parva Custuma nostra in portu Civitatis nostræ *Londoniæ* per manus Firmariorum, Custumariorum, Collectorum, sive Receptorum ibidem pro tempore existentium ad festa paschæ & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli per equales portiones, ac etiam liberaturam & vesturam hujusmodi eidem *Willmo* annuatim, quamdiu se bene gesserit, ad magnam Garderobam nostram, heredum, & successorum nostrorum, per manus Custodis sive Clerici ejusdem Garderobæ nostræ, heredum, & Successorum nostrorum, pro tempore existentium liberandam, ac Firmariis, Custumariis, Collectoribus, & Receptoribus dictæ custumæ nostræ, & dictis Custodibus, & Clericis, & singulis eorum mandamus, quod de tempore in tempus denarios prædictos annuatim eidem *Willmo* perfolvant, & liberaturam & vesturam prædictas ei liberent, & liberari faciant, & Thesaurariis & Baronibus Scaccarii nostri, heredum, & successorum nostrorum, ac aliis quorum interest, mandamus, quod de eisdem denariis, liberatura vel vestura eidem *Willmo* solatis vel liberatis, literis ejus acquietantiæ solutionem denariorum prædictorum ac prædictam liberaturam seu vesturam testificantibus ostensis, eisdem Firmariis, Custumariis, Collectoribus, & Receptoribus, ac prædictis Custodibus, & Clericis debitam allocationem super eorum computis fieri faciant, aliquo Statuto, Actu, Ordinatione, Provisione, Proclamatione, seu Restrictione in contrarium inde antehac habitis, factis, editis, ordinatis, seu provisus, aut aliqua alia re, causa vel materia quacunq; in aliquo non obstantibus; eo quod expressa mentio, &c. In cuius rei, &c. Teste Rege apud *Westmonasterium* vicesimo sexto die *Aprilis*.

Per breve de privato Sigillo.

<sup>a</sup> *Hill. 5. E. 4. f. 8. Mich. 7 E. 4. f. 22.*

printed



printed at length with *Italick* Characters in the Margin; and though the same Royal Declaration hath been continued in the Patents of the succeeding *Garters*, in the same Position after the *Grant* and *Habendum*, yet under the Umbrage of this Clause, such an unlimited Power hath been exerted over one of them, that the two Provincial Kings were by *Warrants* from a late Deputy to the most Noble Officer mentioned in this Clause, commanded to grant Arms *jointly*, though from the View of these Instruments it appeared, that one of these Provincials, in every Instance, acted without his own District, and within the Territories of the other; and by this Means *Garter* principal King of Arms, without the Charge of Disability or Misfeasance, was for a considerable Tract of Time entirely excluded from executing one of the most beneficial Articles of his Function, declared to be his Right by the very Constitutions of this most noble Order.

The critical Rules of writing an History of the Succession in this Office, may not strictly justify the entering into a Debate, touching the true Import, and Interpretation of this Clause, and in Truth the Discussion of that Point, would take up too great a Compass in this Place. But since all Authorities and Powers either incident to Offices, or delegated by the Crown are Branches of Property, and included within the Notion of *Meum & Tuum*, it cannot therefore be esteemed any Breach of Decency, or good Manners, if *Garter*, whenever he shall apprehend himself aggrieved, should according to the Nature of the Trust reposed in him, attempt to vindicate the Rights of his Office in a Treatise for that Purpose, with Softness of Expressions, and a respectful Deference; for it cannot be expected, he should tamely relinquish them out of a servile Fear of offending any Person whatever. *Garter* cannot but assure himself from the Honour and Justice of the most noble Prince the Duke of *Norfolk*, Hereditary Earl *Marshal*, and *Marshal* of *England*, and from his Grace's strict and inviolable Regard to the Principles of Morality, that he shall not incur his Displeasure in asserting the Rights of this Office of *Garter*, but that he shall rather recommend himself to his Grace's Approbation, as having discharged the Duty of his humble and faithful Servant, a Servant to whom his Masters Rights have ever been, and ever will be as dear as his own, and whose Interests he is under the most invincible Engagements to consult, as well from the strongest Ties of Gratitude, as the highest personal Esteem. Such a Dissertation must in its Nature consist of several historical Deductions, as the Antiquity of the Division of this Kingdom into Heraldick Provinces, wherein it appears by an undeniable Proof, that the *Northern* Province was bounded by the River *Trent* above 450 Years since, as probably it might have been long before that Time, which was not an imaginary Line, but a Separation or Barrier in the Fraternity of Arms as real, as it was either in the Case of the Escheators or Wardens of the Forests. That for several Centuries there were *three* other provincial Kingdoms, whereof those of the *Eastern* and *Western* Parts were at length annexed to *Clarenceux*, who at first had only the *Southern* Parts under his Jurisdiction, by which Consolidation he first got Power over these two

*y Spelm. Gloss. v. Heraldus in Charta Petri Regis Hyraudorum.*

Territories.



Territories, like the Union of two Diocesses under one Bishop, or that of Parishes under one Incumbent, or in the Case of Pluralities: That every Provincial in Matters of Jurisdiction was confined within the Circuits of his own Diocese, (if that Term may be inoffensively used,) and by Reason of the Disparity in the respective Values of these Provinces, it was customary to translate from a less to a more beneficial *Royalty*, as the Constitutions settled at *Roan* in 14<sup>19</sup>/<sub>20</sub> express it, and as *Norroy* hath in later Ages been advanced to the Place of *Clarenceux*, whenever he had Interest enough to procure that Removal. But then though these Provincials had separate local Rights within their Districts exclusive of each other, yet when *Garter* Principal King of Arms of *Englishmen* was instituted (as the Instrument words it) “for encreasing the Name of the said noble Order, and to be intending to the Service of that Fellowship, the Brotherhood of the same, and of all the Gentry, and to be Sovereign within the Office of Arms, above all other Servants of Arms of the Right noble Realm of England.” He had not only an Heraldick Primacy thus vested in him over the whole Kingdom, wherein these several Provinces were contained, but exercised a cumulative Jurisdiction with each of these Provincials in their distinct Circuits, wherein there was observed, as the Civilians term it, a *Prevention* in the Article of granting Arms, that is a Priority in executing that Authority between him, and the Provincial; with this Restriction only, that the Grants of Arms by either Provincial within his own Marches was to be void and of none Effect, if the same was not registered with the *Garter* within a limited Time. To avoid such and other Inconveniencies that might arise by this Concurrence of Jurisdiction, it was a frequent Practice for *Garter* and each Provincial to enter into Agreements by Indentures, to join in such Grants with Regard to the particular Marches; and thus the Provinces were kept separate and without any Confusion: But in Case the Grantee had a Residence in both the Provinces, (which is allowed by the common and civil Laws,) then *Garter* hath joined with both Provincials, as in the Grants to Clergymen thus beneficed, in which all these Kings, being interested in different Respects acted within the Circuits of their own Spheres; and for the same Reason these may all join without any Invasion upon their separate Rights, in Declarations of the Arms of a common Ancestor, and also in the Confirmations of them to two or more Descendants, who at the same Time shall reside in these different Provinces. In the Narrative of the antient Methods of granting Arms, it will be proper to distribute the Times into different *Ara's*, that distinct Views may be taken of that Practice, not only before those Kings of Arms had any Patents for their Offices from the Crown, but while they had such Patents, wherein no Authority of granting Arms was inserted, and when such an Authority was expressly conveyed, at first by general Words, and afterwards by Words which seem restrictive. And then it will be more particularly requisite to examine the Nature of the present Clause, and to specify the Occasion of it, and if it be restrictive, how far it extends, and to lay down the Maxims of the common Law touching Interpretation in such Cases, and thereby to examine all the Words in the Series they are placed, and upon the



the whole admitting, that every Syllable of this Clause in the full Scope ought to take an Effect, whether if the same being construed distributively according to the subject Matter, or as the common Lawyers express it, *reddendo singula singulis*, there be not an obvious genuine Construction of it, consistent with the separate local Rights of all these three Kings, coherent with the Residue of the Tenours of their respective Patents, and the Nature of their Offices and Titles, conformable to their different Creations, and with the Terms of their Oaths upon their Admissions, without confounding or annihilating the Provinces, or prejudicing the Rights of each other, (which it would be hard to infringe, or alienate by a Clause in a Patent to a distinct Officer,) and without rendering either of them an insignificant useless Cypher, and not only corresponding with the known Usages and Decrees of former Ages, but with the ancient and continued Practice in foreign Realms: Which latter Analogy will illustrate this Matter, whatever Weight may be allowed to it in our Courts of Law, though Coats of Arms and Officers of Arms have been universally allowed as Parcel of the Law of Nations in the *Western* Parts. And then the Conjunction of the three Kings of Arms in the Beginning of the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, according to an Order obtained upon their particular <sup>z</sup> Instance and Application, will be an Example of little Force, especially since that upon the Experience of the Inconveniency thereof, these same Kings soon receded from it and made Grants separately, and the like Answer may be given to an <sup>a</sup> Order dated in 1673, that the same was <sup>b</sup> reversed by the Authority of the Power which enjoined it in 1680, which directs, that for the future, Grants of Arms should be made by the Provincial King joined with *Garter*, which is the last standing Order in this Matter.

But it is Time to return to Mr. *Dugdale*, who in his own Narrative of this Advancement, hath dropped one Expression which seems the Effect of some Partiality to his former Title, for he writes, that he declined coming to *London* after the Death of Sir *Edward Walker*, notwithstanding his Friends had importuned him, in Order to his obtaining this Office, being, as he words it, "*The next King of Arms, to whom it properly belonged:*" At that Time he was indeed *Norroy*, to which he was created before *Byshe* had been legally constituted *Clarenceux*, it is said legally, because he had usurped on that Office and on *Garter* also during the Rebellion: But though *Dugdale* was thus senior to *Byshe* by legal Creation, yet according to the Heraldick Oeconomy, he was not the next King of Arms to *Garter*, for *Clarenceux* always preceeds *Norroy* in the Fraternity and Corporation of Arms: Probably he did not mean that he was the next King in Precedence, but that this Office of *Garter* might belong to him as *Norroy*, under some other Circumstance, either as first by Creation, or the most antient Officer; However in either of these Senses, it seems to be only a Pretence, in that by the Inspection of the Succession it appears, that though seven *Norroys* had chanced to be formerly promoted, yet it is also

<sup>z</sup> Vinc. Mf. in Officio Armorum p. 147, 150, | 159.

<sup>a</sup> F. 25. in Off. Arm. p. 124.  
<sup>b</sup> Ibid p. 221.



evident that Officers of other Titles enjoyed this Place, and that some were directly advanced to it from Heraldships, and one from a Pursuivantship.

It would be a tedious and useless Repetition to enter upon the Particulars of the Life of this most industrious Antiquary, which have been printed in several distinct Pieces, wherein Care hath been taken to give a Character of him not inferior to his Merits. It would doubtless have been some Advantage if he had resided in the College, and executed his Office in Person, where his Character and Experience might have supported the Esteem and Reverence, that he must well remember had been paid to that Station before the civil Wars; but when by Reason of his Age, and his Attachment to his Affairs in the Country, he by Permission deputed his Son to execute this Office (who at that Time, and during his Father's Life was in no higher Post than that of *Windsor-Herald*) he seemed not to have the Interest of his Successors singly in his View. For though in Strictness a Representative may justly claim the Respect due to his Constituent, according to the Form of the Powers given him, in which Case an Affront shewn him in the Execution of them, is interpretatively done to the Principal; yet if the Rector of any College or Fraternity, consisting of Members of divers Orders subordinate to each other, should substitute one of an intermediate Degree, it would be a rare Occurrence, if a due Distance should be cheerfully paid, unless such a Deputy by the Eminence of some other Qualifications, should be enabled to sustain the Dignity of the Rector's Person, as well as capacitated to negotiate his Affairs. By such Means the Rules of Subordination may be neglected and a Parity introduced.

Sir *William* made his Will on *August* xth 1685, wherein he devised his Manuscript Books to the *Museum Ashmoleanum* in *Oxford*, and therein hath this Clause "Whereas Sir *Edward Walker* Knight deceas'd, my immediate Predecessor in the Office of *Garter*, did by his last Will and Testament bequeath unto his next Successor in the said Office four Manuscript Books, viz. two of the Arms, Crests, and Supporters of the *English* Nobility painted in Colours, and two other touching the Knights of the most noble Order of the *Garter*, unto both which I have added what hath happened in my Time, as also perfect Indexes to them all, and likewise a large printed Book in Folio, of the whole Ceremony used at the Coronation of the late King *Charles* the Second, which five Books are now in my Study at *London*; My Will is, that within three Months next after my Decease, they be carefully delivered to my next Successor in the Office of *Garter*, and so to his Successor, and from Successor to Successors according to the Will of the said Sir *Edward Walker*." And having thus enjoyed this Office for near nine Years, he died on the xth of *February* 1686.

XIV. The fourteenth *Garter* was Sir *Thomas St. George Norroy* (eldest Son of Sir *Henry St. George* the eleventh *Garter*) who in *July* 1660, after



the Restoration, obtained a Signet to be *Somerset-Herald* in such Manner as *John Philpot* had enjoyed the same, which passed under the great Seal on the 12th of that Month. And in the latter End of the Year 1668, he was sent with *Sir Thomas Higgons* to carry the Ensigns of the *Garter* to *John George Duke of Saxony*, and at his Return, received the Honour of Knighthood from King *Charles* the Second, with the same Sword which he received from that Duke upon his Investiture. In *January* 1679-80 he obtained a Signet to be *Norroy King of Arms*, which soon passed under the great Seal. And after the Death of *Sir William Dugdale*, he obtained a Signet in *February* 1685 to be *Garter* during his good Behaviour, his <sup>d</sup> Patent for it being dated on the xith of *March* 2 *Jac.* II. 1686, wherein that King reserves Power to himself and Successors to revoke the same, by an Instrument under the great Seal.

He

d Pat. 2 Jac. 2. p. 5. n. 10.

Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem, Sciatis, quod cum non sit novum, sed jamdiu ab antiquis temporibus usitatum, quod inter ceteros Officiarios & Ministros, quos principum lateribus pro eorum magnificentia atq; gloria insistere decet, eorum præfertim, quibus Officii Armorum cura committitur, copiam habere deceat, ut nec tempus bellorum neq; pacis sine convenientibus & aptis ministris debeat præteriri: Nos igitur considerantes aciem in fidelia & laudabilia servitia, quæ dilectus serviens noster *Thomas St. George Miles*, alias nuper *Norroy Rex Armorum partium borealium Regni nostri Angliæ*, in his, quæ ad Officium illud spectare intelliguntur, exercuit, dirigentes, Eundem propterea, & non minus ob solertiam & sagacitatem, quas in eo satis habemus exploratas, in Principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum & præcipuum Officiarium Armorum Incliti nostri Ordinis *Garterii* ex Gratia nostra speciali ereximus, fecimus, constituimus, ordinavimus, creavimus, & coronavimus, ac per præsentem pro nobis, hæredibus, & successoribus nostris erigimus, facimus, constituimus, ordinamus, creamus, & coronamus, Ac ei Officium illud quod communiter *Garter* nuncupatur, nec non nomen *Garter*, stilum, titulum, libertates, præeminencias, & commoditates hujusmodi officio convenientes, concordantes, & pertinentes, ac ab antiquo consuetas eidem *Thomæ* damus, & concedimus; ac ipsum in eisdem realiter investimus per præsentem: Habendum, gaudendum, occupandum & exercendum Officium illud, Ac nomen, stilum, titulum, libertates, præeminencias, & commoditates prædicto eidem *Thomæ St. George Garter*, quamdiu se bene gesserit in eodem Officio, cum omnibus Juribus, proficiis, & emolumentis quibuscunque eidem officio qualitercunque spectantibus, & pertinentibus: Dantes ulterius, & per tenorem præsentium concedentes eidem *Thomæ St. George Garter* cætera omnia, & singula, quæ dicto incumbunt Officio principalis Regis Armorum Anglicorum & præcipui Officiarii Armorum incliti ordinis nostri *Garterii* sive inesse dignoscuntur in Jure, vel ex consuetudine temporibus retroactis, faciendum, exercendum, & exequendum in tam amplis modo & forma, prout *Gulielmus Dugdale Miles* nuper *Garter* defunctus, *Edwardus Walker Miles*, *Henricus St. George Miles*, *Johannes Burrough Miles*, *Gulielmus Segar Miles*, *Gulielmus Dethick Miles*, *Gilbertus Dethick Miles* pater prædicti *Gulielmi Dethick*, aut aliquis alius antehac habens seu occupans officium prædictum habuit & percepit, usus vel gavissus fuit, exercuit, seu exercere potuit in eodem Officio, vel ratione ejusdem Officii, Et ulterius de Uberiori Gratia no-

stra *Damus & Tenore præsentium concedimus eidem Garter auctoritatem, potestatem, & Licentiam cum consensu Comitum Marefcalli Angliæ, vel ejus Deputati pro tempore existentis sub manibus & sigillis suis propriis in scriptis de Tempore in Tempus prius dato vel significato Licet Patentes armorum & Crifarum simul & conjunctim cum Clarencieux & Norroy Regibus Armorum, vel eorum uno, aut solummodo per se ab eis separatim ad libitum & voluntatem Comitum Marefcalli sive ejus Deputati pro tempore existentis in ea parte respective emanatis & emanandis, claris viris concedendi & assignandi, & non aliter, nec quovis alio modo, Ita tamen quod si idem Garter in aliquo præmissorum in contrarium fecerit, hæc præsens concessio nostra, & omnia in ea contenta cessent penitus & omnia vacua ac nullius effectus vel vigoris cujuscunque sint & forent. Dedimus insuper & concessimus, ac per præsentem pro nobis, hæredibus, & successoribus nostris damus & concedimus eidem *Thomæ St. George Garter* a nobis in principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum, ut præfertur, erecto centum libras *Sterling* per Ann. ratione, & causa ejusdem Officii, & pro exercitio ejusdem, percipiendas eidem *Thomæ St. George Garter* de thesauro nostro heredum, & Successorum nostrorum ad receptam *Scaccarii* nostri, hæredum, & Successorum nostrorum per manus *Thesaurarii Angliæ* vel *Commissionariorum* *Thesauri* nostri & *Camerariorum* nostrorum ibidem pro tempore existentium a Festo Natalis Domini Dei jam ultimo elapso annuatim & singulis annis, quamdiu se bene gesserit, ad festa *Paschæ* & *Sancti Michaelis* Archangeli per equales portiones solvendas, unacum tali liberatura & vestura, qualem, & in eisdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius Rex vel *Heraldus* Armorum tempore *Edwardi* tertii nuper Regis Angliæ Progenitoris nostri existens in Regno nostro prædicto, vel postea, habuit, & percepit, Habendum & percipiendum annuatim eidem *Thomæ St. George Garter* quamdiu se bene gesserit in prædicto officio dictas centum libras *Sterling* de thesauro nostro hæredum & successorum nostrorum ad receptam *Scaccarii* prædicti per manus *Thesaurarii Angliæ* vel *Commissionariorum* thesauri nostri & *Camerariorum* ibidem pro tempore existentium ad festa *paschæ* & *Sancti Michaelis* Archangeli per æquales portiones, Ac etiam liberaturam & vesturam hujusmodi eidem *Thomæ St. George* annuatim, quamdiu se bene gesserit, ad magnam *Garderobam* nostram, heredum, & successorum nostrorum liberandam per manus *Custodis* ejusdem *Garderobæ* nostræ, heredum, & Successorum nostrorum, pro tempore existentis, ac dicto *Custodi*, & *Clericis*, & singulis eorum mandamus, quod de tempore in tempus eidem *Thomæ St. George* liberaturam & vesturam*



He was 70 Years of Age when he was thus promoted, and in the Beginning enjoyed a tolerable State of Health, being able in 169<sup>o</sup> to carry the Order of the *Garter* to the Duke of *Zell*: He was a Person of many Gentlemanlike Qualities, and continued in this Office near seventeen Years, till his Death on the 6th of *March* 170<sup>2</sup> in his 87th Year, and lies buried in the Church-yard of *Woodford* in *Kent*, under an Altar Tomb with this Inscription.

Here lyeth the Body of Sir THOMAS St. GEORGE Knight, GARTER Principal King of ARMES, who died the sixth Day of *March* 170<sup>2</sup> in the 87th Year of his Age, and was buried the 11th Day of the same Month; he married to his second Wife ANNA Daughter of Sir JOHN LAWSON Knight.

At the higher End or Top of the Stone is cut the Coat of St. George, with the Augmentation of *Sueden*, empaling per Pale a Cheveron counterchanged, and above it the Crest with the like Augmentation.

By this Lady he had no Children that survived him, but by his first *Clare* Daughter of *John Pymlove* Rector of *Cliff* in *Northampton*, he had a Son who died in his Life-time, leaving only one Daughter, and also other Children.

XV. The fifteenth *Garter* was Sir Henry St. George, younger Brother of the former, who went through several Gradations in the College by Virtue of Patents, being soon after the Restoration constituted *Richmond-Herald* 18 *June* 12 *Car.* II, thence created *Norroy* King of Arms on 27 *Apr.* 29 *Car.* II, and received the Honour of Knighthood, was advanced to be *Clarenceux* 28 *January* 31 *Car.* II, and at length he procured a Patent to be *Garter*, bearing Date 26 *Apr.* 2d<sup>o</sup> *Annæ*, when he was near

vesturam prædictas liberent, & liberari faciant. Et Thefaurario & Baronibus Scaccarii nostri, hæredum, & successorum nostrorum, ac aliis quorum interest, mandamus, quod de eisdem liberatura & vestura eidem *Thomæ St. George* liberatis, literis ejus acquietantiæ prædictæ liberatur. seu vesturæ testificantibus ostensis, prædicto Custodi, & Clericis debitam allocationem super eorum computis fieri faciant, aliquo Statuto, Actu, Ordinatione, Provisione, Proclamatione, seu Restrictione in contrarium inde antehac habitis, factis, editis, ordinatis, seu provis, aut aliqua re, causa vel materia quacunq; in aliquo non obstante. Provisio semper & per præsentibus nobis, hæredibus, & successoribus nostris plenam potestatem & auctoritatem reservamus has literas nostras patentes & omnia in eisdem contenta per scriptum sub magno Sigillo *Angliæ* revocandi & determinandi; Eo quod expressa mentio, &c. In cujus rei, &c. Teste meipso apud *Westminsterium* undecimo die *Martii*.

Per breve de privato Sigillo.

e Anna Dei Gratia *Angliæ, Scotiæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ* Regina, Fidei Defensor &c. Omnibus ad quos præsentibus Literæ nostræ pervenerint Salutem. Sciatis quod cum non sit novum, sed jam diu ab antiquis temporibus usitatum, quod inter cæteros officarios & ministros, quos Principum lateribus pro eorum magnificentia atq; gloria insistere decet, eorum præsertim, quibus Officii Armorum cura

committitur, copiam habere deceat, ut nec tempus Bellorum, neq; Pacis sine convenientibus & aptis Ministris debeat præteriri, Nos igitur considerantes fidelia & laudabilia servitia, quæ dilectus serviens noster *Henricus St. George* Miles alias nuper dictus *Clarenceux* Rex *Anglorum*, in his quæ ad officium illud spectare intelliguntur, exercuit, præfatum *Henricum St. George* Principalem Regem Armorum *Anglicorum* & præcipuum Officiarium Armorum Incliti nostri Ordinis *Garterii* ex Gratia nostra speciali, ac ex certa Scientia, & mero motu nostris creximus, fecimus, constituimus, ordinavimus, creavimus, & coronavimus, ac per præsentibus pro nobis, Hæredibus, & Successoribus nostris erigimus, facimus, constituimus, ordinamus, creamus, & coronamus, ac ei Officium illud quod communiter *Garter* nuncupatur, nec non nomen *Garter* Stilum, Titulum, Libertates, Præeminencias, & Commoditates hujusmodi Officio convenientes, concordantes, & pertinentes, ac ab antiquo consuetas eidem *Henrico* damus & concedimus in loco *Thomæ St. George* militis defuncti, ac ipsum in eisdem realiter investimus per præsentibus, habendum, gaudendum, occupandum, & exercendum officium illud, ac nomen, Stilum, Titulum, Libertates, Præeminencias, & commoditates prædictas eidem *Henrico St. George Garter*, quamdiu se bene gesserit in eodem Officio, cum omnibus Juribus, proficiis, & emolumentis quibuscunq; eidem Officio qualitercunq; spectantibus & pertinentibus. Dantes ulterius & per tenorem præsentium concedentes

P P P P P



near 78 Years of Age, in which Office he continued above twelve Years, dying on the 12th, and buried in the Church of *St. Bennets Paul's Wharf* on 18 August 1715. His Death was so late, that the Editor shall no ways attempt to give any Narrative of his Qualifications, and Conduct in the College, but leave that Province to his Relations, to do the Justice they shall conceive due from them to his Memory, or else to the residuary Legatee named in his Will. Thus this Place of *Garter* was granted successively to three Persons in the Decline of their Ages, when it might have been imagined, each of them should have contracted their Thoughts, and much rather have retired from the Fatigues of the Offices they then enjoyed, than engaged themselves in farther Ones by undertaking to preside at the Helm. As the Branches of the Functions of *Garter* are many and of large Extent, so several of them require a Briskness, Vigour, and Resolution in the *personal* Execution of them, for whenever these shall be exercised by the Direction or Administration of inferior Officers, during any Insufficiency of the Principal, in Abilities, either of Understanding, or of the Body, though no Disadvantage should accrew to the Service of the Publick, yet the Successors in this Office may experience the same Inconveniences from them, as Ecclesiasticks sensibly feel in those Benefices,

cedentes eidem *Henrico St. George Garter* cætera omnia & singula, quæ incumbunt dicto Officio Principalis Regis Armorum Anglicorum & præcipui Officiarii Armorum incliti nostri Ordinis *Garterii* sive inesse dignoscuntur in Jure vel ex consuetudine temporibus retroactis, faciendum, exercendum, & exequendum in tam amplis modo & forma, prout præfatus *Thomas St. George*, aut aliquis alius antehac habens, seu occupans Officium prædictum habuit, & percepit, usus, vel gavisus fuit, exercuit, seu exercere potuit in eodem Officio vel ratione ejusdem Officii: Et ulterius de uberiori gratia nostra damus & tenore præsentium concedimus eidem *Garter* Autoritatem, Potestatem, & licentiam cum consensu Comitris *Mareschalli Angliæ* vel ejus Deputati pro tempore existentis sub manibus & sigillis suis propriis in scriptis de tempore in tempus prius dato vel significato, Literas patentes Armorum & Crestarum simul & conjunctum cum *Clarenceux* & *Norroy* Regibus Armorum, vel eorum uno, vel solummodo per se ab iis separatim, ad libitum & voluntatem Comitris *Mareschalli*, sive ejus Deputati pro tempore existentis secundum eorum Ordinationes vel Statuta de tempore in tempus in ea parte respectively emanata & emananda claris viris concedendi & assignandi, & non aliter nec quovis alio modo; Ita etiam, quod si idem *Garter* in aliquo præmissorum in contrarium fecerit hæc præfens concessio nostra, & omnia in ea contenta penitus cessabunt, & vacua erunt, ac nullius effectus vel vigoris cujuscunque; Dedimus insuper & concessimus ac per præfentes pro nobis, Hæredibus, & Successoribus nostris damus & concedimus eidem *Henrico St. George Garter* a nobis in Principalem Regem Armorum *Anglicorum* erecto (ut præfertur) centum libras legalis monetæ *Angliæ* per annum, ratione & causâ ejusdem Officii, & pro exercitio ejusdem, habendum & percipiendum dictam summam centum Librarum per annum eidem *Henrico St. George Garter* de tali thesauro nostro, Hæredum, & Successorum nostrorum, qualis ad hujusmodi solutionem legaliter applicari possit ad Receptam Scaccarii nostri, Hæredum, & Successorum nostrorum per manus Thesaurarii *Angliæ* vel Commissionariorum Thesauri nostri & Came-

rariorum nostrorum ibidem pro tempore existentium a Festo Paschæ jam ultimo elapso annuatim, & prima semiannualis solutio inde facienda in & pro Festo *Paschæ* & Sancti *Michaelis* Archangeli proximi sequentis datum præsentium, & subsequentes solutiones prædictæ summæ centum Librarum per annum faciendas & in super Festa *Paschæ* & Sancti *Michaelis* Archangeli annuatim, & singulis annis per æquales Portiones, quamdiu se bene gesserit in Executione Officii prædicti, una cum tali liberatura & vestura, qualem & in eisdem modo & forma, prout aliquis alius Rex vel Heraldus Armorum tempore *Edwardi Tertii* nuper Regis *Angliæ* prædecessoris nostri existens in Regno nostro prædicto, vel habuit, & percepit, dictam liberaturam & vesturam annuatim liberandam eidem *Henrico St. George*, quamdiu se bene gesserit in Officio prædicto, ad magnam Garderobam nostram, Hæredum, & Successorum nostrorum pro tempore existentium per manus Custodis ejusdem Garderobæ nostræ, Hæredum, & Successorum nostrorum pro tempore existentis, ac dicto Custodi & Clericis & singulis eorum mandamus, quod de tempore in tempus eidem *Henrico St. George* liberaturam & vesturam prædictam liberent, & liberari faciant, & Thesaurario, & Baronibus Scaccarii nostri, Hæredum & Successorum nostrorum, ac aliis quorum interest, mandamus, quod de eisdem liberatura & vestura eidem *Henrico St. George* liberata (Literis ejus acquietaneis prædictam liberaturam seu vesturam testificantibus ostensis) prædicto Custodi & Clericis debitam allocationem super eorum computum fieri faciant: Denique volumus ac per præfentes concedimus, quod hæc Literæ nostræ patentes, vel irrotulamentum earundem sint & erunt in omnibus, & per omnia, bona, firma, valida, & effectualia in lege, aliquo defectu, incertitudine, re, causâ, vel materia quacunque in aliquo non obstante. In cujus rei Testimonium has literas nostras fieri fecimus Patentes, Teste meipso apud *Westmonasterium* decimo sexto die Junii Anno Regni nostri secundo

Per breve de privato Sigillo,

Cocks.

whereon



whereon their Predecessors for some Incumbencies have been non-resident, in which Circumstances they frequently find, not only a Dilapidation of the Houses, but (if it may be so termed) of the Rights too, which are not retrievable without great Application.

It hath been observed how careful Sir *William Dugdale* was, that the Intention of Sir *Edward Walker* in the Donation of some Manuscripts should be made effectual, which occasions the mentioning another Legacy. Mr. *Camden Clarenceux* in his Will written with his own Hand, made the following Devise, “as for my <sup>f</sup> Books and Papers, my Will is, that “Sir *Robert Cotton* of *Conington* Knight and Baronet shall have the first “View of them, that he may take out such as I borrowed of him, and “I bequeath unto him all my imprinted Books, and Manuscripts, except such as concern Arms and Heraldry, the which with all my ancient Seals I bequeath unto my Successor in the Office of *Clarenceux*, “Provided that whereas they cost me much, that he shall give to my “Cozen *John Wyat* Painter such Sum of Money, as Mr. *Garter* and “Mr. *Norroy* for the Time being shall think meet, and also that he leave “them to his Successor in the Office of *Clarenceux*.” Though he understood not the Niceties of the Law, yet he was the most competent Judge of the Value of the Particulars devised, and takes Care to express that they cost him much, and by a Note in his <sup>g</sup> Annals of King *James*, it appears that one Parcel which belonged to *Lancaster-Herald*, who died 19 Nov. 1613, [that is to *Nicholas Charles*] cost him ninety Pounds. What other Collections he had by his Industry recovered, and what particular Treatises he left in his own Writing, the Editor knows not; however it is not only certain that Sir *Richard St. George* succeeded him in the Title of *Clarenceux*, but that several, if not all of these Books which belonged to *Nicholas Charles*, with Books of Genealogies in the Handwriting of Mr. *Camden*, were in the Custody of this Sir *Henry St. George*, who while he was *Garter*, frequently promised to bequeath them to the College by his Will, wherein as it is said, there is only a Reservation to dispose of them, as he should think fit, by a future Codicil, which was never made, so that it is now in the Power of his Executor to supply this Deficiency, who must retain a Veneration for the Memory of Mr. *Camden*, as well as Reverence for the Memory of his Testator.

XVI. When Sir *Henry St. George* was not far distant from ninety Years of Age, Her late Majesty Queen *Anne* by a <sup>b</sup> Patent dated 2 Apr. in her thirteenth

<sup>f</sup> Lib. Swan in Cur. Prærog. f. 111.

<sup>g</sup> P. 10. ed. Smith.

<sup>b</sup> Anna Dei Gratia Magna Britanniae, Franciae, & Hiberniae Regina, fidei Defensor &c. Omnibus ad quos praesentes literae nostrae pervenerint salutem, Sciatis, quod cum non sit novum, sed jamdiu ab antiquis temporibus usitatum, quod inter ceteros Officiarios & Ministros, quos principum lateribus pro eorum magnificentia atq; gloria insistere decet, eorum praesertim, quibus Officii Armorum cura committitur copiam habere debeat, ut nec tempus bellorum neq; pacis sine convenientibus & aptis ministris debeat preteriri: Cumq; nos per Literas nostras Patentes sub magno

figillo nostro Angliae confectas gerentes datum apud Westmonasterium decimo sexto die Junii Anno Regni nostri secundo, dilectum servientem nostrum Henricum St. George Militem, Principalem Regem Armorum Anglicorum, & praecipuum Officiarium Armorum incliti nostri Ordinis Garterii crexerimus, fecerimus, constituerimus, ordinaverimus, creaverimus, & coronaverimus; Ac ei Officium illud quod communiter Garter nuncupatur, necnon nomen Garter, Stilum, Titulum, Libertates, Praeminentias, & Commoditates hujusmodi Officio convenientes, concordantes, & pertinentes, ac ab antiquo consuetas eidem Henrico dederimus, & con-



thirteenth Year, reciting her Grant formerly made to this Sir Henry, was pleased to constitute *John Anstis* Esq; *Garter*, to hold the same, during his good Behaviour, immediately after the Death, Surrender, Forfeiture, or other Determination of the Estate and Interest of the said Sir Henry. The

concefferimus per literas nostras patentes prædictas, habendum, gaudendum, occupandum, & exercendum officium illud, ac nomen, stilum, titulum, libertates, præheminencias, & commoditates prædictas eidem *Henrico St. George Garter*, quamdiu se bene gesserit in eodem Officio, prout per easdem literas patentes, relatione inde habita, plenius liquet & apparet: Qui quidem *Henricus St. George Garter* adhuc superstes, & in plena vita existit: Sciatis modo, quod Nos considerantes fidelia & laudabilia servitia, quæ dilectus serviens noster *Johannes Anstis* Armiger, alias dictus *Norfolk Heraldus*, in his, quæ ad Officium illud spectare intelliguntur, exercuit, præfatum *Johannem Anstis* Principalem Regem Armorum *Anglicorum*, & præcipuum Officiarium Armorum *Incliti nostri Ordinis Garterii* ex Gratia nostra speciali, ac ex certa scientia, & mero motu nostris ereximus, fecimus, constituimus, ordinavimus, creavimus, & coronavimus, ac per præsentem pro nobis, hæredibus, & successoribus nostris erigimus, facimus, constituimus, ordinamus, creamus, & coronamus; Ac ei Officium illud quod communiter *Garter* nuncupatur, necnon nomen *Garter*, stilum, titulum, libertates, præheminencias, & commoditates hujusmodi officio convenientes, concordantes, & pertinentes, ac ab antiquo consuetas eidem *Johanni Anstis Garter*, damus, & concedimus, ac ipsum in eisdem realiter investimus per præsentem: Habendum, gaudendum, occupandum, & exercendum Officium illud, ac nomen, stilum, titulum, libertates, præheminencias, & commoditates prædictas eidem *Johanni Anstis Garter*, immediate post mortem, sursum redditionem, foris facturam, vel aliam quamcumque determinationem status & interesse præfati *Henrici St. George Garter* in Officio prædicto, quamdiu se bene gesserit in eodem Officio, cum omnibus Juribus, proficiis, & emolumentis quibuscunque eidem officio qualitercunque spectantibus, & pertinentibus: Dantes ulterius, & per tenorem præsentium concedentes eidem *Johanni Anstis Garter*, cum & quam cito Officium prædictum vacaverit, ut præfertur, cætera omnia & singula, quæ incumbunt dicto Officio principalis Regis Armorum *Anglicorum* & præcipui Officii Armorum *Incliti nostri ordinis Garter* sive inesse dignoscuntur in Jure, vel ex consuetudine temporibus retroactis, faciend. exercend. & exequendum in tam amplis modo & forma, prout præfatus *Henricus St. George Garter* modo habens seu occupans officium prædictum habet, & percipit, utitur, vel gaudet, exercet, seu exercere potest in eodem officio, vel ratione ejusdem officii, aut aliquis alius antehac habens, seu occupans officium prædictum habuit & percipit, usus vel gavissus fuit, exercuit, seu exercere potuit in eodem Officio, vel ratione ejusdem Officii: Et ulterius de Uberiori Gratia nostra Damus & Tenore præsentium concedimus eidem *Johanni Anstis Garter* cum & quam cito Officium prædictum vacaverit, ut præfertur, auctoritatem, potestatem, & Licentiam cum consensu Comitum *Marescalli Angliæ*, vel ejus *Deputati* pro tempore existentis sub manibus & sigillis suis propriis in scriptis de Tempore in Tempus prius dato vel significato, Literas Patentes Armorum & Crestarum simul & conjunctim cum *Clarencieux* & *Norroy Regibus Armorum*, vel eorum uno, vel solummodo per se ab iis separatim ad libitum & voluntatem Comitum *Marescalli*, sive ejus *Deputati* pro tempore existentis, secundum eorum Ordinat. vel Statut. de tempore in tempus in ea parte respective

emanat. & emanand. clavis viris concedendi & assignandi, & non aliter, nec quovis alio modo, ita etiam quod si idem *Johannes Anstis Garter* in aliquo præmissorum in contrarium fecerit, hæc præsens concessio nostra, & omnia in eadem contenta penitus cessabunt & vacua erunt, ac nullius effectus vel vigoris cujuscunque. Dedimus insuper & concessimus, ac per præsentem pro nobis, heredibus, & successoribus nostris damus & concedimus eidem *Johanni Anstis Garter* a nobis in Principalem Regem Armorum *Anglicorum* erecto (ut præfertur) centum Libras legalis monete *Magnæ Britanniæ* per Annum ratione & causa ejusdem Officii, & pro exercitio ejusdem, habendam, & percipiendam dictam summam centum Librarum per Annum eidem *Johanni Anstis Garter* de tali Thesauro nostro, heredum, & Successorum nostrorum, qualis ad hujusmodi solucionem legaliter applicari possit ad receptam *Scaccarii* nostri, hæredum, & Successorum nostrorum, per manus *Thesaurarii* nostri *Magnæ Britanniæ*, vel *Commissionariorum* de Thesauro nostro, & *Camerariorum* nostrorum ibidem pro tempore existentium, immediate post mortem, sursum redditionem, foris facturam, vel aliam quamcumque determinationem status & interesse præfati *Henrici St. George* in Officio & præmissis prædictis, annuatim & singulis annis, videlicet ad festa *Sancti Michaelis* *Archangelii*, & *Paschæ* per equales portiones solvendam, Quamdiu se bene gesserit in Officio prædicto, unacum tali liberatura & vestura, qualem, & in eisdem modo & forma, prout præfatus *Henricus St. George Garter* modo habet, & percipit, aut aliquis alius Rex vel *Heraldus* Armorum tempore *Eduardi Tertii* nuper Regis *Angliæ* *Prædecessoris* nostri existens, vel postea, habuit, & percipit, dictam liberaturam & vesturam annuatim liberandas eidem *Johanni Anstis Garter*, cum & quam cito Officium prædictum vacaverit, ut præfertur, quamdiu se bene gesserit in officio prædicto, ad magnam *Garderobam* nostram, hæredum & successorum nostrorum pro tempore existens per manus *Custodis* ejusdem *Garderobæ* nostræ, hæredum, & successorum nostrorum pro tempore existen. ac dictis *Custodi*, & *Clericis* suis, & singulis eorum mandamus, quod de tempore in tempus eidem *Johanni Anstis Garter* liberaturam & vesturam prædictas liberent & liberari faciant, & *Thesaurario* & *Baronibus Scaccarii* nostri, heredum, & successorum nostrorum, ac aliis quorum intererit mandamus, quod de eisdem liberatura & vestura eidem *Johanni Anstis Garter* liberatis, literis ejus acquietantiæ prædictæ liberaturæ seu vesturæ testificantibus ostensis, prædictis *Custodi* & *Clericis* debitam allocationem super eorum computos fieri faciant: Denique volumus, ac per præsentem pro nobis, hæredibus, & successoribus nostris concedimus, quod hæc literæ nostræ patentes, vel irrotulamentum earundem sint & erunt in omnibus, & per omnia bonæ, firmæ, validæ & effectuales in Lege, non obstantibus non recte, vel plene recitand. prædictas recitat. literas nostras patentes, vel datum earundem, aut aliquo alio defectu, incertitudine, re, causa, vel materia quacunque in aliquo non obstante: In cujus rei testimonium has literas nostras fieri fecimus patentes: Teste meipso apud *Westmonasterium* secundo die *Aprilis* Anno Regni nostri decimo tertio.

Per Breve de Privato Sigillo.

Cocks.

Editor



Editor makes no other Address to him, than in the Words of St. Bernard to *Eugenius* the third. “*Quibus successisti in sedem, ipsos sine dubio sequeris ad mortem.*”

It is Time to proceed to the other Particulars mentioned by Mr. *Asmole*, the Oath, Ensign, Badge, Privileges, Pension, and Duties of this Officer. There remains little to be added, to what he hath said about the Oath, though it should be observed, no Clause was ever inserted into the Patent of *Garter*, certifying his taking the Oath, as was continued in the contemporary Patents of the Provincial Kings, during several Reigns, wherein was a Paragraph of the following Tenour. “*Qui quidem — ad hunc statum nobis, presentibus omnibus aliis Regibus, & Heraldis, & quam plurimis Magnatibus, & Fide dignis regni nostri Angliæ prædictæ tunc coram nobis astantibus, & specialiter per nos ad hoc vocatis, adhibitis solennitatibus requisitis & consuetis, super sancta Dei Evangelia solenne præstitit sacramentum,*” which Certificate was likewise in the Patent of *Gloucester* King of Arms, erected by *Rich. III* for the Dominion of *Wales*, and also in the Patents of those *Clarenceux*’s who had the Fortune to be<sup>k</sup> promoted to that Place from the Province of *Norroy*. The Reason is obvious, because *Garter* was obliged to take his Oath in a Manner, different from these Provincials, which was to be taken in<sup>l</sup> Presence of the Sovereign, and the Companions of this Order, where it was administred to him by the Register. However Sir *Gilbert Dethick* seems to have taken his Oath before the Sovereign, out of a Chapter, if a<sup>m</sup> Ritual may be credited, though the Authority of that Instrument may justly be questioned, in that it specifies the reading of his Patent, which in Fact did not pass under the Great Seal, till some Days after the Date of that Ceremonial of his Creation. All the succeeding *Garters* were (as it may be supposed) sworn in Chapters, and the Memorials of several of them are registred in the Annals: Which hath been adjudged a sufficient<sup>n</sup> legal Creation without any other Method of Investiture, though some latter Officers have indiscreetly submitted to receive the Formality of it, by Virtue of a Commission under the Sign Manual.

Mr. *Asmole* hath confined himself only to the *Mantle*, *Rod*, and *Badge*, which are the late Symbols of *Garter* relative to this Order; to which Ensigns this Officer hath had a Right since the Institution of them, exclusive of all other Officers of Arms; but he also participates with other Kings of Arms in all the other Habits, belonging in general to the Profession. From this Variety of Robes thus used by *Garter* on different Occasions, an Argument was brought to prove, that he had two separate distinct Offices, according to the legal Acceptation of that Word; the Advocates who urged it, must have forgot, that the Judges of this and foreign Realms, have distinct Robes to be worn on distinct Solemnities, and that each Baron by Writ or Patent hath Robes of State, as well as Robes of Parliament; and even Mr. *Asm.* intimates, that these relative Ensigns were not

i Pat. 1 R. 3. p. 5. m. 1.

k Pat. 2 H. 7. p. 2. m. 8. Pat. 2 H. 8. p. 2. m. 8.

Pat. 26 H. 8. p. 2. m. 17. &c.

l Black-book in the Append. p. 460.

m P. 10. penes me p. 64. It bears Date 20 Apr.

n whereas his Patent was on the 29th of that Month.

n Leonard 1 Rep. p. 248. &c.



coæval with the Erection of *Garter*, so that the Addition of a new collated Office arose according to this Supposition, from the Grant of these new Ornaments to an Officer subsisting. But this Subject of the Diversity of Offices, hath been <sup>o</sup> already touched upon, and is not worth any farther Consideration, for it is but the same Man and the same Officer still, though he appears every Day in a different Suit of Cloths.

The Character of an Officer of Arms belonging to an Order, might be sufficiently known within the Verge of it, without any particular Discrimination in his Habit, taken from any Emblems of the Order: But as such Officers have been likewise employed in foreign Parts to defy Princes, proclaim Wars, summon Towns to surrender, and at Home to declare Rebels &c. it became absolutely necessary, that on such Occasions, they should be invested in such Habits, which by the Laws of Nations protected them in those critical Messages. And as *Garter* hath thus <sup>p</sup> frequently officiated, it may not be foreign to insert some Observations briefly upon the *Tabert*, and all his other Ensigns, which indeed deserve a larger Dissertation, that would be instructive, and not wholly unentertaining.

If the Sovereign and Nobility had continued the antient Practice of Wearing their Coat-Arms embroidered upon their Surcoats, the Dignity and Grandour of the upper Vestment of the Heralds, must have affected the Eyes of the By-standers in such Manner, as to have left on them lasting Impressions of Reverence for their Persons; But that Mode being altered, it is not to be wondered, that the vulgar People, who are mostly governed by Appearances, should upon the first Sight of an Herald at some Distance, entertain the same confused Notion of his Habit, as if they beheld a Gentleman walking the Streets in the common Apparel of his Ancestors, worn under the Reigns of the old *Henry's* and *Edward's*; But though common Spectators may not have such a Measure of Knowledge in Antiquities to be ascertained, that these Vestments of the Heralds were the real military Robes, worn formerly by the Sovereigns themselves, yet upon a nearer Inspection, as soon as they should perceive the Royal Arms wrought upon them, they cannot but retain some civil Respect for those who wear them; But it will never be credited without Proof, that in the last Century, a venerable Judge should upon the incident naming of Heralds in a Case, where they were not Plaintiffs or Defendants, term them *Gentlemen in Fools Coats*, which seems to have been an hasty Expression, if not dropt upon some private Resentment: For though it will be allowed, that an Habit, how splendid soever, avails little, when either the Man who wears it, or his Profession is grown out of *Fashion*; yet the Wearing the outward Robes of the Prince, hath been esteemed by the <sup>q</sup> Consent of Nations, to be an extraordinary Instance of Favour and Honour, as in the Precedent of *Mordecai* under a King of *Persia*, though when <sup>r</sup> another Person for Reward of some Services requested from the same, or another King of *Persia* the like Permission of wearing the royal Vestment, and

<sup>o</sup> See above p. 310, 311, 312.

<sup>p</sup> See above p. 351, note x. p. 354, note d. 357, note a, p. 372 note b, p. 349 note g, p. 351 note d, p. 353 note a, &c.

<sup>q</sup> *Louys d'Orleans les Ouvertures des Parlemens* p. 255. *Du Chefne Antiquitez & Recherches de la France* p. 517, 518.  
<sup>r</sup> *Hobbes Leviathan* p. 43.



obtained his Petition with the Addition of wearing it, as the King's Fool, that conditional Concession no ways contributed to his Reputation: And until the Case of the Heralds shall be proved to run parallel with this latter Instance, it will remain a Doubt, whether the denominating them *Gentlemen in Fools Coats*, became a Person of Birth or Education, or was not below the Gravity of a Judge, not only habited in a Livery of the Crown, which had some Particularities too in its Shape, but covered remarkably with a black *Coif* turned up with a white Edging, which is as singular in its Form, as any Ensign belonging to an Herald; and though a rational Account can be given of the Original of this particoloured *Coif* allotted to the Sergeants at Law, as also of their particoloured Gowns, yet the Reasonableness of that Institution could not secure this *Coif* from being exhibited, for the Subject of Ridicule among *Christmas Mummeries* to divert *Rich. II.* and his Court. But Articles relating to Lawyers are tender Points, and it ought to be remembred, that the great Professor of Law *Hortensius*, who went through the Offices of Quæstor, Ædile, Prætor, and Consul, and who almost equall'd *Cicero* in Oratory, brought an Action against his Collegue for ruffling the Symmetry of his Gown in a narrow Passage. Bishop<sup>u</sup> *Gardiner* run into a more defenceless Excess on the other Side, when from the Practice of Heralds in bearing the Sovereign's Coat, the King's Image on his Seal, and *Cæsars* Image on his Coin, he attempted to draw an Argument in Divinity for the Worship of Images in Churches. In a middle Course between these Extremities, our learned<sup>x</sup> Glossographer stiled Heralds the Statues (as it were) of their Princes, and another Author gives them the Appellation of Shadows of Royalty, which represent Majesty; and how far these Coats rendered their Persons inviolable throughout all civilized Nations, will appear in the Sequel of this Discourse.

An Author treating upon the<sup>y</sup> Antiquities of *Germany*, hath inserted a Disquisition touching the Ensigns of Heralds, which the Collector hath not had the good Fortune to inspect, who wants the Instruction, which that Treatise might probably afford him. In many Parts of this Chapter

f The Clementine Constitution l. 3. tit. 1. c. Quoniam, prohibits the Clergy to wear infulam, seu pileum lineum: The Canons made formerly in England, are full to the same Purpose, wherein these Coverings are called expressly Coifes. Constit. Othoboni p. 88. Jo. de Burgo Pupilla oculi p. 82, &c. The Reason doubtless was, that the Tonsure, or the Circle of the Crown of the Head (then esteemed the Mark of Perfection) should not be hid; indeed there was a Relaxation in this Article, during the excessive Colds of Winter, indulged to the Monks of Canterbury and Glastonbury by some Bulls. The Clergy too were interdicted to study the municipal Laws of this Kingdom, which was sometimes extended even to the civil Law, and were also forbidden to plead before temporal Judges, whereof the Proofs might easily be produced, and Pasquier Recherches l. 4. c. 30 quotes a Decree, whereby the King of France likewise forbids any Persons to plead in the temporal Courts, who were not subject to the Jurisdiction of such Judges. Now it is well known, that Ecclesiasticks were exempted from any Subjection, by the Benefit of the Clergy. Hence it may be presumed, that the Sergeants at Law gave a visible Demonstration they had no Claim to it by wearing such Coifs, which contradistinguished them upon the first Sight from the Clergy, who in Case of wearing any such Covering,

would by the Canons have even forfeited that clerical Immunity, for which Reason these Serjants wore a Cap of white Linnen, Lawn or Silk at their Creations tied under their Chinns, and afterwards they wore a black one edged or turned up with white, and Robes also parted with two distinct Colours, which particoloured Vestments were likewise prohibited to the Clergy by the same Clementine Constitution, and by several antienter Canons made in this and foreign Realms. We are informed by M. Paris in 42 H. 3. p. 984, 985, that Bussy having committed intolerable Rapines, while he was Steward to William de Valence, for which being questioned before the Judges, he untied the Strings of his Coife, that he might show his Tonsure, which, however did not avail him.

t Comput. in magn. Garderob. 14 R. 2. p. 193 b. pro xxi Coifs de tela linea pro hominibus de lege contrafactis pro ludo Regis tempore natalis Domini anno xii.

u Burnet's 2 Vol. Reform. p. xii.

x See above p. 308, notes x y.

y Pauli Hachembergi Germania media printed in 1678, then in 1689, and again in 1709, according to an Extract in Biblioth. Univers. vol. 6. p. 340.



it hath been shewn, that the Officers wore the military Surcoats of Arms of their Founders, that even *Hen. VI* upon the Insurrection of *Jack Cadè*, bought a Tabart from one of his own Kings of Arms, and it hath been suggested likewise, that Heralds may owe their Denomination or Adjunct of *Armes*, originally to the wearing such a Surcoat of Arms, which Vestment hath had a particular Term appropriated to it by several Writers, being by them called a <sup>z</sup> *Tabart*, *Tabard*, or *Tabbart*, which a <sup>a</sup> Foreigner in his Notes upon the *clementine* Constitutions prohibiting the Clergy "*uti Epitogio, seu Tabardo foderato usque ad oram, & ita brevi, quod vestis inferior notabiliter videatur,*" explains in these Words "*Tabardum, quod Anglicum erat Sagum militare, olim proprium militum, hodie fecialium seu Heraldorum.*" This Term however was antiently used within this Realm in a larger Sense, for any Surcoat whatever without Sleeves used also in Times of Peace, and therefore we find <sup>b</sup> Tabards made for the Kings and Queens against their Coronations, and upon other <sup>c</sup> Occasions, and likewise for the <sup>d</sup> Nobility as Part of their usual Habit, as well as their <sup>e</sup> Habit of State, and was equivalent in its Signification with the <sup>f</sup> *Scotch* Word Surcoat, being also heretofore Part of the Habit of <sup>g</sup> Scholars and Graduates in the Universities, as likewise of <sup>h</sup> common Persons. But the antient *Britons* of *Wales* might justly be affronted, if any one of *Cornwall* should omit to remark, that in their Language <sup>i</sup> *Tabar* signifies a Coat, as the Word *Herod* doth therein denote a Messenger.

It may be a Task of Difficulty to assign the certain Occasion, how the military Surcoat of the Sovereign was at first communicated to the Heralds, or to fix the precise Period of Time, when this sort of Investiture was originally granted. In this Age it would be ridiculous to cite the ancient <sup>k</sup> Treatises, which gravely assert that *Bacchus*, *Alexander* &c. made such positive Concessions of Tabarts to the Heralds; Former Ages indeed delighted in the Vanity of such romantick Flights; However thus much we may safely infer from such Fables, that such Vestments had been worn by Heralds beyond the Times of the Memory of the Inventors of these far fetched Stories. A much latter Writer <sup>l</sup> *Favin* indulged himself in as whimsical a Fancy, by deducing these Coats from the Vails of Wool worn, as he saith, by the *Roman* Fecials, when they denounced War, through which Vails he supposes, that in Process of Time, a Passage was cut through the middle, to let out the Herald's Head, by which means one Part of these Vails hung on the Breast, and the other on the Back:

<sup>z</sup> Somner Gloss. ad decem Script. in voce Vestimentum illud militare, Nobilium olim, hodie Fecialium proprium, Colobium scilicet vel Sagum.

See Skinner Etym. in voce.

*Mr. Stow Survey of London of the Tabard-Inn in Southwark, and the Gloss. to Chaucer, who mentions that Inn.*

<sup>a</sup> *Alteferra* Not. in *Clement.* p. 39 in *Clem.* l. 3. tit. 1. Quoniam.

<sup>b</sup> *Com. Custod. Garder.* 10 *E.* 3. *Liber Cotom.* in Off. Garder. p. 100 b. 59 b. *Acta Conc. priv.* 13 *Febr.* 1 *E.* 6. &c.

<sup>c</sup> *On Twelfth-day M.* 7. in Off. Arm p. 48. &c.

<sup>d</sup> *After Hugh le Dispenser was apprehended he was in Derision set on a lean horse apparelled en un*

*Tabhar*, comme il souloit porter *Froiss.* vol. 1. p. 9. e *Creation of Viscount Berkley* f. 7. in Off. Arm.

p. 9.

<sup>f</sup> *Knighton* ad A. D. 1295, ut suos cognoscerent in congressu cum *Anglicis*, ut *Scots* diceret *Anglice* Tabart, alter responderet *Surcote*.

<sup>g</sup> *Tabardars* in *Queens College Oxon. Statutes of King's College in Cambridge.* *Rymer* vol. 7. p. 242.

<sup>h</sup> *Chaucer in the Description of the Plowman.*

<sup>i</sup> See *Dr. Davis Welch Diction.*

<sup>k</sup> *Le Feron l'Institution des Rois & Heraulds.* p. 21. See *Aeneas Sylvius*, and several old MS.

<sup>l</sup> *Theatre d'honneur* l. 1. c. 4.



After such Dreams the Editor would interpose a modest Conjecture into the Retirements of Antiquity, if that Liberty may be excused in one, who is very sensible how weak his Talents are in searching into such obscure Matters, which he shall with great Satisfaction retract, whenever any more probable Opinion shall be propounded.

Two learned <sup>m</sup> Authors have given their Sentiments, that Heralds were instituted, and the Doctrine about Coat Arms reduced into some imperfect Sort of System, during the *Crusades* to the holy Land: In some of these Journies, the <sup>n</sup> Princes and Persons of distinguished Quality wore Tabarts ensigned with their respective Coat Arms; and we likewise know, that even the common Souldiers wore Crosses of divers <sup>o</sup> Colours on their Habits, which distinguished them according to their native Countries; so that in all Probability Coat Arms may not owe their Original to any Ostentation or Vanity, but were at first assumed out of some Sort of Necessity, for a visible Distinction of Persons in such Expeditions, which consisted of Princes of different Languages, who had joined their Forces in a common Alliance; and as these Princes by Reason of the great Number of their respective Armies, were thereby compelled to be frequently at considerable Distances from each other, so that upon any sudden Accident, it became absolutely necessary to communicate Notice of such an Emergency, with Haste and Secrecy, to all the Principals of the whole Confederacy, together with the proper Measures which were judged fit to be immediately executed, in Order to prevent the ill Consequences, that might otherwise follow from such an Event; several Incidents of this Nature, must of course happen in an Army consisting of several Nations, that could not admit the least Delay: And since in these Times of the *Crusades*, the Art of writing was not in all Probability very common among Generals; may it be conjectured, that under Circumstances of such Cogency, the Princes engaged in these Enterprises, should by common Consent enter into any Consultation for an Expedient, to give Sanction to verbal Messages delivered in their Names; and if this Supposition might be granted, these Sovereigns and Generals, who were themselves thus distinguished by their Surcoats of Arms, could not possibly have pitched upon, or contrived any more visible Symbol to answer that End, than by investing their Messengers with the same Tabart they wore themselves, which being universally known throughout the whole Army, might serve them for their Passports, and Protections, and likewise be a sufficient Credence for an Audience, and to verify all Messages transmitted by Word of Mouth: But if this Practice should not be conceived to be first introduced by any express Determination of Princes, yet it is indisputable, that it soon obtained the general Consent of the civilized *Europeans*, by whom these Officers were admitted, and to such a Degree, that the ill Treatment of any Officer of Arms thus habited, was esteemed by them a Violation of the Laws of Nations; to support this Conjecture, we are informed by <sup>p</sup> one, who actually attended in one of these *Crusades*, that St. Lewis of France had his Heralds there

<sup>m</sup> Chifflet *Lilium Francie* p. 45. *Jurisprud. Heroica* vol. 1. p. 77.

<sup>n</sup> See Joinville's *Hist. of the Crusade of St. Lewis*.

<sup>o</sup> Hoved. ad A. D. 1188.

<sup>p</sup> Joinville p. 46. *Devant nous avoit deux Heralx du Roy.*



waiting on him, and during his Reign, and in his Presence at a splendid Feast celebrated at *Saumur*, the *Huissiers d'armes & de Salle*<sup>q</sup> belonging to the Earl of *Poitiers*, being habited in his Coat Arms wrought upon *Sendall* performed their Duties; for though in Strictness there might be some Distinction between Heralds and Ushers of Arms, yet this Author in his historical Style makes no Difference, if <sup>r</sup> *Moreau* doth not misquote him, that he entituled "*Marcel Huissier, ou Heraut du Roy S. Louys*," and long afterward <sup>j</sup> *Froissart* used the same Expression, that *John* King of *France* rewarded one *Bacon*, by advancing him to be his *Huissier* or *Herald* of Arms.

By the *Roman* Law it was high Treason to wear any Part of the Imperial Habit without Licence, and no Instance occurs to the Collector's Memory of any Liberty, or Indulgence to be invested in the royal military Surcoat, as a settled Livery, allowed to any others, save Heralds; the Presidents of the Parliament in *France*, had indeed the "Concession of wearing the royal Mantle from *Philippe le Bel*, and the Chancellour of that Kingdom wears <sup>x</sup> Purple or Scarlet, the antient Habit of that Crown, but these were Vestments in Times of Peace; there are also some Examples, where Persons have occasionally been invested in the royal military Habit, but not as a settled Livery: Thus in some pitched Battles, the Sovereign hath been personated by others habited in the same Manner, which was an usual Policy for the Preservation of his Person, not only that the Enemies might thereby be deprived of bending all their Force against him, but that his own Souldiers should not be too much disheartened, in Case the real King should happen to fall in the Fight, of which Caution we have Precedents in the Conduct of <sup>y</sup> Princes of the most ardent Courage; but such Investiture was temporary, during the Engagement only, and had no Relation to the Case of Heralds, who (as it hath been shewn) retired from the Field to some eminent Place out of Danger. There are two other occasional Solemnities in Times of Peace, wherein a single Person hath been apparelled in the Arms of the Sovereign, one almost <sup>z</sup> peculiar to this Realm, that is, the Champion at the Coronation, who in the later Ages hath only worn the plated Coat Armour, though probably he might heretofore wear the Royal Surcoat over it, because we find by a memorable Precedent that the <sup>a</sup> Champion of a Bishop, who was to vindicate his Rights, was not only clad in White, the then Colour of the outer Garment of the Episcopal Order, but had over it a Surcoat of the

<sup>q</sup> Ibid. p. 20.

<sup>r</sup> Des Armoires p. 57. Colomb. des Roys & Heralds p. 30.

<sup>j</sup> Lib. 1. c. 148, p. 156.

<sup>t</sup> See Pet. de Marca de concord. Sacerd. & Imp.

<sup>l</sup> 5. c. 30, 33, 36, & l. 6. c. 6.

<sup>u</sup> Louis d'Orleans les Ouvertures des Parlemens c. 23.

<sup>x</sup> See Du Chesn. Hist. des Chanceliers. Monstrelet vol. 3. p. 21 b.

<sup>y</sup> The Writer of the Life of the Duke of Richmond Constable of France acquaints us, that two Persons habited as Hen. V. were slain in the Battle of Agincourt. Thus in the Battle of Shrewsbury, the Earl of Douglas killed with his own Hands tres Reges sophisticatedos prætextu veri Regis Henrici [IV] ut-

pote habentes tunicas armorum, & regias coronellas super cassides. cum grandi clava, interfecit. Scotichr. vol. 4. Edit. Hearne p. 1161, one of whom was doubtless Sir Walter Blunt, Leland's Collect. Edit. per Hearne vol. 1. p. 2. f. 285. Walsingham 409. n. 10. Thus at the Battle of Poitiers estoit le Roy Jehan arme luy vingtieme en ses paremens. Froiss. vol. 1. c. 160, see other Examples Hist. de Ch. viii, p. 162. Hist. de Ch. vii, p. 744. Abercromby's Hist. of Scotland vol. 2. p. 135. of the Battle of Auroy Daniel Hist. de Ch. vi, p. 624. See Laboureur Origine des Armoires n. xi. p. 10, 11.

<sup>z</sup> Of Poland and Suedeland See Menestrier de la Chevalerie p. 108.

<sup>a</sup> See Camd. Brit. Engl. Edit. p. 9. Goodw. de Præfulibus in tit. Sarum.



Bishop's Arms. The other Instance is of the Person who represented the Deceased in his Armour at Funerals, whereof <sup>b</sup> Notice hath been already taken.

It hath been likewise <sup>c</sup> suggested, that these Tabarts might be meant by the Words *Houces d'Armes* in the Statute made by *Edw. I.*, and to the Proofs there given of the Signification of these Terms, may be added the <sup>d</sup> Quotation in the Margin, and also the <sup>e</sup> Proclamation made at Turnaments touching "*les banniers, blasons, ou Housses d'escu, ou enseignes d'armes.*"

Sometimes the very Entries in the <sup>f</sup> Wardrobe, specified the working the King's Arms on the Coats delivered to the Heralds; and here it cannot be esteemed any Digression to shew, that the Heralds of the Nobility were in like Manner invested in the Surcoats of their Founders. *Upton* hath several <sup>g</sup> Expressions to this Purpose, "*Aliquis Haraldus Armorum tunicâ Domini sui indutus — accipiet Haraldus tunicam Domini præfati creandi — Et isti debent portare tunicam Armorum Dominorum suorum, & eisdem indui eodem modo, sicut Domini sui cum in conflictibus fuerint vel torneamentis, aut aliis periculis bellicis, vel cum per aliquas regiones equitaverint extraneas.*" And probably <sup>h</sup> *Chaucer* alludes to the Heralds of Noblemen in his House of Fame. This Matter is very evident, however it may not be tedious to give some domestick Examples. In 15 *Hen. VI.*, the Painter in his Bill charged the Earl of *Warwick* for one Coat made for himself, and two <sup>i</sup> Coats for [his] Herawdes beat with demy Gold: Sir *John Lisle* in his Constitution of a Pursevant in 1422, <sup>k</sup> authorizes him to bear his Arms publickly. And when the Body of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, the *Achilles* of *England*, was found after the Battle of *Castillon* upon *Dordon* in 1453 by his Herald, "who (as the <sup>l</sup> Historian words it) had worn his Coat of Arms, he kissed the Body, and broke out into compassionate and dutiful Expressions, Alas! It is you, I pray God pardon all your Misdoings, I have been your Officer of Arms forty Years or more, 'tis Time I should surrender it to you, and while the Tears trickled plentifully down his Face, he disrobed himself of his Coat of Arms, and flung it over his Masters Body; which we know was the accustomed Rite performed heretofore at Funerals. The Earl of *Northumberland* waited upon the Princess, Daughter of *Hen. VII* into *Scotland* for her Marriage in 1503, "having with him, as the <sup>m</sup> Ceremonial expresses it, "his Officer of Arms named *Northumberland* araid of his Liveray of Vel-

<sup>b</sup> Notes to the Black-book p. 219 d.

<sup>c</sup> See above p. 294, 297.

<sup>d</sup> Omnes habeant habitus, videlicet tabaldos, feu houffias longas de bruneta nigra. Du Fresn. Gloss. in voce tabaldus.

<sup>e</sup> Colombiere Theatre d'honneur vol. 1. p. 48.

<sup>f</sup> Comput Rob. Rolleston Custod. magn. Garder. 9 H. 5, pro vi Tunics ad arma vapulatis cum armis pro Heraldis. Lib. Cotom in Off. Gard. p. 33. 12 H. 6, ii Cotes de Tarterin pro Herolds vapulat. de armis prædictis [Regis] Comp. Rob. Rolleston 13 H. 6, pro i herold vocato Foure de lys per breve Regis Cote ad arma vapulat. de armis Angliæ & Franciæ, &c.

<sup>g</sup> De Re milit. l. 1. c. xi, xii.

<sup>h</sup> Tho at last espyd I

That Pursevauntes and Heraudis,

That cryin riche folkis laudis  
It weerin all and every man  
Of hem as I you tellin can,  
Had on him throxin a Vesture,  
Whiche men yclept a Cote armur;  
Enbrouderid wonderly riche,  
And though thei werin not iliche,  
But nought will I, so mote I thrive  
Be now aboutin to discrive,  
All these armis that there yweren  
That thei thus on ther cotis weren,  
For to me were impossible  
Men might make of hem a Bible, &c.

<sup>i</sup> Dugd. Warwickshire p. 327.

<sup>k</sup> Above p. 288 in the Notes.

<sup>l</sup> Hist. Chronol. du Ch. vii. p. 646.

<sup>m</sup> G. xi penes me p. 38.



"vet bering his Cote. Hen. VIII created his natural Son Earl of Nottingham, and Duke of Richmond and Somerset on 18 June in his seventeenth Year, and on the fifth of the next Month, commanded the Chancellour to pass Letters <sup>n</sup> Patents to Richard de la Towre, granting him the Office of Pursivant of Arms, with the Duke of Richmond and Somerset and Earl of Nottingham, to hold it during his Life; upon whose Death this Office with the Name of Nottingham, was in like <sup>o</sup> Manner granted to William Hasyng Rouge dragon during his Life, who being promoted to be Somerset-Herald, this Pursivantship was again granted to Richard Croke, of whose Coat we have this <sup>p</sup> Entry in the Wardrobe. "Per warrantum datum apud Grenewiche 17 Maii 20 H. 8, pro Richardo Crokis etiam Nottingham <sup>q</sup> pursevante ad arma—pro una tunica de Armour de Sarfcinet de armis Ducis de Richemount & Somerset," which Croke being <sup>r</sup> killed at Bologn, this same Office was by a Patent of the like Tenour <sup>r</sup> conferred on Thomas Trehearne.

It may here by the Way be also observed, that when an Herald of the Crown was sent beyond Sea to attend upon a General in the Army, it is highly probable, that as during that Expedition he was under the Command of the General, so he did on several Occasions wear the Tabart of the General's Arms. *Aquitaine* and *Chandos* <sup>s</sup> were in 4 Rich. II invested in the Tabart of the Earl of Buckingham, when he sent them with a Message to the Duke of Burgundy; now it may be reasonably guessed, that *Aquitaine* was then a King of Arms belonging to the Crown, because three Years afterwards he received his <sup>t</sup> Livery from the King's Wardrobe; and as to *Chandos*, who had been Officer to that renowned Heroe Sir John Chandos, slain in 44 Ed. III; it is not improbable, he might be the same Person, who in the 6th of Rich. II is <sup>u</sup> mentioned to be King of Arms of Ireland, *Chandos* by Name, for it was not unusual for Heralds to retain the <sup>x</sup> Titles of their Heraldships in Nature of Surnames after their Promotions to be Kings of Arms. And it is observable that when those two Heralds, being thus ordered by the Earl of Buckingham to demand from the Duke of Burgundy, the Appointment of the Time and Place for a Battle, desired they might have an Instrument in Writing for that Purpose, the Answer given them was "Allez et ditez ce dont vous estes informez, vous estes <sup>y</sup> croyables assez, et s'ils veulent, ils vous croiront," and certainly their Coats were sufficient to verify their Messages. And thus Percy Herald was apparelled in the Duke of Lancaster's <sup>y</sup> Coat in 1387, when he was sent by him to *Aurenne*, but to whom this Percy then belonged, the Collector is not yet enabled to determine. And thus also the Heralds of the Crown

<sup>n</sup> Priv. Sigill. in Capella Rot. 17 H. 8.

<sup>o</sup> Pat. 18 H. 8. p. 1. m. 5.

<sup>p</sup> E Libro in Off. magn. Garderob.

<sup>q</sup> Vinc. MS. n. 113 in Off. Arm. p. 305.

<sup>r</sup> Pat. 22 H. 8, p. 2. m. 13.

<sup>s</sup> Froiss. vol. 2. ch. 54.

<sup>t</sup> Rot. Compot. Alani de Stoke custodis magn. Garder. 7 R. 2. Nicholao Chayne Regi Armorum Aquitanie, Richardo Hereford Herald armorum, Johanni Moys &c. Henceman Domini Regis ad gow-nas cum caputiis faciendas contra festum Natalis Domini videlicet cuilibet eorum ii ulnas panni

coloris curt. & iii ulnas panni radiati de secta Scutiferorum Hospitii ipsius Domini Regis.

<sup>u</sup> Froiss. vol. 2. p. 195.

<sup>x</sup> John Othelake was first Marche-Herald, who is often stiled Marche, while he had the Province of Norroy, Richard Delbrug stiles himself Lancastre Roy d'armes del North. Henry Greene is expressly entituled Leicester-Herald, and afterwards Leicester King of Arms, and in all Probability these were the Cases of Gloucester under the Reign of Rich. III, and of Richmond Clarenceux in the Reign of H. 7.

<sup>y</sup> Froiss. vol. 3. p. 190.



were heretofore sometimes robed in the Coats of the Tilters, and at some Funerals wore the Coats of the deceased.

Having given these short Hints touching the Heralds of Noblemen, it would be an unpardonable Omission to pretermitt those of the Ladies, and the Reader is here requested to inspect the Notes inserted in the 289th Page, taken from a Writer of unquestionable Authority in these Matters; who adds <sup>z</sup> farther, that *Joan* the Maid of *Orleans* for her valiant Actions was ennobled, and had a Grant of Arms [dated 16 January 1429.] to be born in a Shield Az. two *Flowers de lis*, Or, and in the middle a Sword Argent, whose Point passed through a Crown in Chief, which Arms her Pursivant named *Fleur de lis* bore. This Title was doubtless taken from Part of the Coat thus assigned to her, according to the Practice of the Nobility, who frequently denominated their Heralds from some principal Bearing in their Arms. We meet with the Heralds of Ladies <sup>a</sup> described as assisting in august Solemnities, though the Surnames of these Ladies are rarely specified, however the Officer of *Madame de Brienne* is <sup>b</sup> particularized in the Ceremony of the Entry of the Duke of *Richmond* into *Rennes* in 1457, and in the Household <sup>c</sup> Accounts of *John d'Orleans*, Count of *Engoulesme* in 1467, under the Title *Heraulx*, among others is entred *Antoine Pimperot dit Merpins*, who occurs in the Household Accounts of *Marguerite de Rohan* the Relict of that Count. Our Records furnish us with a Curiosity, that the Lands and Goods of a Person were <sup>d</sup> seized into the King's Hands, for wearing the Robes of the Countess of *Lincoln*, and the same Roll acquaints us with the like Seizure, because another Person bore an Habit *bendee* in the Time of Commotion.

For the Affinity of the Matter, it may also be remembred, that where Cities enjoyed the Privilege of Heralds by the <sup>e</sup> Indulgence of Princes, their Officers were habited in the Coat Arms of these Cities, as *Espinette* Herald bore the Arms of *Lille* in *Flanders*, and the Herald of *Valencien-nes* those of that City in 1355, whose Title of Office might be probably *Franquervie*, the <sup>g</sup> Denomination given to the Herald of that City, in the Ceremonial of the Knighthood of *William* of *Haynalt*.

But to return to the Tabart of *Garter*, the first promoted to this Office, left <sup>b</sup> two Tabarts or Coats of the Kings Arms belonging (as 'tis said) to his said Office, which his Relict lent to his Successor. And after a Mantle relative to the Order was granted, or confirmed to this Officer, by the Constitutions settled in 14 *Hen. VIII*, such <sup>i</sup> Tabarts were however delivered

<sup>z</sup> Et depuis n'y a pas long temps on a veu en France Dame *Jehane* la Pucelle, la quelle combien que elle venist de bas estat, et de petite extraction, neantmoins por sa hardiesse en armes, Elle mena & conduist le Roy *Charles* a sacrer a Reims ---- Et pour ses vaillans faiets d'armes, le dit Roy *Charles* annobly, et luy donne Armes, qu'elle porta en escu, Et fist porter par son Pursuivant nomme *Fleur de Lis*; Desquelles armes estoient telles, a sçavoir D'az. a deux Fleurs de Lis Or, et au milieu une Espee d'argent, la pointe en hault ---- de Gules estoiffer d'or, per my une couronne de meismes en chief. MS. Sicile Heraud in Bibl. Regia n. 1403, p. 27.

<sup>a</sup> The Coronation of *Claude* Queen of France in 1517, Cerem. Franc. in 4to p. 174. See p. 184 &c.

<sup>b</sup> Lobineau *Hist. de Bretagne* p. 666.

<sup>c</sup> Communicated by Monsieur *Clairembault*.

<sup>d</sup> Claus. 15 E. 2. m. 11. terræ & bona Rob. *Tillington* seifita quia tulit Robas Comitisse *Lincoln*. Ibid. m. 5. Terræ & bona *Joh. de Siodleigh* seifita in manu Regis, pro eo quod idem *Joh.* vestem bendatum apud *London* & alibi portavit tempore turbationis.

<sup>e</sup> See above p. 305 note n.

<sup>f</sup> Menestrier de la chevalerie p. 242.

<sup>g</sup> Ibid p. 352, & 319.

<sup>h</sup> See above p. 345 note f.

<sup>i</sup> Origin. in Curia Augmentat. By the King and signed Henry R.

We wol and comaunde you with Diligence after the Receipt  
S s s s



delivered to him from the Wardrobe, as they are still continued upon his first Promotion, and at Coronations.

These Tabarts rendered these Officers inviolable in Time of War, as the *Escutcheon* gave them the like Immunity in Times of Peace: These were their Passports, safe Conducts, and Credentials; and since these had the like Efficacy in these distinct Seasons, some short Proofs thereof will be found intermixed in the following Discourse.

It may be some Sort of Entertainment to recite the Precedent of equipping a fictitious Herald, which will be a full Proof, that real Officers of Arms invested in their Tabarts, did not want any other Passports or Credentials, because one equipped only with a Tabart, Escutcheon, and other Ensigns to personate an Herald was allowed an Admittance to an Audience in Time of War, without any farther Examination. The Narrative of it may be consulted at large in that judicious Historian <sup>k</sup> *Commines*, who bore a Part in dressing out this supposititious Officer, though this pert Fellow had the less Occasion for such Assistance, if <sup>l</sup> *Bodin* be exact in his Relation, that *Lewis XI*, who adventured on this Expedient, did out of Parsimony employ his *Taylor* for his Herald, as he did his Barber for his Embassadour, (whose Name he changed from *Oliver the Devil* into <sup>m</sup> *Dam*, though the <sup>n</sup> former had been the Surname of antient Families in several Kingdoms,) and his Physician (to whom he shewed the greatest Liberality) for his Chancellour. It is no Wonder this King should stoop to such a low Shift to save his Money, and not retain an Herald with the Allowance of an handsome Salary, who was so very frugal, as to cause new Sleeves to be made to amend his old Doublets, and his Boots to be oyled, and even appeared at an Interview with the King of *Castile*, in a <sup>o</sup> plain Drabb Coat and a greasy Hat. <sup>p</sup> *Mezeray* indeed thinks, there was a Fetch of Policy concealed under this Substitution of an Herald, that in Case this new fashioned Officer had met with any Repulse, or ill Treatment from our *Edw. IV*, *Lewis XI* might then have reserved a Liberty to himself to have disavowed the Character of the Messenger, and thereby excused himself from the Necessity of resenting such an Affront.

In Denunciations of War made to Princes in Person, and Defiances of them, the final Destruction of the Inhabitants by the Sword, and of the whole Country by Fire were often threatned, which in the *French* Dialect, and the Ceremonials are termed *a feu et a sang*, and the Emblems of such total Devastations were used, as a <sup>q</sup> burning Flambeau or Torch, a naked

Receipt herof, ye deliver or doo to be delivered unto our trusty and well beloved Servant Garter Principal King at Arms, a Cote of our Arms embrauded of like Stuff, length, and bredt, as in tymes passed it hath been accustomed: Considering that these seventene yere passed the said Garter hath had no new Cote of our said Armes: And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and Discharge in this Behalf, Given under our Signet at our Mannour of Westm. the vi day of May the xxiiii yere of our Reigne.

To our right trusty and welbeloved Counsaillour the Lord Wyndesor Keper of our great Wardrobe.

<sup>k</sup> *Hist.* l. 4. c. 7.

<sup>l</sup> *De Republ.* l. 6. c. 2.

<sup>m</sup> *Preuves sur Comines* p. 190.

<sup>n</sup> *The pleasant Dialogue between Archdeacon Peche [Peccatum] and the Dean surnamed the Devil may be consulted in Camd. Brit. in Cheshire. Plac. 2 Job. rot. 3. Thomas tut a Diabls. See Imagin. Gervas. Dorobern. p. 1329, Gesta Consulum p. 464. Preuves de l'Hist. de Bethune p. 149. Belly Hist. des Contes de Poitou p. 113. The Families of Trolle, that is the Devil, in Suedeland and Norway bear the Devil for their Coat Arms, and there is a Family of Treufel in Austria. Menage Hist. de Sable p. 31.*

<sup>o</sup> *Comines* l. 2. c. 8.

<sup>p</sup> *Vol. 2. p. 162.*

<sup>q</sup> *Gollut. Repub. Sequan. ad A. D. p. 831. Menestrier l'especes de noblesse p. 383.*

<sup>r</sup> *Sword*



<sup>r</sup> Sword on one Side flaming, and on the other enamelled with red &c. and upon greater Provocations, Princes went to the Extremity in transmitting Challenges for a personal Combat to decide their Differences, and as the Pledge and Proof of their Resolutions sent a <sup>s</sup> Gantelet or Glove, the Ensign used generally upon Cartells for Duels: In these Indictions of War, Defiances, and Challenges, it was an essential Ingredient to use the strongest Expressions of Stile, and the most rough and harshest Language without Reserve: However the Heralds, whose Province it was to perform these Functions, enjoyed all Immunities in the Execution of these peremptory Messages, being by Virtue of their Tabarts esteemed inviolably sacred in these most critical Solemnities, in Case they did not transgress in some Formalities, which were then settled by Consent of Nations and well known, which it would be foreign here to enumerate; from these Employments some Authors latinized these Officers by the Words <sup>t</sup> *Clarigarii* and *Clarigatores*; and to this Custome Queen Elizabeth alluded in her extemporary <sup>u</sup> Answer to the Polish Embassador, who had made haughty Demands “*Legatum expectavi, Heraldum inveni &c.*” It would take the Compass of a large Chapter to collect the Instances of these Particulars which lie scattered up and down in Histories, out of which one Example will be here selected, because it seems to intimate a Singularity, that a safe Conduct had been granted to an Herald upon Terms. When Clarenceux and Guienne had delivered their Defiances to the Emperor Charles V, he upon the Spot acquainted the French Officer, that Francis his Master had broken his Word, and that he would maintain it by single Combat, which Speech being notified to the French King, he returned a <sup>x</sup> Cartell in writing by Dauphine his own Herald, at the End whereof was this Clause “*Pourquoy puisque contre verite vous* “*nous avez voulu charger, desormais ne nous ecrivez aucune chose, mais nous* “*assurez le camp &c.*” upon the Delivery whereof, the Emperor demanded a safe Conduct to send an Herald, and therefore when the Emperor’s Herald was admitted to an Audience, the French King insisted that Conduct was conditional, and limited only to the bringing an Appointment of the Camp according to the Cartel. The Lord Herbert <sup>y</sup> relates, that the Emperor gave Instructions to this his Herald, to offer the French King his Service in bringing back any Reply, that King should be pleased to remit, and if he should judge more proper to convey it by any other Messenger, a safe Conduct should be made, if it was desired, though his Imperial Majesty did not think it necessary for a King of Arms, being a privileged Person. That noble <sup>z</sup> Historian then proceeds to inform us, that Burgundy the Emperor’s Herald, sent to the Governor of Bayonne for a safe Conduct, yet when he had obtained it, as soon as he was in the French Territories, he put on his Coat of Arms, and came before that Governour, where he made a Protestation, that the demanding it should be no Derogation to his Privilege belonging to him as a King of Arms, and being at length

<sup>r</sup> Du Bellay *Memoirs* p. 176.

<sup>s</sup> Juvenal des Ursins *Hist. de Ch. v.* p. 320.

<sup>t</sup> Knighton *col.* 2612. n. 18. &c.

<sup>u</sup> See Camd. Eliz. ad A. D. 1597.

<sup>x</sup> See Pere Daniel’s *Hist.* vol. 3. p. 239 &c. and

the Instrument drawn up by Notaries published in the Quarto Edition of Cerem. Franc. p. 199.

<sup>y</sup> *Hist. of Hen. 8.* p. 231.

<sup>z</sup> *Ibid.* p. 233.



conducted to *Paris*, he would there have worn his Coat of Arms, but was not suffered, it being told him, it was *Cosa de un San Nicholas de Aldea*, which he interprets, a Thing not to be shewn but upon Holy-Days, or in a Country Church, against which Usage this Herald protested, as being contrary to the Privileges of his Place. It would be improper to enter into the Dispute between the *French* and *Spanish* Historians, through whose Default this Challenge did not take Effect, since the Execution of such a Project seems not very consistent with the Rules of Prudence on either Side; yet as to the present Purpose it may be observed from this Narrative, that though *Charles V* had at first demanded a safe Conduct for his Herald, however upon Recollection he thought it a superabundant Precaution.

Another Example may be added, touching the Conduct of an *English* Officer, which being a memorable Transaction should be related with all its Circumstances, from whence we may learn, that as the *Escutcheon* was an Immunity in Time of Peace, so the *Tabart* gave the like Privilege in Time of War. *Norroy* King of Arms in 1557, having entred the City of *Reims* habited in a Gown of black Cloth, and having a Commission signed by our Queen to defy the King of *France*, and having notified the same to the Constable *Montmorency*, (who was at that Time Knight of the *Garter*) it was demanded of him by that great Minister of State, whether he understood the Duty of his Function, and by what Road he had entred into that Kingdom, and to what Governours of the Frontiers he had discovered either his Profession, or the Occasion of his Journey; and upon the whole it was insisted, that for these Defects, he had justly incurred the Forfeiture of his Life. Our Officer answered, that he landed at *Bologne*, and proceeded forwards, having his *Escutcheon* constantly on his Brest, and for that Reason conceived he had no ways transgressed in any Article of his Duty, because the Peace was then subsisting between the two Kingdoms; a publick Instrument was taken of this Matter, which is placed in <sup>a</sup> the Margin to

<sup>a</sup> Ribier Lettres & Memoires d'Etat servant a l'Hist. de Hen. II, vol. 2. p. 690, 691. l'Ordre tenu a la venue du *Herant* envoye en France par la Reyne d'Angleterre pour declarer de sa part la guerre au Roy.

Memoire Origin.

Le 7. de Juin 1557. Le Roy estant a la ville de *Reims* en Champagne, en l'Abbaye Saint *Remy*. arriva au logis du dit Seigneur *Guyllaume Noroy* Heraut d'Armes d'Angleterre, vestu d'un Manteau de drap noir, sans autrement se faire connoistre ny declarer sa qualite, jusques a ce qu'il fust a la porte du Conseil du Roy, ou il demanda a parler a Monsieur le Duc de *Montmorency* Pair et Connestable de France: lequel apres le Conseil tenu, le fit entrer en la dite Salle, ou il demanda audit *Noroy* l'occasion de sa venue. A quoy il respondit estre depeche de la Reyne d'Angleterre sa Maistresse, pour denoncer et declarer la guerre au Roy, montrant a cette fin une petite Lettre en parchemin, scellee du grand Sceau de ladite Dame Reine, du premier jour de cedit mois, contenant en substance pouvoir audit *Herant* de faire ladite declaration: Sur quoy mondit Seigneur le Connestable luy dit qu'il se retirast, et qu'il luy feroit entendre ce qu'il auroit a faire, apres avoir sceu sur ce l'intention du Roy.

Et pourceque le mesme soir le Roy partoit pour

aller a la Chasse a deux lieues de cette ville, d'ou il ne revint que le jour d'hier bien tard, fut remise l'Audience du *Herant* a ce jour d'huy dudit mois, que mondit Sieur le Connestable environ midy a faire venir pardevers luy en sa Chambre iceluy *Herant*. Auquel en la presence d'aucuns Seigneurs, Chevaliers de l'Ordre et Gens du Conseil prive du Roy, il a demande s'il scavoit bien son Estat, et quelle estoit la Charge d'un *Herant*: aussi par ou il estoit entre en ce Royaume, a qui des Gouverneurs des Frontieres il avoit declare sa qualite et l'occasion de sadite venue, et comme il avoit este si temeraire de venir si avant sans autrement se declarer ny decouvrir portant avec luy une telle Commission; qui estoit autant que de se venir precipiter, et mettre en danger d'estre pendu et etrangle, comme il avoit merite. A quoy ledit *Herant* a fait reponse, qu'il estoit venu a *Boulogne*, & passe outre, ayant tousjours eu son *Escusson* a l'estomach, sans que personne luy ait rien demande, et qu'il ne pensoit pas avoir failly, d'autant que la paix n'estoit pas rompue; ayant este charge de sa dite Maistresse ainsi, et d'apporter quelques lettres a son Ambassadeur Resident par deza, ainsi qu'il avoit fait. Et comme mondit Sieur le Connestable eust replique, que tant mieux meritoit il d'estre puny, et qu'il estoit venu a la derobee feignant d'estre Serviteur dudit Ambassadeur; dont s'il



to explain the too succinct Narrative of <sup>b</sup> *Thuanus*, by which the Reader might have otherwise been induced to believe that this *Norroy* had not his Tabart with him, which this publick Certificate testifies, and that he held it upon his Arm during the Time of his declaring this Defiance, the accustomed Ceremony in such Cases, and in which, as soon as the Defiance was finished, the Officer fully invested himself for his safe Conduct in his Return, though sometimes Letters Patents were granted for that Purpose, but the most usual Practice was to assign an Officer of Arms to secure such Herald through the Territories of the Prince defied. The Words *sine diplomate* in *Thuanus* have been construed by <sup>c</sup> *Wicquefort*, to import the Want of a Passport from our Queen, which Omission (if it was any) seems to be amply supplied by the <sup>d</sup> Commission to defy this French King, and  
it

s'il n'avoit affaire a un Roy treslement et debonnaire, il seroit en evident danger de perdre la vie; mais pour montrer par iceluy Seigneur sa grande bonte, et excuser cette faute qu'il ne vouloit prendre a rigueur, il l'ouyroit tres volontiers.

L'ayant mondit Sieur le Connestable laisse en sa Chambre, accompagne de deux Roys d'Armes, s'en alla trouver le Roy: auquel il fit entendre tout ce que dessus, et combien ledit *Herant* s'estoit oublie, et avoit besoin de sa misericorde. Usant de laquelle en son endroit, et pour faire connoistre sa magnanimité et grandeur, ledit Seigneur sans avoir egard a tout cela, l'a envoye querir par un Capitaine de ses Gardes grandement suivy; et ayant devant luy lesdits deux Roys d'Armes, a este amene par le dit Capitaine des Gardes en la salle dudit Seigneur, qui y estoit accompagne de la personne de Monseigneur le Dauphin son Fils aîné, de Messieurs les Cardinaux de *Lorraine*, de *Guise*, de *Chastillon* et de Sens Garde des Sceaux de France, de Messieurs les Ducs de *Lorraine*, de *Longueville*, de *Nivernois*, et de *Montmorency* Connestable, du Prince de *Mantoue*, et de plusieurs autres Princes, Seigneurs, Chevaliers de son Ordre, Evêques, Prelats, Capitaines et Gentilhommes en grand nombre, presens les Ambassadeurs de nostre Saint Pere le Pape, du Roy de *Portugal*, de la Seigneurie de *Venise*, du Duc de *Ferrare*, et autres.

Ou apres plusieurs reverences faites par ledit *Herant* ainsi conduit que dessus, et estant a genoux, sa Cotte d'armes sur le bras, luy a este demande par le Roy a haute voix: de parque il estoit envoye, et pourquoy; et ayant respondu que c'estoit la Reyne sa Maistresse, et presente sondit Pouvoir, que ledit Seigneur a fait lire publiquement, luy a dit: *Herant*, je voy, que vous estes venu icy pour me denoncer la guerre de par la Reyne d'Angleterre, je l'accepte: mais je veux bien que tout la monde sache que j'ay observe envers elle sincerement et de bonne foy ce que je devois a l'amitie que nous avons ensemble, comme j'ay delibere de faire et feray tant que je vivray a l'endroit de tout le monde, autant qu'il appartient a Prince grand de vertu et d'honneur; et espere puis qu'elle y vient avec si injuste cause, que Dieu me fera s'il luy plaist cette grace, qu'elle n'y gagnera non plus que ses Predecesseurs ont fait, quand ils se sont attaquez aux miens, et qu'ils ont fait dernièrement a moy dont la memoire est recente; et qu'il montrera en cela la justice de sa grandeur sur celuy qui a le tort, et est cause des maux qui procederont de cette guerre: vous defendant sur la vie de parler plus avant, parceque c'est une Femme: Et si elle estoit autre, j'userois aussi d'autre langage; mais vous vous en irez hors de mon Royaume le plusost que vous pourrez.

Cela fait, a este reconduit par les susdits et accompagnie jusques au logis de l'Ambassadeur d'Angleterre: ou le Roy plein de liberalite luy a envoye pour present une Chasne de deux cens ecus: afinque par la et ce qu'il a veu et ouy de la bouche dudit Seigneur, il puisse porter plus de temoignage en son pays, de la vertu et generosite dudit Seigneur, desja assez connue de tout le monde.

<sup>b</sup> *Thuanus* l. 19. p. 528, 529, ad A. D. 1558. Dum in eo Rex & *Philippus* essent, *Maria Anglia* Regina a marito persuasa per *Gul. Norem* facialem, qui ignoto habitu in *Galliam* venerat, cum Rex *Durocortori* Remorum esset, ei viii Id. *Junias* Regina nomine bellum denunciavit, increpitus initio facialis a Momorantio, quod sine Diplomate, & *Heræ* suæ insignibus regnum intrasset, quasi poenam capitis ob id commertus, postea ab eo ad Regem introducit, ubi quæ in mandatis habebat de geniculis exposuisset, Rex coram Regni Proceribus, ac Pontificis, *Lusitania* Regis, Venetorum Reipub., ac *Ferrariensis* Ducis Oratoribus accipere se quidem denunciationem dixit, cæterum omnes scire velle se, quantum in ipso fuerit, pacis inter *Gallos* & *Anglos* initæ conditionibus plene satisfecisse, & sincera fide amicitiam cum Regina coluisse, uti semper cum omnibus fecerit, & porro facturum sit: Ac proinde sperare ultorem violati fœderis Deum, ac fore ut hoc bellum, ut olim fere semper ac nuper etiam, sic nunc *Anglis* detrimentosum futurum sit. Cæterum ne ultra Facialis loqueretur, prohibuit, hoc addito a fœmina eum venire, quæ si vir esset, regem longe alio sermone usurum fore, itaq; quamprimum se regno excederet: Ita *Norrey* a Regis conspectu discedens in *Anglici* Oratoris *Edeis* deducitur, donatusq; a Rege catena CC aureorum cum Oratore in *Angliam* redit.

<sup>c</sup> Ambasad. p. 36.

<sup>d</sup> *Marye the Quene.*

*Maria* Dei Gratia Regina *Angliae*, *Hispaniarum*, *Franciae*, utriusque *Siciliae*, *Jerusalem*, & *Hiberniae*, fidei Defensor, Archiducissa *Austriæ*, Ducissa *Burgundiae*, *Mediolani*, & *Brabantiae*, Comitissa *Habsburgi*, *Flandriæ*, & *Tirolis*, Omnibus ad quos præsentis literæ pervenerint salutem. Notum facimus, quod nos de fide, probitate, & industria dilecti nobis *Willimi Norroy* Principis Regis Armorum pro partibus nostris borealibus plurimum confidentes, eidem mandavimus, & commisimus Illustrissimum Principem *Henricum* Regem christianissimum adire, & nomine nostro quædam mandata, & commissionem aperire, proponere, & declarare, & ad belli denunciationem, & intimationem hostilitatis procedere juxta formam in ea re de consilio & assensu Consiliariorum nostrorum in quibusdam instructionibus scriptam & manu nostra signatam. Promittentes bona fide & in verbo regio nos ratum,

T t t t t



it seems not to mean any *Diploma* from the King of *France*, because a safe Conduct for an Herald to enter into his Kingdom could not be required in Time of Peace, since an Officer of Arms is not under Obligation to ask such Security to qualify, or indemnify him in bringing any Message to the adverse Sovereign, even during the Heat of War; and upon this Account it hath been <sup>e</sup> censured as a Breach of the Law of Nations, when any one of the Princes engaged in War, hath prohibited the Heralds of the adverse Party to enter his Dominions without his previous Consent, and it hath been asserted to be one of the Functions of Heralds, to sollicite and obtain safe Conducts for Embassadors in Times of Hostility, and for that Reason Officers of Arms have been permitted the Freedom to enter with Safety into Places, where Embassadors had no Right to approach without an antecedent Licence.

Their Tabarts were such sufficient safe <sup>f</sup> Conducts in Time of War, that the assigning an Officer to convoy Persons, was esteemed of <sup>g</sup> equal Validity with Letters Patents under the Great Seal. *Hen. VIII* in *Dec. 1542*, transmitted to his <sup>b</sup> Embassador in *France*, a Narrative of the Proceedings against *Scotland*, wherein were the following Words. “ We send  
“ unto you the Copy of a Declaration, which we have caused to be made  
“ and published to the World, touching the Grounds and Causes of the  
“ War, now open between us and *Scotland*—— and the *Scots* have si-  
“ thens— most cruelly and pitifully *contra jura Gentium*, and against all  
“ Lawes of Armes and Ordre used amongs Princes, to the most perniti-  
“ ous Example and extreme Daungier of all Ministers, slayne and mur-  
“ dered *Somerſet* oon of our Heralds at Arms, being sent with Letters to  
“ the King of *Scots* from our Lieutenant, for the Delivery of the said  
“ Prisoners, as he was returning Homewards with their Aunſwere of Re-  
“ fuſall of the ſame— And in this most cruell murdering our Meſſenger  
“ and Haralde at Armes, having *his Cote* on his Bakke, and also a *Pur-  
“ ſuyvant* of *Scotlande* appointed to conduct him, to th'intent, as it doth  
“ evidently appeare, they might be the more ſure to have him in the  
“ Waye at ſuch Place, as it appereth they had determined for that Pur-

tum, gratum, & firmum habituros quicquid dictus Heraldus noster fecerit in præmissis & in aliquo præmissorum. In cujus rei testimonium hiis literis manu nostra signatis Sigillum nostrum apponi fecimus. Datum in Palatio nostro de *Westmonasterio* primo die Mensis *Junii* Anno Domini Milleſimo quingentesimo quinquagesimo septimo & regno- rum nostrorum tertio & quarto.

Sealed with the great Seal of Philip and Mary. H. 5. penes me. p. 339.

<sup>e</sup> Pontanus Hist. Gelr. p. 838, A. D. 1544. That the French Herald who desired Letters of Conduct for Embassadors to treat, was confined for four Days and reprimanded, in that he came from his Master an Enemy to the Empire, into the Dominions thereof, without the Permission and Consent of the Emperor. But Zouch de judicio inter gentes p. 155, puts the Question An Feialis ad exteras regiones transeuns veniam impetrare teneatur? *Ferdinandus Gonzaga* *Francisci* primi Regis *Gallie* Feialem in *Germaniam* missum, in custodiam mitti jussit, & edicto *Cæsarei* consilii, idem & finibus *Germanie* egredi jussus est, & denuntiatur, ne quisquam alius ejusdem con-

ditionis in posterum limites imperii, nisi prius impetrata venia, ingrediatur; de quo facto obsecro, inquit Paschasius, ubi lectum aut fando auditum Caduceatori impetrandam veniam aut securitatem, cujus Officium hoc ipsum aliis impetrare, quique peculiare jus habet eo penetrandi, quo Legatis aut illicitum est aut intutum, quod censisse videtur Rex *Argivorum* apud *Æschylum*, qui miratur *Danaidas* ausos fuisse ingredi ditionem suam, non præmissa Caduceatore. Vide *Paschasium* de Legatis cap. 11, 22.

<sup>f</sup> Hearne's Antiquities p. 103.

<sup>g</sup> Upton de re milit. p. 86. Quomodo conceditur securitas per personam publicam. Iste modus multum habetur in usu, & specialiter quando finitis obsidionibus & villis sive fortaliciis redditus, partes prius obfessæ volunt per suam compositionem transire ad alias partes: quibus dabitur forte aliquis notabilis Haraldus, seu Prosecutor, qui sunt personæ publicæ ad conducendum dictas gentes &c.

<sup>b</sup> Caligula E. 4. Bibl. Cott.

“ pose,



“ pose, the like Traitory being never before harde of among the most  
“ cruell and barberous Peple of the Worlde.” It would be too foreign  
here to give the Detail of this Murder, and that <sup>i</sup> *Leech* Bailly of *Forth*  
who committed it, being afterwards taken was hanged, and quartered for  
it at *Tyburn*.

This *Tabart* was by its Form and Fashion so short, the Openings on  
its Sides so large, and the Wings or *Manches* of it so wide, and in such a  
Shape, that the Habit worn under it must be very visible. The Surcoat  
of the Sovereign would indeed be disgraced, if it should be made a Co-  
vering for Raggs, or a Thread-bare greasy Coat: Which Accident could  
not happen, while these Officers had annual *Liveries* from the Crown, that  
were solemnly grave in their Figures, and rich in their Materials. Such  
Robes (together with their Dyets) were provided, and delivered to them,  
as they were the Menial and Domestick Servants in the Royal Household,  
in which Respect we find the King describing *Garter* by the Term <sup>k</sup> *Fami-  
liaris noster* in a Record; and even the Patents themselves to this Officer  
from 16 *Edw.* IV, contain an expresse Clause for such yearly Vestment,  
to which a positive Mandate hath been added in the latter ones for the due  
Allowance thereof; but since this Right, like several others, hath not been  
regularly continued, the Collector hopes for an Excuse in being somewhat  
more particular on this Article.

The common Law hath in private Cases provided a proper Remedy,  
when Robes incident to an Office by Prescription, or Grant shall be de-  
tained. A Robe, that by <sup>l</sup> Custom was Parcel of a Corrody, was re-  
coverable by an Assize, and if the <sup>m</sup> Keeper of a Park should be consti-  
tuted with a Salary and a Robe, and be disseized of the latter, the Plaint  
may be of that *Tort* singly. Here then is a plain Grant to *Garter* with a  
Reference to such Livery, as any King of Arms or Herald received du-  
ring the Reign of *Edw.* III; but from hence it must not be inferred, that  
the Kings of Heralds had not such annual Liveries antecedent to that  
Time; for we find a Charge for their Winter and Summer Robes in the  
<sup>n</sup> Household Accounts of *Edw.* I. It is evident from several ancient Au-  
thorities, that Winter Robes were in this Kingdom delivered at or before  
<sup>o</sup> *Christmas*, and the Summer ones at or before <sup>p</sup> *Whitsunday*, which differed  
from the Practice in <sup>q</sup> *France* only in Point of Time, where the Sum-  
mer Habits of the Domesticks were made against *Easter*, (at which Time  
the Date of their Year formerly commenced) and their Winter Robes  
against the Feast of *All Saints*.

<sup>i</sup> Hollingsh. p. 958. Stows Ann. p. 583, 584.  
This *Leech* had been one of the Lincolnshire Rebels.  
Goodwin. The killing Nuncius Regis was adjudged  
Treason Br. Patents 32. It was deemed Treason in the  
Rebels of Norwich, who slew an Herald coming to  
proclaim a Pardon. Hearne Antiquit. p. 103.

<sup>k</sup> See above p. 319, note o.

<sup>l</sup> Bro. Abridg. tit. Corrodies n. 10.

<sup>m</sup> Fitzherb. Ass. n. 175. Co. 8. Rep. p. 94 b.

<sup>n</sup> Comp. Hosp. 18 E. 1. in Turre. Roberto Parvo  
Regi Haraldorum pro roba sua hyemali anni præ-  
sentis per manus proprias xx s. & pro roba estiva-  
li xx s. *Nicholao Morell Regi Haraldorum* pro  
robris suis hyemalibus anni præsentis xx s. & pro

roba estivali xx s. *Nicholao Morell Regi Haraldo-  
rum* per diem vi d. pro vadiis suis.

<sup>o</sup> M. Paris ad A. D. 1243 appropinquante vero  
& imminente præclara Dominica Nativitatis festi-  
vitate, qua mutatoria recentia, quæ novas Robas  
appellamus, Magnates suis domesticis distribuere  
confueverunt. Vide ibid. p. 143, 157, 172, 255.

<sup>p</sup> Vide Commun. de Ter. Mich. 21 H. III. Con-  
stitutiones Hospitii sub Ed. II, & Constitut. sub  
Ed. IV, c. 40. Dugd. Orig. Juridic. p. 106. Rymer  
vol. xi, p. 566.

<sup>q</sup> Loiseau p. 155. And in Dauphine, Memoires  
pour l'hist. de Dauphine p. 216.



But the present Enquiry must be confined within the Limits of the Retrospection of this Patent, which extends no farther back than the Reign of Ed. III inclusive; under whom even the Apprentices of the Heralds received some Ells *de panno radiato*, which the Editor takes to be Cloth with Rays of different Colours, like to the ancient *radiated* Hoods of the *Carmelites* described by our Historian <sup>f</sup> *Knighton*; in this Reign there was a Warrant for Robes to <sup>r</sup> *Norroy* King of the Heralds, and in the 37th Year the like *radiated* Cloth was delivered to <sup>u</sup> *Vaillant* and *Faucon* Heralds, with Hoods furred with white <sup>x</sup> *Bogie*. In the Reign of his Successor *Rich. II*, *Aquitaine* King of Arms, and *Hereford*-Herald had *radiated* Cloth, and *Burdeaux* <sup>z</sup> Herald and *Faucon* had their Gowns *de Secta Scutiferorum Hospitalii*, that is, of the same Suit or Clothing with the Esquires of the King's Household. By the Way, the Colours of this *radiated* Cloth were at that Time probably white and red, since <sup>a</sup> *Knighton* acquaints us, that in the xith Year the Mayor and Citizens of *London* were habited *in coloribus regis, videlicet in gownis albi coloris & rubri*. The <sup>b</sup> Patent 9 R. II to *John March Norreys*, grants him a Salary "*ac etiam robas suas ad Statum suum pertinentes*," and on 12 May 1 H. IV, that King <sup>c</sup> granted to *Richard Brugges Lancaster* King of Arms his daily Wages, "*ensemblement ovesque ses Robes appartenantz a son Estat*," which general Words prove, that so long since there were stated settled Habits, incident to the Office of a King of Arms, whose Materials and Forms were well known.

There remain doubtless in the Custody of the King's Remembrancer several Wardrobe Accounts, which might probably furnish us with the Particulars of these Liveries in the succeeding Reigns, but till these shall be cleared from the Dust, wherein they lie covered, with an immense Quantity of other Instruments of great Value, The Publisher shall only insert some few Extracts from the Records, which he hath inspected, touching these annual Vestments. In the 17th Year of *Hen. VI*, <sup>d</sup> *Garther, Clarenceux*, and *Lancaster* had their Winter Robes made of Murray and *radiated* Cloth, and in the next Year the Kings and Heralds <sup>e</sup> petition for their

<sup>r</sup> See above p. 284, note t.

<sup>f</sup> Honorius quartus Papa mutavit capas Fratrum de Carmelo in purum album, quæ prius erant stragulatæ, radiatæ, & birratæ [forfan barratæ] Knight. Col. 2463. n. 10.

<sup>t</sup> See above p. 300, note b.

<sup>u</sup> See above p. 316, note f.

<sup>x</sup> Rot. Parl. 37 E. 3, n. 26, being in the same Year hath these Words nul manere de Pellure ou de Bugee, mes seulement d'aiguel, tonit, chat, gepill. Stat. 24 H. 8. c. 13. black Cony or Bogy &c.

<sup>y</sup> Comp. Alani de Stokes 7 R. 2. m. 6. Nicholao Cheyne Regi Armorum Aquitania, Richardo Hereford Herald Armorum &c. ad gownas cum capuciis faciendas contra festum natalis Domini, sci- licet cuilibet eorum ii uln. panni coloris curt. & iii uln. panni radiati, de secta Scutiferorum Hospitalii ipsius Domini Regis &c.

<sup>z</sup> Lib. Cotom. in Offic. Garder. p. 178, Willmo Burdeaux heraud, Colynet Faucon ad gownas cum capuciis factas contra festum natalis Domini anno 13 [Rich.] de consimili dono Regis de secta aliorum Scutiferorum ipsius Domini Regis, viz. cuilibet eorum ii ulnas panni col. curt. & iii ulnas panni radiati.

<sup>a</sup> Col. 2696. n. 53.

<sup>b</sup> Pat. 9 R. 2. p. 2. m. 21.

<sup>c</sup> Privat. Sig. in Turre. vide 4 H. 4. Rym. vol. 8. p. 281, and in Exit. Pell. Mich. 11 H. 4. Money was paid him in Lieu of these Robes. See Pat. 1 H. 5. p. 3. m. 26.

<sup>d</sup> See above p. 336, note u.

<sup>e</sup> An Original in Bibl. Cotton. Faustina E. 1. To the right Christien Kyng our Sovereign Lorde.

The King grantyd in lyke forme, as halsbodyr hath ever afore this Tyme.

Beseching to youre highness meost humbely youre Kyngges of Armes heraudes to considere that in al the tymes of the noble Kyngges of Ingland your Predecessors, the Kyngges of Armes heraudes of the said Reme han had owte of her grete Wardrobe at every feste of Christemesse here lyvere clothyng lyk to other Squiers of the Kyngges Court of youre benigne grace, right Christien Prince to comaunde your Lettres of Prive Seel, direct to the Wardrobe of youre grete Warrobe for the tyme beyng or shall be, to deliver to youre said Kyngges of Armes heraudes from tyme to tyme at every Feste of Christemesse her lyvere clothyng lyke to other Gentylnen of your noble Court, and this in honneur of Gentilesse and way of Charite.

Lettre eust faicte a Westm. le xviii jour de Dec. l'an xviii.

W. Ple. Bardolf Chamberlain.  
Livery



Livery, which was granted, as appears by the Subscription of Sir *William Phelippe* then Lord Chamberlain, and from the <sup>j</sup> Privy Seal, which are still remaining. In both which Instruments it is recited, that these Officers had received the like Liveries in the Reigns of that King's Progenitors; a Petition of the same Tenour was renewed in the following <sup>g</sup> Year, and the Wardrobe <sup>b</sup> Account contains the Entry of Winter Robes then delivered to *Garter, Lancaster, and Clarenceux*; <sup>i</sup> *Chester* Herald obtained the same in the 23<sup>d</sup> Year, and <sup>k</sup> *Garter, Lancaster, and Guienne* had the like in the 35<sup>th</sup> Year, wherein is an expresse Reference to the Precedent under the Reign of *Hen. V.*

These Liveries which at first were of woollen Cloth, became in Tract of Time to be made of richer Materials, <sup>l</sup> *Upton* who wrote under the Reign of *Hen. VI.* takes Notice, that Pursivants might wear Velvet and Cloth of Gold: Upon Account of these Liveries, as well as of the Tabarts, there was generally a Provision inserted into the sumptuary Statutes about Apparel, that these Laws should not extend to the Heralds. Thus the Act 3 E. IV. c. 5, which ascertained the wearing Cloth of Gold, Furr of Sables, Velvet upon Velvet, Silk of the Colour of Purple &c. to several Degrees, hath an Exception for Haroldes and Purcivants. The Statute 1 H. VIII. c. 13, hath a Provision that it shall not be prejudicial to Haroldes of Armes, which is likewise continued in the Acts made in 6 H. VIII, c. 1. 7 H. VIII, c. 7. 24 H. VIII, c. 13. The like Caution was taken by the Parliaments in *Scotland*, where in 1471 it was enacted, "that na man fall weare filkes in time cumming in doublet, gowne, or  
" Cloakes, except Knichtes, Minstrelles, and Herauldes, without that  
" the wearer of the samin may spend ane hundreth pundes woorth of  
" land rent, under the paine of amerciament to the King of twentie  
" pound als oft, as they ar foundin wearand filkes, and escheting of the  
" samin to be given to the Herauldes and Ministrelles." In 1581 another Statute was made, which appropriated Cloth of Gold, Silver, Silk,

*f* *Henri &c.* Au Gardein de nostre grande Garderobe q'ore est, ou qi pur le temps ferra, Salut: Nous avons entenduz parmye la supplication des Roys d'armes Herauds, coment es temps de nos nobles Progenitours Roys d'Engleterre, les Roys d'armes Herauds du dit Royaume ont eux a la Garderobe de nos ditz Progenitours encountre chacun Fest de Noel leur Liverie de Vesture, par maner come les Esquiers du Court du Roy ont eux, nous les premises considerans, Volons de nostre grace espetiale, et vous mandons, que vous facez faire delivrer aux Roys d'armes Heraudes desorenavant de temps en temps encountre chacun Fest de Noel nostre Liverie de Vestur, en semblable forme, come tous autres Roys d'armes Heraudes ont eux avant ces heures, Et volons que cestes nos lettres vous en foyent garant, Et que par icelles vous en ayez due allouance en vostre accompt: Donnee sous nostre prive Seal a Westm. le xviii jour de Decembre l'an de nostre regne dis oytisme.

*g* To the Kyng our Souveraigne Lord

The Kyng hath graunted

Besechen right mekely youre humble Serviteurs *Garter, Lancaster, and Clarenceux*, That it liketh to your noble ----- have Lyvere of Clothinge, in manere, as youre Squiers of Court have ayenst this Fest of Cristemasse last passed ----- that now ys,

or for the tyme schal be to deliver to youre saide suppliants thaire Lyvere of clothinge, as alle other Kynges of ----- for your gracious lignie.

Lettre eut feust faite ----- l'an xix au Gard. ----- pur le feste de Noel prochein.

*b* Comp. Garder. penes Remem. Regis 19 H. 6. *Garter, Lancaster, & Clarenceux* Regibus Armarum vocatis Herolds, cuilibet eorum ad vesturam suam yemalem contra festum Natalis Domini, cuilibet eorum ii uln. pann. murr. et iii uln. pann. radiati de dono dicti Domini Regis per literam dorman. de privato Sigillo dicto Custodi, qui nunc est, vel qui pro tempore fuerit inde directam, dat. 14 Oct. hoc anno xix.

*i* To the right Christen Kyng our Soverain Lord; The Kyng hath graunted thys Byll.

Besechyng moste humbly your humble Servant and Heraude of Armes *Chestre* of your benygne grace to comaunde your lettres of warrant dormant direct to your Warderoper of your grete Warderope for the tyme beyng to deliver to your said Heraude yerely his Lyvere clothyng lyke as your oither Heraulds have, and he shal pray God for you.

Sudeley Chamburleyn.

Don. &c. a Westm. le jour d'Averil l'an xxiii.

*k* See above p. 351 note 2.

*l* De re militari p. 20.

U u u u u

Velvet,



Velvet, Satin, Damask, Taffata &c. to the Degrees therein mentioned, excepting Herauldes and others therein recited. In 1621 another Act to the same Effect, wherein the Heraulds are by Name exempted, and so late as 1672, it was enacted that none should wear any Apparel, wherein there should be any Gold, or Silver, or any flower'd Stuffs, striped Stuffs, or Brocades of Silk, excepting, among others, Heraulds as to their Coats.

It is particularly remembered that *Ed. IV*<sup>m</sup> granted to *Garther* King of Arms ii Robes *aur.* & i Velvet *cremo.* and that *Hen. VII* granted him ii Robas *aureas.* The former Prince in his 7th Year, issued Money to *Norroy* to buy him three Yards of Velvet, when he was sent to the Duke of *Burgundy.* Our Kings also frequently presented foreign Officers of Arms with Velvet, and Scarlet, and the Charge thereof is inserted in the Accounts, whereas it had been much more proper to have given them that Money directly, than to have laid it out in Materials, which if they could not wear, would be of no other Advantage than by the Sale of them at Discount. In the 5th of *Ed. IV*, the *Neapolitan* Herald received five Pounds in the Price of a Piece of Scarlet to make him a Gown: The Emperor's Herald had<sup>p</sup> eight Pounds in the Price of 13 Yards of black Velvet. And thus it was customary for Princes to reward foreign Officers of Arms with very rich Robes, *Guelbres*<sup>q</sup> Herald sent to the King of *France* for the Appointment of a Time and Place of Battle, received rich Mantles with Furrs. *John Holland* gave the <sup>r</sup> Herald who brought him a Challenge, a Mantle furred with Meniver; *Du Guesclin* gave the <sup>s</sup> Officer, who came from the Duke of *Lancaster*, "*un Jupon de soie tout neuf.*" Our *Hen. V* gave the <sup>t</sup> Officer who brought him Notice of the Battle to be had near *Agincourt* *une robe.* The Duke of *Burgundy* presented *Constance* Herald in 1435, "with "*une robe brodee de la Liverie des nopces d'Estampes, laquelle le dit Duc portoit, et avoit vestue pour l'heure.*" In 1474 the Duke of *Burgundy* received the Herald of *Lorraine* (as the <sup>x</sup> Historian words it) "*ex-ceptum hominem Principis ornatu pervestivit.*" It hath been shewn that *Smert*<sup>y</sup> *Garther* had a large Present of Velvet from the King of *France.* Our *Richmond Clarenceux* in 5 *Hen. VII*<sup>z</sup> received from the Embassador of *Spain* "*ung robe et ung purpoint de Satin noir, et un drap noir bien fin de iiii escus l'aune, double de ung damas noir bien fin & longue jusques a my jambe,*" and from Monsieur de *Rieux* Marshal of *Bretagne* "*une robe de velours noir fourree de Baugs noir jusques terre.*" *Normandy*<sup>a</sup> Herald in 1517 defied the Duke of *Savoy*, and had the rich Vestment which the Duke then wore: it is needless to give more Precedents of this Practice.

<sup>m</sup> B. 3. penes me p. 23.

<sup>n</sup> Exit. Pell. Mich. 7 E. 4. *Norroy* Regi Armorum misso ad Ducem *Burgundia* cum Secretario Regis in denariis x l. & in pretio trium virgarum velvet xlvi s. viii d.

<sup>o</sup> Collect. *Rymer.* 5 E. 4. *Garthero* Regi Armorum super expensis certorum Extraneorum de *Naples* infra regnum *Anglia* existentium 50 l. Heraldorum eorum Extraneorum in pretio unius petii de Skarlet pro toga per Dom. Regem sibi data C. s.

<sup>p</sup> Exit. Pell. Pasch. 7 E. 4. Cuidam Heraldus Imperatoris *Alemannia* in denariis sibi liberatis per

manus proprias in precio xiii virgarum de velvet nigro viii l. & in pecunia numerata decem marcas de dono Regis.

<sup>q</sup> Froiss. vol. 1. c. 41. p. 45.

<sup>r</sup> Ibid. vol. 3. p. 166.

<sup>s</sup> Lobineau Hist. de Bretagne p. 353.

<sup>t</sup> Juvenal des Ursins p. 314.

<sup>u</sup> Chartier Hist. de Ch. vii, p. 86.

<sup>x</sup> Addit. ad Abb. Ursperg. p. 327.

<sup>y</sup> See above p. 354.

<sup>z</sup> MS inter Cod. Norf. in Coll. Arm.

<sup>a</sup> Guichenon l'Hist. Geneal. de Savoye p. 627.



Montjoie King of Arms at his Creation was <sup>b</sup> appatelled “*en habits royaux, comme le Roy meme, c'est a dire, robes d'escarlade fourrees de Menu-vair*,” and had a Right to the Vestment, which the King himself wore on Christmas-Day. The Duke of Bretagne in 1457 bought of Normandy King of Arms, a long Robe of Cloth of Gold wrought on a black ground furred with Ermins, out of which he made a Cope, as it may be supposed, to be worn by himself, when he was to be admitted an honorary Canon in the Church of St. Gratian de Tours, which was a Privilege that the <sup>d</sup> Emperor, King of France, and several other Princes and great Lords had in some Cathedrals within their Territories. And in several Wills of the antient Officers of Arms in this Kingdom, there were <sup>e</sup> Devises of their Gowns of Velvet, and other rich Silks to Churches, in order to make Copes, and other Utenfils for celebrating divine Service in them.

Master Darvy [Cockran] a Scotsman born was King of Harolds in Denmark, and proceeded through Antwerp in a Gown of rich Cloth of Gold, his Servants in Liveries of green Chamlet, and was detained by our Garrison at Tournay for some Time.

Besides these annual stated Liveries abovementioned, our Officers of Arms had likewise other Under-gowns delivered them from the Wardrobe, as their Right upon particular Occasions, which were different from these annual Ones. For at the Coronations of the King and Queen, and at Tilts they received Robes of Scarlet, and upon Expeditions in the Army, they had Liveries of the Colours of the Blason of the General: And again the chief Officer of Arms present, had Right to Robes upon Marriages, as Garter King of Arms had upon Creations of the Nobility, and Installations of Companions elected into the most noble Order of the Garter, and all Officers of Arms on their attending Funerals, had Right to mourning Habits for themselves and Servants.

Scarlet was the Livery of the Crown at <sup>g</sup> Coronations, and the antient Treatise stiled “*Jura & Libertates appertinentes de antiqua consuetudine Armarum Officialibus*” takes Notice of this *Droit & vestes scarlati secundum cujuslibet gradum* that is, Robes of Scarlet according to the different Degrees of the Officers of Arms. Such Habits were in Fact delivered to <sup>b</sup> Guien King

<sup>b</sup> Du Fresn. Gloss. v. heraldus. The usual Habit of Montjoie worn under his Tabart, may be consulted in Favin and several other Writers.

<sup>c</sup> Hist. de Lobineau en preuves p. 1205. A. D. 1457. A Normandie Roi d'armes pour une robe longue de drap d'or a poil noir fourree d'Ermines, que le Duc print de lui, & la donna pour une Chape a l'Eglise de S. Gratien de Tours, auquel lieu il avoit este receu a Chanoine xc escus valant Ciiii l. ii s. vi den.

<sup>d</sup> See Du Fresn. Gloss. v. Canonici honorarii; La Bret Souverainete du Roy p. 139. Limn. Notit. Fran. vol. 1. p. 459. Coquille Hist. Nivern. p. 159. Savaron de l'Espee Franc. p. 16. Du Chesn Grand. des Roys de France p. 171. Guichenon Hist. de Bresse p. 215. Menestr. usage des Arm. p. 74. Bayles Dict. v. Chasteleux. Parthenai. Louvet Hist. de Guienne p. 149, 154. Valdesius de dign. Hisp. p. 277. But as to this Church at Tours In Paschali Arturus puer Turonis veniens, more debito, in Ecclesia B. Martini Canonicum est receptus, & in Stallum Decani in vestibus Chori,

sicut Canonicus installatus. Lobineau en preuves p. 326.

<sup>e</sup> See the Will of Bruges the first Garter p. 343 note 2. of Ireland p. 317, in which are several other Legacies of his Robes, and several other Wills might be here inserted.

<sup>f</sup> Caligula E. 1. in Bibl. Cotton.

<sup>g</sup> Exit. Pell. Pasch. 1 H. 5. Thome Carnica Clerico Garderobæ Regis super emptionem & providentiam pannorum Scarleti, ac aliorum pannorum & apparatus coronationi Domini Regis M. 1.

Thus the four Esquiers of the Kings Body and the four Ushers of the Chamber, and the Warden of the Jewells petition for 4 Yards of Scarlet to each of them, against the Festival of the Coronation of Hen. VI, which was granted to them. Origin. in Off. Pell. Froiss. l. 4. c. 114, that at the Coronation of Hen. IV tous autres Chevaliers & Escuyers avoient houpelands fourrees, de Livree, & estoient d'Escarlade.

<sup>h</sup> See above p. 328 note 1.



of Arms, Lancaster, Leiceſter, Derby, Hereford, Nottingham, Cornwall and Liberd [Leopard] Heralds at the Coronation of Hen. V, and to <sup>i</sup> Garter, Ireland, Exeter, Nottingham, Leopard, and Richmond Heralds at the Coronation of his Queen. The like ſcarlet Robes were delivered at the Coronation of the Queen of Edw. IV, as it is recited in the <sup>k</sup> Warrant for preparing the ſame againſt the Coronation of the Queen of Hen. VII, and our <sup>l</sup> Hiſtorian informs us, that theſe Officers had ſuch Liveries at the Coronation of Queen Anne Boleyn. There is no Occaſion of adding more Proofs, becauſe theſe Officers have ſince the Reſtoration been paid 167 l. in Money, in Lieu of ſuch Robes due upon each Coronation, which Compoſition in the Editor's Opinion, ſhould neither have been asked or granted, ſince theſe Officers would have made a greater Appearance in the Proceſſion, by wearing their *Tabarts* over theſe Liveries of the Crown trailing on the Ground, than by placing them over their uſual Habits; which ſeem much inferior in Figure and Shew to the antient Livery appropriated for ſo ſplendid a Ceremony. Formerly in <sup>m</sup> France, and alſo in the <sup>n</sup> Empire, the Officers of Arms had the Habits which were worn by theſe Monarchs at their Coronations.

Theſe Officers of Arms had a Right alſo to ſcarlet Robes, when they performed their Functions in attending upon Tilts and Turnaments, wherein the <sup>o</sup> Ceremonials are expreſs, but it would be tedious to insert them at Length, ſince theſe manly Exerciſes have been diſuſed. A learned <sup>p</sup> French Advocate well verſed in Antiquities, and jealous of the Honour of his own Country, could not however but freely confeſs, that the *Engliſh* (as his Words are) have been always the moſt glorious of all Nations in thoſe Feats of Arms: Theſe were the Images, Figures, or Preludes of War, and young Noblemen were by this <sup>q</sup> School rendered vigorous and active, bold and enterprizing, and animated with a generous Emulation, and by

<sup>i</sup> See above p. 324. note f.

<sup>k</sup> 38 B. 17 in Bibl. Harley f. 174. We will and ſtraightly command you, that unto our Servants the four Kings of Armes, four Heralds, and four Purſevants ye deliver, that is to ſay, to every one of them after their Degrees, as much quantity of Clothe, and of ſuch Coloure for their gowne to be had of our gylte, as any King of Armes, Herald, and Purſevant had at the Coronation of Queene Elizabeth, And theis our letteres ſhall be your ſuffytente warrant and diſcharge againſt us at all tymes hereafter. Yeven under our Signete at our Pallace of Weſtemeſter the xth daye of November the third year of our Reyng.

To our truſty and Welbeloved Servant Piers Curtays Keper of our greate Warderobe.

In a Ceremonial of Materials to be provided againſt a Coronation it is entred, for Garter King of Arms a Robe of Crimoſin Damaske, for Clarenceux, Norroy, and the reſt of the Heralds and Purſuivants at Armes Roabes of Skarlet Cloath. G. 5. penes me p. 28.

<sup>l</sup> Stow's Annals p. 565, Fuller in D. 4. in Off. Arm. p. 52.

<sup>m</sup> Belleforeſt les Annals de France l. 4. c. 41. Colomblere des Roys d'armes p. 69, 70. Favyn l. 1. c. 4.

<sup>n</sup> Jurispr. Heroica vol. 2. p. 71.

<sup>o</sup> Jura, debita, & Largitates appertinentes de

antiqua conſuetudine Armorum officialibus &c. Ille Rex Armorum vel Heraldus qui ederit proclamationem de haſtiludiis—habebit de ſuo labore ſex ulnas Scarleti &c. Sicile Heraud MS. in Bibl. Regia E. n. 1403.

<sup>p</sup> Guichenon Hiſt. Geneal. de Savoye vol. 1. p. 432, 433.

<sup>q</sup> About the Time of inſtituting this Order, the martial and magnificent Founder of it, granted Liberty of holding Juſts annually at Lincoln, and the Patent recites, that ſuch Exerciſes were “ad ſolatium virorum militarium, & uſum armorum melius optinendum; Nos itaq; recensitis Geſtis antiquorum attendentes, quantum extulit nomen & gloriam hominum militarium uſus & amor armorum, quantumque per numerofitatem hominum expertorum in armis Regale ſolium roboratur &c.” Pat. 18 E. 3. p. 1. m. 44. The Proclamation for Juſts on the Marriage of the Duke of York in 1477 hath theſe Words; “becauſe the laudable and noble Cuſtome of this matrimonial and triumphant Joy in tyme paſſed hath be, that at ſuch high dayes of honour, exerciſe and faiſtes of the neceſſaire diſcipline of Armes wer ſhewed and done to experient and enable Nobleſſe to the deſervyngs of Chevallerie, by the which our Moder Church is defended, Kyngs and Princes ſerved, and Contrays kept and manuteigned in Juſtice and Peaſe.” M. 3. in Off. Arm. p. 7 b.



these Seminaries they gained Experience to turn their blunted Spears and Swords into pointed Ones, when the publick Service required it. These Martial Exploits were continued in this Kingdom, to the End of the Reign of King James the First<sup>r</sup> inclusive; and the Discontinuance of them in foreign Parts, hath been regretted by some of their<sup>r</sup> Writers.

The Romance of *Saintre* contains the Customs of the Age wherein it was compiled, and we are informed by it, that *Anjou* King of Arms being sent to *Barcelona* with the Articles of a Tilt received from the King, "*ung tabart de velloux figure noir fourree de Martes sebellins.*" That *Saintre* gave to the King of Arms of *Arragon*, who brought him the Acceptance of the Articles and the Apointment of the Tilting, "*ung tresbel mantel de damas cramoisy brochie d'argent, & fourre de fines Martes Sebelines.*" That the King of *France* likewise gave to *Brunswick* the Herald "*une de ses tres riches robes &c.*" But to come to true History, *Jaques Lalain* after a Tilting, presented the King of Arms of the *Golden Fleece* with a rich long Robe of Cloth of Gold, furred with Sables, in which that Officer habited himself.

It hath been suggested, that in military Expeditions the Heralds belonging to the Sovereign might formerly be invested with Tabarts, ensigned with the Coat Arms of the Generals: However that may be, we find such Officers in latter Ages received Gowns of the Colours of the Livery of the Generals, upon whom they were ordered to attend, at the Expence of the Crown. In the 36 *Hen. VIII.*, though "*Garter* and *Clarenceux* had eight Yards of red, and two Yards of yellow Velvet, the Heralds eight Yards of red, and two Yards of yellow Damask, and the Pursivants eight Yards of red, and two Yards of yellow Chamlet, (which were the Colours of the<sup>\*</sup> King's Livery) when they waited on that King in the Partition of the Army stiled the Middleward. Yet at the same Time the other Officers of Arms, who attended on the Duke of *Norfolk* Captain of the Vanward, had<sup>r</sup> blew lined with red, and those who then attended on the Lord *Russell* Captain of the Rereward, had<sup>z</sup> blew lined with Yellow. Besides one of these Heralds herein named, received likewise a Coat of Damask of the Kings Arms laid with Gold, and two of these Pursivants had two such Coats of Sarsenet. It appears from the Instruments, that these

<sup>r</sup> Annually on 24 March, being the Anniversary of that King's Accession to the Throne, See *Finets Philox.* p. 63, 76, which had been the Custom on 17 Nov. during the Reign of *Qu. Eliz.* *Camden Ann. Eliz.* sub A. D. 1570. This same Author the learned *Clarenceux* in *Ann. Jac.* 1620, 24 Martii Hastiludium in anniversarium Regis *Jacobi*, ubi Princeps *Carolus* 12 cursibus decursis omnem laudem retulit. Ego plumatus & superhumeralibus oneratus ex colore albo, caeruleo, & viridi, mihi ignotus ante equitavi. There was a Summons issued for a Tilt dated 29 Apr. 1625. W. Y. in *Off. Arm.* p. 22, upon Occasion of the King's Marriage.

<sup>s</sup> *Mayoli Dies Canicul.* tom. 2. coll. vi. Cur vero egregia atq; utilia exercitia deserint, haecenus mihi non constat: Habet certe Nobilitas etiamnum multos generosos & strenuos viros mihi favore & familiaritate notos, quibus haec desuisse ex animo dolet, & redintegrari atque renovari cuperent. Sed quid agant? vident virtutem non solum in suo, verum

etiam aliis statibus consensescere, omnia orta occidere, fato in pejus ruere, & retrosublapsa referri.

*Munster Cosm.* l. 3. Et hic fuit ultimus ludus militaris nobilium, post quem videmus vulgus Nobilium pro magna parte degenerasse in manifesta vitia, id quod, prohi dolor! nemo non novit; coereuit eos nonnihil ignominia illa, qua in ludis Torneamentorum confundebantur; jam vero illo, retinaculo quoq; submoto impunes multi ruunt in vitia, & exequantur cupiditates carnis.

<sup>t</sup> Hist. de *Jaques Lalain* wrote by *St. George Chastellain* who was *Toison d'or* p. 214. See *Olivier de la Marche* p. 328.

<sup>u</sup> W. Y. in *Off. Arm.* p. 113 l. 3 vol. *Cerem.* p. 76.

<sup>x</sup> *Stow's Ann.* p. 587.

<sup>y</sup> M. 16 in *Off. Arm.* p. 83.

<sup>z</sup> Ibid.

<sup>a</sup> W. Y. in *Off. Arm.* p. 114.



Officers of Arms in the 5th of *Hen. VIII*, had Gowns or Coats of <sup>b</sup> white and green. The Warrant to the Wardrobe in 1557, shews this Matter in the plainest Light, for a <sup>c</sup> Command is thereby given to deliver *Richmond* Herald a Coat of the King's Arms, of Damask painted with fine Gold, and for his Livery eight Yards of crimson Sattin, and two Yards of crimson Velvet for guarding the same, and to *Rougedragon* a Coat of the King's Arms of Sarsenet painted with fine Gold, and for his Livery eight Yards of crimson Chamlet, and two Yards of crimson Velvet for guarding the same, being then appointed to attend on the Earl of *Westmerland* Lieutenant and Captain-General from *Trent* Northwards; in which same Year <sup>d</sup> *Chester* Herald and *Portcullis* Purfevant had blue guarded with red, being then appointed to attend upon the Earl of *Pembroke* Captain General of the Army against *France*; and <sup>e</sup> *Blewmantle* sent afterward with the Earl of *Warwick* Lieutenant of the Bands of Men prepared to pass the Seas, received not only a Coat of the King's Arms laid in Oyl, but also eight Yards of blew Chamlet for a Coat, and two Yards of red Velvet to guard the same, and <sup>f</sup> *Somerset* and *Rougecroix* had the same Colours in 5 *Eliz.*; when they waited upon the Earl of *Shrewsbury*.

In this, and foreign Kingdoms, Officers of Arms had a Right to the Robes, which several Persons wore upon particular Occasions, as their Perquisite and Fee. A learned <sup>g</sup> Bishop taking Notice, that Princes used to give the Coats they wore to the Poets, assigns a Reason for it, that these Princes were so transported with the Excellency of the Compositions recited to them, that they could not defer extending their Liberality, and having nothing nearer at Hand than their own Robes, immediately gave them, in such Manner, as it is reported, that some Saints distributed their own Habits to the Poor; and that which at first happened by Accident upon a sudden Rapture, grew up gradually and silently in Tract of Time to be a Custom; and doubtless this same Author would have ascribed the same Original of the Practice of Princes, in giving their Vestments to the <sup>h</sup> Minstrels and Players, if those Instances had then occurred to his Memory. But though it is true, that Monsieur *Robert Clifford* in 5 *Hen. VII* being then in *Bretagne*, presented *Richmond Clarenceux* with his own Sword, because (as it is there <sup>i</sup> entred) he had no other Thing then to bestow upon him, yet it might admit a farther Enquiry, whether the Assignment of Habits in kind in Lieu of Fees to the Heralds, (as likewise to other Officers Ecclesiastical, and Temporal, whereof several Instances might be produced) may not in some Part owe its Institution to the Scarcity of the Species of Gold and Silver in former Centuries, when Habits were esteemed such a Treasure, as the bequeathing them took up frequently a large Compass in last Wills.

<sup>b</sup> M. 16 in Off. Arm. p. 15.

<sup>c</sup> Vinc. n. 151. p. 99 in Off. Arm.

<sup>d</sup> Ibid. p. 98.

<sup>e</sup> M. 16 in Off. Arm. f. 157 b.

<sup>f</sup> W. K. in Off. Arm. p. 111.

<sup>g</sup> Huet Orig. des Romances.

<sup>h</sup> See above p. 295. note c.

<sup>i</sup> Recueil des certains choses de *Richemont Clarenceux* inter Cod. MSS Norf. in Bibl. Collegii Ar-morum.



The Robes of the King and Queen, and of the Nobility worn by them at their Marriages, were the <sup>k</sup> stated Fees of the Heralds. The Ceremonials inform us, that the Sovereign gave his Robe to the Officers of Arms of that Country from whence the Queen was descended, and the Queen her Robe to the Heralds of the Prince her Husband. At the Marriage of *Charles Duke of Burgundy* with the Sister of *Edw. IV.*, *Chester Herald* received <sup>l</sup> “une longue robe d'ung riche drap d'or verd fourre d'ermis.” When *Earl Bothwell* by Proxy affianced the Daughter of *Hen. VII.*, he gave to the Officers of Arms the Gown of Cloth of Gold, which he then wore; and when the Marriage it self was solemnized, the King of *Scotland* before he sat down to <sup>m</sup> Supper “sent hys Gowne of Marriage to the Officers of Armes of *England*, and chaunged another of Velvet blak long and fourred of Martes, the which Robe berred the next Day in Court *Somerset Herald*, accompayned of his Companions, the which thaunked the Kynge: This Ritual specifies the King's Marriage Robes to have been “a Gown of Damaske hwytt figured with Gold and lyned with Sarsene, a Jakette with Slyffs of Satyn cramfyn, and the lists of velvet black, under that sam a dowblet of Cloth of gold, and a payre of scarlatte hosys;” On the following Evening the Queen delivered to the Officers of Arms of *Scotland* “hyr robe of marriage, the wiche the next day followyng barred hyr in Court in escharpa the Herawlt *Marchemont*, which robe is therein also described to be a rich robe, like the Kings, borded of velvet cramfyn and lyn of the same.”

These Officers had also the same Right to the Robes worn by <sup>n</sup> Knights of the *Bath*, when they received that honourable Degree, which are particularized to be the <sup>o</sup> Mantles and Surcoates of crimson Taffata, Coyfes, Laces with Tassels, the white leathern Girdles, the Gloves, the blue violet Gowns with the Hood furred with Minever, like to that of a Batchelour of Law; and in these very Gowns these Officers were to <sup>p</sup> apparel themselves in the Presence of the Sovereign. Thus also a certain Quantity of Cloth was due to each of these Officers for Mourning, as Part of their Fees at the Funerals which they attended, and even at Obsequies performed for <sup>q</sup> foreign Princes, which was a Practice continued here even after the <sup>r</sup> Reformation,

<sup>k</sup> In the *Tract* filed Jura &c. Dum Rex recipit uxorem pertinet supradictis notabilis largitas &c. & vestes sponsales Reginae & similiter Principis. And in several other MSS. As to the Nobility the said *Tract* Dum Dux, vel Marchio, vel Comes recipiunt uxores — vestes quas portant ipsi & eorum uxores; & si sint viduae mantella nigra etiam pertinent. As to foreign Realms see *Favin* l. 1. c. 4. *Colombiere des Roys d'armes* p. 71. *Belleforest les Grands Annals* l. 4. c. 41 &c.

<sup>l</sup> F. 3. penes me p. 115.

<sup>m</sup> G. xi penes me.

<sup>n</sup> See the old Ceremonial printed by *Byshe* in his *Notes upon Upton* p. 23.

<sup>o</sup> See the *Partition-Books* in the Heralds Office.

<sup>p</sup> *Partit. Book* p. 50.

<sup>q</sup> As it was heretofore the Custom in this Realm to signify to the Bishops by Writs under the Great Seal the Death of foreign Princes, quatenus exequias devote & solemniter celebrent, & animam cum decantatione missarum, aliisq; devotarum orationum

suffragiis altissimo specialiter commendent, whereof there are numerous Precedents in the Registers of several Sees, and one in *Ryleys Plac. Parliam.* p. 508. So our Kings caused Obsequies to be performed for such Foreigners in a splendid Manner, wherein almost the same Ceremonies were performed, as though the Body it self had been actually present, of which there was a Representation; whereof see *Dugd. Hist. of St. Pauls* p. 25. who produces several other Instances, to which large Additions might be made. That observed, for *John King of France* by *Edw. III.*, may be consulted in *Felibien l'Hist. de l'Abbaie de St. Denis* p. 282, and our *Wardrobe Account* 27 *Ed. III* refers to it &c. Thus the Obsequies of the *Black Prince* were celebrated at *Paris*, *Froiss.* vol. 1. p. 416. Those for *Hen. VIII* have been mentioned above p. 88. But to omit farther Precedents, since it is here only necessary to shew, that the Officers of Arms had mourning Gowns and Hoods on those Occasions, which are distinctly entred in a Book remaining in the Wardrobe, wherein are contained the Obsequies for the King of Arragon



Reformation, and justified by the Bishops in the Sermons they preached upon those Solemnities.

On all these occasional Ceremonies Garter Principal King of Arms not only participated in these Habits with the other Officers, but in some others had Rights to receive Vestments to himself exclusive of them. Whenever any Comment shall be published upon that Part of the Constitutions of his Office, declared by *Hen. VIII* in a Chapter of the most noble Order, it will be proper to dilate on his Right to the Habit worn at the Investiture of Knights elected to be Companions, as also of those created to any Degree of Peerage, or advanced to an higher Title therein, which Vestments were heretofore very rich, when the Nobility delighted in Magnificence, all which Habits this Officer may at his Election receive still in kind, or accept the Composition settled in Money in Recompence of them, and which Habits, if he takes them in Specie, are to be worn by him during the Remainder of the Day, wherein these splendid Investitures are performed. Those Constitutions refer to a Right due likewise to him upon his administering the Oath to all Officers of Arms upon their Creations, without expressing the Nature of it, which was either the Coat of the Founder, or Person who performed that Ceremony, or of the Officer upon whom the Character was conferred.

Whoever is curious to know the Shape of the Undergowns worn by these Officers of Arms, may receive some Satisfaction by viewing the Effigies of *Clarenceux* on his Monument in *St. Olave Hart-street, London*, who died in 1427; and the Pourtraicture of *Benoilt Clarenceux* on his Tomb in *St. Hellen's Church in London*, who died in 1534; and by inspecting the Figures of several Officers painted in old Manuscripts, and frequently in the Embellishments of the Initial Letter in antient Grants of Arms, and in some printed Draughts of Processions. And here it should be remembered, that the Lord Chancellours of this Kingdom upon Application to them, used to issue mandatory Writs to the Keepers of the Wardrobe for the Time being, to deliver annually these Liveries to these Officers during the Continuance of their Patents.

But to return to the *Escutcheon*, which distinguished and protected these Officers in Times of Peace, as the Tabart secured them from any Vio-

Arragon 7 H. VIII. Emperor Maximilian x H. VIII Lady Regent of France 23 H. VIII. The French King's Mother 25 H. VIII. Of the Empreſſe 31 H. VIII. The French King 1 Ed. VI. Queen of Spain 1 & 2 Ph. & M. King of Portugal 4 & 5 Ph. & M. The Emperor 1 Eliz. King of France 1 Eliz. The Emperor 9 Eliz.

r There is this Memorial in the Narrative of the Obsequies for the French King 1 Ed. VI, that the "Embassador of Scotland had warninge by Norroy "Kyng of Armes, by the comaundement of the "Councell to be at the said Obsequy, who made "answere, that he wolde not come, for becauſe "that the Ambassador of Scotland being reſydent "in France, was not commaunded to be at the "Obsequy of Kyng Henry the Eighth our late "Maſter, which was ſolempnlie doone in France "at Parrys." J. xi in Off. Arm. p. 114.

f In the first Year of Queen Eliz. at the Obsequies of the French King, Dr. Scorie Bishop elect of Hereford justified that Practice in his Sermon, which is

abridged in J. 13 in Off. Arm. p. 11. Mr. Camden in his Annals of Qu. Eliz. takes Notice of her performing Obsequies for the Emperor Charles V, and for this French King with great Solemnity, Justa in Templo Westmonasteriensis Mariae sorori magnifico apparatu solvit & paulo post Carolo Quinto— Illa tamen (ut [Henrico secundo] constaret regius honos) exsequias ut Regi amico in templo Paulino Londini magna pompa perſolvit. In her sixth Year the like Obsequies were celebrated for the Emperor Ferdinand, at which Archbishop Parker assisted, Strype's Life of him p. 175, where Grindal then Bishop of London, preached upon the same Subject. J. 13 in Off. Arm. f. 55, which Sermon is published in Print. Mr. Camden also mentions the Obsequies in 1574, for Charles the ixth King of France.

t See the Tracts filed Jura &c. Les Droits &c. n Claus. 1 H. 5. m. 8 to Richard Del Brug Lancaster. As to Garter see above p. 356 note t. p. 360 note k.

lence



lence in Times of War. Several Authors have remarked this Particular, *Moreau* <sup>x</sup> having treated upon the Rod belonging to them, proceeds, “*Outre ce les herauts portoient en temps de paix un esmail de Cristal rehaussé d’or garni, & borde de fine pierreries, & enrichy d’orfeverie pendu sur leur poitrine,*” and in another Place writes “*Le Heraut portoit la Cotte d’armes de son seigneur blasonnee, pour luy servir de sauf conduct en temps de Guerre,*” thus specifying the distinct Seasons of wearing these two different Ensigns. Two learned *French* Lawyers assert the same Doctrine. <sup>y</sup> *Budeus* recites the Custom of his own Age and Country “*Nostrates autem Caduceatores spintere hodie utuntur, quæ Armilla etiam dici potest, Blasonam autem lingua vernacula vocant. In præliis autem utuntur paludamento, quod eos velamentum sacrosanctos (ut ita dicam) facit, id est ab omni violentia tutos, vulgo Cotta Armorum vocatur.*” The Testimony of *Charondas le Caron* being the Son of <sup>z</sup> *Bretagne* Herald, in this Case is above Exception; “*jadis portent en temps de Paix l’esmail sur le haut de l’estomach, & en temps de Guerre la Cotte d’armes de Fleurs de Lis d’or, pour leur servir de sauvegard, & estre reconnus.*” *Pierre* <sup>a</sup> *Matthieu* says to the same Effect: And for this Reason doubtless it is, that the *Escutcheon* is omitted in the ancient Pourtraictures of these Officers, when they are represented in their Tabarts, which being reputed the principal Distinction and Ornament of the Heralds, we shall meet with very few Figures of them without that Investiture. However we are certain, that *Escutcheons* have not been long discontinued in this Kingdom; for not only <sup>b</sup> *Gerard Leigh* and Mr. <sup>c</sup> *Wever* mention them as the Symbols used in their Time, but Mr. *Lant* in the <sup>d</sup> Ceremonial of his own Creation to the Office of *Portcullis* Pursivant in 1588, enters “that at last the *Escutcheon* made of fyne “gould enamelled with the Arms of *England* was tyed with a point upon “his left hand.” It may therefore be an innocent Amusement to enquire into the Materials whereof these *Escutcheons* were made, their Figure or Fashion, the Impresses on them, and the Manner of wearing them by these Officers according to their respective Degrees.

The Appellations given to this Ensign by several Writers will afford Light in some of these Particulars, such are *Escutcheon*, *Blason*, *Email*, *Camail*, *Camahieu*. *Escutcheon* or *Scutcheon* is derived from the *Latin* Word *Scutum*, which properly signifies a Shield: And because armorial Ensigns were usually engraven or painted upon Shields, this Word hath been used by Writers to denote such Bearings. *Upton* <sup>e</sup> expresses these Jewels of the Officers of Arms by this Word *Scutum*, and explains the different Manners of wearing them by *Cursors*, *Chevauchers*, *Purservants*, and *Heralds* in four jingling *Latin* Verses; In an old <sup>f</sup> manuscript Copy of this Book there are Limnings or Draughts, wherein the two former Officers have each of them the Cross of *St. George* on a Shield, the first hanging to

<sup>x</sup> Tableau des Armoiries de France.

<sup>y</sup> Annotat. in Pandectas in L. de rerum divisione L. Sanctum.

<sup>z</sup> Pandectes du droit Francois a Paris 1627 in fol. p. 383.

<sup>a</sup> Hist. de Louis xi p. 487.

<sup>b</sup> Accedence of Armory. p. 76.

<sup>c</sup> Funeral Monuments p. 667.

<sup>d</sup> Observations by him MS inter Cod. Norf. in bibl. Colleg. Arm. p. 4 b.

<sup>e</sup> De re milit. p. 20.

Cinstoreo Scutum dicas referre Pedinum,  
Sic Equitis dignum fert scapula dextera signum,  
Sed humero lævo detulit Prosecutor ab ævo,  
At Haraldorum stat pectore fons titulorum,  
<sup>f</sup> Inter MSS Vinc. in Off. Arm.



his Belt, the other fixed to his left Shoulder, the Pursivant is represented in his Tabart, and consequently hath no Escutcheon that appears, and an Herald is there exhibited also in a Tabart, presenting to the Sovereign a Shield ensigned with Arms hung to a String, as though it was to be put about the Neck of a new Herald then to be created. Our Records hereafter cited, likewise use this Word *Scutum* in the same Sense for the Badges of these Officers. The old Treatise *Stultifera navis* printed with Figures under the Title *de Stulta nuntiorum legatione*, which *Alexander Barclay* translated of foolish Messengers and Pursivauntes, entertains us with the Picture of such an Officer having the Escutcheon on his left Shoulder: No one will laugh at this Citation, who considers that grave Authors have quoted *Heliodorus* and other such Writers, for the Manners of the Ages wherein they lived, and that Mr. *Selden* referred to the Poems of *Chaucer* in the weighty Argument of the Sovereignty of the Sea, and likewise to the Ballad of the Tanner of *Tamworth* relating to Collars in his Titles of Honour. *Email*, in *English* Enamel is well known, which Word in the *French* Language became attributed to signify Colours in Arms; a learned & Jesuit observed from a Manuscript, that Limners and Painters to make Parchment more firm, worked it first over with a Composition [*Encaustum*] and then applied the Colours, and saith that Figures were enamelled on gold and silver Vessels, and on Arms in the same Manner, and that from thence, the Badge of the Heralds and Messengers took the Denomination of *Email*. Doctor *Wats* in his <sup>b</sup> Glossary makes a Difference between *Camayeu* and *Camayeux*, the former importing the sardonix Stone, the latter signifying Medals, or the Sculpture of Gemms; *Camail* is the Design of a Painter, wherein one Colour only is employed, the Lights and Shades being on a Ground of Gold or Azure, which the *Greeks* term *Monochromata*. *Blason* is an equivocal Word, which hath been applied to the Devise or Bearing, to the Shield whereon the Arms are painted, and to the Science which describes or deciphers the Colours of these Arms. It hath been <sup>i</sup> shewn, that the Officers of Arms had the Cup, wherein the Wine or Water was carried at the Time of their Creations, as their Perquisite, in Order to make themselves an Escutcheon of the Arms of their Founders. And <sup>k</sup> *Gollut* quotes *Olivier de la Marche* for this Purpose. This latter Person was sent hither in an Embassy from the Duke of *Burgundy*, and he published the Ordonnances of the Household of that Duke dated 1474, wherein he takes particular Notice, that the Officers of Arms in *Burgundy* wore their *Blasons* on their right Sides, which he remarks to be contrary to the Custom of the *English* Officers, who bore them on the left Side, which occasioned his demanding the Reason of our Usage from one of the *English* Kings of Arms, who returned him the Answer in the <sup>l</sup> Margin, but

<sup>g</sup> Menestrier l'Art du Blason justifie p. 42.

<sup>h</sup> Ad Math. Paris.

<sup>i</sup> Notes to the black Book p. 114.

<sup>k</sup> De la Republ. Sequan. p. 817. Je trouve es escripts du Sieur Olyvier de la Marche non imprimes, que le Duc donnoit le nom selon le vin, qui lors luy estoit presente en un tasse; de sorte que si c'estoit du vin envoie ou achepte en la

*Franch* Comte, lors le Duc appelloit cest herault *Franch* Comte, luy donnant la tasse, qui en ces temps luy estoit presentee, afin que l'herault en fait former son Escusson.

<sup>l</sup> P. 699. Les Officiers d'armes doivent porter les blasons du Prince au coste dextre selon nostre coustume, mais l'officiers d'armes d'*Angleterre* portent leur blasons au coste senestre. Et autrefois j'ay



but a more satisfactory Answer might have been given, by shewing that the *English* Pursevants (for to them this Question was confined) conformed themselves to the general Practice, and that those of *Burgundy* were singular in their Method. *Sicily* Herald wrote a Treatise for the Instruction of his Fraternity, wherein he is <sup>m</sup> positive, that the Pursevant was to wear the Arms of his Founder affixed to the left Side of his Breast, and therein <sup>n</sup> *Symphorien Champier* agrees. <sup>o</sup> *Le Feron* is as expresse, that Pursevants should wear their Emails on the left Shoulder in Contradistinction to the Herald and Kings of Arms.

These Officers being sent in Embassies and Messages to foreign Princes, had sometimes the Permission and Honour granted them to bear the Escutcheon of those Princes to whom they were thus sent, which was not only esteemed a particular Favour and Reward, but, (as a late <sup>p</sup> Historian writes,) was an Indication and Testimony of the Amity between these Princes, the Founders of these Officers: And in that Place he produceth the Instance of *Hannes* Pursevant, who in 1461 obtained that Privilege from the Duke of *Bretagne*, and the same <sup>q</sup> Author quotes another Precedent of such a Communication, where that Duke as a Signal of his Friendship with the Duke of *Charolois* in 1406, gave *Charolois* Herald the like Liberty of thus bearing his Arms. Our own Records furnish us with Examples of the same Nature. <sup>r</sup> *Lisbon* Herald in 30 *Hen. VI.* had besides other Gifts Money likewise issued to him to buy an Escutcheon of the Arms of our King, and in the next Year the <sup>s</sup> Herald of the King of *Arragon* had the same Honour conferred upon him; and the Earl of *Derby* [afterwards *Hen. IV.*] gave to the <sup>t</sup> Herald of the Duke of *Austria*, a Shield of his Arms and Badges upon Silver gilt. Thus *Conimbres* Herald is described by <sup>u</sup> *Froissart*, with the Escutcheons of his Sovereign and of several other Princes, and the <sup>x</sup> Prohibition to *Montjoie* in France “*de james en porter nul [blason]*” “*de quelque autre Seigneur, que ce soit,*” seems to intimate the Allowance of that Practice in the Cases of other Officers of Arms.

j'ay demande au Roy d'armes de leur party, pour quoy ils avoyent tele coustume en *Angleterre*, sur quoy il me respondit, que leur raison estoit plus grande qu'autre. Et si un noble jeune homme, qui jamais n'auroit este arme, vouloit sçavoir de quel coste il devoit prendre son escuz, il le verroit aux blasons des Officiers d'armes, & de quel coste ils le portent. Et pardeza les Officiers d'armes les portent aux dextre coste, pour ce que le dextre est le plus noble pour faire honneur au blason, et ainsi chescun a opinion raisonnable. Et la cause pour quoy le Prince leur donne la tasse d'argent a les creer est pour faire le blason de ses armes.

<sup>m</sup> MS. in bibl. Regia E. n. 1403. Le Prince luy met a la poitrine ou coste senestre ses Armes.

<sup>n</sup> Le fondement et Origine des Tiltres de Noblesse MS. treating on Pursevants. — Et luy doit mettre une Corte d'armes armoyee de ses armes, les manches pendantes devant & derriere, & attacher un escusson sans couronne de ses armes sur la poitrine senestre, et le corps d'icelle sur les Epaules.

<sup>o</sup> Institution des Roys & herauds p. 43.

<sup>p</sup> Lobineau Preuves de l'hist de Bretagne p. 1266.

<sup>q</sup> Ibid. p. 701.

<sup>r</sup> Priv. Sig. 4 Junii 30 H. 6. Henri Sc. to the Tresorer &c. We wol and charge you unto the personnes underarriten ye deliver the summes of money that followen, that is to say — to Lesbone harold of the King of Portingale x marcs — To oure Kings of Arms, harolds and Pursevaunts v marcs, To thambassadors of iberle of Douglas and his pursevaunte xliiii l. vi s. viii d. and for a Scuchon of oure Armes to be delivered to the said Lesbon xxxiiii s. iiii d.

<sup>s</sup> Exit. Pell. M. 31 H. 6. Cuidam heraldo Regis Aragon in denariis sibi liberatis in persolutionem xl s. quos Dominus Rex eidem Haraldo liberare mandavit habend. de dono suo pro quodam scuto Armorum suorum inde faciend.

<sup>t</sup> Comp. Willmi Lovency Clerici Garderobæ Henrici Lancastrie Comitis Derby 17 R. 2. in Officio Ducatus Lancast. Hermannu Goldsmith pro ponder. unius Scuti argenti deaurati de armis & bagis Domini pro J. heraud Ducis d'Ostreich ponderan. xiv unc. de Troys prec. unc. ii s. vi d. xxxii s. viii d. & pro opere & deaurat. ejusdem xxxii s. viii d. lxx s. iv d.

<sup>u</sup> Vol. 5. p. 125.

<sup>x</sup> Du Fresn Gloss. v. heraldus,



The Form of the Email of this *Montjoie* is described by several<sup>y</sup> Writers, and the Constitutions touching<sup>z</sup> Officers of Arms settled in a Chapter of the Order of the *Golden-Fleece*, refer to this Ensign of the Heralds. We also know, that the Officers of Arms belonging to the Nobility wore such Badges, in that it is remembered the<sup>a</sup> Herald of the Duke of *Alençon* in 1431 was reduced to that Necessity, as to mortgage his Email for his Support, and that the Supposititious Herald equipped out by *Lewis XI.* had, as<sup>b</sup> *Comines* informs us, the Email of *Plein Chemin*, who had been an Officer of Arms to the Admiral.

The Heralds in *Spain* had such Escutcheons, the Effigies of *Nicaise l'Adam Grenade* King of Arms, who died in 1547, upon his<sup>c</sup> Monument in the Church of *St. John de Rouville* at *Arras* exhibits "*sur son bras droit*" "*son Esmail*," and the<sup>d</sup> "Poutraicture of the Herald of *Alphonfus V* in the Cloister of *St. John de Lateran* shews him not only in his Coat of Arms, but "*a son Email sur le coste droit d'un Escusson d'Arragon couronne*, And Money was given to a<sup>e</sup> Pursivant of *Bretagne* in Order to enable him to make his Email of that Duke's Arms. The Badge of the Lord *Lyon* of *Scotland* is of pure Gold in an Oval Form, having on one Side the Effigies of *St. Andrew* upon the Cross, surmounted with an Imperial Crown, and on the other Side the antient Arms of that Kingdom under the like Crown, and on the Bottoms or Bases of each Side the Thistle Vert flowered Gules.

The Officers of Arms belonging to military Orders bore usually the Ensign, or some chief Badge thereof in their Escutcheons; The Herald of the *Geneste* or Bromestalk is represented by his<sup>f</sup> Picture at *Ingoldstad* in a Tabert vert semee of Scutcheons of *St. George*, having about his Neck a Collar, to which are Appendant "*deux gouffes de Genest*," two Shells of Brome, one white, the other vert; but probably this might not be in Strictness a real military Order, let us therefore inspect the Injunctions in the Orders of the *Golden-Fleece*, *St. Michael*, and of the *Holy Ghost*. In the 15th Article of the Ordonnances touching the Officers of the *Golden Fleece* it is directed, that the Sovereign shall deliver to "*Toison d'or* King of Arms "*ung esmail, qui sera du dit Ordre, ou seront les Armes du dit Souverain, et le portera chacun jour tant qu'il vivra*." The 29th Article of the Statutes of *St. Michael* command<sup>g</sup> *Mont Saint Michael* (and not as<sup>h</sup> *Dr. Heylin* and<sup>i</sup> *Mr. Ashmole* misname him *Monsieur Saint Michael*) to wear during his Life "*un Email du dit Ordre*," which Officer at the Investitures of the Duke of *Norfolk* and the Earl of *Leicester* into that Order, in 8 *Eliz.* had about his<sup>k</sup> Neck a Ribbond, at which hung upon his Breast the Arms of *France* within the Order of Gold, some<sup>l</sup> Writers say, his Jewell was a

y Furetiere Dict. v. Roy &c.

z Jurisprud. Heroica vol. 2. p. 68 &c.

a Lobineau l'Hist. de Bretagne p. 589.

b L. 4. c. 7.

c Menestrier Usage des Armoiries p. 246.

d Ibid. p. 154.

e Lobineau en preuves de l'Hist. de Bretagne p. 1112, ad A. D. 1445 a S. Aubyn nouveau poursuivant, pour luy aider a faire un esmail des Armes du Duc.

f Menestrier Art du Blason ou la pratique des Armoiries p. 96.

g See S. 62 of that Order, This Denomination is taken from the Church wherein the Ceremonies of the Order were to be performed.

h Cosmogr. p. 205.

i Hist. of the Garter p. 119.

k Ashm. p. 370.

l Favyn in 4to p. 938. Hist. des Ordres vol. 8. p. 374.



gold Escallop Shell, the Badge of the Collar of that Order, hanging at a gold Chain. The 71 Article of the Statutes of the *Holy Ghost* injoin the Herald of it to bear the Cross of the Order "*avec son email pendue au col*;" It would be too tiresome to run through other Orders.

Upon the Subject of *Garter's* Badge, Mr. *Ashmole* hath gone no farther back than to the Assignment by Queen *Eliz.* and it may be thence conjectured, that he supposed this Officer had no Right to any Escutcheon antecedent to that Reign: But though such a Possession could not be proved by any positive Evidence, yet there are several probable Indications of it. In most Articles relating to the Heralds, there was a Similitude and Parity throughout all Dominions, and as these were publick Persons constantly sent with Messages, which were verified or authenticated by their Characters, it was more particularly requisite, there should be some Emblem or Signal, whereby this Character should be publickly demonstrated, which, as it hath been shewn, was an *Escutcheon* in Times of Peace, and herein there was a Conformity between some of our and the foreign Officers: And it would be very strange and incongruous, that the Principal King of Arms should be debarred a Privilege enjoyed by *Norroy* and other Subalterns, and even by the Pursivants, who were only Novices and Probationers, whilst that Badge too was of that Significancy, as not only to discriminate these Officers, but to confer Immunities upon them; Besides the *black-Book* observes, that the Order of the *Golden-Fleece* was erected upon the Model of our most noble Order of the *Garter*, and the Analogy between the Statutes and Customs is apparent to View; now at the Institution of it in 1429-30, a Badge was appropriated to *Toison d'Or* the Herald of it; and though it should be admitted our *Garter* should not have had any Escutcheon appropriated to him before that Time, yet considering the Intercourses between the Courts of *England* and *Burgundy*, and that these Sovereigns mutually accepted the military Orders of each other, and also the reciprocal Embassies of *Garter* and *Toison d'Or* to these respective Princes, it is scarce to be imagined, that the former should be denied any Honour, which was allowed to the latter; for though the greater Part of the Statutes of the *Golden-Fleece* were borrowed from hence, yet no Inconsistency will result from a Supposition, that there might be new Decrees made in our Order, to imitate the Customs of the other in some few Particulars added by the Dukes of *Burgundy*. Thus in Fact, in the *French* Copy of the Constitutions relating to the Officers of our Order, with Reference to the Immunities of their Persons, Servants, and Goods settled by *Hen. VIII.* there is an entire Paragraph transcribed *literatim* from an Article in the first Statutes of the *Golden-Fleece*, though it is no Ways improbable, that this very Clause might be originally incorporated into the Laws of that Order, from some Decree made at first in a Chapter of the *Garter*, which hath perished by the Length and Injury of Time. But it chances, that there are some Sculptures remaining, wherein *Garter* is represented in the Execution of some Branches of his Profession without any Tabart; as at the Investiture of the Emperor *Maximilian* in 6 *Hen. VII.* where he is pictured



with a Collar about his Neck, to which is appendant upon his Breast a Jewel or Badge in a circular Form, but by Reason that Limning is in Miniature, the Impression on it is not distinguishable: And at the Investiture of *Ferdinand* Prince of *Spain* in 15 *Hen. VIII*, the then *Garter* hath a Collar, but without any Thing appendant thereto that is discernable; And here it must be observed, that these two Collars are not in the Form of S. S. (to which *Garter* had then also a Right) but in the Figure of Chains interlinked. Hence therefore the Collector is induced to believe, that this Decree of *Queen Eliz.* (which is placed in the "Margin) is to be interpreted, not as an original Donation of a Badge in general, but as an Addition or Augmentation, which in all Probability might be the surmounting the whole with an Imperial Crown. If the first *Garter* had not a particular Badge relative to the Order, it is however certain, that in his Petition to his Founder for the Allowance of his Rights by Letters Patents, he in the tenth<sup>o</sup> Article desires it might be declared, that on solemn Festivals, (when the King kept his Estate) he might wear "*Colier au col de blasons de la tres-noble Compaignie de la Jarretier.*"

*Sir Edward Walker Garter* is by his Effigies prefixed to his History exhibited receiving Commands from King *Charles* the First, during the Rebellion, having a Badge ensigned with the Cross of *St. George* within the *Garter*, surmounted with an Imperial Crown, fixed to a Ribbond which is spread over his right Shoulder, and brought athwart his Body down to his Belt or Sash on his left Side, where this Badge hangs: The Colour of this Ribbond is not discoverable by that Draught or Print, yet without doubt it was *Purple*, because when the two Provincial Kings in 1662 petitioned the Crown for the Assignment of some Medal, and offered the Design of the King's Arms surrounded with the *Garter*, this same *Sir Edward* represented to the Sovereign, that such an<sup>p</sup> Ensign would be an Invasion upon the Officers of this Order, and farther requested, that the Provincials might not be allowed to wear the Medals to be granted them in *purple* Ribbons. The latter Warrants to the Jewel-House specify the Weight of *Garter's* Badge, to be one Ounce of Gold curiously enamelled with the Cross of *St. George*, impaling the Sovereign's Arms, all within the *Garter*, and surmounted with an Imperial Crown; and that the Chain be of *Spanish* Fashion, richly enamelled of the Goodness of xxii Kar. weighing six Ounces.

There are several other Ensigns belonging to *Garter*: In all the Patents for this Office since the Reign of *Ed. IV* inclusive, the Sovereign is introduced speaking in Person *coronavimus*, & *coronamus*; Words contained likewise in the Patents of the Provincial Kings of Arms; and in Fact, when Princes heretofore created and invested these Officers with Ceremony, they actually placed Crowns upon their Heads with great Solemnity. The Crown of *Garter* was doubtless coeval with the Erection of that Office,

<sup>n</sup> 8 *Eliz.* 24 *Apr.* Eodem etiam in consensu Suprema ex solita sua beneficentia cum consensu suorum Commilitonum decrevit, quod *Garter* Armorum Regulus, reliquique post eum in eodem officio successuri, collo gestarent propendula Regum *Anglie* Insignia Ordinis Subligari circumducta, &

eisdem corona Imperiali super imposita.

<sup>o</sup> See above p. 330 in the Notes.

<sup>p</sup> The Original with his Majesty's Reference countersigned by the Secretary of State. H. 2. penes me p. 106.



but it may not be an easy Task to point out the *Æra*, when other Kings of Arms first had that honourable Ensign. The first *Garter* in the xith Article of his <sup>9</sup> Petition to his Founder King *Hen. V* recites, that Crowns had been worn on grand Dayes by the *English* Kings of Arms “*du temps de grant memoire,*” having in the precedent Article desired that it might be declared under the Great Seal, that the same Privilege belonged to himself and Successors. And it might be, that the Crown *Fleuronnee* surrounded with a *Garter*, which was the Impression on his <sup>r</sup> Signet, alluded to, and represented the Form of the Crown he wore, especially since that particular Bearing is still continued in the publick Seal of this Officer, being placed in the middle of the Chief. The Conjecture that this Crown on his Signet was thus relative, seems to be supported in some Measure by the Practice of other antient Kings of Arms; the Editor hath seen very few of their original Seals, yet in that small Number finds, that in 4 *Ed. I.* *Peter* King of the Heralds used a <sup>f</sup> Seal with three Crowns, that *Wrexworth* *Guienne* King of Arms in the Reign of *Hen. VI* had a <sup>r</sup> Crown in his Counterseal, which was not particular to the Officers of Arms in this Realm, for <sup>u</sup> *Bois Robert Roy des Heraus de France* in 1318 sealed with three Ducal Crowns, and <sup>x</sup> *Guiot Roy des Heraus de Champagne* in 1355 used the Impression of three Crowns, empaling a Lion within a Banner.

There were doubtless several Monuments erected for these Officers, which according to the Customs of former Ages, exhibited their Pourtraictures upon their Tombes; the Effigies of *Clarenceux* King of Arms, (who died in 1427) is still <sup>r</sup> remaining, having on his Head a Crown with Fleurons, like those in the Coronets of the present Dukes, and *Clarenceux* <sup>z</sup> *Benoilt*, (who died in 1534,) hath a Crown in the same Form. Several old Manuscripts in Vellom, relating to the Institution of the Office of Arms, have by Way of Ornament the Pictures of Kings of Arms, fairly limned with Crowns on their Heads, and the Initial Letters of several antient Grants of Arms are embellished with the like Figures.

Mr. *Asmole* hath presented us with a <sup>a</sup> Sculpture of *Garter* under the Reign of *Hen. VIII*, with a Crown *Fleuronnee*, wherein there seems to be a Pearl set upon a Point between the Fleurons; for which Reason it will be no Digression to insert briefly, what Rules some Authors have laid down, touching the Materials, and Form of these Crowns to be worn by Kings of Arms.

It must be premised, that Romances were the great Entertainments of former Centuries, whereof many were composed by the Heralds, who ran likewise into another Vanity, that emblematical Mysteries were concealed under all Ensigns and Arms, and therefore indulged their Fancies and Inventions, to find out such allegorical Allusions throughout the whole System of their Professions. How silly, and wild soever such Notions might be, yet these were more innocent and allowable, than the extrava-

<sup>9</sup> Above p. 330.

<sup>r</sup> Above p. 331.

<sup>f</sup> The original Release with this Seal is in Bibl. Harley.

<sup>t</sup> Book of Grants in Off. Arm.

<sup>u</sup> Communicated by the most learned Monsieur Clai-

rembault.

<sup>x</sup> By the same.

<sup>y</sup> In St. Olave Hartstreet, London.

<sup>z</sup> In St. Hellen's Church, London.

<sup>a</sup> Hist. between p. 234 & 235.



gant Opinions, which in Tract of Time, and in an Age of Learning succeeded, which at Length arrived to that Heighth, that the Legislature interposed by a Statute 5 *Eliz. c. 15* to lay a severe Penalty "on all fond  
" phantastical Prophecies upon, or by the Occasion of any Arms, Fields,  
" Beasts, Badges, or like Things accustomed in Arms, Cognisances, or  
" Signers &c."

The transcribing these whimsical Conceits had been almost as ridiculous, as the composing them, if we did not learn the Fabrick, Make, and Fashion of the real Crowns from these far fetched Explanations. A learned Jesuit observed, that the Scepter and Crown of a King of Arms were <sup>b</sup> differenced from those of the Sovereign, but is silent in the Nature of these Distinctions; *Olivier de la Marche* supplies his Deficiency with Regard to the Crown, who in his <sup>c</sup> Estate of the Household of the Duke of *Burgundy* in 1474, writes, that the Sovereign ought to set on the Head of a King of Arms a Crown, which must be of Silver guilt, and not of gold, that it must not be adorned with any other pretious Stones, save Saphirs only; thereby to intimate that such Officer should not regard Riches, but fix his Thoughts upon the Treasures of Heaven solely, and that this Crown should have likewise four Crosses upon its Rim, and no Fleurons. *Sicily* <sup>d</sup> Herald, a Witness in this Case above all Exception, doth for the same Reason exclude all pretious Stones, as likewise Fleurons, and insists that the Crown should be Silver guilt with four Crosses thereon. Whether this Allegory from the Symbol of the Saphir was taken from the blue Colour of that Stone, which seems to make some faint Appearance like to the Sky or Heaven, or from the Representation which the holy Scriptures give of the Throne of the Almighty, is no more material to enquire, than it would be to examine, whether the Rabbins had any Foundation for their cabalistic Assertion, that the Rod of *Moses*, as also the Tables given upon Mount *Sinai* were Saphirs.

These Particularities in the Crowns have not been observed in this Kingdom, where these have not only been *fleuronnee*, but if <sup>e</sup> *Chaucer* our *English Homer* was just in his Description, have been also enriched with Pearls and Rubies, as well as with Saphirs. This Poet was contemporary with *Rich. II.*, who mortgaged his own Crown, which is described to be <sup>f</sup> *fleuronnee* with several precious Stones. The antient Treatise stiled <sup>g</sup> *Jura &c.* which hath been frequently cited, is positive that the Sovereigns of this Realm upon the Constitution of a King of Arms, ought to give him a Silver Crown guilt with Gold, wherein several other Ceremonials agree, though some of them being in the <sup>h</sup> *French* Language have *couronne d'or*,

<sup>b</sup> Menestrier *L'art du blason* justifiee p. 119.  
<sup>c</sup> P. 698.

<sup>d</sup> MS. in bibl. Reg. E. n. 1403. Et apres le Prince luy met la couronne sur la teste, que doit estre d'argent d'ore, & sans nulles pierreries, en signifiant, que nul Roy d'armes ne doit avoir nul regard a quelques richesses, fors en ciel seulement, la dite couronne doit estre en quatre lieux croisetee, & non fleuronne. See also Gollut. Republ. Sequan. Pierre Mathieu p. 488. Rouck Nederlandtschen Herald.

<sup>e</sup> In his *flowre and lease*

*Camin Kingis at Arms* —

The Crowns that they, on their Scotchons, bere  
Were set with perl, and ruby and Saphere.

In his house of fame  
and coronid were as Kyngis  
with crownis wrought full of Losynges.

<sup>f</sup> Rymer vol. 7. p. 359. de cynk grands & cynk petitz florons garniz ovesque Paleys, Emeraudes, Saphirs, Diamantz & grosses perles.

<sup>g</sup> MS. in Mus. Ashmol. Oxon. n. 837. H. 4 p. 689 b. Quando unus Rex Armorum fit, debet esse coronatus, & Rex sibi debet dare unam Coronam argenteam deauratam.

<sup>h</sup> Menestrier de la Chevalerie p. 209 &c.

which



which may be the Errors of the Transcribers for *d'ore*. Therefore it might be owing to some temporary Frugalities, that the Kings of Arms at the Coronation of Queen Anne [Bullen] wore Crowns of <sup>i</sup> Copper gilt, and that the like were prepared for <sup>k</sup> Wall and <sup>l</sup> Barker Garters. But in a short Time these Officers were restored to their ancient Rights, and the Provincial Kings received Crowns of Silver gilt, and Sir John Burrough Garter <sup>m</sup> obtained one of Gold, weighing 22 Ounces of the Goodness of xxii Kar. in Febr. 1636, which was after his Return from waiting upon his Majesty's Coronation in Scotland, that he might not be inferior to the Lord Lyon King of Arms, who, as will be soon shewn, had a Crown of that Metal: And the like Crowns have been continued to the succeeding Garters.

The present Crowns of the English Kings of Arms, have inscribed round upon their Rims these Words of the Psalmist, *Miserere mei Deus secundum magnam misericordiam tuam*, which probably gave Occasion to Mr. Camden the learned Clarenceux, to begin his Will with the three first Words of this Sentence. The Editor knows not, whether the foreign Kings of Arms have any Inscriptions on their Crowns; and though in the antient Draughts of the Crowns of these English Officers, which he hath hitherto seen, there are not any Words visible, which might be owing to the Negligence and Unaccuracy of the Painters, yet he conjectures this is the Continuance of an old Practice, since he hath not met with any Memorial of the Introduction of this Motto, and therefore he supposes it to be an Indication of the Antiquity of these Crowns, in Correspondence to the former Crowns of Sovereigns, which had Inscriptions on them; thus the Crowns of Charlemagne, and of the Kingdom of Hungary still remaining, have several Motto's on them, and the Crowns of the former Kings of <sup>n</sup> France contained their Names formed thereon with Nails of Gold; and that there were Words engraven heretofore on the real Crowns of our Monarchs, seems to be intimated by the Quotation in the <sup>o</sup> Margin, and also on the Representations of these Crowns in <sup>p</sup> Embroidery. Within these Crowns of the English Kings of Arms, there is a Cap of crimson Scarlet doubled with Ermin, having at the Top a large Tuft or Tassel wrought in gold Silk.

Sir James Balfour was constituted Lyon King of Arms of Scotland, in 1630, and according to his own <sup>q</sup> Narrative, the old Crown it self of that Kingdom was put upon his Head at his first Creation. This in-

<sup>i</sup> Stow's Ann. p. 567. Shakespear takes Notice of it in his Play called the Life of Hen. VIII, which is historical.

<sup>k</sup> D. 4 in Off. Arm. p. 222 b.

<sup>l</sup> MS. Ant. a Wood in Mus. Ashm. n. 117 in 8vo

<sup>m</sup> H. 2. penes me p. 170.

<sup>n</sup> Le Gendre Moeurs des Francois p. 21.

<sup>o</sup> Domitian A. 13. p. 105 b. In fronte Coronæ Regis scribitur *Timor Dei*, & hoc est initium sapientiæ Regis, timori superponitur justitia, ut unicuique judicando quod suum est, reddat. In postrema parte coronæ ponitur species æternæ tribulationis, cui superponitur prudentia in cavendis malis, & adulatoribus pessimis. In dextra parte coronæ scribitur *gaudium* pro regni sui iusto mode

ramine, cui superponitur temperantia, quæ est in appetendis bonis. In sinistra parte scribitur *dolor* pro iniquitate malorum, & depressione bonorum; dolet enim pius & prudens rector, cum non potest ulcisci injuriam & oppressionem populorum: dolori superponitur fortitudo, ut fortis sit & constans contra maliciam tyrannorum. Et ita diadema item coronam regni regi regum integram & firmam conservabit & in æternum presentabit &c.

<sup>p</sup> Lib. Cotom. in magn. Garder. p. 194. pro broudat. unius Coronæ cum literis operatis de auro de Cipr. & serico super unum capucium de velvet rubr. pro Palet Dom. Regis.

<sup>q</sup> H. 3. penes me p. 1132.



dustrious Preserver of the Antiquities of that Nation hath left among several other Works, a Treatise Entituled, *The Office of Heraultrie*, now in the Advocates Library at *Edinburgh*, wherein he describes the <sup>r</sup> Crown of his Office to be "made, *close* of beaten Gold, after the Model of the Imperial Crown of *Scotland*, not set with Stones, but only enamelled, its Cap being of crimson Velvet doubled and uplaid with Ermins, which was given him solely for ever by his Majesty the Day of his Coronation, [18 June 1633] as a Token of his Bounty, which may be worn at all Solemnities whatsoever, except at Funerals, and Interments." The Word *Close* signifies doubtless a Crown with Circles or Arches over it; but this Editor cannot determine, at what precise Time the Kings of *Scotland* first used Crowns in that Form, for *James* the Vth, in the Delineation of a Procession of the Knights of the *Garter* 26 *Hen.* VIII, is represented with an unarched Crown; but though in all Probability the Kings of *England* wore the *Close* Imperial Crowns before any Monarchs of the neighbouring Realms, since <sup>1</sup> *Hen.* IV at his Coronation in 1399, had a Crown arched in the [Form of a] Cross, *Henry* VI had the same on the Impression of his *English* Money, and which is memorable had the Crown open or unarched on his *French* Money, and *Edw.* IV used the arched Imperial Crown on his Great Seal and Coins from the Commencement of his Reign, yet our Sovereigns have not permitted that Privilege to their chief King of Arms any otherwise, than by surmounting the Badge with it.

The Ritual of the Creation of *Montjoie* in *France*, assigns to him such a <sup>r</sup> Crown as pleases the Sovereign, and in the Figure of him placed in the Frontispiece of Institution *des Roys Herauldz, & Poursuivans d'armes* printed by *Le Feron* in 1555, he is represented with a Crown with *Perles* (as they are termed) set immediately upon the Rim, like to the Coronets of Viscounts, having as it seems to View, a Cross in the Center of the Crown. In the <sup>u</sup> *Austrian Netherlands* these Officers had four Crosses *patees* surmounted on a Circle, garnished with pretious Stones set with Pearls.

The *Lyon* of *Scotland* according to his own Relation is at Liberty to wear his Crown at all Solemnities, besides Funerals, but our Ceremonials enjoined our Kings of Arms to wear their Crowns at all Times when the Sovereign kept his Estate royal, that is appeared in *Regalibus* with his <sup>x</sup> Crown on his Head; and the like Command is laid on <sup>y</sup> *Montjoie* to attend "en habit royal couronné, si le Roy est;" and at what Times the latter Kings of *France* thus wore their Crowns, appears from a Clause in the <sup>z</sup> Will of *Philippe de Valois* in 1350.

It would be too foreign to recite in this Place the Customs of our *Anglo-Norman* Kings, and of other Princes contemporary with them, who appeared crowned with great Magnificence on the annual Festivals of *Christ-*

<sup>r</sup> C. 12.

<sup>s</sup> Froiss. vol. 4 c. 114.

<sup>t</sup> Du Fresn. Gloss. v. Heraldus.

<sup>u</sup> Jurisprud. Heroica vol. 2. p. 24. Lamina aurea quatuor parvulis crucibus impositis conspicua, vulgo le Cercle garny de pierreries, gresle de perles, & surmonte de quatre croix patees.

<sup>x</sup> See above p. 332 art. 10, 11.

<sup>y</sup> Du Fresn. Gloss. v. Heraldus.

<sup>z</sup> He devises to his Queen all his Jewells, exceptee tantseulement nostre Couronne Royale, de laquelle nous avons use ou accoustume a user en grandes Festes, ou en solemnitez, & de laquelle nous usames & la portames a la Chevalerie de Jean nostre aïné fils. Du Fresn. Dissert. ad Joinvill. p. 157.



mas, Easter, and *Whitsunday*, called therefore by <sup>a</sup> Eadmer Days of the Crown, unless it could be proved that Officers of Arms were coæval with those Times; however since our learned <sup>b</sup> Glossographer supposed a Fraternity of them consisting of Kings, Heralds, and Pursivants was settled in this Kingdom under *Hen. III.*, some Instances of this Practice in, and subsequent to that Reign may be produced; especially since in several of these Solemnities, wherein our Kings thus wore their Crowns in Majesty, they personally created some Officers of Arms.

*Hen. III.* was <sup>c</sup> crowned on the 28th of *October* in his first Year, from which Day as our <sup>d</sup> Annalists observe, he began the Dates of each Year of his long Reign, and yet a <sup>e</sup> Record assures us, he was again crowned on *Whitsunday* in his fourth Year, and also on *Whitsunday* in the following Year, if <sup>f</sup> *Mat. Paris* is not mistaken in his Chronology; and he wore his Crown again at the <sup>g</sup> Translation of the Body of the Confessor. But to descend to latter Ages; we find the royal Crown carried to <sup>h</sup> *Shene, Eltham*, and other Palaces, where *Rich. II.* resided. *Hen. IV.* wore his Crown in *Westminster-Hall* solemnly in <sup>i</sup> Term Time, *Hen. VI.* created *Lancaster* King of Arms and *Colar* Pursivant, having his <sup>k</sup> Crown on his own Head. In this Manner *Edw. IV.* celebrated several <sup>l</sup> Festivals, and created *Guienne* King of Arms. Among the Memorials of this Usage by *Hen. VII.* it is particularly remembred, that at the Creation of his second Son to be Duke of *York*, he at the Instance of the Marquess of *Dorset* constituted <sup>m</sup> an Herald for him by that Appellation, and it is to be presumed that he did not appear in less Splendour, when he created his eldest Son to be Prince of *Wales*, when he instituted a Pursivant for him by the Name of <sup>n</sup> *Wallingford*, a Castle then belonging to this Prince as Duke of *Corn-wall*, and from the Copies of some <sup>o</sup> Petitions drawn by the Heralds in the Reign of *Hen. VIII.* it may be inferred, that King upon some august Solemnities might also wear his Crown.

In and with such Pomp, State, and Grandour, some *English* Officers of Arms were created; it was indeed a Rule in this Kingdom, as <sup>p</sup> *Upton* who wrote in the Reign of *Hen. VI.* informs us, that even Pursivants (who were only Novices) could not however be constituted upon any Festival less than a *Sunday*, but Heralds might be created in the Field of War, at Coro-

<sup>a</sup> L. 4. p. 102, 105.

<sup>b</sup> Spelm. in v Heraldus.

<sup>c</sup> Claus. 1 H. 3. m. 25 d. Rym. Fæd. vol. 1. p. 215.

<sup>d</sup> Chron. T. Wykes p. 38, Annal. Waverl. p. 182.

<sup>e</sup> Claus. 4 H. 3. m. 2. Liberate de thesauro nostro *Willmo Cissori* nostro xxxi. s. viii d. quos posuit in reparatione Coronæ nostræ, & Regalium nostrorum contra Coronationem nostram apud *Westm.* in festo Pentecostes ultime præterito. Dat. 5 Ocl.

<sup>f</sup> P. 309.

<sup>g</sup> Annal. Waverl. p. 225.

<sup>h</sup> Exit. Pell. Pasch. 16 R. 2. in denariis solutis pro expensis per diversas vices habitis pro portagio & carriago magnæ Coronæ Regis ad *Westminsterium*, versus *Shene, Eltham*, & alia maneria Regis.

<sup>i</sup> Eulog. ad A. D. 1408.

<sup>k</sup> Notes to the Black-Book p. 114.

<sup>l</sup> On St. Edward's Day 1472. The King being crowned in the Parliament-Chamber created the Lord *Gruthuse Earl of Winchester*, and then made a King of Arms and baptized him *Guyenne*, and set a Crown on his bedde which was called *Richemonte*. M. 15 in Off. Arm. f. 14 b. MS. Ant. a Wood in Mus. Ashm. n. 33. p. 22.

<sup>m</sup> Julius B. 12 in bibl. Cotton. p. 96. Claudius A. 8. W. Q. in Off. Arm. p. 223.

<sup>n</sup> Julius B. 12. p. 56.

<sup>o</sup> MS. of *Fellow Norroy* given to the Heralds Office by Mr. *Hare Richmond* p. 10 b. Item as oft tymes, as his shall please the Kyngs moste noble Grace to be in his Estate royal, beryng his Crowne, the Kyngs of Armes beyng present to were thaire Crownes to the Chapell and from the Chapell and all the dynner tyme and to have largesse after his most noble plesur. The same almost in the Petition of *Wall Lancaster* to the same King. L. 6. 15. penes Ed. Dering Baronet.

<sup>p</sup> De re mil. p. 19, 21.

nations,



nations, and Turnaments. The foreign Rituals enjoin that the Erection of these Officers should <sup>q</sup> be "*es grandes jours, et es bonnes festes,*" and we have several Precedents of such their Practices. The King of Portugal being crowned at *Comimbres* erected then an <sup>r</sup> Herald by that Denomination; Charles Duke of Burgundy at the grand Triumphs upon his Marriage made a general <sup>s</sup> Promotion of his Officers of Arms; our Hen. VII on the Vigil of his Coronation erected <sup>t</sup> *Rougedragon* Pursivant, and Jackson was created <sup>u</sup> *Chester* at the Coronation of Queen Anne Bullen; and in a Treatise of this Nature it must not be forgotten that *Garter* was instituted, and <sup>x</sup> *Clarenceux* and *Fleur de Lis* were created at *Windsor*, when the Feasts of St. George were solemnised.

There is a Tract, which Mr. <sup>y</sup> *Thynne Lancaster* Herald, a competent Judge in all Points of Antiquity, assigns to the Reign of Rich. II, wherein among other Rights of Kings of Arms a Rule is laid down, "that at all Times, and every Time, when the King wears his Crown, and holds his Estate Royal, especially on the four high Feasts of the Year, Christmas, Easter, Whitsunday, and All Saints Day, every King of Arms present ought to wear his Crown in the King's Presence going to Chapel, and returning from thence, and during the whole Time of Dinner;" But the Observation of these Festivals with this Splendour by the Sovereign's wearing his Crown, hath been long discontinued; and for some Ages our Kings after the Solemnities of their own Coronations, have worn their Crowns only upon Occasions of their publick Entries into the Parliament-Chamber, however in the Sculpture, which exhibits Hen. VIII thus sitting on his Throne <sup>z</sup> crowned in Majesty, *Garter* King of Arms is bare-headed. And it is supposed that for the latter Centuries these Kings of Arms after the Ceremonies of their own Creations were finished, have only worn their Crowns at the Coronations of Kings and Queens.

If <sup>a</sup> *Chaucer* did not indulge himself in a Poetical Licence, Kings of Arms in his Age wore Crowns at Tilts, and indeed a <sup>b</sup> Ritual of the Jufts between the Bastard of Burgundy and the Lord *Scales* informs us, that four Kings of Arms were then placed at the Corners within the Rails thus crowned; as these Officers were heretofore crowned at the Times of their

<sup>q</sup> Olivier de la Marche Etat du Duc Charles b. 697. Mathieu Hist. de Louys xi l. xi p. 642. Colomb. des Roys d'armes p. 44. See about Creation of Montjoie in du Fresno Gloss. v. Herald. Sicily Herald MS. in bibl. Regia E. n. 1403.

<sup>r</sup> Froiss. vol. 3. p. 125.

<sup>s</sup> Il changea les noms de plusieurs, & fit de Heraux Roys d'armes & Marechaux, & de Pourfuyvans Heraux; & de nouveaux Pourfuyvans baptisa il, comme il est de coutume, & ainsi se passa la solemnite, & triomphe d'icelle feste. Ol. de la Marche p. 587.

<sup>t</sup> MS. penes Honabil. Magistr. Rotul. MS. Ant.

<sup>u</sup> Wood in Mus. Ashm. n. 33. p. 23.

<sup>x</sup> MS. Ant. a Wood ibid.

<sup>y</sup> Notes to the Black Book p. 114.

<sup>z</sup> Collection of Discourses by Anon. p. 245, 247. The most correct and learned Publisher of them had

not the Fortune of a perfect Transcript, the Words be "Item toutz & chescun fois que le Roy port coronne et tient Estate Royal, en especial aux quater hault festes de l'an, cestascavoir Noell, Pasques, Pentecouste, & Tout Seintz, doivent et appartient a chescun des ditz Roys d'armes qui seront present de porter coronne en la presence du Roy alant a la Messe a la Chapele, et en revenant, et aussi tout au temps de dîner, et si doivent avoir Largeise selonque la tres-noble plesure du Roy." B. 2 penes me p. 273 in Mr. Thynn's Hand writing.

<sup>a</sup> Dr. Fiddes's Life of Cardinal Wolsey p. 302.

<sup>b</sup> In his flour and leaf.

<sup>c</sup> MS. of the Right Honourable Sir Jos. Jekyll Master of the Rolls, endorsed Coronations, Funerals, and Feats of Arms.



respective Creations, so the same Crowns were <sup>c</sup> carried and offered at their Funerals, with other Ornaments and Hatchments. Some latter Officers have indeed taken the Liberty of empaling their own Arms with those upon the Seals of their Offices, all surmounted with the Ensign of these Crowns; but when those in the <sup>d</sup> *Netherlands* attempted to place such Crowns over their Arms, that Novelty was prohibited by an Order of the King of *Spain* as an unjustifiable Innovation.

For the Affinity of the Subject, it may not be a disallowable Curiosity to enquire, what particular Coverings these Officers wore on their Heads, when they formerly waited on the Sovereign in Cavalcades or Processions, when he did not wear his royal Crown. Herein *Garter* by Reason of his going within the *State*, as it is termed, is distinguished from the other Officers of Arms. The King is then said to proceed in *State*, when the Sword of *State*, the Emblem of regal Power is carried, and he who carries it, and those who proceed near it, and immediately belong to his royal Person, are said to go within the *State*, and all such of what Degree soever within that Circuit, are uncovered out of Reverence to Majesty, while the Nobility and others without the Limits of that *State*, are covered in all Cavalcades or Processions on Foot, made without Doors. This Distinction is mentioned in the <sup>e</sup> *Formularies*, and may be seen in the printed Draughts of the <sup>f</sup> Cavalcades from the *Tower* to *Westminster*, which were <sup>g</sup> customary on the Day before the Coronation: Though in some Proceedings either for the Severity of the Weather, the Length of the Way, or the Age of the Persons, the Sovereign hath been pleased to indulge those within the Compass of his *State* the Liberty of wearing privileged Caps, like to the Caps or Bonnets of the Yeomen of the Guard.

In the Constitutions touching the Officers of the Order, it was declared by *Hen. VIII* and the Knights Companions, that when the Sovereign shall proceed solemnly [in *State*] *Garter* shall go next before his <sup>b</sup> Sword [of *State*,] no one interposing, save only the Constable and Marshal &c. which was not introductory of a new Right, but the Allowance of an antient One; for upon a Controversy soon after the Institution of this Officer, there was a Determination made by the <sup>i</sup> Duke of *Clarence* Constable of the Host at the Siege of *Caen* 3 Sept. 1417, "That as often as the King shall  
" ride, or go on foot, or on horseback to the Church, or in the Army,  
" or otherwise in any Camps, Towns, or other Place or Places, where  
" Honour ought to be maintained, the *Principal* King of Arms, or He-

<sup>c</sup> At the Obsequy for Will. Haukeflow Clarencieux (who was drowned in 1476.) his Crown was offered by Irlande King of Arms, his own Cote by Windesore Heralde, his Coller by Fawcon Heralde &c. Titus C. 1. Bibl. Cott. p. 456. B. 2. penes me p. 293. Hawley Clarencieux in his Will dated in 1557, desires that Mr. Norroy do see him honestly brought to his Grave, and that he might have his Coat and Pennon of his Arms, and his own Crown according to the Estate of his Office. Wratsley Q. 29.

<sup>d</sup> Jurispr. Heroica vol. 2. p. 24.

<sup>e</sup> M. 6 in Off. Arm. f. 42 a.

<sup>f</sup> See that of Charles II printed by Ogilby. &c.

<sup>g</sup> Thuanus l. 13. p. 355 of Jane Gray and p. 361 of Queen Mary.

<sup>b</sup> Black-Book p. 351, 352.

<sup>i</sup> There are antient Copies hereof in several Libraries. The Words are, "Que toutes les fois, que le Roy chevauchera, ou yra a pyed, ou a cheval, soit a l'eglise, ou en armee, ou autrement aux Champs, en villes, ou autres lieux, & places, ou l'on doit tenir & garder honneur, le pryncipal Roy d'armes ou herault presents portantz les Armes du Roy, se tiendront & yront dorenavant droit devant la parsonne du Roy, ou de celluy qui portera son espee devant luy, et les autres Roys d'armes & heraulx, pour ce que une cotte d'armes & heraulx represente tous cottes d'armes du Roy, yront droit devant les autres Seigneurs, & c'est pour l'estat du Roy.



" rald present, wearing the [Coat] Arms of the King, should from  
 " thenceforwards keep, and go streight before the King's Person, or him,  
 " that shall carry his Sword before him, and the other Kings of Arms or  
 " Heralds, (because one Habit of Arms represents all the Kings Coats)  
 " shall go streight before the Lords, and this is for the Estate of the  
 " King." A Decree much to the same Purpose was <sup>k</sup> made by *Arthur*  
 of *Bretayne*, Constable of *France* in *Febr.* 1457, in Relation to the He-  
 ralds of that Kingdom.

The *French* Writers mention a particular Cap belonging to their Offi-  
 cers of Arms, being a black Bonnet of Silk, others <sup>m</sup> lay of Velvet with  
 a Cordon or Band of Gold, and thus <sup>n</sup> *Montjoie* is pictured, whose Cap  
 is specified to be of <sup>o</sup> black Velvet with a Cordon of Gold *semee*, with  
 two Rows of Pearls adorned with a Plumage of Heron's Feathers, yet in  
 some <sup>p</sup> Formularies these *French* Officers are said to have had white Bon-  
 nets. The *French* Herald who summoned the Baron *de Soubize* to surren-  
 der the Town of *St. Jean d'Angeli* is described by the <sup>q</sup> Historian " cum  
 " *serico & oblongo pileolo* without intimating the Colour of it. Some  
 Manuscripts ascribe to these Officers during the Time of War Coverings  
 on their Heads of Sky coloured Silk with white Chapelets thereon: But  
 the Editor hath not found any particular Caps assigned to them within  
 this Kingdom, differenced from those worn by other Persons. 'Tis true  
 they had <sup>j</sup> Hoods furred or garnished with white *Bogy* in the Reign of  
*Ed. III.* and under *Rich. II.* delivered from the Wardrobe, but then we  
 find that such Hoods (stiled *Caputia*) were likewise delivered to other Per-  
 sons, but no such Hoods are mentioned for the Heralds, under the Reign  
 of *Hen. V.* and *Hen. VI.* in the Wardrobe Accounts already cited: The  
 Reason whereof might be, that Caps or Hats with Brims were used before  
 that Age by the *English*, and from them in all Probability were intro-  
 duced into *France*, an useful Return for the several fantastick Modes of  
 Apparel that in different Tracts of Time had been taken by our Ance-  
 stors from that Nation. But though these *Chaperons* or Hoods were in  
 some short Time after the Usage of Hats discontinued as Coverings for  
 the Head, yet such Hoods were and still are kept up as a solemn Sort of  
 Ornament by the Knights of the Garter, civil Magistrates, Judges, Li-  
 very-men in Corporations, Council learned in both Laws, and Graduates  
 in the University, and till very late Years were actually worn by all Gentle-  
 men in close Mourning at Funerals. Bever Hats with black Fringes, and  
 as broad as Bucklers, are mentioned in <sup>r</sup> *Chaucer* to be worn upon the  
 Head, who also seems to intimate that Chaperons were not totally disused  
 in his Age. In the <sup>s</sup> Wardrobe Account of *Hen. IV.* before his Accession to

<sup>k</sup> MS. in *Queen's College Oxon.* wrote by one An-  
 derfon.

<sup>l</sup> *Pileum ex serico nigro.* Speneri Theor. Insign.  
 p. 7. *Besoign l'Estat de France* p. 128.

<sup>m</sup> *Diction. de Trevoux* v. heraut.

<sup>n</sup> In Title Page of *Colombiere des Roys & He-  
 rauds d'armes.*

<sup>o</sup> *Furriere en Dictionnaire.*

<sup>p</sup> *Ceremon. Franc. Entry into Paris 1515. Coro-  
 nation of Lewis 13 &c.*

<sup>q</sup> *Grammond Hist. Gallia* ad A. D. 1621.

<sup>r</sup> M. 16 in Off. Arm. f. 61. L. 6. 1. penes Edm.  
 Dering Baronet.

<sup>s</sup> See above p. 316 note f. and p. 446 note y.

<sup>t</sup> In the *Merchant's Tale*. Upon his bed a Flaun-  
 ders bevir hat. In *Friers Tale* v. 119. an hat on his  
 head with fringes blake. Of the *Wife of Bath*, and on  
 her head a hatte, as brode, as is a Bokeler or a Targe.  
 See the *Plowman's Prologue* v. 1948, and the *Knigh's  
 Tale* v. 1090. In the *Prologue* to the *Miller's Tale*,  
 neither boode, ne hat.

<sup>u</sup> 14 R. 2 in Off. Ducat. *Lancast.*



the Crown is an Entry "*pro pileo nigro empto pro capite Domini.*" A Chronicler relates that it was the <sup>x</sup> universal Practice of the *English* in 1369 to wear coloured Caps, mostly red with Furrs, but possibly that Word Caps may there denote Hoods; Mr. *Ashmole* <sup>y</sup> supposes that the Founders of the Order of the *Garter* wore really Caps, because they are represented in that Manner by a Draught; but he should have considered the Age wherein that Draught was made during the Reign of *Hen. VI.*, by the Order of the first *Garter* to be pictured in the Windows of *St. George's Chappel* in *Stamford*. As to *France*, there was an Order made in 1447, that every Person should have a <sup>z</sup> Cross upon his Robe or upon his Chaperon, and *Monstrelet* informs us, that *Queen Isabelle* shewed a great Resentment against *Tozel*, who had addressed himself to her Majesty without the Respect of waving his Chaperon, whereas in the Entry of *Charles VII* into *Roan* in 1449, that King had a Castor, (that is a Bever,) Hat on his Head lined with red Velvet, surmounted with a Tuft of gold Thread; and from that Time, or at least under his Reign <sup>a</sup> Bonnets succeeded in Place of the Chaperons within that Kingdom. *Tonge Clarenceux* in his Will made 28 *Hen. VIII.*, devised his <sup>b</sup> Cap with a Broche of Gold thereon. The Herald of the King of *Arragon* had a round <sup>c</sup> scarlet Bonnet bordered with Ermin, and an high Plumage. *Toison d'or* had a <sup>d</sup> Chaperon of scarlet furred with *Gris*, which was relative to the Order.

The Rod, Virge, Scepter, and Staff are Symbols of temporal and ecclesiastical Government. The Admonition upon Delivery of the Virge at Coronations evidences the former, and the pastoral Staff is a Testimony of the latter. But the heraldick Systems themselves will supply us with sufficient Proofs, for in them we find, the chief Officer of Arms present at Funerals bore a white Rod, as the <sup>e</sup> Signal of his directing and conducting the Ceremonies; upon which Account a <sup>f</sup> French Author intimated, that Pursivants, being only Aids and Assistants to the Heralds, and having no Command in the Office, were therefore excluded from the Honour of Rods. The first *Garter* upon his Institution petitioned his victorious Founder *Hen. V.*, that the long white Rod ensigned with a small Banner or Pennon might be reserved to himself exclusive of all other Kings of Arms, for the Badge and <sup>g</sup> Mark of his Sovereignty over that Fraternity. Mr. *Ashmole* on this Subject only <sup>h</sup> quotes the Constitutions by *Hen. VIII.*, which too he mistranslates; for the <sup>i</sup> Original doth not mention the Empalement of the Sovereign's Arms; but directs only a Banner

<sup>x</sup> Chron. Evesham A. D. 1369. Tota Continuitas Anglicana, tam dives, & simplex, & etiam pauper, ut magnates, tam rex, quam comes, & cuncti sortis homines, & presbiteri usi sunt cappis coloratis, & fere rubri coloris, pro majore parte quidem furratis nobili pelle. Quidam autem duplicato nobili panno, velut in antiquo tempore solebant *Judei* & *Gentiles* solempnitate sababata sua, & diis libamina offerre; & maxime mulieres lasciviebant illo ornamento, si fas est vocare ornamentum.

<sup>y</sup> Hist. p. 215.

<sup>z</sup> Hist. de Chartier.

<sup>a</sup> Daniel Hist. Ch. vii. p. 1204.

<sup>b</sup> Hogen 94. 34.

<sup>c</sup> Meneftier l'usage des Armoiries p. 154.

<sup>d</sup> Olivier de la Marche p. 257.

<sup>e</sup> In the Funeral of *Hen. VII.*, it is entered *Garter* with a white Rod in his Hand as Conductor bearing the Kings brandred Cotte, D. 4. in Off. Arm. p. 1096.

<sup>f</sup> At the Funeral of the Prince of Orange 1530. Burgundy King of Arms of the Emperor bore a white Rod in his Hand, as Conductor of the Mourning. Gollit. Repub. Sequan. p. 1353.

<sup>g</sup> Besoign l'Etat de France p. 128. Dict. de Mod. 1718 v. Herauts.

<sup>h</sup> See above p. 330. Art. xi.

<sup>i</sup> Hist. p. 352.

<sup>j</sup> Black-Book p. 352.



of the Ensigns of the Order; though it is indeed probable, that the Sovereign's Arms were antiently thus empaled with St. George's Cross, since the Treatise *Jura* &c. (hereafter cited) describeth this Banner on the Rod of *Garter* with such an Empalement, as it is also represented in such Manner by the <sup>k</sup> Sculpture under the Reign of *Hen. VIII.*

This Petition of the first *Garter* seems to imply, that antecedent to that Time the *Four* Provincial Kings of Arms, or the most antient, or superior of them in Precedency might have Rods appertaining to their Offices; and though no direct Proof of it should be found, yet that Conjecture would be countenanced, in that these Provincials before that Time had *Marshals* or Deputies under them within their respective Marches, and such *Marshals* to Kings of Arms, at least in foreign Parts, were created by the Solemnity of delivering them a Rod, so that it is reasonable to suppose, the same Formality was observed in this Realm: And therefore it may not be easy to determine at this Distance of Time, whether this first *Garter* designed any more by this Petition, than that his Rod might be contradistinguished from those of the other Kings of Arms and their Marshals, by the Addition or Augmentation of this Banner or Pennon, leaving still to these Provincials, the Liberty of using simple Rods unensigned: However that may be, there is no Rod represented in the <sup>l</sup> Hand of *John Clarenceux*, on his Pourtraicture upon his Tomb, who died in 6 *Hen. VI.* within few Years after this Erection of *Garter*, and there is no Mention of any Rod appertaining to the Provincials in the Treatise Entituled *Jura* &c. which is particular in the <sup>m</sup> Figure of that belonging to *Garter*; and it may be here remarked, that this Tract was in all Probability compiled before the 18th *Hen. VI.* when Viscounts were first created, because in stating the Fees of the Degrees of the Nobility for displaying their Banners, conferring Knighthoods on them &c. the Fees for the Order of Viscounts are omitted; which are inserted in a subsequent Treatise in *French*, stiled *Les Droicts* &c. wherein the <sup>n</sup> Rod of *Garter* is likewise described without taking Notice of any Rods belonging to the Provincials. But the Silence of these Books is no convincing Argument, that these Provincials might not at these respective Times have the Honour of Rods differenced from that of *Garter*: Certain it is, that *Benoilt Clarenceux*, who died in 26 *Hen. VIII.* is <sup>o</sup> exhibited by his Effigies upon his Monument with a long Rod, but without any Banner or Pennon upon it; and the Initial Letters of several Grants of Arms made by the Provincial Kings are embellished with the Figure of a King of Arms having a Rod in his Hand.

<sup>k</sup> *Ashm. Hist.* p. 254.

<sup>l</sup> *In the Church of St. Olave Hartstreet, London.*

<sup>m</sup> *The Words are*, Et debet portare secundum antiquam consuetudinem in manu virgam albam & longam, habentem terminos auratos, & in cuspidē virgæ prædictæ parvum vexillum cum armis Sancti Georgii mixtis cum Armis Regis. H. 4. penes me p. 688. *There are Copies in several Libraries, The Title at large is* "Jura, Debita, & Largitates appertinentes de antiqua consuetudine Armorum Officialibus

"secundum morem & consuetudinem Angliæ."

<sup>n</sup> *The Words are* Et icelluy Jarretiere le jour et feste de Saint George portera une longue verge blanche, les boutz dorez, & en la pointe dicelle une petite banniere des Armes de Saint George parties avecques les Armes du Roy. B. 3. penes me p. 39. in membran. which Book belonged formerly to Sir Tho. Wriothesley Garter.

<sup>o</sup> *In the Church of St. Hellens, London.*



To the *French Treatise* here quoted a <sup>p</sup> Note is added, That there are two Rods in the Order of the *Garter*, one white signifying Joy, the other *Black* denoting Punishment; and probably this Observer believed, that this white Rod might be first allowed to *Garter*, in Contradistinction only to the *Black* Rod carried by the Gentleman Usher in that Order, who hath his Denomination from it, and in Truth was an Officer of much earlier Institution than *Garter*, and whose Business it was to apprehend and arrest any Knights Companions, who transgressed against the Statutes: But though a white Rod might well be esteemed the Signal of Joy, since our municipal Law hath reckoned it the Emblem of <sup>q</sup> Peace; yet considering the Similitude and Analogy throughout all Kingdoms in Matters relating to Officers of Arms, it may be supposed, that this Symbol of a white Rod was rather allowed to *Garter* in Correspondence to a general Custom, than given him singly with a View to the *Black* Rod; though it must be confessed that the Banner on the Rod of *Garter*, is relative to the Order.

Kings of Arms in *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, *Norway*, *Suedeland*, *Poland*, and in other Places (whereof Instances will be soon given) had Rods, which many Authors term <sup>j</sup> Scepters. The first Commentators upon the Institution of Heralds according to the legendary Drapery of their Ages, derived the Descent of these Rods from the *Caduceus*, the Symbol of Peace ascribed by the Pagan Theology to *Mercury*, whom they gravely denominate the Herald of the Gods; and if they had known, that the *Pater Patratus* the chief of the *Roman* Fecials, held a <sup>k</sup> Scepter at the confirming Treaties of Peace to supply the Absence of the Statue of *Jupiter*, they would generally have contemned that Original as of slender Antiquity, though indeed one of these Writers is contented to ascribe this Institution to a <sup>u</sup> Decree of *Julius Caesar*. There could be no Apology made for quoting such Dreams, unless we were thereby assured, that Rods had been the known Ensigns of Heralds in these Ages, when these credulous Authors thus rack'd their Inventions to deduce the Pedigree of them. But no Censure is hereby intended to be laid on several latter Writers, who in their *Latin* Histories, have expressed these Officers by the Term *Caduceatores*.

But to descend to Facts, there are several Solemnities of Funerals published in Sculpture. *La Ruelle* printed that of *Charles* Duke of *Lorain*, where *Sicily* King of Arms is figured with a Rod resembling a Marshal's Staff, called there *baculum Feciale*; whereas the Heralds and Pursivants then attending are without any Rods: At the Funeral of the Emperor *Charles* V, the principal Officer *Toison d'or* is drawn with a Rod not ensigned with a Crown, and the Heralds and Pursivants are without any Rods; and in the same Manner these latter are represented in the Funeral of *Albert* Archduke of *Austria*, wherein the *Premier Roy d'armes* is pictured with a Rod

<sup>p</sup> Nota, que en dit Ordre de la Jarretiere y a deux verges, l'une blanche, et l'autre noyre, desquelles l'une signifie Lieffe, et l'autre pugnicion.

<sup>q</sup> Britton de leg. Angl. c. 53 oue une blanche virge ensigne de peas.

<sup>r</sup> Colombiere des Roys d'armes p. 42. et pour scepre un baston d'or a la main dextre.

<sup>j</sup> Ibid. et p. 58. Ceremon. Franc. vol. 1. p. 447 &c.

<sup>k</sup> Servius ad 12 *Aeneid*. Sceptrum hoc &c.

<sup>u</sup> The *Traict* commencing Selon les ditz des Philosophes &c. whereof there are ancient Copies in several Libraries.



crowned. These are modern Precedents; and we know, that the *Baton* of the Lord *Lyon* of *Scotland* is of "Wood great at one End, and small  
" at the other, coloured *Azure*, and all over powder'd with Thistles of  
" Gold, which he may use on all Occasions whensoever and wheresoever  
" himself pleases; But the Times he must not take it, are at his denoun-  
" cing War, or proclaiming Peace, forfaiting of Traytors, Degrada-  
" tion, and Proclamation of Kings," which are the \* Words of Sir *James Balfour*, who filled this Office with great Sufficiency; though it may be difficult to assign a satisfactory Reason, why this Ensign should not be born upon the Proclamations of Peace, whereof it was antiently a Symbol, or at the Proclamation of the King: We find the first King of Arms at the Inauguration of *Ch. ii.* to the Dutchy of *Brabant* 24 Febr. 1666, carried his *Caduceus* surmounted with a Royal Crown.

These Precedents relate only to Kings of Arms, but then there are Expressions in some Historians, that Heralds were in Possession of the same Privilege of Rods, though it may be not improbable, that these Writers in several of these Cases used the Term Herald according to the usual Sense, wherein it hath been and still is, frequently attributed to and includes Kings of Arms: Therefore the Herald who <sup>z</sup> bore "*bacillum liliis distinctum*," when he summoned the Baron *de Soubize*, might be of this superior Order; as also the "*duo Regii Heroldi*," who held Rods in their Hands at the Funeral of *Frederick* the second King of *Denmark*; and the <sup>b</sup> Heralds of *Austria*, *Hungary*, and *Bohemia*, who carried white Rods at the Emperor's Election might be of the same Classis, if at that Time there was any real Distinction between Kings of Arms and Heralds in *Austria*. However the *French* Authors (as it will be soon shewn) allow Rods to their Heralds with some Distinction in the Form of them, which might be an Usage peculiar to that Realm; for though *Charolois* Herald used a white Rod at a Tilt in 1449, yet it doth not follow, that he certainly bore it as an Incident to his Heraldship, but might then use it as being appointed to attend at that Time within the Lists to part the Combatants, for such Persons <sup>c</sup> carried long Rods for that Purpose; otherwise he might then have been a *Marshal* to some King of Arms, and thereby entituled to a Rod; and we know in Fact, that an Herald by that Title was in 1530 *Marshal* of Arms in *Brabant*.

Such Marshals were doubtless settled in all Kingdoms, wherein the Fraternity of Officers of Arms was allowed; we have several uncontrollable Evidences of this Usage within this Realm. *Richard Spenser* Herald was <sup>g</sup> *Marshal del South* in 7 *Rich. II.*, that is, Deputy to that King of Arms, who then had the *Southern* Province under his Jurisdiction; and again in

\* *The Office of Heraltrie* c. 12. MS. in bibl. Advocat. Edinburg.

y *Theatre de la Noblesse de Brabant* in 4to 1705. le *Fremier Roy d'armes* revetu de la riche Cotte d'armes plaines du Roy en riche broderie, le *Caducee* somme de la Couronne Royale en la main.

z *Grammond Hist. Gallie* ad A. D. 1621.

a In the printed Draught of that Funeral.

b *Limn. ad auream bullam* p. 265.

c See above p. 283.

d *Olivier de la Marche Hist.* p. 295.

e *Ibid* p. 183, 245, 250, 265, 298, 300, 491.

f *Menestrier le Blason de noblesse* p. 536.

g *Rot. Fran.* 7 R. 2. m. 23. *Richardus Spenser* Heralda *Mariscall del Sub*, qui in obsequium Regis ad partes transmarinas profecturus est, habet litteras Regis de Protectione cum Clausula *Volumus* usq; ad festum Purificationis beatæ *Mariæ* proxime futurum duraturas. T. R. apud *W. J. m.* xvi die Sept.



the 18th Year of that Reign, a <sup>b</sup> Marshal Herald was sent into Ireland. In the third of Hen. V, Hereford <sup>i</sup> Mareſcal of Arms waited upon that King in his Expedition to France; and the first Garter petitioned that Prince for <sup>k</sup> Permission to appoint his own Marshal; William Bois dit Exceſtre baronold Mareſcal d'armes des Noreys was one of the Officers, who conſented to the 'Constitutions made at Roan on Friday 5 January 1419-20; in which the Marshal of Clarenceux is mentioned. The learned Du Fresne quotes a <sup>m</sup> Manuscript of an English Herald wrote under the Reign of Hen. VI, which Names the Marshals; and under Ed. IV our Records furnish us with Thomas <sup>n</sup> Holme Windsor Herald Marshal of Arms in the second and <sup>o</sup> fifth Years, and with John Windsor Herald Marshal of Arms in the <sup>p</sup> fifteenth Year then one of the Embassadors to the King of Castile.

It would be tedious to transcribe the Passages to this Purpose scattered up and down in our Manuscripts; but it may not be too great a Digression to observe, that these Marshals thus specified in our Records were Persons eminent in their Professions, and soon promoted to the highest Order. Menestrier indeed cites an <sup>q</sup> antient Formulary, that the Marshal had of Course a Right to succeed his Constituent upon his Death. The Title of Spenser's Heraldship being omitted, and the Surname of Hereford not mentioned, it may be difficult to settle their Persons. But this William Boys thus designed Marshal of Noreys in 7 Hen. V, had been in the first Year of that Reign by the <sup>r</sup> Denomination of Dorset Herald twice sent into France to attend upon [Thomas Beaufort] Earl of that County, which Earl being in the fourth Year promoted to the Dukedome of Exeter, this William <sup>s</sup> Boys of the County of Buckingham by the Title of Exeter Herald attended again upon him into France in 1 Hen. VI, which Duke <sup>t</sup> dying on 27 December in the fifth Year, we find that in January <sup>u</sup> following

<sup>b</sup> Exit. Pell. Mich. 18 R. 2. Mareſcallo Heraldlo miſſo in Comitiva Her Nicle Rynemys, & Richardi Abberbury junioris militum ad Dom. Regem verſus partes Hibernia in perſolutionem v marcarum, quas Dom. Rex eidem Mareſcallo liberare mandavit de dono ſuo.

<sup>i</sup> Priv. Sigill. 22 Juin 3 H. 5.— Que a noz bien amez Leyceſtre, Guyenne, & Irland Roys d'armes, & a Hereford Mareſchal d'armes facez paier a chacun de eux douze deniers le jour en main pour le premier demy quarter pour leur gages de guerre pour ceſte noſtre viage.

<sup>k</sup> See above p. 330. art. 19.

<sup>l</sup> There are Copies of them in ſeveral Libraries.

<sup>m</sup> Diſſert. au Joinville p. 162.

<sup>n</sup> Priv. Sig. 1 Sep. 2 E. 4. in Turre. In conſideration of the ſervice that our welbeloved Servant Tho. Holme otherwiſe called Wyndeſore our herault Mareſcal hath doon unto us, and ſhall doo in tyme to come, wee have yeven and graunted unto hym the lands &c. in the Countie of Kent forſayted unto us by the Rebellion of Robert Mereſyn &c. 29 Oct. hoc breve liberatum fuit Cancellario Anglia exequend.

<sup>o</sup> Rot. Clauſ. 9 E. 4. m. 16 d. Noveritis me Thomam Smith libere donasse Thomæ Holme alias dicto Wyndeſor Heraldlo Mareſcallo Officii Armorum. &c. Dat. 14 Nov. 5 E. 4.

<sup>p</sup> Rot. Fran. 15 E. 4. m. 12. 15 May Rymer vol. 12. p. 3.

<sup>q</sup> De la Chevalerie p. 210.

<sup>r</sup> Priv. Sig. in Turre. Fiat Proteſtio cum clauſula Volumus pro Willmo Bois Armigero alias dicto Dorſet le Heraud, qui in obſequio noſtro in Comitiva cariffimi Avunculi noſtri Thomæ Comititis Dorſet in partibus Aquitania ſuper ſalva cuſtodia

partium illarum moraturus per dimidium anni duratura. Dat. ſub privato ſigillo noſtro apud Weſtm. xiii die Maii anno regni noſtri primo.

<sup>s</sup> Rot. Vaſcon. 1 H. 5. m. 15. Rymer vol. 9. p. 8.

<sup>t</sup> Priv. Sigill. in Turre. Fiat Proteſtio cum clauſula Volumus pro Willmo Bois Armigero alias dicto Dorſet Heraud, qui in obſequium noſtrum verſus partes Aquitaniae profeſturus eſt, ibidem in comitiva cariffimi Avunculi noſtri Thomæ Comititis Dorſet, ac locum tenentis Ducatus noſtri Aquitaniae in eodem obſequio noſtro ſuper ſalva cuſtodia earundem partium moraturus per unum annum duratura. Dat. ſub privato Sigillo noſtro apud Weſtm. viii die Febr. anno regni noſtri primo.

<sup>u</sup> Priv. Sigill. in Turre. Fiat Proteſtio cum clauſula Volumus pro Willmo Boys alias dicto Exceſtre Heraude de Comitatu Bucks Jentilman, qui in obſequium noſtrum ad partes Franciae profeſturus eſt, ibidem in comitiva cariffimi Conſanguinei noſtri Thomæ Ducis Exon in eodem obſequio noſtro moraturus per dimidium annum duratura. Dat. ſub privato Sigillo noſtro apud Weſtm. xxv die Aprilis anno regni noſtri primo.

<sup>v</sup> Eſch. 5 H. 6. n. 56.

<sup>w</sup> Priv. Sig. in Turre. Fiat Proteſtio cum clauſula Volumus pro Willmo Boys de Burnham in Comitatu Bucks Armigero alias dicto Anjou Rege Armorum, qui in obſequium noſtrum ad partes regni noſtri Franciae profeſturus eſt, & ibidem in eodem obſequio noſtro in comitiva cariffimi Avunculi noſtri Johannis Regentis regnum noſtrum prædictum Ducis Bedfordiae moraturus, per unum annum duratura. Dat. ſub privato Sigillo noſtro apud Weſtm. ----- die Januarii anno regni noſtri quinto.

William



*William Boys* of *Burnham* in the County of *Buckingham*, by the Title of *Anjou* King of Arms attended upon *John* Duke of *Bedford* Regent of *France*, which Regent was <sup>x</sup> Duke of *Anjou*, and that this was the same Person whose Name was changed to <sup>y</sup> *Lancaster* by *Hen. VI.*, appears evidently from a <sup>z</sup> Protection granted in the 17th Year to *William Boys* of the County of *Buckingham*, otherwise called *Lancaster* King of Arms; and by this last Title he then obtained the <sup>a</sup> Province *des Noreys*, over which he had been formerly a Marshal, Deputy, or Substitute to that Provincial King. *Holme* thus named also a Marshal, was a Person of Merit in the Fraternity, and therefore constituted *Norroy* King of Arms in 7 *Ed. IV.*, and *Clarenceux* in the 16th Year, who went through several honourable Embassies, and received the Order of Knighthood, and *John Windsor* Herald the other Marshal, was doubtless *John Moore Windsor*, who in the 18th Year of this King's Reign was promoted from *Windsor* to be *Norroy*.

It is evident that Marshals had Rods: The first *Garter* petitioned the Sovereign to deliver the Rod to his Marshal; which was the usual Ceremony upon the Occasion of constituting such an Officer: *Menestrier* hath published the <sup>b</sup> Formulary from an antient Manuscript, and *Sicily* Herald, who wrote for the Instruction of his Contemporaries and of his Successors, is more large in the Ritual, That a <sup>c</sup> Marshal ought to be an Herald, and have the Testimonials of all Officers of Arms and of the Nobility of the Province; that the Prince delivered a Rod to the Provincial King, who held it by the Top, and the Marshal by the Bottom, during the Time the Marshal took his Oath for the due Administration of that Office; which being done, the King of Arms removed his Hand leaving the Rod with the Marshal, in Token that he had transferred to him during his own Absence all the Power given him; but when the King of Arms should be

<sup>x</sup> Gilles Brie l. 5. c. 9. p. 321. Chevalerie de *Jehan* Regent du Royaume de *France*. MS. in bibl. *Lambeth*. n. 141.

<sup>y</sup> See above in this Book p. 459. and Notes to the *Black-Book* p. 114.

<sup>z</sup> Priv. Sigill. in Turre. Fiat Protectio cum Clausula Voluminis pro *Willmo Boys* de Comitatu *Bucks* Gentilman alias dicto *Lancastre* Rege Armorum, qui in obsequium nostrum versus partes Ducatus nostri *Aquitaniæ* profecturus est, ibidem in obsequio nostro in Comitativa dilecti & fidelis nostri *Johannis* Comitis *Huntingdon* locum tenentis Ducatus nostri prædicti super salva custodia partium earundem moraturus, per unum annum duratura. Dat. sub privato Sigillo nostro apud *Westm.* viii die *Maii* anno regni nostri decimo septimo. Rot. Vascon. 17 H. 6. m. 17. Rymer vol. x. p. 722.

<sup>a</sup> Sir Hen. Spelm. in his Gloss. v. Heraldus supposeth that the County Palatine of *Lancaster* was the Province of this Officer, whereas it appears by several Records, that he had all the Northern Province in the Manner that *John March Herald King Noreys* enjoyed it; which Title of *Lancaster* continued to the End of the Reign of *Hen. VI.* and *Ed. IV.* afterwards revived the old Title of *Norroy*.

<sup>b</sup> De la Chevalerie p. 209. Le Roy d'armes pour faire un Marechal d'armes ou Lieutenant, il le requiert au Prince, de la main duquel il recoit une verge, ou baston, que il baille au Marechal, en signifiante qu' apres son trepas il luy doit succeder, & estre Roy d'armes.

<sup>c</sup> MS. in bibl. Regia E n. 1403. Pour faire ung

Mareschal d'armes. On doit faire de Mareschal d'armes d'ung Herald par le Election du Roy d'armes, & des Heraulds du pais dont il est, & qui luy cognoissent. Et y doit estre present le Roy d'armes de la Marche, ou autre Roy d'armes en son absence; Sy se doit faire en jours de solemnitez de feste solemnelle, es haultes Courts ou en Armes, comme il est d'ung Herauld. Et y a par le rapport & relation que le Prince a de luy par lesdites Officiers d'armes, & Seigneurs du pais, le dit Prince done un verge de bois au Roy d'armes de la Marche, ou a autre en son dit absence, lequel le baille au dit Herauld, qui doit estre Mareschal d'armes, sy luy faist jurer & promettre par tous les serments, qu'il fist quand il fust Herauld, de bien & lealment garder & accomplir tout ce, que a bon Mareschal d'armes appartient; Et jusques a ce que le serment est faict, ne laissiet aller la dite Vergette, & le tient le Roy d'armes par dessus, & le dit Mareschal par dessous. Et le dit serment ainsi faict, le dit Roy d'armes oste sa main & laisse la dite verge es mains du dit Mareschal d'armes, en signifiant qu'il luy resigne en son absence la puissance a luy baillee par le Prince. Et le dit Mareschal remercie le dit Prince. Sy appartient au dit Mareschal d'armes faire en l'absence du Roy d'armes tout ce que le dit Roy d'armes facit, sil y estoit present; mais quand le dit Roy d'armes y est, il n'a non plus du puissance & auctorite, que chacun des dits heraulds, sy non quel le preferre a tous en l'honneur.

present,



present, the Marshal had then no more Authority than any other Herald, save only a Preference in Honour and Precedency. And *William Fellowe* created *Norroy* in 28 *Hen. VIII*, hath left us this <sup>d</sup> Entry; "That in every Province or Marche be ordeined an honest Herald under the said King of Armes, to be his Marshal for the Honour and keping of the said Office of Arms in the Absence of the King, and in his Presence at his Pleasure and Will; And that none of what Estate he be of, be not made Marshal, but yet yf be by the Election of the King of Arms of the Marche, to whom he wold be Marshall, bycause that yt hath byne accostomyd to be so don of old tyme, and reson, for the Kyng of Armes knowyth better the suffisaunce of the Herald of his Marche then the Prynce, that gyvyth him the Rod or Yerd."

Let us also examine the Customs of foreign Countries in this Particular; our own Records as long since as in 12 *Ed. III*, present us <sup>e</sup> with the Marshal of the Heralds of *Brabant*, and a <sup>f</sup> Marshal of that Place attended at *Arras*, and is mentioned in the <sup>g</sup> Constitutions of the Household under *Charles Duke of Burgundy* in 1468, and in the Year 1530 above-cited; and in these Parts were also *Le Marechal d'Artois*, and *le Marechal de Flandres*. As to *France*, the Formulary of the Creation of *Montjoie* is very determinate, that at his <sup>h</sup> Creation he shall present to the Sovereign the Person nominated by him to be his Marshal, to whom the King shall deliver the white Rod. In the Composition <sup>i</sup> touching the Church of *St. Anthony* in *Paris* dated in 1406 the *Marechal d'armes des Francois*, is one of the Parties: And in that Kingdom this Office of <sup>k</sup> *Marechal d'armes des Francois*, was confirmed by Letters Patents in 1487 to *Gilbert Chauveau*, which Person was afterwards advanced to be <sup>l</sup> *Montjoie*, who, as it is said, received the Honour of Knighthood from the <sup>m</sup> Emperor of *Constantinople* and was created Baron of *Ipsala* in *Greece*.

Because the white Rod was thus given to Heralds in *France*, as the Ensign of their Promotions to Marshalships, one should be ready to infer, that the other Heralds there had not antiently any Rods appropriated to their Offices, unless it could be shewn that there was some apparent Difference in the Forms or Make of their Rods: However some late Authors attribute Rods to their Heralds in general, and express the Distin-

<sup>d</sup> Given to the Heralds Library by Mr. Hare Richmond p. 6 b.

<sup>e</sup> Comp. Garderob. 12 E. 3. in libro penes Camerari. Scaccarii. Marefcallo Heraldorum de partibus *Brabant* venienti ad Dom. Regem usq; dictas partes ex consimili dono Regis per manus proprias x s. Cuidam Heraldum Armorum *Brabantia* xiii s. vi d.

<sup>f</sup> Chartier Hist. de Ch. viii. p. 82. A. D. 1435. Il y avoit plusieurs Roys d'armes, *Mareschaux*, *Herauts*, & *Poursuivans* pour le Duc de *Bourgongne* — Le Roy de *Brabant*, le *Marechal de Brabant*, le *Marechal de Flandres*, le *Marechal d'Artois* &c.

<sup>g</sup> Otho B. 12 in bibl. Cotton.

<sup>h</sup> Du Fresn. Gloss. voce Heraldus.

<sup>i</sup> MS. in Bibl. Regia Angl. E. n. 1403. p. 77.

<sup>k</sup> Vol. 274 des MSS. de *Brienne* f. 176 en Bibl. du Roy de *France* f. 176. Lettres par lesquelles le Roy a institue *Gilbert Chauveau* dit *Bourbon* heraut du Duc de *Bourbonnois* & d'*Auvergne* Con-

nestable de *France*, *Marechal d'armes des Francois* aux honneurs des Rois, heraulx, & autres Officiers d'armes du 17 *juin* 1487.

Lettres du Roy *Charles viii* par lesquelles il cree, & erige un *Marechal d'armes des Francois* pour avoir autorite, & charge de faire peindre & pourtraire & mettre en ordre les noms, & les armes de tous les Ducs, Princes, Contes, Barons, Seigneurs, Chastelains, & autres nobles de ce Royaume, du 16 *juin* 1487. Communiquees par le Sire *Clairrembault*.

<sup>l</sup> Quittance donne le 18 *Mars* 1520. par *Gilbert Chauveau* dit *Montjoie* Chevalier Premier Roy d'armes du Roy nostre Sire a *Jean Sapin* Receveur general de ses finances de la somme de 300 l. tournois a luy ordonnez pour sa pension d'une annee: communiquee par le Sire *Clairrembault*. See *Joly de la Justice Militaire de France* p. 43 b.

<sup>m</sup> *Colombiere des Roys d'armes* p. 36.



tions of them from those of Kings of Arms, in that these <sup>n</sup> Rods of Heralds are without any *Fleur de Lis*, or Crown upon them, another <sup>o</sup> intimates a Difference in the Metal, or Materials of them within the Empire, and one of our <sup>p</sup> Manuscripts describes a Martinet of Or and Argent at the Top of their Rods: That of <sup>q</sup> *Montjoie* is specified by their Writers; But in the Ceremonial of the Coronation of *Lewis XIII*, which seems to be very particular, the two Kings of Arms of *France* and *Navarre* had <sup>r</sup> Scepters, whereas the Heralds who attended thereat are not mentioned to have any Rods. In the Sculpture of the <sup>s</sup> Creation of Knights of the Holy Ghost on 14 May 1633, published by Mr. Hozier, the *Quatre Herauts* are drawn with Rods in their Hands without any Thing at the Top of them: The King of Arms with a Rod surmounted, when the Herald of the Order carried his Mace on his right Shoulder: At the <sup>t</sup> Funeral of *Eliz.* Daughter of *Hen. IV* in 1644 the four Heralds of *France*, *Burgundy*, *Valois*, and *Alencon* are said to bear their Batons; but whether the Word Heralds in these two last Entries may design Kings of Arms, the Editor is not enabled to determine.

It may be repeated, that no one who was not in the Degree of an Herald was capacitated to be a Marshal; that a Testimonial of his Sufficiency was required from the Officers of Arms, and even from the Gentry of the Province, (which was a reasonable Precaution, since by his Function he would have Power over their Standards, Banners, in Justs &c.) That the Sovereign solemnly created such a Marshal by Ceremony, and that too on some splendid Feasts, when an Oath was required for the Execution of this Office; all which Rules must have been eminently violated, if any Provincial Kings ever presumed to depute a Number of low Mechanicks, and among others a Woman, to act as their Deputies or Marshals throughout their Marches, or within any District of them; and it could be no Mitigation of this Transgression, that such Deputations were granted for the Consideration of Money paid in Hand, or under Reservation of annual Payments. If such Practice did no Ways tend to the Prejudice and Derogation of the Gentry, by an Attempt to subject them to ignorant Dawbers, Stone-Cutters, and Handicrafts Men, in the nicest Points of Arms and Mysteries of Honour, and if it was no Reproach to the Heralds, to whom such Substitutions were heretofore only communicable, or in any Manner invasive on their Rights to serve by Turns at Funerals un-

<sup>n</sup> Colomb. des Roys d'armes p. 60. Le Baston des Herauds est appelle Caducee, pource qu'il n'a aucune fleur de lys ny Couronne au bout; Il est couvert de velours violet & semee de fleurs de lys d'or en broderie, comme celui du Roy d'armes.

Diſtion. de Trevoux in voce. Caducee se dit aussi d'un baton couvert de velours fleurdelise, que portent les Herauts dans les Ceremonies. Celui du Roi d'armes a un fleur de lis au bout, que quelquesuns nomment Sceptre.

<sup>o</sup> Colombiere p. 42. mentions the Rods of some Kings of Arms and saith pour sceptre un baston d'or a la main dextre, and of Heralds belonging to Sovereign Princes dependant on the Empire, et pour sceptre ou caducee baston d'argent seulement.

<sup>p</sup> MS. of Fellow Norroy given to the Heralds by Mr. Hare Richmond p. 177. Heraut doit tenir

en sa main une verge blanche, au bout de laquelle doit estre ung oyseau, qu'on appelle Martinet, lequel est de deux couleurs, cestascavoir d'or & d'argent.

<sup>q</sup> Colombiere des Roys d'armes p. 58 Montjoie S. Denys tient en sa main droite un Sceptre couvert de velours violet seme de fleurs de Lis d'or en broderie, orne au bout d'une fleur de lys d'or massif couronnee d'un Couronne Royale de mesme. Dict. des Arts & Sciences par M. D. C. voce Roys d'armes. Furetiere Dict. v. Heraut.

<sup>r</sup> Cerem. Franc. vol. 1. p. 447.

<sup>s</sup> Les Noms &c. de Chevaliers &c. creez 14 May 1633. Paris en fol. 1634.

<sup>t</sup> Hist. Geneal. de la maison de Gondi vol. 2. p. 169, 170.



der the Kings of Arms; yet if no Authority to depute was contained in the Patents of these Provincials under the Great Seal, or otherwise derived from the Sovereign, it might be a Question in Law, how far an Officer during good Behaviour (in whom, as the Terms are, Confidence, Trust and Skill are required) could justify the Assumption of subdelegating such Power. Certainly that Officer cannot without a very ill Grace inveigh against the interloping of Painters, who hath himself went beyond the Bounds of his own Authority, in giving Sanction to the Actions of the most ignorant of them, who have not returned any of their Proceedings to be registred in the College. We have the following Words in a \* Law-Report. "Action lies for any Deputy, as of the King of Arms, who hath  
 " a Patent and Power by Commission to make a Deputy to enquire of  
 " Matters about his Office, when he hath done it, to say of his Deputy he  
 " came and sat by Force of a forged Commission, and he is a Scrivener  
 " and no Herald."

But to return to the Rod of *Garter* delivered from the Jewel-house, which is in Length above two Feet, guilt at both Ends, the middle Part of Silver burnished as bright as Art can make it, at the Top of it a Banner of Gold, composed of four Sides of equal Height, but of unequal Breadth, on each of the two largest Sides, being somewhat more than an Inch wide, St. George's Cross impaling the Sovereign's Arms; on each of the lesser Sides, somewhat more than an half Inch wide, the Cross of St. George surrounded by the Garter with the Motto thereon, being all curiously enamelled, and the Top of the whole ensigned with an Imperial Crown.

There is also delivered to *Garter* from the Jewel-house a Collar consisting of the Letters S. S., wherein the Provincial Kings and Heralds participate, with some Distinctions in the Form and Materials of their Collars, but the Pursivants have no such Ensign. The Editor supposes, these Collars were not originally given to these Officers with Relation singly to their Functions in the Capacity of Kings or Heralds of Arms, but as the Liveries of the Crown to be worn by them in Testimony of their Admission into the Royal Household, as Servants in that Degree of \* *Worship*, which actually conferred Gentility upon them.

Those who received Wages, Robes, and Diet in the Court, and who waited on the Sovereign either constantly, or by Turns in a Sort of Rotation, (in Case they were Members of a collective Fraternity professing the same Faculty,) were in the strictest Sense \* *Familiars*, that is Menial Servants to the Crown: Now that these Officers of Arms had Salaries and Habits hath been sufficiently proved, and as to their Diets, the first *Garter* <sup>z</sup> intimated, that antecedent to his Erection, the Provincial Kings sat at one Table,

\* 1 Cro. p. 329.

x See above p. 285.

y See above p. 319 note o. and p. 439, where *Garter* is termed by Hen. VI *Familiaris noster*, which signifies one of his Servants in the Household. Thus Hoveden p. 725. Pat. 4 E. 1. m. 21. Rex recepit in suum capellanum fratrem G. M. Monachum, volentes quod de cetero familiaritatis sue titulo decoretur. Pat. 29 E. 3. p. 1. m. 27. Rex constituit Johannem Stanton Camerae sue Militem & Familiarem quoad vixerit. Stat. 6 R. 2. c. 4. & Stat. 20

R. 2. c. 2. s'il ne soit meignal & familier continuellement demeurant en l'ostel de son Seigneur. xi H. 6. dilecti servientes nostri Armigeri, Clerici, Valetti, Garciones, & Pagetti nuper de hospitio patris nostri — familiares, & cotidie secum circa tempus mortis sue existentes, Rym. vol. x. p. 548, and thus this Word is given in our Records to the Servants in the Household of foreign Princes. Rym. vol. 8. p. 446. vol. 9. p. 342. vol. x. p. 70, 72. vol. xi. p. 371.

z See above p. 329. in the Notes art. 6, 7, 8.



the Residue of the Officers of Arms at another, and that the Pursivants began the Table of the *Vallets*, that is of those stiled *Yeomen* in the Court, a Term retained by the Yeomen Harbingers, Yeomen Ushers, Yeomen of the Crown, of the Chamber, of the Chappel &c. and upon the Strength of this Precedent, this *Garter* petitioned for a Table for himself and his Successors; but his Words do not expresse, whether it was his Intention to request a Table for himself distinct and separate from the Table of these Provincials, though in Fact, it seems, that Privilege was enjoyed by him and his Successors, in that he was served with *Barons* Service, when the other Kings of Arms were served only with *Knights* Service. The antient Rules of the royal Household determined the Number of Dishes, the Quantity of Wine, the Number of Servants, and Horses, and the different ceremonious Respects, that Dukes, Marquesses, Earls, Viscounts, and Barons were entituled to, which Services were allowed also to some Officers in the Household who were not in any of these Degrees of Peerage, for the Dignity and Support of the Honour of the Employments, which they executed within the Verge of the Court. In this List was *Garter*, who (as it is recited and confirmed by the Constitutions declared in 14 Hen. VIII) was served in the Court with *Baron* Service, and that too immediately after the Dean of his Majesty's Chappel, an Officer of great Character and Power in the Household. If it was not in Consequence of this Service, that *Garter* had a Privilege in the Ewery, till he lost it by the Emulation of one of the Provincials, yet the Narrative of it may be<sup>b</sup> inserted, because it is a Proof of his Attendance in the Court. It is to be lamented, that the Rights of *Garter* are not specified in the *Black-Book* of the *Counting House*, which was compiled under the Reign of Edw. IV, wherein there is a Chapter in general Terms, touching the Waitings of Kings, Heralds, and Pursivants of Arms on the five solemn Feasts, placed in the<sup>c</sup> Margin with some short Explanations, and which among

<sup>a</sup> See Black-Book p. 352.

<sup>b</sup> *Faustina* in bibl. Cotton E. 1. *Memorandum* that Garter that now ys, and ys father, and all other hys Predecessors from the first institution of his Office of Garter unto the Fest of *Albalowen* in the xxi yere of our Sovereign Lord the Kyng that now ys, have had a preeminence of the service of water of the Kyng Ewery, and had the towell reversed no furer then his aune person; and non of thowfice of Armes to washe with hym, onlesse he defyred them, in signe and tokenyng, that the said Garter ys Souverayn and principal Chieff in the said Office of Armes, which said service and peeminence *Benolt Clarencoux* not being contented therewith complaynid unto the Treasurer and Comptroller of the Kings House, saying that Garter presumed to have a higher Service of the Ewery then they had, whereupon afterwards by means of these, Garter lost his Preeminence of the Service of the Ewery, to which he desireth to be restored.

<sup>c</sup> C. 40. penes me p. 42. *Kings, Heralds, and Pursivants* coming to this Royal Court to the Worship of the *five Feasts* in the Year, sitting at Meals, and Suppers in the Hall, and to begin at one end of the Table together uppon Dayes of Estate by the Marshall's assignation at one Meale, and if the King kepe a State in the Hall, then theis walke be-

fore the Steward, Treasourer and Comptroller, coming with the King's meat from the Surveyinge Borde, at every Courfe, and after the last Courfe they cry the King's *Largesse*, shaking their *great Cuppe*, they take their *Largesse* at the Jewell house; and during these festival Dayes they waight upon the King's Person, coming and going to and fro the Church, hawle, and Chamber before his highness in their Coats of Arms, they taking neither wages, cloathing, nor Fees by the Counting howse, but livery for their Chamber day and night, amongst them all two loaves, one pitcher of wine, 2 Gallons of Ale, And for winter season, if there be present a King of Arms, for them all one Torche at the Chandrey, 2 candles wax, 3 candells Pariz 3 Tall. These Kings of Arms are served in the Halle as *Knights* service, and livery for their horses nere the Courte by the Harbinger: allways remembered that the Cupp, that the King doth create any Kinge of Armes or Herauld withall, " it standeth " upon the charge of the Jewell-Howse, and not " upon the Treasorer of the Household. The Fees " that they shall take at the making of Knights of " the Bath, it appeareth next after in the Chapter " of Squires.

Under the Reign of Rich. II, there are only four principal Festivals mentioned, See above p. 460 note y. And *Bruges*, the first *Garter*, concurs in that



among other Things particularly directs, that the Kings of Arms are to be served in the Hall by *Knights Service*, that is without doubt the Provincial Kings, since under the Reign of *Hen. VIII* it is positively averred in the Constitutions, that *Garter* had been served in the Court as a *Baron* by antient Custom. This *Black-Book* contains only what is chargeable upon the *Counting House*, and though the first Part of this Chapter describes the Duty of these Officers at these solemn Feasts only, yet the latter Part by the Words *Winter Season* seems to relate to daily Liveries throughout the whole Year, which is more probable, because the Treatise stiled *Jura &c.* asserts positively, "*Omnes Officiales Armorum habent sua nutrimenta in Curia, & sui servitores secundum eorum gradum, exceptis servitoribus Prosecutorum.*" Henry VII in his third Year<sup>e</sup> commanded all these Officers to wait at Court upon every principal Feast, every great Counsel, and every great Business, but that at all other privy Seasons, a King of Arms, Herald, and Pursivant should attend by Rotation according to the Scheme there settled, who all of them should have their Services and Liveries accustomed;

that Number, See above p. 329, which were termed in foreign Parts, *Festa annualia Perard. Mem. de Bourgogne p. 1172. See du Fresn. Gloss. v. Natales, Festa annualia.* To these another Feast had been added, to be kept with the like Estate in or before the Reign of *Edw. IV.*, which was the *Epiphany*, Twelfth Day, as 'tis termed, or the Feast of the three Kings: On this Feast our Kings antiently made Offerings of Gold, Frankincense, and Myrrh, *Comp. sub Hen. 4. in Bibl. Harl. 37 C. 22. p. 39. In oblationibus Dom. Regis factis in die Epiphanie Domini in precio unius nobilis auri oblatis cum Mirra, et Thure vi s. viii d.* which was consonant to the Practice in France. *Du Fresn. Gloss. v. Offerre.* And that this was the fifth Feast, appears from a Privy Seal dated 14 Feb. 18 Ed. IV., to allow *John Fitzherbert*, one of the Tellers, among other Particulars, "The rewardes to be gyven to *Garter Kyng of Armes* and other Heraldes and Mynstrells for the Kyngs Largeesse in the Solemnities of the Feasts of *Cristmas, New Yers Day, and Twelf Day*, fifty Pounds." It is supposed this Festival of *Twelf-day* was begun to be observed with this grand Ceremony of the King's keeping his Estate before the 18th of *Hen. VI.*, because the Treatise stiled *Jura, &c.* supposed, as above, to be compiled before that Time, hath this Entry, *Item in die Regum habent supradicti [officiales Armorum] ex Rege quinq; libras Sterlingorum;* and accordingly we find them to be paid that Sum in 29, 31 and 34 *Hen. VI.* See Notes to the *Black Book* p. 138. The Feast of *St. George* was in these Ages celebrated constantly at *Windsor*.

*Tall* is an Abbreviation for *Tallies*, that is, Fire-wood cleft into Tallies or Billets of certain length and bigness, See *Stat. 34 and 35 Hen. 8. c. 3. 7 E. 6. c. 7. and 43 Eliz. c. 14.* See the Feast at the *Inthronization of Archbishop Warrham*, Append. ad *Lelandi Collect. p. 31.*

d H. 4. penes me p. 687 b.

e It was concluded in the Chapter-house of *Westminster*, 19 Nov. 2 H. 7. by all the Kings of Arms and Heralds for their attendance on the King's good Grace; That every Kinge, Herald, and Pursivant of Armes of the King's Court await at every principal Feast, at every great Counsel, and at every great Business that shall now fall. *Item* forasmuch as at all other prevye seasons many strangers may come to the Court, and that the Court be not ungarnished of Officers of Arms, It

is concluded, that alway there shall be a Kyng, a Herald, and a Pursuyvant of Armes giving their Attendance on the Kings Grace, humbly beseeching his Grace, that hys signet with his most noble hand may be a sufficient comandement to his Officers of his most noble household, that the said Attendants may have all suche services, liveries in his most noble Court, as in old tyme hyt hath byne accustomed at all tymes of yeur Attendance.

*Garter Windsor Blewmantle* } from beginning of Decemb. and half January.

*Clarenceux Carlisle Herald* } half January and all Febr.  
a Pursuivant to be appointed by Clarenceux

*Marche King Chester Herald Rouge dragon* } all March, half Apr.

*Richmond King York Herald Faucon* } half Apr. all May.

*Garter Windsor Blewmantle* } all June, half July.

*Clarenceux Carlyle* } half July, all August.  
a Pursuivant

*Marche Chester Rouge crose* } all Sept. half October.

*Richmond King York Faucon* } half Oct. all Novemb.

Also yt shal be lawful for eny the said Attendants, if he be sick, or diseased, or have eny especial busines to do, to entreat another of hys Fellowes to wayt for hym.



customed; *Hen. VIII* by a new <sup>f</sup> Regulation ordained, that each King of Arms at the Charges of the Crown, should keep within the Court three Servants, and three Horses; the six Heralds each of them one Servant and two Horses; and the then seven Pursuivants each one Horse: But afterwards in this Reign these Officers lost their constant daily Diets, because in the Rules, which were then established for the Household, their standing Liveries chanced to be omitted, as it is recited in their <sup>g</sup> Petition to be restored to that Privilege, or to receive some Compensation for it, wherein they again solicited the Duke of *Suffolk* to be their <sup>b</sup> Mediator, as they also addressed themselves in the xxvi Year to the 'Duke of *Norfolk*; but (as it may be supposed) without any Success. The new Rules for the Government of the Household referred to in this Petition were, in all Probability, the Statutes made at *Eltham* in the seventeenth Year, wherein only the occasional <sup>k</sup> Liveries to these Officers at the five solemn Feasts were specified, which indeed were from that Time regularly allowed to them, till under some of the latter Reigns this Pittance too hath been taken from them.

In foreign <sup>l</sup> Courts the Officers of Arms had their Diets, and at solemn Festivals their Tables in the same Room, where their *Founders* dined, which were placed at a greater Distance, than the Table of the Ushers and Sergeants of Arms, because it was the Duty of the latter to receive and immediately to execute the Commands of the Sovereign upon any Emer-

Also ther shall no Officers of Arms sew to have a voyage during the wayttinge season of hys fellows, but tho' that waite, unlesse that the Kynges good Grace, or the Lordes of hys Counsell call any Officer of Arms whatsoever he be, be yt waytting season, or not, he shalbe readye to do hys dewttie, and this in payne of perjury; And also that thys bill signed with the Kyngs noble hand be sufficient Authority to *Garter* King of Armes to cawse all th'offices of Armes to holde and kepe the forsaide ordynances. MS. wrote by *Clarenc. Lee* given to the Heralds Library by Mr. *Hare Richmond* p. 214. *Roger Machado* was at this time stiled *Richmond Roy d'armes de Norrey*, and *William Ballard* by the Title of *March* had the *West* of *England*, *Wales*, and *Cornwall* for his Province.

<sup>f</sup> Vinc. MS. in Off. Arm. n. 98.

<sup>g</sup> To the Kinge our Sovereigne Lorde. Pleaseth your highnes of your abundant Grace to consider the greves, and lamentable complayntes of your most humble Servaunts, and Officers Kinges at Armes, Heralds, and Pursuivants of this your most noble Realme of *England*, which of necessity complaynith unto your noble Grace for their lyvings, which they have had heretofore of your Highnes, and of the Kings your Majesty's Progenitours, that ys to saye, *Garter* your Principall Kinge at Armes, *Clarenceux* Kinge at Armes of the *South*, *Norrey* Kinge at Armes of the *Northe*, six Harrolds at Armes, and four ordinary Pursuivants hath heretofore had Meate, Drinke, and Lyverey allowed at all tymes, as your noble Grace hath kept Howshold, and otherwise tyll now of late, that your Grace hath made an Order for your Howshold, where all other Officers be allowed of your Highnes, save oonly your most humble Complaynants your sayde Officers at Armes, which have induered to their greate Costs and Charges hitherto, and to their utter undoing, yf your Grace see not for their lyvyngs as hertofore they

have had, or elles an augmentation, as your Grace shall thinke most convenyent for the same; And that this may be considered by your Grace, and by your most noble and honourable Counsell, as your Highnes shall thinke necessary for the Preservation of the sayde Officers at Armes; and so doinge they shall be able to do your Highnes service at all tymes, where they shallbe commaunded by your Majestie, or by your most honorable Counsell; and they shall praye to Almighty God for the Preservation of your most noble and royall Estate, as their most bounden duty longe to continew and indure. E. 9. penes me p. 3.

<sup>b</sup> MS. of *Clarenceux Lee* given to the Heralds Library by Mr. *Hare Richmond* p. 211 &c.

<sup>i</sup> MS. in bibl. D. D. Ed. *Dering* Baronetti. l. 6. 1. p. 166. Item to have Liveraye meat and drynke afre the olde custom in the King's Courte to thentent, that we may gyve our attendance of hym and his moste honourable Cowncell, and also to have a warrant dormant in the Kings Wardrobe for Cots of Armes for thole Offyce one tyme in the yere with our Levereie accordinge unto our pattenrs of olde tyme made.

<sup>k</sup> In these Statutes, is this Clause, Kings of Armes, Heralds, and Pursuivants comming and attending at five Feasts of the yere, and at each of theis Feasts for their livery among them all, two loaves of bread, one pitcher of wyne, two Gallons of Ale, and in winter two sizes wax, three white lights and three talskids. C. 40 penes me p. 128. which possibly was then construed to extend no farther than to these Feast daves. In another part it is ordained, that the Heralds, and no Officers there named, should not bring into the Court for any cause any boyes &c.

<sup>l</sup> Of *Burgundy*, See *Olivier de la Marche l'Estat du Duc Charles*, In *France* Montjoie a son plat ordinaire, & son logis pres du Roy. Belleforest les *Grandes Ann.* l. 4. c. 41 &c.

gency,



gency, and not <sup>m</sup> upon Pretension of any Claim that the Sergeants of Arms were in Degree of Honour equal with the Heralds, to whom they always gave the Precedency: It is <sup>n</sup> asserted that in *France* the Heralds heretofore sat at the Tables of the Kings themselves. Indeed we have some such Instances in other Places, when Officers of Arms were sent with the Characters of Embassadors; and in this Kingdom it was certainly the Practice to admit <sup>o</sup> foreign Heralds, whenever they resided here, to officiate within the Household equally with our Domestick Officers, and that they participated in a Share of the <sup>p</sup> Largeesses given upon splendid Solemnities; and it seems to have been the <sup>q</sup> Custom here, (and probably also in other Realms,) to treat such foreign Officers of Arms in Respect to their Masters with such Distinctions of Ceremonies, as were not even shewn to the Domestick

<sup>m</sup> Olivier de la Marche Etat du Duc Charles p. 706. Quand le Duc tient Estat, au milieu de la Salle doit avoir deux basses tables, d'ont l'une est petite pour quatre personnes seulement, & doit estre tournée devers le Prince, & devant luy, & au milieu d'icelle doivent seoir deux huysfiers d'armes, & aux deux bouts de la Table deux sergents d'armes, en couchans chacun, les masses sur les bouts de la table, et ayans leurs visages devers le Prince, & derriere eux, doit estre la table des Officiers d'armes, qui doivent estre du long de la table, et seoir leur costes d'armes vestues. Mais je demande pourquoy ne font les Roys d'armes, & Héraux plus pres du Prince, que les Huysfiers et Sergents d'armes, & toutefois ils ont leur coffes d'armes vestues, et sont de plus noble estat, que les autres? A ce je respons, que c'est pource que les Huysfiers et Sergents d'armes sont les Exécuteurs du Prince, et que telles nouvelles pouroyent advenir, ou telle chose pouroit estre fait, que le Prince voudroit mettre la main au plus grand de ses pays ou autres, et pource doivent estre assis iceux Sergents devant sa face, pour promptement executer son bon plaisir et commandement.

At the Feast of the Marriage of this Duke with the Sister of Ed. IV, there were three Tables placed in the Middle of the Hall, at the first sat the Ushers and Sergeants at Arms, at the other the Kings and Heralds of Arms, and at the third the Minstrels. Oliv. de la Marche p. 586.

The Tables were placed in the same Manner at the Coronation of Charles 8. King of France in 1484. Cerem. Franc. vol. 1. p. 207.

<sup>n</sup> Becan. Franc. l. 4. p. 93. De vetustis Francorum monumentis scimus, in tanto quondam Heraldos honore fuisse, ut Regum mensis accumbent &c.

<sup>o</sup> Several such Instances have been given in this Discourse. There were twenty four such Officers of different Countries at the Marriage of Charles Duke of Burgundy. Oliv. de la Marche, p. 523. among others our Garter. See above p. 353. note x, with Chester-Herald, See p. 447. Seventy three at the Entry of Louis into Paris in 1461. Cerem. Franc. vol. 1. p. 179. at the Coronation of the Emperor Charles the Fifth, the Heralds of the Kings of France, England, Scotland, Portugal, Hungary, Poland, of Austria, and of several Kingdoms and Principalities of that Emperor. Wolfii Leich. Memor. vol. 2. p. 125. and Maurus who was present at that Ceremony writes. Anglicus quoq; Heraldus cum insignibus Regis sui honoris causa conspiciatur. Schard. vol. 2. p. 26.

<sup>p</sup> Many Precedents have been given hereof from Payments to the English and foreign Heralds attending together. See the Black Book p. 93. note f. p. 138. note r, &c. It would be endless to produce

all the Instances of this Practice: Sometimes these foreign Officers were paid by separate Warrants. Exit. Pell. Mich. 21 Hen. 6. Regi Armorum Regis de Cypri ad presens existenti in regno Anglie, qui erat in presentia Dom. nostri Regis una cum aliis Regibus Armorum, Heraldis, & Pursuantz, ubi idem Dom. noster Rex festa sua solempnia duobus temporibus tenebat, & qui est transiturus extra dictum Regnum Anglie, vi l. xiii. s. iv d. a Privy Seal on 21 June 23 Hen. 6. a Ermine herault de nostre trescher & tresame Cousin le Duc de Bretagne devers nous avec certaines matieres & pour veoir la solemnite de la Coronation de nostre Compaignie cinque marc, &c.

<sup>q</sup> It was the Civility of our Kingdom to treat all Strangers in the Household with Ceremonies superior to the Quality of the Person; thus foreign Earls were served as Dukes, and foreign Barons as Earls, E. 11. penes me p. 27. which in all probability was observed in the case of Officers of Arms; thus Normandy King of Arms. at the Coronation of our Henry VII, went in front or in breast with our Garter, G. 5. penes me p. 78, though there is no doubt but the English Provincial Kings attended, because there were Liveries prepared for them. Registr. B. penes Remem. Regis f. 207. thus Toison went with Garter Ashm. p. 348. where the Provincials are not mentioned: and in the Procession 1 Jac. I. in the Order of the Garter, Lyon King of Arms proceeds with Clarencieux, Ashm. p. 345; but though it is not specified on which Hand, yet it may be supposed he was on the Right, because in the Warrant for preparing Coats for these Officers, Lyon is placed immediately after Garter, before Clarencieux and Norroy, Lib. Signet. apud Whitehall, May 1603. and he is thus placed in the Partition-books, p. 92. so that probably there was not any absolute Necessity in the Articles of Union, for a Clause touching the Settling his Precedency, to be referred to the Determination of the Sovereign.

As to the Customs in Foreign Parts particularly France, Et si aucun Roy d'armes, ou Hérault d'autre Roy, ou Prince estrange y estoit, on le mettra au Rang des Roys d'armes, ou Hérault du Roy, en leur disant, que c'est pour l'honneur de leur Seigneur. Du Fresn. Gloss. v. Herald. At the Justs upon the Marriage of Char. D. of Burgundy, le Roy d'armes de la Fartice, le Roy d'armes de Toison, &c. were two of the Judges, Oliv. de la Marche, p. 532. When Richmond King of Arms attended on our Embassadors in Spain in 1488, in the Procession to Justs, Snowdon Herald of Scotland went in breast with Arragon King of Arms, and then followed our Richmond on the right Hand of Castile King of Arms. Recueil de Richemont Clarencieux inter Cod. Norf. in Off. Arm. The Romance of Saintre hath



Domestick Officers of the same Degree and Station. And here it may not be improperly remembered, that Princes were formerly pleased to admit the Heralds to wait upon them at their <sup>r</sup> Tables in a near Degree of Access, and to discourse with them familiarly upon <sup>s</sup> Topicks of nice Natures within the Compass of their Functions.

It is needless to produce other Arguments to prove that these Officers were, and still are Servants to the Crown in the Royal Household, because it may be reasonably supposed, this Honour will not be denied to them. In several Instruments from the Crown inserted in this Work, *Gar*ter is termed the King's trusty and welbeloved Servant, and the like Appellations have been given to other Officers of Arms, and upon this Foundation the <sup>r</sup> Petition of *Treswell* one of the Heralds to be discharged from an Arrest during the Session of Parliament, was received by the House of Lords in 43 *Eliz.* However the Stile in the Preamble to the Patents of Kings of Arms, which hath been continued for some Centuries, should not be here passed over unobserved, "*Quod inter ceteros Officiarios, & Ministros, quos Principum lateribus pro eorum magnificentia atq; gloria ad-hereere decet &c.*" Since it not only asserts their immediate Service and Attendance upon the Person of the Sovereign, but happens to correspond with the chief Description, that the <sup>r</sup> Civil Law gives of the Method, whereby Nobility or Gentry is obtained, "*Cum Imperator aliquem ad imperialis lateris comitatum admittit.*"

Our Common <sup>r</sup> Lawyers agree, that several Offices in the Royal Household confer the Title and Addition of Gentlemen to those who execute them, and lay down a Rule, that in Case such Officers lose these their Places, they return to be Yeomen, in Case they had not a previous Right to Gentry by Birth. The <sup>r</sup> Treatise Entituled *The Description of an Esquire* concurs, with the Addition of the Manner, whereby this Gentry is conveyed, and upon what Incident it may be lost. "Such Esquires as bearing Office in the Common Wealth, or in the King's House, are therefore called and reputed to be Esquires, as the Sergeants at the Law, the Escheators in every Shire, and in the King's House the Heralds of Arms, the Sergants of Arms, and the Sergants of every Office, who have the Collar of S. S. given them, but having no Arms, that Degree dieth with them, and their Issue is not ennobled." According then to this Doctrine, the Heralds either by Virtue of their Offices, or by the Reception of this Collar are matriculated into the Rank of Gentry, which is said to be accessory only to their Offices, and consequently temporary, being subject to an Extinction upon a Resignation, or Discharge from the Office.

hath been often quoted as an Authority for the splendid Customs of that Age: Now we are therein acquainted, that when *Saintre* was to perform Feats of Arms at *Barcelona*, the Entry was in this manner, *les Poursuivans leurs Cottes d'armes vestues de cote, deux a deux, Apres les trompettes venoient les Heraulx d'Arragon, & apres eux les Heraulx Francoys, & apres venoient les deux Roys d'armes d'Arragon & d'Anjou portans les Cottes d'armes vestuz de leurs Seigneurs.*

<sup>r</sup> Lalanus de congressu Fred. iii. & Car. Burg.

Ducis apud Freheir Script. German. t. 2. p. 156. Aufi adire mentas Regum.

<sup>s</sup> See Hollingh. *Hist. of Scotland* p. 227, which was probably taken from Boethius f. CCCxx n. 55.

<sup>t</sup> See Dewe's Journal.

<sup>u</sup> Cod. 12. tit. 18. 1.

<sup>x</sup> Co. 2. Inst. p. 668.

<sup>y</sup> Glovers Vis. of Cheshire p. 95 in Off. Arm. To the same Effect see Mills de Nob. Pol. p. 148. Soelm. Gloss. v. Armiger. Camd. Brit. p. 127 in Latin.

Some



Some Observations with Regard to these Articles, as they relate to the Heralds particularly, will be transiently here inserted, without determining any Thing positively on these Subjects: It should be premised, that for the Support of the Civil Government, and the Order of Society, Persons have been distinguished into several States, Degrees, or Qualities, and that within this Kingdom for some Ages, the Title of an Esquire hath imported a Degree superior to Gentry, (or at least the highest Degree of Gentry,) and includes that State by Way of Involution, so as every Esquire is a Gentleman.

The deriving the Right of an Esquireship by Birth and Extraction is without the Compass of the present Enquiry, but the legal Method of acquiring it, is now to be considered, and this flows from the Favour and Donation of the Sovereign either expressed in Letters Patents, or by the Ceremony of Creation in which some Symbol is delivered, that according to the Laws and Customs of Honour conveys this Title, or otherwise by the Grant of some Office.

That there were some <sup>z</sup> Ensigns delivered by the Crown upon the Creation of an Esquire appears from a Record, and *Upton* who lived under *Hen. VI* is particular, that the King of *England* gave the <sup>a</sup> Collar of S. S. being his Livery, to the Person whom he *ennobled*, which Word is not confined to that strict Usage whereby the Term Nobility hath been frequently used in this Kingdom to signify only the Peerage, but he takes it in its largest Sense, wherein it comprehends the lower Titles of Esquires and Gentlemen, and without doubt he designed to include Heralds, because in another Place (which will be soon quoted) he is very explicate, that upon the Creation of an Herald, the Sovereign shall *ennoble* him, and in this general Acceptation even the chief Justice <sup>b</sup> himself in that Reign used the Term *Nobilis*. At that Time also a Judge delivered his <sup>c</sup> Opinion, that though a Writ indeed might lie against the Sergeant of the King's Kitchen by the Name of Cook, yet he had a Collar and was a Gentleman, (that is, in his Sentiments, such an Addition would answer the Directions of the Statute 1 *Hen. V. c. 5.* which mentions Mysteries as well as States,) whereon another Judge forthwith observed, that it would however be a Grievance, and Diminution to the Officers in the Royal Household to denominate them in this Manner from their Employments only. A late <sup>d</sup> Dutch Author takes Notice of the Effect of these Collars, and there will be no Occasion here to <sup>e</sup> repeat the Donation of them, to those by whose Courage the famous Victory was obtained at *Agincourt*, or that these Collars were given by our Monarchs of the *Lancastrian* Line to their Domesticks, and to others, as their Badge, Livery, or Devise.

<sup>z</sup> Cui insignia Armigeri dari solita contulimus. *Rymer vol. xi. p. 371.*

<sup>a</sup> See above p. 109 note r. where instead of coadonare, read condonare.

<sup>b</sup> Fortescue de laudib. leg. *Anglia c. 49.* Vix doctus in legibus illis reperiatur in regno, qui non sit nobilis & de Nobilium genere egressus.

<sup>c</sup> 14 H. 6. f. 15. *Fitzh. Dett. 71.*

<sup>d</sup> Rouck den Nederlandtschen Herauld p. 223

in Engelandt den Pourfuiwant eerst afgebraght wierde by den Koninck of hy was een Edelman, ende hadde wapenschilden, ingevallē niet, begaelde hem landen en leenen, ende behoerlicke Armoeries voor hem ende syne nakomelingen, ende om den hals eenen bande oft collier van silver opghedruckt met de Letter S. dat hem maeckte Esquier of Schildtknaep &c.

<sup>e</sup> See above from p. 108 a Dissertation on Collars.

F f f f f f

Thus



Thus these Collars delivered to the Kings and Heralds of Arms, did (as it is here alledged) virtually and tacitly advance them to the Degree of Esquires : But it should be remarked that these Collars were not appropriated to these Heralds as Symbols of their Profession, like to their Tabarts, and some other Ensigns ; for other Officers in the Household who were Esquires participated with them in the like Honour of receiving those Collars, which by the Favour of the Crown were likewise granted (as it hath been already shewn) to several other Persons not resident in the Household.

But in Case Heralds had not received these Collars, yet it may be supposed, they became ennobled, even by Virtue of their Offices, to which they were solemnly created : For Creation (as the Chief Justice <sup>f</sup> Coke observed) is a Term applied to the conferring Offices of Dignity, which have Honour annexed to them ; whilst other Officers of great Authority are only said to be constituted ; and it hath been judicially determined, that the Heralds have such<sup>g</sup> Dignity by Virtue of their Offices, which are Part of their very Names ; and hence doubtless it was, that the Epithet of <sup>b</sup> Noble was attributed to them in Addresses and Compellations.

This Esquireship thus acquired by the Heralds, according to the former Authorities was extinguished with the Loss of their Offices ; but by the Way, it must be remembred, that the Removal or Dismission of Heralds from their Professions is contrary to the antient Rules, by which their <sup>i</sup> Characters could only be effaced by actual Degradations upon Commissions of such Crimes, as would of themselves have corrupted, and determined their Gentry : But this Abolition of their Gentry is here restrained, to the Supposition that these Heralds had no Arms, in which Case it is said their Posterity remained ignoble, or returned to Yeomen. It was the Custom as long since as under the Reign of Rich. II, that Heralds should upon their Creations take Arms, (which were often allusive to the Functions of their Faculties,) and such Arms were to be born by them and their Descendants, wherein <sup>k</sup> John de Bado Aureo (or rather *de Vado aureo* as his Surname is sometimes spelled thus, latinized probably for John of Guildford) is very expresse, and Upton under Hen. VI is more <sup>l</sup> large, that the Sovereign upon the Creation of an Herald shall ennoble him, settle a competent Maintenance upon him, and assign to him and his Heirs congruous Arms, and in another <sup>m</sup> Place he reports an Injunction on these Officers to transmit their Arms to their Heirs, that they might not be ignoble ; It was then the Doctrine of these former Ages, that Heralds could not want Coat Arms ; and though it is true that such Arms have been long esteemed the Badge and Indication of Gentility, yet Mr. <sup>n</sup> Selden acquaints

<sup>f</sup> In the End of his Preface to the *x* Rep.

<sup>g</sup> See above p. 379.

<sup>h</sup> Sicily Herald MS. in bibl. Regia E. n. 1403. le noble Office d'armes. That Appellation is frequently given to Toison in the History of Olivier de la Marche. The Kings of Arms of England in 1446 address themselves to the French Officers A nous trefchers et honorez Seigneurs & Freres Normandie & Berry Roys d'armes & aux autres Roys & Heraulx d'armes en Royaume de France &c.

<sup>i</sup> See above p. 285.

<sup>k</sup> P. 20.

<sup>l</sup> De re milit. p. 21. ipsum nobilitabit, & terris aut feodo sufficienti dorabit, & arma congruentia eidem, & suis heredibus assignabit.

<sup>m</sup> Ibid. p. 178, 179. Qui quidem Veterani sive Heraldici tunicis Armorum Dominorum suorum uti debent pro majori parte ; Verumtamen ne ipsorum heredes ignobiles & sine armis inveniantur, dicti veterani aut ipsorum arma quæ in militia portaverunt, aut nova per Dominos suos in sua creatione collata eisdem, suis heredibus portanda dimittere tenebuntur.

<sup>n</sup> Titles of Honour p. 722.



us, that several Witnesses in the Case between *Gray* and *Hastings* deposed they were Gentlemen by Ancestry or Race, notwithstanding they had not any Right to Coat Arms: And it is somewhat strange, he should omit the Testimony of another Person examined in the same Dispute, who gives the Reason of that Defect of Arms, because none of his <sup>o</sup> Ancestors, or he himself had been in any military Expeditions.

Let it be admitted, that the Title of an Esquire obtained by an Office only, may according to the strict Acceptation of that Word be personal, and determine with the Owner, yet it would not be a singular Instance, that the State of a Gentleman which was involved in that Title of an Esquire, and even in the <sup>p</sup> highest Peerages, should however remain intire in the Heir of such an Officer. There are Officers in the Household who in Consequence of their Employments, can claim the Honour of Knighthood, and though that is a personal Order which is extinguished by Death, yet the eldest Sons of them as of all other Knights are allowed to be Esquires, being the immediate State inferior to Knighthod, and let us enquire what Inconveniencies would happen, if the like Pretensions were allowed to the Descendants of Esquires by Office, if they should claim the State of Gentry: For it is a Rule that all Decisions touching the States of Persons should be on the most favourable Side.

It is certain, that when any Person shall be dismissed from an Office, or dies, all the <sup>q</sup> Ensigns appropriated to that Office must of Course descend to the Successor, together with all the <sup>r</sup> Privileges and Immunities annexed to that Office: But the Successor cannot be affected with any Disadvantage, if his Predecessor after his Removal should preserve the Title of Gentleman, or by his Death should transmit that Character to his Posterity, which seems to be rather for his Interest, if he himself had not the Felicity of the native Qualification of a Gentleman.

It will be found very difficult to give a full Definition, or a precise Idea of the States of Persons. A Gentleman, according to Mr. <sup>s</sup> *Selden*, denotes one "That either from the Blood of his Ancestors, or the Favour of his Sovereign, or from his own Vertue, Employment, or otherwise, according to the Laws and Customs of Honour in his Country is ennobled, made Gentile, or so raised to Eminency above the Multitude, perpetually inherent in his Person." The first Branch here is a Deduction from the Blood of Ancestors, and after the Enumeration of the several Kinds and Methods whereby it is acquired, it is added perpetually inherent in his Person: Hence it may be presumed it would not contradict Mr. *Selden's* Notions, if Gentry should be described to be a Quality fixed to the

<sup>o</sup> *John Lee* Escuyer dist q'il est Gentilhomme d'Auncestrie, & xx mars de terre luy son descendent, & n'ad use point de travailler en guerre ni son pier devant luy, et pour ce ne prest garde d'apprendre ses Armes. *The Deposition of another Witness shews, that Coat Arms belonged to military Men; John Edom* Escuyer, qui feust nadgairs botteller en le ostel Monsieur *John de Hastings* Count de *Pembroke*, qui feust pris sur la mer—q'il n'est Gentilhomme d'auncestrie, mes dist q'il ad este armez, & porte un escuchon d'armes; queux luy furent donez, en presence du dit Count, qui

fust pris sur la mer; les queux Armes cest jurre ne sceit point blasonner a present, come il dist, pour ceo q'il ne les vist par cestex xxix ans darrein passez.

<sup>p</sup> *Spelm. Gloss. v. Generosus Minorum Nobilium classis apud Anglos infima; Convenit tamen appellatio vel ipsis Maximis: Sed his in genere ut Nobilitatis vestibulum, illis in specie ut nominis fastigium.*

<sup>q</sup> *Upton de re milit. p. 179.*

<sup>r</sup> *Loiseau des Offices p. 155. n. 55.*

<sup>s</sup> *Titles of Honour p. 705.*



Blood, and communicable hereditably; so that the Blood being (as it were) purified, a permanent Character inseparable from it is conveyed by the Collation of Gentry, which is indelible as long as the Blood shall be transmitted down without Corruption.

By our old Laws the Blood of a <sup>t</sup> Villain was ennobled by the conferring the Order of Knighthood on him, who was thereby actually manumitted: But then it must be owned, that it hath been determined by the same Laws, that Knighthood is a <sup>u</sup> *Dignity* and Parcel of the Name, whereas the Titles of Esquires and Gentlemen are only Names of *Worship*: But no Reasons at present occur, which tend to disable these latter from conveying down this Worship to their Descendants, that would not be equally applicable to any superior Titles, which confessedly transmit a Succession in their Dignities.

One should be apt to guess, that our Laws allow Gentry to be affixed to the Blood, because it hath been adjudged, that an Apprenticeship to a Trade doth not extinguish <sup>x</sup> Gentility, wherein most of the later Civilians agree, for which these assign the Reasons of their Opinions, because Gentry (as they say) cannot be separated from the Person, being appendant thereto, as the <sup>y</sup> Rays are to the Sun, and consequently though this Gentry should during an Apprenticeship, or the Exercise of a Trade suffer some Sort of Eclipse, or as others with more Caution express it, that the Effects and Privileges of Gentry are during such Interval only suspended, yet the Gentry will return to its former Splendour by the Desistance from the Exercise of the Trade, and that even without the Aid of Letters of Rehabilitation.

Probably the Case of Wives may add some Illustration to this Matter. The Husband and Wife are in the Law considered to be one and the same Person, and for this Reason a Woman born out of Wedlock is <sup>z</sup> ennobled by her Marriage with a Gentleman, and she shall retain that Honour during her Widowhood, because by a Presumption or Fiction in Law, the Matrimony is supposed to be still subsisting, but if she should remarry with a Yeoman, the adventitious Gentility would for the same Reason be extinguished; thus on the Reverse, when a Woman descended from a Race of Gentile Ancestors marries a Yeoman, yet she being one with her Husband, must follow his Condition, and if she should survive him, cannot resume her native Gentility during her Widowhood. And upon this Foundation it might be, that the <sup>a</sup> Widows of Heralds have been permitted to retain the Titles of their Husbands, which were personal Dignities in them, and being annexed to these Offices could not descend to their Heirs, but must of Course devolve upon their Successors.

It may then be proper to enquire, whether Gentry be not a <sup>b</sup> true and absolute Order inseparably vested in the Blood, and whenever it is conferred by any particular Symbol, or by Virtue of an Office, whether it doth not entirely purify the Blood, or be a bare Specifick, in the later Case which purges it only during the Continuance of the Office.

<sup>t</sup> Braeton l. 4. p. 198 b.

<sup>u</sup> Br. Nofine de dignite n. 33 &c.

<sup>x</sup> Estoppel n. 47.

<sup>y</sup> See their Opinions collected in Geneal. de Sohier.

<sup>z</sup> Of Wives see Jurispr. Heroica vol. 1. c. 1. Art. 38 &c.

<sup>a</sup> See above

<sup>b</sup> Loiseau des Offices p. 151.



The <sup>c</sup> Civilians are of this Judgement "That of all Rights and Privileges  
 " of Officers, none of them pass to their Children, except the Nobility  
 " which Offices may give; for Nobility is principally granted for the  
 " Descendants, and even the Children born before the Nobility was ac-  
 " quired, or even before the Admission to the Office are made Noble,  
 " as well as those born afterwards."

Let us now enquire into the Reasons why Pursivants had not this Privilege of the Collar, or the Title of Esquires attributed to them, though they were Servants in the Royal Household. *Upton* upon the Question, what are those Offices which have Nobility annexed to them? Gives this true <sup>d</sup> Resolution, that they are such Offices as are reputed to convey that Right in the Community, where that Enquiry shall be made; and as to the Case before us, he writes that <sup>e</sup> Pursivants are not noble; and again that though they might be Knights, and wear Velvet and Cloth of Gold, yet they were not <sup>f</sup> noble. It is true however, that in another Place he positively saith, that neither Heralds nor their <sup>g</sup> Pursivants were Noble; but he takes Care to assign the Reason why they were not Noble in that particular Sense wherein he there uses that Word, because by their Offices they were obliged to execute all Requests made to them, though it was even by an Enemy; but if publick Duties derogated from Gentility, most of the greatest Officers as well of State, as in the Administration of Justice must fall under the same Circumstances. But though the Pursivants were admitted into the Royal Household, yet they were entertained there at the <sup>h</sup> Table of the *Vallets*, and upon this Account it might be, that *Holme* while he was a Pursivant and the King's Servant, had the Title of *Yeoman* given him by Way of Addition in a <sup>i</sup> Record, which was no Mark of Disparagement in the Signification it was then used to the Servants within the Royal Household. And thus <sup>k</sup> *Froissart* saith the Earl of *Montfort* sent Notice of the Victory at *Auroy par un varlet Pursuivant d'armes*; but probably he might not intend any more than that he was Servant to that Earl. Besides Pursivants were only Candidates, Probationers, and Novices, and might renounce that School, and therefore might not be admitted to such Distinctions which were reserved to grace those who were (if it may be so termed) Professed, and thereby compleat Officers. It is true, there was in the Reigns of *Hen. VI* and of *Hen. VII* a Pursivant denominated *Collar*; but it is not reasonable to be presumed, that he had that Appellation given him, because he wore any Collar like to the Heralds, which must have differenced him from all the other Pursivants; but that this Title was imposed upon him with Respect only to the Name of the Badge or Devise of the Crown, in a Method not unlike to the Stiles of several

<sup>c</sup> Ibid. but these are the Words of Domat les loix Publiques p. 578. in English Edition.

<sup>d</sup> De re mil. p. 59, 60.

<sup>e</sup> Ibid. p. 10.

<sup>f</sup> Ibid. p. 20.

<sup>g</sup> Ibid. p. 22. Et sciendum est, quod isti tamen Haraldi quamvis insigniis militaribus utantur, non tamen sunt nobiles, neque sui Prosecutores, quia eorum Officium est Officium publicum, quod tenentur impendere unicuique hoc petenti, etiam hosti; quale etiam est Officium Notariorum Pub-

licorum & Sutorum qui tenentur in festis laborare, & sotulares facere, si publica necessitas hoc exposcat.

<sup>h</sup> See above p. 329 in the Notes Art. 8.

<sup>i</sup> Pat. 37 H. 6. p. 2. m. 6. cum dilectus serviens noster *Thomas Rougcroyse*, alias dictus *Thomas Holme de Walden* in Comitatu *Essex* Yoman, alias dictus *Thomas Rougcroyse* Purseivant ad Arma. A Protection granted to him.

<sup>k</sup> Froiss. vol. 1. c. 228.



other Pursivants, such as *Antilope*, *Blanch Lion*, *Eagle*, *Faucon*, *Griffon*, and of three of the Pursivants still subsisting; though indeed the Collector believes, that formerly these Pursivants on their Escutcheons (fixed to their left Shoulders) might bear the Impressions of the Badges, from whence their Denominations were taken, because *Upton* in the Verses formerly quoted, calls the Escutcheon upon the Herald's Breast <sup>l</sup> *Fons titulorum*, the Original or Reason of his Title or Name: Now the wearing of an Escutcheon thus ensigned with a Collar, might as well give that Title to this particular Servant of the Crown, as that *Manlius* should procure to his Family the Surname of *Torquatus* for plucking a Collar from a Champion.

We find the Heralds petitioning for their Livery Clothing like to other <sup>m</sup> Gentlemen, and like the <sup>n</sup> Esquires in the King's Court, which was therefore called <sup>o</sup> *de Secta aliorum Scutiferorum ipsius Domini Regis*; the Offices of the Kings of Arms and Heralds being Dignities, there was no Occasion of any other Additions to ascertain and distinguish their Persons, though sometimes we meet with these Titles of Esquires and Gentlemen attributed to them <sup>p</sup> indiscriminately; for in legal Proceedings it was no <sup>q</sup> Misnomer to stile an Esquire only Gentleman, or to name a Gentleman by the Title of an Esquire, though according to the strict Rules, there was, (as it hath been intimated) a Distinction between them.

But it is high Time to return to the Form of these Collars thus delivered to these Officers. Mr. *Ashmole* <sup>r</sup> describes them in the following Words, "that they are composed of S. S. linked together, and in the  
" Middle of the Breast is a Rose, and another in the Middle of the Back,  
" at each of which hang three Dropps of Silver, the S. S. worn by the  
" Kings of Arms are made bigger than the other, [for the Heralds] and  
" in that part lying on either Shoulder is a Portcullis taken in between  
" the S. S. which are wanting in the Rest [for the Heralds.]

He goes on to acquaint his Readers that Knights have Collars of Silver gilt, Esquires Silver only, and then adds "therefore he that is created  
" an Herald, is also in Part of that Ceremony made an Esquire by putting on a Collar of S. S. of Silver about his Neck." There is no Doubt of his Exactness in the Description, Materials, and Forms of the Collars then worn, so that it seems the old Rules had been discontinued, since the antient Treatise stiled *Jura &c.* which hath been supposed to be wrote before the 18th *Hen. VI.* assigns to the <sup>s</sup> Heralds a white

<sup>l</sup> See above p. 449. note e.

<sup>m</sup> See above p. 440 note e.

<sup>n</sup> See above p. 441 notes f. g.

<sup>o</sup> See above p. 440 notes z. y.

<sup>p</sup> See above p. 467 where Boys is stiled an Esquire and also a Gentleman, and he levied a Fine wherein he is stiled Will. Boys Armiger alias dictus Exetere Heraud Bucks 6 H. 5. n. 30. Garter King of Arms in 30 H. 6. is stiled the King's Servant and Squire. See above p. 349 note e.

William Tendale Chestre Herauld is stiled the King's welbelovéd Squier and Servant in a privy Seal dated 21 Dec. 23 Hen. 6. There is a Licence granted to John Ham a Herald to travail for his Instruction, wherein he is entituled dilectus serviens & Scutifer noster.

<sup>q</sup> Brooke Addit. 44.

<sup>r</sup> Hist. of the Garter p. 225, 226.

<sup>s</sup> In cap. Quando creantur Officiales Armorum. Item quando unus Prosecutor fit, debet habere unam Tunicam Armorum, cum qua procreatur Prosecutor, & debet habere unam copam argenteam totam albam; Item unus Heraldus quando fit, debet habere unam copam argenteam aureatam sine coopertura, & debet habere unum Torcatum argenteum album; Item quando unus Rex Armorum fit, debet esse coronatus, & Rex sibi debet dare unam coronam argenteam aureatam, & unam copam argenteam aureatam cum coopertura, & unum Torcatum mixtum scilicet & medietatem auream & medietatem argenteam; & Principalis Rex Armorum debet habere tres partes aureas, & unam argenteam. MS. in Mus. Ashm. n. 937.



Collar ; to the Kings of Arms one Moiety of the Collar gold and the other Silver ; to the Principal King three Parts Gold, and the fourth Part Silver ; there have been some Variations in these Collars since that Time ; *Mills*, who published his *Uncle Glover's Tract of Nobility*, speaking of the Collars of Herald's and Sergeants at Arms saith expressly ' *Collare ex S. S. argenteis nigrisque conflato*, which *Glover* died *Somerset Herald* in 1588, and *Joseph Holland* in 1601 " writes that the Herald's Collar of S. S. was Argent and Sable alternately, but the Gold which according to the *Jura* was formerly in the Collars of the Kings of Arms hath been reduced to Silver, one S. being plain, the other guilt, and that of *Garter* to Silver all guilt. The *Portcullis* in the Collars of the Kings of Arms was doubtless an Addition by *Hen. VII*, who took that Badge by Reason of his Mother's Descent from the *Beauforts*, and in Honour to it he instituted a Purfivant by that Title. Instead of the Roses, which were in the middle of the Breast and Back in Mr. *Asmole's* Time, the Badges of the succeeding Sovereigns have been placed.

But whether Gentility was conferred upon our Kings and Herald's by the Fact of investing them with this Collar, or else barely by Virtue of their Offices, it appears by a *~ Certificate of Toison d'Or*, that foreign Kings of Arms though of no Extraction are ennobled from the Day of their Creations, when they took their Oaths in Consequence of their Letters Patents, and in that it is their Duty to correct the Transgressions and Excesses committed in the bearing of Arms, a Power which ought not to be vested in *Plebeians* ; and he farther attests that in *Spain* these Kings bear their Arms with *Timbres*, and at the Funerals of Princes and other publick Ceremonies they wear Swords in Sign of their Nobility, and in Virtue of their Offices : *Timbre* signifies the Cimier, Helmet, and Crest, with the Hatchments or Lambrequins, for what a Record termed *Timbria*, is by *a Knighton* englished a Crest ; and to whom the Privilege of wearing Swords appertained in the Territories lately belonging to *Spain*, the Reader may find by consulting the Quotations in the *b* Margin. But this Certificate doth not intimate any Difference in the Swords of these Kings of Arms from the Swords of other Persons who had a Right to wear them, whereas antiently in our Kingdom, (as it hath been already *c* noted,) these Officers were prohibited to wear Swords with Points, and were to be *unharnessed* in War.

*t* De Nob. Polit. p. 148.

*u* Hearn's *Antiq.* p. 97.

*x* Sandf. *Geneal. Hist.* p. 464.

*y* Spelm. *Gloss.* v. Heraldus.

*z* Noblesse de *Brabant* en 4to 1705. Je *Joseph Antoine Hervart* Conseiller du Roy son Premier Roy d'armes dit Thoison d'or certifie a tous qu'il appartiendra, que les Roys d'armes de sa Majeste chez sa personne royale sont tenez & reputes pour annoblis, ores que point Nobles d'Extraction, des le jour, que sa Majeste les a cree, & establi Roys d'armes, & qu'ensuite des lettres patentes de leurs Comissions, ils ont preste le serment ; entendu que l'office d'armes est d'anciennete si noble, qu'il annoblit ceux, qui en sont pourveu, & doivent corriger & reprimer les fauts & exces

qui se commettent ceux aux ports d'armes, memes en calanger la noblesse, ce que ne se put faire par gens roturiers ; attestant en oultre, qu'en conformite de ce, lesdits Roys d'armes en *Espagne* portent Armoiries timbrees, & en l'erection des maisons, chappelles, tombeaux, Verriers, & autres semblables peuvent mettre & apposer leurs Armes avec le meme timbre, Et qu'en outre les Roys d'armes d'*Espagne* portent aux funerailles des Empereurs, Roys, Princes, & autres aces publiques leurs Espees en signe de noblesse, & en vertu de leur Office 10 *Avril* 1639.

*a* See above p. 276, 277.

*b* *Observ. Eugenial* p. 149. *Jurist. Heroica* vol. I. p. 98.

*c* See above p. 294 & 293.



It hath been also <sup>d</sup> observed that some Authors have remarked, that Heralds in Time of War should wear Boots, and Buskins in Time of Peace, which brings us to the Consideration of their Spurs. Herein a *Dutch* Author following <sup>e</sup> *Gerard Leigh* lays down a Rule, that the Pursivant when he rides must wear <sup>f</sup> black Spurs, and informs us, that the Heralds in *England* wear Silver Spurs. When black Spurs were brought to *Rich. II* after his Abdication, he <sup>g</sup> refused to put them on, alledging that he had never forfeited his Knighthood, so that at Length guilt Spurs were delivered to him, and Mr. *Camden* <sup>b</sup> acquaints us, that white Spurs became the Denomination of Esquires.

Thus the Editor hath collected several Fragments with Design to explain the true Signification of all the Terms in the Title of *Garter*, and endeavoured to settle the Date of his Institution, to deduce the Line of his Succession, and to describe the several Habits and Ensigns belonging to him, and he should have readily proceeded to publish a Commentary upon his Rights declared by the Constitutions in 14 *Hen. VIII*, and such other Privileges, as have been enjoyed by him from the Time of his Erection, and upon each Article would have likewise shewed the corresponding Practice in foreign Realms; if he could have induced himself to believe, that such a Discourse might have proved acceptable to the Reader.

It is indeed esteemed a ridiculous Vanity, when Families reduced to slender Circumstances in their Fortunes, make Ostentation of the Antiquity of their Race, with the Atchievements and Rights of their Ancestors; and possibly at first Sight it might have been thought no less absurd, that Officers of Arms in their declining State, should pretend to trouble the Publick with tedious historical Details concerning the Rights of their Predecessors, intermixed with Narratives of the Veneration heretofore paid to their Persons and Characters; But such an Imputation of Vanity cannot justly be laid on any of them, who only assert the Rights, and vindicate the Properties legally vested in them. It is not to be denied, that the Society of Heralds for a long Time hath been sinking in its former Esteem, and like to some other Fraternities and Bodies Politick, hath been impaired in its Reputation by growing old, which is not singular in this Age, when even Religion it self appears so to do in the Opinion of weak and wicked Men. The Publisher could have easily assigned several Incidents, which have and still do concur towards the Decay of this Profession, (if he had any Inclination to search into Distempers, which he is unable to remedy :) He saith Incidents, because in his humble Opinion no tolerable Reasons can be assigned, why the Heralds, if they are endowed with the Qualifications requisite for their Functions, should suffer any Di-

<sup>d</sup> See above p. 295.

<sup>e</sup> *Accedence of Armoiry* p. 76.

<sup>f</sup> *Rouck der Nederlanschen Herault* p. 222, 223.

<sup>g</sup> *Du Fresn. Observ. sur les Etablissements de S. Louys* p. 86. Et quant le Roy *Richard* vit le noyrs Esperons, & tout habit noir, adonc demanda, pourquoy me apportez ces noirs Esperons? Le varlet respondit, Trescher Seigneur c'est pour vous: Le Roy respondit, Va dire a *Henri de Lancastre* de par moy, que je suis loyal Chevalier, & que onques ne forfis Chevalerie, & qu'il m'envoie es-

perons de Chevalier, ou autrement je ne chauce-ray point; adonc le varlet luy apporta les Esperons d'orez.

<sup>b</sup> *Armigeri quarto ordine sunt, quibus Rex ipse cum titulo insignia donat, aut Armigeros creat, collum torque S. S. vel sigmatico argenteo, & candidis & argentatis calcaribus exornans, unde hodie in occidentalibus regni partibus vocantur white Spurs ad discrimen Militum sive Equitum auratorum, qui auratis calcaribus uti solent. Camd. Britan. p. 128.*



minution in their Characters; for notwithstanding several Branches formerly within the Sphere of their Professions, have in Tract of Time grown obsolete, by the Change of Customs, the Manner of Education, the Variety of Tempers, and Dispositions of Men in different Ages, and by the distinct Methods with Regard to the Intercourses between Nations; yet there are several Articles confessedly still within the Compass of their Faculties, and under their Cognisance at this Time, (though their Power hath been sensibly lessened in the Execution of them) wherein they are now as useful to the Common-Wealth in all such Respects, as they could be in former Ages.

It may not be foreign however to give Instances of some Particulars which are totally discontinued: Solemn Defiances and Denunciations of War made to Princes in Person are wholly antiquated, (though the empty Shadow is practised by Proclamations of War at Home,) which the renowned Founder of our Order, while he was <sup>a</sup> Vicar of the Empire, thought so consistent with the Rules of natural Reason, Justice, and the Niceties of Honour, that according to his Magnanimity he reinforced the Observation of such Indictions before any <sup>b</sup> Acts of Hostility were committed. This his Decree doth not indeed specify that these Defiances should be made by Heralds, though some of that Order were <sup>c</sup> present at the making of it, and in Truth the <sup>d</sup> Bishop of *Lincoln* was then sent to the King of *France* with Defiances drawn up in Writing, but the very next Year, *Gueldres* Herald was dispatched to that King to demand the Time and Place of Battle; however it soon became an universal Practice to employ Heralds solely to execute all such Defiances: No Officers of Arms now attend in military Expeditions, wherein they formerly transacted all Matters of Intercourse between the Armies, which it would be too large to rehearse; neither are they now sent in Embassies or Messages, or even permitted to wait upon Embassadors in Times of Peace; Tilts, Tournaments, and other martial Exercises of that Nature have been discontinued; and the Respect for their Characters may now be at so low an Ebb, that possibly, if Heralds in this Age should presume to reprehend Persons in exalted Stations for <sup>e</sup> vicious

or

<sup>a</sup> Froiss. vol. 1. c. 35. — furent leues les lettres de l'Empereur, par lesquelles le Roy d'Angleterre estoit constitue & estably son Vicaire & son lieutenant pour luy; — Et commandoit par ces lettres, que tous ceux de son Empire & tous autres a luy subjects obeissent a son dit Vicaire, comme a luy mesme — Et fut la endroit renouvelle un jugement et Statut & afferme, qui avoit este fait a la Cour de l'Empereur le temps passe, qui estoit rel, que qui vouloit autrui grever ou porter dommage, il le devoit defier suffisamment trois jours devant son fait, & qui autrement le faisoit, il devoit estre r'attaint de mauvais et vilain fait. The old Statute here referred to, might either be the Constitution of Frederick the first mentioned by Urspbergen A. D. 1187, or the later one of Frederick the second mentioned by Albertus A. D. 1237. We find our Records give Ed. 3. the Title of Vicar-General, see Rymer vol. 5. p. 120, and the Wardrobe Account in the Custody of the Chamberlains of the Exchequer 12 E. 3 contains this Entry, Johanni Lower deferenti literas Regis Anglia & Vicarii sacri Imperii Generalis sub magno sigillo Johanni Duci Brabantie &c. The Word General might lead Froissart into

the Mistake touching the Extent of this Vicariate, which he thought contained the whole Empire, which Dr. Brady copied Hist. of Ed. 3. p. 201. Villani only excepted Italy out of it l. 11. c. 83. The Pope described the Limits of it per totam Alemanniam & Germaniam ac universas earum Provincias five partes. Rymer vol. v. p. 89, 129. Walsingham confines it circa Coloniam Ypod. Neustrie A. D. 1338, & 1342. Knighton expresses it de Colonia & citra. Col. 2572. The Writer of the Lives of the Popes at Avignon in partibus Gallie & nonnullis aliis terris p. 201, which the learned Baluzius in his Notes thereon interprets of that Part of France then within the Empire, such as Cambray. The History of the Revocation of this Title, and Methods taken for it are foreign to the present Purpose; and of no Consequence to the Reputation of our magnificent Prince, who afterwards refused the Empire himself, to which he had been solemnly elected.

<sup>b</sup> Knighton col. 2572.

<sup>c</sup> Froiss. vol. 1. c. 36.

<sup>d</sup> Ibid. c. 41.

<sup>e</sup> Becani Franc. l. 4. p. 93. De vetustis Francorum monumentis scimus in tanto quondam Heraldos honore fuisse, ut Regum mensis accumberent, con-



or dishonourable Actions, the former Rules which enjoined them that Duty, and rendered their Persons inviolable in it, might not protect them in the Execution of that antient Branch, since that Liberty is not now easily born from Christian Priests. Thus when the Lord *Drummond* of *Scotland* struck the *Lyon* King of Arms during the Sitting of Parliament in 1515, his Patrimony and Goods were adjudged to be confiscated, and it was with great Difficulty that his Life and Honour was out of Favour indulged to him, since the Occasion of this his Impetuosity and Violence was, because this Officer had admonished him to relinquish his Follies. We ought without Doubt to continue a pious Contention with Antiquity in Matters, which concern Vertue and Arts, and should not out of a Spirit of mere Novelty sink or slight any of their Institutions, founded on clear Reasons, for the Service of the Publick, which will always have their Weight with Men of impartial and unprejudiced Minds. But let us descend to Subjects, which are still allowed to be within the Verge and Jurisdiction of this Society, and enquire, whether the Knowledge of them is not as beneficial to the State in the present, as it was in former Ages? Are we now so knowing in the critical Proprieties of Ceremonies relating to splendid Solemnities, that the Oeconomy of them may be left arbitrary? Should every Person walk in Processions according to his own Scheme and Model, and is there no Occasion for the Discretion of those, who by their Experience will direct an uniform Rule, consonant to the Precedents of former Times, answerable to the Customs of foreign Countries, and adapted to the Occasions, wherein for the Sake of Decency and Order some particular Rites by an universal Consent have been appropriated? That Rites are not promiscuously to be used is evident, for no one would dare to crown a Conqueror with Cypress, or to offer Palms to a broken Army; and it will not be denied, that to prevent Disorders, Persons should be ranged in due Precedencies according to their Degrees and Offices; that the Marks of State and Dig-

controversiarum inter summos Principes ortarum arbitri essent, soli deniq; honorum & dedecorum pro rebus vel bene vel male gestis justı haberentur diribitores.

Epistola *Aeneas Sylvii* fontes arguere, laudare probos—Quicquid turpitudinis admiserint homines, te judicem propalatoresq; timeant, seu privati seu principes fuerint, which are according to the romantick Humour of that Age ascribed to be the Institutions of *Bacchus* and of *Octavius Augustus*.

The *Pat. 6 E. 6. p. 4. m. 2.* to *Barthol. Butler* to be *Usher* in the Preamble recites the Duties of *Heralds*, one of them in these Words fortia virorum facta extollere, vitia reprehendere. *Rym. vol. 15. p. 305.*

Heretofore if the Nobility did not amend upon the Reproofs given them by these Officers, they were armed with Power to inflict Censures upon them, for they could not only hinder them from Entry into Tils and Turnaments. *Anselme Palais d'honneur p. 8.* *Favin Theatre d'honneur l. 1. c. 4.* but might put a lasting Mark of Reproach upon them: Thus *Lalanus* de congressu *Fred. iii & Car. Burg.* apud *Freher. script. Germ. t. 2. p. 156.* Ausi adire mensas Regum & resupinatum (summæ id ignominia loco habebatur) panem apponere, & linteum quo mensa infestitur medium perfindere, & alia dedecoris notandi causa facere. See *Hoping. de jure Insign. p. 446, 447.* and *Lobineau* in the *Hist. of Bretagne p. 471* quoting *Chartier* *Quadrilogue* invectif ob-

serves concerning *Bert. Du Guesclin*, qu'il n'eut point a craindre, que l'on pratiquast a son egard ce qu'il avoit mis en usage, pour faire honte a ceux, qui avoient marque de la lascheté dans quelque occasion; qui estoit que l'on coupoit la nape devant eux quand ils estoient a table.

f *Lelleius* de gestis *Scotorum p. 360 A. D. 1515.* Hoc ipso Comitiorum tempore Ducis [*Albania*] in justitia administranda mens imprimis eluxit; nam quod Dominus *Drumundus* Leonem *Fecialium* Principem pugno violasset, Dux omnia ejus bona ac patrimonium, vita ac Dignitate ægre concessis, fisco addixit; Verum paucis post diebus ipsa bona & patrimonium *Drumundo* supplici integra restituit. This was in the Minority of *James V.* while the Duke of *Albany* was Governor. The Editor cannot determine, whether this was a Punishment inflicted by a particular Law made in Parliament for that Purpose. *Aeneas Sylvius* inserts a Decree said to be made by *Alexander*, Si quis hos [*Heraldos*] manu pulsasset, aut verbo læsisset, eum capitis reum esse, bonaq; sua fisco deberi.

g The Office of *Heraltrie* by *Sir James Balfour MS.* in *bibl. Advoc. Edingb. c. b.* Eo quod Leonem *Armorum* Regem pugno violasset, dum eum de ineptiis suis admoneret, for which forsaunture on his humble Submission and Satisfaction, at the earnest Intreaty of the Nobility, and Supplication of the Lion to the Governour, he was restored.

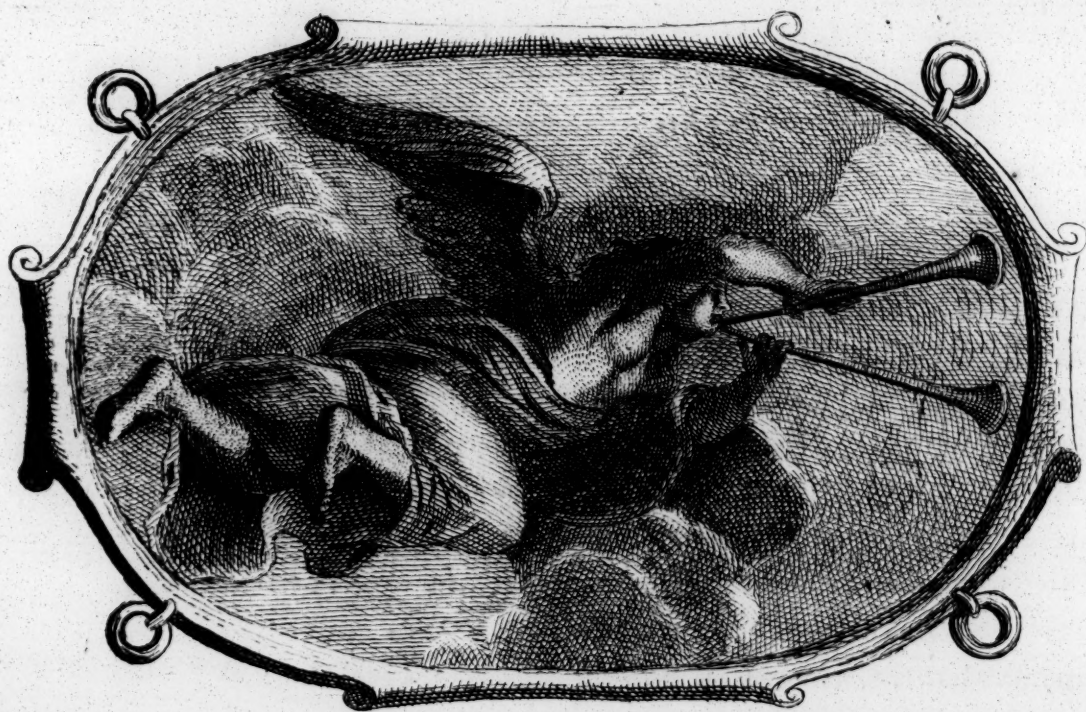
nity



nity should not be confounded in civil Life; that to keep up the Subordination necessary in Government the ceremonious Respects due to different Orders, should be known and practised; that Plebeians and Mechanics should not be permitted with Impunity to arrogate an Equality with antient Families in all their Privileges, or to assume their Arms; that such hereditary Marks of Honour are proper Rewards of Vertue, and a Tribute due to meritorious Actions; that the Knowledge of the Antiquity, Nobility, and Genealogies of illustrious Families, and the Preservation of their Pedigrees in the direct and collateral Lines, will always be serviceable towards asserting the Truth of History, and Chronology; and that with Respect not only to the past, but to the present, and future Ages, and is likewise absolutely necessary to determine the legal Rights and Pretensions, both of Princes, and of private Persons; that decent Funerals in all Cases, (and in some Cases pompous Funerals) are Homages due to the Memory of the Dead, and proper to incite the Attendants to a lively Sense and Emulation of their heroick Vertues: Certainly it will not be alledged, that all Persons are indiscriminately entituled to have the same Honours paid to them in their Funerals, for even the Directory it self allowed Escutcheons and other Distinctions suitable to the Condition of the deceas'd; and when *Tubero* celebrated the Funeral of his Uncle *Scipio Africanus* with earthen Pots and Goats Skins, the *Romans* deposed him from the Prætorship; for these brave and wise People, however famous for their Temperance and Frugality, yet delighted in publick and national Magnificence, though they detested private Luxury. It would be tedious to go through the Circle of the Duties still incumbent on the Heralds; but if there had been no other than these Articles within the Purview of their Faculties, yet the Prudence and Circumspection of Antiquity had been visible in appointing select and separate Persons, endowed with Probity of Manners and liberal Educations, to be Guardians of these several Rites, who besides the Measure of Reason common to them with other Persons, must by their addicting themselves peculiarly to these Studies be capacitated to be more competent Judges; and if in these or any other Instances, these Officers can be made as serviceable to the Publick at this Time, as in former Centuries, it follows, that they seem in Justice to be entituled to the like Returns of Advantage with their Predecessors; for it is not reasonable to believe any Persons should undergo the Fatigue of acquiring Qualifications, which are not attended with any Motive of Wealth, Interest, Credit or Respect. But in Case the whole Society be useless to the Publick, or the Officers in it are too many, it could be no discommendable Management, as Vacancies shall happen in the present Freeholds, to sink the whole Fraternity, or to reduce the Number. This Discourse which hath been too prolix, shall be concluded with a Passage from the *Roman* History (as it is recited by *Le Feron* in his Treatise concerning the Institution of Kings and Heralds of Arms) touching the Question, whether the Intention of the Senate to undertake a War being notified to the Garrisons of the Enemy in the Frontiers was a sufficient Declaration of War, without a formal Indiction of it by the *Fecials*, in which Debate that celebrated Consul and General *Paulus Emilius* expressed a true *Roman* Spirit in the following Words, which are of that Strength, that it is difficult to  
render



render them properly in *English*, or perhaps in any other Language. *Vultis ergo hic omnia pollui, & confundi, tolli fecialia jura, nullos esse feciales? Fiat, pace Deum dixerim, jactura religionis, oblivio Deorum capiat corda vestra.* Would you then by the Authority of the Senate have all Things without Distinction violated and prophaned, and shall the Function and very Name of the Fecials be wholly abrogated? If this be your Intention, and I may speak it without Impiety, let there be an End of Religion it self, and from this Time let all the Characters of it be discharged out of your Minds.



INDEX



# I N D E X

O F

## SURNAMES and TITLES.

## A

**A** Boute 108.  
 Abridgecourt *Sir Sanchet* 105.  
 Abridgecourt *Sir John* 14, 17.  
 Abyndon *Abbas* of 50.  
 Adgore 230.  
 Adolphus 244.  
 Albany *Duke* of 244.  
 Alexander *King* of Scotland 106.  
 Alexander *Son* of the *King* of Scotland 106.  
 Albert *Emperor* 17.  
 Albert of *Bavaria* 6, 28.  
 Alfonso *Duke* of *Calabria* 64.  
 Alfonso *Duke* of *Arragon* 41, 68, 190, 193.  
 Alphonfus d'*Aragonia* 287.  
 Alfonso *King* of *Arragon* 21, 49, 68, 69.  
 Alphonfus & his *Herald* 452.  
 Alfonso *King* of *Portugal* 52, 53, 181.  
 Albert *Duke* of *Austria* 21, 465.  
 Albert 26, 485.  
 Albert *Duke* of *Holland* 27.  
 Albert *King* of the *Romans* 48.  
 Albemarle *Duke* of 13, 41.  
 Albemarle *Earl* of 274, 323.  
 Albany *Duke* of 486.  
 Alenzon *Duke* of 69, 82, 140, 142.  
 Alenzon *Duke* of his *Herald* 452.  
 Alla *King* of *Northumberland* 307.  
 Albro *Vasques* *Dalmadea* (*vid.* *Averence*) 38.  
 Alfry 351.  
 Aldrydge 23, 24, 27.  
 Alynton *Sir William* 213.  
 Amaneve 9.  
 Anjou *Duke* of 98, 198, 245.  
 Anjou *Duke* his *King* of *Arms* 445.  
 Anjou *Count* 270.  
 Andover *Viscount* 273.  
 Anstis *John* 424.  
 Anderson 285.  
 Antelope 482.  
 Aquitain *Duke* and *Dutchess* of 12.  
 Aquitain *King* of *Arms* 440.  
 Arragon *King* of 75, 180, 181, 189, 240, 311, 338, 395.

Arragon *King* of, his *King* at *Arms* 445, 451.

Arragon *King* of his *Herald* 463.

Arundell *Earl* of 11, 12, 13, 14, 16, 35, 117, 137, 186, 224, 271, 401, 407, 408.

Arundell *Countess* of 14, 15.

Arundell *Sir William* 36, 126, 169.

Arundell *Sir John* 126, 154.

Arundell *Richard* 380.

Arthur *King* 92.

Arthur *Prince* 40, 36, 106.

Arthur *de Bretagne* 171.

Artois *King* of *Arms* 311.

Arteville 100.

Areyn *Earl* of 383.

Arnald *de Pressaco* 163.

Arnold 367.

Arragonois 75, 76.

Arnald *Garcia* del *Gout* 163.

Archembauld 10.

Astely *Sir John* 51, 205, 353.

Ashefeild 230.

Ashely 380.

Afinelli *Philip* 106.

Aspale 177.

Afinelli *Albert* 106.

Affalide 9.

Ashmole 316, 322, 334, 345, 411, 414, 425, 452, 453, 463, 482, 483.

Austria *Duke* of 189, 214, 364, 372.

Austria *Duke* of his *Herald* 451, 466.

Audley *Lord* 200, 227.

Averence *Earl* of 38, 75, 183.

Aubrey 125, 404.

Auricher *Sir James* de 137.

Aymery *de* *Durfort* 163.

## B

**B** Acon 430.

Bavaria *Christopher* *King* of *Den-*  
*mark* 20.

Bavaria *Duke* of 13, 15, 16, 36, 245.

Bavaria *William* *Earl* of *Leicester* 33.

Bavaria *Robert* 20.

Bainton 381.

Bath 111, 185.

Bath *Knight* of 447.

Barker *Sir Christopher* 327, 376, 384.

Iiiiiii

Barker



- Barker George 359.  
 Barker 232, 378, 379, 380.  
 Bassett *Lord* 11, 12.  
 Bassett 143, 262.  
 Barn *Bishop* 208.  
 Barnes *Lord* 50, 51, 231.  
 Barnes Joshua 317.  
 Barnes William 264.  
 Baluzius 485.  
 Barri 253.  
 Bartram 358, 359.  
 Barchelour *an Herald* 283.  
 Baillet 307.  
 Baliol *King of Scotland* 271.  
 Bayard Peter 35.  
 Balante 338.  
 Balfour *Sir James* 146, 411, 457.  
 Balfour *Sir John* 486.  
 Barkley 209.  
 Badlesmore 155.  
 Barclay 450.  
 Bawbrynney 359.  
 Beal *du Louis* 341.  
 Beaufort *Marquess of Dorset* 36.  
 Beaufort *Earl of Dorset* 467.  
 Beauford *Duke of Exeter* 137.  
 Beaufort *Bishop of Winchester* 332.  
 Beaumont *Lord* 75, 174.  
 Beauchamp *Lord* 11, 12, 13, 30, 143, 170, 215.  
 Beauchamp *Lady* 13, 14, 15.  
 Beauchamp *Earl of Warwick* 36, 124.  
 Beauchamp *Sir John* 38.  
 Beauchamp 262, 404.  
 Beauprant 239.  
 Bedford *Duke of* 14, 16, 34, 76, 121, 131, 132, 134, 135, 137, 139, 170, 171, 189, 204, 217, 331, 332, 333, 379, 468.  
 Bedford *Dutchess of* 15, 233.  
 Bedford *Lord* 22, 39.  
 Bedford & Soissons *Earl of* 72, 73.  
 Bedfeeld 380.  
 Bel *Arch Duke of Austria* 86.  
 Belfour *Sir James King of Arms of Scotland* 457, 146.  
 Bellinger Walter 223, 324.  
 Benoilt *Clarencieux* 372, 472.  
 Benoilt 310, 314, 323, 363, 381.  
 Bentivogli 106.  
 Benwell 319.  
 Beoche *Lord Captain* 6.  
 Berkeley *Earl of* 277.  
 Berkeley 111.  
 Bernes *Lord* 127.  
 Berry 328.  
 Bertram 196.  
 Bieberghes 381.  
 Bigot *Earl of Norfolk* 270.  
 Bigot 168.  
 Bishop William 354, 355.  
 Bishe (*vide Byshe*) 302.  
 Bite 144.  
 Black *the Prince* 47, 97, 106, 154, 160, 162, 168, 173, 223.  
 Blanch Lyon 482.  
 Black Rod 465.  
 Blanch *Lady of Lancaster* 36, 126.  
 Blakeburn 154.  
 Blefenfis 309.  
 Blount 303.  
 Blunt *Sir Walter* 430.  
 Blunt *Lord Montjoye* 50.  
 Bluemantle 446, 473.  
 Bodin 434.  
 Boethius 325.  
 Bohemia *King of* 173.  
 Bohemia *his King of Arms* 465.  
 Bohemia *his Herald* 466.  
 Bohun *Earl of Northampton* 42.  
 Bohun 222.  
 Bois 302, 467.  
 Bolein 252, 257.  
 Boleyn *Queen Anne* 444, 457, 460.  
 Bonibell 287.  
 Bonstede 250.  
 Bonkyll 359.  
 Borough *Sir John* 323, 399, 400, 401, 403.  
 Bordeaux 9.  
 Borell 304.  
 Boteler *Lord Sudeley* 204.  
 Boteler *John le* 303.  
 Bottetourt 209.  
 Bothwell *Earl* 447.  
 Bourgoigne 79.  
 Bourne 354, 355, 399.  
 Boucer *Viscount* 30.  
 Bourgchier 14, 53, 111.  
 Bovile 222, 226.  
 Boxfull *Sir Allen* 32, 126.  
 Boys 378, 379, 380, 405.  
 Boys *Exeter Herald* 482.  
 Boys Robert *King of Heralds in France* 455.  
 Brandenburg *Elektor of* 411.  
 Brandon 108, 399.  
 Brandon *Sir Charles* 121, 215, 376.  
 Brandon *Sir Thomas* 238.  
 Brabant *Duke of* 45, 65, 485.  
 Brabant *Herald* 469.  
 Brady *Dr.* 485.  
 Bradeston *Lady Blanch* 14.  
 Bracciano *Duke of* 80.  
 Bret *Lord* 199.  
 Bretagne *Duke of (vid. Britain)* 239, 277, 301, 318, 331, 334, 337, 338, 341.  
 Brewer 159.  
 Bretayne *Arthur of* 462.  
 Bretailles 202.  
 Bretagne 6.  
 Breton *Sir William* 132.  
 Brews 220, 221, 222, 228, 232, 233.  
 Britain *Duke of* 13, 64, 68, 69, 77, 114, 116, 118, 140, 200, 208, 443, 451.  
 Brian *Sir Francis* 259.  
 Brian *Sir Thomas* 244.  
 Briant 101.  
 Briswood 229.  
 Brient 304.  
 Brimston *the Lord* 384.  
 Bromswick *Duke of* 182.  
 Brooke 23, 383, 399.  
 Brook *York Herald* 386.  
 Broke *Lord* 215.  
 Bromflet *Lord Vesci* 125.  
 Browe 292.  
 Brown 223, 240, 241, 244, 263, 466.  
 Brumswick



Brumfwick Duke of 21, 75.  
 Bruges Lord Grutuse 80.  
 Bruges 312, 318, 321, 322, 324, 326,  
 328, 330, 332, 334, 339, 340, 342,  
 343, 344, 345, 346, 350, 354, 355,  
 379, 472.  
 Brumfwick Herald 445.  
 Brugge 302, 327.  
 Brueil 224.  
 Bryan Guy 11, 12.  
 Buch Capital 6, 7, 8, 9.  
 Buckingham Duke of 37, 38, 55, 232,  
 236.  
 Buckingham Earl of 10, 432.  
 Buckingham Countess of 11.  
 Bulenger 298.  
 Burgundy Duke of 6, 35, 64, 67, 69, 76,  
 81, 83, 85, 200, 311, 325, 331, 333,  
 334, 353, 357, 364, 432, 442, 447,  
 450, 453, 456, 460, 469.  
 Burgundy Dutcheffs of 208, 336, 347, 348,  
 349.  
 Burgundy Count D'Estempres 79.  
 Burgundy Herald to the Emperor 435.  
 Burgundy Bastard of 460.  
 Burle Lord 11.  
 Burgoyn Duke of 208, 280.  
 Burgoyn Lady Margaret 214.  
 Burgh 207.  
 Burdeaux 281.  
 Burdeaux Herald 440.  
 Burrough Sir John 405, 408, 412, 420,  
 457.  
 Purges Bishop of 280.  
 Burghesh Lord Bartholomew 6, 42, 151.  
 Burghesh Bishop of Lincoln 151.  
 Burley Sir Richard 44, 126, 314.  
 Burnel Lord 14, 15, 260.  
 Burbon 6.  
 Burley Sir Simon 118, 250.  
 Butler Ulster Herald 486.  
 Byshe 401, 404, 407, 418.  
 Bythei 320.

## C

Cade 297, 361, 428.  
 Calabria Duke of 40.  
 Calabria 396.  
 Calverly Sir Hugh 315.  
 Callabut 230.  
 Caligula 332.  
 Cambridge Earl of 47, 160, 318.  
 Camoys Lord 15.  
 Camden 320, 324, 325, 393, 399, 404,  
 423, 448, 457.  
 Campes Nunns of 223.  
 Campegnis 372.  
 Cantacuzene Emperor 121.  
 Canterbury Archbishop of 38, 151, 328,  
 333, 339, 340.  
 Cant. T. 53.  
 Cantebrig Earl of 6, 10.  
 Cantebrig Countess of 11.  
 Canley 381.  
 Carew 241, 244, 249.  
 Carlyll 378, 381.  
 Cardinal 284.  
 Carrell 266.

Carbonell 222.  
 Carlisle Herald 473.  
 Care 385.  
 Caron 381.  
 Carminow 175.  
 Caringhell 383.  
 Carnis Barth. 359.  
 Carmelites Friars of Ipswich 223.  
 Castile King of 87, 160, 161, 311, 434.  
 Castells Earl of 383.  
 Castell Sir John 101.  
 Castile Isabel of 128.  
 Castlecomb alias Dunstaviil 367.  
 Casimer King of Poland 21, 52.  
 Cassy 401.  
 Castellon Gerald 253.  
 Catesby 354.  
 Cavendish 171.  
 Cave 380.  
 Caumont 198.  
 Cellius 397.  
 Champeney 361.  
 Chamlet 240.  
 Chabot 88.  
 Chabut Earl of Newblanch 243.  
 Chalons 341.  
 Chandos Sir John 314, 315, 432.  
 Chandos 239, 280.  
 Chamberlaine Sir William 50, 224, 225.  
 Champier 291, 451.  
 Chastellain 3, 11, 327.  
 Charolois 208.  
 Charlois Herald 451.  
 Charleton Lord 14, 15, 17, 31.  
 Chartier 334.  
 Chautemarle Sir Tarquin 101.  
 Chaucer 124, 240, 302, 307, 308, 450,  
 456, 460.  
 Chaufe de 253, 254.  
 Chauveau Marshal of Arms of France 469.  
 Charles Nicholas 423.  
 Chester Bishop of 321.  
 Chester Earl of 257.  
 Chester Herald 441, 446, 447, 473.  
 Chesne 320.  
 Cheyney Sir Edmund 150.  
 Chemin Plein an Officer of Arms 452.  
 Chichester Bishop of 341.  
 Christien King of Denmark 20.  
 Christien Jean Baptist 280.  
 Chichele Archbishop of Canterbury 405.  
 Chichele 327.  
 Chiflet 311.  
 Clarence Duke of 6, 14, 15, 16, 33, 118,  
 135, 186, 188, 189, 214, 215, 312,  
 314, 322, 323, 324, 353, 461.  
 Clarence Dutcheffs of 15.  
 Clarenceux 435, 441, 444, 445, 446, 448,  
 455, 460, 461, 464, 467, 473.  
 Clarencyus 381.  
 Clarendon 409, 411.  
 Clarmont Count of 199.  
 Clarembault 302, 311, 334.  
 Cleopatra 311, 337, 338.  
 Cleves Duke of 385.  
 Cleves Marques of 349.  
 Cleves Lord Raveston 80, 86.  
 Clement Pope 163.  
 Clerk 280, 307.

Clifford



Clifford *Lord* 11, 12.  
 Clifford 69, 446.  
 Clinton 229, 262.  
 Clepton 56, 415.  
 Clyffon 85, 98.  
 Cobham 149, 355, 370, 390.  
 Cockeran *King of Heralds in Denmark* 443.  
 Coimbero *Duke of* 39, 75.  
 Coke *Chief Justice* 478.  
 Coke 365.  
 Cokerell 284.  
 Columbier 280, 308, 343, 348.  
 Colet 242.  
 Coleyne *Archbishop* 336, 337.  
 Colwell 378, 379.  
 Comines 202, 295, 347, 452.  
 Compton *Sir William* 243, 372.  
 Conimbre *Duke of* 184, 185.  
 Conimbres *Herald of* 451.  
 Constance 11, 12, 442.  
 Coots Ralph 239.  
 Cornwall *Duke of* 459.  
 Cornwall *Lord John* 14, 15, 16.  
 Cornwall *Sir John* 257.  
 Cornwall *Herald* 444.  
 Cornwall 171.  
 Cordell 266.  
 Cortevill 56.  
 Cotton *Sir John* 216.  
 Cotton *Sir Robert* 423.  
 Courtenay *Earl of Devon* 43.  
 Courtenay *Lord Peter* 12, 13.  
 Couley 355.  
 Courtenay *Sir Thomas* 43.  
 Courtney *Sir Hugh* 42, 105, 143.  
 Courtney 259, 240.  
 Coventry and Lichfeild *Bishop of* 266.  
 Courcy 14.  
 Cowyn *Sir Thomas* 261.  
 Crawford *Earl of* 325.  
 Crawford David 359.  
 Craiford 383.  
 Crevecoeur *Lord d'Esquerdes* 79.  
 Crioil de 254.  
 Croke 432.  
 Crowne 404, 407.  
 Cromwell 323, 348.  
 Crukener 386.  
 Cuthbert *Bishop of London* 232.  
 Curtains 303.  
 Cumberland *Earl of* 373.  
 Culpeper 237.

## D

**D** Abridgecourt 14.  
 Dabridgecourt *Sir Sanchet* 105.  
 Dacie *King of* 15.  
 Dacie *Queen of* 15.  
 Dallenfon 334.  
 Dalton 378.  
 Dam 434.  
 Damas *Lord of Cleffy* 79.  
 Dampiere *Earl of Flanders* 46.  
 Dampmartin *Count of* 199.  
 Daniel 371.  
 Darby *Earl of (vid. Derby)* 296.  
 Darby *Countess of* 11, 12.  
 Darby *Herald* 444.

Dauphin 342.  
 Davers 367.  
 Daubeney *Lord* 215.  
 Davarans *Earl of* 38, 75, 183.  
 Dayrell *Sir Thomas* 403.  
 Dees 380.  
 Denmark *King of* 16, 18, 19, 20, 390, 394, 466. *Queen* 15.  
 Declare 405.  
 Delbrugg 301.  
 De la Bisse 405, 406.  
 De la Marche 450.  
 Denne 400.  
 Denston 344.  
 Derby *Earl of* 10, 11, 12, 87, 96, 100, 101, 106, 113, 117, 118, 119, 380, 451.  
 Dering *Sir Edward* 309.  
 Desmond *Earl of* 215.  
 Dethick 292, 313, 381, 384, 386, 387, 389, 390.  
 Dethick *Sir William* 391, 392, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400, 403, 408, 412, 415, 420.  
 Dethyke *Sir Gilbert* 381, 385, 403, 415, 420, 425.  
 Devon *Earl of* 12, 274, 350.  
 Devanal *Sir Percival* 137.  
 Digon 255.  
 Dispenfer *Earl of Gloucester* 124.  
 Dispenfer *Lord* 6, 128.  
 Dispenfer *Lady* 128.  
 Dodderige *Sir John* 281.  
 Dorset *Marquess of* 13, 41, 174, 252, 288, 459.  
 Dorset *Marchioness of* 13, 127.  
 Dorset *Lord* 14, 15, 16, 118, 137, 274, 337.  
 Dorval *Lord* 199.  
 Dormans *Bishop of Beauvais* 280.  
 Douglas *Earl of* 50, 51, 301, 284, 348, 349, 350, 430, 451.  
 Doughty 217.  
 Drake *Sir Francis* 34.  
 Dudley 118, 245, 341.  
 Dugdale *Sir William* 324, 385, 403, 414, 415, 418, 420, 423.  
 Dunstabil *Sir Robert* 29, 155.  
 Dunois 78.  
 Duncomb 385.  
 Dupo 364.  
 Duras *Lord* 50, 51, 74, 77, 191, 196.  
 Durham *Bishop of* 28, 217, 354.  
 Durand 309.  
 Durward 228.  
 Durroit 299, 301.

## E

**E** Admerd 459.  
 Eagle 482.  
 Eam *Sir Henry* 44, 45, 47.  
 Earpingham *Lord* 14, 15, 16, 170, 171, 328. *vide* Erpingham & Herpingham.  
 Ebor William 53.  
 Echingham 228.  
 Edom John 479.  
 Edward *Prince* 17, 32.  
 Eggerton *Sir Ralph* 243.  
 Eggecombe 364.

Egremond



Fgremond *Lord* 350.  
 Elbeuf *Duke of* 80.  
 Ely 111.  
 Emanuel *King* 39.  
 England *King of* 16, 20.  
 England *Queen of* 15.  
 Erick 11, 18, 19, 20.  
 Erskin 383.  
 Espinette 433.  
 Essex *Earl of* 50, 51, 258, 404.  
 Estecourt 331, 332.  
 Eugene *Pope* 49, 311.  
 Eureux *Earldome of* 271.  
 Eusebius *St. Cardinal* 332, 333.  
 Exeter *Duke of* 13, 38, 135, 171, 174,  
 175, 185, 349.  
 Exeter *Dutchess of* 13.  
 Exeter *Marquess of* 259.  
 Exeter *Bishop of* 352, 380.  
 Exeter *Herald* 444.

## F

FAlstaff *Sir John* 49, 62, 121, 174.  
 Falvese *Sir John* 204.  
 Fardinand (*vide Ferdinand*) 48, 49, 219.  
 Farnaby 401.  
 Farly 359.  
 Fauchet 280, 298, 334.  
 Fauconberge 53, 174, 361.  
 Faustina 325.  
 Favine 281.  
 Faulcon *Herald* 440, 473, 482.  
 Felbrigg *Sir Simon* 13, 14, 15, 16, 35,  
 39, 159, 174, 186.  
 Fellowe 288, 383, 469.  
 Felton *Sir Thomas* 35.  
 Fenis 251.  
 Ferdinand *King of Spain* 454.  
 Ferdinand *King of Naples and Castile* 21,  
 41, 50.  
 Feron 280, 293, 451.  
 Ferrara *Duke of* 357.  
 Feres *Lord* 51, 54.  
 Ferrers *Sir Ralph* 261.  
 Fespuch 197.  
 Fettiplas (*vide Fettiplace*) 181, 182.  
 Fettiplace 20, 125, 395.  
 Feverham *Earl of* 202, 274.  
 Fevre 292, 311.  
 Fisher 41.  
 Fitz Alan *Earl of Arundell* 35.  
 Fitz Herbert 354.  
 Fitz Williams *Sir William* 249.  
 Fitz Tancred 253.  
 Fitz Warin *Lord William* 29, 42.  
 Fitz Simon *Sir Richard* 105.  
 Fitz Rauf 144.  
 Fitz Walter *Lord* 125, 252, 253.  
 Fitz Wanter *Lady* 13.  
 Fitz Hugh *Lord* 14, 15, 16, 131, 171.  
 Fitz Other 253.  
 Fitz Lewis 227.  
 Flanders *Earl of* 305.  
 Flanders *Sir Henry* 44, 45, 46, 47.  
 Fleur de Lis 460, 470.  
 Fleming *Lord* 383.  
 Foix Gaston *Earl of Longueville* 7, 8, 39,  
 77.

Foix Peter 9.  
 Foix *Earl of Kendall* 8, 22, 77.  
 Foix *Earl and Sovereign of Bearn* 8.  
 Foix Blanche 10.  
 Foix Bernard *Duke of Esperon* 7.  
 Foix Count of 199.  
 Fortescue 208.  
 Foveis Francis 303.  
 France *King of* 6, 339, 341, 385.  
 Francis *Sir Adam* 125.  
 Frederick the Roman *Emperor* 21, 283,  
 396.  
 Frederick the *Pacific* 80.  
 Frederick *Son of the King of Denmark* 389.  
 Frederic *Duke of Urbin* 49.  
 Frederick *King of Denmark* 80.  
 Frederick 484.  
 Frenes 304, 308, 320.  
 Fresne 467.  
 Froissart 45, 293, 314, 317, 430, 481,  
 451.  
 Fronssac *Marquess of* 34.  
 Fuller 326.  
 Furnival 217.  
 Fyrlingley *Sir Henry* 53.  
 Fyrlongly 351.

## G

GAguin *Dr.* 281.  
 Gaillard de Preyffac *Bishop of Thou-*  
*louise* 163.  
 Garter 441, 442, 443, 444, 445, 448, 453,  
 454, 455, 460, 461, 463, 464, 471,  
 473, 476, 483.  
 Garland 380.  
 Gardineis 216, 385, 424.  
 Gate 361.  
 Gaunt John of 114, 118, 126, 127, 175,  
 184, 303.  
 Gaufrid 304.  
 Gaveston 296.  
 Guy Marches 292.  
 Geldre *Duke of* 13.  
 Geldre *Dutchess of* 13.  
 Gendale 42.  
 Geneste *Herald* 452.  
 Getz 381.  
 Gilford 111.  
 Glancarn *Earl of* 383.  
 Glanville *Sir Gilbert* 221.  
 Glastinbury *Abbot of* 214.  
 Glander 260.  
 Glendale 42.  
 Gloucester *Duke of* 11, 12, 14, 16, 40, 50,  
 51, 53, 56, 67, 101, 115, 116,  
 117, 118, 134, 167, 171, 174, 205,  
 332.  
 Gloucester *Dutchess of* 11, 12.  
 Gloucester *Earl of* 13, 22, 33, 39, 128,  
 195.  
 Gloucester *Countess of* 13, 128.  
 Gloucester *Abbat* 348.  
 Glover 324, 325, 388, 389, 391, 483.  
 Godolphin *Earl of* 274.  
 Godscall 399.  
 Golbolt 280.  
 Goldenborough 373.  
 Golden Fleece 453.  
 K k k k k  
 Gomneis



Gommeis *Lady* 13.  
 Gonville 225.  
 Gordyng 342.  
 Gore 326.  
 Goffelet 283.  
 Gotham 264.  
 Gough 367.  
 Gout *Sir Bertrand* 196.  
 Goulaine 247.  
 Goufil *Sir Robert* 224.  
 Granada *King of* 311.  
 Gray *Lord* 16, 383.  
 Gray 479.  
 Graystock 212, 349.  
 Graily *Sir John* 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.  
 Graily *Katherine* 10.  
 Grey *Lord* 14, 15.  
 Grey *Earl of Kent* 228, 397.  
 Grey *Sir John* 42, 170.  
 Grey 262.  
 Grenade *King of Arms of Spain* 452.  
 Grenade 381.  
 Grene 177, 380.  
 Gregory 309.  
 Grek 373.  
 Greyllye 6.  
 Griffin 482.  
 Grimaldi *second Prince of Monaco* 76.  
 Grosvenour 175.  
 Grosse 252.  
 Grutuse *Lord* 80.  
 Gruthuse *Earl of Winchester* 353, 459.  
 Gryffyn 380.  
 Guesclin *Herald* 442.  
 Gueldres *Herald* 442, 485.  
 Guienne *King of Arms (vide Wrexworth)*  
 435, 441, 444, 459.  
 Guiet *King of Heralds in Champagne* 455.  
 Guildford *John of* 478.  
 Guichard *D'Angle* 101.  
 Guldeford 235, 257.  
 Gumneis 11, 12.  
 Gunneys 12.  
 Gutto *Countess of Armagnack* 163.  
 Guyenne 328.

## H

**H** Adson 344, 345, 346.  
 Hall *Sir Richard* 48.  
 Hall *Sir Edward* 54.  
 Hall 347, 354, 373.  
 Halden 236.  
 Haldenby 354.  
 Hallet 229.  
 Hallifax *Earl of* 273.  
 Halliton 209.  
 Hamilton *Marquess of* 269, 273.  
 Hamilton *Duke of* 274, 350.  
 Ham a *Herald* 482.  
 Hanley 360, 363, 375.  
 Hannes *Pursivant* 451.  
 Hartcourt *Sir Robert* 5, 54, 119.  
 Harcourt *Lady* 128.  
 Harling *Dame* 225.  
 Harvey *Sir Michael* 233.  
 Harvaft 341, 381.  
 Hare *Richmond Herald* 363, 470.  
 Haryngton *Lord* 15, 16, 171.

Hardell *Sir Thomas* 223.  
 Harley 325, 334, 338, 341.  
 Harvyr 371.  
 Harling *Sir Robert* 224, 225.  
 Harewell 214.  
 Hardi 79.  
 Harpeter 254.  
 Hastings 170, 479.  
 Hastings *Lord* 30, 34.  
 Hastings *Mary* 168.  
 Hastings *Sir Edward* 263, 264.  
 Hasylng 432.  
 Hastings *Sir Hugh* 223.  
 Hatfeild *Dr.* 233.  
 Hawkeslon 380.  
 Hayward *Lord* 51.  
 Haynalt *William* 433.  
 Heliodoros 450.  
 Henry de Lancaster 484.  
 Henryche de Lynfanc 338.  
 Heneage *Sir Thomas* 328.  
 Hereford *Duke of* 175.  
 Hereford *Herald* 444.  
 Herbert *Lord* 86, 435.  
 Herbert *Sir William* 623.  
 Herbert 372.  
 Herbert *Sir Edward* 411.  
 Hervart *Antoine* 483.  
 Heron *Sir William* 204.  
 Herle 144.  
 Heyborn 383.  
 Heylin *Dr.* 452.  
 Heyme 251.  
 Higgons *Sir Thomas* 420.  
 Holland *Duke of* 14, 15, 16, 23, 26, 27,  
 28, 29, 66, 361.  
 Holland *Dutchess of* 15.  
 Holland *Earl of* 44, 125.  
 Holland *Lord* 11.  
 Holland 11, 22, 442, 483.  
 Holstein *Duke of* 385.  
 Holebrooke *Sir Thomas* 145.  
 Hollingsworth 266.  
 Holme 221, 355, 380, 481.  
 Holme *Windsor Herald* 467.  
 Honfdon *Lord* 385.  
 Hoo 38, 223, 250, 252, 338, 339.  
 Hortensius 427.  
 Horn *Sir William* 137.  
 Horton 367.  
 Hotspur 114.  
 Hoveden 471.  
 Howard *Earl of Northampton* 280.  
 Howard *Lord* 51, 54, 269.  
 Howard *Sir Edward* 121, 241.  
 Hozier 470.  
 Huet 108, 385.  
 Huisher *Marcell* 292.  
 Hull *Sir Edward* 21, 48.  
 Hull *Alienor* 48.  
 Hume *Lord of Hayton* 383.  
 Huntington *Earl of* 12, 14, 15, 16, 149,  
 171.  
 Huntington *Countess of* 12, 15, 171.  
 Hurtyngton 185, 269.  
 Hungerford *Lord* 168.  
 Hungerford *Sir Walter* 116, 171.  
 Hungerford 139, 174, 333, 367.  
 Hungary *King of Arms* 465, 466.

Huntien



Huntein 333.  
Hunsdon 269.  
Hunnings 378.  
Huscarl 250, 251.  
Hyde Chief Justice 281.

I

**I** Anyn 317.  
Jaquet *Dutchess of Bedford* 20, 233.  
Jaupin 101.  
Jehygame 229.  
Jekill 228, 387.  
Jerningham 257.  
Inglofe Sir Henry 132.  
Innocent Pope 310.  
Inglesby 373.  
Joan Maid of Orleans 433.  
John King of France 430.  
Johnson Ben. 304.  
Joinville 245, 292.  
Joyner 380.  
Ireland *Dutchess of* 13.  
Ireland Herald 444.  
Ireland 380.  
Isaac Thomas 311.  
Isabell Lady 13.  
Jue 345.  
Izabell Queen 463.

K

**K** Ammus Lord 16.  
Kent Earl of 11, 12.  
Kent Countess of 11, 12, 13.  
Kandal Earl of 7, 17, 139, 207, 379.  
Karlill 348.  
Kent 53, 338, 347.  
Kildare Earl of 215.  
Kinston Duke of 257, 263, 278.  
Knighton 317, 446, 483, 485.  
Knolles Sir Robert 30, 31, 32, 213.

L

**L** Aburde 197.  
Lakenhith 144.  
Lalain 297, 311, 326, 445.  
Langley Duke of York 246.  
Langley 106, 125, 128, 208.  
Lant 449.  
Langport 348.  
Langton Lord 10.  
Langtoft 300.  
Langele Lord Edmund 42, 43.  
Langford 251.  
Lancaster Duke of 6, 10, 11, 12, 103, 106, 115, 117, 169, 300, 301, 322, 323, 380, 432.  
Lancaster *Dutchess of* 11, 12, 127, 246.  
Lancaster Earl of 151, 154.  
Lancaster Earl of Derby 451.  
Lancaster Herald and Colar Pursivant (*vide* Thynne) 441, 444, 459.  
Latymer Lord 318.  
Lau 200.  
Launey 288.  
Lawson 359.  
Lawson Sir John 421.

Lawnder 360.  
Le Bel Philip 430.  
Lee Clarenceus 474.  
Lee 479.  
Leech 439.  
Legge 379.  
Leicester Earl of 70, 89, 398, 452.  
Leicester Herald 444.  
Leigh 289, 299, 307, 379, 381, 484, 449.  
Lenox Duke of 269.  
Leneve Sir William 316, 404, 406.  
Leneve Peter 336, 377.  
Leon 98.  
Leopard Herald 444.  
Leonard 385, 386.  
Lesbone Portugal Herald 451.  
Lescrop Lord 14, 141.  
Leveney 451.  
Lewen 266.  
Leyendecker 386.  
Lincoln Bishop of 354, 355, 485.  
Lincoln Earl of 215, 278.  
Lincoln Countess of 433.  
Lionel 277.  
Lisle Lord 205, 231.  
Lisle 288, 319, 383, 431.  
Lisbon Herald 451.  
Lobineau 309, 334.  
Longes Countess of 202.  
London Bishop of 310, 327.  
London 53, 111.  
Longueville Earl of 40, 174.  
Lorraine Duke of 291, 465.  
Lorain Herald 442.  
Loring Sir Nele 35.  
Loryng Lord Nigell 6, 11, 12, 42.  
Los Earl of 46.  
Loveney 175.  
Lowell Lord of 207, 215, 260.  
Lucy Sir William 354.  
Luffenham 327.  
Lycurgus 320.  
Lyon Lord King of Arms of Scotland 452, 457, 458, 466.  
Lysle Viscount 376.

M

**M** Ack Williams 330.  
Machado Clarentieux 363.  
Macclesfeild 13.  
Malet 48.  
Mallory 177.  
Malore 381.  
Male 45.  
Mantua Duke of 111.  
Mannypenny Lord 353.  
Manny Lord 42.  
Manny Sir Walter 42, 98, 101, 149.  
Mantua Marquess of 76.  
Mancade 270.  
Manleis 482.  
Mandevill 270.  
Mary Queen 34.  
Marchin Count 411.  
Marexall Countess of 11, 12.  
Marny Lord 6.  
Marteneau 381.  
Marche Earl of 56, 288, 299, 302.  
Marescall



- Marefcall *Earl* 11, 12, 117.  
 Marefcall 40.  
 March *King of the Herald* 300, 473.  
 Marchemont *Herald* 447.  
 Marche 280, 291, 308, 311, 319, 326, 327, 328, 329, 380, 456.  
 Marlborough 274.  
 Marefcal *Herald* 467.  
 Marca 320.  
 Marknez 247.  
 Masham 14.  
 Matas *Sir Fouk* 162.  
 Mathieu 456.  
 Mautravers *Lord* 35.  
 Mauriffens 381.  
 Maxwell *Lord* 383.  
 Maximilian 84, 86, 121, 183, 316, 364, 453.  
 Maylard 380.  
 Melton 100.  
 Menue *Lord* 45.  
 Menestrier 291, 308, 320, 467.  
 Mentealto 270.  
 Menage 307.  
 Mere 237.  
 Merford 170.  
 Mezeray 304, 434.  
 Milice 291.  
 Mille 348.  
 Mills 483.  
 Mohun *Lord* 6, 11, 42, 125.  
 Mohun *Lady* 11, 12, 13.  
 Moleyns 336, 339.  
 Montfort *Duke of Bretagne* (*vide* *Maintford*) 72.  
 Montfort *Earl of* 481.  
 Montfort *Countess of* 289.  
 Montfort 32, 155, 316.  
 Monmouth 273.  
 Montault 217.  
 Monthaut 303.  
 Montgomery 74, 255.  
 Montfretlet 336, 463.  
 Montacute *Earl of Salisbury* 13, 39, 124, 128.  
 Montagu *Duke of* 344.  
 Montagu *Earl of Salisbury* 126.  
 Montague *Marchioness* 127.  
 Montacute *Viscount* 263, 269.  
 Montcaute 276.  
 Montjoy *Lord* 51, 53, 54, 208, 209.  
 Montjoy 292, 315, 328, 329.  
 Montjoy *King of Arms in France* 301, 443, 452, 458, 462, 470.  
 Montmorency 88, 385, 436.  
 Montgryson 48, 49, 50, 54.  
 Monthermer 276, 277.  
 Mortimer *Lord* 106.  
 Mortimer 225, 236, 306.  
 Morell 202, 319.  
 Moreri 307, 309.  
 Moreau 285, 299, 430, 449.  
 Morle *Lord* 14, 15, 16, 17, 260, 261.  
 Morlee 201, 302.  
 Mcire *Norroy* 380.  
 Morkok 354, 355.  
 Morell *Nicholas* 439.  
 Moshou 302.  
 Mountford *Duke of Brittain* 315.  
 Moubray (*vide* *Mowbray*) 380.  
 Mounhill 174.  
 Mounkreth *Lord* 383.  
 Moullins 246.  
 Mowbray *Duke of Norfolk* 224.  
 Mowbray *Earl of Nottingham* 175.  
 Mowbray *Lady Ann* 356.  
 Mowbray *Reginald* 288.  
 Mymme 365.
- N
- Nagaret de la Valette John Louis  
*Duke of Esperon* 8.  
 Namur *Earl of* 46, 97.  
 Namur *Countess of* 46.  
 Namur *Sir Robert* 46.  
 Nanfant 188, 231.  
 Naples *King of* 48, 49, 50, 395.  
 Navarre *King of* 311.  
 Navera 232.  
 Naylor 385.  
 Neapoli an *Herald* 442.  
 Nederlandtschen *Herald* 456.  
 Nero 220.  
 Nevill *Duke of Bedford* 32.  
 Nevill Ralph *Earl of Westmerland* 128.  
 Nevil *Lord John* 11, 160.  
 Nevill 127, 128, 144, 217, 257, 277.  
 Nevers *Count of* 79.  
 Neufchall *Lord Montagu* 79, 104.  
 Newblanch *Earl of* 249.  
 Newport 52, 181, 182.  
 Newton 220.  
 Nicholas *Pope* 311.  
 Nicholfon *Bishop* 401.  
 Nicholas 411.  
 Nihilensis *Bishop* 304, 309.  
 Nineve *Lord* 45.  
 Nones 207.  
 Norfolk *Duke of* 30, 51, 54, 70, 75, 88, 89, 108, 118, 205, 212, 231, 288, 416, 445, 452, 474.  
 Norfolk *Countess of* 255.  
 Norfolk 373.  
 Normandy *Duke of* 160.  
 Normandy *Herald* 442, 443.  
 Normandy & Guyenne *Dutchess* 342.  
 Norreis *Sir William* 127.  
 Northampton *Earl of* 149.  
 Norwych de St. John 261.  
 Norbury 204, 208.  
 Norden 306.  
 Northumberland *Earl of* 10, 11, 12, 13, 33, 117, 185, 350, 431.  
 Northumberland *Herald* 358, 360.  
 Northumberland 274.  
 Norroy 436, 440, 442, 444, 448, 459, 461.  
 Norroy *Fellow* 470.  
 Norway *King of Arms* 465.  
 Notyngham *Earl of* 11, 432.  
 Nottingham *Herald* 444.  
 Nottingham 354.
- O Octavien



## O

**O**ctavien Duke of Parma 89.  
 Oldchall 331.  
 Oldcastel Sir John 355.  
 Olyvant Lord 383.  
 Orange Prince of 399, 410, 411.  
 Orleans 67, 81, 106, 334, 336, 337, 338, 341, 349.  
 Orleans Count of Engoulesine 433.  
 Ormond Earl of 209.  
 Othelake 288, 299, 301.  
 Ostrevant Earl of 13, 26, 56, 69, 101, 109, 110, 112, 113.  
 Ostliche 208.  
 Owen George Norroy 404, 473.  
 Oxenbridge 252.  
 Oxford Earl of 15, 16, 17, 33, 111, 117, 121, 128, 149, 221, 264.  
 Oxon Countess of 11, 12, 13, 232.

## P

**P**aget Sir William 263.  
 Palatine Prince 407.  
 Palatin Elector of 399, 410.  
 Palatin Robert Duke of Bavaria 19.  
 Paillet 285.  
 Pampelona Bishop of Parma 280. *see* Octavien  
 Parker Archbishop 448.  
 Parr 207.  
 Paris 296, 459.  
 Paston 141.  
 Pater Patratus 465.  
 Paveley Lord Walter 6, 42.  
 Paulus Emilius 487.  
 Peche 257.  
 Peltusser 323.  
 Pembroke Earl of 51, 54, 149, 170, 255, 262, 269, 446.  
 Pembroke Countess of 11.  
 Pembroke 177, 189.  
 Pamburg Sir Richard 44.  
 Persia King of 426.  
 Percy Lord Henry 10, 11, 12, 13, 250.  
 Percy Lord Thomas 10, 11, 12.  
 Percy Richard 350.  
 Percy Herald 432.  
 Perrers 250.  
 Peterson 385.  
 Petingale 228.  
 Peverell 250, 255.  
 Phelippe Sir William 441.  
 Phelpot 399.  
 Philpot 361, 420.  
 Philip Sir John 124.  
 Philip Sir William 169, 171.  
 Philippe de Valois 458.  
 Philibert Emanuel Duke of Savoy 76, 83.  
 Piercies 22.  
 Pius Pope 49, 213.  
 Plantagenet 115.  
 Poitiers Earl of 430.  
 Pointz 257.  
 Poland King of 52, 75, 182.  
 Pole de la, Michael Earl of Suffolk 8, 44, 220, 221, 222.  
 Pole de la, Will. Earl of Suffolk 124, 222.

Pontdevour 312.  
 Ponyns Lady 11, 12, 13.  
 Poole Cardinal 259.  
 Portugal King of 15, 16, 40, 51, 52, 53, 54, 124, 125, 126, 174, 188, 190, 311, 334, 395, 396, 460.  
 Portugal Queen of 13, 15, 114.  
 Portland Earl of 274.  
 Portcullis Pursuant 446, 449, 483.  
 Pot Philip Lord Roche Noulay 79.  
 Potton of Saints Erailles 199.  
 Pounds 213.  
 Powys Lord 16, 17, 32.  
 Powerscourt 230.  
 Prince the 42, 51.  
 Pringle 383.  
 Pucelle D'Orleans 287, 289.  
 Puckering 70.  
 Puyssamis 283.  
 Pymlove 421.

## Q

**Q**uerdes Marshal 80.  
 Quimbre Duke of 110, 116, 192. *See* Coimbro.

## R

**R**adcliff Sir John 131, 132.  
 Radington 151.  
 Rambouillet 89.  
 Ratcliff Sir Richard 22.  
 Ravestein Lord 80, 84.  
 Ravenna Archbishop of 350.  
 Raye 382.  
 Reave Dr. 414.  
 Rebuffus 285.  
 Rede 106.  
 Reginald Lord Cobham 35, 45.  
 Rempston Sir Thomas 139.  
 Reubens Sir Perer Paul 246.  
 Rhis ap Thomas 253.  
 Rhys ap Griffith 217.  
 Richmond Duke of 273, 430, 433.  
 Richmond Earl of 42, 139, 213, 236.  
 Richmond Herald 382, 446, 473, 444, 446.  
 Richard Northampton Herald 380.  
 Richardson 359, 360.  
 Richebourg 79.  
 Rieux de, Marshal of Bretagne 442.  
 Rigby 378.  
 Rigord 295.  
 Rigmaiden 108.  
 Rimer 485.  
 Rivers Berthelot 395.  
 Rivers Earl of 54, 75, 217, 226, 228, 315.  
 Robertson 214.  
 Robsart 183.  
 Robessart 132, 171, 174.  
 Rochester Earl of 274.  
 Rochester 264, 269, 348.  
 Rocheffavin 307.  
 Roet Sir Paen 380.  
 Rolleston 324, 336.  
 Romans the King of 363, 264.  
 Roos Lord 14, 126, 226, 338, 339.  
 Roos Lady 14, 15, 126.  
 Rooks Sir Robert 227.  
 L11111

Roque



- Roque 308.  
 Rotie *Lord of Cragy* 253.  
 Rotel *Earl of* 12.  
 Rotheram *Sir Thomas* 397.  
 Rouche *Earl of* 13.  
 Rouch de Thomas 281.  
 Rouck 291.  
 Rovere Gui Ubaldi *Duke of Urbin* 81.  
 Rouge Dragon 446, 473.  
 Rougecroix 446, 473.  
 Roxburghe 278.  
 Rucher 305.  
 Ruelle la 465.  
 Rueille 284.  
 Ruette *Sir Paen* 127.  
 Russell *Lord* 445.  
 Russell *Sir John* 223.  
 Rutland *Earl of* 394.  
 Ryley 404.  
 Rymer 321, 324, 325, 527, 328, 330, 333, 335, 338, 341, 347, 351.  
 Rynde 359.  
 Ryvers 49, 50.
- S
- S** Adler 330.  
 Saintre 320, 445.  
 Saint Pere *Ambassador from France* 354.  
 Sakesfeild 385.  
 Salisbury *Earl of (vide Sar)* 22, 32, 43, 106, 174, 227, 132, 171, 223, 224, 273, 277, 345, 351, 352.  
 Salisbury *Countess of* 62, 109, 122, 125.  
 Salisbury *Bishop of* 181, 338.  
 Salisbury 53, 111.  
 Salade 321.  
 Sale 320.  
 Salkeld 407.  
 Sampson 377.  
 Sandwich *Earl of* 41.  
 Sandys *Sir William* 219, 232.  
 Sandford 321.  
 Sanch *Johannis Prior* 53, 111.  
 Sarum *Earl of* 6, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 42, 174.  
 Sarum *Countess of* 11, 12, 13, 14, 15.  
 Saresbury *Count of* 100.  
 Sarnesfeild *Sir William* 170.  
 Sarnesfeild 11, 12.  
 Savoy *Duke of* 312, 385, 442.  
 Savoye James *Count of Romont* 80.  
 Savage 188, 396.  
 Saulx 92.  
 Saxony *Duke of* 91, 420.  
 Saxilby 40.  
 Say 204.  
 Scales *Lord* 19, 20, 75, 108, 139, 172, 174, 353, 460.  
 Scipio Africanus 487.  
 Scots *King of* 333, 349, 351, 447.  
 Scotland *Ambassador of* 448.  
 Scotland *Officer of Arms* 447.  
 Scot 303.  
 Scrope *Lord* 14, 16, 22, 135, 224, 225, 226, 309.  
 Scrope *Lady* 216, 226, 229.  
 Scroope the *Lord third Son* 141.  
 Scrope 155, 175.  
 Schonburg *Duke of* 274.  
 Sechevill 253.  
 Segar William 320, 388, 389, 390, 393, 398, 399, 400, 401, 402, 403, 408, 412, 415, 420.  
 Selden 286, 315, 321, 401, 450, 478.  
 Sennebrun *Lord of L'Esparre* 165.  
 Seton 383.  
 Seymour *Marquess of Hertford (vide Somerset)*  
 Sfortia 21.  
 Sherington *Sir Henry* 217.  
 Sherrard 398.  
 Shipman 307, 308.  
 Shirley 69, 70, 282.  
 Shrewsbury *Earl of* 53, 75, 199, 216, 217, 274, 251, 431, 446.  
 Shrobbert *Earl of* 216.  
 Shrowsberi *Lord of* 385.  
 Sicilian *Herald* 451, 456, 478.  
 Sicily *King of* 329, 341.  
 Sidney *Sir Henry* 269.  
 Sigismund *Emperor* 16, 23, 26, 27, 28, 39, 110, 112, 116, 184, 239, 322, 341, 344.  
 Silvius Aeneas 246. *vide Pius*.  
 Smert 318, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353, 354.  
 Smith 316, 324, 399, 385.  
 Snawehill 207.  
 Somerset *Duke of* 37, 42, 76, 86, 174, 292, 342, 384.  
 Somerset *Sir Charles* 84, 128, 374, 396.  
 Somerville *Earl of* 383.  
 Somers 299.  
 Sompnour 307.  
 Somerset *Herald* 449, 447, 483.  
 Soubize *Baron of* 462.  
 Southfolk *Count of* 100.  
 Spain *King of* 77, 89, 188.  
 Spain *Queen of* 15.  
 Spanish *Heralds* 452.  
 Spencer *Earl of Gloucester* 13.  
 Spencer *Lord* 393, 394, 395, 397.  
 Spencer 351.  
 Spenser *Herald Marshal de South* 466, 467.  
 Speckley 378.  
 Spelman *Sir Henry* 307, 315, 394, 316, 321, 326, 327, 401.  
 Spice 204.  
 Squibb 404.  
 St. Lewis of France 429.  
 St. Paul *Count of* 43, 102.  
 St. Paul *Countess of* 102.  
 St. George *Sir Henry* 400, 403, 408, 412, 415, 419, 420, 421, 423, 424.  
 St. George *Sir Thomas* 419, 420, 421, 422.  
 St. George 452.  
 St. Cler 383.  
 St. Julian 280.  
 St. Michael 452.  
 St. Remy 311.  
 Stafford *Duke of Buckingham* 233.  
 Stafford *Earl of* 6, 11, 32, 42, 56, 174.  
 Stafford 32, 37, 54, 252, 343, 373.  
 Stapelton Milon 42.  
 Stapelton Bryan 11, 12.  
 Stanley 14, 39, 207, 217.  
 Steward 271.  
 Stow 347, 351, 354.



Storton 307.  
 Stourton 33 53, 336, 348.  
 Stont *Saint Nicholas* 309.  
 Strafford *Earl of* 344, 373.  
 Strange *Lord* 128, 217.  
 Straw 361.  
 Strongbowe 254.  
 Styrelande *Herauld* 283.  
 Sudeley *Lord* 30, 75, 174, 208.  
 Sudeley 33.  
 Suffolk *Duke of* 69, 75, 88, 111, 118, 232, 243, 258, 374, 376, 378, 380, 474.  
 Suffolk *Dutcheys of* 127.  
 Suffolk *Earl of* 6, 42, 51, 132, 149, 174, 185, 222, 273, 338, 386.  
 Suffolk *Countess of* 124.  
 Sully *Sir John* 11, 35, 261.  
 Sunderland *Earl of* 274, 278.  
 Surry *Duke of* 13, 44.  
 Surry *Earl of* 121, 175, 258.  
 Surienne *Sir Francis* 74, 75, 77.  
 Swinford 127.  
 Swinborn 209.  
 Swynford *Lady Katherine* 11, 12, 13.  
 Sylvius *Aeneas* 280. *vide* *Silvius. Pius.*  
 Syndlesham 250.

T

**T** Albot *Lord* 14, 15, 16, 108, 125, 137, 128, 140.  
 Talbot *Sir Gilbert* 41, 215, 216, 231, 257.  
 Talbot *Sir John* 216, 217.  
 Talbot 133, 373.  
 Tankerville *the Countess* 128.  
 Tanke 171, 174.  
 Tanner 220.  
 Torquatus 482.  
 Tendale 297, 351.  
 Tendale *Chester Herald* 172, 173, 482.  
 Tefry 364.  
 Thafe *Duke of* 173.  
 Thinne 346.  
 Thorpe *Sir George* 168.  
 Tholefhunte 310.  
 Thomlyns 355.  
 Throckmorton *Sir Nicholas* 259.  
 Thynne *Lancaster Herald* 460.  
 Tibetot *Lord* 141.  
 Tindale 172, 173.  
 Tiptoft *Earl of Worcester* 135.  
 Tiptoft *Lord* 226, 331, 332, 333.  
 Toison d'or *King of Arms* 452, 465, 483.  
 Tonge *Clarencieux* 463.  
 Totrick 359.  
 Tozel 463.  
 Trau *Sir Soudan* 35, 155.  
 Trehearne 432, 367.  
 Tremaine 214.  
 Trefwell *a Herald* 476.  
 Trivet *Lady* 13, 14.  
 Trillet 304.  
 Troutbeck 217.  
 Tubero 487.  
 Tuerd 244.  
 Tuit 255.  
 Tunstal *Cuthbert Bishop of London* 377.  
 Turner 405.  
 Tybbetot 155.  
 Tyrol 381.

V

**V** Ache *Lord* 31, 32, 41.  
 Vado Aureo *John* 478.  
 Vaghan 367.  
 Vaillant *Herald* 440.  
 Valence de 294.  
 Valois 106.  
 Valenciennes *Herald* 433.  
 Vanhale *Sir Francis* 48.  
 Van Clux *Sir Hertontk* 38.  
 Vanhale *Lord* 6.  
 Vankelham 110.  
 Vaffyr 359.  
 Vaux *Lord* 138.  
 Vauclet 33.  
 Ubaldus *Guido* 365.  
 Veer *Lady* 11, 12, 13.  
 Venor 345.  
 Vere *Earl of Oxford* 33, 121.  
 Verdun 217.  
 Verney 150.  
 Verley 222.  
 Ufford *Robert Earl of Suffolk* 97.  
 Ufford *William Earl of Suffolk* 44.  
 Uflete *Sir Gerald* 224.  
 Ughtred *Earl Thomas* 6, 42.  
 Vieuville *Marquess of* 80.  
 Villars 315.  
 Vincent 23.  
 Vifen *Duke of* 39, 53.  
 Ulfton 226.  
 Ulton *Earl of* 42.  
 Umfreville *Earl of Angus* 32.  
 Umfreville *Lord* 14, 15, 16, 171.  
 Volant 313, 316.  
 Upton 441, 449, 459, 477, 478, 481, 482.  
 Urbin *Duke of* 214, 50, 306, 365.  
 Urfewyke 40.  
 Urswick 396.  
 Utreight *Sir Thomas* 47.

W

**W** Ales *Prince of* 50, 51, 85, 87, 110, 105, 200, 207.  
 Wall *Sir Thomas* 105, 368, 373, 380.  
 Wall *Garter* 457.  
 Wall *Roger* 375.  
 Walker *Sir Edward* 404, 407, 409, 410, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415, 418, 419, 423, 454, 408.  
 Waller 236, 409.  
 Walsingham 323, 328, 388, 485.  
 Waleis *Sir John* 300.  
 Wallingford 364, 369.  
 Wallingford *a Pursivant* 459.  
 Walgrave 329, 265, 266, 381.  
 Warwick *Duke of* 332.  
 Warwick *Earl of* 11, 12, 14, 15, 16, 32, 33, 42, 43, 56, 117, 128, 132, 144, 171, 333, 334, 351, 353, 385, 431, 446.  
 Warwick *Countess of* 124.  
 Warren *Earl of* 223, 224.  
 Warteston *Lady* 14, 15.  
 Warcop 373.  
 Warbeck 361, 215.  
 Wardelawe 364.

Warnet



Warnet 372.  
 Wats *Dr.* 450.  
 Wats 284.  
 Watson 404.  
 Wawton 172.  
 Wawe 361.  
 Wells *Viscount* 22, 37, 54, 237, 325.  
 Weloughby (*vide* Willoughby) 174.  
 Wenlock *Lord* 33.  
 Wenceslaus *King of Bohemia* 172.  
 Wentworth *Sir Philip* 30.  
 Westmerland *Earl of* 14, 15, 16, 131, 446.  
 Westmerland *Countess of* 13, 15.  
 West 396.  
 Weston 240, 257.  
 Whever 355, 449.  
 Whethamsted 119.  
 Whitford 406.  
 Whitlocke 404.  
 Wicquefort 437.  
 Wideville *Lord* 50.  
 Wideville *Earl Ryve* 33.  
 Wiltshire *Earl of* 13.  
 Wiltshire *Sir John* 233.  
 Willoughby *Lord* 54, 140, 171.  
 Willoughby 150.  
 Willeby 251.  
 Windsor *Lord* 265.  
 Winchester *Bishop of* 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 50, 171, 222, 229, 300, 310, 331, 385.  
 Windesora 253.  
 Windsor *Herald* 380, 468, 473.  
 Wingfeld *Sir Richard* 215, 219, 377.  
 Wingfeld 169, 258, 262, 288.  
 Wingfeld *alias Wolfe* 221.  
 Wirtemberg *Duke of* 390, 391, 393, 394, 395, 397.  
 Wolley *Sir John* 70.  
 Wolsey *Cardinal* 37, 88, 232, 243, 257.  
 Woodvile *Earl Rivers* 217.  
 Wood 399, 400, 403, 404, 405, 407, 408.  
 Worster *Earl of* 13, 33, 54.  
 Worcester *Bishop of* 223, 214.  
 Worcesterre *William* 141, 143.  
 Worsley *Sir Robert* 116.

Wotton *Sir Robert* 241, 244.  
 Wra 360.  
 Wren *Bishop of Ely* 25.  
 Wrexworth *Guienne King of Arms* 455.  
 Wrexworth 299.  
 Wrixworth 351.  
 Wriothesly *Lord Chancellor* 263.  
 Wriothesley *Sir Thomas* 314, 323, 372, 373, 464.  
 Wriothesley *Sir John* 368, 370.  
 Writhe *Sir John* 84, 354, 355, 356, 360, 361, 362, 363, 365, 367, 369, 380, 396.  
 Wrotefle *Lord Hugh* 6, 42.  
 Wrotefly *Sir Hugh* 35.  
 Wrotefley *Elizabeth* 217.  
 Wryttell 264.  
 Wryght 380.  
 Wyat *John* 432.  
 Wydeville 37, 331, 332.  
 Wyllhere *Earl of* 51.  
 Wyndesore *Herald* 380. *vide* Windsor.  
 Wyrcester 134.  
 Wyftcester *Th' Erle of* 51.

## Y

Yonge 368, 381, 372.  
 York *Duke of* 11, 12, 13, 14, 41, 42, 101, 111, 115, 125, 174, 190, 337, 338, 351, 356, 409, 444.  
 York *Dutchess of* 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 111, 114, 125.  
 York the *Duke's Son* 11, 12, 459.  
 York *Bishop of* 140, 333.  
 York 53, 185.  
 York *Herald* 473.  
 Ypre 277.

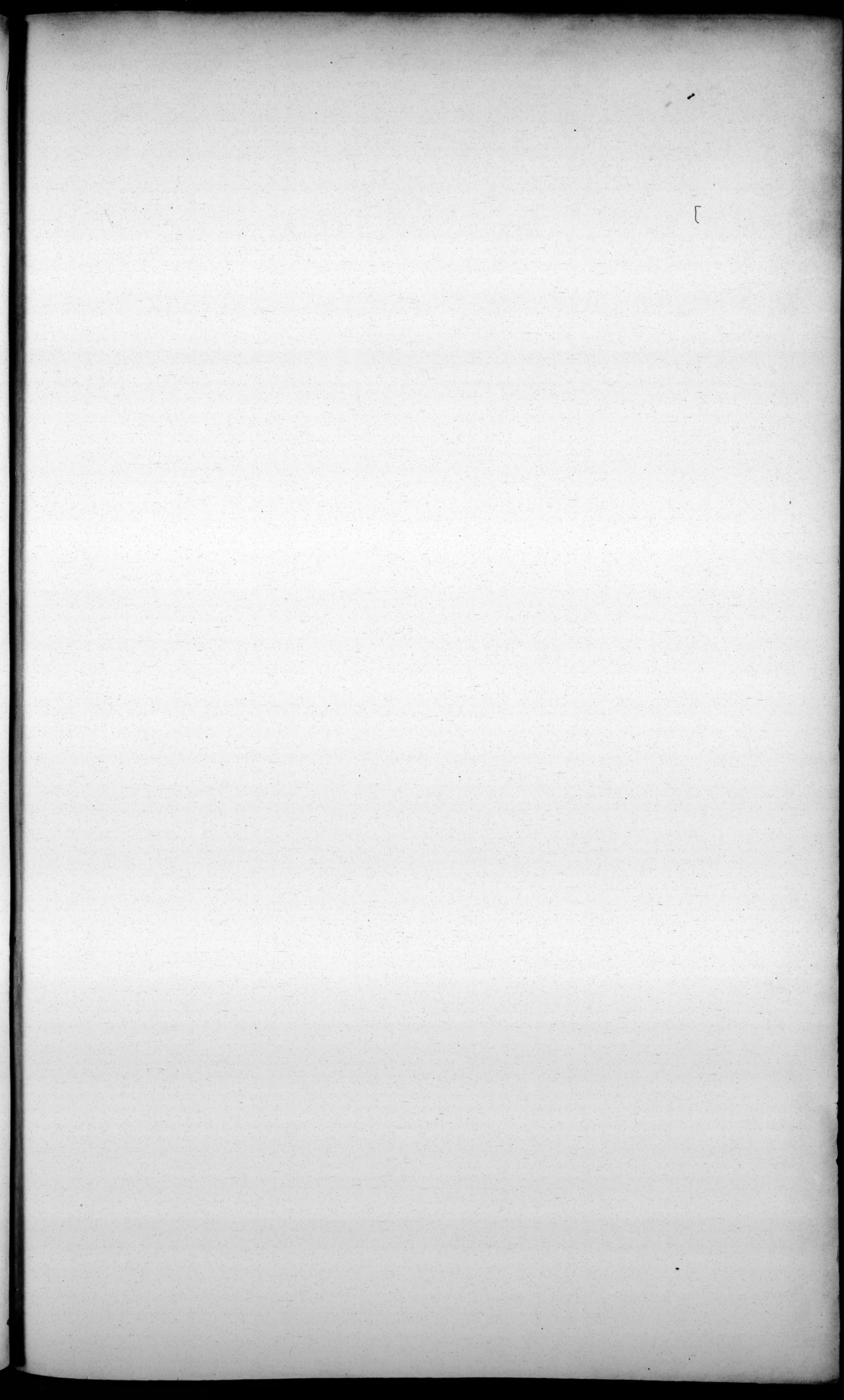
## Z

ZAre 359.  
 Zell *Duke of* 421.  
 Zeuche *Lord* 15, 16, 17.  
 Zouch 405.



F I N I S.







~~1140 g~~

~~1131 g~~

2100 g

2098 g







11 1/2

11 1/2

2100 g  
2098 g



